

UTILIZATION OF THE SOUTHERN PINES

PETER KOCH

Agriculture Handbook No. 420

In two volumes:

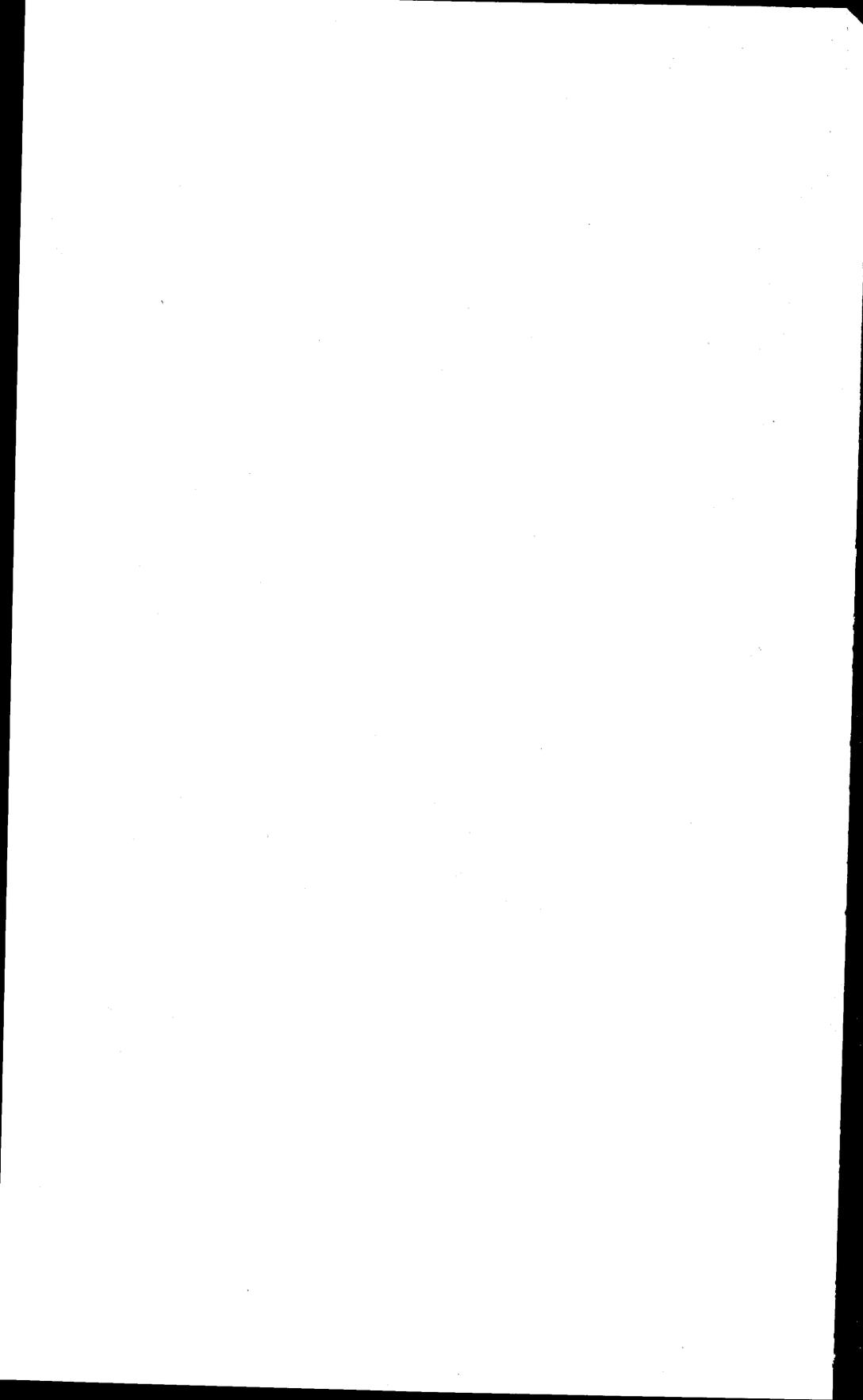
I The Raw Material

II Processing

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE FOREST SERVICE
Southern Forest Experiment Station

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office
Washington, D.C. 20402 - Price \$11.25 per two volume set.

Sold in sets only.
Stock Number 0100-1483



The Author

Peter Koch is one of America's most eminent scientists in wood technology.

After gaining early experience in the design and manufacture of heavy-duty planers and matchers, he spent a year studying the effects of chip formation on cutterhead horsepower and quality of surfaces generated in peripheral milling. His Ph.D. thesis, accepted by the University of Washington in 1954, contained high-speed photos of chips forming under the action of knives and was basic to later work on the chipping headrig.

After 2 years of teaching and research at Michigan State University and 5 years of managing a New England lumber company, he wrote the book *Wood Machining Processes*.

For the past 9 years, he has been in charge of the Southern Forest Experiment Station's timber utilization laboratory at Pineville, in central Louisiana. Here, in 1963, he cooperated with two manufacturers of wood-working machines to construct three experimental versions of chipping headrigs. These headrigs square a log by converting the round sides into pulp chips without creating slabs or wasting material as sawdust. They are now in wide industrial use throughout North America and comprise one of the major wood-machining advances of the 20th century.

During 1964, when manufacture of southern pine plywood was in early stages of development, he provided data that were instrumental in the formulation of gluing practices for the industry. Next, he invented a system of gluing up single-species wooden beams by placing the most limber laminae in the center and the stiffest in the outer, most highly stressed regions. Beams thus assembled are stronger, stiffer, and more uniform than those made by conventional methods.

For these three developments Koch was awarded, in 1968, the Superior Service medal of the U.S. Department of Agriculture. He has received patents on the method of beam construction and on a system of making straight studs from southern pine veneer cores and boltwood. Patent application has been made on a process for drying southern pine studs in 24 hours under restraints that prevent warping.

Acknowledgments

In preparing a work of this scope, characterizing an important and variable resource in relation to its industrial use, an author receives essential assistance and services of many kinds. Especially significant contributions were made by the researchers who wrote the papers referred to in footnotes of many of the chapters. Most of these were prepared for the symposium "Utilization of the southern pines," presented by the Southern Forest Experiment Station and the Forest Products Research Society at Alexandria, La., November 6-8, 1968. Cooperating were the Louisiana Forestry Association, Southern Pine Association (now the Southern Forest Products Association), American Plywood Association, American Pulpwood Association, and American Wood Preservers' Association.

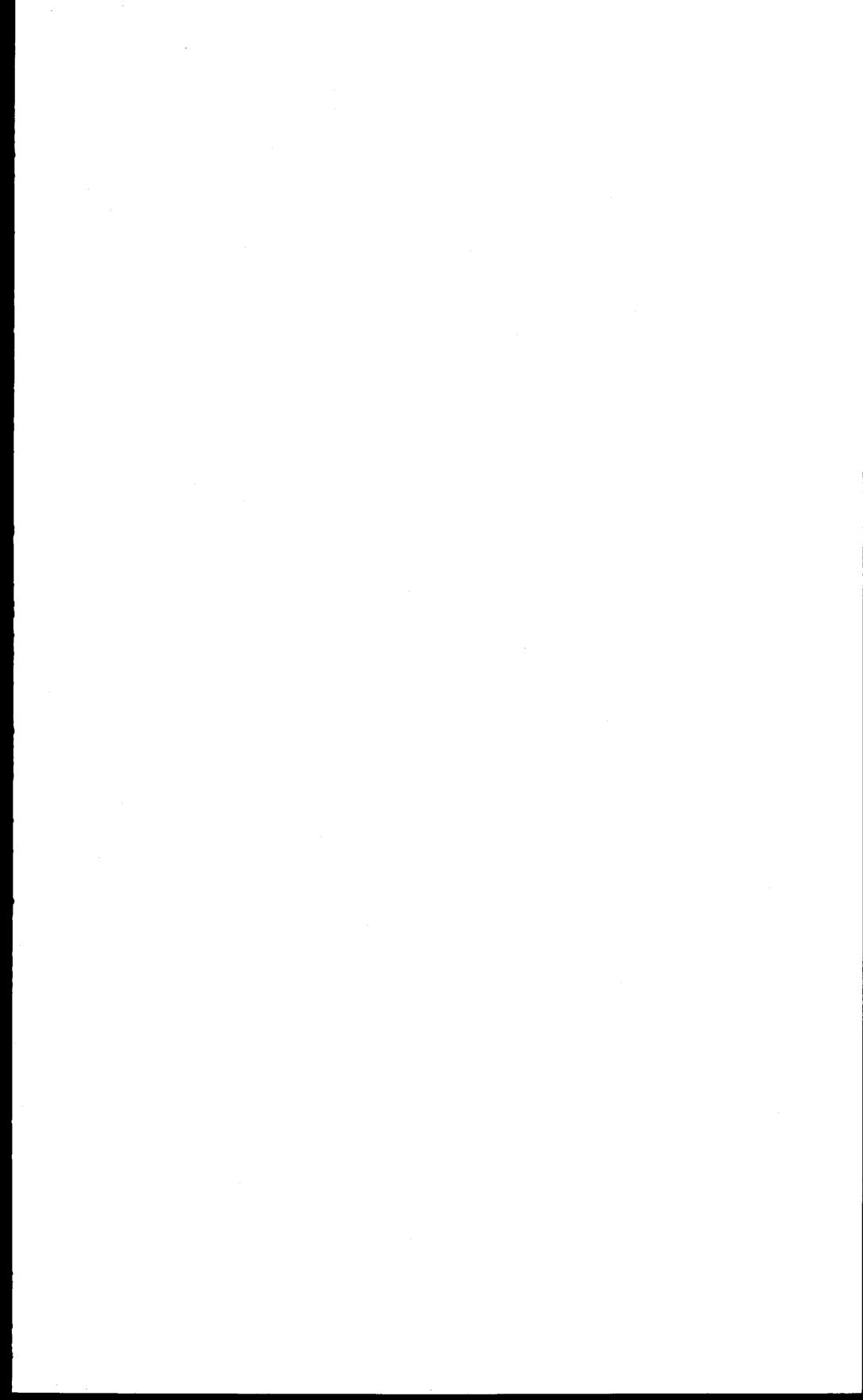
Special acknowledgment is due the more than 100 scientists who meticulously studied and criticized various chapters and sections.

I also wish to express my great appreciation for aid from within the Department of Agriculture. Indispensable knowledge and guidance were provided by the Forest Service's Division of Forest Products and Engineering Research and by the Forest Products Laboratory at Madison, Wis. The New Orleans office of the Southern Forest Experiment Station supplied unfailing support and counsel, including the most essential editorial and library services.

To members of the Forest Products Utilization Research Project at the Alexandria Forestry Center, Pineville, La., I owe particularly personal thanks. The scientists accelerated their research to fill many gaps in information, the technicians assisted them in ways that often went beyond the call of duty, and the administrative personnel efficiently handled infinite details of correspondence and text.

Since the book is a digest of research observations specific to the properties and utilization of the southern pines, a substantial effort was made to abstract, or to make reference to, all major work published prior to 1971. Some findings published or in process during 1971 were also included. Inevitably some worthwhile work has been overlooked; for such omissions, I apologize.

Peter Koch
Pineville, La.
January 1972



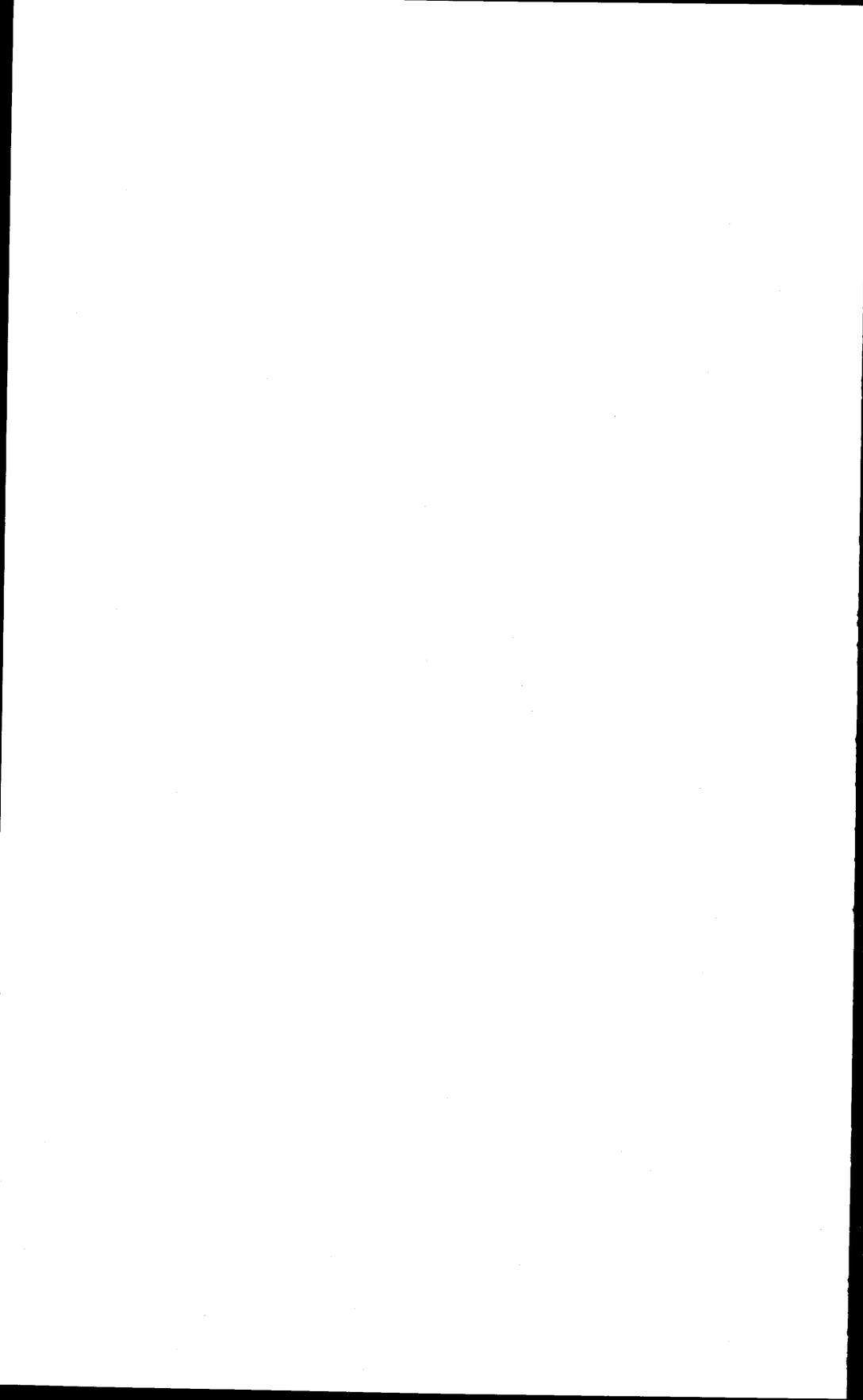
CONTENTS

VOLUME II—PROCESSING

	Page
Part V—PROCESSES	735
18 STORING	737
19 MACHINING	755
20 DRYING	949
21 BENDING	1037
22 TREATING	1061
23 GLUING AND BONDING	1151
24 MECHANICAL FASTENING	1221
25 FINISHING	1325
26 BURNING	1367
27 PULPING	1411
28 CHEMICAL PROCESSING	1475
29 MEASURES AND YIELDS OF PRODUCTS AND RESIDUES	1511
INDEX	1619

PART V—PROCESSES

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Title</i>
18	STORING
19	MACHINING
20	DRYING
21	BENDING
22	TREATING
23	GLUING AND BONDING
24	MECHANICAL FASTENING
25	FINISHING
26	BURNING
27	PULPING
28	CHEMICAL PROCESSING
29	MEASURES AND YIELDS OF PRODUCTS AND RESIDUES



18

Storing

CONTENTS

	Page
18-1 LOGS AND VENEER BOLTS	738
18-2 PULPWOOD	740
18-3 PULP CHIPS	742
18-4 POLES, PILING, POSTS, AND TIMBERS	745
18-5 LUMBER AND MILLWORK	746
OPEN SHEDS	746
UNHEATED CLOSED SHEDS	747
HEATED SHEDS	748
PROTECTION OF LUMBER FOR SHIPMENT AND EXTERIOR STORAGE	748
<i>Wrappings</i>	748
<i>Dip treatments</i>	749
18-6 PLYWOOD, PARTICLE BOARD, AND HARDBOARD	751
18-7 PAPER	752
18-8 LITERATURE CITED	752

Storing

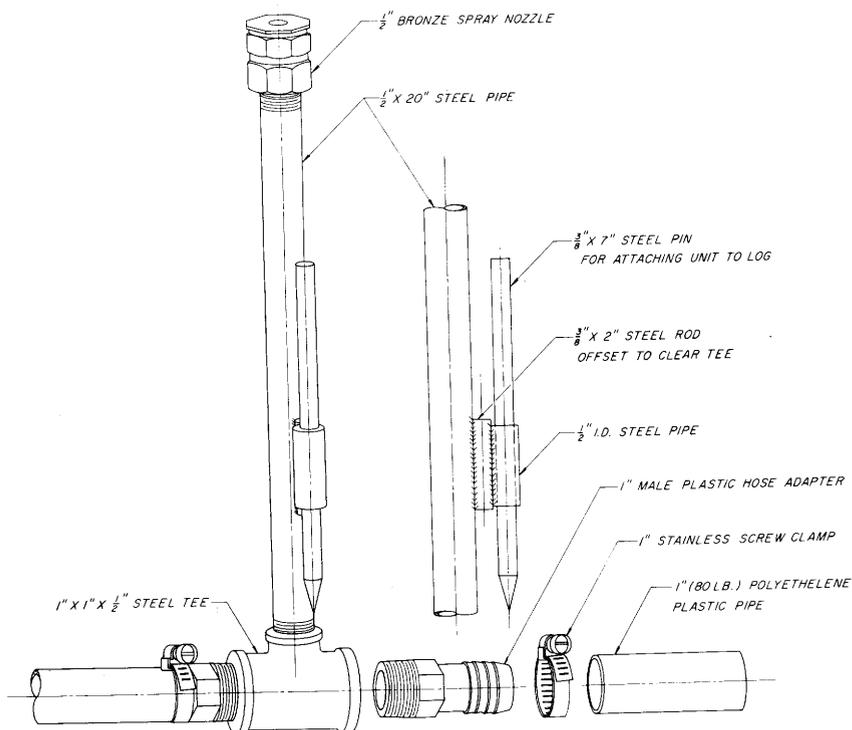
18-1 LOGS AND VENEER BOLTS

Prior to World War II, southern pine logs were commonly protected against stain and decay by storing them in ponds. While in the water, only the exposed portion of each log—that part floating above the surface—suffered fungal infection. Safe storage time in the pond could be extended by periodically revolving each log to hold its light side immersed. The difficulty in keeping logs wet throughout, and the expenses of pond maintenance, recovery of sunken logs, and withdrawal of logs from storage caused discontinuance of this method of storage.

In the South today virtually all pine saw logs and veneer bolts are stored in 10- to 18-foot-high decks. Where such decks are held more than a week or 2 in summer or 1 to 3 months in winter, water spraying or sprinkling is desirable to control stain and decay (see secs. 16-1, 16-2, and 16-4). In addition to controlling plant organisms, water retards or prevents the development of checks in the ends of logs. A water **spray** applies water continuously (fig. 18-1); a **sprinkler** may rotate or oscillate so that water application is periodic but frequent. Evidence suggests that intermittent spraying or sprinkling will give good protection if the wetting is sufficiently frequent to keep log surfaces from getting noticeably dry. Sprays and sprinklers are commonly operated 365 days per year with shut-downs only when there is danger of system damage from freezing temperatures. Preferably, logs are put under sprays or sprinklers as soon as possible after felling and withdrawn on a "first in, first out" basis.

Logs may be sprayed or sprinkled from the top only, but water application from both top and sides is preferable. Top sprinkling wets more log surface and produces better water penetration into the interior of the deck than does end sprinkling. Sprinkling or spraying from the sides wets the log ends effectively to retard checking and growth of fungi (Lowery 1959).

Provision for recovery and recycling of the spray water is common. In the Midsouth, addition of 10 to 15 percent makeup water is commonly needed to replace water loss from evaporation during each circulation cycle. A concrete slab under the deck permits forklift access and reduces water seepage. Vick (1964) observed that effective sprays or sprinklers are a compromise between heads that produce low volume and a fine mist (subject to wind drift) and heads that produce large drops and high volume (requiring large pump capacity).



M-136314

Figure 18-1.—Water spraying equipment used to protect southern pine logs in storage. The spray nozzle, attached to plastic water supply pipe, is secured to the log pile with a sharpened pin. (Drawing after Scheffer 1969.)

Most sprinkler systems used on logs are the "impact" type, with heads that rotate in a pulsating manner; designs are available for a wide range of wetting areas and delivery rates. For example, sprinkler coverage may range from 60 to 400 feet in diameter with output per nozzle of 0.60 to 450 gallons per minute at water pressure from 20 to 80 pounds per sq. ft. Spray heads have lesser coverage—usually 20 to 45 feet in diameter—with outputs of about 0.05 to 3.5 gallons per minute at water pressures of 15 to 30 pounds per sq. ft. Water sprays used at one Louisiana mill are elevated on short pipes and conveniently attached along the top of the log deck by a steel pin (fig. 18-1). These "self-cleaning" nozzles are reported to spray a 24-foot circle at a delivery rate of 2.5 gallons per minute with a nozzle pressure of 15 pounds per sq. in. A plastic pipe connecting the nozzles extends down over one end of the deck and ends in a valve within reach of the ground; this valve is opened from time to time to flush out accumulated dirt (Scheffer 1969).

Thoroughly wetted logs can be safely stored for at least a year. There is some evidence that abnormally long storage of pine logs under water sprays may have side effects in addition to the increased permeability de-

scribed in section 16-1. Lumber cut from such logs may be more subject to staining. Veneer cut from the logs sometimes turns a deep yellow when dried. Data from DeGroot and Scheld (1971) of the USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experimentation Station, Gulfport, Miss., indicate that lumber cut from southern pine logs stored under water sprinkling systems will be no more susceptible to decay than will lumber cut from freshly felled trees.

18-2 PULPWOOD

To control decay of pulpwood, storage conditions should keep the wood either wetter or drier than optimum for growth of decay organisms (see sec. 16-5). For peeled wood, open piles designed to afford maximum ventilation help minimize decay by fast reduction of moisture content. Rough (i.e., unpeeled) wood, on the other hand, is best stored in large, compact piles, affording minimum aeration. Decay is retarded by the high moisture levels and cooler temperatures maintained within such piles. In piles of unpeeled wood, long bolts of large diameter deteriorate more slowly than short bolts of small diameter. At best, however, considerable damage may be expected in warm weather, especially on the exterior of the pile (Lindgren 1953).

Water sprays that keep pulpwood wet during warm seasons of the year are highly effective in reducing damage and are widely used by pulp companies to safely store southern pine (Mason et al. 1963; Djerf and Volkman 1969). Volkman (1966) has described successful storage of 3,000 cords of southern pine pulpwood under water sprays at a kraft mill near Camden, Ark. The layout is shown in figure 18-2; storage began in July 1964. Moisture content of the roundwood remained at about 55 percent (of total weight) during the 12 months in spray storage. Mill and laboratory evaluations at intervals showed no appreciable loss in wood density, pulp yield, byproducts yield or pulp strength from wood stored under sprays for periods up to 12 months. The conclusion that water spraying of roundwood controls losses in wood density, pulp quality, and byproducts was further confirmed by Djerf and Volkman (1969), who also suggested spraying with pulpmill effluent to retard growth of slime.

Djerf and Volkman (1969) estimate that storage of pulpwood under water spray can eliminate 80 percent of the wood deterioration and handling costs involved in maintaining and rotating dry-stored pulpwood. Though less troublesome with pine than with hardwoods, the system is not without problems. Sprinkler heads are often plugged with fines, and grit or corrosion cause malfunction of oscillators. Maintaining the in-line filters needed to keep pipes from plugging is expensive. During pile breakdown, bark sloughing makes it difficult to get full grapple loads. Where wood is floated to barking drums, some spray-stored bolts may sink, while loose bark and grit may reduce production by plugging circulation pumps and drag-chain gratings.

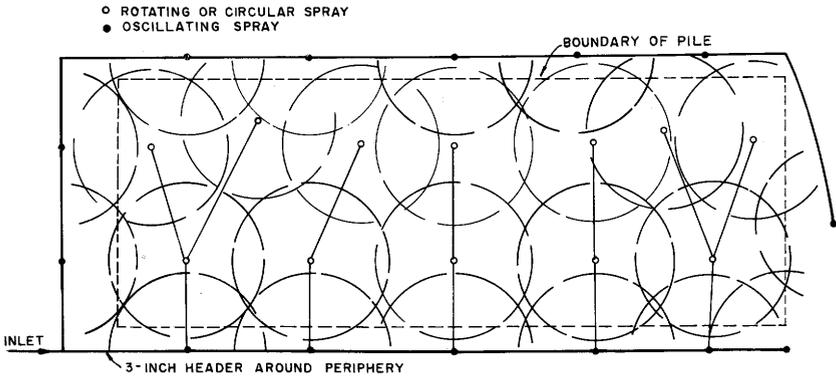


Figure 18-2.—(Top) Plan of 26 sprinkler locations on and around a 3,000-cord pile of southern pine pulpwood. The pile was approximately 240 feet long, 90 feet wide, and 30 feet high. Whole circles represent sprinklers mounted on top of the pile, and half circles designate sprayers covering the sides of the pile. (Bottom) Sprayed pulpwood showing placement of sprinklers on and around the pile. (Drawing and photo from Volkman 1966.)

As an alternative to the water-spray system, southern pine pulpwood may be successfully stored under water in large concrete ponds. Altman (1965) has described construction details and operating procedures for a 10,000-cord pond at Bastrop, La., which is 700 feet long, 150 feet wide, and 35 feet deep. The sides slope in so that the bottom measures 625 by 80 feet. Cranes equipped with orange-peel grapples move debarked wood into and out of the pond.

18-3 PULP CHIPS

Outside storage of wood in chip form has been practiced on the West Coast since about 1950 (Schmidt 1969). Increasingly in the South, wood is stored outside in chip piles rather than in roundwood form (Djerf and Volkman 1969). Advantages include better chip measurement, lower handling costs, reduced space requirements, and smoother operation in the woodyard and woodroom. In addition, chip piles solve storage problems arising from establishment of chip mills at the wood source. Finally, they simplify procedures for handling mixed species and sawmill residues.

Rothrock et al. (1961) took data on a pile of slash pine chips established May 28 and 29, 1959 at Fargo, Ga. The area under the pile had been graded, covered with 6 inches of lime rock, and topped with 1½ inches of asphalt. Chips from freshly cut trees were built into the pile and compacted with a crawler tractor. The top of the pile measured 21 feet wide by 42 feet long with sides sloped to a base width of 42 feet and length of 72 feet. Depth of the pile varied from 7 to 10 feet.

Chip deterioration was mostly in the outer shell of the pile (sec. 16-6). Loss of wood substance amounted to 1 to 1½ percent per month of storage. There was no loss in percentage of yield based on tonnage of wood charged to a kraft process digester. Loss of tear strength of pulp amounted to about 5 percent per month of storage. **Permanganate number** (a measure of bleach requirement) of pulps was not influenced by temperature and moisture fluctuations in the pile. The proportion of screen rejects was less from stored chips than from stored roundwood. Chips in piles are vulnerable to airborne contamination by dirt and fly ash.

Temperature inside a chip storage pile may increase as much as 60° F. in the first few weeks. Elevated temperature persists through 5 months' storage except in the outer shell. Successive waves of increasing temperature are characteristic, and the temperature in the pile bears no relationship to surrounding ambient temperature, i.e., the heat is generated in the pile (Rothrock et al. 1961). Springer and Hajny (1970) found that this initial release of heat to the pile results from respiration of the living ray parenchyma cells of the wood chips.

Moisture is driven out of the high-temperature zone in the center of the pile in the first weeks (fig. 18-3) and appears to condense in the cooler outer zones. When the initial high temperature subsides, rainfall seeps into the pile from the top, and the entire pile reaches a uniform moisture level higher than the original condition.

Schmidt's (1969) studies of redwood (*Sequoia sempervirens* (D. Don) Endl.) and Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) suggest that heat from biological activity in chip piles can trigger chemical reactions leading toward ultimate ignition. Pockets of chips, especially in fan-shaped areas high in the pile, in front of pneumatic delivery lines, reached temperatures of 150° to 180° F. He suggests positive plans for pile rota-

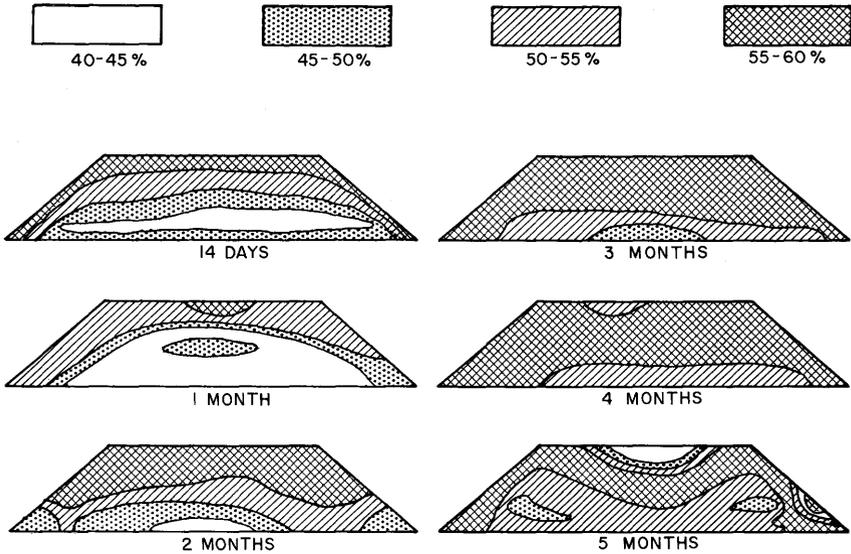


Figure 18-3.—Moisture in chips stored in a compacted pile 42 feet wide and 7 to 10 feet deep, expressed as percent of wet weight. (Drawing after Rothrock et al. 1961.)

tion, watering, and limiting pile height to 50 feet as means for maintaining quality and avoiding excessive temperatures.

Since chip storage in unsprayed piles results in quality of pulp and yields of byproducts about equal to those from dry roundwood storage, its chief advantage is efficiency in material handling. Djerf and Volkman (1969) tested water spraying as a means of improving quality of chips stored in piles. Their 1,200-cord pile of loblolly and shortleaf pine chips at Camden, Ark. measured 90 by 170 feet, was completed to a height of 25 feet in 3 weeks, and was then sprayed continuously for 12 months. Six sprinklers applied evaporator hot-well water (100 to 120° F., pH 9.0) at 270 gallons per minute. Samples from the pile were evaluated at 2-month intervals.

The moisture content of the spray-stored chips increased from 53 to 63 percent over the first 2 months of storage and then gradually increased to 66 percent of total weight at 12 months' storage. After 2 months in the pile, the chips began to turn dark brown and were covered by a thin layer of slime; after 12 months' storage, the chips were almost black. The change in color was believed attributable to generation of organic acids by micro-organisms other than decay-causing fungi.

Chip density was unaffected during the first 4 months of water-spray storage (fig. 18-4E). After 6 months, chip density was reduced by about 6 percent; it decreased uniformly thereafter to a total loss of 10 percent at 12 months. Kraft pulp yield declined in proportion to density loss. By comparison, dry-stored chips began to lose density very soon after being stored (Rothrock et al. 1961; Rhyne and Brinkley 1961), and the

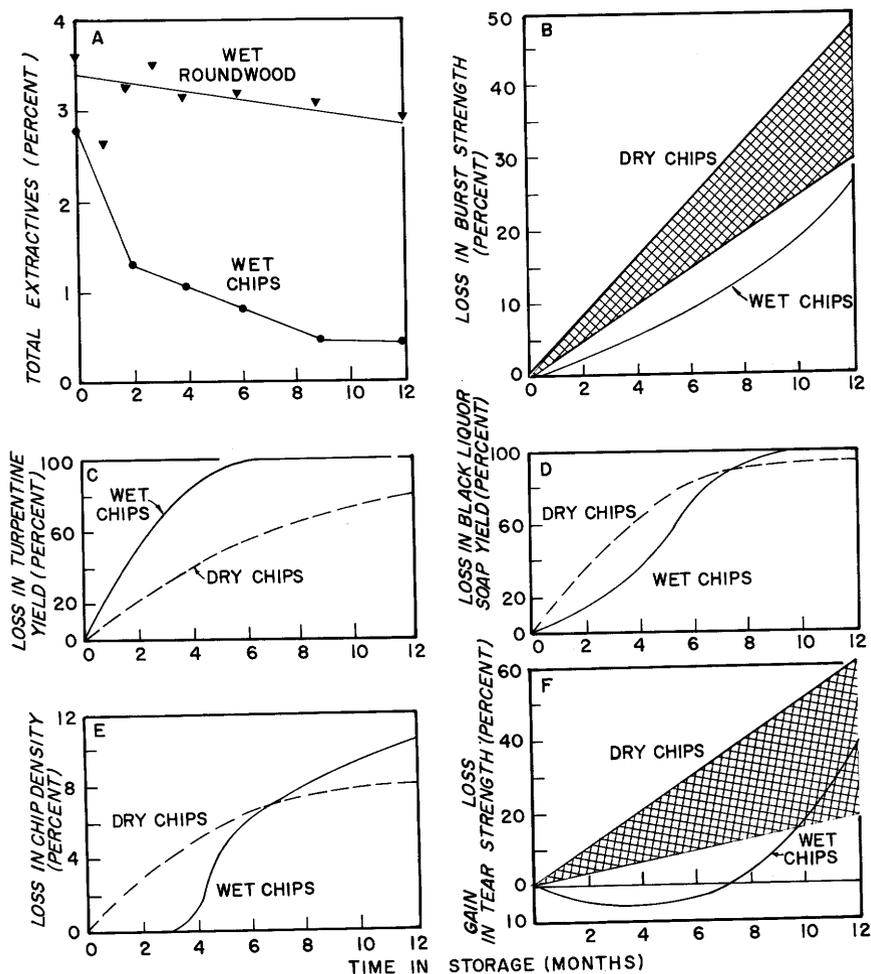


Figure 18-4.—Changes with storage time in wet-stored roundwood and in chips stored in piles with (wet) and without (dry) water spray. (A) Extractives content in water-sprayed chips compared to water-sprayed roundwood. (B) Loss of burst strength (Mullen) in kraft pulp (500 ml. Canadian Standard Freeness) made from chips stored wet and dry. Shaded areas show range of reported values. (C) Loss of turpentine yield from chips stored wet and dry. (D) Loss in yield of black liquor soap from chips stored wet and dry. (E) Loss in density of chips stored wet and dry. (F) Loss of tear strength in kraft pulp (500 ml. Canadian Standard Freeness) made from chips stored wet and dry. Shaded areas show range of reported values. (Drawings after Djerf and Volkman 1969; curves also reflect findings of Rothrock et al. 1961, Rhyne and Brinkley 1961, Saucier and Miller 1961, Somsen 1962, and Thornberg 1963.)

former found no loss in wood density of water-sprayed roundwood after 12 months' storage.

In contrast to water-sprayed roundwood, which produced pulp of undiminished strength after 12 months' storage, strength properties of pulp

from water-sprayed chips declined with storage time (Djerf and Volkman 1969). Deterioration was less rapid than for dry-stored chips, however, as evaluated by burst strength data (fig. 18-4B) from Rhyne and Brinkley (1961) and by tear strength data (fig. 18-4F) from these authors, Rothrock et al. (1961) and Saucier and Miller (1961).

Water-spray chip storage accelerated the serious decline in byproduct yield which accompanies dry storage of chips; in both cases the large surface area probably exposes resinous materials to oxidation. Turpentine yields (fig. 18-4C) decreased by 50 percent after 2 months in storage, and after 4 months in storage virtually no turpentine was recovered. Turpentine losses with dry chip storage average about 10 percent per month in most cases (Rhyne and Brinkley 1961; Somsen 1962), and as high as 30 percent in extreme cases (Thornberg 1963). In contrast, roundwood stored for 12 months under water sprays shows little loss in turpentine yield (Volkman 1966).

After 6 months of chip storage, virtually no black liquor soap is recovered from either wet or dry stored chips (fig. 18-4D); roundwood stored under water sprays, however, has very little loss in soap yield over 12 months' storage.

Djerf and Volkman (1969) conclude that water spraying of chips during long-term storage offers no advantage over dry chip storage. Spray storage of chips for a month or less, however, may offer some economic benefits by decreasing loss of wood density and black liquor soap (fig. 18-4E, D).

Shields (1967) noted that compaction of southern pine chips in the storage pile reduces wood losses; blowing chips onto a pile reportedly produces greater compaction than piling and packing by tractor. Chip deterioration is also reduced if wood is removed from the pile on a "first in, first out" basis; systems for accomplishing such rotations have been described (e.g., Glassy 1969).

Various chemicals have been evaluated for their effectiveness in preventing wood loss from fungal action and spontaneous combustion. Springer et al. (1969, 1970, 1971) found that dipping of fresh pulp chips in a laboratory-prepared **green liquor** effectively prevented loss of wood substance from fungal action and prevented temperature rise in simulators of chip piles. Green liquor is derived from the smelt of spent kraft black liquor burned in chemical recovery furnaces; it is composed primarily of sodium carbonate and sodium sulfide. Smith and Hatton (1971) evaluated the economic feasibility of protecting chips by application of green liquor. King et al. (1971) noted that in small scale tests, application of SO_2 inhibited fungal growth on pulp chips for 3 months.

18-4 POLES, PILING, POSTS, AND TIMBERS

Bark-free green roundwood and sawn timbers are particularly vulnerable to stain and decay because they require long periods for air-drying. For

outdoor storage, roundwood and timber should be in piles conforming as nearly as possible to the arrangements for air-drying recommended in chapter 20. Pile foundations should keep timber clear of the ground to avoid dampness from groundwater. Piles should be roofed to reduce wetting, warping, checking, and staining. Protection from rain is more essential for solid than for stickered piles, because water which enters solid piles is very slow to evaporate. Outdoor storage in solid piles is always hazardous.

Chemical protection from fungi and end coatings for prevention of seasoning checks are described in sections 16-7 and 20-1.

18-5 LUMBER AND MILLWORK

Exclusive of economic and materials handling aspects, the primary objectives of storage are to keep the lumber clean, undamaged, and to maintain it at a moisture content approximating that which it will reach in use. Solid-piled wood changes moisture content slowly if protected from the elements. Protection afforded commonly ranges from a simple roof to an enclosed and heated warehouse. Fluctuation of moisture content under various storage situations was measured in a few studies conducted a number of years ago; the data are still highly applicable.

OPEN SHEDS

In a limited study at Chicago, Ill., J. S. Mathewson and O. W. Torgeson¹ compared moisture changes in southern pine shiplap stored in covered yard piles and in an open-end shed with those in a closed shed heated an average of $5\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ F. above outdoor temperature. The lumber was solid piled, well elevated above the ground, and its moisture content was 7 percent when storage started in May 1930. Normal equilibrium moisture content under prevailing outdoor conditions was 13 to 14 percent. Average moisture contents, plotted in figure 18-5, reached $11\frac{1}{2}$ and 10 percent, respectively, in the roofed yard piles and the open-end sheds by August 1931. At that time the lumber in the heated shed contained a little less than $9\frac{1}{2}$ -percent moisture content.

A similar test was made in Chicago by J. S. Mathewson¹ with solid-piled 1- by 6-inch car lining and 1- by 4-inch, kiln-dried southern pine flooring. The test extended $21\frac{1}{2}$ months, from April 1930 to January 1932. Temperature in the unheated open shed averaged 2.7° F. above ambient and in the heated shed, 8° F. The lumber in covered yard storage changed from a moisture content of 10.2 percent to 13.5 percent. In the unheated shed the change was from 9.9 to 11.0 percent. In the heated shed, beginning moisture content was 10.3, and final was 10.6 percent.

Obviously the equilibrium moisture content of lumber stored in open sheds will vary according to the outside ambient temperature and relative

¹ Peck, E. C. Abstracts of numerous experiments on the change in moisture content of lumber in storage and in transit. Unpublished report, USDA Forest Serv., Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis. (1961).

humidity. Loughborough and Torgeson (1929) found that climatic conditions in the southeastern States during November and December of 1928 would cause lumber (protected but exposed to exterior air) to reach a moisture content of about 13 percent.

UNHEATED CLOSED SHEDS

Closed sheds should be located on well-drained sites and be floored with planking, concrete, or asphalt. Ventilation should be provided by adjustable openings in the roof and walls.

If a closed shed is unheated, the temperature inside will be somewhat higher than outdoors because of heat from the sun. With proper ventilation, the mean relative humidity within the shed will be somewhat lower than that of the outdoor air. In theory an unheated closed shed full of thoroughly kiln-dried lumber should not be ventilated if there is no source of moisture within the shed except that contained within the lumber. As a practical matter, however, moisture is frequently introduced through the shed floor; in this situation ventilation is required. A vapor barrier installed as a soil cover will reduce ingress of moisture through the floor.

Kiln-dried lumber stored in an unheated shed will ordinarily absorb some moisture (fig. 18-5). An increase in moisture content from 7 percent to approximately 10 percent over a period of a year and a half in storage is common. Exposed ends, edges, and faces quickly attain a moisture content in balance with temperature and humidity in the shed. Moisture diffusion is most rapid along the grain inward from the ends. If there are spaces within the pile, created by milled patterns on lumber, the moisture pickup will proceed more rapidly to the interior of the pile.

Although average moisture content of kiln-dried lumber may increase during storage, moisture distribution within the pile may become more uniform. Longborough and Torgeson (1929) observed this effect in kiln-dried southern pine stored for 90 days in an unheated shed. Average moisture content increased from 7.1 to 9.4 percent, but moisture in the wettest boards decreased from 16.2 to 14.0 percent.

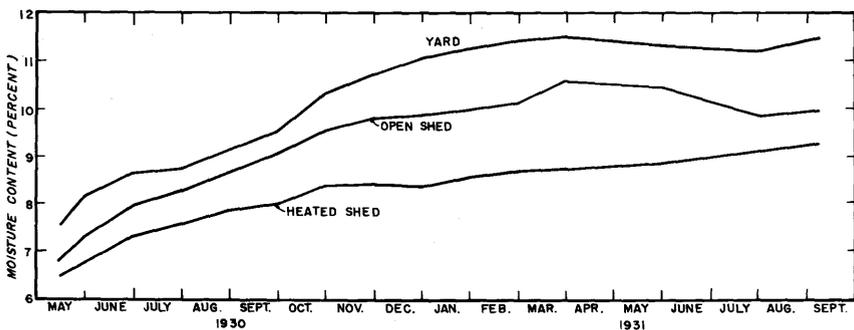


Figure 18-5.—Increase in moisture content of solid-piled, kiln-dried southern pine shiplap in Chicago, Ill. (Drawing after Peck 1961.)

HEATED SHEDS

The efficiency of a closed shed in maintaining a low moisture content can be considerably enhanced if it is heated as weather conditions require. Table 8-2 indicates combinations of temperature and humidity which will maintain specific equilibrium moisture contents.

Closed storage sheds may be heated with steam coils, radiators, or unit heaters. Open, unvented gas heaters should not be used, as combustion creates large amounts of water. The heating system need not have a large capacity. A shed temperature 10 to 20° above outdoor temperature is usually sufficient. Temperatures must be maintained above 32° F. to prevent freezing in traps and return lines if a steam or water system is used. Fans placed at strategic points will help keep conditions uniform.

PROTECTION OF LUMBER FOR SHIPMENT AND EXTERIOR STORAGE

Under some circumstances, particularly at building sites, it is impractical to store lumber in sheds. Two approaches to the problem are in frequent use, i.e., wrapping and dipping. While framing lumber may get extended exterior exposure during rail shipment, exposure at the building site is normally short. Preferably, kiln-dry finish and millwork should never be subjected to exterior exposure, but should be delivered only after a tight roof is in place.

Wrappings.—Protection of dry lumber by wrappings is common practice, but no data have been published on moisture changes in southern pine when so protected. Hickman [n.d.] wrapped solid-piled, 4-foot lengths of 4/4 kiln-dried (7.4-percent moisture content) ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa* Laws.) in packages 4 feet square and about 3 feet high. These packages were stored outdoors in the vicinity of Portland, Ore. for 1 year. Four packages were wrapped—each in a different manner.

1. Covered on top, bottom, and all sides with a sheet of laminated, reinforced, wet-strength kraft paper consisting of two layers of 30-pound kraft paper with a 113-pound inner laminate of asphalt per 3,000 sq. ft.
2. Covered on top, sides and ends with a sheet of black, 4-mil (0.004-inch), polyethylene film.
3. Covered on top, sides, and ends with a prefabricated cover made of the same material used on package number -, except that the kraft paper was of standard quality.
4. Covered on top, sides and ends with a prefabricated cover made of material similar to that used on package number 1.

Moisture content of the top five courses varied considerably during the test, due mostly to leakage (fig. 18-6). Moisture in the main part of the packages increased about 2 percentage points, remaining well within limits required for satisfactory storage.

In a replicated test with kiln-dried soft maple (*Acer rubrum* L.) in

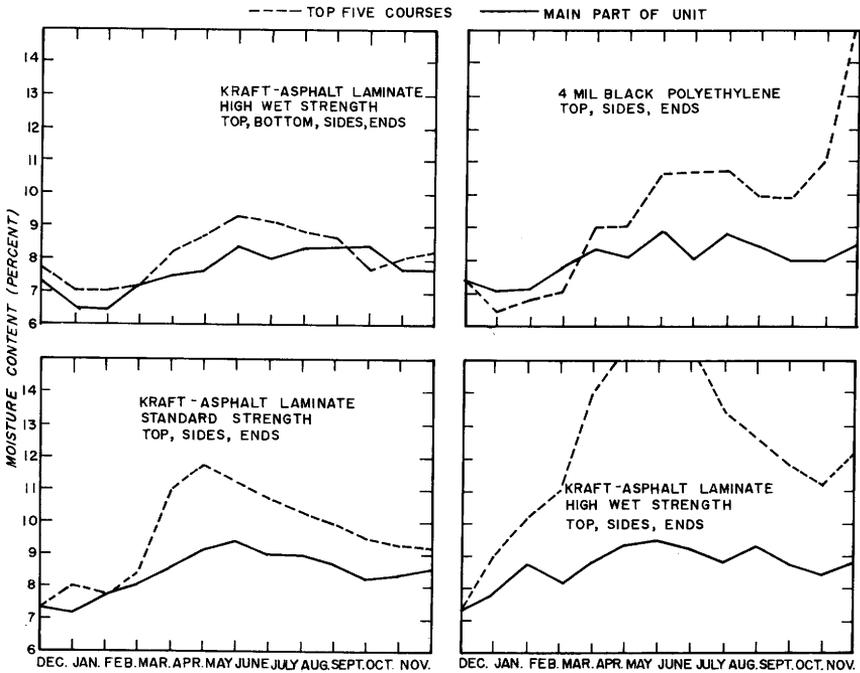


Figure 18-6.—Moisture content of 4-foot lengths of 4/4 ponderosa pine exposed in solid packages protected by wrappings. Test site was Portland, Ore. (Drawing after Hickman [n.d.])

North Carolina (Applefield 1966), neither kraft paper, polyethylene film, nor metal pile roofs afforded acceptable protection. Wet spots, stain, and even incipient decay developed, especially in the upper courses. Leakage through breaks in the covering appeared to be responsible.

Obviously, the durability of the wrapping material affected these results. Multilayered, wet-strength, kraft paper is now available with interior laminae of glass-reinforced, waterproof material. These new wrapping materials have reinforced edges and can be expected to give good results when carefully applied.

In 1965, William H. Rae, Jr. reported (unpublished) on the effect of wind on lumber wrapped in paper for shipment on open cars and trucks. The wind—up to 115 miles per hour—was obtained by placing the lumber 12 feet behind a World War II P-51 fighter plane. He found that of three wrapping methods tested, that shown in figure 18-7 was best. The staple strap should be semirigid and nonstretchable. A flexible laminate is necessary to prevent damage to protective covers from wind whip during temperatures below 30° F.

Dip treatments.—Most lumber dips are primarily fungicides (see chs. 16 and 22). Some, however, are designed to help maintain moisture stability in storage and during construction. (End coatings are discussed in sec. 18-3.)

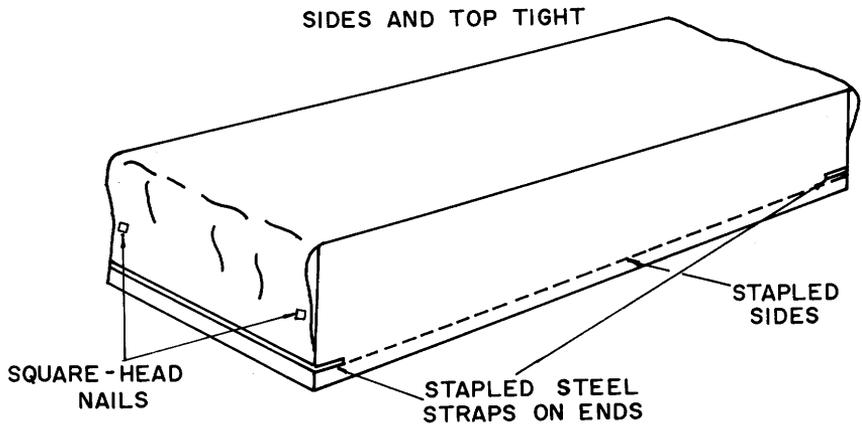


Figure 18-7.—Lumber wrapping system for shipment on open cars. Staples spaced 10 inches apart and driven through steel strap or cord embedded in the paper.

An evaluation was made of seven coatings (Koch 1966) to determine their effectiveness in excluding moisture pickup when lumber is exposed to exterior conditions. Several widely used commercial formulations were included. Studs cut from southern pine veneer cores were dried to 9-percent moisture content and treated as follows:

- A. Control—no treatment.
- B. 10-second dip in PAR², a clear, glossless, nonfungicidal, penetrating, water-repellent finish.
- C. 10-second dip in Woodlife², a clear, penetrating, water-repellent preservative.
- D. 10-second dip in Lumbrella², (9:1 ratio of water to concentrate).
- E. 10-second dip in Convoy², (6:1 ratio of water to concentrate).
- F. 10-second dip in experimental Millbrite², (9:1 ratio of water to concentrate).
- G. Two brush coats of shellac (including ends of studs).
- H. Two brush coats of aluminum paint (including ends of studs).

The dilutions in treatments D, E, and F are the manufacturer's recommendation. These three treatments are generically described as unpigmented, emulsified, semipenetrating, fungicidal water repellents in aqueous solution. The coating of treatment H is described as: aluminum pigment powder for paint Fed. Spec. TTA468, Type II, Class B; mixed with varnish (for mixing with aluminum paint) Fed. Spec. TTV-81D, Type I.

Studs were suspended in one of the following three atmospheres:

- Exterior exposure under continuous water spray
- 90-percent relative humidity and 80° F.
- 42-percent relative humidity and 81° F.

After 8 weeks' exposure, average moisture contents were:

Under continuous water spray	22 percent
At 90-percent relative humidity	13 percent
At 42-percent relative humidity	9 percent

² These proprietary products are mentioned for information only; other water-repellent preparations are commercially available.

All humidity and treatment conditions considered, the most rapid change in moisture content occurred during the first 2 weeks (4.8 percent compared to an average of 2.0 percent for each of the following 2-week periods).

Figure 18-8 shows that none of the coatings tested was very effective in providing protection against moisture change over the 8-week period. Two brush coats of aluminum paint gave best protection under the water shower and at 90-percent humidity. Shellac was second best at 90-percent humidity but inferior to three other coatings under the shower. Some of the other treatments have value for very short-term protection from rainwetting during storage at a building site and during construction.

While this test was conducted with studs, the advisability of treating studs with a coating which blocks moisture movement may be questioned. If ends are trimmed during construction and become wetted in the completed structure, drying may be slowed enough to start decay.

18-6 PLYWOOD, PARTICLEBOARD, AND HARDBOARD

Because these panel products are hot-press formed, they come out of the manufacturing process at a moisture content well below 10 percent. When they are stacked in storage packages, the prevailing atmosphere has very limited access to the center of the pile; therefore, the moisture content in

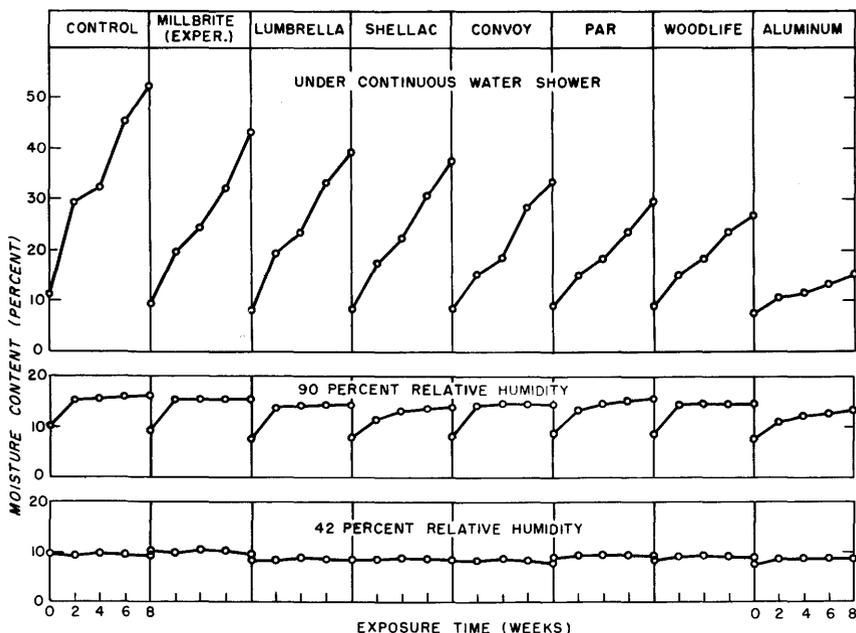


Figure 18-8.—Moisture content of coated and uncoated studs exposed to water spray, 90-percent humidity, and 40-percent humidity. Each curve represents average for 10 studs. (Drawing after Koch 1966.)

these stacked products changes slowly in response to changes in temperature and humidity of the surrounding air.

Because the top and bottom panels in each storage package are so completely exposed on one side, however, it is highly desirable to store these products in a heated shed where conditions can be manipulated to keep the material at an equilibrium moisture content near the anticipated moisture content in use. It should be recognized that the equilibrium moisture content of these panel products—which incorporate varying percentages of resins and waxes—may differ significantly from the equilibrium moisture content of ordinary solid wood products exposed to the same atmospheric conditions. (See sec. 8-3, under heading EQUILIBRIUM MOISTURE CONTENT OF RECONSTITUTED WOOD.)

18-7 PAPER

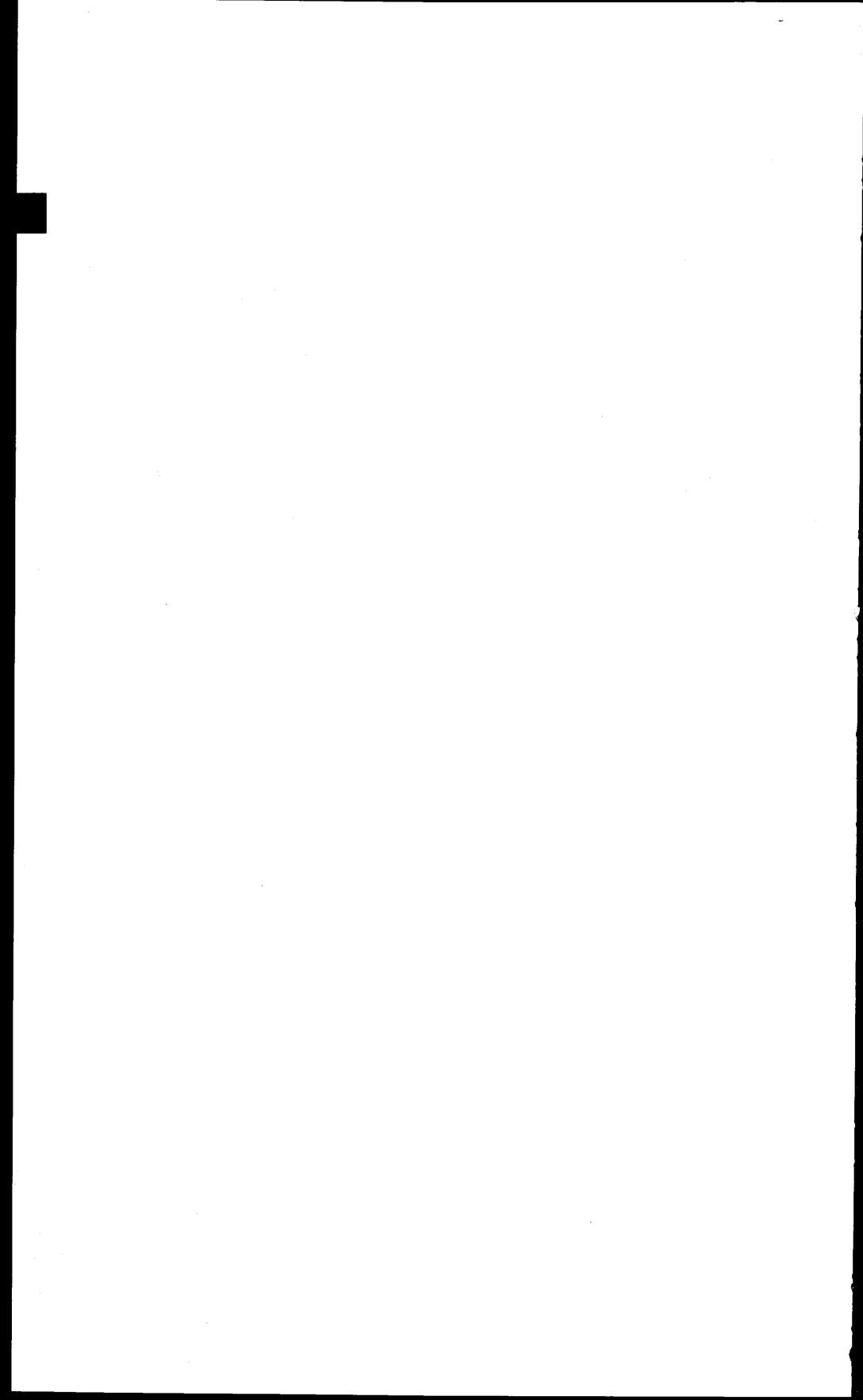
Environmental deterioration of paper involves interactions of heat, light, moisture, and gases. Since papers are made by numerous processes and many contain a variety of additives, it is difficult to make generalized statements about optimum storage conditions.

Luner (1969) has reviewed factors affecting paper permanence and observed that presence of moisture accelerates the aging of paper, as does exposure to light or high temperature. It is concluded, therefore, that deterioration of many southern pine papers can be controlled by storing them in a regulated dry atmosphere (50-percent relative humidity or lower), in comparative darkness, and at a temperature of 72° F. or lower.

18-8 LITERATURE CITED

- Altman, J. A.
1965. Wet storage of pulpwood. Amer. Pulpwood Assoc. Tech. Release 65-R-17, 3 pp.
- Applefield, M.
1966. Wrappings for protecting kiln-dried lumber stored in the open. Forest Prod. Res. Soc. News Dig. H-2.3, 2 pp.
- DeGroot, R. C., and Scheld, H. W.
1971. Biodegradability of sapwood from southern pine logs stored under a continuous water spray. Forest Prod. J. 21(10): 53-55.
- Djerf, A. C., and Volkman, D. A.
1969. Experiences with water spray wood storage. TAPPI 52: 1861-1864.
- Glassy, M.
1969. Rader pneumatics reports new chip pile shape reduces decomposition. Amer. Plywood Assoc. Tech. Pap. 68-16, pp. 3-4.
- Hickman, L.
[n.d.]. Protection of lumber for exterior storage. West. Pine Assoc. Res. Note 6.711, 4 pp.
- King, A. D., Stanley, W. L., Jurd, L., and Boyle, F. P.
1971. Wood chip microbiological control with sulfur dioxide. TAPPI 54: 262.
- Koch, P.
1966. Straight studs from southern pine veneer cores. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SO-25, 37 pp. Southern Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.

- Lindgren, R. M.
1953. Deterioration losses in stored southern pine pulpwood. TAPPI 36: 260-264.
- Loughborough, W. K., and Torgeson, O. W.
1929. Standard commercial moisture specifications for southern yellow pine lumber: Effect of present seasoning and storage practices on the moisture content of southern yellow pine at time of shipment. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab., 88 pp.
- Lowery, D. P.
1959. Management of log inventories. USDA Forest Serv. Intermountain Forest and Range Exp. Sta. Res. Note 63, 4 pp.
- Luner, P.
1969. Paper permanence. TAPPI 52: 796-805.
- Mason, R. R., Muhonen, J. M., and Swartz, J. N.
1963. Water sprayed storage of southern pine pulpwood. TAPPI 46: 233-240.
- Peck, E. C.
1961. Air drying of lumber. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1657, 21 pp.
- Rhyne, J. B., and Brinkley, A. W., Jr.
1961. Seven months outside storage of pine and hardwood chips at the Panama City Mill of International Paper Company. Southern Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer 24(2): 86, 88, 116-117.
- Rothrock, C. W., Jr., Smith, W. T., and Lindgren, R. M.
1961. The effects of outside storage on slash pine chips in the South. TAPPI 44: 65-73.
- Saucier, J. R., and Miller, R. L.
1961. Deterioration of southern pine chips during summer and winter storage. Forest Prod. J. 11: 371-379.
- Scheffer, T. C.
1969. Protecting stored logs and pulpwood in North America. Mater. und Organismen 4: 167-199.
- Schmidt, F. L.
1969. Observations on spontaneous heating toward combustion of commercial chip piles. TAPPI 52: 1700-1701.
- Shields, J. K.
1967. Microbiological deterioration in the wood chip pile. Can. Dep. Forest. and Rural Develop. Dep. Pub. 1191, 29 pp.
- Smith, R. S., and Hatton, J. V.
1971. Economic feasibility of chemical protection for outside chip storage. TAPPI 54: 1638-1640.
- Somsen, R. A.
1962. Outside storage of southern pine chips. TAPPI 45: 623-628.
- Springer, E. L., Eslyn, W. E., Zoch, L. L., and Hajny, G. J.
1969. Control of pulp chip deterioration with kraft green liquor. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-110, 4 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Springer, E. L., Eslyn, W. E., Zoch, L. L., and Hajny, G. J.
1970. Want a chemical to protect chip quality? Look in "backyard". Pulp and Pap. 44: 151-152.
- Springer, E. L., and Hajny, G. J.
1970. Spontaneous heating in piled wood chips. I. Initial mechanism. TAPPI 58: 85-86.
- Springer, E. L., Haslerud, E. J., Fries, D. M., Clark, I. T., Hajny, G. J., and Zoch, L. L.
1971. An evaluation of four chemicals for preserving wood chips stored outdoors. TAPPI 54: 555-560.
- Thornburg, W. L.
1963. Effect of roundwood or chip storage on tall oil and turpentine fractions of slash pine. TAPPI 46: 453-455.
- Vick, H.
1964. Storage of hardwood logs by the water spray system. Southern Lumberman 209(2609): 198, 200, 202.
- Volkman, D.
1966. Water spray storage of southern pine pulpwood. TAPPI 49(7): 48A-53A.



19

Machining

CONTENTS

	Page
19-1 HISTORICAL BACKGROUND	758
19-2 ORTHOGONAL CUTTING	759
DEFINITIONS	760
EFFECTS OF CUTTING VELOCITY	760
PARALLEL TO GRAIN: 90-0 DIRECTION	761
<i>Chip formation</i>	762
<i>Effects of knife angles</i>	765
<i>Effects of width and depth of cut</i>	768
<i>Effects of wood factors</i>	772
PERPENDICULAR TO GRAIN: 0-90 DIRECTION	775
<i>Chip formation</i>	775
<i>Cutting forces</i>	777
PERPENDICULAR TO GRAIN: 90-90	
DIRECTION	781
<i>Chip formation</i>	781
<i>Cutting forces</i>	783
FORCE COMPARISON FOR THREE CUTTING	
DIRECTIONS	791
OBLIQUE AND INCLINED CUTTING	793
19-3 SHEARING AND CLEAVING	797
SHEARING	797
CLEAVING	804
19-4 PERIPHERAL MILLING PARALLEL TO GRAIN ...	808
NOMENCLATURE	811
KINEMATICS	811
CHIP FORMATION	813
SURFACE QUALITY	814
FACTORS AFFECTING POWER	819
<i>Workpiece factors</i>	819
<i>Cutterhead factors</i>	819
<i>Feed factors</i>	823
DOWN MILLING	825

	Page
19-5 BARKING	827
DRUM BARKERS	829
RING BARKERS	830
POLE SHAVERS	830
OTHER METHODS	832
19-6 CONVERTING WITH CHIPPING HEADRIGS	832
POWER REQUIREMENT	835
COMMERCIAL DESIGNS	836
<i>Planing</i>	836
<i>End-milling</i>	838
<i>Shaping lathe</i>	840
PRODUCTIVITY	843
ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES	845
SAW-KERF PULP CHIPS	846
19-7 SAWING	847
BANDSAWING	849
<i>Swaged-tooth wide bandsaws for primary</i> <i>manufacture</i>	849
<i>Swaged-tooth band resaws for dry lumber</i>	858
<i>Spring-set narrow bandsaws</i>	859
SASH GANGSAWING	861
<i>Saw overhang</i>	862
<i>Oscillation</i>	862
<i>Capacity and characteristics of gangsaws</i>	862
<i>Advantages and disadvantages of gangsaws</i>	864
CIRCULAR SAWING	867
<i>Nomenclature</i>	867
<i>Kinematics and fundamentals</i>	867
<i>Insert-tooth ripsaws</i>	871
<i>Double-arbor gangsaws</i>	873
<i>Thin ripsaws</i>	874
<i>General-purpose swage-set ripsaws</i>	874
<i>Log cutoff saws</i>	874
<i>Cutoff saws for rough trimmers</i>	876
<i>Smooth-trim saws</i>	876
CHAINSAWING	880
19-8 PLANING AND MOULDING	882
PLANING	882
<i>Single surfacer</i>	882
<i>Double surfacer</i>	886
<i>Planer and matcher</i>	889

19-8 PLANING AND MOULDING—Continued

MOULDING	892
<i>Productive capacity</i>	892
<i>Machine types</i>	893
19-9 MACHINING WITH COATED ABRASIVES	894
GRIT SIZE	897
BELT PRESSURE AND VELOCITY	897
DEPTH OF CUT AND FEED SPEED	897
DIRECTION OF FEED	898
RUNNING TIME	898
WOOD FACTORS	898
POWER DATA	898
19-10 VENEER CUTTING	899
NOMENCLATURE	900
ROTARY PEELING	902
<i>Wood factors</i>	902
<i>Pretreatments</i>	903
<i>Knife factors</i>	903
<i>Nosebar</i>	904
<i>Cutting velocity</i>	907
<i>Commercial lathes</i>	907
SLICING	908
19-11 CHIPPING	910
CHIP DIMENSIONS	910
CHIP SHREDDING	911
CHIP FORMATION AND POWER REQUIRED ..	912
CHIPPER TYPES	915
<i>Cordwood chippers at pulp mills</i>	915
<i>Longwood chippers</i>	915
<i>Chipping headrigs</i>	917
<i>Residue chippers</i>	917
<i>Rechippers</i>	917
<i>Portable chippers</i>	917
19-12 BORING	918
BIT TYPES AND NOMENCLATURE	918
FUNDAMENTAL ASPECTS	919
BORING DIRECTION AND CHIP FORMATION ..	923
FACTORS AFFECTING TORQUE AND THRUST ..	926
<i>Boring along the grain</i>	927
<i>Boring across the grain</i>	929
HOLE QUALITY	932
BORING DEEP HOLES	932
19-13 MACHINING WITH HIGH-ENERGY JETS	936
19-14 MACHINING WITH LASERS	936
19-15 LITERATURE CITED	942

Machining

Since information on machining southern pine is available in forms requiring some understanding of basic woodworking processes, essential explanations are provided. Broader coverage of wood machining processes is available in Koch (1964b). In addition, a number of comprehensive literature reviews have been made (Forest Products Research Society 1959, 1960, 1961; Koch and McMillin 1966; Koch 1968b; McMillin 1970; Kollmann and Côté 1968, pp. 475-541). Historical reviews of the development of wood machining technology are also available (Mansfield 1952; Koch 1964b, pp. 3-6; Koch 1967b; Prokes 1966; Simons 1966; Thunell 1967; Wilkins 1966; Goodman 1964).

19-1 HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Earliest southern pine sawmills applied waterpower to straight reciprocating saws only slightly modified from the primitive hand-operated pit saw. After their introduction in the early 1800's, large circular saws increased in popularity and by 1860 were in wide use as **headsaws**, cutting logs into boards and timbers. Smaller, specialized circular saws were developed as **edgers** to remove bark and wane from lumber, as **trimmers** to square up ends, and as **slashers** to cut waste pieces into short lengths.

While double circular saws, cutting from above and below, were developed as headrigs for very large logs, these began to be supplanted by band-saws in the decades after 1870. By 1900 band headrigs, served by steam shotgun carriages, and supplemented by resaws to cut lumber from slabbed cants, and by edgers, trimmers, and fast lumber handling equipment, were featured in mills cutting up to 150 M b.f. per day.

Toward the end of the century demand for planed lumber stimulated development of practical planing machines. By 1907 most sawmills were equipped with single or double **surfacers**, planing one or both sides of a board simultaneously, and **matchers** to cut matching patterns in board edges, or combinations handling both functions. More specialized plants might also have **jointers** to plane precisely squared pieces for edge-gluing, or **moulders** which cut patterns in edges or surfaces of lumber. Versatility and efficiency of these machines improved in the early 1900's with the introduction of ball bearings, electric motors, and thin, high-speed steel knives in round, instead of square cutterheads.

The chainsaw, first introduced to North America in about 1915, was much improved in the late 1930's and has since gained almost complete acceptance for felling and bucking trees. It is probable that hydraulic shears, which have been in limited operation in the woods since 1960, will find increasing use—and to some extent—will perform harvesting work presently done with chainsaws.

Increasing consumption of pulp and paper, and hence increased need for bark-free wood, brought important developments in bark removal equipment during the 20 years from 1935 to 1955. Drum barkers developed for cordwood were not applicable to saw logs, so hydraulic and mechanical machines were invented to strip bark from sawmill slabs and whole logs.

The rotating-ring mechanical barker was invented in about 1950. It has proven to be a wood machining innovation of primary importance because it has vastly increased the supply (in the form of sawmill slabs and veneer mill clippings) of bark-free chippable wood available to the pulp industry.

By 1963, techniques for peeling and gluing southern pine veneer had been established, and the manufacture of southern pine plywood has since become a major industry.

The multiple-wide-belt sander that appeared in the United States after 1955 is now widely used to size and smooth southern pine particleboard and plywood.

The years from 1963 to 1966 have seen the invention of chipping headrigs for small logs. These new headrigs convert a log into a cant without forming either sawdust or slabs. In 1966 a tape-controlled routing and shaping machine was introduced, a development signalling the imminent application of computers to control various wood machining processes.

Prior to 1945 most advances in wood machining were the result of industrial trial and error; however, reviews of wood machining research published in recent years reflect results gained from formal laboratory research. It is expected that this new approach will accelerate change in the techniques of wood machining.

19-2 ORTHOGONAL CUTTING¹

Wood is machined by removing chips that range in size from sanderdust to pulp chips or larger. There are two basic machining processes. In the first, known as **orthogonal cutting**, the cutting edge is perpendicular to the direction of the relative motion of tool and workpiece; the surface generated is a plane parallel to the original work surface. A carpenter's hand plane cuts orthogonally, as does a bandsaw. Rotary peeling of veneer approximates orthogonal cutting.

The second is a rotary-cutting process (**peripheral milling**) in which

¹ In sec. 19-2, the illustrations and cutting-force data specific to southern pine are all taken from Woodson and Koch (1970).

single chips are formed and removed by the intermittent engagement of knives carried on the periphery of a rotating cutterhead or saw. A rotary planer machines wood by the peripheral milling process.

To separate a chip from the workpiece during any wood machining process, it is first necessary to cause a structural failure at the juncture of chip and workpiece. Since the strength of wood varies with grain direction, chip configuration, cutting power, and surface quality are all strongly affected by the direction of cut (fig. 19-1), as well as the knife geometry.

A two-number notation used by McKenzie (1961) is useful in describing the orthogonal machining situation. With this system the first figure given is the angle the cutting edge makes with the grain of the wood; the second figure is the angle between direction of tool motion and grain (fig. 19-1).

DEFINITIONS

Figure 19-2 illustrates standard nomenclature of wood machining terms applicable to orthogonal cutting.

EFFECTS OF CUTTING VELOCITY

In the experimental data that follow in this chapter, cutting velocity is always stated because the effect of cutting velocity on cutting forces is not well established. Endersby (1965), when cutting in a near-orthogonal mode, found that in the range from 1,000 to 9,000 feet per minute (f.p.m.), cutting velocity had little effect on cutting forces; however, when velocity was reduced from 1,000 to 7 f.p.m., cutting force increased about $2\frac{1}{2}$ times.

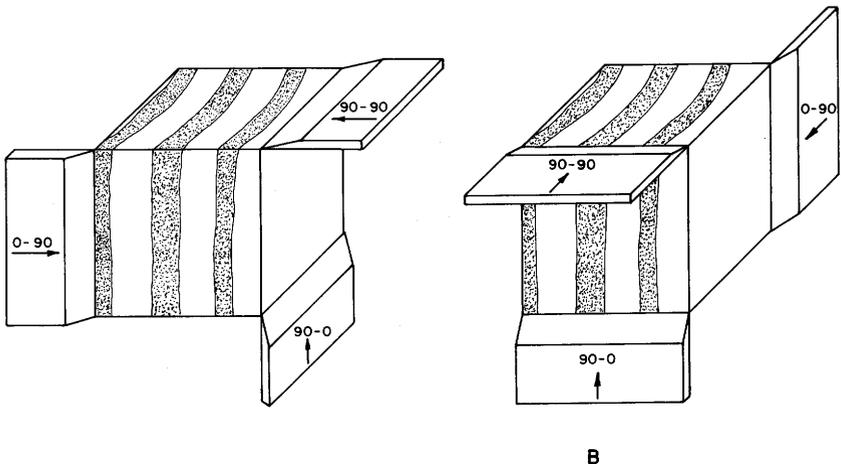


Figure 19-1.—Designation of the three major machining directions. The first number is the angle the cutting edge makes with the grain; the second is the angle between cutter movement and grain.

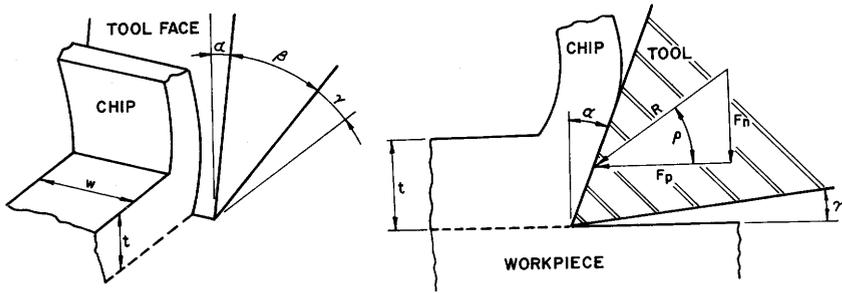


Figure 19-2.—Nomenclature in orthogonal cutting.

- α Rake angle: angle between the tool face and a plane perpendicular to the direction of tool travel.
- β Sharpness angle: angle between the tool face and back.
- γ Clearance angle: angle between the back of the tool and the work surface behind the tool.
- t Thickness of chip before removal from the workpiece.
- w Width of undeformed chip.
- F_n Normal tool force: force component acting perpendicular to parallel tool force and perpendicular to the surface generated.
- F_p Parallel tool force: force component acting parallel to tool motion relative to workpiece, i.e., parallel to cut surface.
- R Resultant tool force: the resultant of normal and parallel tool force components.
- ρ Angle of tool force resultant: the angle whose tangent is equal to the normal tool force divided by the parallel tool force.

Factors that may alter the cutting resistance of wood as cutting velocity is increased include the following:

- More force is required to accelerate the chip at high cutting velocity than at low.
- Strength of wood increases with increasing rate of deformation.
- Strength of wood decreases as temperature increases; there may be localized changes in workpiece temperature near the juncture of chip and workpiece.
- The coefficient of friction between tool and chip may change as cutting velocity is varied.
- When cutting wet wood, hydraulic action of water in proximity to the knife may alter cutting forces as velocity is changed.

It may be that in most situations these several factors are mutually counteracting so that the net effect of changing cutting velocity is minor.

As a final comment, high cutting velocity may sometimes assist in accomplishing clean severance of fibers because of chip inertia. This effect can be observed when cutting grass with a scythe or rotary power motor.

PARALLEL TO GRAIN: 90-0 DIRECTION

General discussions of orthogonal cutting parallel to the grain are available (Franz 1958; Koch 1964b, pp. 35-87). This text will be restricted to data specific to southern pine. Because the earlywood and latewood of

southern pine are so different, the information presented here is organized to show cutting forces and chip types separately for earlywood and latewood.

Chip formation.—As described by Koch (1955, p. 261; 1956, p. 397) and enumerated by Franz (1958), three basic chip types (figs. 19-3, 19-5, and 19-6) may result when southern pine is machined parallel to the grain in the 90-0 mode. Type I chips are broken splinters formed by cleavage along the grain; Type II chips fail in shear and tend to form continuous spirals; Type III chips are severely compressed parallel to the grain and are more or less formless. Type II chips leave the best surface.

Type I chips are formed when cutting conditions are such that the wood splits ahead of the tool by cleavage until it fails in bending as a cantilever beam, as illustrated by dry wood in figure 19-3A. Type I chips from saturated specimens of both earlywood and latewood sometimes peel off in segmented spirals without breaking abruptly (fig. 19-3B). Factors leading to formation of Type I chips are:

- Low resistance in cleavage combined with high stiffness and strength in bending.
- Deep cuts (Type I chips can form with any depth of cut, depending on the other factors).
- Large rake angles (25° and more).
- Low coefficient of friction between chip and tool face.
- Low moisture content in the wood.

The Type I chip leaves a surface that exhibits **chipped grain**, i.e., the split ahead of the cutting edge frequently runs below the plane generated by the path of the cutting edge. The amount of roughness depends upon the depth to which the cleavage runs into the wood. Power consumed by a knife forming Type I chips is low because wood fails relatively easily in tension perpendicular to the grain, and the knife severs few fibers. Because it is seldom cutting, the knife edge dulls slowly.

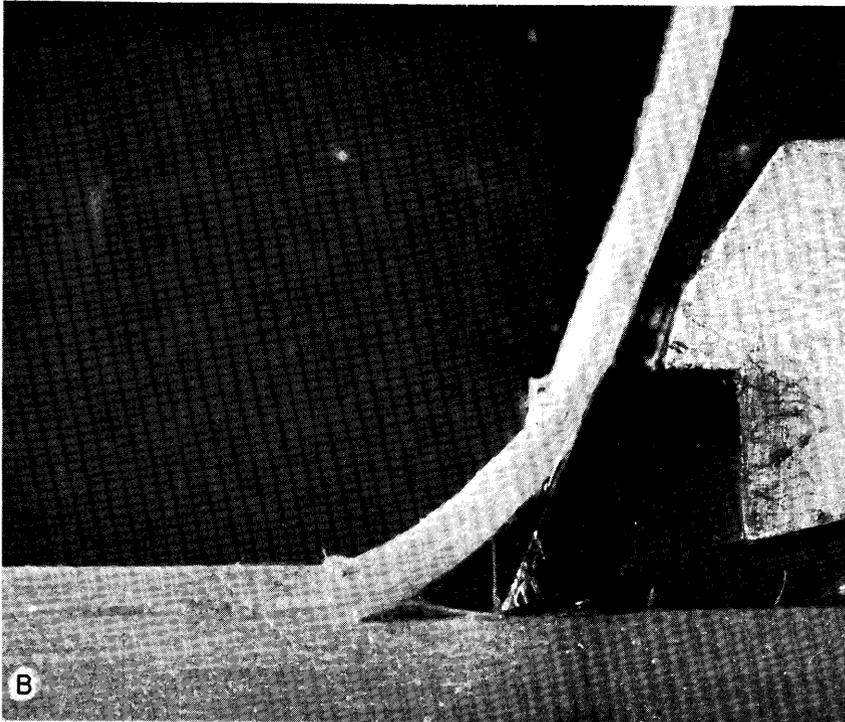
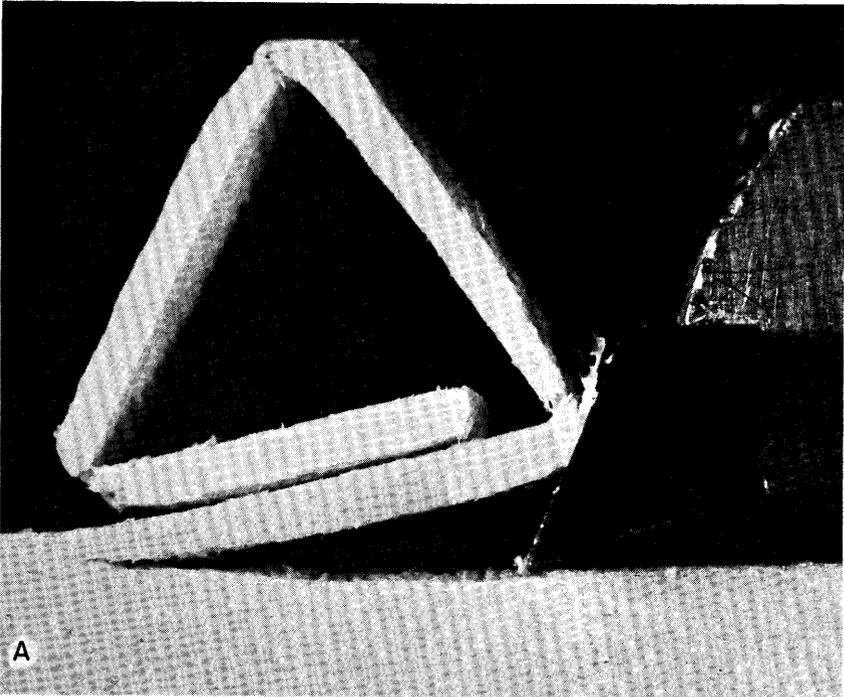
Rake angles of 25° and 35° tend to cause Type I chips because the normal cutting force (F_n) is negative at all depths of cut for all moisture contents (fig. 19-4).

Type II chips occur under certain limited conditions which induce continuous wood failures extending from the cutting edge to the work surface ahead of the tool (fig. 19-5). The movement of the tool strains the wood ahead of the tool in compression parallel to the grain and causes diagonal shearing stresses; as the wood fails it forms a continuous, smooth spiral chip. The radius of the spiral increases as chip thickness increases. Quite frequently latewood chips display laminae or layers. The resultant surface

➔

Figure 19-3.—Franz Type I chips from 0.045-inch cuts in 90-0 direction, 25° rake angle. (A) In loblolly pine earlywood at 7-percent moisture content. (B) In saturated loblolly pine latewood. Type I chips form less frequently in saturated than in dry wood. (Photos from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

F-520976



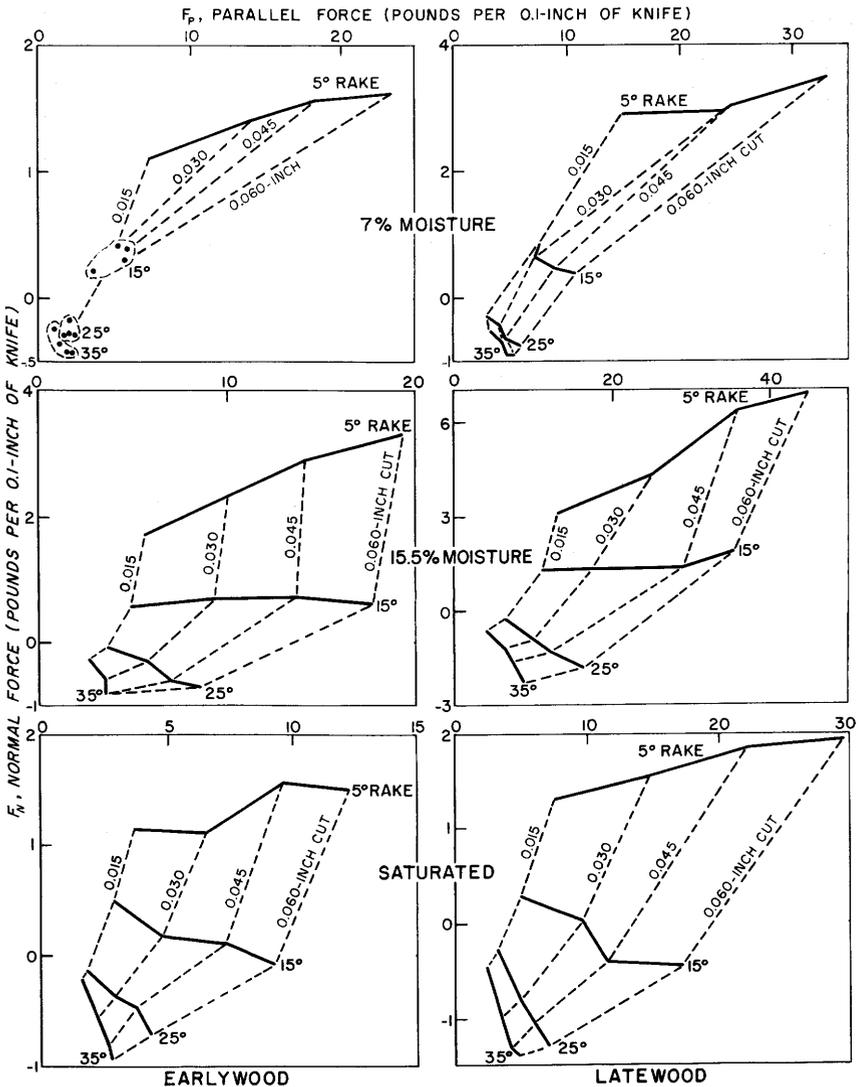
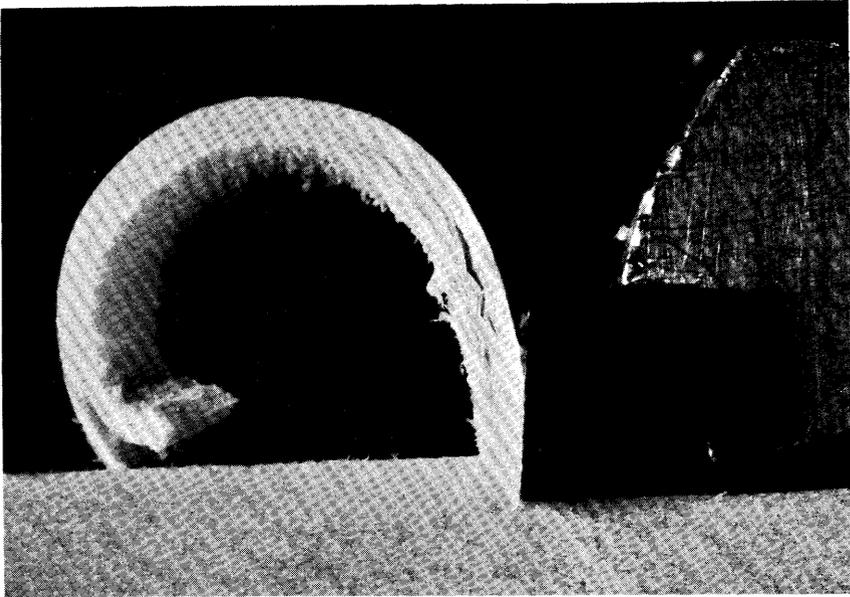


Figure 19-4.—Effect of depth of cut, rake angle, and moisture content on average cutting forces for earlywood and latewood of southern pine; 90-0 mode, orthogonal, 15° clearance angle, 2 inches per minute cutting velocity, wood at room temperature. (Drawing after Woodson and Koch 1970.)

is excellent. Thin chips, intermediate to high moisture content, and 5 to 10° rake angles favor formation of the Type II chip in excised earlywood or latewood. The cutting edge is in intimate contact with the wood at all times, and dulling may be rapid. Power demand is intermediate between that for Type I and Type III chips.

Type III chips tend to form in cycles. Wood ahead of the tool is stressed



F-520977

Figure 19-5.—Franz Type II chip from an 0.045-inch cut (90-0 direction) in loblolly pine latewood at 7-percent moisture content; 5° rake angle. (Photo from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

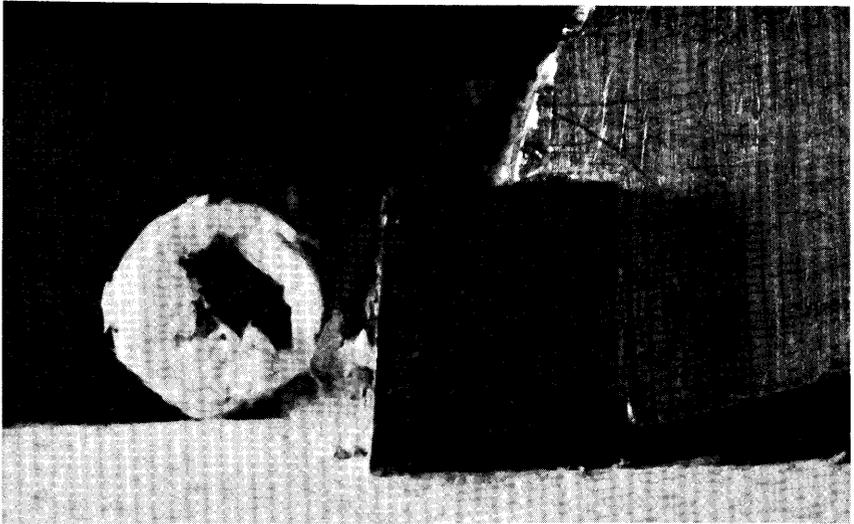
in compression parallel to the grain and ruptures in shear parallel to the grain and compression parallel to the grain. The chip does not escape freely up the tool, and the deformed wood is compacted against the tool face (fig. 19-6). Stresses are then transferred to undeformed areas that fail in turn. When the accumulation of compressed material becomes critical, the chip buckles and escapes upward, and the cycle begins again. Factors favorable to the formation of Type III chips include:

- Small or negative rake angles.
- Dull cutting edges (the rounded edge presents a negative rake angle at tool edge extremity).
- High coefficient of friction between chip and tool face.

Wood failures ahead of the tool establish the surface, frequently extending below the plane of the cut or leaving incompletely severed wood elements prominent on the surface. This machining defect is termed **fuzzy grain**. Power consumption is high, and dulling may be rapid.

Occurrence of the three chip types during orthogonal cutting of loblolly pine earlywood and latewood is summarized in table 19-1.

Effects of knife angles.—The angle between the tool face and a plane perpendicular to the direction of tool travel (**rake angle**) strongly affects tool forces as well as chip type and smoothness of cut; forces are negatively correlated with rake angle (fig. 19-7A and tables 19-2 through 19-6). Figure 19-4 shows the effect of rake angle of three moisture contents.



F-520978

Figure 19-6.—Franz type III chip from an 0.045-inch cut (90-0 direction) in loblolly pine earlywood at 7-percent moisture content; 5° rake angle. (Photo from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

TABLE 19-1.—Chip types when loblolly pine wood is cut in the parallel-to-grain (90-0) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)¹

Moisture content and rake angle (degrees)	Chip type ²	
	In earlywood	In latewood
Saturated		
5.....	II(III)	II
15.....	II(III)	I(II)
25.....	I(II)	I
35.....	I	I
15.5 percent		
5.....	III(II)	II(III)
15.....	II(III)	II
25.....	I(II)	I(II)
35.....	I	I
7.0 percent		
5.....	III(I)	II(I)
15.....	I(III)	I
25.....	I	I
35.....	I	I

¹ Depths of cut ranged from 0.015 to 0.060 inch; cutting velocity was 2 inches per minute; clearance angle 15°.

² The first number in each entry is major chip type as classified by Franz (1958); a second number in parentheses indicates that a combination of chip types was observed.

TABLE 19-2.—Average tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine wood is cut in the parallel-to-grain (90-0) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)

Factor ¹	Parallel force	Normal force ²
	----- Pounds -----	
Cell type		
Earlywood.....	6.5	0.3
Latewood.....	12.5	.5
Moisture content, percent		
7 percent.....	8.3	.4
15.5 percent.....	12.9	.8
Saturated.....	7.3	.0
Depth of cut, inch		
0.015.....	5.2	.5
.030.....	8.3	.4
.045.....	10.8	.4
.060.....	13.7	.4
Rake angle, degrees		
5.....	18.0	2.6
15.....	10.9	.5
25.....	5.4	-.6
35.....	3.7	-.7

¹ Clearance angle constant at 15°.

² A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the workpiece away.

The angle between the tool face and back (**sharpness angle**) strongly affects the rate at which the cutting edge dulls. Minute fracturing of a freshly sharpened and honed knife edge occurs as the very first few chips are cut and continues until equilibrium is reached between the cutting edge—which grows thicker and more rigid as dulling proceeds—and the cutting forces; from this time, wear proceeds at a slower rate. Effective rake angle is decreased as wear proceeds (fig. 19-8); cutting forces rise, and chip formation is altered.

In one of the few studies of cutting-edge sharpness specific to southern pine, Bridges (1971) found that rate of dulling was positively correlated with specific gravity, resin content, and silica (grit) content in southern pine particleboard.

The angle between the back of the tool and the work surface behind the tool, i.e., **clearance angle**, does not have a critical effect on cutting force or chip formation; 15° is usual. As it is reduced below 15°, tool forces rise moderately. Dulling of the tool reduces the effective clearance angle, which may in fact become negative; a negative clearance angle increases the cutting forces exerted by the knife and usually adversely affects surface quality

TABLE 19-3.—*Parallel tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine latewood is cut in the parallel-to-grain (90-0) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2}*

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	5	15	25	35
	----- Pounds -----			
0.015 inch				
7.....	14.4(26.6)	7.6(22.5)	3.0(16.7)	3.3(11.3)
15.5.....	13.0(17.1)	11.1(15.7)	6.3(11.0)	4.0(6.4)
Saturated.....	7.4(11.1)	5.0(7.8)	3.0(5.3)	2.4(3.7)
0.030 inch				
7.....	23.9(49.2)	7.1(39.9)	4.1(22.3)	4.4(15.7)
15.5.....	25.0(32.7)	17.5(28.7)	9.9(16.9)	6.4(10.3)
Saturated.....	14.8(19.2)	9.6(13.9)	5.0(8.1)	3.5(6.5)
0.045 inch				
7.....	24.4(62.4)	8.8(46.0)	4.5(31.6)	4.8(16.6)
15.5.....	36.1(46.0)	28.8(38.0)	11.8(26.2)	7.1(12.9)
Saturated.....	22.3(28.0)	11.5(19.5)	5.9(10.7)	4.2(7.8)
0.060 inch				
7.....	33.2(87.3)	10.3(52.6)	6.0(31.0)	5.2(21.6)
15.5.....	44.8(57.6)	35.5(51.8)	16.3(34.9)	9.2(15.3)
Saturated.....	29.6(35.8)	17.3(27.9)	7.1(14.5)	4.7(7.9)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the number in parentheses is the average of the maximum forces observed; both are based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

by causing **raised grain**—a roughened condition in which dense latewood, after being depressed by the dull knife, swells subsequent to planing so that it is raised above the less dense (and therefore less swollen) earlywood. At the other extreme, if the clearance angle is made very large and rake angle is kept constant, then the cutting edge becomes thin, and resulting rapid dulling causes increased cutting forces. In the cutting force data presented in this section (19-2), the clearance angle is 15° unless otherwise stated.

Effects of width and depth of cut.—If the tool is wider than the work-piece, the cutting forces are directly proportional to width of cut; if width of cut is doubled, cutting forces are doubled.

In orthogonal cutting, depth of cut is synonymous with thickness of the undeformed chip. As Lubkin (1957) and others have observed, in a given cutting situation two types of parallel-force curves may develop with changing chip thickness. When chips are very thin, the parallel force varies according to a power curve, and F_p becomes zero at zero chip thickness.

$$F_p = Kt^m w \quad (19-1)$$

where:

F_p = parallel tool force

K = a constant

t = chip thickness

m = a constant between 1 and 0 (generally observed to be from 0.25 to 0.67)

w = width of chip

Beyond the region of very thin chips it is possible, with suitably chosen constants A and B, to approximate considerable portions of this curve with a straight-line function of t :

$$F_p = (A + Bt)w \quad (19-2)$$

In some situations the experimentally determined parallel cutting force defined by equation 19-1 holds for the entire practical range of chip thicknesses. In other situations, however, the curve straightens beyond a certain chip thickness and continues linearly as described by equation 19-2.

If the data on parallel cutting force (tables 19-3 and 19-4) are averaged for both earlywood and latewood over all moisture contents and all rake angles, the cutting force-chip thickness relationship can be approximated by straight lines (fig. 19-7B). Figure 19-4 shows in more detail how cutting forces are related to chip thickness.

TABLE 19-4.—Parallel tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine earlywood is cut in the parallel-to-grain (90-0) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	5	15	25	35
----- Pounds -----				
0.015 inch				
7.....	7.3(10.6)	5.8(9.2)	2.0(6.2)	1.3(5.2)
15.5.....	5.5(7.4)	4.9(6.2)	3.7(5.3)	2.5(3.5)
Saturated.....	3.8(5.2)	2.9(4.0)	2.0(3.0)	1.6(2.4)
0.030 inch				
7.....	14.2(18.8)	5.9(16.5)	1.8(9.8)	1.8(7.3)
15.5.....	10.0(12.6)	9.3(11.1)	5.7(8.4)	3.5(5.8)
Saturated.....	6.6(8.7)	5.0(6.3)	2.9(4.5)	2.2(3.8)
0.045 inch				
7.....	18.5(25.8)	3.7(20.6)	2.0(10.9)	2.2(9.1)
15.5.....	14.0(16.9)	13.6(15.7)	6.9(11.9)	3.6(8.5)
Saturated.....	9.7(11.9)	7.4(9.5)	3.8(5.7)	2.6(4.3)
0.060 inch				
7.....	23.4(33.9)	5.2(25.7)	2.2(13.4)	1.9(10.9)
15.5.....	18.3(22.7)	17.5(20.2)	8.5(14.5)	3.6(10.7)
Saturated.....	12.4(14.5)	9.3(11.5)	4.3(7.1)	2.9(5.3)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the number following in parentheses is the average of the maximum forces observed; both are based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

TABLE 19-5.—Normal tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine latewood is cut in the parallel-to-grain (90-0) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2 3}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	5	15	25	35
	----- Pounds -----			
0.015 inch				
7-----	2.8 (0.4 to 5.6)	0.8 (-0.3 to 2.5)	-0.3 (-1.8 to 0.5)	-0.5 (-2.5 to 0.4)
15.5-----	3.1 (1.6 to 4.5)	1.3 (-.4 to 2.6)	-.3 (-1.0 to .5)	-.6 (-1.3 to -.1)
Saturated-----	1.3 (.5 to 2.5)	.3 (-.4 to 1.1)	-.3 (-.8 to .4)	-.4 (-1.0 to .2)
0.030 inch				
7-----	2.9 (.4 to 6.1)	.7 (-1.1 to 2.7)	-.4 (-3.2 to .7)	-.7 (-3.9 to .4)
15.5-----	4.6 (2.6 to 7.7)	1.4 (-.2 to 3.0)	-.9 (-2.3 to .1)	-1.2 (-2.2 to -.2)
Saturated-----	1.6 (.6 to 2.9)	.0 (-1.0 to 1.1)	-.8 (-1.7 to .0)	-1.0 (-2.0 to .1)
0.045 inch				
7-----	3.0 (.6 to 7.7)	.4 (-1.8 to 2.5)	-.6 (-4.7 to .7)	-.9 (-4.3 to .5)
15.5-----	6.7 (4.7 to 9.6)	1.4 (-.7 to 3.1)	-1.3 (-3.2 to .0)	-1.5 (-3.1 to -.3)
Saturated-----	1.8 (.8 to 3.4)	-.4 (-1.8 to .5)	-1.0 (-2.2 to .0)	-1.3 (-2.8 to .0)
0.060 inch				
7-----	3.4 (.5 to 9.1)	.4 (-2.0 to 2.3)	-.8 (-5.6 to .6)	-.9 (-5.9 to .4)
15.5-----	7.0 (3.8 to 11.1)	1.7 (-.7 to 4.1)	-1.8 (-4.4 to .0)	-2.4 (-4.1 to -.6)
Saturated-----	2.0 (.6 to 3.7)	-.4 (-1.7 to .7)	-1.3 (-3.2 to -.1)	-1.4 (-3.1 to .1)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average normal cutting force; the numbers in parentheses are minimum and maximum forces; each number is based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

³ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the workpiece away.

TABLE 19-6.—Normal tool force per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine earlywood is cut in the parallel-to-grain (90-0) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2 3}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	5	15	25	35
	----- Pounds -----			
0.015 inch				
7-----	1.1 (0.4 to 1.9)	0.3 (-0.1 to 0.9)	-0.2 (-0.9 to 0.4)	-0.2 (-1.3 to 0.2)
15.5-----	1.7 (.7 to 2.7)	.6 (.1 to 1.4)	.0 (-.4 to .3)	-.3 (-.7 to .0)
Saturated-----	1.2 (.5 to 2.1)	.5 (.1 to 1.0)	-.1 (-.4 to .3)	-.2 (-.5 to .2)
0.030 inch				
7-----	1.4 (.3 to 2.6)	.4 (-.6 to 1.1)	-.3 (-1.7 to .4)	-.3 (-2.3 to .2)
15.5-----	2.3 (1.1 to 4.1)	.7 (.3 to 1.3)	-.3 (-1.0 to .3)	-.6 (-1.5 to .0)
Saturated-----	1.1 (.7 to 2.2)	.2 (-.1 to .7)	-.4 (-.7 to .0)	-.6 (-1.1 to -.1)
0.045 inch				
7-----	1.6 (.4 to 3.0)	.2 (-1.2 to 1.2)	-.3 (-2.2 to .4)	-.4 (-3.1 to .2)
15.5-----	2.9 (1.8 to 4.6)	.6 (.1 to 1.3)	-.6 (-1.7 to .2)	-.8 (-2.3 to .1)
Saturated-----	1.6 (1.0 to 2.9)	.1 (-.3 to .6)	-.5 (-1.0 to .1)	-.8 (-1.5 to -.2)
0.060 inch				
7-----	1.6 (.4 to 3.5)	.4 (-1.6 to 1.4)	-.3 (-2.9 to .3)	-.4 (-3.6 to .3)
15.5-----	3.3 (1.8 to 5.1)	.6 (.0 to 1.5)	-.7 (-2.4 to .2)	-.8 (-2.9 to .2)
Saturated-----	1.5 (.9 to 2.2)	-.1 (-.5 to .7)	-.7 (-1.5 to .1)	-.9 (-2.0 to .1)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average normal cutting force; the numbers in parentheses are minimum and maximum forces; each number is based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

³ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the wood away.

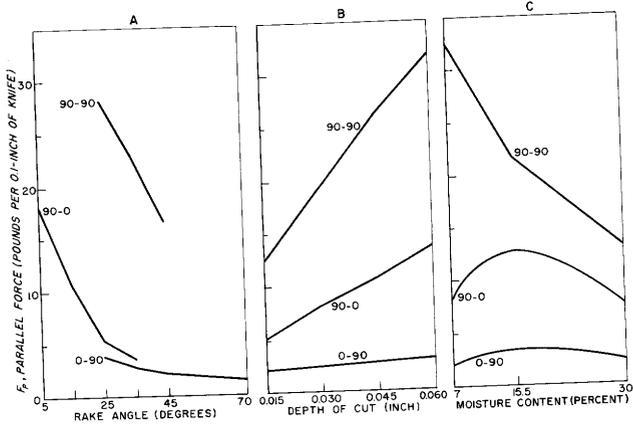


Figure 19-7.—Effect of moisture content of southern pine, rake angle, and depth of cut on average parallel cutting force for three modes of cutting. For these curves, data were pooled for both earlywood and latewood, at three moisture contents, four depths of cut, and at rake angles relevant to cutting direction. (Drawing after Woodson and Koch 1970.)

Effects of wood factors.—Specimens were cut on the radial face (fig. 19-1B, 90-0 direction) to develop the data here presented on orthogonal cutting parallel to the grain. It was observed that most Type I chips failed in the rays. Had the specimens been machined on the tangential face (fig. 19-1A), fewer Type I failures might have developed at the 25° rake angle. Orthogonal cutting data for edge-grain compared to flat-grain southern pine have not been published.

Cutting force is positively correlated with wood specific gravity. Data from Woodson and Koch (1970)—when averaged over all rake angles, all depths of cut, and all moisture contents—showed that latewood required much more cutting force per 0.1 inch of knife than earlywood, which is less dense.

Cell type	Specific gravity (ovendry volume and weight)	F_p	
		F_p	F_n
		--- Pounds ---	
Latewood.....	0.85	12.5	0.5
Earlywood.....	.34	6.5	.3

Woodson and Koch (1970) also found that maximum parallel cutting force per 0.1 inch of knife was inversely proportional to moisture content when averaged over all rake angles, all depths of cut, and both cell types.

Moisture content	Maximum F_p
Percent	Pounds
7.....	24.6
15.5.....	18.8
Saturated.....	10.5

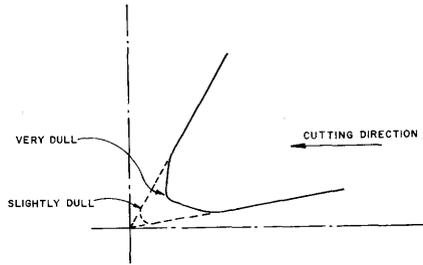


Figure 19-8.—Profile of a cutting edge as dulling proceeds. (Drawing after McKenzie and Cowling 1971.)

At low moisture contents, however, average parallel cutting force in the 90-0 mode is often positively correlated with moisture content (fig. 19-7C, tables 19-3 and 19-4). When dry wood is cut, the forming chip fails as a cantilever beam, and there are intervals when no force is required; hence the average is low even though the maximum force is high.

Kivimaa (1950), working with Finnish birch (*Betula* spp.), found that force required for cutting parallel to the grain, as well as for the other modes, decreases as wood temperature increases (fig. 19-9). It is probable that workpiece temperature interacts strongly with moisture content, chip thickness, and rake angle to affect chip formation and cutting forces. Wood is weakened by heat; steamed wood is softened more than wood subjected to dry heat. The plasticity of steamed wood is due mainly to softening of the middle lamella. Even at temperatures somewhat below 100° C., wood may be somewhat plastic; when wood has cooled completely, however, the original strong bond between the cell walls is nearly restored (Necessary 1965).

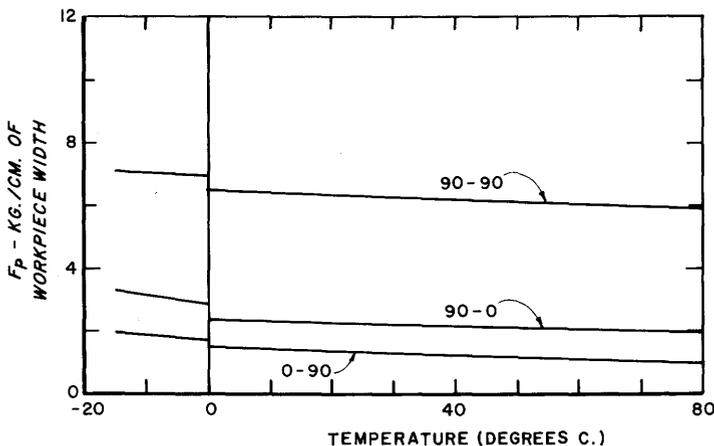


Figure 19-9.—Effect of temperature on parallel tool force. See figure 19-1 for explanation of cutting directions. Species, Finnish birch; chip thickness, 0.1 mm.; moisture content approximately 80 percent; rake angle, 35°; clearance angle, 10°. (Drawing after Kivimaa 1950.)

The mechanical properties of the wood being cut strongly influence the type of chip formed and the cutting forces. For example, Type I chips tend to form from wood that has low resistance to cleavage and high strength in bending. Strong southern pine latewood obviously requires more force to machine than weak earlywood. A summary of quantitative analyses by Franz (1958) and McKenzie (1961) of the effect of wood mechanical properties on chip formation can be found in Koch (1964b, pp. 79, 101).

A high coefficient of friction between workpiece and tool face is conducive to formation of a Type III chip; conversely, a low coefficient tends to promote Type I chips. Section 9-3 describes the frictional properties of southern pine wood sliding over a ground steel surface.

Woodson and Koch (1970) summarized the effect of the principal factors in 90-0 cutting; their earlywood and latewood data were pooled and multiple regression equations were developed to relate depth of cut (inch), rake angle (degrees), moisture content (decimal fraction of oven-dry weight), and specific gravity (oven-dry volume and weight) to average parallel (F_p) and normal (F_n) cutting forces (pounds) per 0.1-inch width of specimen.

When loblolly pine is cut parallel to the grain (90-0 mode):

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_p = & -6.996 \\
 & +2,178.193 \left[\frac{(\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut})}{\sqrt{\text{rake angle}}} \right] \\
 & -274.182 (\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut}) \\
 & -409.777 (\text{moisture content})^2 \\
 & +147.362 (\text{moisture content})
 \end{aligned} \tag{19-3}$$

Within the limits of their experiment, equation 19-3 accounted for 75 percent of the variation with a standard error of the estimate of 4.7 pounds.

When loblolly pine is cut parallel to the grain (90-0 mode):

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_n = & -0.659 \\
 & -6.610 (\text{moisture content})^2 \\
 & +4.751 \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\text{rake angle}}} \right] \\
 & -87.518 (\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut}) \\
 & +336.975 \left[\frac{(\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut})}{\sqrt{\text{rake angle}}} \right]
 \end{aligned} \tag{19-4}$$

Equation 19-4 accounted for 71 percent of the variation with a standard error of the estimate of 0.93 pound.

PERPENDICULAR TO THE GRAIN: 0-90 DIRECTION

To study cutting forces required for earlywood and latewood of loblolly pine, Woodson and Koch (1970) orthogonally cut room-temperature wood in the veneer peeling, or 0-90 mode. Their tests differed from commercial veneer peeling because the wood was cut at low temperature (unsteamed) and no restraint was applied above the knife (see sec. 19-10). This subsection is based primarily on the Woodson-Koch data.

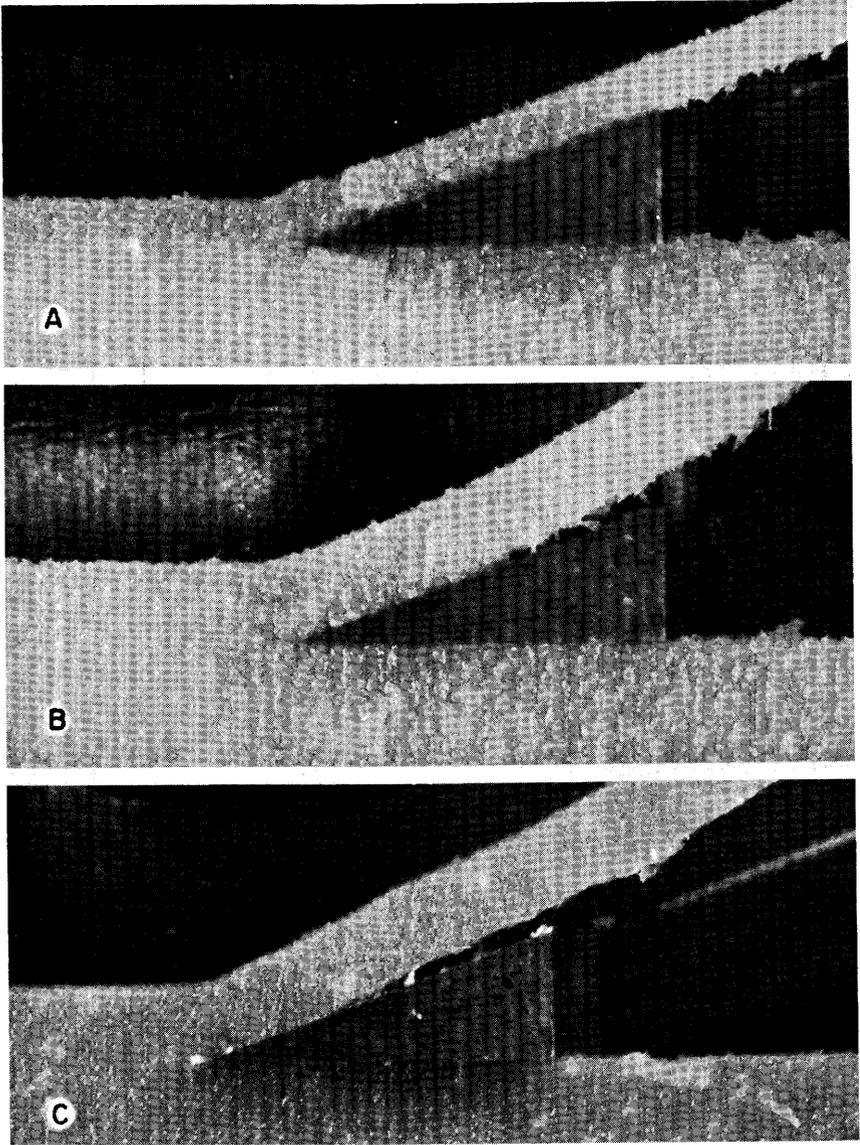
Chip formation.—Under favorable conditions, chips formed by cutting in the 0-90 mode emerge as **continuous veneer**, defined by Leney (1960) as unbroken sheet in which the original wood structure is essentially unchanged by the cutting process. With a suitably sharp knife and a thin cut, continuous veneer with relatively smooth unbroken surfaces on both sides can be cut (fig. 19-10).

For 0-90 cutting, McMillin (1958) has accounted for the formation of veneer of various types in terms of the mechanical properties of the wood.

Following initial incision, the cells above the cutting edge must move upward along the face of the knife. Being restrained by the wood above them they are compressed, developing a force normal to the knife face, together with a frictional force along the face of the knife. As the cut proceeds, the forces reach a maximum when the veneer begins to bend as a cantilever beam. This bending deformation creates a zone of maximum tension above the cutting edge and causes compression near the top surface of the forming veneer.

As depth of cut is increased, rake angle decreased, or cutting edge dulled, critical zones of stress develop as depicted in figure 19-11. In Zone 1 maximum tension due to bending develops close to the cutting edge and at right angles to the long axis of the zone as drawn; failure occurs as a **tension check**. In Zone 2 the frictional force along the face of the knife may cause a more or less horizontal shear plane to develop between the compressed cells at the knife-chip interface and the resisting wood above them. In Zone 3 the cutting edge deflects the wood elements into a slight bulge preceding the edge, and the somewhat compacted cell walls may fail in tension either above or below the cutting plane (**compression tearing**).

Woodson and Koch (1970) found that compression tearing was prominent in earlywood cut with rake angles in the range from 25 to 70°. The degree of tearing ranged from moderate (fig. 19-12A) to severe (fig. 19-12C); in the latter case, the earlywood was torn away from the underlying latewood band. With rake angles of 45° and lower, latewood failed as a cantilever beam at all moisture contents (fig. 19-13). The knife with 70° rake and 0° clearance cut continuous veneer from saturated latewood with only an occasional failure as a cantilever beam (fig. 19-10C). With all knives (rake angles 25, 35, 45, and 70°), both earlywood and latewood developed deep tension checks when cut at 7-percent moisture content (figs. 19-13, 19-14). From these photographs it is evident that veneer



F-520979

Figure 19-10.—Continuous veneer cut from saturated loblolly pine in 0-90 mode; 70° rake angle, 20° sharpness angle; zero clearance angle. (A) Earlywood; 0.030-inch cut. (B) Earlywood; 0.060-inch cut. (C) Latewood; 0.060-inch cut. (Photos from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

cut in the 0-90 mode has a **loose** side containing numerous tension checks, and a **tight** side with few checks.

The knife with 70° rake angle cut the best veneer; saturated wood yielded the highest proportion of continuous veneer, although there was some compression tearing in earlywood. Generally, tension checks occurred

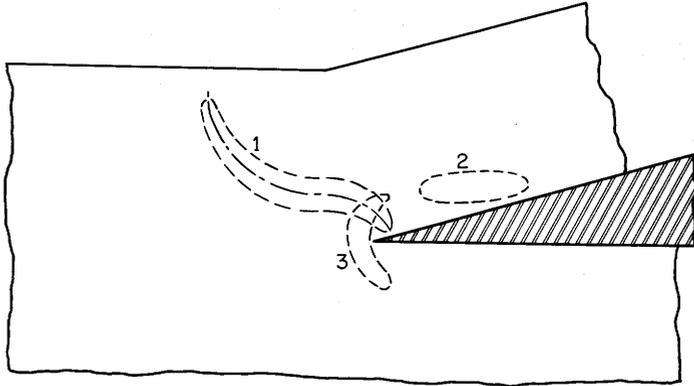


Figure 19-11.—Critical zones of stress in veneer cut without a nosebar. 1, tension; 2, shear; 3, compression tearing.

when veneer was cut from wood dried to 15.5 or 7 percent. When studying figures 19-10, 12, 13, and 14, it should be remembered that the specimens were very narrow (about 0.1 inch) and that chip formation in wide specimens of mixed earlywood and latewood might develop somewhat differently (Woodson and Koch 1970). For a discussion of commercial practice in peeling veneer with a nosebar from heated logs see section 19-10.

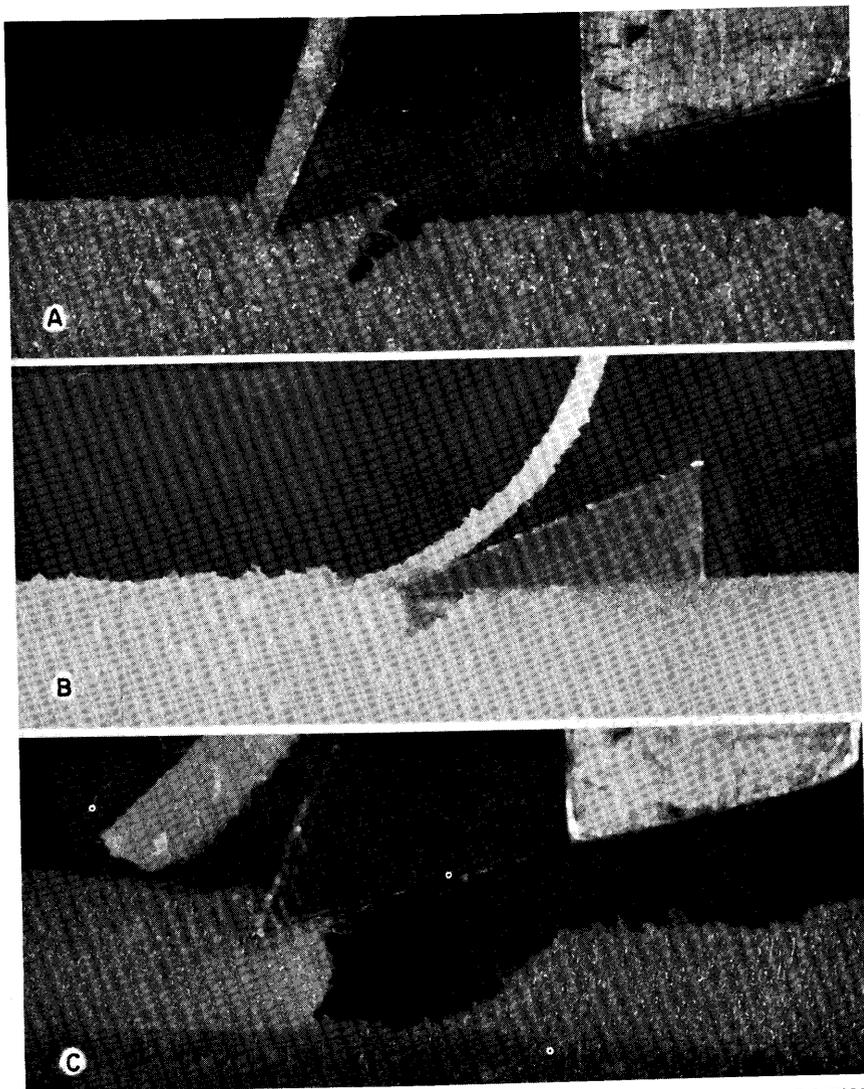
Cutting forces.—Cutting forces are strongly affected by cell type, moisture content, depth of cut, and rake angle (table 19-7).

Woodson and Koch (1970) found that moisture content of loblolly pine cut in the 0-90 mode was negatively correlated with maximum parallel cutting force per 0.1 inch of width (but not with maximum normal force) when averaged over all rake angles, all depths of cut, and both cell types.

<u>Moisture content</u>	<u>Maximum F_p</u>
<i>Percent</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
7	9.8
15.5	8.2
Saturated	4.7

Average parallel cutting force, however, was highest at an intermediate moisture content (fig. 19-7C, 0-90). Figure 19-15 and tables 19-8 and 19-9 afford more details. When veneer is cut from dry wood, the forming chip fails as a cantilever beam, and there are intervals when no force is required; hence, the average is low. In more moist wood, however, continuous veneer is formed, and the average parallel force is high. Saturated wood, being softer, requires less force.

Parallel cutting force is negatively correlated with rake angle (figs. 19-7A, 19-15, and tables 19-8, 19-9). With the rake angles evaluated by Woodson and Koch (1970), the average normal force was always negative in latewood. With earlywood, however, the 25 and 35° rake angles



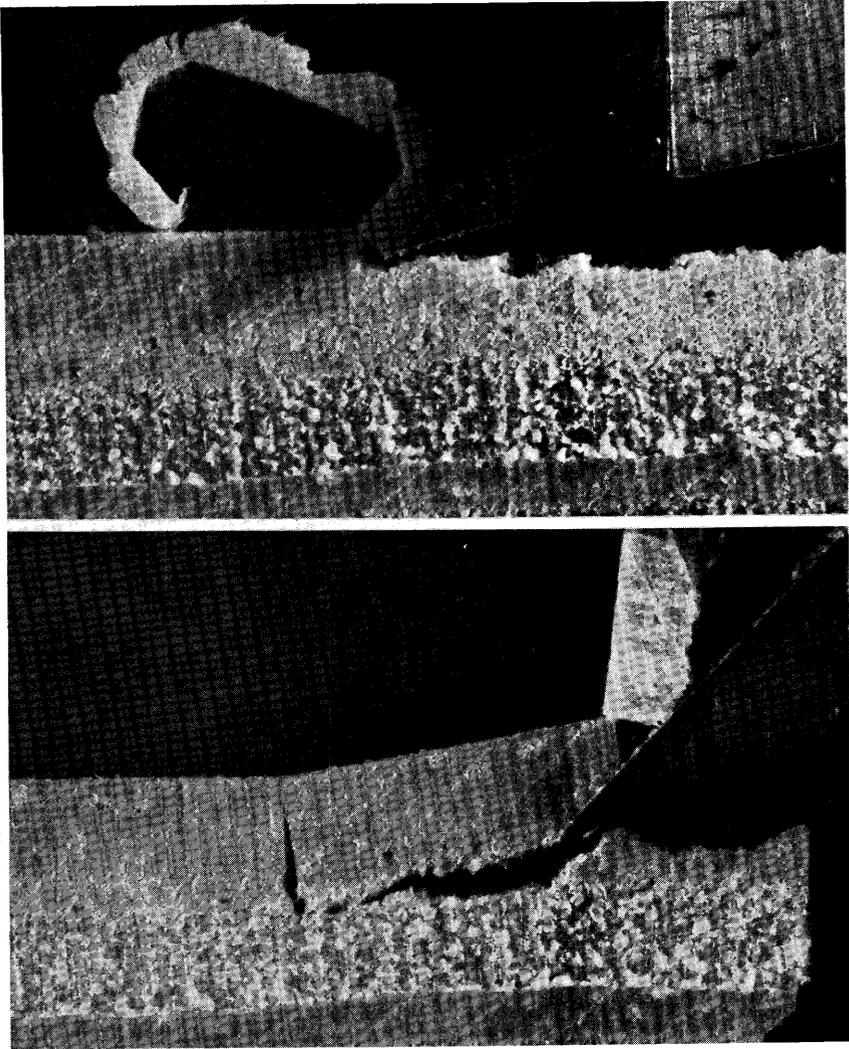
F-520980

Figure 19-12.—Compression tearing in veneer cut in the 0-90 mode from saturated loblolly pine earlywood. (A) Rake angle 25° , depth of cut 0.030-inch. (B) Rake angle 70° , depth of cut 0.015-inch. (C) Rake angle 25° , depth of cut 0.045-inch. (Photos from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

generally caused a positive normal force, i.e., the tool pushed on the work-piece (fig. 19-15 and tables 19-10 and 19-11).

Depth of cut had a relatively small effect on the average parallel cutting force; figure 19-7B (0-90) shows data averaged over all rake angles, all moisture contents, and both cell types. Figure 19-15 and tables 19-8 through 19-11 show the interactions for both normal and parallel forces.

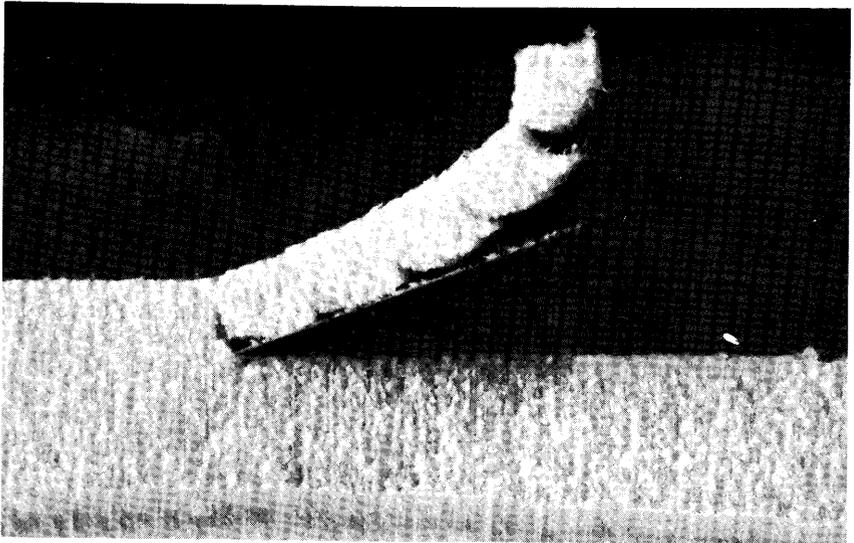
Woodson and Koch (1970) summarized the effects of the major factors



F-520981

Figure 19-13.—Veneer fails as a cantilever beam when cut in 0-90 mode from loblolly pine latewood at 7-percent moisture content with a rake angle of 45° and clearance angle of 15° ; veneer is 0.030-inch in top photo and 0.045-inch in bottom. (Photos from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

in 0-90 veneer cutting; their earlywood and latewood data were pooled, and multiple regression equations were developed to relate depth of cut (inch), rake angle (degrees), moisture content (expressed as a decimal fraction), and specific gravity (ovendry volume and weight) to average parallel (F_p) and normal (F_n) cutting forces (pounds) per 0.1-inch width of specimen.



F-520982

Figure 19-14.—Tension checks in 0.060-inch veneer cut in 0-90 mode from loblolly pine earlywood at 7-percent moisture content. Rake angle 70°. Sharpness angle 20°. (Photo from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

For cutting loblolly pine veneer in the 0-90 mode:

$$F_p = -5.902 + 63.565 \left[\frac{1}{\text{rake angle}} \right] + 747.561 \left[\frac{\text{depth of cut}}{\text{rake angle}} \right] - 0.0338 \left[\frac{1}{\text{moisture content}^2} \right] + 3.318 \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\text{moisture content}}} \right] \quad (19-5)$$

Within the limits of the Woodson-Koch experiment (1970), equation 19-5 accounted for 64 percent of the variation with a standard error of the estimate of 0.85.

For cutting loblolly pine veneer in the 0-90 mode:

$$F_n = -2.241 - 3.572 (\sqrt{\text{depth of cut}}) + 694.063 \left[\frac{1}{\text{rake angle}^2} \right] + 1.296 \left[\frac{1}{\sqrt{\text{specific gravity}}} \right] + 0.0305 (\text{moisture content})(\text{rake angle}) \quad (19-6)$$

Within the limits of the experiment, equation 19-6 accounted for 69 percent of the variation with a standard error of the estimate of 0.36 pound.

Tool forces for cutting in the 0-90 mode are influenced by the strength of wood in tension perpendicular to the grain, in shear perpendicular to

TABLE 19-7.—Average tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when veneer is cut from loblolly pine in the 0-90 mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)¹

Factor	Parallel force	Normal force ²
----- Pounds -----		
Cell type		
Earlywood.....	2.6	0.1
Latewood.....	2.7	-.8
Moisture content, percent		
7.....	2.2	-.5
15.5.....	3.5	-.4
Saturated.....	2.2	-.2
Depth of cut, inch		
0.015.....	2.2	-.1
.030.....	2.5	-.3
.045.....	2.7	-.4
.060.....	3.0	-.6
Rake angle, degrees		
25.....	3.9	.1
35.....	2.8	-.3
45.....	2.2	-.6
70.....	1.6	-.6

¹ Clearance angle 15°, except that knife with 70° rake had zero clearance. Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute, wood at room temperature.

² A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the workpiece away.

the grain, and in compression perpendicular to the grain. Because wood is relatively weak when so stressed, tool forces are substantially less for cutting in this mode than for orthogonal cutting in the 90-0 or 90-90 mode.

PERPENDICULAR TO GRAIN: 90-90 DIRECTION

Because gangsaws, bandsaws, and tenoners cut across the grain in the 90-90 direction (fig. 19-1), this mode of cutting is of practical interest to woodworkers.

Chip formation.—Optimum (Type I) chips in across-the-grain cutting are cleanly severed and undeformed except for shear along the grain (fig. 19-16A). Undesirable are chips (Type II) which in part have been torn rather than sharply cut from the workpiece, and which have been deformed by compression (fig. 19-17). Both types were observed in several woods by McKenzie (1961) and in southern pine by Woodson and Koch (1970). During formation of Type I chips, average cutting forces are relatively constant. Below the cutting plane, splits occur parallel to the grain. The splits may be minute and virtually invisible, in which case the surface is

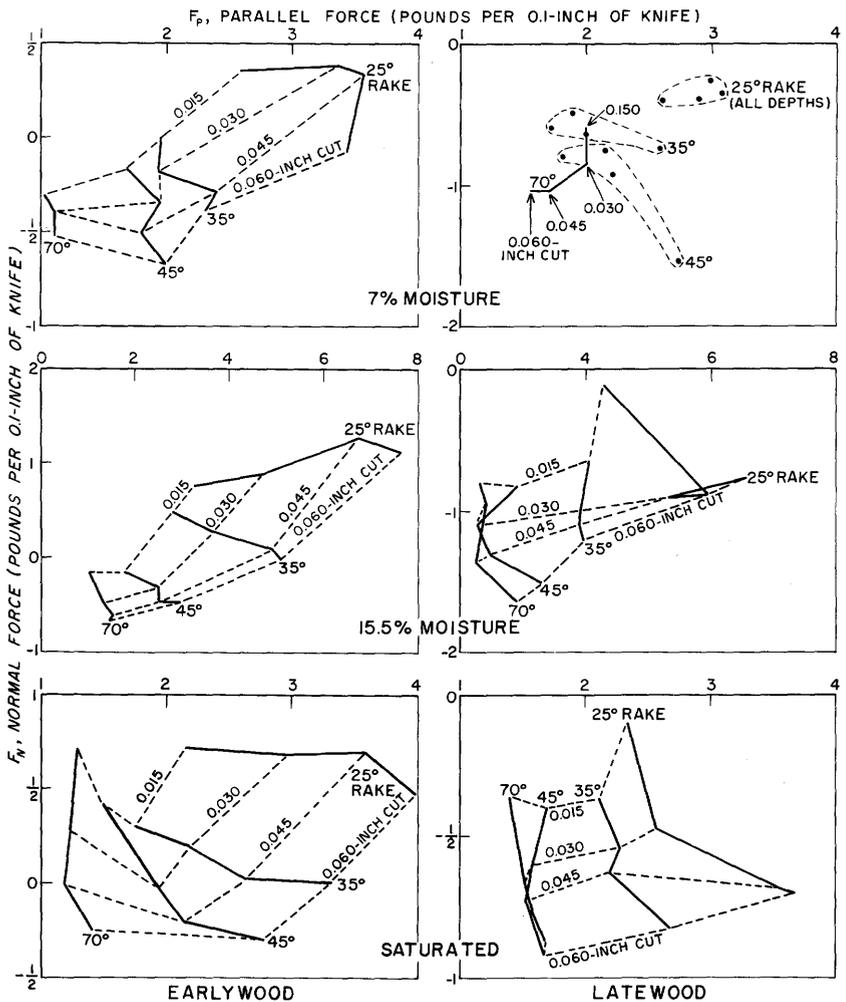


Figure 19-15.—Effect of depth of cut, rake angle, and moisture content on average cutting forces for earlywood and latewood of southern pine; 0-90 mode, orthogonal, 15° clearance angle, 2 inches per minute cutting velocity, wood at room temperature. (Drawing after Woodson and Koch 1970.)

quite good (fig. 19-16A); or they may be fairly frequent and deep, in which case the surface is poor (fig. 19-16C). Each subchip above the cutting plane is formed by shear along the grain.

When Type II chips are formed, average cutting forces tend to vary in cycles with successive cuts (visualize bandsaw teeth cutting successively). Failures occur perpendicular to the grain and at variable distances below the cutting plane (fig. 19-17). After the initial cut, therefore, a succeeding cutting edge may not be engaged in all portions of its path. The mechanics of these two chip formations are explained in McKenzie (1961) or Koch (1964b, pp. 93-109).

TABLE 19-8.—*Parallel tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when veneer is cut from loblolly pine latewood in the 0-90 mode (Woodson and Koch)^{1 2}*

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	25	35	45	70
----- Pounds -----				
0.015 inch				
7.....	2.9(14.7)	2.0(12.3)	2.1(8.8)	2.0(4.3)
15.5.....	4.3(8.7)	4.0(6.6)	2.9(4.7)	2.3(3.7)
Saturated.....	2.3(4.5)	2.1(3.6)	1.7(2.8)	1.4(1.9)
.030 inch				
7.....	3.0(20.7)	2.5(15.2)	1.8(11.4)	2.0(5.0)
15.5.....	5.9(14.8)	3.9(10.0)	2.3(7.2)	2.4(5.0)
Saturated.....	2.6(6.9)	2.3(6.1)	1.6(4.1)	1.5(2.5)
.045 inch				
7.....	3.1(25.6)	1.9(16.1)	2.2(15.9)	1.7(5.3)
15.5.....	5.5(17.7)	3.9(14.8)	2.5(9.2)	2.3(5.6)
Saturated.....	3.5(10.0)	2.2(7.8)	1.5(5.9)	1.6(2.9)
.060 inch				
7.....	2.6(26.9)	1.7(18.2)	2.8(17.9)	1.5(5.3)
15.5.....	6.6(21.5)	4.0(16.3)	3.3(11.7)	2.9(7.1)
Saturated.....	3.7(12.7)	2.7(10.3)	1.7(6.8)	1.7(3.7)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the number in parentheses is the average of the maximum forces observed; both are based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°, except that knife with 70° rake had zero clearance. Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute, wood at room temperature.

Type I chips and good surfaces can be achieved by cutting the wood at relatively high moisture content with a very sharp knife having a large rake angle, i.e., 45° (fig. 19-16A). Although supporting data are not published, it is probable that high cutting velocities, e.g., 10,000 f.p.m., are conducive to formation of Type I chips. Figure 19-18 suggests the idea that a high-velocity cutter might be resisted by the inertia of the fibers, and therefore could accomplish clean severance and a Type I chip. In comparative tests at low cutting speed, Type II chips were more frequent in earlywood than in latewood, particularly in wood of medium and low moisture content. In both latewood and earlywood, Type II chips were more frequent in wood of low moisture content (table 19-12).

Cutting forces.—Woodson and Koch (1970) have shown that when loblolly pine is cut orthogonally across the grain in the 90-90 mode, cutting forces are strongly affected by cell type, moisture content, depth of cut, and rake angle (table 19-13).

They found that when their data were averaged over all rake angles, all depths of cut, and both cell types, maximum cutting forces per 0.1 inch of specimen width were negatively correlated with wood moisture content.

TABLE 19-9.—*Parallel tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when veneer is cut from loblolly pine earlywood in the 0-90 mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2}*

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	25	35	45	70
----- Pounds -----				
0.015 inch				
7.....	2.6(5.5)	2.0(4.8)	1.7(4.1)	1.0(1.8)
15.5.....	3.3(5.1)	2.8(4.1)	1.8(3.7)	1.0(1.9)
Saturated.....	2.2(2.9)	1.8(2.6)	1.5(2.2)	1.3(1.9)
0.030 inch				
7.....	3.4(8.2)	1.9(6.3)	1.9(5.6)	1.1(2.2)
15.5.....	4.7(6.8)	3.6(6.7)	2.5(5.6)	1.4(2.8)
Saturated.....	3.0(4.5)	2.2(3.5)	1.9(3.2)	1.2(1.9)
0.045 inch				
7.....	3.5(10.1)	2.4(7.5)	1.8(6.0)	1.1(2.2)
15.5.....	6.7(10.1)	4.9(8.8)	2.5(6.1)	1.6(3.0)
Saturated.....	3.6(5.4)	2.6(4.7)	2.1(3.8)	1.2(1.9)
0.060 inch				
7.....	3.4(9.6)	2.3(8.1)	2.0(5.6)	1.1(2.4)
15.5.....	7.6(13.0)	5.1(10.2)	3.0(7.0)	1.4(2.6)
Saturated.....	4.0(6.0)	3.3(5.5)	2.8(4.7)	1.3(2.0)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the number in parentheses is the average of the maximum forces observed; both are based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°, except that knife with 70° rake had zero clearance. Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute, wood at room temperature.

Moisture content	F_p	F_n
<i>Percent</i>		<i>Pounds</i>
7	43.3	6.8
15.5	29.0	1.6
Saturated	16.6	-1.7

Moisture content was also negatively correlated with average cutting force (fig. 19-7C, 90-90). Figure 19-19 and tables 19-14 through 19-17 give a more detailed view of interactions involving moisture content.

Rake angle was negatively correlated with both parallel (tables 19-13, 19-14, and 19-15) and normal tool forces (tables 19-13, 19-16, and 19-17).

Depth of cut had a positive linear correlation with parallel cutting force when data for earlywood and latewood were pooled over all moisture contents and rake angles (fig. 19-7B, 90-90). Figure 19-19 illustrates an interaction; normal force was unaffected by depth of cut only when dry earlywood was cut with a knife having a 45° rake angle.

Woodson and Koch (1970) summarized the effects of the major factors in 90-90 cutting; their earlywood and latewood data were pooled, and a

TABLE 19-10.—Normal tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when veneer is cut from loblolly pine latewood in the 0-90 mode
(Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2 3}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	25	35	45	70
	----- Pounds -----			
0.015 inch				
7.....	-0.4 (-2.3 to 1.3)	-0.7 (-3.5 to 0.5)	-0.7 (-3.5 to 0.6)	-0.6 (-1.6 to 0.5)
15.5.....	-.1 (-1.4 to .6)	-.6 (-1.8 to .4)	-.8 (-1.9 to .0)	-.8 (-1.6 to .1)
Saturated.....	-.1 (-.6 to .4)	-.3 (-1.1 to .3)	-.4 (-1.2 to .4)	-.4 (-.8 to .2)
0.030 inch				
7.....	-.3 (-4.0 to 1.5)	-.7 (-5.0 to .3)	-.8 (-5.8 to .5)	-.9 (-2.3 to .4)
15.5.....	-.9 (-3.0 to .8)	-1.0 (-3.1 to .5)	-1.1 (-3.6 to .3)	-.9 (-2.2 to .0)
Saturated.....	-.5 (-1.5 to .5)	-.5 (-2.2 to .4)	-.6 (-2.2 to .5)	-.7 (-1.5 to .3)
0.045 inch				
7.....	-.3 (-4.7 to 1.2)	-.5 (-5.4 to .2)	-.9 (-7.0 to .5)	-1.0 (-2.9 to .4)
15.5.....	-.9 (-3.9 to 1.1)	-1.1 (-5.4 to .3)	-1.3 (-5.5 to .1)	-1.3 (-2.8 to .0)
Saturated.....	-.7 (-2.3 to .6)	-.6 (-2.9 to .3)	-.7 (-3.4 to .6)	-.8 (-2.0 to .4)
0.060 inch				
7.....	-.4 (-4.7 to .5)	-.6 (-7.4 to .8)	-1.6 (-9.5 to .6)	-1.0 (-3.4 to .5)
15.5.....	-.8 (-4.7 to 1.7)	-1.2 (-5.8 to .7)	-1.5 (-6.4 to .2)	-1.6 (-3.3 to .2)
Saturated.....	-.7 (-3.0 to .5)	-.8 (-4.1 to .3)	-.9 (-3.9 to .4)	-.9 (-2.9 to .6)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the numbers in parentheses are minimum and maximum forces; each number is based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°, except that knife with 70° rake had zero clearance. Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute, wood at room temperature.

³ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the wood; force was positive when the knife tended to push the wood away.

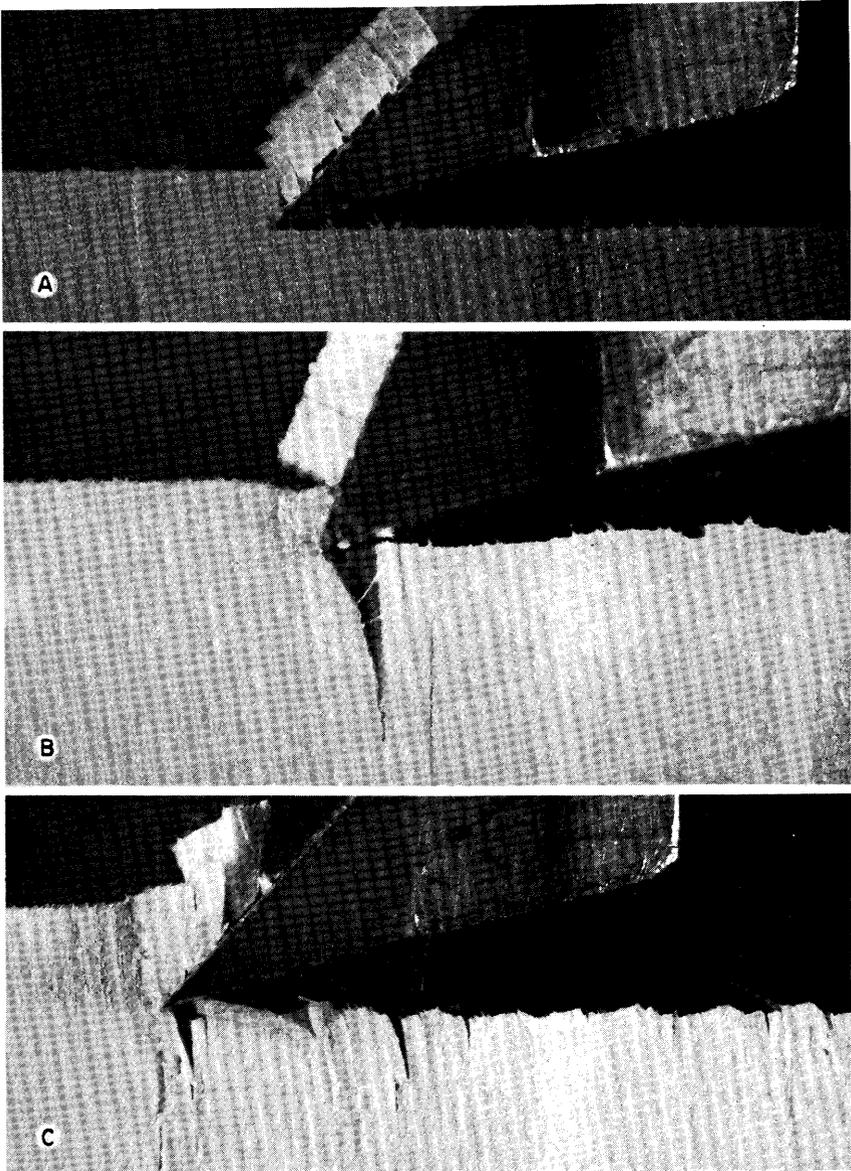
TABLE 19-11.—Normal tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when veneer is cut from loblolly pine earlywood in the 0-90 mode
(Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2 3}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees			
	25	35	45	70
	----- Pounds -----			
0.015 inch				
7-----	0.4 (-0.5 to 2.4)	0.0 (-0.5 to 1.3)	-0.2 (-0.9 to 0.6)	-0.3 (-0.7 to 0.2)
15.5-----	.8 (-.2 to 2.1)	.5 (-.3 to 1.3)	-.1 (-.7 to 1.0)	-.1 (-.5 to .3)
Saturated-----	.7 (-.2 to 1.4)	.3 (-.1 to .9)	-.4 (-.0 to 1.1)	-.7 (-.2 to 1.2)
0.030 inch				
7-----	.4 (-.7 to 2.7)	-.2 (-1.0 to 1.4)	-.3 (-1.3 to .8)	-.4 (-1.2 to .2)
15.5-----	.9 (-.4 to 2.5)	.3 (-.9 to 1.9)	-.3 (-1.3 to .6)	-.5 (-1.0 to .1)
Saturated-----	.7 (-.1 to 1.9)	.2 (-.3 to 1.0)	-.1 (-.4 to .8)	-.3 (-.1 to .7)
0.045 inch				
7-----	.3 (-1.1 to 2.5)	-.3 (-1.4 to 1.0)	-.5 (-2.1 to .6)	-.4 (-1.6 to .4)
15.5-----	1.3 (-.5 to 3.6)	.1 (-1.4 to 2.6)	-.5 (-1.6 to .3)	-.6 (-1.3 to .2)
Saturated-----	.7 (-.0 to 1.8)	.0 (-.7 to .9)	-.2 (-.7 to .5)	.0 (-.4 to .6)
0.060 inch				
7-----	-.1 (-1.4 to 1.9)	-.4 (-2.0 to .9)	-.7 (-2.6 to .7)	-.5 (-1.8 to .5)
15.5-----	1.1 (-1.0 to 4.3)	.0 (-1.9 to 2.3)	-.4 (-2.0 to .7)	-.6 (-1.4 to .1)
Saturated-----	.5 (-.4 to 1.7)	.0 (-.7 to .8)	-.3 (-.8 to .6)	-.2 (-.6 to .3)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average normal cutting force; the numbers in parentheses are minimum and maximum forces; each number is based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°, except that knife with 70° rake, had zero clearance. Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute, wood at room temperature.

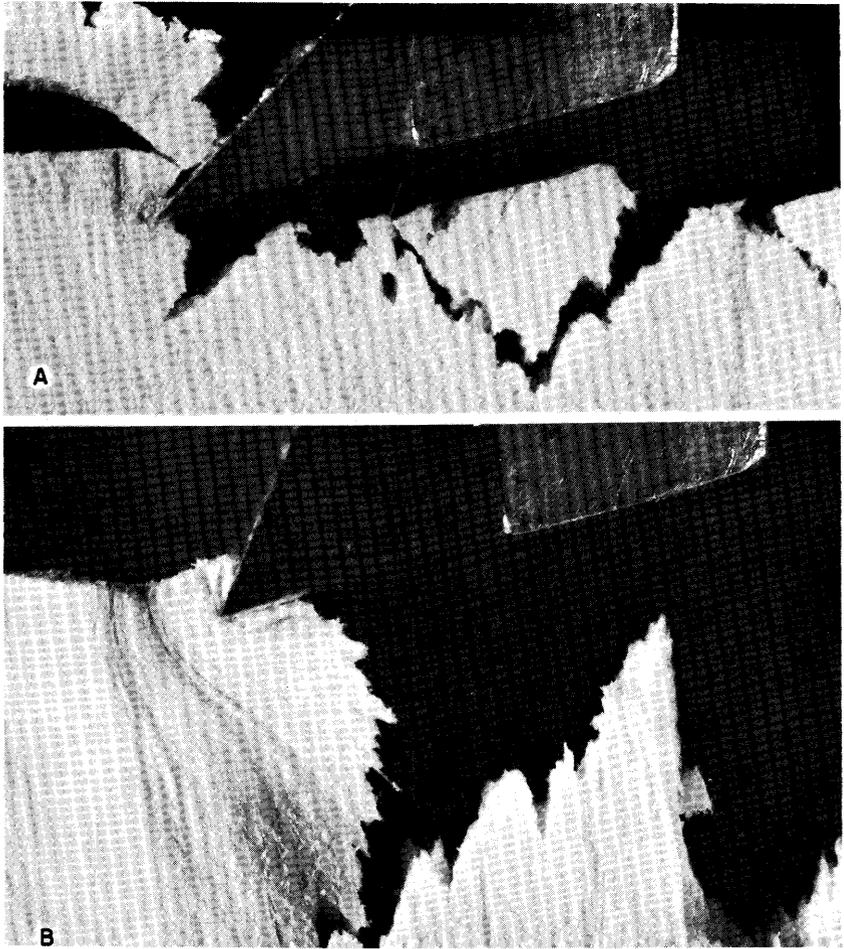
³ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the wood; force was positive when the knife tended to push the wood away.



F-520983

Figure 19-16.—McKenzie type I chips from orthogonal cuts 0.060-inch deep across the grain of loblolly pine (90-90 mode). (A) Latewood, saturated, rake angle 45°. (B) Earlywood, saturated, rake angle 25°. (C) Latewood at 7-percent moisture content, rake angle 45°. (Photos from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

multiple regression analysis was made to relate depth of cut (inch), rake angle (degrees), moisture content (expressed as a decimal fraction), and specific gravity (ovendry volume and weight) to average parallel (F_p) and normal (F_n) cutting forces (pounds) per 0.1-inch width of specimen.



F-520984

Figure 19-17.—McKenzie type II chips from orthogonal cuts across the grain (90-90 mode) of loblolly pine earlywood of 7-percent moisture content. (A) Rake angle 45°; 0.060-inch cut. (B) Rake angle 25°; 0.045-inch cut. (Photos from Woodson and Koch 1970.)

When loblolly pine is cut across the grain (90-90 mode) :

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_p = & +1.964 \\
 & +561.346 \left[\frac{\text{specific gravity}}{\text{rake angle}} \right] \\
 & +2,650.962 \left[\frac{(\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut})}{(\text{rake angle})(\text{moisture content})} \right]
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{19-7}$$

Within the limits of their experiment, equation 19-7 accounted for 87 percent of the variation with a standard error of the estimate of 6.8 pounds.

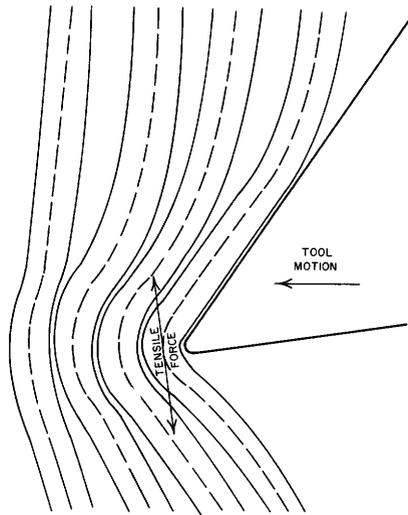


Figure 19-18.—In the 90-90 mode, failure at the cutting edge is due to tension across the cutting plane. (Drawing after McKenzie 1961.)

TABLE 19-12.—Typical chip types when loblolly pine wood is cut in the across-the-grain (90-90) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)¹

Moisture content and rake angle (degrees)	Chip type ²	
	In earlywood	In latewood
Saturated		
25.....	I	I
35.....	I	I
45.....	I	I
15.5 percent		
25.....	II(I)	I
35.....	II	I
45.....	II(I)	I
7 percent		
25.....	II	II(I)
35.....	II	II(I)
45.....	II	II(I)

¹ Depths of cut ranged from 0.015 to 0.060 inch. Cutting velocity was 2 inches per minute, clearance angle 15°.

² The first number in each entry is major chip type as classified by McKenzie (1961); a second number in parentheses indicates that a combination of chip types was observed.

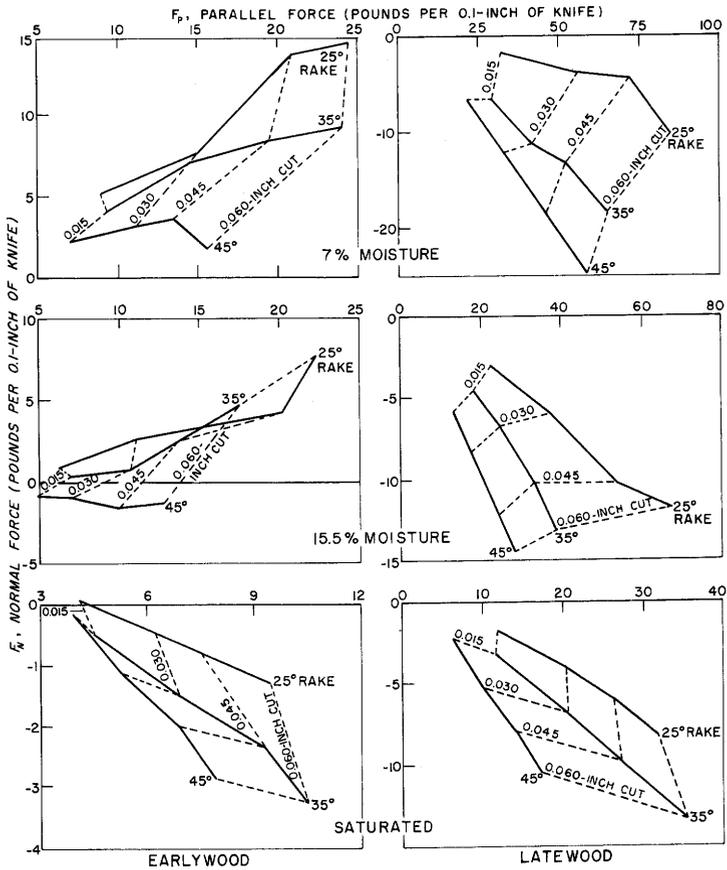


Figure 19-19.—Effect of depth of cut, rake angle, and moisture content on average cutting forces for earlywood and latewood of southern pine; 90-90 mode, orthogonal, 15° clearance angle, 2 inches per minute cutting velocity, wood at room temperature. (Drawing after Woodson and Koch 1970.)

When loblolly pine is cut across the grain (90-90 mode) :

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_n = & -0.285 \\
 & -180.253 (\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut}) \\
 & +6.699 \left[\frac{\text{depth of cut}}{\text{moisture content}} \right] \\
 & -50.615 \left[\frac{(\text{specific gravity})(\text{depth of cut})}{\text{moisture content}} \right] \\
 & +894.843 \left[\frac{\text{depth of cut}}{(\text{moisture content})(\text{rake angle})} \right]
 \end{aligned} \tag{19-8}$$

TABLE 19-13.—Average tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine wood is cut in the across-the-grain (90-90) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)

Factor	Parallel force	Normal force ¹
----- Pounds -----		
Cell type		
Earlywood.....	11.4	2.4
Latewood.....	33.6	-8.8
Moisture content, percent		
7.....	32.5	-2.1
15.5.....	21.9	-3.6
Saturated.....	13.1	-3.9
Depth of cut, inch		
0.015.....	12.4	-1.3
.030.....	19.5	-2.5
.045.....	26.2	-3.7
.060.....	31.9	-5.3
Rake angle, degrees ²		
25.....	28.2	-0.7
35.....	22.8	-3.6
45.....	16.6	-5.4

¹ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the workpiece away.

² All knives had a 15° clearance angle; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

Equation 19-8 accounted for 82 percent of the variation with a standard error of the estimate of 3.4 pounds.

FORCE COMPARISON FOR THREE CUTTING DIRECTIONS

Because chip formation when cutting in the 90-90 mode requires wood to be failed in tension parallel to the grain (fig. 19-18), parallel cutting forces are much higher than in the 0-90 and 90-0 mode. While the data in table 19-18 are restricted to a rake angle of 35° and one depth of cut, the trends shown in the table are valid for cuts from 0.015 to 0.060 inch deep and also for a rake angle of 25°.

The Woodson and Koch (1970) data on maximum and minimum cutting forces reveal some figures of interest to machine designers.

In the 90-0 (planing) direction, forces were most extreme (per 0.1 inch of knife) for 0.060-inch cuts in latewood:

F_p was maximum at 87.3 pounds for cuts with 5° rake angle in wood at 7-percent moisture content.

F_n was maximum at 11.1 pounds for cuts with 5° rake angle in wood at 15.5-percent moisture content.

F_n was minimum at -5.9 pounds for cuts with 35° rake angle in wood at 7-percent moisture content.

TABLE 19-14.—*Parallel tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine latewood is cut in the across-the-grain (90-90) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2}*

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees		
	25	35	45
	----- Pounds -----		
0.015 inch			
7-----	32.4(42.8)	29.1(39.6)	21.7(31.7)
15.5-----	22.8(27.7)	18.2(22.9)	13.5(17.7)
Saturated-----	11.8(14.8)	11.7(14.3)	6.2(7.8)
0.030 inch			
7-----	56.6(73.5)	42.1(62.3)	33.6(51.8)
15.5-----	37.9(45.5)	24.5(32.2)	17.6(24.7)
Saturated-----	20.2(24.4)	20.4(24.9)	10.0(13.5)
0.045 inch			
7-----	71.9(81.7)	52.2(80.5)	46.1(66.7)
15.5-----	53.7(66.0)	33.8(43.7)	24.3(34.2)
Saturated-----	26.3(31.8)	27.3(32.4)	14.0(18.9)
0.060 inch			
7-----	85.9(119.7)	65.7(99.7)	59.1(87.1)
15.5-----	68.0(80.5)	38.4(53.4)	28.1(40.7)
Saturated-----	31.8(37.4)	35.6(42.0)	17.5(24.1)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the number in parentheses is the average of the maximum forces observed; both are based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

In the 0-90 (vener) direction, forces were most extreme (per 0.1 inch of knife) when cutting 0.060 inch deep:

F_p was maximum at 26.9 pounds for cuts with 25° rake angle in latewood at 7-percent moisture content.

F_n was maximum at 4.3 pounds for cuts with 25° rake angle in earlywood at 15.5-percent moisture content.

F_n was minimum at -9.5 pounds for cuts with 45° rake angle in latewood at 7-percent moisture content.

In the 90-90 (cross-cut) direction, forces (per 0.1 inch of knife) were most extreme when cutting 0.060-inch chips at 7-percent moisture content:

F_p was maximum at 119.7 pounds for cuts with 25° rake angle in latewood.

F_n was maximum at 28.7 pounds for cuts with 25° rake angle in earlywood.

F_n was minimum at -40.6 pounds for cuts with 45° rake angle in latewood.

TABLE 19-15.—*Parallel tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine earlywood is cut in the across-the-grain (90-90) mode (Woodson and Koch)^{1 2}*

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees		
	25	35	45
	----- Pounds -----		
0.015 inch			
7.....	8.9(11.0)	9.3(11.9)	7.1(10.2)
15.5.....	6.2(9.7)	7.0(9.2)	4.9(7.4)
Saturated.....	4.1(5.5)	4.5(5.5)	4.0(4.9)
0.030 inch			
7.....	15.0(19.5)	14.0(19.5)	11.0(14.8)
15.5.....	11.2(15.8)	10.8(14.9)	7.1(10.6)
Saturated.....	6.1 (8.2)	6.9(9.3)	5.3(6.6)
0.045 inch			
7.....	21.8(27.5)	19.6(27.3)	13.4(18.6)
15.5.....	20.3(25.2)	13.9(18.8)	9.9(14.6)
Saturated.....	7.6(10.6)	9.3(13.4)	6.8(9.2)
0.060 inch			
7.....	24.4(34.1)	24.0(32.5)	15.5(24.8)
15.5.....	22.4(31.4)	17.6(26.9)	12.8(22.8)
Saturated.....	9.5(13.0)	10.6(15.4)	7.8(10.8)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average cutting force; the number in parentheses is the average of the maximum forces observed; both are based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

OBLIQUE AND INCLINED CUTTING

In strictly orthogonal cutting, the cutting edge is perpendicular to the motion of the tool over the workpiece. In some applications, the cutting edge is set obliquely to its direction of movement; the **deviation angle** between the edge and a line normal to the motion measures the degree of obliquity. Kivimaa (1950) has shown that when wood is cut parallel to the grain, parallel cutting force is negatively correlated with deviation angle; however, when cutting tangentially across the grain (as in veneer slicing) parallel cutting force stays the same or rises as deviation angle is increased.

If a cutting edge is drawn transversely during an otherwise orthogonal cutting operation (visualize bread being sliced with a long knife), the process is termed **inclined cutting**. It has been established that cutting forces can be reduced substantially and surface quality greatly improved by this means (fig. 19-20). No data specific to southern pine have been published; information on other species has been reported, however, by McKenzie (1961), Plough (1962), McKenzie and Franz (1964), St. Laurent (1965), Collins (1965), and McKenzie and Hawkins (1966). In the United States, the inclined cutting principle has had limited application to veneer lathes (see sec. 19-10).

TABLE 19-16.—Normal tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine latewood is cut in the across-the-grain (90-90) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2 3}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees		
	25	35	45
	----- Pounds -----		
0.015 inch			
7.....	- 1.7 (- 6.6 to 3.8)	- 6.7 (-12.0 to -1.6)	- 6.7 (-12.3 to -1.3)
15.5.....	- 3.1 (- 4.9 to - .9)	- 4.5 (- 6.4 to -1.4)	- 5.7 (- 8.1 to -2.6)
Saturated.....	- 1.6 (- 2.7 to - .5)	- 3.1 (- 4.2 to -1.4)	- 2.3 (- 3.6 to -1.0)
0.030 inch			
7.....	- 3.7 (-11.6 to 4.3)	-11.2 (-19.4 to -2.4)	-12.0 (-20.6 to -2.2)
15.5.....	- 6.0 (- 8.6 to -2.9)	- 6.7 (-10.3 to -2.5)	- 8.4 (-12.2 to -3.0)
Saturated.....	- 3.9 (- 5.6 to -2.1)	- 6.7 (- 8.7 to -3.7)	- 5.1 (- 7.9 to -2.0)
0.045 inch			
7.....	- 4.4 (-15.5 to 8.7)	-13.2 (-27.8 to -2.2)	-18.4 (-31.1 to -2.5)
15.5.....	-10.1 (-13.7 to -4.7)	-10.2 (-14.4 to -3.6)	-12.1 (-16.6 to -3.7)
Saturated.....	- 5.7 (- 7.9 to -3.2)	- 9.8 (-12.5 to -4.5)	- 7.9 (-11.1 to -3.1)
0.060 inch			
7.....	-10.4 (-24.4 to 1.9)	-18.4 (-35.9 to -4.2)	-25.0 (-40.6 to -4.4)
15.5.....	-11.7 (-16.1 to -4.5)	-13.0 (-18.7 to -4.4)	-14.5 (-21.9 to -4.7)
Saturated.....	- 8.1 (-10.1 to -4.4)	-13.4 (-16.7 to -7.5)	-10.5 (-14.8 to -3.6)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average normal cutting force; the numbers in parentheses show minimum and maximum forces; each number is based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

³ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the workpiece away.

TABLE 19-17.—Normal tool forces per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine earlywood is cut in the across-the-grain (90-90) mode (Woodson and Koch 1970)^{1 2 3}

Depth of cut and moisture content (percent)	Rake angle, degrees		
	25	35	45
	----- Pounds -----		
0.015 inch			
7-----	5.3 (1.5 to 8.9)	4.1 (0.4 to 7.7)	2.2 (-1.0 to 6.3)
15.5-----	.8 (- .8 to 2.4)	.4 (-1.3 to 2.3)	-.9 (-2.1 to .4)
Saturated-----	.0 (- .4 to .6)	-.5 (-1.1 to .1)	-.1 (-.6 to .3)
0.030 inch			
7-----	8.8 (1.9 to 16.2)	7.4 (.5 to 14.9)	3.0 (-1.6 to 8.4)
15.5-----	2.7 (-1.0 to 6.5)	.7 (-3.0 to 4.8)	-.9 (-3.9 to 2.6)
Saturated-----	.5 (-1.3 to .3)	-1.5 (-2.6 to -.5)	-1.1 (-1.8 to -.3)
0.045 inch			
7-----	13.2 (2.7 to 20.7)	8.7 (.3 to 17.1)	3.8 (-2.4 to 10.0)
15.5-----	4.2 (-2.7 to 10.9)	2.5 (-2.8 to 8.7)	-1.5 (-5.8 to 4.2)
Saturated-----	-.8 (-1.9 to .2)	-2.4 (-4.2 to .9)	-2.0 (-3.5 to -.6)
0.060 inch			
7-----	14.6 (2.8 to 28.7)	9.5 (-.2 to 18.7)	1.9 (-4.5 to 8.6)
15.5-----	7.7 (-1.2 to 18.1)	4.7 (-3.2 to 13.1)	-1.4 (-6.9 to 4.5)
Saturated-----	-1.4 (-2.7 to .0)	-3.2 (-5.2 to -1.3)	-2.8 (-4.7 to -1.1)

¹ The first number in each entry is the average normal cutting force; the numbers in parentheses show minimum and maximum forces; each number is based on five replications.

² Clearance angle 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

³ A negative normal force means that the knife tended to lift the workpiece; force was positive when the knife tended to push the workpiece away.

TABLE 19-18.—Average parallel tool force per 0.1 inch of knife when loblolly pine wood is cut in the three major modes with a rake angle of 35°; depth of cut 0.030 inch (Woodson and Koch 1970)¹

Moisture content and cell type	Average parallel tool force		
	0-90	90-0	90-90
	----- Pounds -----		
7 percent			
Earlywood.....	1.9	1.8	14.0
Latewood.....	2.5	4.4	42.1
15.5 percent			
Earlywood.....	3.6	3.5	10.8
Latewood.....	3.9	6.4	24.5
Saturated			
Earlywood.....	2.2	2.2	6.9
Latewood.....	2.3	3.5	20.4

¹ Clearance angle, 15°; cutting velocity 2 inches per minute, wood at room temperature.

Cuts made by a knife having deviation angle are sometimes erroneously equated with cuts made by a longitudinally oscillating knife; a moment's thought about the pattern cut by a nicked knife should clarify the difference between the two situations. A knife given deviation angle has a slightly decreased effective sharpness angle, and therefore cutting forces

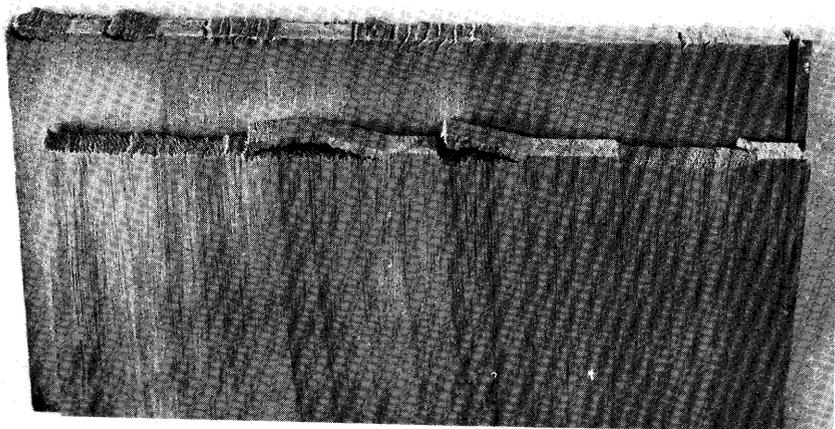


Figure 19-20.—Lateral vibration of the knife at 120 cycles per second improved surfaces of wood cut in the 90-90 mode at 0.5 inch per minute. (Top) Yellow poplar (*Liriodendron* L.). (Bottom) Common persimmon (*Diospyros virginiana* L.). The poorer surfaces shown resulted when lateral vibration was stopped. Rake angle, 25°; nominal chip thickness, 0.03 inch. (Photo from McKenzie 1961.)

are reduced when cutting orthotropic materials. An oscillating knife, however, has a substantially reduced effective sharpness angle. Also, the oscillating knife, because of slight imperfections in the cutting edge, exerts a toothed cutting action that is more effective than the simple pressure of a knife cutting with deviation angle (visualize drawing a toothed knife across a tomato skin compared to simply pressing the knife against the skin).

19-3 SHEARING AND CLEAVING ²

These processes are distinguished from conventional orthogonal cutting because of the extreme depth of cut, i.e., the chip and the workpiece are equally massive, stiff, and difficult to deform (fig. 19-21).

SHEARING

When very great depths of cut are taken by a knife cutting in the 90-90 mode against an anvil or opposing knife (visualize rose stems cut with pruning shears), the process is described as shearing (fig. 19-21A). Tree-felling shears and shears to reduce long logs to shorter pulpwood lengths are in common use on southern pine. Most of the published research, however, has described work with other species (Erickson 1967; Kempe 1967; Wiklund 1967; Johnston 1967, 1968a, b, c, d; McIntosh and Kerbes 1969; Arola 1971).

This research has indicated that, in general, shear forces are less in warm than in frozen wood, less in clear than in knotty wood, less in heartwood than in sapwood, less in low-density wood than in dense wood, and less where the shearing direction is perpendicular to the annual rings than where the cut is parallel to the annual rings. Above the fiber saturation point, moisture content apparently makes little difference in the force required to shear.

Cutting velocity has little effect on shearing force. Shear force is least when the specimen is cut between opposing knives; if cut by a single knife against an anvil, a narrow anvil requires less force than a wide one.

The friction coefficient between a steel knife and green wood is approximately 0.2. Grease lubrication between knife and wood is not particularly effective in reducing shearing forces; Teflon surfaces on the cutter are more effective. Axial loads (simulating the weight of a standing tree) do not appreciably increase shearing forces. Lateral vibration of the cutter reduces shear forces required, as does tapering the cutter plate (fig. 19-21D) to give clearance between the plate and the wood. In a review of Russian

² In sec. 19-3, the text on shearing is condensed from Koch (1971), and that on cleaving from: Koch, P. Forces required to split green and dry southern pine bolts. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-1.33 dated June 10, 1970.

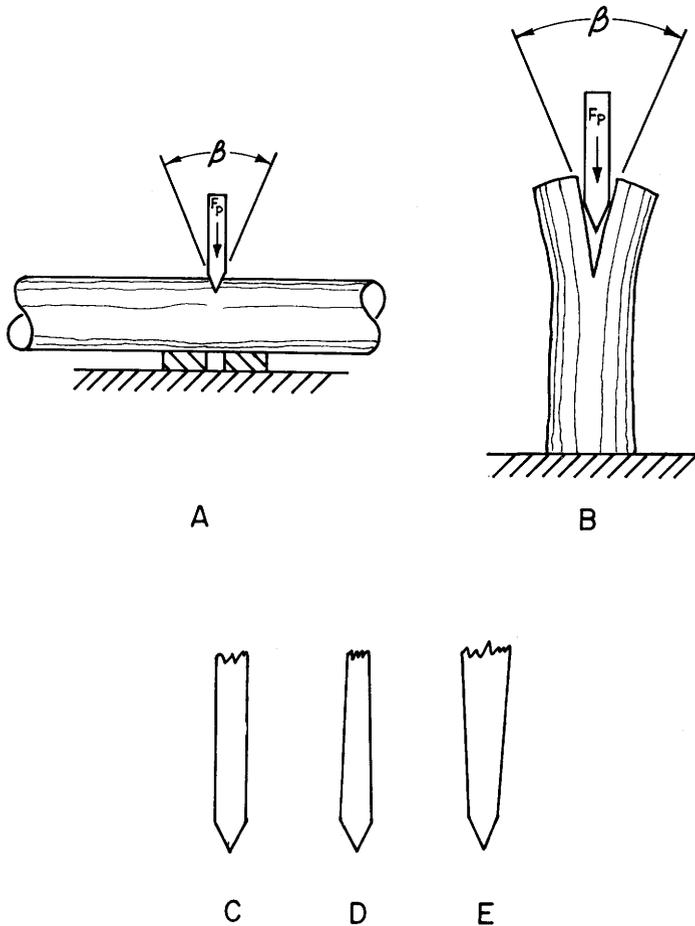


Figure 19-21.—(A) Shearing. (B) Cleaving. (C) Parallel-sided knife. (D) Tapered knife. (E) Knife with thick root.

work, Kubler (1960) reported that vibration in the feed direction also reduces shear forces required.

For parallel-sided cutters (fig. 19-21C), thin blades shear with less force than thick blades. Blades tapered so that the plate near the cutting edge is thin and the root thick (fig. 19-21E) require forces intermediate to thin and thick plates without taper. Sharp blades shear with less force than dull blades. Cutting edges in the shape of an open V do not appreciably lower forces required to shear logs.

The quality of sheared ends is impaired—i.e., knife-induced splits tend to be deep—if the wood is frozen, the knife dull, or the blade thick. An anvil that conforms to log curvature causes less crushing at the support point than a rigid straight anvil. McIntosh and Kerbes (1969) found that lumber losses from splitting were less than 1 percent when lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* Dougl.) and white spruce (*Picea glauca* var. *glauca*) trees

less than 14 inches in diameter were sheared at 45° F. with a knife 1½ inches thick.

In trials (unpublished) of industrial shears with ½-inch-thick blades (45° sharpness angle) converging at the center of the tree, lumber loss from splitting in southern pine butt logs was more severe than indicated by McIntosh and Kerbes. In the test, 202 sheared butt logs scaling 7,280 board feet (Scribner standard rule) yielded 8,064 board feet of lumber when sawed. From production records, the mill estimated that, if the trees had been felled with a chainsaw, the butt logs would have yielded 8,820 board feet of lumber; i.e., the sheared logs produced 10.7 percent overrun as compared to the usual overrun of 20.1 percent.

The same mill (located in South Carolina) observed what appeared to be even more severe splitting when 30 longleaf pines were sheared with a single blade closing against a fixed anvil. The sheared butt logs were conventionally converted to lumber, dried, and planed—except that the butt ends of the boards were not trimmed. Length of shear-caused splits in the planed boards was positively correlated with stump diameter as follows:

Stump diameter	Split length		Logs cut	Boards measured
	Maximum	Average		
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Number</i>
12	14	8.1	6	36
14	25	10.3	12	70
16	31	11.6	8	44
18	22	8.7	2	21
20	50	20.6	2	21

Mill management concluded that butt logs from sheared trees 16 inches and less in diameter would have to be cut back 24 inches before conversion to lumber; larger butt logs would require a 48-inch trim to eliminate most splits in the lumber. Such a trimming practice, although resulting in lumber loss, has some virtue; Hallock (1965) has reported that the portion of loblolly pine trees immediately adjacent to the ground yields lumber that frequently warps excessively when dried.

Koch (1971) has provided force data for slow-speed shearing of southern pine logs in diameter classes averaging 5.1, 9.7 and 13.6 inches; shearing was at 2 inches per minute with ⅜-inch-thick knives ground to 22½ and 45° sharpness angles. Thirty-six green logs, with bark in place, without regard to knots, and at a wood temperature of 60 to 80° F. were positioned horizontally and sheared against a flat anvil measuring 10¾ inches along the length of the log.

Data for logs of the three diameters and of two specific gravity classes are shown for each sharpness angle in table 19-19. Effects of primary variables are tabulated below; values significantly different (0.05 level) by analysis of variance appear below an asterisk:

Factor	Maximum force	Work to shear	Average check depth
	Pounds	Foot-pounds	Inches
Diameter of log	*	*	
5.1 inches-----	12,569	3,980	1.1
9.7 inches-----	33,121	18,594	1.2
13.6 inches-----	57,338	39,415	1.2
Specific gravity	*	*	
0.40-0.46-----	30,847	18,275	1.2
.47- .52-----	37,800	23,051	1.1
Sharpness angle	*	*	*
22-1/2°-----	30,935	19,409	.9
45°-----	37,750	21,918	1.3

Check depth was unaffected by bolt diameter; the significant interaction involving specific gravity and sharpness angle is shown in table 19-19. With the 22½° knife, specific gravity of the wood had little effect on check depth; with the 45° knife, however, check depth was greater (1.4 inch) in low-gravity wood than in high-gravity wood (1.2 inch).

Shearing force and work to shear were greatest for dense, 13.6-inch logs cut with a knife having a 45° sharpness angle (73,517 pounds, 49,838 foot-pounds); conversely, shear force and work were least for 5.1-inch bolts of low density when cut with a knife having 22½° sharpness angle (9,975

TABLE 19-19.—Maximum shear force, work, and average check depth when bark-covered, round, green, southern pine logs were sheared with a 3/8-inch-thick knife closing against a flat anvil (Koch 1971¹)

Average log diameter inside bark and specific gravity ²	22½° sharpness angle			45° sharpness angle		
	Force	Work	Check depth	Force	Work	Check depth
	Pounds	Foot-pounds	Inch	Pounds	Foot-pounds	Inch
5.1 inches						
0.40-0.46----	9,975	2,885	0.8	12,466	4,191	1.4
.47- .52-----	12,533	4,506	.8	15,300	4,339	1.1
9.7 inches						
0.40-0.46----	22,900	13,618	1.0	32,100	18,120	1.4
.47- .52-----	36,300	20,637	1.0	41,183	22,001	1.3
13.6 inches						
0.40-0.46----	55,933 ³	37,822 ³	.9	51,933	33,016	1.4
.47- .52-----	47,967	36,983	1.1	73,517	49,838	1.3

¹ Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute. Each value is an average of three replications.

² Based on green volume and oven-dry weight.

³ Values are high because these three low-gravity logs averaged 15.1 inches in diameter, whereas the three high-gravity logs cut with the 22½° knife averaged only 13.3 inches in diameter.

pounds, 2,885 foot-pounds). In shearing green southern pine, shear force builds to a maximum about three-fourths the way through the log; it then drops rapidly as the knife travels the remaining distance. Momentary peaks of force commonly occur near the three-quarter point (fig. 19-22).

At a cutting velocity of 2 inches per minute with cutter thickness constant at $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch, shearing force (F_p , pounds) of green southern pine at 60 to 80° F. can be expressed in terms of bolt diameter inside bark (inches), sharpness angle (β , degrees), and wood specific gravity (ovendry weight and green volume).

For green southern pine logs sheared with bark in place:

$$\begin{aligned} F_p = & -76,268 \\ & +5,173 (\text{diameter}) \\ & +104,485 (\text{specific gravity}) \\ & +373 (\text{sharpness angle}) \end{aligned} \quad (19-9)$$

This equation is graphed in figure 19-22 (bottom). Within the range of the factors tested (sharpness angles 22½ to 45°, bolt diameters 5 to 15 inches, and specific gravity on ovendry weight and green volume basis 0.40 to 0.52), equation 19-9 accounted for 81 percent of the variation with standard error of the estimate of 9,680 pounds (Koch 1971).

For green southern pine logs sheared with bark in place, work to shear (foot-pounds) is expressed:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{work} = & -71,538 \\ & +4,048 (\text{diameter}) \\ & +102,589 (\text{specific gravity}) \\ & +171 (\text{sharpness angle}) \end{aligned} \quad (19-9a)$$

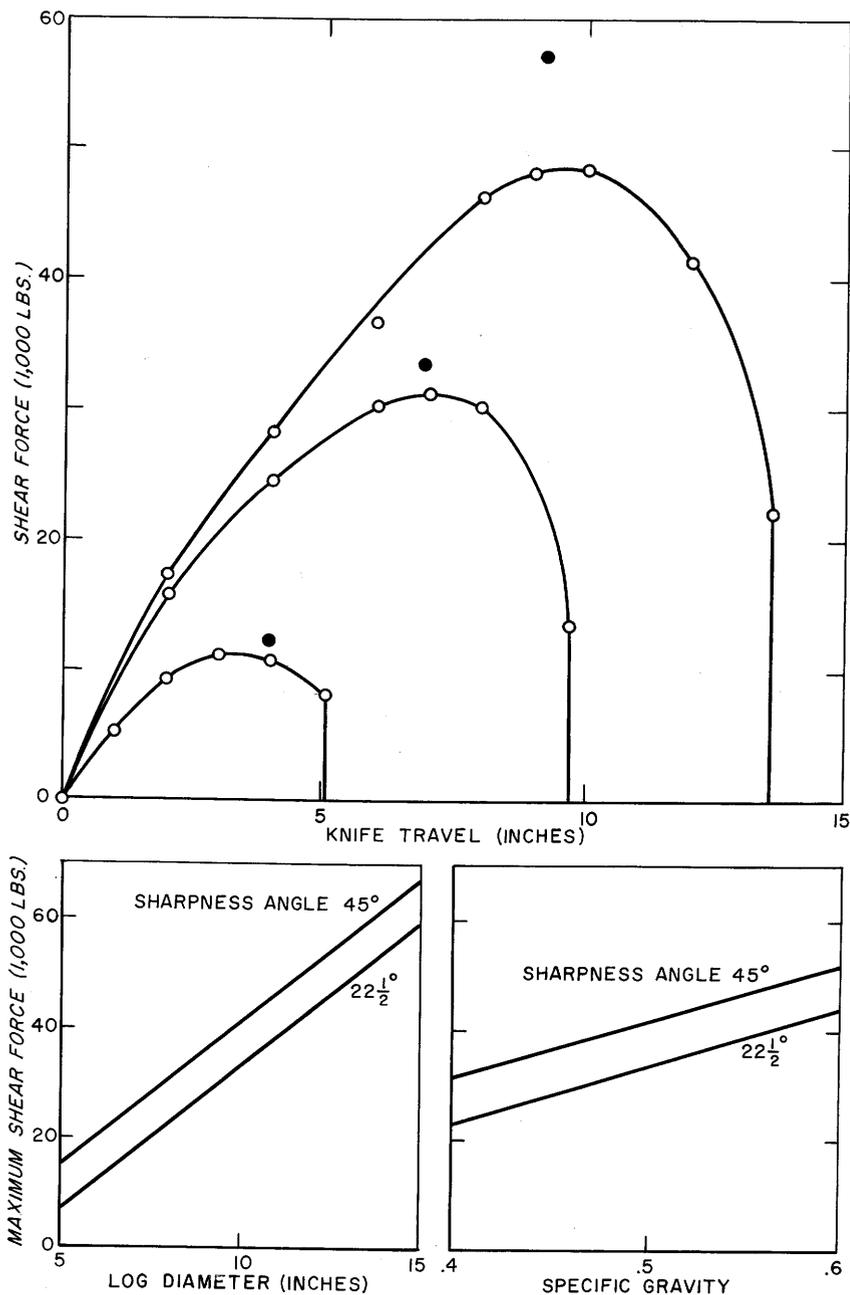
Within the range of the study, equation 19-9a accounted for 93 percent of the variation with standard error of the estimate of 4,500 (Koch 1971).

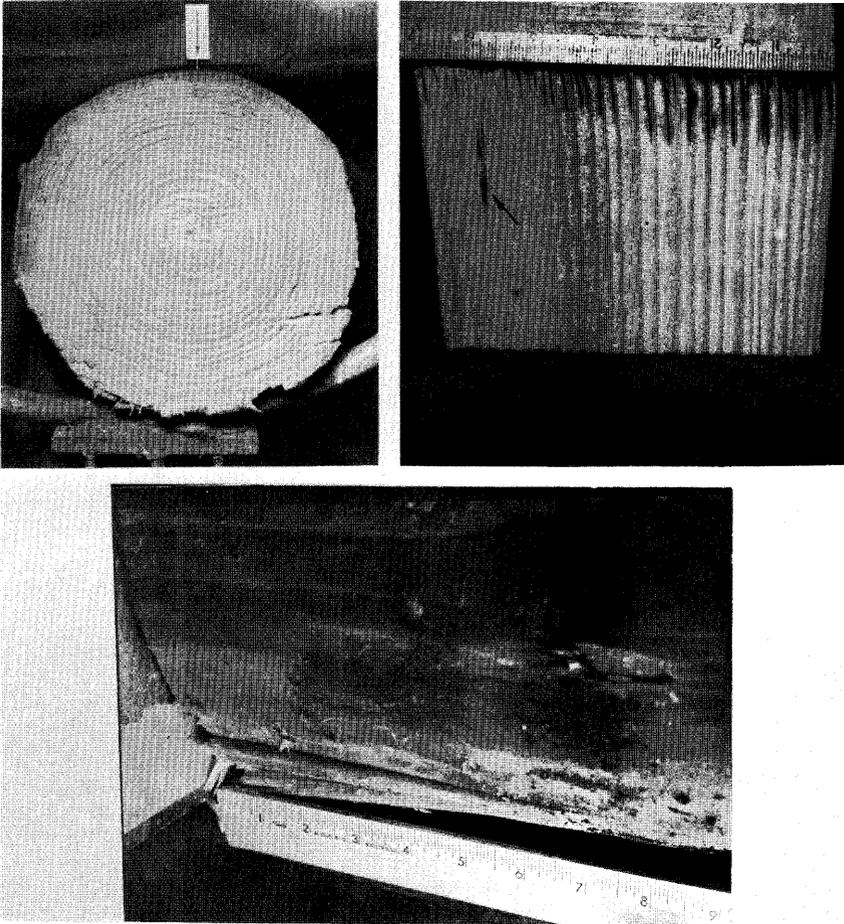
Shears cause some checking in the severed ends (fig. 19-23). Koch (1971) found that sheared logs viewed in radial section showed a check at the earlywood-latewood boundary in each annual ring (fig. 19-23 Top right). Checks were least severe in the smallest logs sheared with the 22½° knife where they averaged 0.8 inch deep; they were most severe in the larger logs of low density sheared with the 45° knife where they averaged 1.4 inches deep.

In addition to the shallow checks shown in figure 19-23 (Top right), one rather lengthy check (fig. 12-23 Bottom) generally formed in each sheared log just prior to emergence of the knife.

Figure 19-24 (Top and center) illustrates a tree shear that cuts orthogonally; the anvil—hinged like tongs—closes around the back side of the tree before the $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch-thick knife begins its shear stroke. As the tree falls away from the shear, the tonglike anvil is opened and—when the tree has fallen—is clamped to the butt; the tree, with branches in place, is then skidded by the shear-equipped tractor to a concentration point. A grapple skidder then forwards the bunched trees to a centralized limbing

and loading area. It is reported that a skilled operator clear cutting on favorable terrain can shear 400 to 500 trees per 8-hour shift and bunch them for grapple skidding. Pines up to 22 inches in diameter at ground level can be cut with the shears illustrated. Other commercial models are available that cut in the manner of scissors or pruning shears; generally





F-520985

Figure 19-23.—Checks in southern pine logs caused by shearing with a $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick knife. (Top left) End-view of sheared surface. (Top right) Portion of radial section; arrow indicates pith. (Bottom) Typical longitudinal check near point of knife emergence (Photos from Koch 1971.)

in these designs, one hinged blade closes against a fixed anvil (fig. 19-24 Bottom).



Figure 19-22.—Force to shear green southern pine logs. (Top) Force related to knife travel when shearing green southern pine logs in three diameter classes (5.1, 9.7, and 13.6 inches). Circles defining curves each represent information from 12 logs; i.e., data from both high- and low-gravity logs and from both $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ and 45° knife angles were pooled. The solid point above each curve shows the average (and position of occurrence) of maximum peak forces that lasted only momentarily; they tended to occur when the knife was about three-quarters through each log. (Bottom) Relationships between maximum shearing force and factors of log diameter, specific gravity (basis of green volume and oven-dry weight), and sharpness angle. Curves plotted from regression equation 19-9 by holding all factors but the one of interest at average value. Average log diameter was 9.51 inches; average specific gravity was 0.467. (Drawings after Koch 1971.)

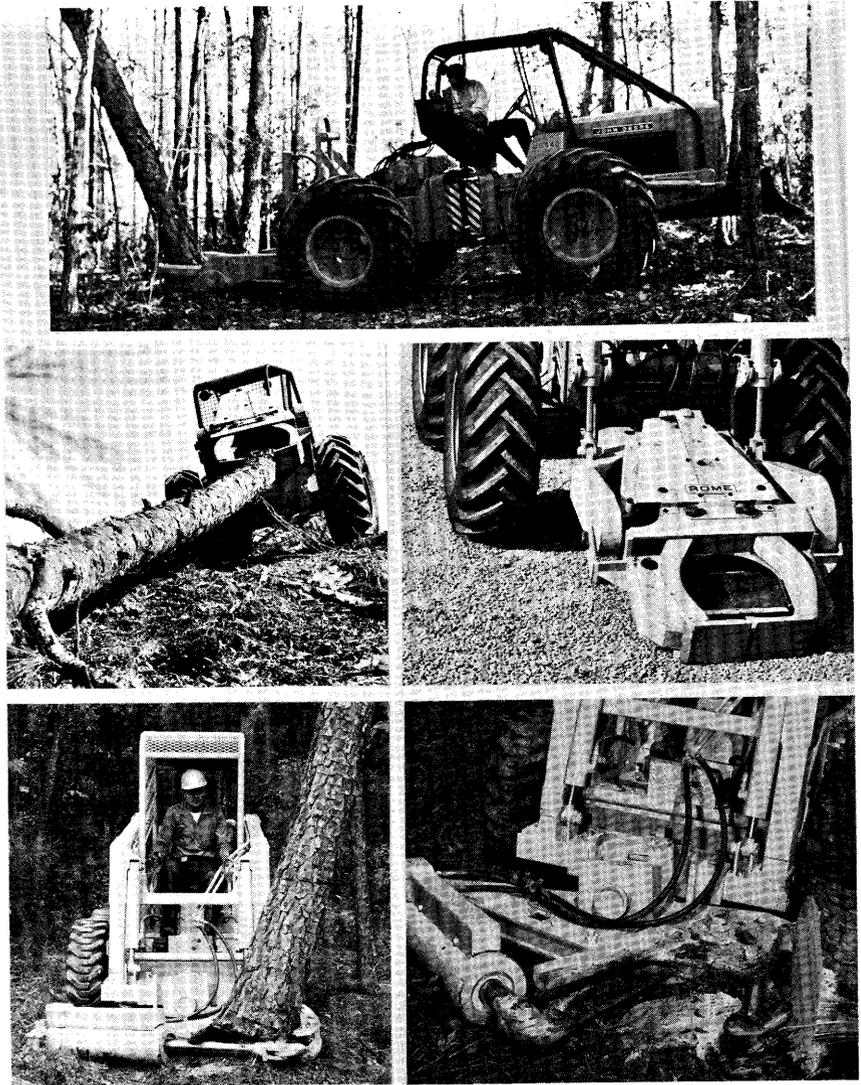


Figure 19-24.—Tractor-mounted tree shears operating in southern pine. (Top and center) Orthogonal shear: felling, short-distance skidding, mechanism. (Bottom) Hinged shear: felling, mechanism. (Top and center photos from Rome Industries, Inc.; bottom photos from J. I. Case Company.)

CLEAVING

Longitudinal splitting of a short log in the 90-0 mode (as with a hatchet) is termed **cleaving** (fig. 19-21B). The parallel cutting force (F_p) is affected by numerous factors including width of cut, distance from cutting plane to periphery of the log, sharpness angle, straightness of grain, moisture content of the wood, and wood specific gravity. Length of log has only a minor effect on maximum force required.

Koch² has provided some data specific to southern pine. Saturated and dry (13-percent moisture content) southern pine bolts 14, 28, and 42 inches long and from 4.7 to 13.5 inches in diameter were split through their centers with a 3/8-inch-thick plate ground like a common screwdriver to sharpness angles of 22½ and 45°. Table 19–20 gives some typical values. The bolts were randomly selected without regard to knot structure or straightness of grain. Knife speed was 2 inches per minute.

In the following tabulation of effects of primary variables, those values found significantly different (0.01 level) by analysis of variance appear below double asterisks (Koch²).

Factor and level	Maximum force	Work to cleave
	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Foot-pounds</i>
Moisture content	**	
Green-----	7,630	4,210
Kiln-dry (12.9 pct.)---	12,140	4,190
Specific gravity		
0.44-----	9,440	3,970
0.49-----	10,330	4,440
Sharpness angle, degrees	**	**
22.5-----	8,120	3,230
45.0-----	11,650	5,180
Bolt length, inches		**
14-----	10,880	970
28-----	9,760	3,790
42-----	9,020	7,850
Diameter of bolt, inches	**	**
4.7-----	4,260	1,320
9.4-----	9,830	3,430
13.5-----	15,560	7,870

Each value in the foregoing tabulation is an average with all data pooled except for stratification by the indicated primary variable. The specific gravities given are based on green volume and oven-dry weight.

Koch² found that splitting force (F_p) generally reached a maximum within the first inch of knife travel and diminished thereafter (fig. 19–25).

The 4.7-inch-diameter bolts required significantly less force and work to cleave than the 9.4- and 13.5-inch bolts (4,260 vs. 9,830 vs. 15,560 pounds, and 1,320 vs. 3,430 vs. 7,870 foot-pounds).

At a cutting velocity of 2 inches per minute with cutter thickness constant at 3/8-inch, peak cleaving force (F_p , pounds) of green southern pine at 60 to 80° F. can be expressed in terms of bolt diameter inside bark (inches), bolt length (inches), sharpness angle (β , degrees), and wood specific gravity (oven-dry weight and green volume):

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_p = & -13,317 \\
 & +1,154.5 \text{ (diameter)} \\
 & +1.9156 \text{ (length)} \\
 & +29.283 \text{ (sharpness angle)} \\
 & +19,545 \text{ (specific gravity)}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{19-10}$$

TABLE 19-20.—*Parallel tool force and work to longitudinally split green and dry southern pine bolts of low and high density with a $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick knife^{1 2 3 4} (Data from Koch; see text footnote²)*

Bolt diameter and length (inches)	22½° sharpness angle		45° sharpness angle	
	Force	Work	Force	Work
	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Foot-pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Foot-pounds</i>
GREEN				
4.7-inch diameter class				
14.....	2,020(2,930)	210(410)	2,830(2,540)	240(240)
28.....	2,160(3,090)	980(2,030)	2,410(2,710)	1,250(1,270)
42.....	1,830(2,960)	1,650(3,520)	3,900(2,680)	3,160(5,150)
9.4-inch diameter class				
14.....	6,550(9,280)	790(820)	7,790(6,120)	470(610)
28.....	7,010(8,480)	2,350(2,160)	7,030(7,030)	3,140(2,060)
42.....	6,200(6,610)	3,770(6,290)	7,810(6,240)	7,550(7,140)
13.5-inch diameter class				
14.....	12,580(13,880)	1,780(1,470)	11,120(13,510)	1,120(2,620)
28.....	13,890(14,050)	7,320(5,520)	12,530(13,090)	4,430(7,820)
42.....	13,470(11,110)	14,560(7,890)	10,950(16,230)	11,530(28,400)
DRY				
4.7-inch diameter class				
14.....	3,180(3,430)	130(190)	9,070(10,970)	240(610)
28.....	3,220(3,020)	700(670)	7,820(9,420)	860(1,040)
42.....	2,170(2,980)	1,210(1,750)	7,610(7,270)	2,220(1,880)
9.4-inch diameter class				
14.....	9,230(12,930)	585(1,080)	17,920(18,180)	830(1,790)
28.....	6,060(8,630)	1,190(3,770)	13,870(19,850)	3,180(6,620)
42.....	6,180(6,610)	3,430(4,910)	13,490(16,560)	5,870(11,810)
13.5-inch diameter class				
14.....	15,880(23,120)	1,600(1,950)	25,960(20,070)	2,690(880)
28.....	12,530(9,580)	4,990(2,460)	21,520(25,220)	15,680(9,450)
42.....	13,030(12,120)	11,730(10,260)	18,580(19,510)	19,320(13,350)

¹ Cutting velocity 2 inches per minute.

² The first number gives the force (or work) to split low-density bolts; the second number, in parentheses, gives the force (or work) required to split high-density bolts. Each number is an average of three replications.

³ Average moisture content of the dry bolts was 12.9 percent.

⁴ Average specific gravity of low-density bolts (basis of green volume and oven-dry weight) was 0.44; that of high-density bolts was 0.49.

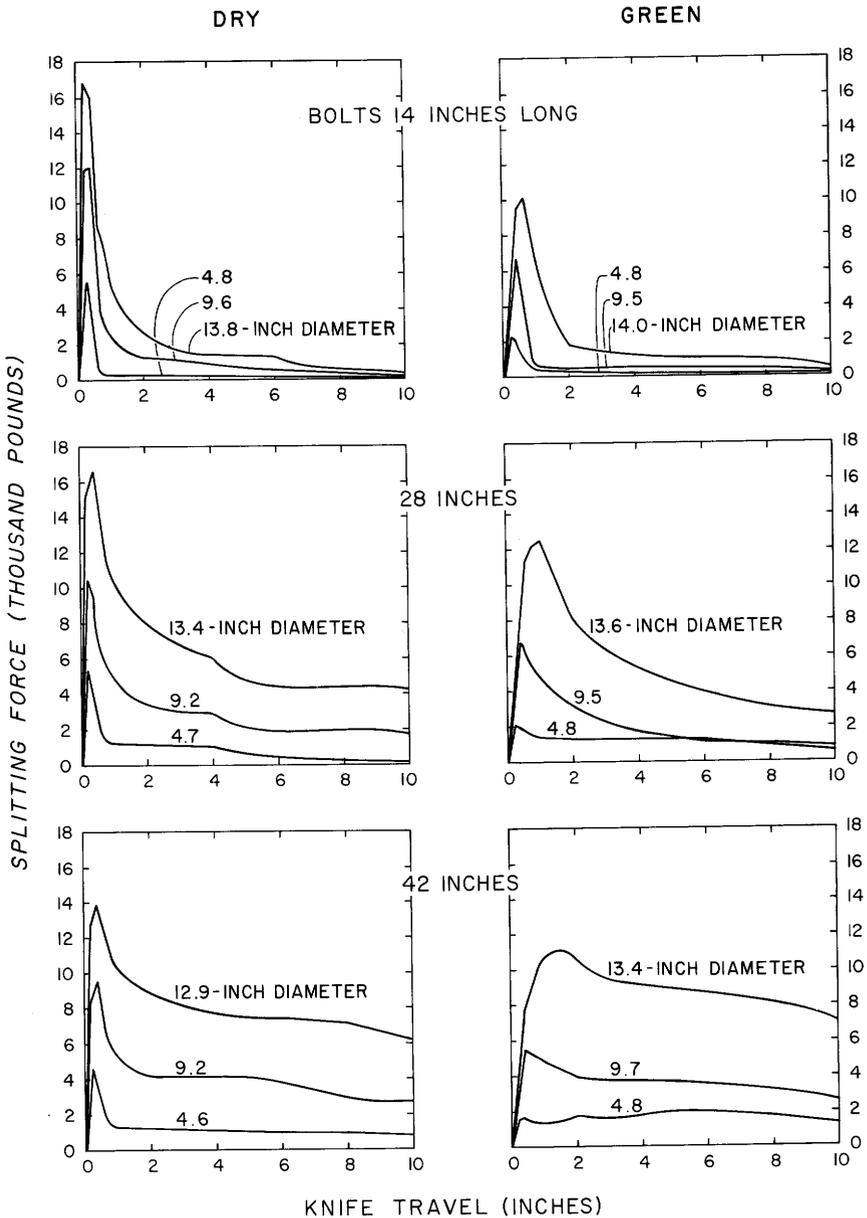


Figure 19-25.—Force to split (cleave) dry and green southern pine bolts of three diameters and three lengths as related to distance penetrated (to 10 inches) by the knife. Except at knot clusters, the force was more or less linear from the value shown at 10-inch penetration to 0 at emergence of the knife at the end of the bolt. Each curve is based on data from 12 bolts with data for both specific gravity classes and both sharpness angles pooled. (Drawing after Koch².)

Within the range of the factors tested (sharpness angles $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ to 45° , bolt diameters 3.3 to 17.8 inches, bolt length 14 to 42 inches, and specific gravity on oven-dry weight and green volume basis (0.40 to 0.53), equation 19-10 accounted for 89 percent of the variation with standard error of the estimate of 1,584 pounds. (See fig. 19-26.) Peak force to cleave average 7,627 pounds.

Force to cleave green was minimum if a $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ knife was used on bolts that were short, of low gravity, and of small diameter.

For dry southern pine, moisture content (percent) was also a factor in determining peak cleaving force (F_p , pounds):

$$\begin{aligned}
 F_p = & -23,230 \\
 & +1,429.4 \text{ (diameter)} \\
 & -108.23 \text{ (length)} \\
 & +309.12 \text{ (sharpness angle)} \\
 & +30,850 \text{ (specific gravity)} \\
 & +35.943 \text{ (moisture content)}
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{19-11}$$

Within the range of factors tested, equation 19-11 accounted for 85 percent of the variation with standard error of the estimate of 2,854 pounds. (See fig. 19-26.) Peak force to cleave averaged 12,140 pounds; it was minimum for dry wood if a $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ knife was used to cut bolts of low specific gravity and of small diameter.

When simple expressions with the form and factors of equations 19-10 and 19-11 were used to predict work to cleave green and dry bolts, percent of variation accounted for was low (53 and 72 percent). More complex models (see Koch³), however, provided equations that accounted for 73 percent of the observed variation in green bolts and 86 percent of the variation in dry bolts. The various interactions are illustrated in figure 19-27. Work to cleave green bolts averaged 4,215 foot-pounds, that for dry bolts averaged 2,069 foot-pounds.

For both green and dry bolts, regression analysis showed that work to cleave was lowest for short specimens of small diameter and low specific gravity cut with the $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ knife. By regression analysis, work to cleave kiln-dried bolts proved positively correlated with moisture content in the range from 9 to 20 percent; analysis of variance, however, did not indicate that green bolts required more work to split than dry bolts.

Of the 216 bolts split by Koch³, only a few were knot free. Only rarely, however, did split surfaces expose knots; typically they followed the pith closely, were irregular, and revealed some spiral grain close to the pith.

19-4 PERIPHERAL MILLING PARALLEL TO GRAIN³

Peripheral milling, or planing, may be defined as the removal of excess wood in the form of single chips formed by intermittent engagement with the workpiece of knives carried on the periphery of a rotating cutter-

³ Sec. 19-4 is condensed from Koch (1954, 1955, 1956, 1964b).

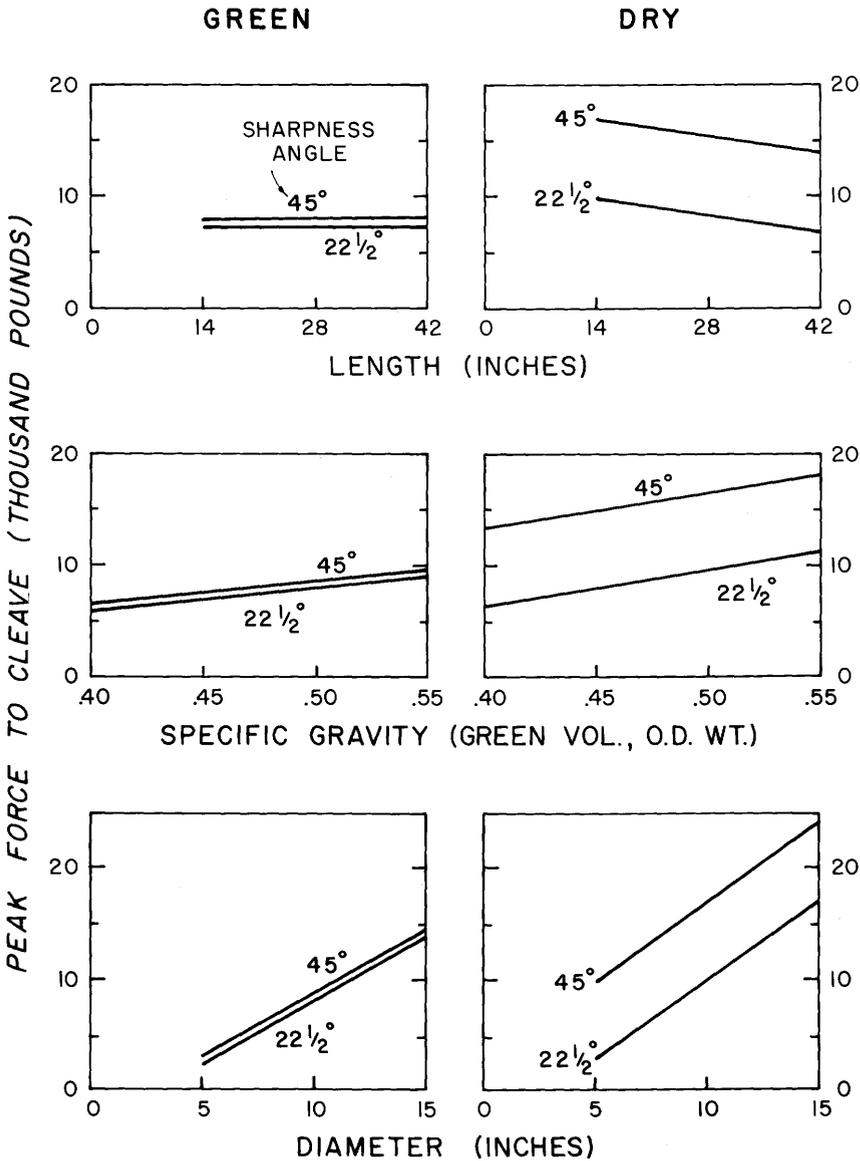


Figure 19-26.—Significant interactions and relationships that affect the peak force required to cleave green (left) and dry (right) southern pine logs or bolts with a 3/8-inch-thick knife travelling at 2 inches per minute. The curves were plotted from equations 19-10 and 10-11 by holding all values but one at their mean (or stated) values and allowing the factor named on the abscissa to vary throughout the range tested. (Drawing after Koch².)

head. The cutterhead usually carries several knives, removable for sharpening, which are precisely adjusted to cut in a common cutting circle. Final adjustment involves **jointing** the knives with an abrasive hone while the cutterhead revolves at operating speed. The finished surface therefore con-

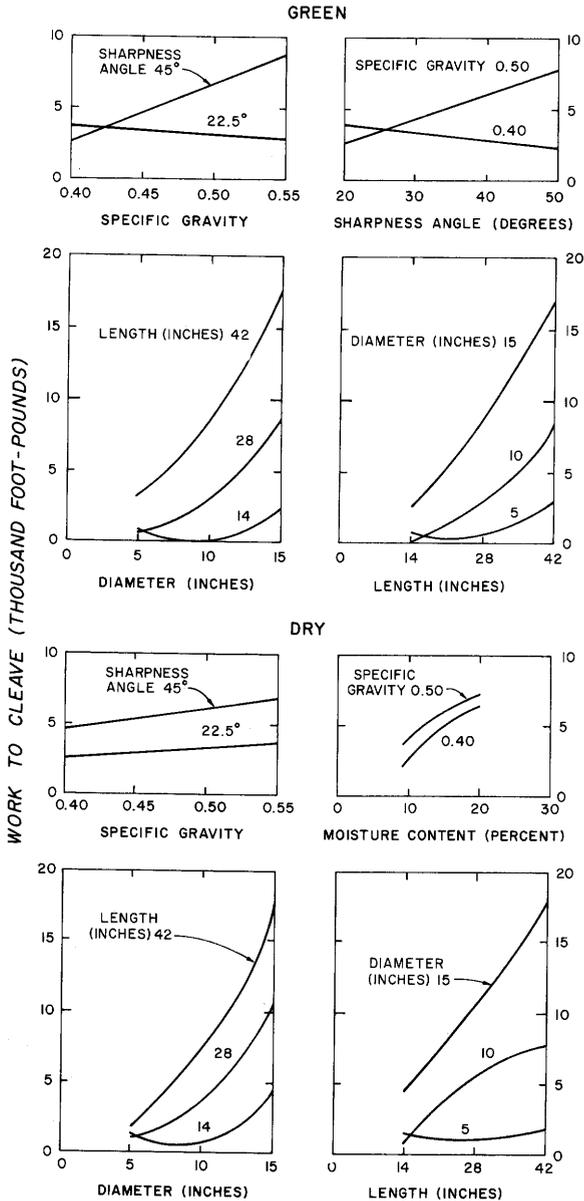


Figure 19-27.—Work required to cleave green (top) and dry (bottom) southern pine logs or bolts with a $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick knife travelling at 2 inches per minute. The curves were plotted from regression equations by holding all values but one at their mean (or stated) values and allowing the factor named on the abscissa to vary throughout the range tested. (Drawings after Koch².)

sists of a series of individual knife traces generated by the successive engagement of each knife.

A detailed treatment of the kinematics, force systems, and chip severance phenomenon is available (Koch 1964b).

NOMENCLATURE

Figures 19-28 and 19-29 illustrate nomenclature in peripheral milling.

KINEMATICS

In conventional planers, the engaged knives move counter to the movement of the workpiece—an action termed **up-milling** (fig. 19-30A); if the engaged knives move in the same direction as the workpiece, the process is called **down-milling** (fig. 19-30B).

The trochoidal path taken by each knife tip can be represented (fig. 19-30C) by considering the workpiece fixed in space and allowing the cutterhead to rotate about a roll circle of a diameter that gives a relative translatory velocity equal to the desired feed speed.

Feed per jointed knife (F_t) can be stated:

$$F_t = \frac{12F}{Tn} \quad (19-12)$$

The distance between knife marks can be reduced by decreasing the feed speed, increasing the number of jointed knives in the cutterhead, or by increasing the cutterhead speed.

If the knives are accurately jointed, for up-milling the wave height can be expressed:

$$h = \frac{F_t^2}{8\left(R + \frac{F_t T}{\pi}\right)} \quad (19-13)$$

Wave height can be reduced by increasing the radius of the cutterhead or by decreasing the feed per knife.

For up-milling the length of knife path engagement is as follows:

$$L = R \arccos\left(1 - \frac{d}{R}\right) + \frac{F_t T}{\pi D} (Dd - d^2)^{1/2} \quad (19-14)$$

When up-milling, the average thickness of the undeformed chip can be stated:

$$t_{\text{avg}} = \frac{F_t d}{L} \quad (19-15)$$

The significance of these formulae can be visualized from a tabulation of the dimensions of chips and surfaces produced by two commonly used up-milling cutterheads. For purposes of comparison, it is assumed that both heads rotate at 3,450 revolutions per minute (r.p.m.) and take a $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch-deep cut.

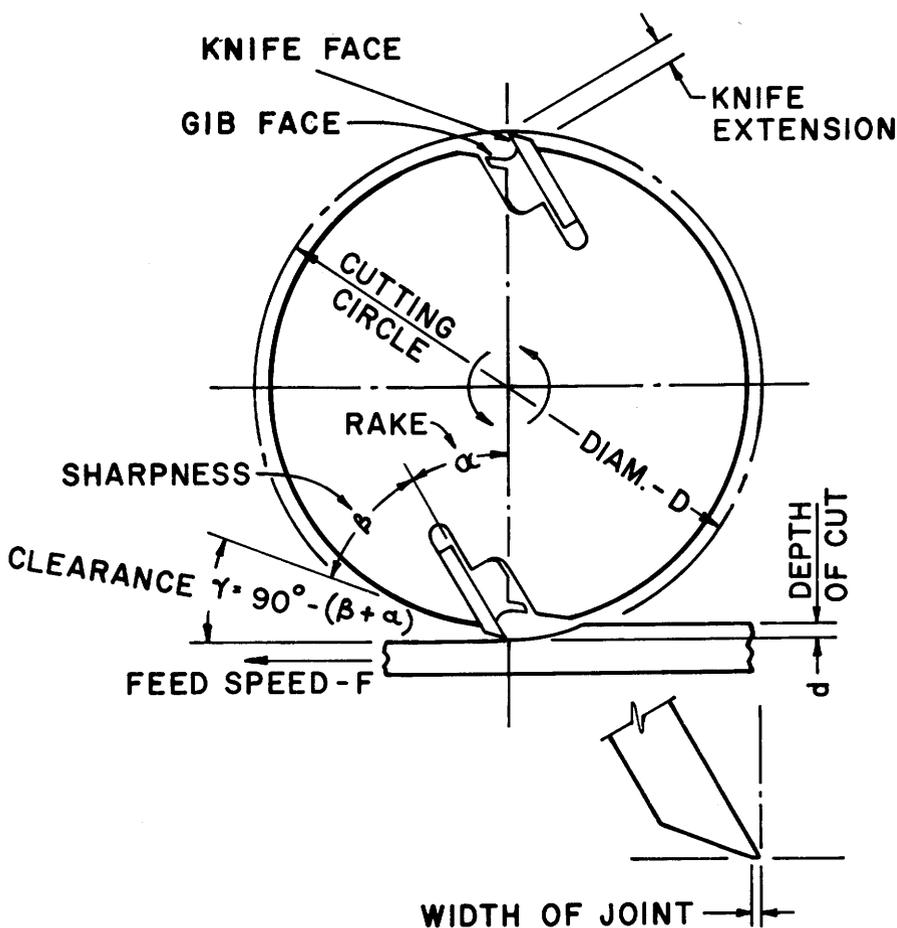


Figure 19-28.—Terminology for peripheral-milling cutterhead. Up-milling illustrated.

- α Rake angle, degrees
- β Sharpness angle, degrees
- γ Clearance angle, degrees
- d Depth of cut, inches
- D Cutting-circle diameter, inches
- F Feed speed of workpiece, feet per minute

(Drawing after Koch 1955.)

Dimension	T = eight knives D = nine inches F = 300 f.p.m.	T = 16 knives D = 11 inches F = 1,000 f.p.m.
	Inch	Inch
F_t	0.130	0.217
h	0.441×10^{-3}	0.891×10^{-3}
L	1.100	1.289
l_{avg}	0.015	0.021

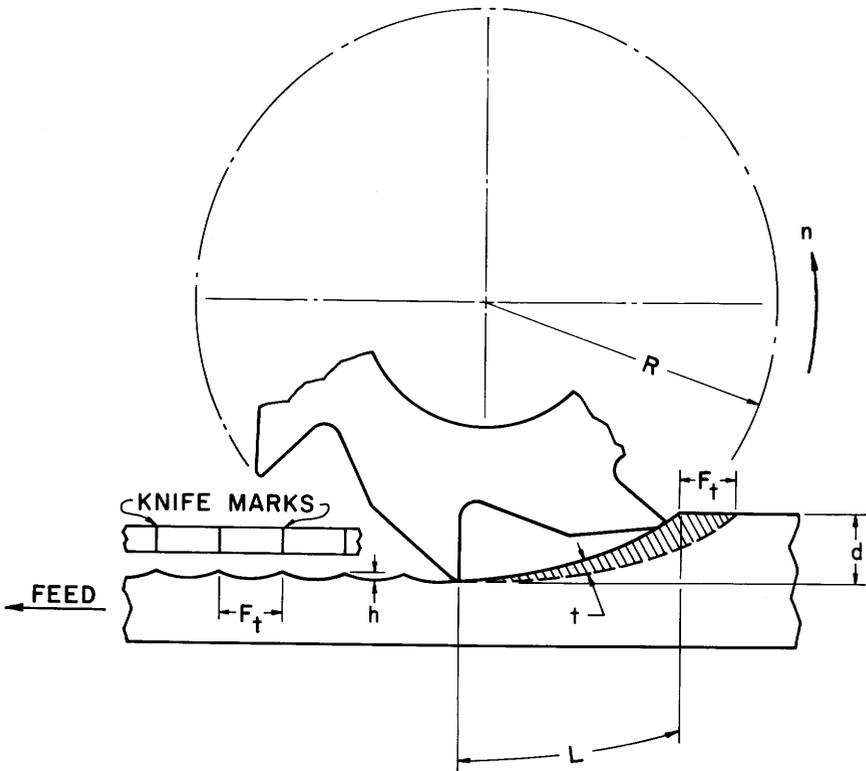


Figure 19-29.—Path generated by up-milling knife.

- F_t Feed per knife; translation of the workpiece between engagement of successive knives, inch
- h Height of knife marks above point of lowest level, inch
- L Length of knife path during each engagement with the workpiece, inches
- n Revolutions per minute of cutterhead, r.p.m.
- R Cutting-circle radius, inches
- $t_{avg.}$ Average thickness of undeformed chip, inch
- T Number of jointed knives in the cutterhead
- d Depth of cut, inch

(Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 113, WOOD MACHING PROCESSES Copyright © 1964 The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

CHIP FORMATION

Koch's (1954, 1955, 1956) high-speed photographs of up-milling knives cutting Douglas-fir, *Pseudotsuga Menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco (none for southern pine have been published) show the same chip formations observed in orthogonal cutting of southern pine in the 90-0 or planing direction (e.g., figs. 19-3, 19-5, 19-6). Peripheral up-milling differs in one important respect from 90-0 orthogonal cutting; while the initial up-milling cut is essentially parallel to the grain, the emerging cut may be at a considerable angle to the grain (fig. 19-31). Furthermore, in peripheral up-milling the undeformed chip thickness constantly changes from a

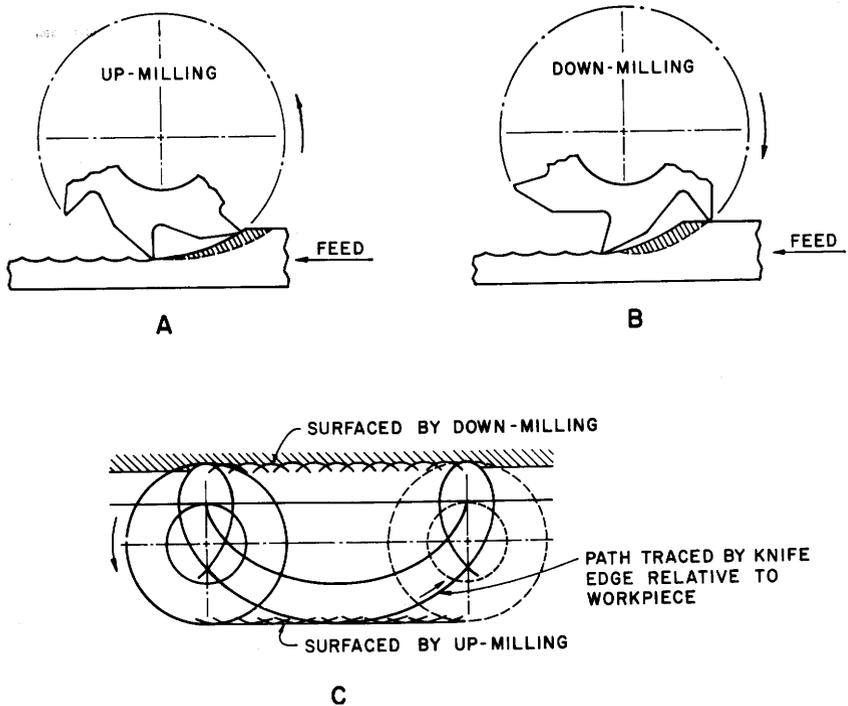


Figure 19-30.—(A) Up-milling. (B) Down-milling. (C) Knife path, relative to workpiece, is a curvate trochoid. (Drawings after Peter Koch, 1964b, *WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES*, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

minute value at contact to a maximum just prior to emergence; chips cut at emergence are frequently Franz Type I (fig. 19-31).

Fortunately, the part of the knife path that remains visible on the machined surface is the initial portion where chip thickness is minute; a Franz Type II failure can therefore be induced (figs. 19-32 and 19-44). With very low rake angles, Type III chips are common (fig. 19-33).

SURFACE QUALITY

Quality of the machined surface is primarily determined by the cutting geometry and the type of chip formed. In general, machined surfaces are improved by maintaining low values for F_t (feed per knife) and h (height of knife marks); this is accomplished by increasing the cutting-circle diameter and the number of jointed knives in the cutterhead and by reducing the feed speed. A good surface on dry southern pine requires an F_t of less than $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch, and an h of less than 0.00044 inch. Cutterhead speed is commonly fixed at a nominal 3,600 r.p.m. because this is the synchronous speed of the usual motor mounted direct on the spindle; further, 3,600 r.p.m. is the highest speed at which knives can be consistently jointed so that they all track in the same path and share equally in the cut.



Figure 19-31.—An eight-knife, 9-inch cutterhead rotating at 3,450 r.p.m. taking $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch depth of cut at 300 f.p.m. from flat-grain Douglas-fir. Moisture content, 10 percent; rake angle, $17^{\circ}10'$; clearance, $32^{\circ}50'$; surface quality, unsatisfactory. Net cutterhead horsepower required per inch of workpiece width, 3.70. (Data and photo from Koch 1954, p. 123.)

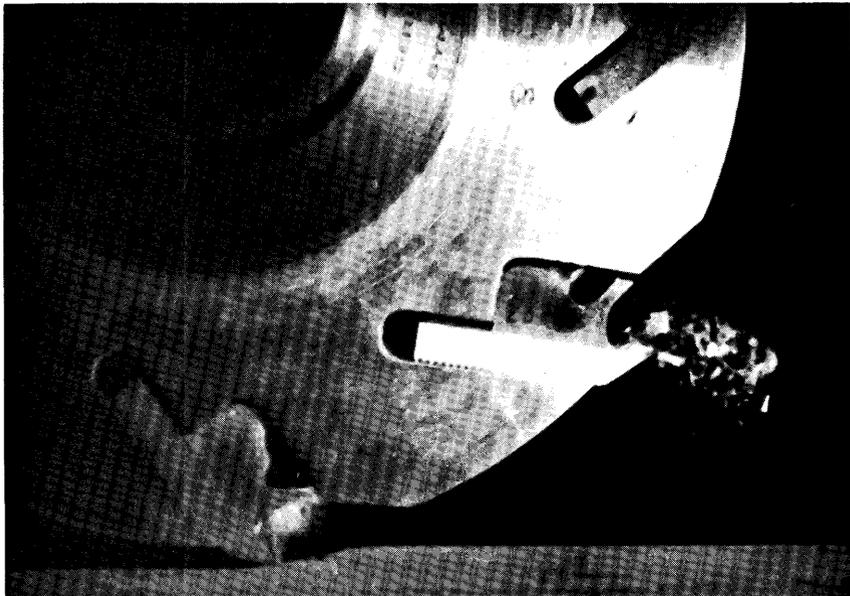


Figure 19-32.—A Type II chip formed by an eight-knife, 9-inch cutterhead turning at 3,450 r.p.m. taking a $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch depth cut at 307 f.p.m. on dry (9 percent) Douglas-fir of low specific gravity. Rake angle, 30° ; clearance angle, 20° ; net cutterhead power required per inch of workpiece width, 0.93 hp. (Data and photo from Koch 1954, p. 275.)

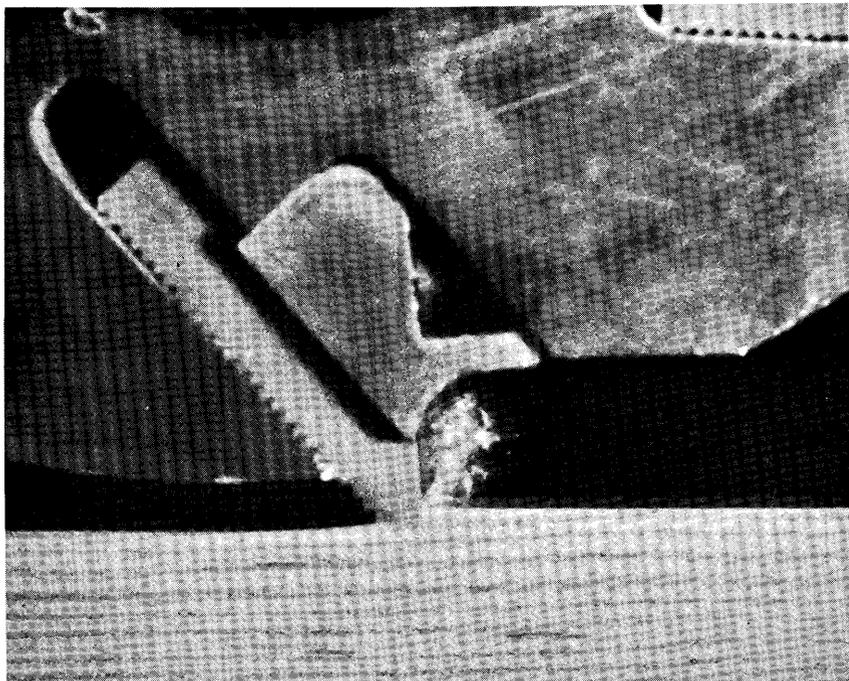


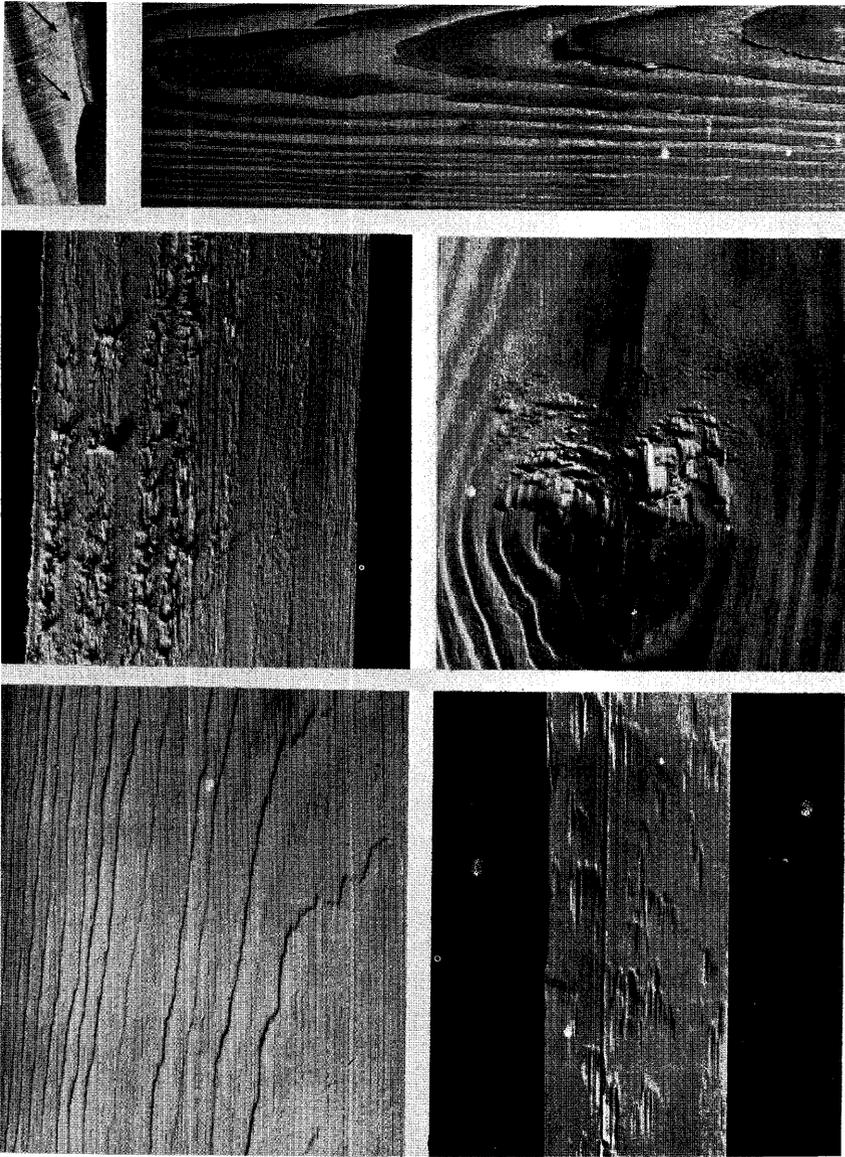
Figure 19-33.—Type III chip formed by up-milling dry Douglas-fir $3/32$ -inch deep with knife having a rake angle of -5° . Cutterhead speed, 3,500 r.p.m. (Photo from Koch 1954, p. 173.)

The best surfaces result when Type II chips are formed during the early part of knife engagement (fig. 19-32). For southern pine of varying moisture content, rake angles from 20 to 30° in combination with a clearance angle of about 20° (not less than 15°) are appropriate. Type II chips are more likely to occur with shallow cuts (less than $1/8$ -inch) than with deep cuts, but are difficult to form if wood is planed against a sloping grain.

Type III chips (fig. 19-33) tend to cause incomplete fiber severance and **fuzzy grain** (fig. 19-34); the defect is a particular problem when cutting wet wood with knives of low rake angle. Type I chips—if the splits run below the cutting plane—cause **chipped grain** (fig. 19-34).

Dull knives, knives that have been jointed too many times between sharpenings, and knives with insufficient clearance angle cause **raised grain**—a roughened condition in which hard latewood is raised above the softer springwood but not torn loose from it (fig. 19-34). The defect may show up subsequent to machining, as the wood swells when exposed to high humidity.

When a dry flat-grain southern pine board is planed with dull knives, impact of the knives may cause the latewood bands to separate from earlywood; this defect is called **loosened grain** (fig. 19-34 Top).



F-520986

Figure 19-34.—Typical machining defects in southern pine. (Top) Loosened grain; arrows at left indicate location of partially crushed wood and separation at earlywood-latewood border. (Middle left) Fuzzy grain. (Middle right) Chipped grain. (Lower left) Raised grain. (Lower right) Chipmarks.

The defect of **chip marks** is caused by shavings or fiber bundles that fold over and adhere to the cutting edge so that they are carried around and indented into the surface of the wood (fig. 19-34). Most pine is not particularly subject to this defect, but some pieces characteristically show

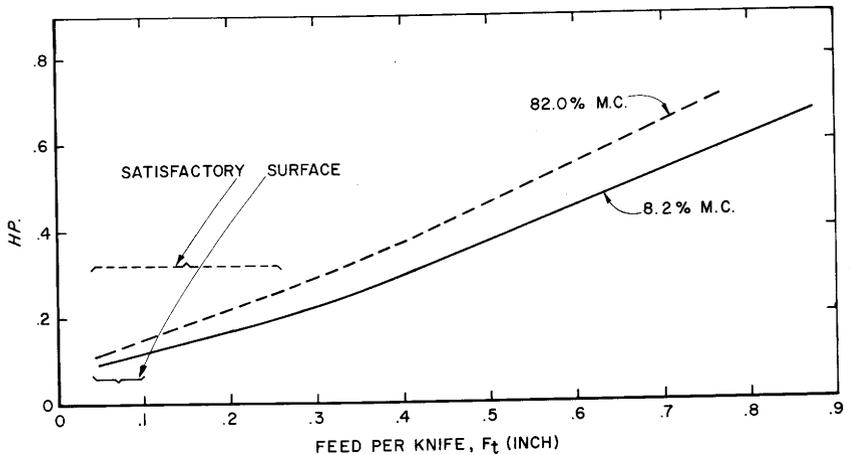


Figure 19-35.—Effect of moisture content on the net cutterhead power required per inch of workpiece width by a single knife cutting Douglas-fir at various feeds per knife. Rake angle, 30°; depth of cut, 1/16-inch; cutting-circle diameter 9.02 inches; nominal speed, 3,600 r.p.m. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 122, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

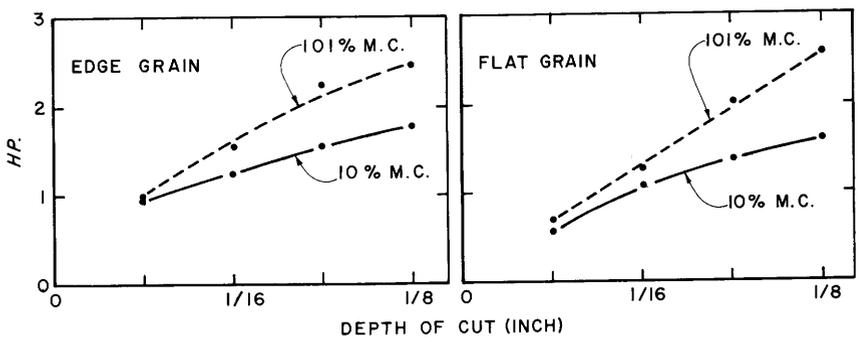


Figure 19-36.—Shallow cuts in flat-grain Douglas-fir require less net cutterhead horsepower per inch of workpiece width than in edge grain wood when cut with an eight-knife, 9-inch-diameter cutterhead rotating at 3,600 r.p.m.; rake angle, 30°; feed speed, 298 f.p.m. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 124, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

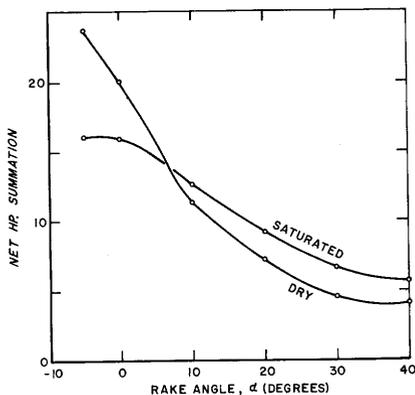


Figure 19-37.—In milling Douglas-fir, more power is required for saturated than for dry wood, except at very low or negative rake angles (data pooled for all depths of cut and all clearance angles). $F_t = 0.127$ inch with 9-inch-diameter cutterhead turning at 3,600 r.p.m. (Drawing after Koch 1955.)

chip marks. While a remedy is difficult to find, wiping each knife edge with a solvent-soaked rag sometimes helps. Inadequate suction in the blowpipe system aggravates the problem.

A well-illustrated and more detailed discussion of the causes and remedies for raised, loosened, torn, chipped, and fuzzy grain is available (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955).

For a greatly magnified view of a surface cut by a peripheral-milling cutterhead see figure 25-8.

FACTORS AFFECTING POWER

No information specific to southern pine has been published; trends apparent in Koch's (1954, 1955, 1956, 1964b) data on Douglas-fir, however, should be generally applicable to southern pine. Detailed discussion of the causes behind the effect of each factor are available (Koch 1964b, p. 121).

Workpiece factors.—With commonly used rake angles, more cutterhead power is required to plane wet wood than dry because of the power consumed accelerating heavy wet chips (figs. 19-35, 19-36). With very low or negative rake angles, however, dry wood takes more power than wet (fig. 19-37); this is reasonable inasmuch as knives with low rake angles form Type III chips by compressing the wood parallel to the grain, and dry wood is much stronger than wet when so loaded.

Flat-grain wood has more of a tendency to split ahead of the knife than does edge-grain wood; therefore, flat-grain wood may require less power to mill (fig. 19-36).

Because wood of high density is strong and the heavy chips require substantial energy for acceleration to cutting velocity, high-density wood requires more power to plane than that of low density (fig. 19-38).

Cutterhead factors.—Net power required for a cutterhead is affected by:

Cutting velocity	Width of joint
Cutting-circle diameter	Knife extension beyond face of gib
Number of jointed knives cutting	Shape of gib face
Rake angle	Angle between rotational axis of
Clearance angle	cutterhead and direction of feed
Sharpness of cutting edge	

Koch (1964b, p. 142) has calculated the power required to accelerate chips to commonly used cutting velocities. For example, if $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch is planed from one face of saturated 2- by 12-inch planks at 1,000 f.p.m., with an 11-inch diameter cutterhead turning at 3,450 r.p.m., 10.1 hp. are required just to accelerate the chips to the cutting velocity of 182 feet per second.

A cutterhead of 11-inch-diameter cuts a better surface than a comparable one 9 inches in diameter because the wave height (h) is less. At the same speed of rotation, the larger head requires more power because of its greater cutting velocity; e.g., 3.4 percent more with dry Douglas-fir

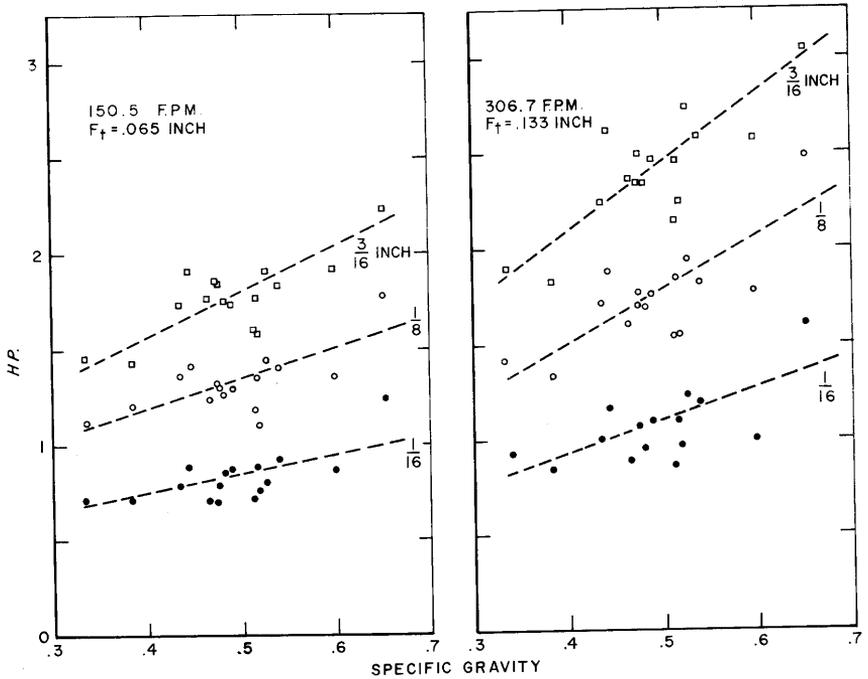


Figure 19-38.—Effect of specific gravity (basis of oven-dry weight and volume) of Douglas-fir on net cutterhead horsepower per inch of workpiece width. Data are for two feed speeds (150.5 and 306.7 feet per minute) and three depths of cut with an eight-knife, 9-inch cutterhead turning at 3,600 r.p.m. Rake angle, 30°. Moisture content, 8.5 percent. (Drawing after Koch 1956.)

and 10.8 percent more with saturated fir (Koch 1956). Figure 19-39 illustrates the difference if data for green and dry wood are pooled.

At feed speeds below $F_t = 0.3$ inch and cuts less than $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch deep, horsepower demand increases with number of jointed knives cutting, although in no case does a doubling of the number of knives cause a doubling of power demand (see fig. 19-40 in the range from six to 12 knives). With deep cuts and values of F_t over 0.3, power demand may be negatively correlated with number of knives cutting because the large chips formed cannot readily escape from the knife; such clogging (fig. 19-41A) explains the high power demand for the two-knife, $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch cut in figure 19-40.

Net cutterhead power is inversely correlated with rake angle; figure 19-37 shows the interaction of rake angle with moisture content. Power required rises sharply with decreased rake angle, reaching a point of inflection between plus 15 and minus 5° (fig. 19-42); with dry wood a rake angle of 15° requires about half as much power as a 0° angle, and about twice as much as a 30° angle. With saturated wood, a rake angle of 25 to 30° requires about half the power required by a 0° angle. Application of this knowledge must be tempered by the fact that a 40° rake

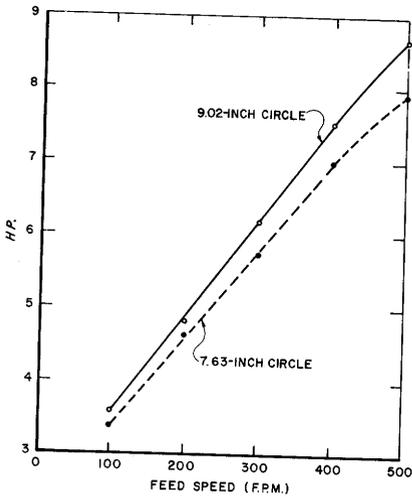


Figure 19-39.—Effect of cutting circle diameter and feed speed on net cutterhead horsepower (summed data for green and dry Douglas-fir and two-, four-, and eight-knife heads). For both diameters, rake angle was 30° , depth of cut $1/16$ -inch, and cutterhead speed 3,600 r.p.m. (Drawing after Koch 1956.)

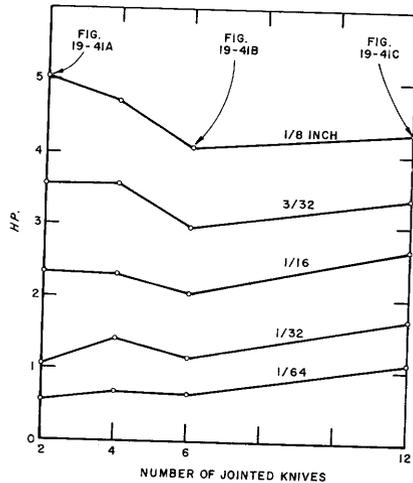


Figure 19-40.—Effect of number of knives and depths of cut on net cutterhead horsepower per inch of workpiece width. Feed speed, 500 f.p.m.; rake angle, $27\frac{1}{2}^\circ$; moisture content, 7.33 percent; cutting-circle diameter, 9.44 inches; nominal speed of cutterhead, 3,600 r.p.m.; species, Douglas-fir. (Drawing after Koch 1955.)

angle will probably cause chipped grain, and a zero or negative rake angle will cause fuzzy grain on saturated wood and raised grain on dry wood (fig. 19-34).

Clearance angle is negatively correlated with net cutterhead power required. The trend is not pronounced; tests have shown that a 5° clearance angle causes about 9 percent more power consumption than a 30° angle (Koch 1955). Practical limitations usually govern selection of clearance angle. For example, a clearance angle of 30° in combination with a rake angle of 40° results in a cutting edge too fragile for most applications. On the other hand, a 5° clearance angle causes an undesirable width of joint (fig. 19-28) after even the lightest of jointing operations. A small clearance angle in combination with a heavy joint causes raised grain (fig. 19-34).

Dull knives (fig. 19-8) increase power consumption in addition to causing fuzzy and raised grain as wear reduces effective rake angle. Knives that have been heavily jointed require extra power for the same reason as knives having small clearance angle, i.e., the feed of the workpiece pushes the cut surface against the back of the knife as it nears the end of its cutting path (fig. 19-43).

Up to a certain critical value, the knife extension beyond the face of the gib (fig. 19-28) is negatively correlated with horsepower requirement of the cutterhead. For example, Koch (1956) has shown that with flat-face gibs (fig. 19-44), the knife edge should be extended at least 0.3 inch

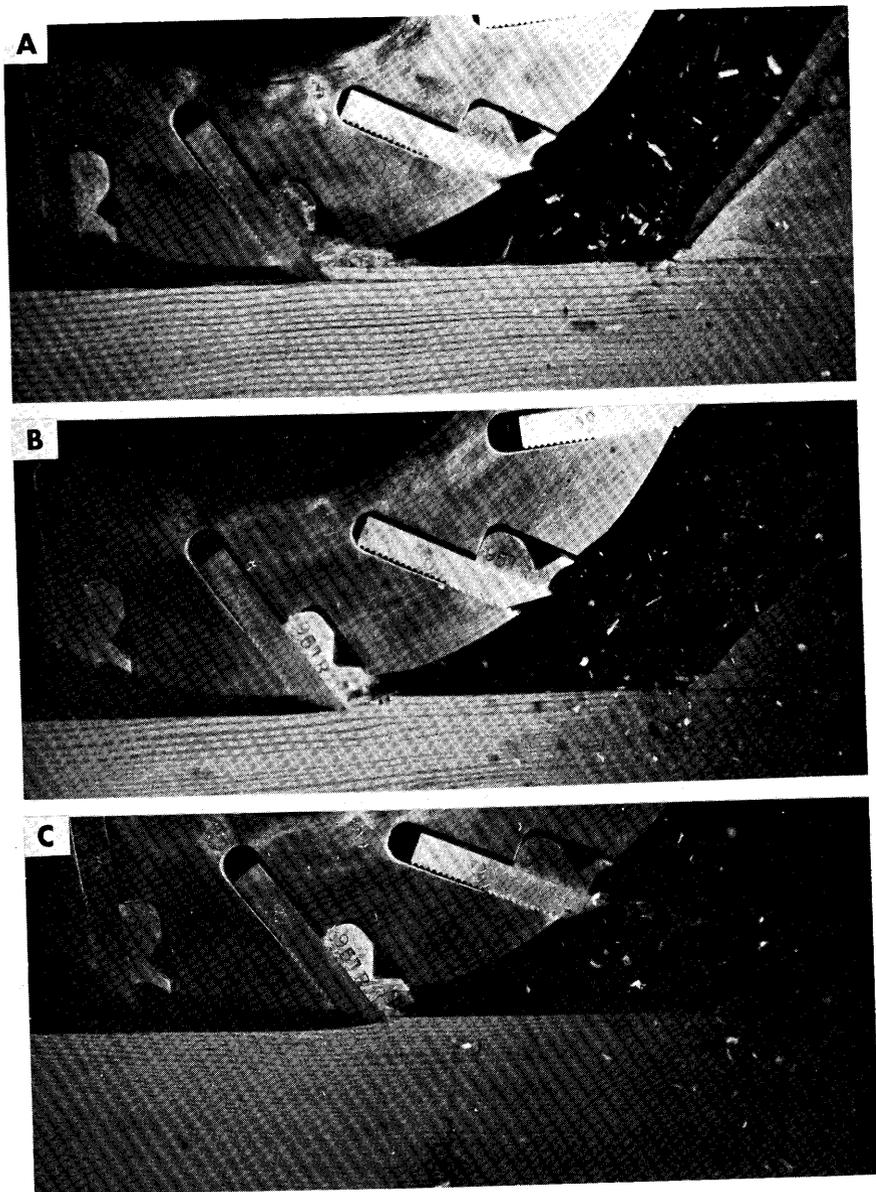


Figure 19-41.—Chips formed by $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch depth cut at 500 f.p.m. under conditions outlined in figure 19-40. (A) Two knives (every sixth knife cutting). (B) Six knives. (C) All 12 knives cutting. (Photos from Koch 1955.)

beyond the gib if power is to be minimized when making a $\frac{3}{32}$ -inch cut at an F_t of 0.13 inch; under these conditions required power increases about 40 percent if the extension is reduced to 0.15 inch.

The flat-face gibs of figure 19-44 require 25 percent more cutterhead power than do concave gibs when making identical $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch cuts with

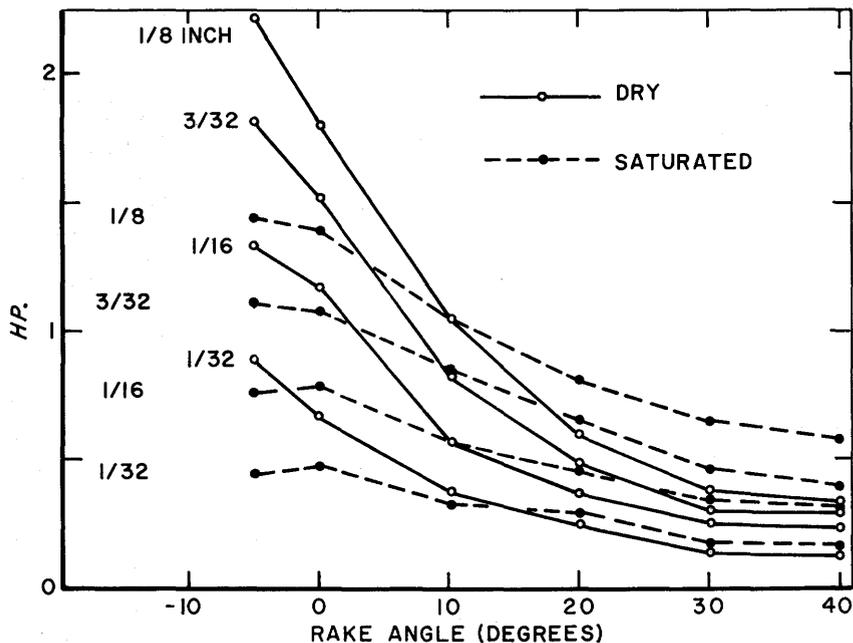


Figure 19-42.—Effect of rake angle and depth of cut on net cutterhead power requirement (per inch of workpiece width) for planing dry and saturated Douglas-fir. F_t , 0.127 inch; clearance angle, 20° ; cutting circle diameter, 9.05 inches; nominal speed, 3,600 r.p.m. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 149, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

eight knives at 300 f.p.m. (Koch 1955). It is evident from figure 19-44 that very abrupt chip deformation is caused by the flat-faced gib. Figure 19-32 illustrates how the cutterhead body should be relieved to conform to gib shape.

If the cutterhead is slewed so that its rotational axis makes an angle other than 90° with the direction of feed, each element of each cutting edge cuts at an angle to the grain direction. The effective knife extension and rake angle are increased by an amount dependent on the angle through which slewed, the feed speed, and the cutterhead peripheral velocity; therefore cutterhead power is slightly reduced (fig. 19-45).

Feed factors.—In the special case where F_t is held constant while feed speed is increased (i.e., the number of knives in the cutterhead is doubled each time the feed speed is doubled), the horsepower requirement *per knife* is approximately constant within the feed speed range from 100 to 1,000 f.p.m.

In the more general case in which all other factors remain constant, an increase in feed speed increases the height of the individual knife marks and increases the distance between them, lowering surface quality and raising cutterhead power demand (fig. 19-46). With cuts less than $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch deep, the horsepower requirement does not double when F_t is doubled;

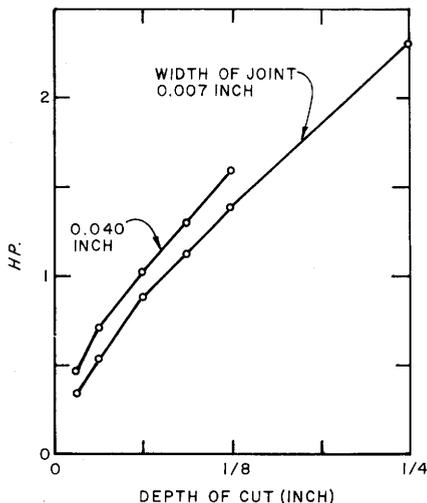


Figure 19-43.—Effect of width of joint on net horsepower requirement per inch of workpiece width. F_t , 0.0895 inch; rake angle, 30° ; moisture content, 8.9 percent; cutting-circle diameter, 9.08 inches; nominal speed, 3,600 r.p.m.; species, Douglas-fir. (Drawing after Koch 1956.)

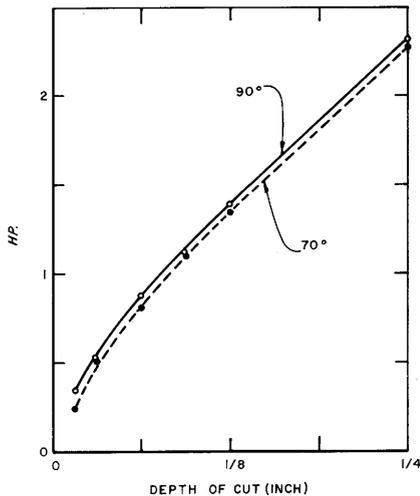


Figure 19-45.—Effect on net cutterhead horsepower (per inch of workpiece width) of changing angle between cutterhead axis and feed direction from 90° to 70° . Douglas-fir; 8.9-percent moisture content; eight-knife, 206-f.p.m., 3,600-r.p.m. cutterhead. (Drawing after Koch 1956.)

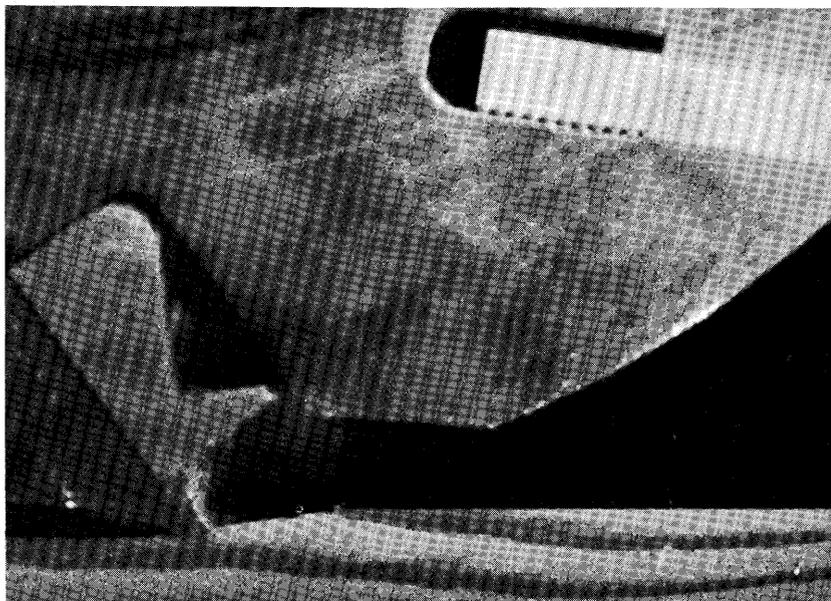


Figure 19-44.—Chips are severely deformed and have difficulty escaping from cutterheads equipped with flat-faced gibs. Curved gibs shown in figures 19-32 and 19-33, although not ideally contoured, permit chip to escape with less breakage. (Photo from Koch 1955.)

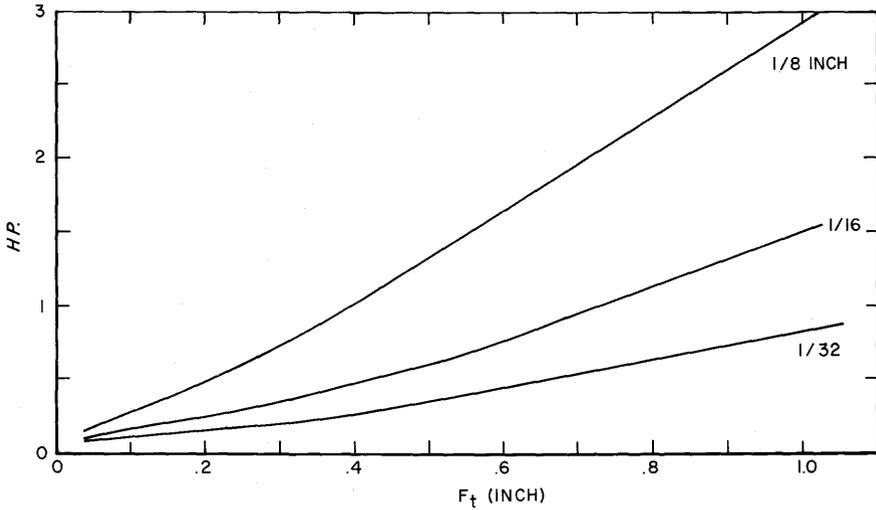


Figure 19-46.—Effect of feed per knife (F_t) on net cutterhead power (per knife per inch of workpiece width). Data for three depths of cut in Douglas-fir at 7.3-percent moisture content. Rake angle, $27\frac{1}{2}^\circ$; cutting-circle diameter, 9.44 inches; nominal speed, 3,600 r.p.m. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 157, *WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES*, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

in other words, it takes less energy to cut a given volume of wood into long chips than into short.

Depth of cut is positively correlated with cutterhead power demand. With conventional feeds per knife (F_t of less than 0.2 inch) and relatively shallow cuts, cutterhead power demand falls short of doubling when depth of cut is doubled; under these conditions it generally requires less energy to remove a given volume of wood in a single cut than in two shallow cuts (fig. 19-40). Where F_t exceeds 0.5 inch, however, some tests have shown that horsepower requirement per knife is approximately proportional to depth of cut, i.e., a $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch cut takes nearly twice as much power as a $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch cut and nearly four times as much as a $\frac{1}{32}$ -inch cut (fig. 19-46).

DOWN MILLING

Most conventional planing is accomplished by the up-milling process as described in the previous portion of this section. Some machining, however is performed in the down-milling mode (fig. 19-47). In addition, the development of the **chipping headrig**, which reduces logs to square or rectangular timbers plus pulp chips (no sawdust), has stimulated interest in down-milling (Koch 1964a).

As with up-milling, the feed per jointed knife is given by the equation:

$$F_t = \frac{12F}{Tn} \quad (19-12)$$

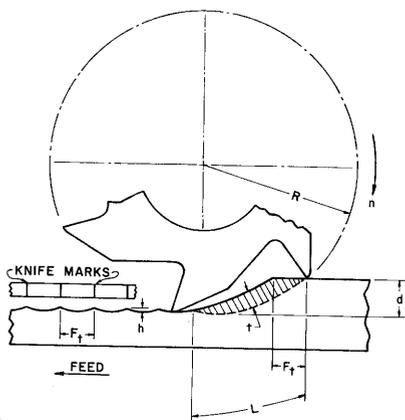


Figure 19-47.—Path generated by down-milling knife. The path of knife engagement is shorter than in up-milling because feed of workpiece shortens time knife is cutting.

- d** Depth of cut, inch
F_t Feed per knife; translation of the workpiece between engagement of successive knives, inch
h Height of knife marks above point of lowest level, inch
L Length of knife path during each engagement with the workpiece, inches
n Revolutions per minute of cutterhead, r.p.m.
R Cutting-circle radius, inches
t_{avg.} Average thickness of undeformed chip, inch
T Number of jointed knives in the cutterhead

(Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES Copyright © 1964 The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

The distance between knife marks is reduced by decreasing the feed speed, increasing the cutterhead speed, or by increasing the number of jointed knives carried in the cutterhead.

If the knives have been jointed to a common cutting circle, the wave height can be expressed:

$$h = \frac{R}{8} \left[\frac{F_t}{R - \frac{F_t T}{2\pi}} \right]^2 \quad (19-16)$$

As in up-milling, wave height can be reduced by increasing the radius of the cutterhead and by decreasing the feed per knife.

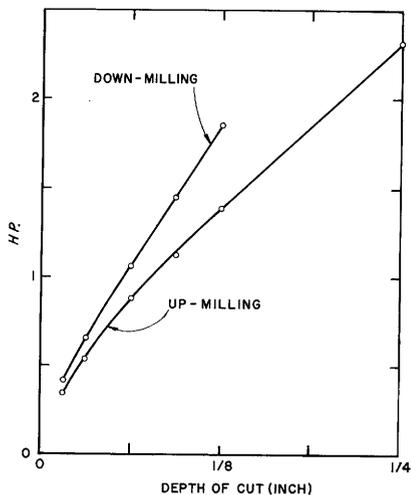


Figure 19-48.—Net cutterhead power per inch of workpiece width in up-milling, as compared to down-milling. F_t , 0.0895 inch; rake angle, 30° ; feed speed, 206 f.p.m.; cutting-circle diameter, 9.08 inches; cutterhead speed, 3,600 r.p.m.; number of knives, eight; species, Douglas-fir at 8.9-percent moisture content. (Drawing after Koch 1956.)

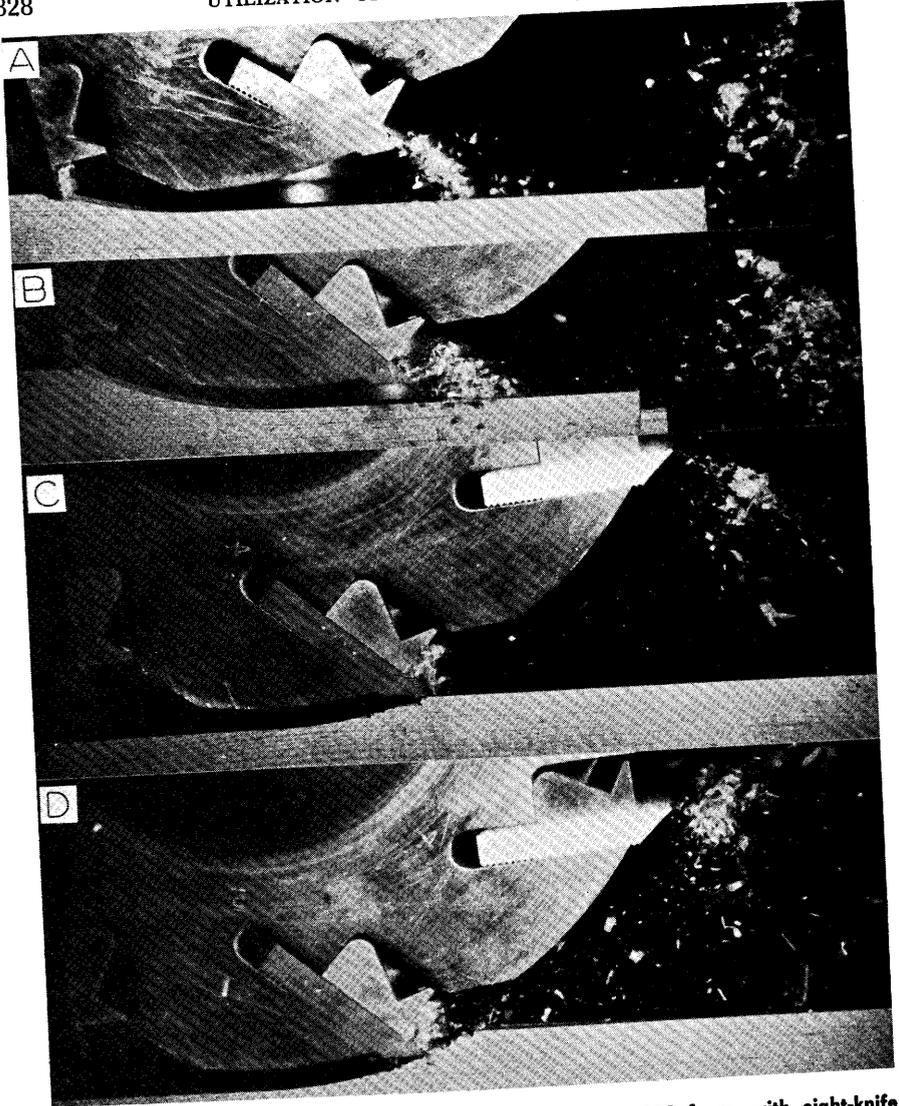


Figure 19-49.—Comparison of up-milling and down-milling at 175 f.p.m. with eight-knife cutterhead rotating at 3,600 r.p.m. and carrying knives with 30° rake. (A) Down-milling, $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch cut. (B) Down-milling, $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch cut. (C) Up-milling, $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch cut. (D) Up-milling, $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch cut. (Photos from Koch 1956.)

bark from posts, piles, and poles to accelerate drying and to facilitate treatment with chemicals. Sawmills and veneer plants remove the bark from logs so that their wood residues will be bark free and suitable for reduction into pulp chips; cutting bark-free logs extends service life of saws and veneer knives; also, bark-free logs are advantageously sawn because defects are visible. Finally, pine bark—some 10 percent of the volume of each tree—is beginning to have economic value for conversion into various agricultural, fiber, and chemical products.

The many and varied designs of barkers have been reviewed extensively (e.g., Koch 1964b, pp. 169–178; Holzhey 1969). Because southern pine bark is removed relatively easily by mechanical means—particularly if trees have been cut in the spring or if logs or bolts have been stored in ponds or under water sprays—there are only a few major types of barkers in common use. Mechanical removal of bark is commonly accomplished by one of three methods: rubbing or abrasion in a drum barker, shear at the cambium layer with tools cutting approximately in the 0–90 mode, and cutting in the 0–90 mode with sharp knives to remove all the bark plus a thin layer of wood.

DRUM BARKERS

Rotating-drum barkers are used to remove bark from pulpwood. The bolts tumble together forcibly and repeatedly in their passage through the drum, rubbing off bark against each other and against the corrugated interior of the drum (fig. 19–50). Barking drums may be as short as 45 feet or as long as 80 feet.

The 12- by 68-foot drum illustrated in figure 19–50 is rotated by a girth sprocket and two trunnion tires with supporting rollers. The drum has a corrugated interior that keeps the bolts tumbling as the drum rotates. The tumbling wood progresses through the rotating drum impelled by gravity and by the force of additional incoming bolts. A control gate facing the outlet of the drum, and headers within it with restricted openings control longitudinal progress of bolts and rate of discharge. Bark escapes through slots in the drum into a conveyor.

Barking drums should be operated about half full to obtain the greatest production of bark-free sticks with the least fiber damage from broomed ends. Table 19–21 shows productivity data. Tight-barked, winter-cut wood must be tumbled longer to remove bark than loose-barked pulpwood cut in spring or summer.

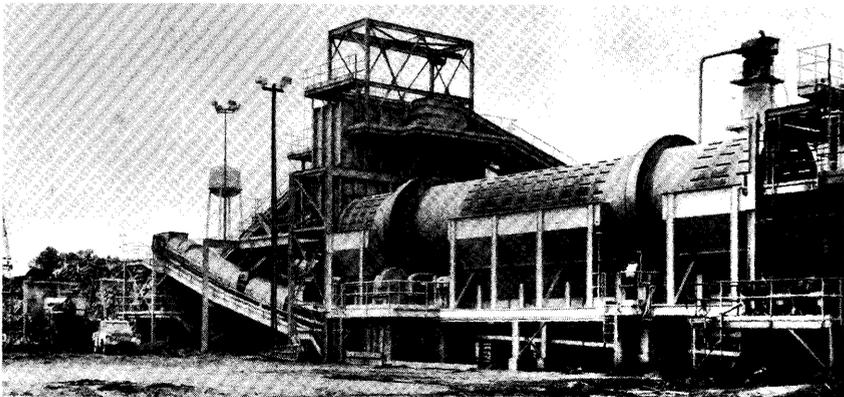


Figure 19–50.—Twelve-foot by 68-foot rotating drum barker designed to remove the bark from pulpwood 4 to 10 feet in length. (Photo from Manitowoc Shipbuilding, Inc.)

TABLE 19-21.—*Productivity of rotating drum barkers on southern pine pulpwood 4 to 10 feet in length (data from Manitowoc Shipbuilding, Inc.)*

Drum characteristics				Productivity in summer ¹	Productivity in winter ¹
Length	Diameter	Speed	Power		
<i>Feet</i>	<i>Feet</i>	<i>R.p.m.</i>	<i>Hp.</i>	<i>--- Cords per hour ---</i>	
45	12.0	6.9	150	28 (23)	23 (18)
68	12.0	6.2	250	55 (45)	45 (35)
75	12.0	6.2	250	60 (50)	50 (40)
80	14.5	5.5	500	85 (70)	70 (55)

¹ The first number in each entry is based on 85-percent bark removal; the number following in parentheses applies when 95-percent of the bark is removed.

RING BARKERS

Mechanical ring barkers are widely used to remove bark from saw logs and veneer bolts. The 26-inch machine illustrated in figure 19-51 is one of several models; for southern pine, ring diameters may range from a size suitable for 2½-inch fenceposts to a maximum of 40 inches. The infeed-ing conveyor advances the log longitudinally into the feed rolls. As shown in figure 19-51, the feed rolls automatically center the log in the rotating mechanical ring. The ring has five crescent-shaped tools which open automatically as the feed rolls force the log against them. As the log advances through the rotating ring, the sharp-edged tools shear off the bark in the 0-90 mode; separation takes place in or near the cambium layer. Pressure on the tools is furnished by heavy rubberbands connected to each tool shaft.

In some makes of ring barkers, tool pressure is regulated with air cylinders. Twenty-five to 50 pounds of force at each tool edge is usual.

Table 19-22 gives data on productivity of mechanical ring barkers on southern pine.

TABLE 19-22.—*Productivity of five-knife mechanical ring barkers on southern pine (data from Soderhamn Machine Manufacturing Company)*

Ring			Feed		Average logs		Productivity per 8-hour shift
Diameter	Speed	Power	Speed	Power	Length	Diameter	
<i>Inches</i>	<i>R.p.m.</i>	<i>Hp.</i>	<i>F.p.m.</i>	<i>Hp.</i>	<i>Feet</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Number of logs</i>
14	440	30	150	5.0	7	5	7,000
18	423	50	250	7.5	12	9	6,500
21	242	40	120	5.0	9	9	4,150
26	222	50	187	5.0	28	11	1,800
30	221	75	226	10.0	15	11	4,700
35	123	75	140	10.0	16-20	15	1,600
40	120	75	156	10.0	16-20	15	1,600

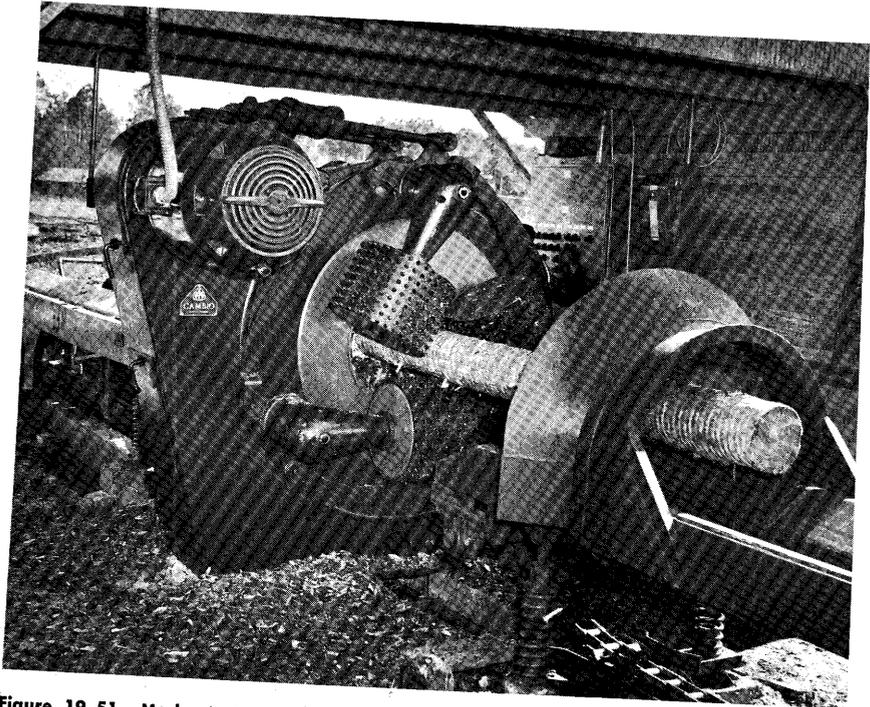
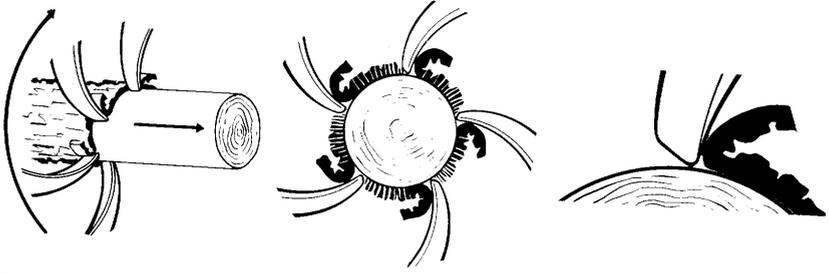


Figure 19-51.—Mechanical ring barker. (Top) Log is centered in the ring, and the tools remove the bark by shearing the cambium layer (0-90 mode). (Bottom) Outfeed side of a 26-inch, five-knife, rotating-ring, mechanical barker. Knobby outfeed rolls are identical to infeed rolls; they automatically center each log. Typically, infeed chains are powered independently of the barker by a 5-hp., two-speed or variable-speed drive. The ring—mounted in ball bearings—is turned at 222 r.p.m. by a 50-hp. motor. Force is applied to the feedworks by air cylinders and to the tools by heavy rubber bands. (Drawing and photo from Soderhamn.)

POLE SHAVERS

Bark is commonly removed from poles, piling, and posts by machines with peripheral-milling cutterheads. The log is revolved as it is fed longitudinally past the rotating **rosser** head. If the knives are sharp and the cutterhead fixed, the log will be turned to a relatively smooth diameter

and its taper eliminated with considerable loss of wood. If the knives are somewhat dull and the cutterhead is arranged to float over branch knots and other irregularities, taking a constant-depth cut gauged from the bark surface, the loss of wood is minimized and the natural taper retained.

Small machines of this type are used to peel fenceposts. Some are fixed in place, with highly mechanized handling equipment; more common are portable machines small enough to be towed by a light truck. If well supplied with posts, a portable machine carrying the cutterhead shown in figure 19-52 can peel 1,500 posts during an 8-hour day.

The heavy job of peeling poles and piling requires larger, more permanent installations with mechanized infeeding and outfeeding equipment (fig. 19-53). A typical pole shaver has a pair of four-knife rosser heads that revolve at 3,550 r.p.m. One is a 25-hp. roughing cutter, the other a 15-hp finishing head. Both cutterheads are similar to that shown in figure 19-28; their cutting action approximates the 0-90 mode.

The pole is rotated and driven past the rosser heads by angled, air-filled, rotating tires. Production is dependent on the efficiency of the handling system as well as the capabilities of the pole shaver. The machine illustrated in figure 19-53 can process Class 4, 40-foot southern pine poles at a rate of 50 per hour.

OTHER METHODS

Jets of high-pressure water will readily remove bark from coniferous wood, and hydraulic log barkers are much used to remove the thick bark typical of many western species. For the small, relatively thin-barked southern pine log, however, mechanical barkers are probably most economical.

The southern pine pulp industry has long desired an economical method of separating bark from wood chipped with bark in place. One method in limited use relies on the difference in specific gravity between saturated pine wood and bark; however, no method has been proven to be generally economically competitive with the system of mechanically removing bark from whole stems prior to chipping. Descriptions of investigations aimed at separating bark and wood chips have been provided by Harvin et al. (1952), Grondal (1956), Liiri (1960, 1961), Blackford (1961, 1965), Wesner (1962), and Einspahr et al. (1969).

19-6 CONVERTING WITH CHIPPING HEADRIGS⁴

The **chipping headrig**—a machine to convert logs into timbers (**cants** or **flitches**) without simultaneously producing slabs or sawdust—is probably the most important innovation in mechanical conversion since the invention of the mechanical ring barker. In most installations the resulting

⁴ Sec. 19-6 is condensed from Koch (1968a).

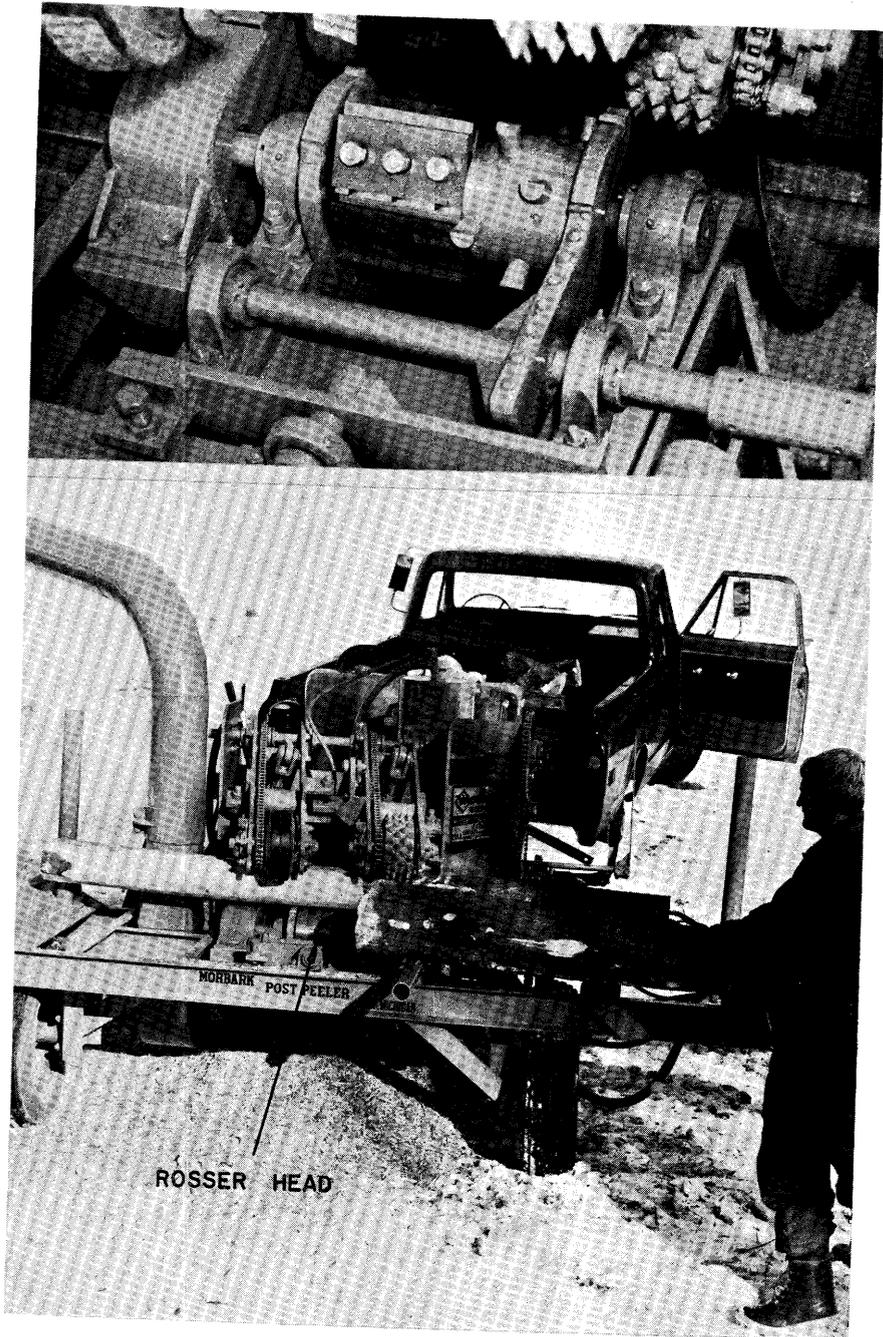


Figure 19-52.—Trailer-mounted post peeler driven by gasoline engine. (Top) Rosser head; carbide teeth remove bark and branch stubs; planer knives then smooth the wood. Fixed infeed and outfeed shoes control the amount of wood removed. Fixed revolves as toothed feed wheels advance it over the rosser head. (Bottom) The post peeler is mounted on a trailer and driven by a gasoline engine. (Photos from Morbark Industries, Inc.)

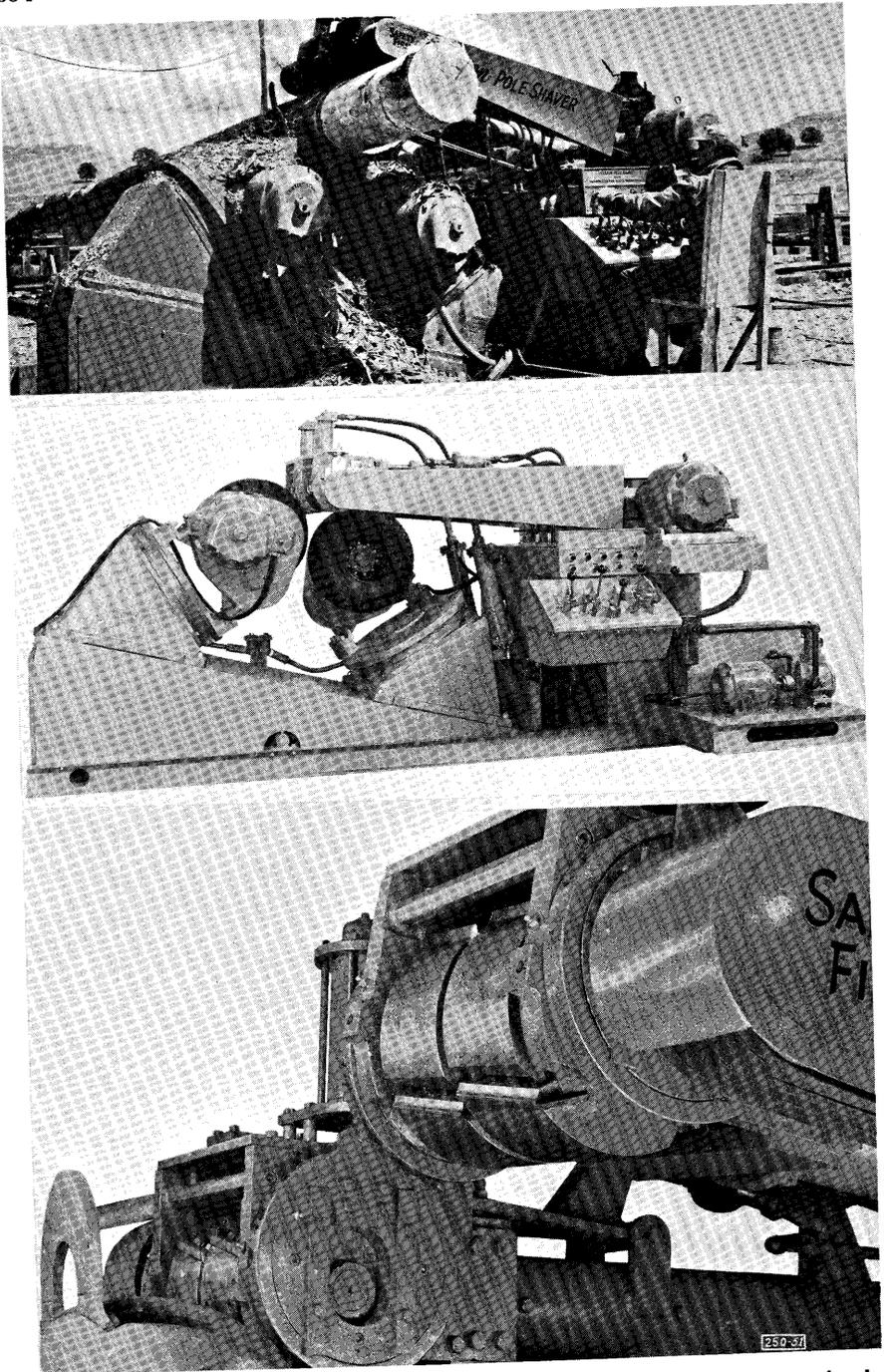


Figure 19-53.—Pole shaver. (Top) The pole rotates as it passes under the rosser heads. (Middle) Feed wheels are mounted on turrets that control angularity of feedworks. (Bottom) Roughing head on left; finishing head on right. Depth of cut is controlled by shoes that ride on the rotating pole. (Photos from Nelson Electric.)

squared material is resawn into boards or dimension lumber. The machines, invented to eliminate sawdust from slabbing cuts on conventional headrigs, are still under development. Events contributing to the development of the various configurations of chipping headrigs were reviewed by Koch (1967a).

Three modes of cutting have been developed for chipping headrigs: (a) cutting with a shaping-lathe configuration (fig. 19-54A), in which the knife edge is parallel to the grain but moves perpendicular to the grain, i.e., 0-90 mode; (b) end-milling (fig. 19-54B), with chip severance accomplished by cutting across the grain with the knife edge at right angles to the grain, i.e., 90-90 mode; (c) peripheral down-milling (planing) with the knife edge perpendicular to the grain but traveling more or less parallel to the grain, i.e., approximately in the 90-0 mode (fig. 19-54C).

POWER REQUIREMENT

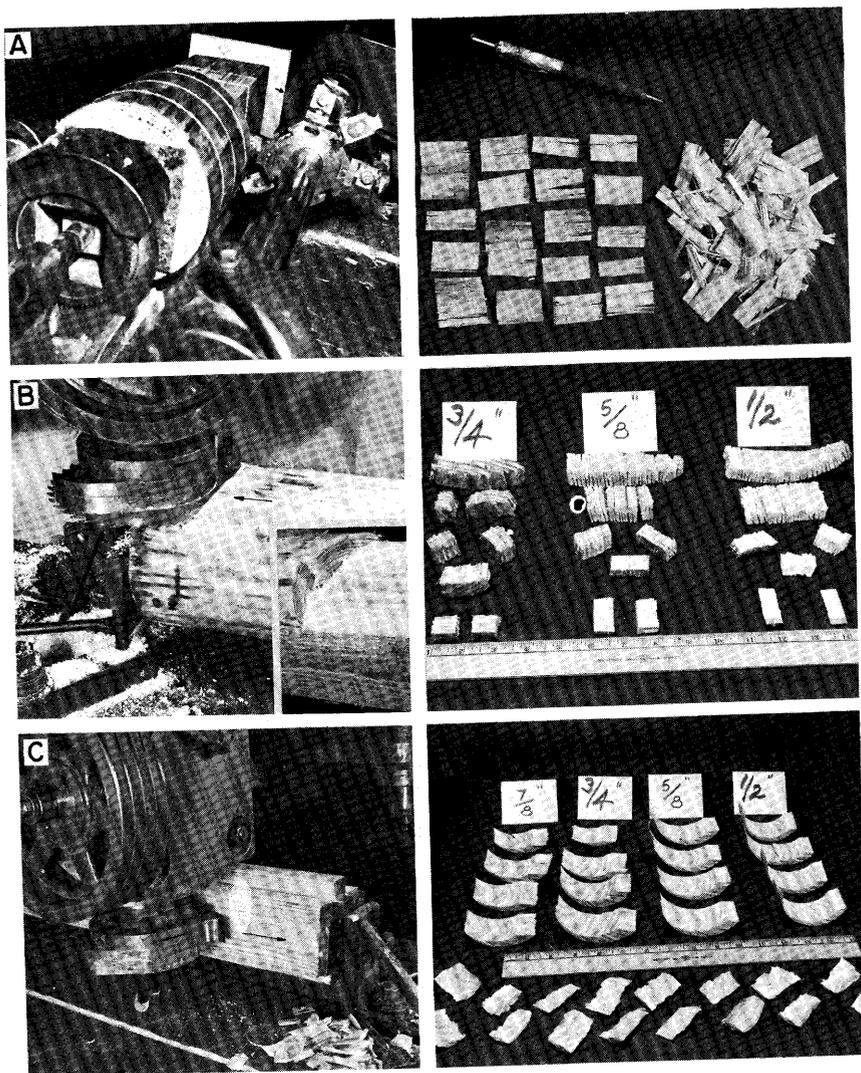
The horsepower driving any head of a chipping headrig is determined by properties of the wood, chip dimensions, volume of wood chipped per unit of time, cutter configuration, and cutting mode. As a common base for comparison, it is convenient to use the concept of **specific cutting energy**, i.e., the amount of energy required to remove a unit volume of wood. With green slash pine (84 to 106 percent in moisture content and from 0.50 to 0.58 in specific gravity on basis of oven-dry weight and green volume) and the cutterheads illustrated in figure 19-54, energy requirements have been measured (Koch 1964a):

<u>Cutting configuration</u>	<u>Chip length along the grain</u>	<u>Specific cutting energy</u>
	<i>Inch</i>	<i>Hp. min./cu. in. of wood removed</i>
End-milling (fig. 19-54B)---	$\frac{3}{4}$	0.011
Planing (fig. 19-54C)-----	$\frac{3}{4}$	.002
Shaping-lathe (fig. 19-54A)-	1 (and 0.015 inch thick)	.009

Specific cutting energy for the shaping-lathe configuration (fig. 19-54A, 0-90 cutting direction) would be less than for the other two modes if the flake thickness were increased from 0.015 inch tested to usual pulp chip thickness. A specific cutting energy for pulp chips of less than 0.002 hp. minute per cubic inch is probable.

The cutterhead in figure 19-54A had a rake angle of 45° with a clearance angle of 15°; diameter of the cutting circle was 13 inches. In figures 19-54B and C the rake angle was 45° with a clearance angle of 7½°; cutting-circle diameter was 11¼ inches.

Cutterheads can be mounted to cut at intermediate angles with energy requirements intermediate to the extremes illustrated.



F-520987

Figure 19-54.—Three configurations of chipping headrigs and resulting chips. (A) Shaping lathe, 0-90 mode. (B) End-milling, 90-90 mode. (C) Down-milling, approximately 90-0 mode. Arrow in (A) points to cam and cam follower controlling shape of cant. The saw in the end-milling configuration (B) proved unnecessary and was later removed. (Photos from USDA Forest Service 1964, p. 60.)

COMMERCIAL DESIGNS

In 1964 there were no chipping headrigs operating on southern pine. By 1970 the machines were in wide use throughout the southern pine region.

Planing.—Two manufacturers have pioneered four-head machines that use the planing principle (fig. 19-54C); both handle random-length logs. In

one design (fig. 19-55) the feedworks centers the log vertically and laterally to yield a pith-center cant. A top loader is provided to speed entry of each log into the feedworks, which characteristically runs at 183 f.p.m.—at which speed chips are $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch in length. Some operate at 250 f.p.m.

Purchasers of early models did not fully appreciate the productivity

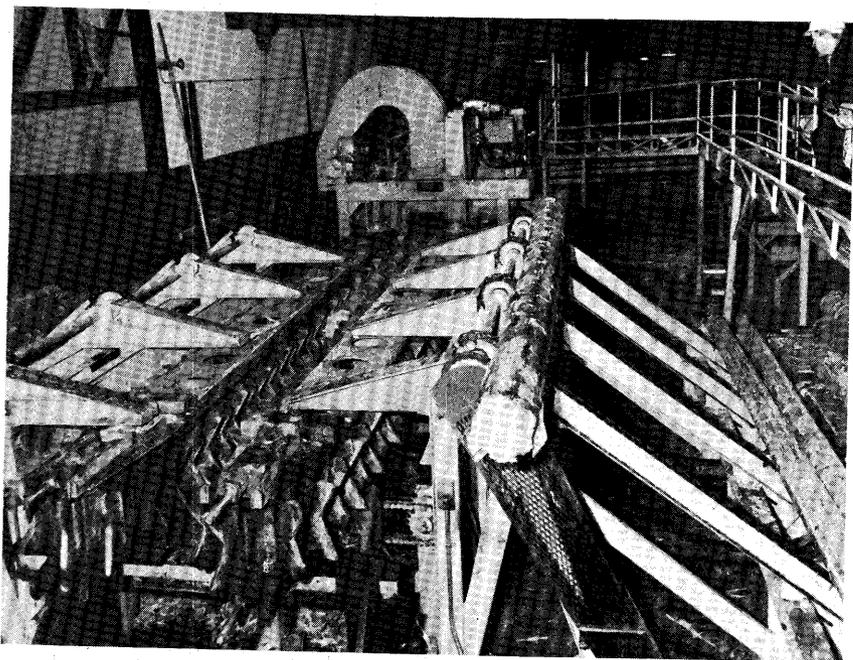
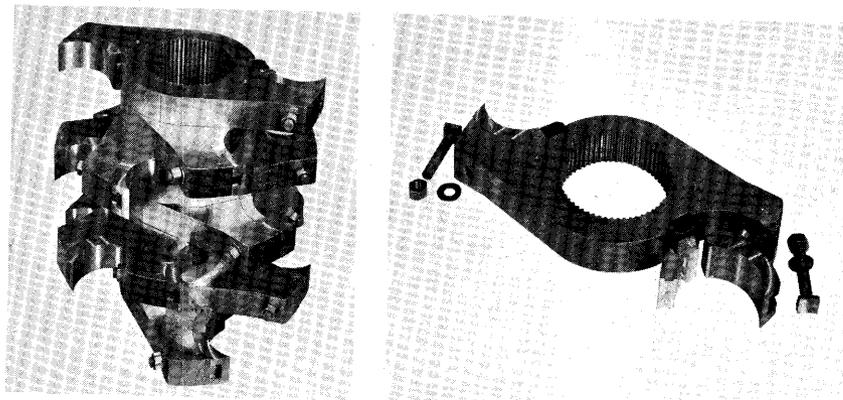


Figure 19-55.—Stetson-Ross Beaver chipping headrig. (Top left) Assembled cutterheads. (Top right) Method of holding knives in the heads. (Bottom) Logs, poised for instant delivery, may be fed from either side to the infeed chain. Production is over 100,000 bd. ft. of lumber per 8-hour shift. The four-head machine is equipped with hydraulic networks with range of adjustment sufficient to square logs from 5 to 24 inches in diameter. Feed rate is commonly 180 f.p.m.; some machines, however, feed at 250 lineal f.p.m. (Photos from Stetson-Ross.)

of the equipment and failed to provide for a sufficiently rapid flow of logs. Figure 19-55 illustrates a well-designed installation in British Columbia that feeds at 250 f.p.m. and will accept logs up to 24 inches in diameter. Similar machines are installed in the South.

The first machines were followed (in straight line) by gang circular ripsaws to convert the S4S cants into dimension lumber. Some later installations employ single, dual, or even quad bandsaws in place of the circular saws. The initial canting operation need not produce only square-cornered timbers, but may turn out round-edge or wany cants for subsequent resawing.

In addition to the larger machines, a similar but much smaller chipping headrig is available for converting cordwood (up to 11 inches in diameter) into hexagonal fenceposts. This machine also feeds at 183 f.p.m.

The edger shown in figure 19-56 is designed to remove wane from boards and is a significant application of two chipping heads in the planing configuration. The guide for the lumber (straight-edge) shifts in relation to the fixed head to accommodate varying amounts of wane. The movable head shifts to accommodate lumber of varying width. Splitter saws can be installed in a modular section following the chipper heads. Machines are available that will accept lumber up to 24 inches wide and 4 inches thick.

A second widely used chipping headrig features a feedworks that employs the bottom platen as a reference for infeeding logs. The top and bottom cutterheads can profile each log—much as a moulder shapes a pattern—in a stepped pattern for subsequent resawing (fig. 19-57).

The manufacturer of this machine favors tipped cutterheads—intermediate between the 90-0 situation (fig. 19-54C) and the 0-90 situation (fig. 19-54A)—for side chipping heads. The headrig characteristically feeds at about 100 f.p.m. Machines are available in a wide range of sizes, with numerous combinations of cutterheads and resaws. The firm also manufactures a two-head chipping edger with tipped side chipping heads followed by a circular ripsaw.

End-milling.—There are a number of chipping headrigs and edgers that cut—with modification—in the mode shown in figure 19-54B. In one arrangement (fig. 19-58), the two opposed end-milling disks each carry several knives. Each chipping knife has two cutting edges, which join at an angle; one edge severs the fibers, and the other smooths the cant. Some end-milling disks carry scoring knives that make slits parallel to the grain before the chipping knives sever the chips. Chips are uniform in size and shape (fig. 19-58). A two-head, end-milling edger that operates on the same principle is also available.

A Swedish design available in this country has two end-milling heads carrying small knives mounted in a multiple helical pattern around cutterheads made in the shape of shallow truncated cones (fig. 19-59). The truncated end of the cone finishes the face of the cant and has spe-

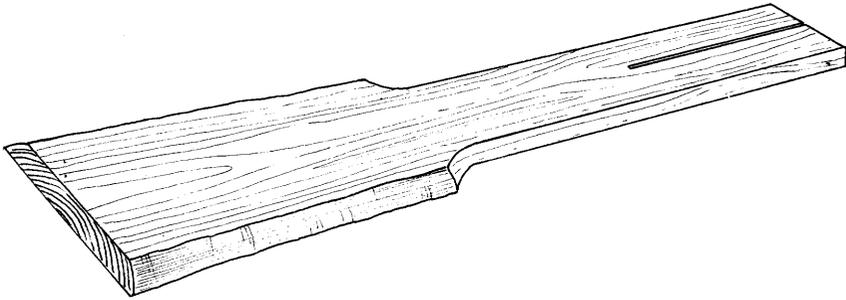
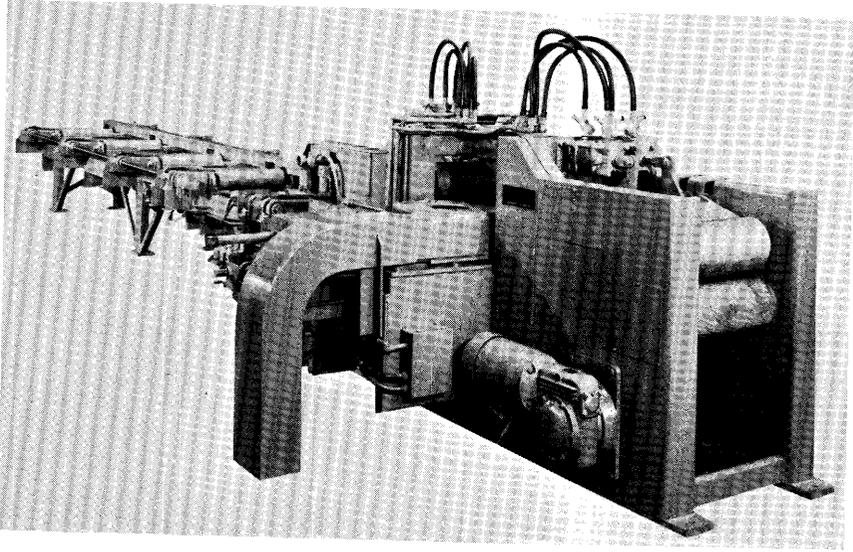


Figure 19-56.—(Top) Two-head chipping edger that converts many edges of lumber into pulp chips. One head is fixed; the other (left center) is hydraulically positioned to suit lumber to be edged. Cutterheads resemble those shown in figure 19-55. To rip wide boards, saws are positioned as required. Feed rates from 180 to 500 lineal feet per minute are usual. (Bottom) Partially edged and ripped board stopped in cut. (Photo from Stetson-Ross.)

cial knives (conveniently replaceable as a plate-mounted unit) that impart an improved surface. A tong-type gripping mechanism feeds each incoming log in a straight line.

Figure 19-60 shows application of an end-milling chipping head to a conventional headrig. The cutterhead chips the slab from the log before the saw takes its first cut. The chipper head can be withdrawn after the log has been squared. To maintain a uniform chip length the carriage speed must be proportional to the chipper rotational speed. The eight-knife cutterhead illustrated is driven at 900 r.p.m. by a 200-hp. motor to cut $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch-long chips at a carriage speed of 450 f.p.m. The manufacturer states that when cutting 6 inches deep to produce an 18-inch face, the specific cutting energy is 0.003 hp. minute per cubic inch.

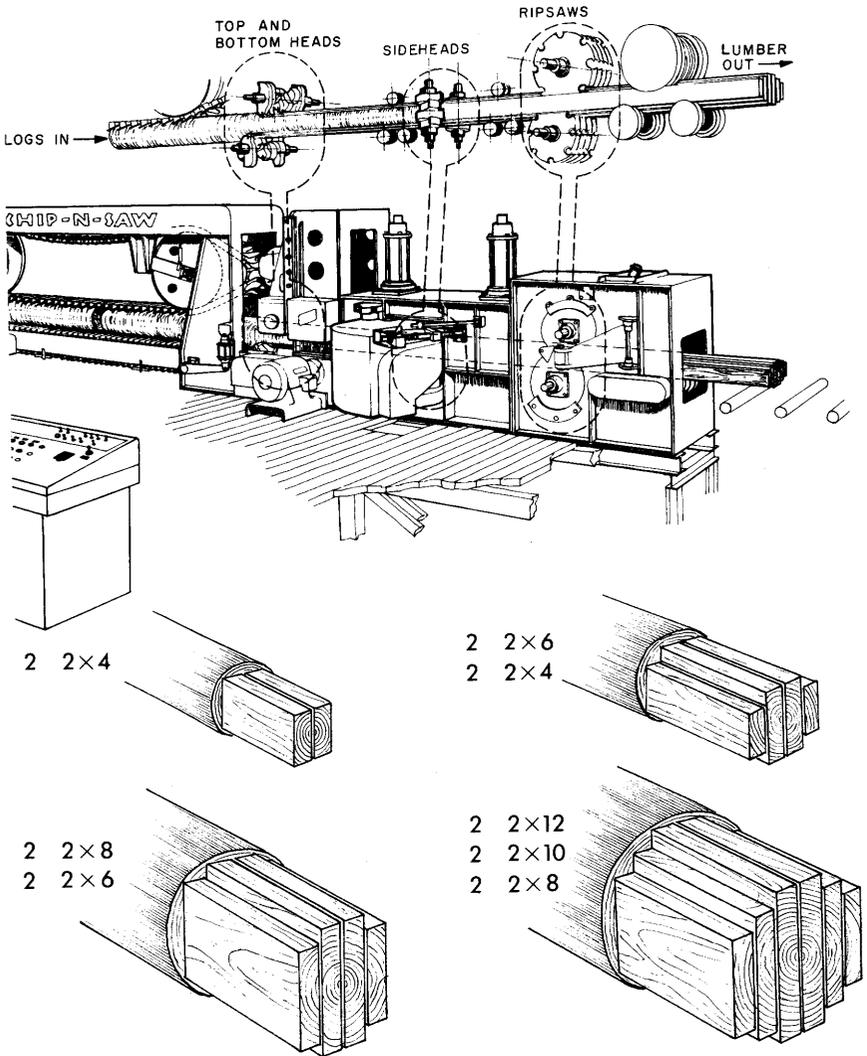


Figure 19-57.—(Top) Cutaway sketch of Chip-N-Saw profiling a log in the same way that mouldings are machined. Usual feed speed is 90 f.p.m. to produce $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch chips. Motors total 603 hp. as follows: Drive, 28 hp. total; bottom chipping head, 50 hp.; top chipping head, 125 hp.; each of two side heads, 50 hp.; (top saw arbor carrying five 22½-inch, $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch-kerf saws), 150 hp.; bottom saw arbor (carrying five 19-inch saws), 150 hp. Saw arbors turn at 1,770 r.p.m. (Bottom) Profiling and ripping patterns. (Drawings after Canadian Car.)

Shaping lathe.—Considerable interest has been stimulated by descriptions (Koch 1964a, 1967c) of a headrig with shaping-lathe configuration, but no commercial version is yet available.

Although the model shown in figure 19-54A cuts only $3\frac{9}{16}$ inches per rotation of the log, the production machine would carry a 104-inch cutterhead—sufficient to machine an 8-foot log. It is envisaged that the

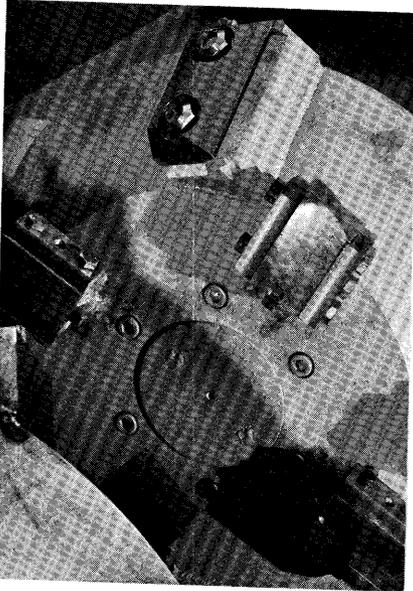
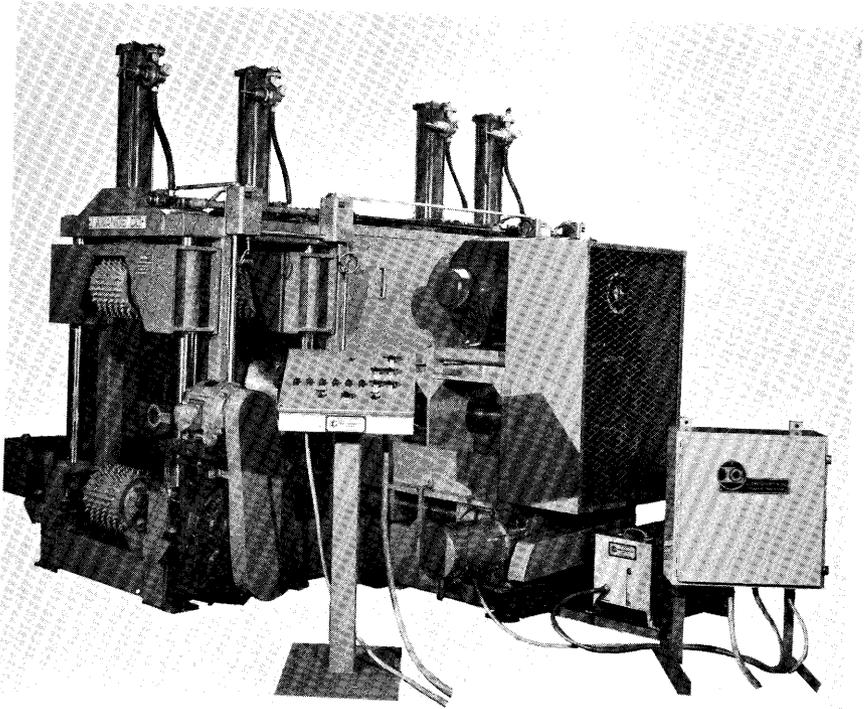


Figure 19-58.—Vance Chip-O-Matic log canter. (Top) Side view of headrig. Logs, controlled by spiked feed rolls, are machined flat on two sides only. (Bottom left) One of the two opposed end-milling cutterheads. Four scoring and four chip-severing knives are mounted on each 150-hp. head. (Bottom right) Pulp chips for headrig. (Bottom left and top photos from J. A. Vance Co.; bottom right photo from Koch 1967a.)

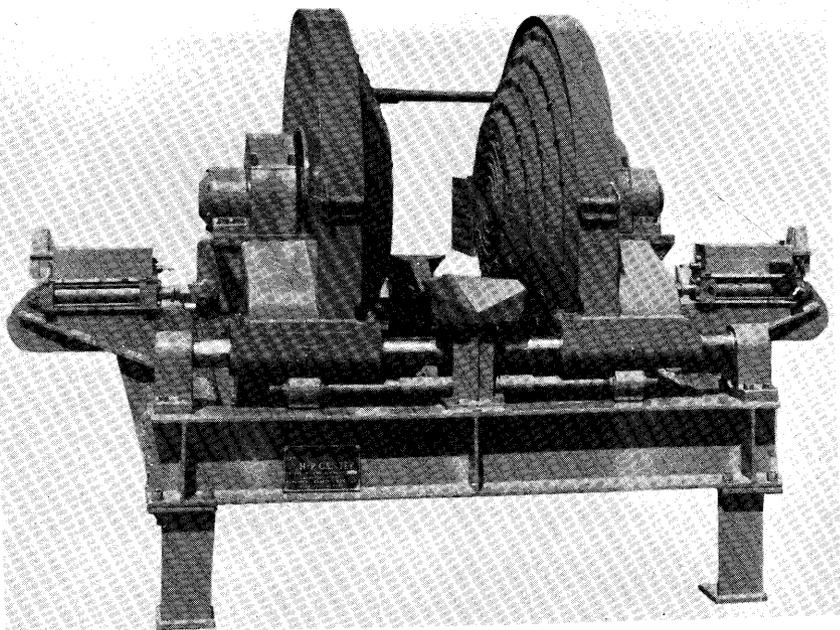


Figure 19-59.—Soderhamn H-P Canter. Knives are mounted in a spiral. Cutterheads open to 16 inches to admit logs up to 18 inches in diameter. Logs are machined flat on two sides only. With heads closed, logs as large as 12 inches can be entirely chipped. Bottom bedplate is fixed. One-hundred-fifty horsepower drives both cutterheads at 700 r.p.m. Feed speed is 117 f.p.m. with two spirals per head or 175 f.p.m. with three. (Photo from Soderhamn.)

head would be 13 inches in diameter and would be turned at 2,880 r.p.m. by a pair of 150-hp. motors, one at either end. Rake angle of the knives would be 45° , sharpness angle 30° , and clearance 15° .

The log would revolve only once to be fully machined. Adjusting the cutterhead spindle axis to parallel the surface of the log prior to machining would enable the headrig to taper-machine. The cutterhead force, tangent to the cutting plane, may be sufficient to cause deflections in logs smaller than 3 to 4 inches in diameter or more than 100 inches long.

The shaping-lathe headrig produces an accurately sized cant with a superior surface and sharp, well-defined corners. By modifying the shape of the cam (see fig. 19-54A), it is possible to produce cylindrical fenceposts, cants with chamfered corners, crossties of trapezoidal sections, or other polygonal shapes. The ability of the headrig to taper-machine—i.e., to make cants that are square or rectangular in cross section but tapered along the length to parallel the bark—would permit remanufacture on a linebar resaw for maximum recovery of clear lumber.

Flakes cut on the experimental machine (fig. 19-54A) have dimensions suitable for manufacturing flakeboards with superior mechanical properties. Flake thickness is controlled by adjusting the speed of either the cutterhead or the log. Flake length is controlled by the length of the

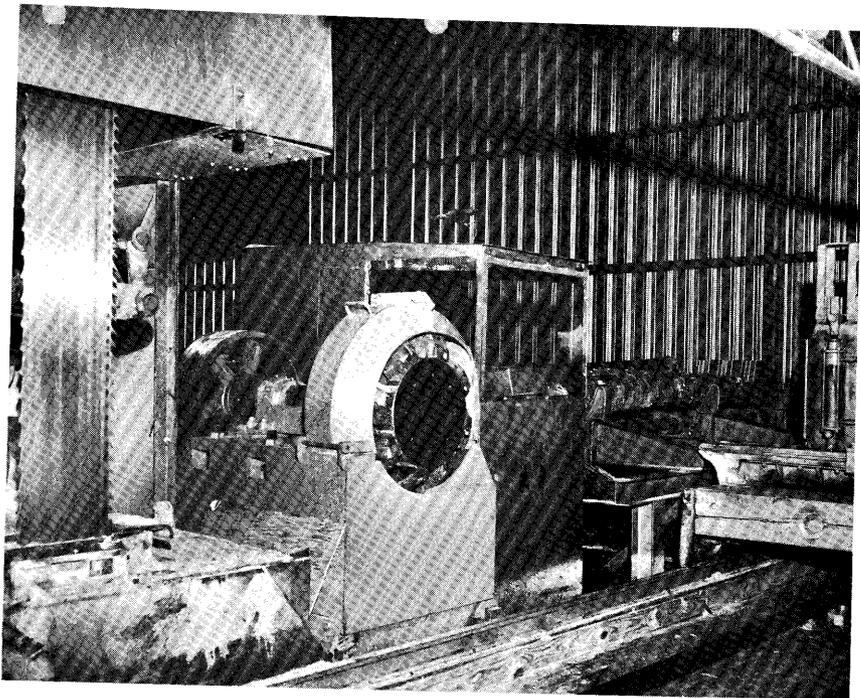


Figure 19-60.—End-milling chipping head installed in conjunction with a conventional carriage. The cutterhead is equipped with setworks and can be used alone or in tandem with a circular saw or bandsaw. The sawyer's box can be as shown or elevated above the chipping head. (Photo from Chipper Machines and Engineering Corporation.)

cutting edge on the individual knives, or by suitably placed scoring knives. At some sacrifice of surface quality on the cants, the headrig can produce pulp chips with a minimum amount of damage to individual fibers. The design would appear to be applicable to the utilization of crooked trees. Short logs, straight enough for the headrig, could be cut from such trees. Production is estimated at five cants per minute.

PRODUCTIVITY

An idea of the potential of chipping headrigs can be obtained by reading trade journal articles describing existing installations. By the end of 1969 many such articles were in print; 41 have been abstracted and assembled in convenient form (Koch 1967a, 1968b; McMillin 1970).

Because logs flow continuously through it, the chipping headrig has more in common with a four-side timber sizer than with a conventional sawmill. Production is reduced by the time required for the push-button-operated setworks to adjust for incoming logs. If incoming wood is sorted into runs by diameter classes as is always done with timber sizers, the logs

can be more nearly butted end-to-end for increased production (Dobie 1970).

A few examples illustrate potential productivity. They also show how output is lost if logs are not available, if maintenance problems cause downtime, or if setup time for each log is excessive.

Given:

T_1 = minutes per shift that logs are available and headrig is running

V = gross lineal feed speed, feet per minute

L_{avg} = length of average log, feet

T_2 = time lost between logs (seconds) for setup

$$L_e = \text{effective length of log, feet} = L_{avg} + \left[\frac{V}{60} \right] (T_2)$$

Then:

$$n = \text{number of logs per shift} = T_1 \left[\frac{V}{L_e} \right]$$

and: Production in board feet of lumber per shift = $\left[\frac{bd}{12} \right] (L_{avg})(n)$

Where:

b = width of average cant, inches

d = depth of average cant, inches

In the tabulation below (based largely on personal observation), mill A has the lowest productivity because incoming random-diameter logs are short (12 feet), gross feed rate is slow (100 f.p.m.), and cants produced are small (average 4 by 4 inches). In contrast, hypothetical mill D has very high production resulting from several factors: logs are longer (14 feet), are of diameters to yield cants averaging 6 by 8 inches, and are fed butted end-to-end at high speed (250 f.p.m.) in prescribed diameter classes.

Mill	Shift length	T_1	V	L_{avg}	T_2	b	d	n	Production per shift
	<i>Hr.</i>	<i>Min.</i>	<i>F.p.m.</i>	<i>Ft.</i>	<i>Sec.</i>	<i>In.</i>		<i>Logs per shift</i>	<i>M b f.</i>
A.....	8	384	100	12	7	4	4	1,620	26
B.....	10	400	187	14	7	6	8	2,088	117
C.....	8	384	250	14	7	6	8	2,222	124
D (Hypothetical)	8	384	250	14	0	6	8	6,857	384

Small, crooked logs yield more chips and less lumber than large straight ones. Mills cutting only square-edge cants make more chips at the headrig than mills cutting round-edge cants for later resawing. Unpublished yield data on chipping-headrig conversion of 462 southern pine logs in Mississippi indicated that percentage of gross log volume (inside bark) recovered as rough green lumber was positively correlated with log diameter; percentage recovery was 32.3, 33.7, 42.8, 49.4, 60.1, and 53.5 for logs averaging 6.6, 7.8, 8.7, 9.9, 11.7, and 15.1 inches in diameter.

Yield of chips per thousand board feet of lumber cut is inversely proportional to the diameter of logs processed through a chipping headrig; yield of lumber per thousand board feet of logs (M b.f. Doyle scale) is also negatively correlated with log diameter (Kaiser and Jones 1969).

Log size class	Lumber yield per M.b.f. Doyle scale	Yield of green chips per M.b.f. of lumber sawn
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Bd. ft.</i>	<i>Tons</i>
5.5- 6.4	4,650	3.9
6.5- 7.4	3,390	2.6
7.5- 8.4	2,630	2.0
8.5- 9.4	2,200	1.7
9.5-10.4	2,000	1.4
10.5-11.4	1,850	1.3
11.5-12.4	1,740	1.2
12.5-13.4	1,630	1.2
13.5-14.4	1,560	1.1

While information specific to southern pine is not published, data taken from Dobie et al. (1967) and summarized in table 19-23 give a comparison between three methods of log conversion, a chipping headrig followed by resaws, a sash gang saw mill without band headrig, and a scrag mill which reduces logs to cants with multiple circular saws. The sawmill built around a chipping headrig converts 95 percent of the cubic volume into useable products, whereas the scrag mill with circular saws turns 22 percent of the log into sawdust. The feed rate tabulated for the chipping headrig is very low—a result of inadequate supply of logs, insufficient barker capacity, time lost adjusting setworks to each succeeding logs, and downtime for maintenance. Newer mills should be able to increase the effective feed rate greatly. Lumber and chip production is high, and even at the inefficient feed rates studied by Dobie, productivity per man-hour is impressive.

ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES

Chipping headrigs have several disadvantages. These newly-designed machines are expensive and need considerable maintenance. Rarely can the chipping headrig be installed as the only headrig (machines are available that will accept logs up to 24 inches in diameter), for very large, very crooked, or flared-butt logs are better handled by a conventional saw. (If tapered, crooked logs are processed through a four-head chipping headrig, the concave side should be turned up and the small end admitted to the machine first.) In some designs, severe tear-out around knots leaves a poor surface that normal planing cannot remedy. As the log enters or leaves some machines, great care is needed to avoid sniping the ends of cants. There is some loss in ability to grade-saw in a chipping headrig mill. The amount of this loss depends on the type of resaws installed and the extent to which round-edge cants are produced at the headrig.

TABLE 19-23.—*Performance of chipping headrigs, sash gangsaws, and scrag mills in western Canada (Dobie et al. 1967)*

Performance statistics	Chipping headrig ¹	Sash gangsaw ²	Scrag mill ³
Percent of cubic log volume converted to:			
Lumber.....	54	56	52
Sawdust.....	5	13	22
Chips.....	41	31	26
Average top diameter of logs, inches...	7.3	12.5	9.6
Lumber production per man-hour,			
bd. ft.....	1,400-4,000	1,270-2,460	350-1,240
Lineal feet of logs per hour.....	1,700-4,900	1,080-1,380	900-1,800
Number of logs per hour.....	99-266	64-79	58-107
Effective feed rate, f.p.m.....	26-81	18-23	15-30

¹ Followed by resaws.

² No other headrig or resaws.

³ The scrag mill is a headrig carrying multiple circular saws which reduce a log to cants and planks in a single pass. Edgers and circular gangsaws then convert the cants and planks to wane-free lumber.

More than offsetting these disadvantages are several advantages. Sawdust from headrigs and edgers is greatly reduced and pulp chips proportionately increased. Less sawdust means less material going to the burner and, thus, less atmospheric pollution. The labor and danger of handling slabs and edgings are eliminated. Mill conveyors can be simpler and, since no slab or edging space is needed behind machines, mill length can be reduced. The straight-line flow plan of the mill built around a chipping headrig boosts production with less manpower (table 19-23). Some of the economic factors motivating the rapid acceptance of chipping headrigs have been reviewed by Hobbs and Thomason (1967), Koch (1969, 1970), Kaiser and Jones (1969), Anderson and Kaiser (1970), and Sampson and Fasick (1970).

For southern pine operators the advantages outweigh the disadvantages. It is anticipated that the chipping headrig will find an increasingly important place in the southern pine sawmill industry.

SAW-KERF PULP CHIPS

Prior to the development of the chipping headrig, there was considerable interest in modifying circular-saw headrigs to produce a pulpable sawdust. Tests of inserted-tooth circular saws indicated that a 1/8-inch feed per tooth produced pulpable chips from the kerf.

Malcolm et al. (1961) sawed southern pine at extreme feeds to evaluate both the sawdust produced and the surface quality of resultant boards; he used inserted-tooth, 48-inch diameter, circular saws with 5/16-inch kerf.

Surface quality was negatively correlated with feed per tooth, and tear-out along the annual rings and at board corners was severe at large feeds per tooth (fig. 19-61). Large feeds per tooth also caused board thickness to vary excessively; variation of 95 percent of the boards was $2\frac{5}{64}$ at $\frac{1}{3}$ -inch feed per tooth and $1\frac{2}{64}$ at $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch compared to $\frac{4}{64}$ at a feed per tooth of $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch. Table 19-24 gives an idea of the size of sawdust particles formed.

Fassnacht (1966) prepared charts to help operators decide whether a board or its chips yield a greater return. Because board prices are so much higher than chip prices (tonnage basis), most pine mills have continued to use relatively low feeds per tooth.

TABLE 19-24.—Retention of saw-kerf chips on $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch screen¹ (Malcolm et al. 1961)

Feed per tooth (inch)	12-tooth saw ²	36-tooth saw ²
	----- Percent -----	
$\frac{1}{8}$	36	49
$\frac{1}{4}$	49	58
$\frac{1}{3}$	59	72

¹ Oscillating screen with $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch round holes spaced $\frac{9}{16}$ -inch apart.

² Saw diameter, 48 inches; kerf, $\frac{5}{16}$ -inch.

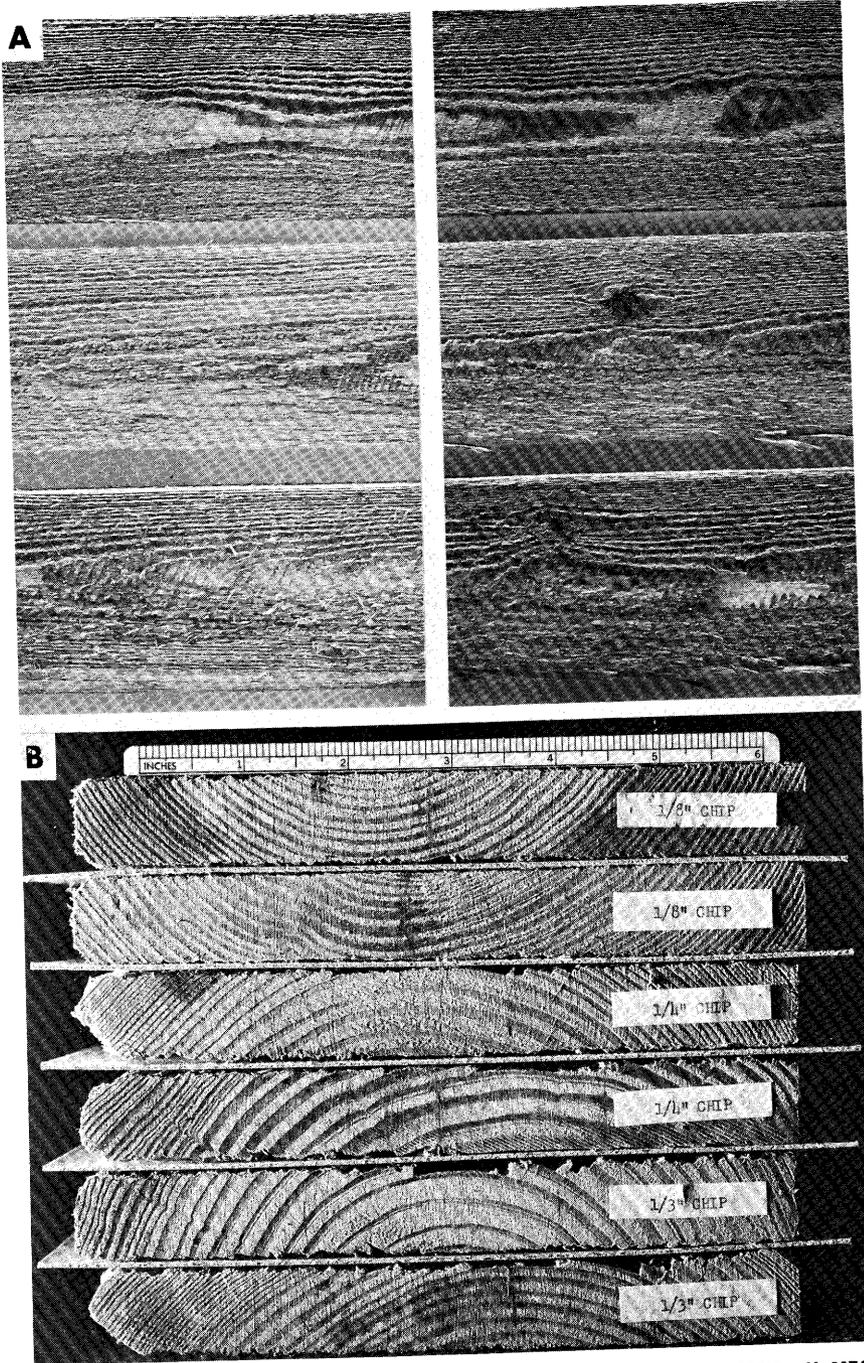
19-7 SAWING

The kinematics and cutting forces in sawing have been described by Koch (1964b, pp. 179-284); techniques of saw fitting and sharpening were described by Hanchett (1946). Here the sawing process is briefly described as necessary to present the available information specific to sawing southern pine.

Common to all saws are multiple teeth arranged to cut in sequence. The teeth may be formed into, or attached to, the periphery of round flat plates (circular saws), chains (chainsaws), thin continuous metal bands (bandsaws), or long flat rectangular plates or webs arranged in multiples (sash gangsaws).

Saw teeth are designed to make ripping cuts parallel to the grain for headrigs, gangsaws, resaws, and edgers; they are made to cut across the grain for chainsaws, log cut-off saws, and trim saws.

Headrigs designed to saw logs into timbers, cants, dimension lumber and boards usually have log carriages with reciprocating motion, and lumber is ripped from each log one board at a time with a single circular saw or bandsaw.



M-118697, M-118696, M-117605
 Figure 19-61.—Effect of saw feed per tooth on surface of flat-grain 1- by 7-inch southern pine boards. (A) Boards representative of the best (left) and poorest (right) surfaces produced by feeds per tooth of $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (top), $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (center), and $\frac{1}{3}$ -inch (bottom). (B) Cross sections of boards cut at three different feeds per tooth. (Photos from Malcolm et al. 1961.)

Less frequently used are headrigs that saw logs into wany-edged cants or lumber in a single pass through the machine, e.g., with multiple circular saws (scrag mills), multiple-band saws (quad bandmills), or multiple oscillating web saws (sash gangsaws).

Cants produced on the headrig are resawn into lumber of smaller dimension by multisaw rip saws (sash gangsaws or gangsaws carrying circular saws); alternatively, a band resaw (usually a vertical linebar resaw) is used to give greater flexibility in resawing. By adjustment of the distance between linebar (guide) and bandsaw, lumber of any thickness can be ripped from a cant; cants that will yield several boards are conveyed back to the infeed end of the linebar resaw for additional cuts as required.

Except for chainsaws, crosscut saws in mills are virtually all circular. The design of ripping and crosscutting teeth is controlled by the size of timber to be sawn, feed speed, moisture content and density of the wood, and smoothness of surface desired.

BANDSAWING

Bandsaw teeth cut orthogonally (fig. 19-62B). When rip sawing the length of a log or timber, the teeth cut across the grain in the 90-90 mode (fig. 19-1). In general, **swage-set** wide bandsaws (figs. 19-62C, 19-63A,D) are used for longitudinal cutting in primary manufacturing because they make less sawdust (have a narrower **kerf**), and can cut wider boards than circular saws. In the woodworking shop, **spring-set** narrow bandsaws (fig. 19-63E) are used because they can cut curves and irregular shapes that are difficult to cut with other tools. All saw teeth require clearance between kerf wall and saw plate; the swaged tooth (fig. 19-63D) is formed by upsetting the tooth tip against an anvil, and teeth are spring set (fig. 19-63E) by bending alternate teeth sideways.

Nomenclature for bandsaws is indicated in figures 19-62 and 19-63.

Cutting edge velocity is:

$$v = \sqrt{c^2 + f^2} \quad (19-18)$$

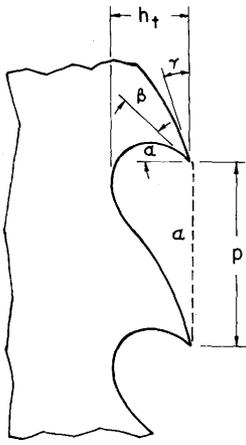
Feed per tooth, or **bite**, is:

$$t = \frac{pf}{c} \quad (19-19)$$

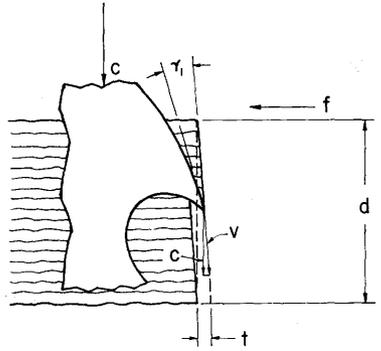
The volume of wood V (cubic inches) removed by each swaged tooth as it travels through the workpiece of depth d (inches) is:

$$V = tdk = \frac{pfdk}{c} \quad (19-20)$$

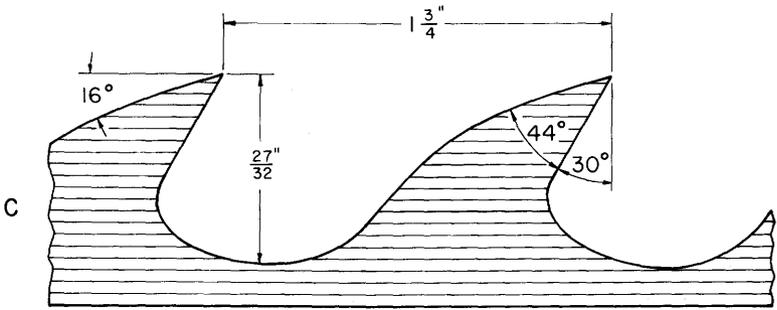
Swaged-tooth wide bandsaws for primary manufacture.—To resist the feeding forces and stay on the saw wheels (fig. 19-64) bandsaws require **tension** making them tightest on the cutting edge and stiff throughout their width. Hanchett (1946) gives detailed instructions for tensioning bandsaws with power-driven stretcher rolls.



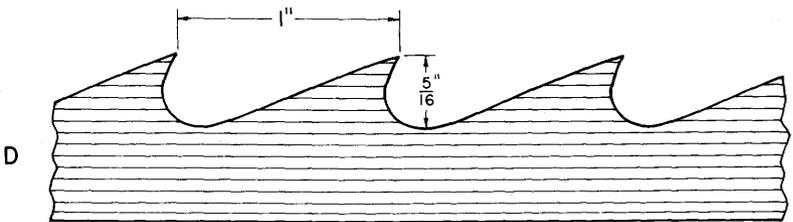
A



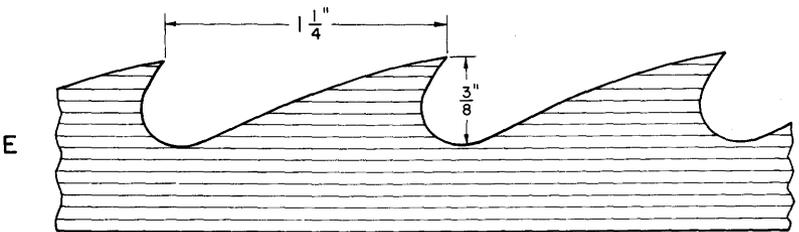
B



C



D



E

In ripping, cutting force on a bandsaw tooth is positively correlated with the thickness of the undeformed chip, i.e., feed per tooth (table 19-13). Cutting energy per unit volume of wood removed is smallest when feed per tooth is fairly large—a bite of one-half the width of swage (k in fig. 19-63A) is reasonable. Power is consumed severing the fibers in the 90-90 direction, shearing the chips from the kerf boundary, dragging the expanded chip past the kerf boundary, chambering the sawdust in the gullet space, and accelerating the sawdust to ejection velocity (fig. 19-65).

As an approximate rule of thumb, a bandsaw can operate efficiently at a feed per tooth of one-fourth the width of swage but will saw with less specific cutting energy at a feed of one-half the width of swage. As swage width is normally about twice the blade thickness plus 1 gauge, it increases as thicker and wider blades over larger wheels and are employed to increase depth of cut; optimum cut per tooth increases proportionally (table 19-25).

Practical strength considerations make a 44° sharpness angle fairly standard; sharpening, swaging, and shaping tools are designed with this in mind. The tooth proportions shown in figure 19-62C are in general use; gullets are rounded, and the back of the teeth are full to give maximum strength. Rake angle is commonly 30° , clearance angle 16° . For hand headrigs, tooth pitches of $1\frac{3}{4}$ or 2 inches matched with gullet depths of $2\frac{7}{32}$ - and $1\frac{5}{16}$ -inch are in common use. In the South, frozen wood is not ordinarily a problem.

Teeth are first swaged, next lightly faced on a grinding machine, then side-dressed with a pressure-type swage shaper, and finally ground on the face. Teeth should be straight, and swaged with 4° clearance behind the side-cutting edges. Cutting corners should be perfectly formed, sharp, and shaped to have 6° side clearance (fig. 19-63A and D). Teeth are commonly swaged to twice blade thickness plus 1 gauge; for example, a 14-gauge blade would be swaged to 9 gauge.

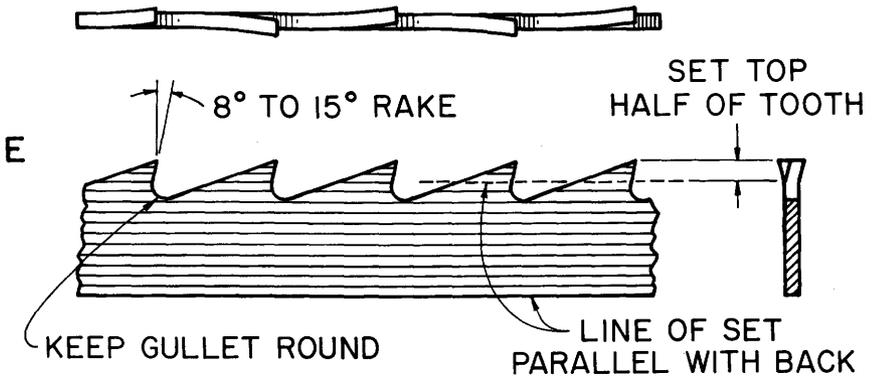
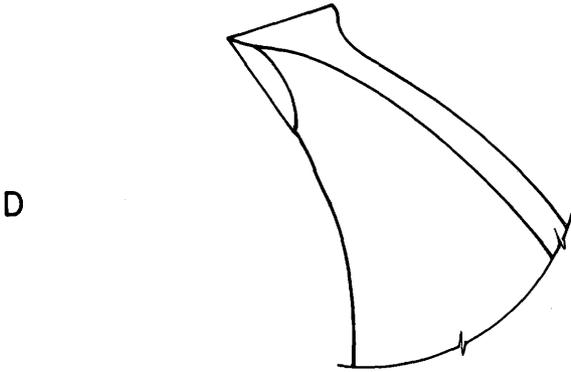
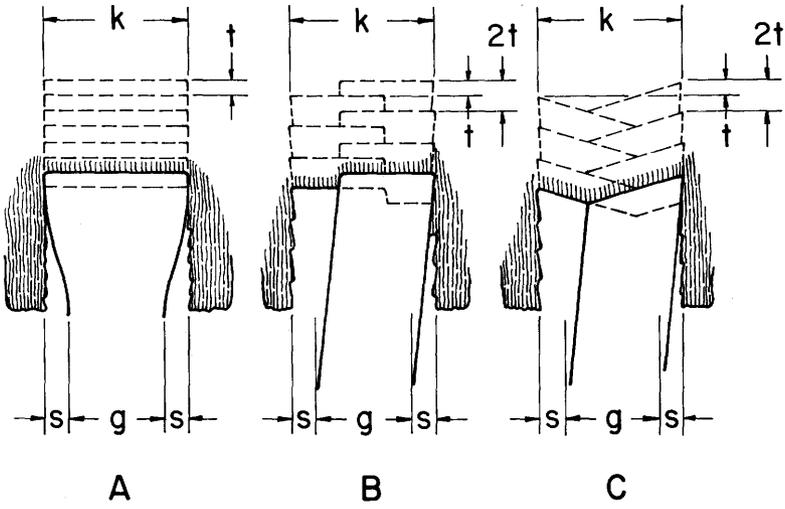
The force (**strain**) between the wheels (fig. 19-64) required to prop-



Figure 19-62.—(A and B) Bandsaw nomenclature.

α	Rake angle, degrees	p	Tooth pitch, i.e., distance between teeth, inches
β	Sharpness angle, degrees	h_t	Depth of gullet, inches
γ	Clearance angle, degrees	a	Area of tooth gullet, square inches
c	Saw velocity, f.p.m.	d	Depth of workpiece, inches
f	Feed speed, f.p.m.	t	Tooth bite, i.e., depth of cut per tooth, inch
v	Resultant velocity of cutting edge with respect to workpiece, f.p.m.		

(C) Tooth form suitable for headrigs or linebar resaws cutting southern pine; a tooth pitch of 2 inches with depth of $15/16$ -inch is also in common use. (D) Box factory saw (usually 19 to 21 gauge) for dry pine. (E) Commonly used tooth for resawing dry southern pine. (Drawings A and B after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 179, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)



erly stretch the saw can be satisfactorily expressed in terms of blade width and thickness (Koch 1964b, p. 191).

$$F = (1000)QWg \quad (19-21)$$

where:

F = total upward acting force applied to the spindle of the upper wheel, i.e., strain, pounds (minimum practical operating level)

W = width of blade (gullet to back), inches

g = thickness of blade, inches

Q = a constant; generally 10 for headsaws and 8 for resaws

For example, a 14-inch, 14-gauge headsaw requires a minimum of 11,620 pounds strain. Bandsaws carrying very much higher strains are in successful operation in Canada; as yet, however, none of these saws has seen service in the southern pine region. Since saws with high strain may cut a straight line even though thinner than normal, kerf can be reduced proportionally. It is likely, therefore, that high-strain bandsaws will be used to saw southern pine. Readers interested in further information on high-strain bandsaws will find Clark (1969), Cumming (1969), Foschi and Porter (1970), and Porter (1970, 1971) useful.

A saw speed of approximately 10,000 f.p.m. is common for southern

TABLE 19-25.—*Relationship of wheel diameter, saw gauge, saw width, and saw power for swage-set bandsaws cutting southern pine logs and timbers*

Wheel diameter (inches)	Saw thickness	Saw width ¹	Saw power
	BWG ²	Inch	Horsepower
96.....	14 (13)	0.083 (.095)	12-14 200
84.....	15 (14)	.072 (.083)	12-13 150
72.....	16 (14)	.065 (.083)	12 125
66.....	16	.065	7-11 100
60.....	17	.058	5-9 75

¹ Saw width is normally 1 inch greater than wheel width.

² Birmingham wire gauge. First gauge given is that recommended by one saw manufacturer; gauge shown in parentheses is also in use.

←
Figure 19-63.—Side clearance and shape of cut of bandsaw teeth. Width of kerf in inches = k; thickness of saw plate in inches = g; set or swage to each side of saw plate in inches = s; for swaged teeth, k is approximately equal to width of swage. (A) Swage set. (B) Spring set with no top bevel. (C) Spring set with top bevel. (D) Swaged tooth for wide bandsaw cutting southern pine. (E) Tooth contours for spring-set narrow bandsaws. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

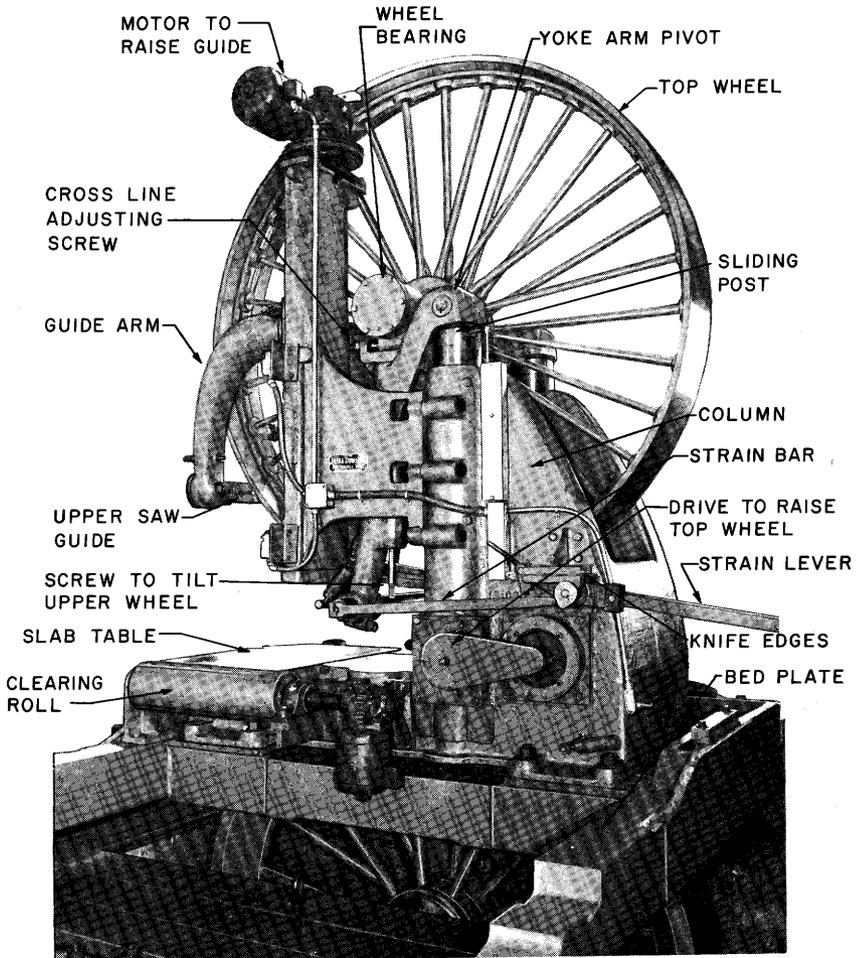


Figure 19-64.—Eight-foot band mill. (Photo from Filer and Stowell Company.)

pine. Assuming a bite per tooth of 0.25 to 0.60 of swage width, feed speed for a headrig cutting green southern pine is expressed (Koch 1964b) :

$$f = \frac{Rkc}{p} \quad (19-22)$$

f = feed speed, f.p.m.

k = width of kerf (approximately equal to swage width), inch

c = saw velocity, f.p.m.

p = pitch of teeth, inches

R = a constant based on sawing conditions:

0.25, sometimes not enough; 0.50, good; 0.60, sometimes best.

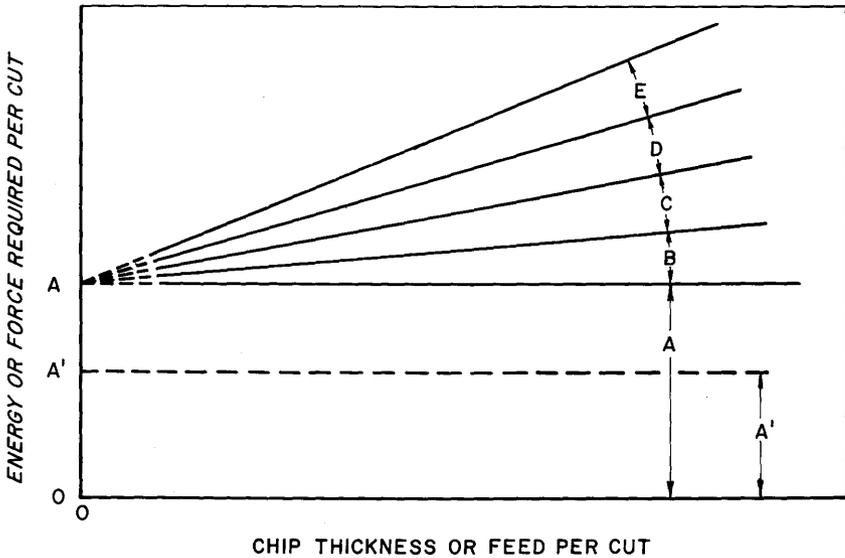


Figure 19-65.—Graphical analysis of cutting resistance in the ripsawing process. A, fiber indentation and incision phase of cutting; A', lower indentation and incision energy for sharper cutting edge; B, chip formation; C, chip breakage and associated friction; D, chip removal and associated friction; E, chip acceleration. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 186, *WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES*, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

For example, a 14-gauge saw swaged to 9 gauge, running at 10,000 f.p.m. with a tooth spacing of 2 inches, would cut well at feed speeds ranging from 178 to 444 f.p.m. Probably the saw would cut best at the higher feed speed. Saw performance is improved if feed speed is uniform.

Saws on a band headrig cutting bark-free southern pine can be expected to wear at a predictable rate, assuming good sharpening practice and no accidents (Koch 1964a, p. 192).

$$W = \frac{SY}{N} \quad (19-23)$$

Where:

- W = wear per saw in inches
- S = shifts per day
- Y = months of service
- N = number of saws in set

For example, a set of eight 14-inch, 13-gauge saws on an 8-foot band mill running two shifts for 12 months might wear down to 11 inches in width, at which time the wheels would be trued and a new set of saws put in service. Ten-inch saws might be allowed to wear down to 8½ or 8 inches in width. **Double-cutting** bandsaws for southern pine are toothed on both edges and range in width from 10 to 14 inches; 1½ inches of wear on each edge might be allowable on wider saws under favorable conditions.

Power to drive a bandsaw is proportional to wheel diameter. The following values are typical for southern pine mills.

<u>Wheel diameter</u>	<u>Power to drive saw</u>
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Horsepower</i>
96	200
84	150
72	125
57	75

Power to drive a sawmill carriage can be applied by electric, hydraulic, or steam mechanisms. Average carriage speed on the cutting stroke can be calculated from equation 19-22; maximum speed when returning to pick up a new log may exceed 1,000 f.p.m. Power required is a function of the combined weight of log and carriage and the maximum acceleration required. Normally, the heaviest carriages are used in conjunction with the largest band mills cutting the heaviest logs. If the carriage is driven by a **steam gun**, the diameter of the gun (cylinder) is related to the carriage weight.

<u>Gun diameter</u>	<u>Weight of carriage alone</u>
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
14	over 20,000
12	to 20,000
10	to 15,000
8	to 10,000

When hydraulic power is used to drive the bandsaw together with the carriage—or the carriage alone—the size of the electric motor required to turn the pump is related to carriage weight.

<u>Carriage weight</u>	<u>Carriage drive alone</u>	<u>Carriage drive plus saw drive</u>
<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Horsepower</i>	
28,000	400	---
18,000	150-200	250
10,000	100	200
6,000	60	150
3,000	25	75

In many southern pine mills, cants or heavy slabs cut with the headrig are resawn into lumber of thinner dimension on a smaller bandsaw called a linebar resaw (fig. 19-66). In an efficient installation, random-length slabs and cants flow nearly continuously through these heavy machines as a single board is ripped from each. The linebar, or guide, is equipped with networks so that distance between guide and saw can be quickly and accurately set. Vertical press rolls, or horizontal spiral rolls, align the stock against the guide before the saw enters the cut. Since only one board is removed with each pass of a cant, each cant is repeatedly returned

on a merry-go-round conveyor to the infeed side of the resaw until reduced to lumber of the desired size. A discussion of mill layouts for linebar resaws is available in Detjen (1961).

All bandsaws, including linebar-resaws, are sized according to wheel diameter. The illustrated 54-inch resaw (fig. 19-66), if cutting southern pine, might carry a 26-foot-long, 8-inch-wide, 17-gauge saw swaged to 11 gauge with $1\frac{3}{4}$ -inch tooth spacing. The saw normally carries a "strain" of 4,640 pounds. The saw itself is driven by a 75-hp. motor. Saw speed is 7,400 f.p.m. The four 8-inch horizontal feed rolls and two 10-inch vertical rolls are driven by a 3- or 5-hp. electric variable-speed drive to give feed speeds infinitely variable between 100 and 300 lineal f.p.m. The maximum feed speed of 300 f.p.m. yields a bite per tooth of 0.072 inch. Normal high speed on a 12-inch-thick cant is 180 f.p.m., giving a bite per tooth of 0.043 inch. Maximum cant size that can be split in the center is 20 inches thick by 24 inches wide. The setworks on the linebar can be air or hydraulically operated and remotely controlled by the sawyer. While

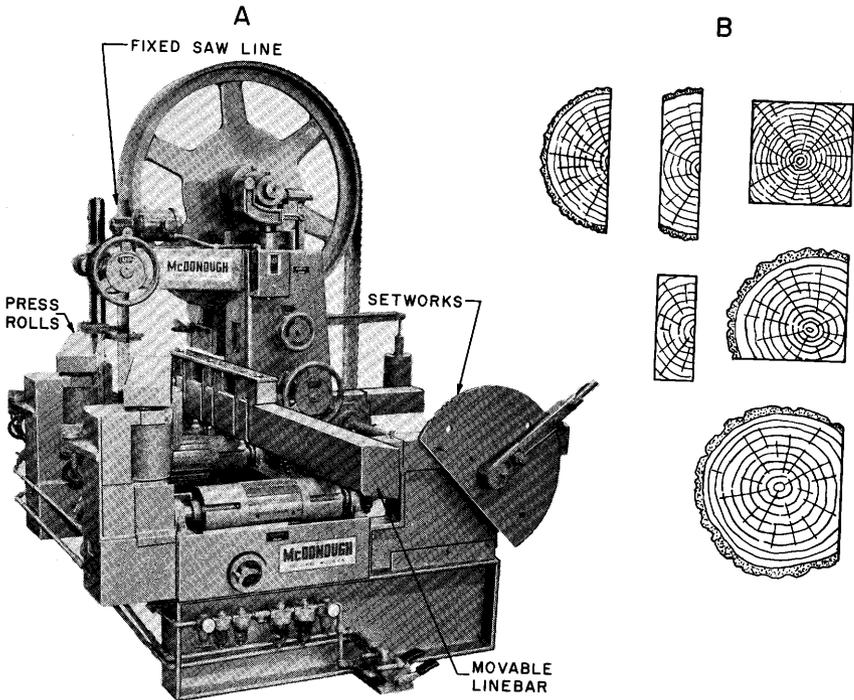


Figure 19-66.—(A) Linebar resaw with 54-inch wheels and short frame. (B) Shapes of cants and slabs that can be resawn on the linebar resaw. Since only one board is removed with each pass of a cant, each cant is repeatedly returned on a merry-go-round conveyor to the infeed of the resaw until reduced to lumber of the desired size. The short frame permits lumber to approach the infeed from either saw or linebar side. (Photo and drawings from McDonough Manufacturing Company.)

one cant is being run, it is possible to preset the linebar for the next cant. Production per 8-hour shift on this machine is determined by stock size and cutting program but can reach 50,000 bd. ft. Automatic off-bearing is provided so that the operating crew consists of the sawyer only, unless the machine is used to salvage stock out of thin irregular slabs. Slab resawing usually requires a tail sawyer because the waste slab may break up into two or three pieces as it leaves the feedworks.

Sawmill resaws are also made so that the band runs horizontally between the wheels; this arrangement permits slabs to be fed face-down on the feed table. A split infeed table is sometimes provided so that two cants or slabs can be fed simultaneously and a different thickness board sawn from each.

Swaged-tooth band resaws for dry lumber.—Because remanufacturing plants commonly keep only a few thicknesses of dry lumber in inventory, they require resaws to convert these thicknesses to a multiplicity of thinner sizes. Since maximum lumber recovery is the objective when resawing dry boards, bandsaws for remanufacturing have much thinner kerf than primary bandsaws. Saw gauge varies according to wheel diameter (table 19-26). For southern pine, the tooth shapes illustrated in figure 19-62D and E are widely used with rake angle of 30° and sharpness angle of 44°.

Because efficient feeds per tooth are a function of swage width (and therefore saw gauge), gullet depths can be expressed as a function of blade thickness and tooth pitch. Thin saws take small bites per tooth and therefore need less gullet space (table 19-27). Tooth spacing on wide saws is greater than on narrow saws because they are capable of deeper cuts and need more gullet space.

Saw velocities of 7,000 to 9,000 f.p.m. are usual for cutting dry southern pine. Saw strain is given by equation 19-21. Practical feed speeds lie in the lower range defined by equation 19-22. Swage width for cutting dry southern pine should be 0.020 to 0.040 inch wider than saw thickness; for example, a 19-gauge blade is commonly swaged to 16 gauge.

Most band resaws for dry southern pine are vertical; they may be in

TABLE 19-26.—*Proportions of band resaws for dry southern pine*

Wheel diameter (inches)	Saw thickness ¹		Saw width	Saw power
	<i>BWG</i>	<i>Inch</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Horsepower</i>
60-----	18-16	0.049-0.065	6-8	60-75
54-----	19-17	.042-.058	5-7	50-60
48-----	19-18	.042-.049	4-6	20-40
44-----	20-19	.035-.042	4-5	15-25
36-----	21-19	.032-.042	3-4	15-20

¹ Saw thickness should not exceed wheel diameter (in inches) divided by 1,000 plus 1 saw gauge.

TABLE 19-27.—*Tooth proportions for wide bandsaws ripping dry southern pine*¹

Saw width (inches)	Saw gauge	Pitch	Gullet depth
	<i>BWG</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Inch</i>
4-----	20(18)	1¾(1)	7/16(¼)
5-----	19(17)	1¾(1½)	1/2(7/16)
6-----	18(16)	1¾-----	5/8-----
7-----	17(15)	1¾-----	1 1/16----
8-----	16(14)	2(1¾)	1 5/16(¾)

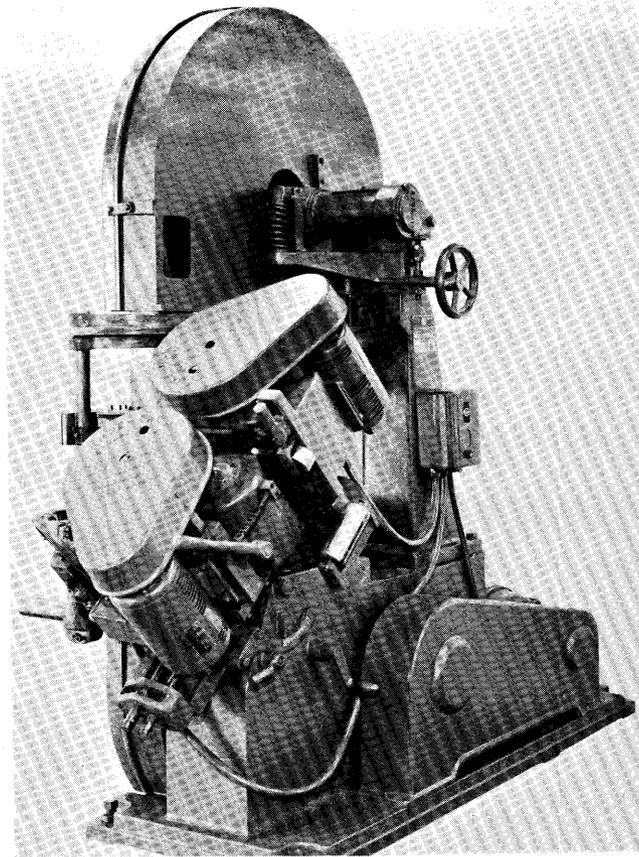
¹ The first number in each entry is for pine of low and normal density; the second number, in parentheses, is for very dense pine.

single, twin, or tandem arrangement depending on the production required. Figure 19-67 shows a single vertical resaw on which the rolls tilt so that standard boards or cants, rectangular in cross section, can be center-resawn into two bevelled pieces of equal size and shape. Bevelled siding and much moulding stock is manufactured in this manner; as another example, triangular corner block for crates and pallet boxes can be readily cut on a resaw equipped with tilting rolls. When equipped to resaw dry southern pine moulding stock, this 36-inch band resaw might carry a 17-foot-long, 4-inch-wide, 20-gauge saw swaged to 15 gauge with a 1-inch tooth pitch and 3/32-inch gullet depth. Normal "strain" for this saw is 1,120 pounds. A 20-hp. motor drives the saw at 7,800 f.p.m. When splitting a 4-inch dry board, the saw would typically be fed at a bite per tooth of 0.02 inch, yielding a feed speed of 156 f.p.m. The four feed rolls are each 6 inches in diameter and 6 inches tall. They are driven by a pair of 1/2-hp. variable-speed motors that are mounted on, and tilt with, the feed roll mechanism. The feed speed is variable from 25 to 250 f.p.m. The rolls can be tilted up to 45°. The maximum-size workpiece that can be center-split on the saw is 8 inches wide and 8 inches thick.

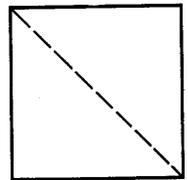
Spring-set narrow bandsaws.—Saws more than 1/2-inch wide are primarily used to rip. Narrower saws can cut curves; for example, a 1/2-inch, 21-gauge saw can cut a curve of 2 1/4-inch radius, and a 1/8-inch, 25-gauge saw can cut a curve of 3/8-inch radius.

Proportions of narrow bandsaws are shown in figure 19-63E. Teeth on 1/4-inch-wide saws are commonly set 0.005 inch to each side; those on saws 1 inch wide are set approximately 0.010 to each side, with other saw widths set proportionately. The thinnest and narrowest saws are run on the smallest wheels (table 19-28).

Wheels for saws less than 1 inch wide are commonly rubber covered, and the saw teeth do not project over the edge. For wide saws, easier-to-clean, hard-faced wheels are used; the spring-set teeth must project beyond the front rim of these wheels.



A



B

Figure 19-67.—(A) 36-inch band resaw with tilting rolls. (B) Typical cuts. (Photo from Tri-State Machinery Company.)

TABLE 19-28.—Narrow bandsaw dimensions (Koch 1964b, p. 200)

Wheel diameter (inches)	Saw gauge	Saw width	Saw speed	Points per inch ¹	Saw length
	<i>BWG</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>F.p.m.</i>		<i>Feet</i>
12-18.....	25	$\frac{3}{16}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$	3000	7-5	6-10
20-30.....	22	$\frac{3}{16}$ - $1\frac{1}{2}$	3500 (to 7500) ²	7-4	10-15
36.....	21	$\frac{1}{4}$ -2	4000-4500 (to 8500) ²	6-3	18-20
42.....	20	1- $2\frac{1}{2}$	5000-5500 (to 9900) ²	5-2	over 21

¹ Counts teeth in a 1-inch space, i.e., includes the tooth at each end of a measured inch; thus, if tooth points are spaced $\frac{1}{10}$ inch apart, there are considered to be 11 teeth per inch.

² On some current designs.

SASH GANGSAWING

The sash gangsaw carries several straight, short sawblades clamped in a reciprocating frame; the log (fig. 19-68A,B) or cant (fig. 19-68C) is fed continuously through this frame. The action is similar to that of a handsaw in the hands of a carpenter ripping a board. The saws cut on the downstroke only. For a detailed discussion of kinematics and power requirements see Koch (1964b, pp. 201-210).

Some important relationships can be seen from figure 19-68D. It is evident that saw velocity is maximum when the crank arm is horizontal, and zero when it is vertical.

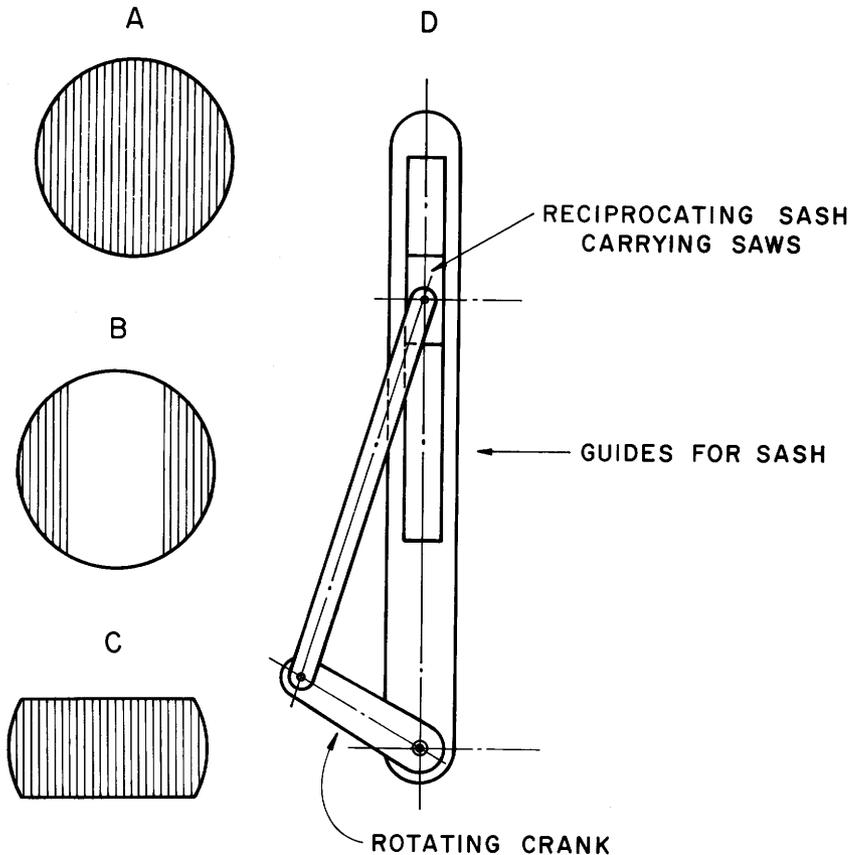


Figure 19-68.—Sawing patterns and kinematics for gangsaws.

- (A) Log sawn into boards or dimension.
- (B) Boards sawn from outer portion of log only, leaving central cant of desired dimension.
- (C) Cant gangsawn into lumber.
- (D) Diagram of sash motion on a reciprocating gangsaw; simplified to omit overhang or oscillation.

The workpiece feed per revolution of the crank, and the average chip thickness can be calculated:

$$x = \frac{12f}{n} \quad (19-24)$$

$$t_{\text{avg}} = \frac{12pf}{Sn} \quad (19-25)$$

where:

x = workpiece feed per revolution of crank, inch

f = feed speed of workpiece, feet per minute

n = revolutions per minute of crank

S = stroke of sash, inches = twice length of crank arm

t_{avg} = average chip thickness, inches

p = pitch, inches

Saw overhang.—To cut southern pine, most gangsaws are equipped to feed the workpiece continuously at a uniform speed. To avoid interference between saw and workpiece, the saw must be moved out of the cut on the upstroke. **Overhang** (fig. 19-69), automatically adjusted in amount to correspond to the continuous feed speed, is a partial solution.

Oscillation.—Figure 19-70 shows an overhung saw cutting on the downstroke. It is evident that, at the beginning of the upstroke, the point of each tooth will interfere with the surface it has just cut and cause sash power to be substantially increased; research by Kivimaa (1959) has confirmed this. Some European manufacturers have coped with this problem by incorporating overhang proportional to feed speed and in addition **oscillating** the sash, that is, swinging the bottom of the sash away from the workpiece at the instant of bottom reversal and then repositioning it at top reversal. No gangsaw manufactured in the United States, however, is designed with an oscillating ash.

Capacity and characteristics of gangsaws.—While whole-log gangs are much used in the world, most in the southern pine region are arranged to handle cants (figs. 19-68C, 19-71). Table 19-29 gives proportions of cant and log gangsaws suitable for use on southern pine. The horsepower figures shown in table 19-29 do not imply that these are the power demands at maximum feed rates on a workpiece occupying the full width and depth of opening. Horsepower demand is determined by saw velocity, bite per tooth, width of swage, depth of cut, and number of saws cutting. (See Koch 1964b, equations 6-40 and 6-43.)

If 75 hp. is required on a 12-inch-wide gangsaw to cut a 6- by 12-inch cant into 2-inch lumber at 20 feet per minute, a similar 6-inch-deep cant, but 18 inches wide, if cut into 2-inch lumber at 32 feet per minute on a 30-inch gangsaw, would require 150 to 225 hp. If feed speed is constant, power required to saw a cant is directly proportional to number of saws in the cant, e.g., if 100 hp. is required to saw a cant into 2-inch lumber, 200 hp. will be needed to reduce it to 1-inch boards. Horsepower demand is also directly proportional to depth of cut. Obviously, the amount of

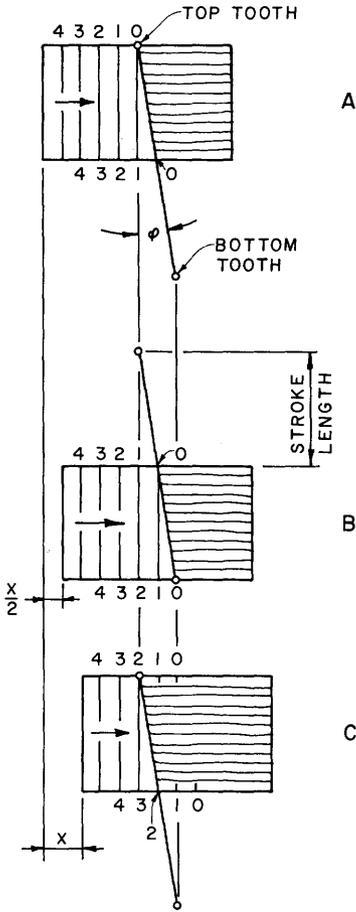


Figure 19-69.—Action if sash guides are vertical and the saws are given overhang, i.e., tilted in relation to the guides. (A) End of downstroke. (B) End of following upstroke. (C) End of following downstroke. Saws cut on downstroke, cant is fed from left to right. Movement of cant during upstroke brings teeth into contact with previous cut at start of downstroke. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 205, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

lumber sawn per shift is a function of cant size and effective feed speed.

Swaged teeth (fig. 19-63D) are generally used on gang saws for southern pine. Swage width is commonly twice blade thickness; for example, 14 gauge would be swaged to 8 gauge, and 13 gauge to 7 gauge. A rake angle of approximately 20° (as low as 15° in some mills) is used in combination with a sharpness angle of about 45° .

The saw "strain" is accomplished by wedges, cams, screws, or hydraulic mechanisms. Hydraulic tensioning has the important advantage of maintaining constant strain on each saw regardless of transitory changes in blade load and temperature.

Saws in a sash gang saw can be spaced as desired to cut any thickness, or combination of thicknesses, of lumber. One gang saw of European design carries saws mounted in two banks or clusters on either side of the sash, and these banks can be shifted while the saw is idling to alter the central spacing. By this method, boards of a thickness determined by the spacing of the saws in each bank can be cut from the two sides of a

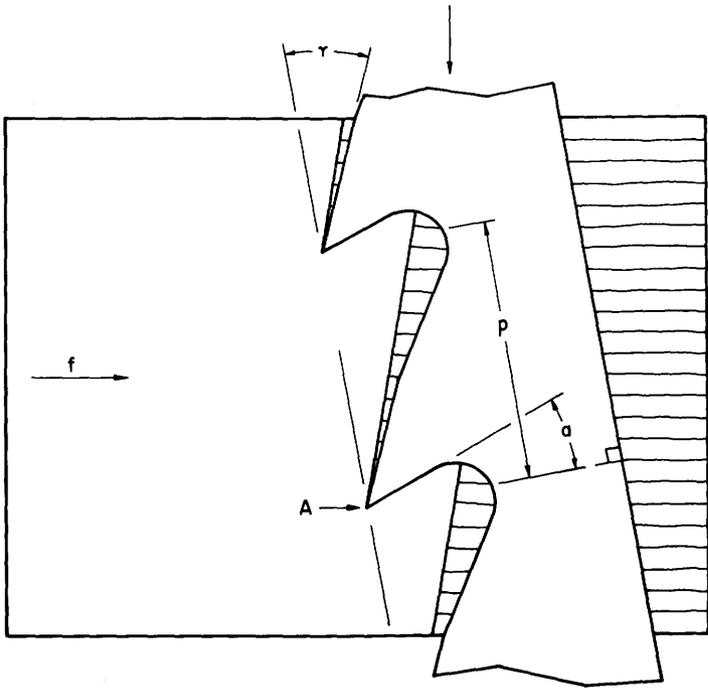


Figure 19-70.—Overhang saw in cut. At start of upstroke, points of teeth bind against workpiece, as at A. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 208, *WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES*, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

log or cant, and the size of timber produced between the inner saws of the two banks can be quickly varied from $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 16 inches.

Large cant gangsaws usually have only four feed rolls, one pair in-feeding and the other outfeeding. The bottom rolls are located on a fixed level; the top rolls are adjustable, usually by air cylinders, to accommodate cants of various depths. When the top rolls are split so that one side of each roll can be lifted independently of the other, it is possible to simultaneously run two small cants of different depths.

On fully mechanized gangsaws it is essential to have efficient offbearing equipment. A simple roll case with automatic kickoff is usually not adequate because short tapered slabs or *shims* are sometimes caught between sawblades and fail to clear the saws properly. When this happens, the shims prevent lateral transfer of the cluster of lumber emerging from the saw. A good outfeeding device must, therefore, positively clear shims from between the saw blades.

Figure 19-71 illustrates a cant gangsaw suitable for use on southern pine.

Advantages and disadvantages of gangsaws.—Primary advantages include good lumber recovery (kerf is narrow—approximately $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch), and accuracy of sawn lumber because of preset spacing of the tensioned saws. Dobie et al. (1967) in a study in western Canada found that the output

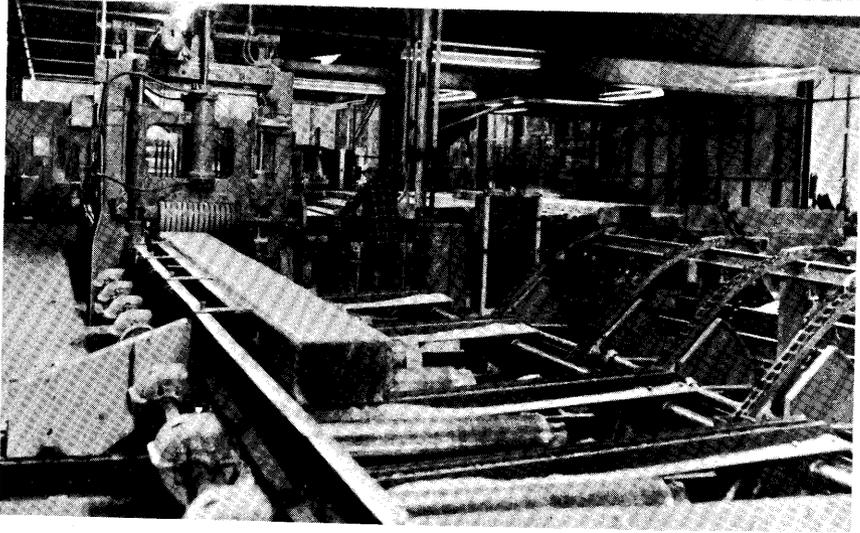
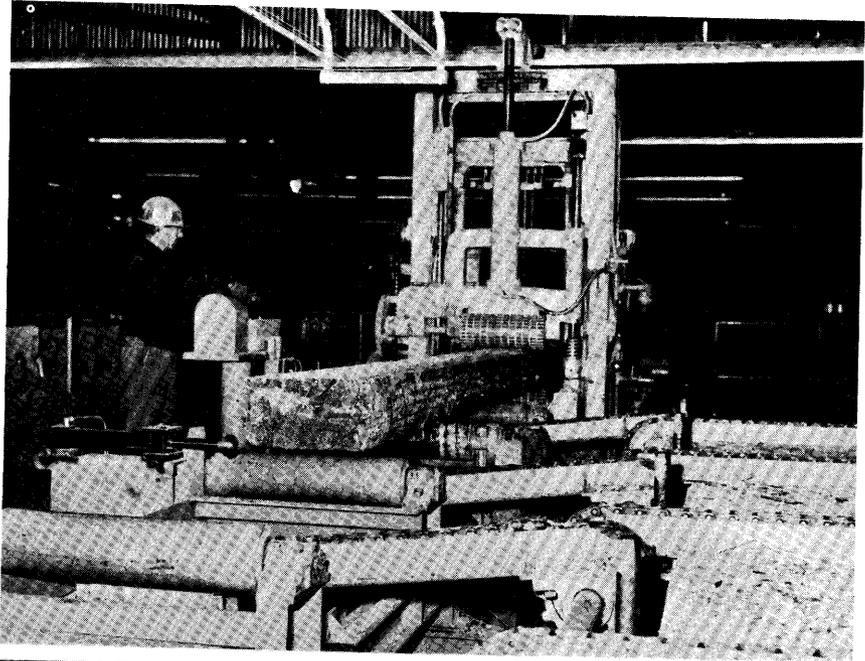


Figure 19-71.—(Top) Infeed and (bottom) outfeed sides of 30- by 24-inch cant gangsaw with single crank. The machine has a stroke of 24 inches, a crank speed of 300 r.p.m., and 150 to 250 hp. driving the sash. To cut southern pine lumber, it might carry 14-gauge, 7-inch-wide (or 13-gauge, 8-inch-wide) saws swaged to 8 gauge with $1\frac{3}{4}$ -inch tooth spacing and a rake angle of 16° . The 10-hp. electrically powered feedworks provides a continuous feed, variable from 14 to 40 f.p.m. The sash on this machine is arranged to incorporate automatic overhang adjustment as the feed speed is varied. Top feed roll pressure is provided by air cylinders. Not illustrated, but available, are split-top infeed rolls that permit the side-by-side feeding of two cants of different depth. The saws are individually tensioned by a combination of wedges and cams. When cutting 2-inch lumber, capacity of this cant gang is 50,000 to 60,000 bd. ft. per 8-hour shift. (Photos from Mill Engineering and Supply Company.)

TABLE 19-29.—Proportions of cant and log gangsaws for southern pine

Type of saw and maximum cant size or log diameter (inches)	Stroke	Crank speed	Power on sash	Power on feed	Feed rate	Saw gauge	Saw width	Tooth pitch
	<i>Inches</i>	<i>R.p.m.</i>	<i>--- Horsepower ---</i>	<i>--- F.p.m. ---</i>	<i>BWG</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Inches</i>	
Cant gangsaws								
12 by 12.....	12	375	75	3	10-20 ¹	16	5	1¼
18 by 16.....	16	350	125	5	11-22 ¹	15	6	1½
24 by 20.....	20	325	150	7½	13-35 ¹	14(13)	7	1¾
30 by 24.....	24	300	200	10	14-40 ¹	14(13)	8	1¾
Log gangsaws²								
6.....	24	325	125	5	45-50	13	8	1¾
12.....	24	325	125	7½	35-45	13	9	1¾
18.....	24	300	150	7½	30-35	13	9	1¾
24.....	24	285	200	10	25-30	13	9	1¾
30.....	24	285	250	10	20-25	13	9	1¾

¹ Based on an average chip thickness ranging from 50 to 100 percent of blade thickness.

² Based on data from Mill Engineering and Supply Company.

of gangmills was 56 percent lumber, 31 percent chippable waste, and 13 percent sawdust; circle mills (of the two-saw scrag type) produced 52 percent lumber and 22 percent sawdust. (See table 19-23.)

Gangsaws, because they cut through-and-through, cannot remove high-grade lumber from all four sides of a log. This disadvantage can be partially overcome if the gangsaw is arranged to take cants from a circular or band headrig; the headrig removes any high-grade lumber available on two sides before the cants go to the gangsaw. Alternatively, two gangsaws can be arranged in tandem, the first slabbing two sides of the log and removing the sideboards, while the second reduces the cant to boards, including sideboards from the unslabbed sides.

If logs are gangsawn in diameter classes, a fixed saw spacing can be tailored to get highest value from each class. Gangsaws are not well suited for extremely rough logs; such logs should be prepared for the gangsaw by slabbing them on two sides on a preceding headrig.

CIRCULAR SAWING

The circular saw, in numerous variations, is used in all stages of pine manufacture. This text will discuss only a few of the most important applications. For discussions in greater depth, see Koch (1964b, pp. 217-273), Lubkin (1957), and Kollmann and Côté (1968, p. 490).

Nomenclature.—Figures 19-72, 19-73, and 19-74 illustrate nomenclature for circular saws.

Kinematics and fundamentals.—Depending on the direction of cut through the workpiece, circular saws may cut by **counter-sawing** or by **climb-sawing** (fig. 19-73). Counter-sawing, which resembles up-milling in that the cutting edge emerges from the workpiece more nearly at right angles to the direction of feed than where it entered, is sometimes called “up-sawing.” Similarly in climb-sawing, the cut is more nearly parallel to the feed where it leaves the workpiece; climb-sawing is sometimes called “down-sawing.” Note that if the drawings in figure 19-73 were reversed top to bottom by turning them on their horizontal axes, their cutting directions relative to the workpiece would be similar to those for up-milling and down-milling respectively in figures 19-30A and 19-30B.

In order to rationally specify circular saws and matching drive motors, it is helpful to understand some basic relationships.

In planing, where the angle ω is small, the cumbersome expressions for the true trochoidal cutting path are necessary for accuracy. In circular sawing, however, the tooth traces can be closely approximated as arcs of circles. For counter-sawing (fig. 19-73):

$$\omega_1 = \arccos \left(\frac{d+h}{R} \right) \quad (19-26)$$

$$\omega_2 = \arccos \frac{h}{R} \quad (19-27)$$

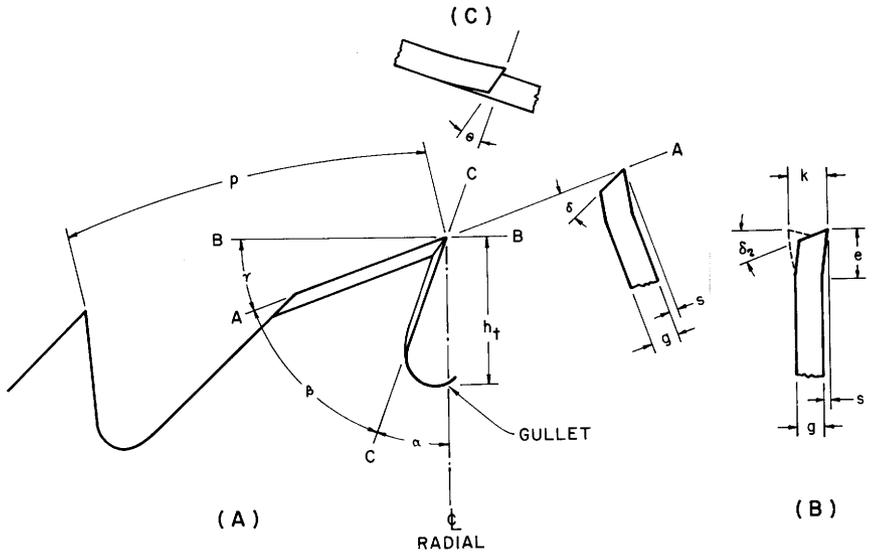


Figure 19-72.—Geometry of spring-set circular saw teeth. (A) Side view of tooth. (B) Front view of tooth. (C) Projection along rake plane.

- α Rake angle, degrees
- γ Clearance angle, degrees
- β Sharpness angle, degrees
- δ Top bevel angle, degrees (measured from clearance plane A-A, fig. 19-72A)
- θ Front bevel angle, degrees (measured from the rake plane, fig. 19-72A)
- g Thickness of saw blade, inch (may be variable from saw center to tooth extremity)
- s Amount of set (or swage) to each side of saw plate, inch
- e Length of tooth affected by set (measured from tooth extremity in a radial direction to the line of set, i.e., the line of set falls along a circle concentric with the cutting circle but of slightly smaller diameter)
- k Width of kerf, inch (nominally $2s + g$; actual kerf may vary from nominal width because of vibration, runout, or other factors)
- h_t Gullet depth measured radially, inches
- N Number of teeth in saw
- p Tooth pitch, inches
- a Area of tooth gullet, square inches.

(Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 219, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

For climb-sawing (fig. 19-73):

$$\omega_1 = \arccos \frac{h}{R} \tag{19-28}$$

$$\omega_2 = \arccos \left(\frac{d+h}{R} \right) \tag{19-29}$$

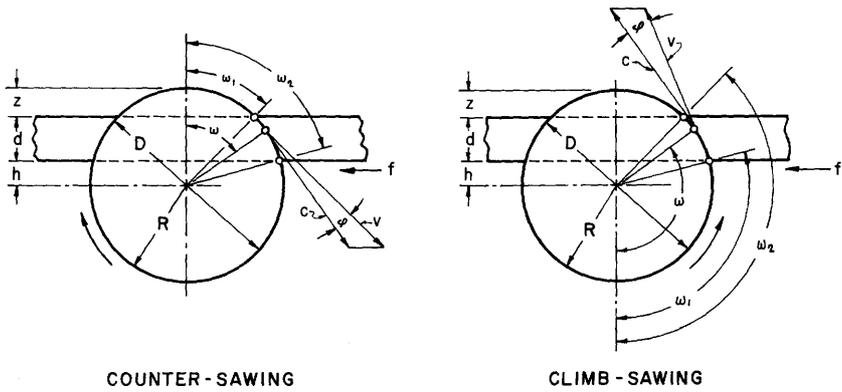


Figure 19-73.—Angles, dimensions, and velocity vectors for circular saws.

- z** Saw projection beyond the workpiece, inches
- d** Depth of workpiece, inches
- h** Distance between workpiece and axis of saw rotation, inches
- ω** Instantaneous position angle of tooth under consideration
- ω₁** Angle through which tooth edge has rotated from reference line to entry in wood
- ω₂** Angle through which tooth edge has rotated from reference line to exit from wood
- f** Feed speed, feet per minute
- n** Saw blade, revolutions per minute
- c** Cutting velocity, feet per minute (i.e., peripheral velocity of cutting edge)
- v** Velocity of cutting edge relative to workpiece, feet per minute
- f_r** Feed per revolution of saw blade, inches
- b** Length of arc of tooth engagement with workpiece, inches
- R** Blade radius, inches

(Drawing after Lubkin 1957.)

The angle at which instantaneous chip thickness is the average chip thickness can be approximated as follows:

$$\omega_a \cong \arccos \frac{\left(h + \frac{d}{2}\right)}{R} \tag{19-30}$$

The length of path of tooth engagement for both counter-sawing and climb-sawing can be stated:

$$b = R(\omega_2 - \omega_1) \tag{19-31}$$

The tooth pitch for uniformly spaced teeth is:

$$p = \frac{2\pi R}{N} \tag{19-32}$$

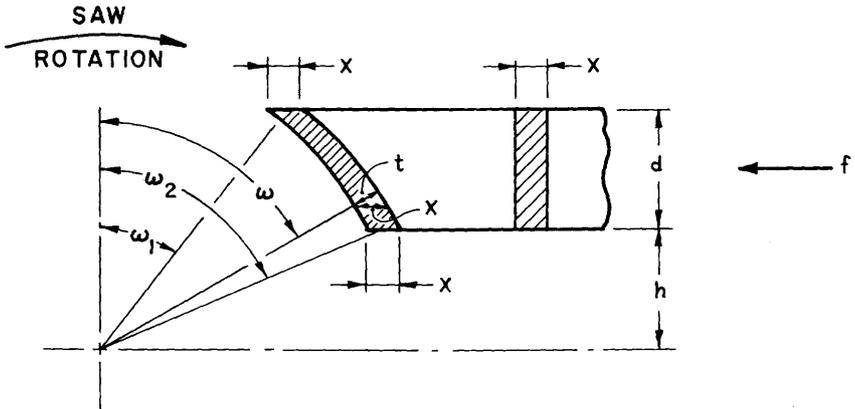


Figure 19-74.—Approximate chip geometry for circular saws.

- t Instantaneous chip thickness, inch (measured in a direction perpendicular to a tangent to the tooth trace, i.e., in an approximately radial direction)
- t_a Average chip thickness, inch
- x Feed per tooth, or "bite" per tooth, inch
- V Volume of wood removed by a single tooth as it travels through the workpiece, cubic inches
- E_s Specific cutting energy, kilowatthours per cubic inch kerf removed
- (Drawing after Lubkin 1957.)

Feed per revolution of blade is:

$$f_r = \frac{f}{n} \quad (19-33)$$

The feed per tooth is:

$$x = \frac{2\pi R f}{N c} = \frac{p f}{c} = \frac{12 f}{n N} \quad (19-34)$$

Chip thickness at any instant (fig. 19-74) can be approximately stated for swage-set teeth.

$$t = x \sin \omega = \frac{f \sin \omega}{n N} = \frac{p f}{c} \sin \omega \quad (19-35)$$

For swage-set teeth the average chip thickness is:

$$t_a = \frac{x d}{b} = \frac{p f d}{b c} \quad (19-36)$$

As shown in figures 19-63B and C, spring-set teeth penetrate to twice the depth that swage-set teeth penetrate for a given feed per tooth because the points of alternate teeth cut on opposite sides of the kerf; for spring-set teeth, the average chip thickness is:

$$t_{\text{avg spring-set}} = \frac{g t_a + (g + 2s - g) t_a}{g} = \frac{k}{g} t_a \quad (19-37)$$

Rim speed, i.e., peripheral velocity of the saw teeth, can be expressed:

$$c = \frac{2\pi Rn}{12} = \frac{\pi Rn}{6} \quad (19-38)$$

For both counter-sawing and climb-sawing, resultant tooth velocity (fig. 19-73) with respect to the workpiece is:

$$v = \sqrt{c^2 + f^2 + 2cf \cos \omega} \quad (19-39)$$

The actual number of teeth engaged will alternate between the two integral numbers closest in value to the ratio $b:p$.

Obviously total cutting power required is positively correlated with width of kerf and with length of cutting path (thickness of workpiece). When evaluating the effect of feed per tooth on power required, it is convenient to use the concept of specific cutting energy, i.e., the energy to remove a unit volume of wood. From equations 19-1 and 19-2 it was observed that the parallel cutting force could be expressed in terms of chip thickness: curvilinearly (Kt^m) or linearly ($A + Bt$). If the experimentally determined constants K and m (or A and B) are known, the specific cutting energy of a circular saw (E_s , kilowatt hours per cubic inch of kerf removed) can be calculated for any value of average chip thickness (t_a , equation 19-36 for swage-set saws, and 19-37 for spring-set saws); see Koch (1964b, p. 225) for development of the equations.

$$E_s = \frac{(0.377)(10^{-6})}{12} \left[\frac{K}{t_a^{1-m}} \right] \quad (19-40)$$

$$E_s = \frac{(0.377)(10^{-6})}{12} \left(B + \frac{A}{t_a} \right) \quad (19-41)$$

The shape of these curves is shown in figure 19-75. Normal rim speed for circular saws is approximately 10,000 f.p.m. It is, however, practical to increase the chip thickness and thereby reduce the power demand by reducing saw revolutions per minute, increasing tooth spacing, or increasing feed speed. Gullet capacity, tooth strength, plate strength, and surface quality (fig. 19-61) limit the feed per tooth to relatively low values, however—generally considerably less than 1/4-inch for log saws and much less for most other applications of circular saws. A detailed discussion of these limiting factors, the effects of size and orientation of the sawblade, and the effects of tooth angles, can be found in Koch (1964b, p. 226-271).

Insert-tooth ripsaws.—Circle headrigs and board edgers used in the southern pine region commonly are equipped with two-piece teeth having easily replaceable bits and shanks (fig. 19-76). The bit is drop-forged and has clearance angles factory-ground on top and sides. It is sharpened by grinding on the rake face only so that the cutting edge is perpendicular to the plane of the saw plate. The assembly, consisting of bit and shank,

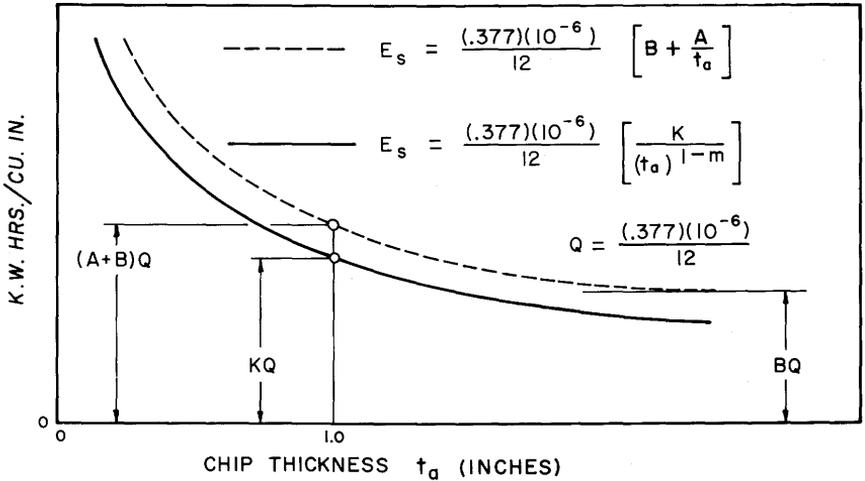


Figure 19-75.—Forms of specific cutting energy curves. While most bandsaws cut a chip thinner than 1/4-inch, chipping headrigs commonly feed 1/2-inch to 1 inch per knife. (Drawing after Lubkin 1957.)

rides in a grooved seat in the saw plate. The shank is slightly larger than the socket; thus, the entire assembly is securely spring locked in place. The inserted tooth is well designed to exhaust sawdust from the kerf; the gullet is capacious and rounded, and the shank is thickened (to chamber the sawdust) where it meets the bit (fig. 19-76).

Because the bits are replaceable when worn, the diameter of the saw remains constant regardless of the length of time the saw plate has been in service.

A rake angle of 30 to 40° is commonly employed for all insert-tooth ripsaws cutting southern pine. The maximum width of the forged bit is generally slightly less than twice the plate thickness, and may range from 7/32- to 3/8-inch but is commonly 1/4- to 5/16-inch in width. Rim speed is usually approximately 10,000 f.p.m., but speeds of 8,000 to 12,000 f.p.m. are common. Feed per tooth on this type of saw is frequently about 0.08

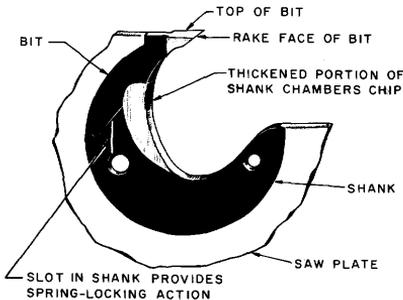


Figure 19-76.—Two-piece inserted tooth for a circular ripsaw.

inch, although many softwood mills operate at a bite per tooth of $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch. Figure 19-61 illustrates surfaces obtained with feeds per tooth of $\frac{1}{8}$ -, $\frac{1}{4}$ -, and $\frac{1}{3}$ -inch.

Saw diameters on headrigs range from 40 to 60 inches, with plate thickness as thin as 9 by 10 gauge for 40-inch saws and as thick as 4 by 5 gauge for 60-inch saws. Saw plates are normally a gauge thicker in the center than at the rim. Tooth pitch is commonly 3 to 4 inches but may be as large as 6 inches.

Power data specific to southern pine have not been published; the requirement can be estimated, however, from a study made by Andrews (1955) on other species. A 38-tooth, 48-inch-diameter, 700-r.p.m., inserted-tooth saw cutting with a $\frac{9}{32}$ -inch kerf and 0.077-inch feed per tooth might require the following saw power:

<u>Depth of cut</u>	<u>Power required by saw only</u>
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Horsepower</i>
2	14
4	29
6	44
8	59
10	73
12	88
14	102

A 54-inch circular saw, hydraulic log turner, and 6,000-pound carriage—if all hydraulically powered—require a 150-hp. electric motor to drive the pump. If the carriage weight is only 3,000 pounds, 100 hp. might be sufficient; a 10,000-pound carriage requires about 200 hp.

A typical small edger saw of insert-tooth design is 14 inches in diameter, 10 gauge, carries 14 teeth, cuts a $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch kerf, and rotates at 2,725 r.p.m. Each saw in the cut requires from 10 to 30 hp. depending on thickness of stock and feed speed.

Tooth deflection and breakage are related to stress distribution in inserted-tooth circular saws; readers interested in studying the location and magnitude of these stresses will find the work by Malcolm and Koster (1970) useful.

Double-arbor gangsaws.—In an effort to boost productivity per man-hour in southern pine sawmills, the **double-arbor circular gangsaw** has been increasingly used. This machine carries two gangs of circular saws—one cutting from the top and the other from the bottom. Figure 19-57 illustrates such a machine built into the outfeed end of a chipping headrig. In some designs the top arbor carries climb-cutting saws.

Power demand is substantial—each arbor can carry as much as 250 hp. for 12-inch cuts (6 inches from top and 6 inches from the bottom) at a feed rate of 100 lineal feet per minute or more. Thin circular saws tend to be distorted by heat generated from friction between saw plate

and kerf wall. Saws have recently been designed specifically for application to double-arbor gangsaws. Designs vary, but one reportedly successful saw has 16 carbide-tipped teeth cutting a $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch kerf; the $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch plate turns at 1,770 r.p.m. In addition to the normal gullets, the plate has two very deep gullets of constant width that run nearly to the saw collar but at a trailing angle; cutters the width of the kerf are attached to the face of each long gullet; these long knives cut themselves free whenever saw deflection occurs and eject the sawdust forcibly from the tops of the long gullets. A variation of this design has been described by Demsky (1967) and by DuClos (1967).

Water is sometimes used to cool and clean these saws. The saws may be clamped on the arbor, or they may float on a keyed arbor; in the latter case they are spaced as desired by babbitt-faced guides that bear against the rim on both sides of each saw plate.

Thin rip-saws.—The technique of high-speed ripping of thick cants with circular saws is developing rapidly; current efforts are concentrated on reducing kerf thickness. Readers desiring information on the state of the art are referred to Kintz (1969), Salemme (1969), Schlieve (1969), and Thrasher (1969). It is of substantial commercial interest that 6-inch-thick cants of some species can be ripped—at feeds approaching production speeds—with a kerf of less than $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch.

Salemme (1969) notes that thin-kerf, carbide-tipped, circular rip-saws require machines specially designed to provide the necessary precision of operation. He recommends use of the largest diameter, thickest, and flattest saw collar possible; the saw should be made of an excellent grade of steel and have the smallest eye possible.

General purpose swage-set rip-saws.—Expert saw filers who need circular saws for applications where change in diameter with wear is not a factor, may find swage-set rip-saws more economical than insert-tooth saws. As with bandsaws, swaging tools are designed for a limited range of tooth shapes. A rake angle of 30° with sharpness angle of 44° is common. Rim speeds are in the range from 8,000 to 14,000 f.p.m. Table 19-30 shows the proportions of small swage-set rip-saws. For thin material use the maximum number of teeth. Saws in the heavier gauges are suitable for power-fed machines or when cutting green or thick pine.

For saws 15 gauge and thicker the tooth height should be approximately (0.43) (pitch); for saws less than 15 gauge, tooth height can be somewhat less. Width of swage is commonly twice plate thickness.

Log cutoff saws.—The trend toward tree-length logging and diversion of each portion of the stem to its most appropriate use has stimulated new interest in log cutoff saws installed at central log decks. Circular log cutoff saws are generally arranged with the saw center above the work-piece. Figure 19-77A shows solid-tooth styles and bevels.

Typically, rake angle is negative (e.g., -20°), sharpness angle 45° , clearance angle 65° , and tooth height 0.76 times the pitch. Bevel is equally

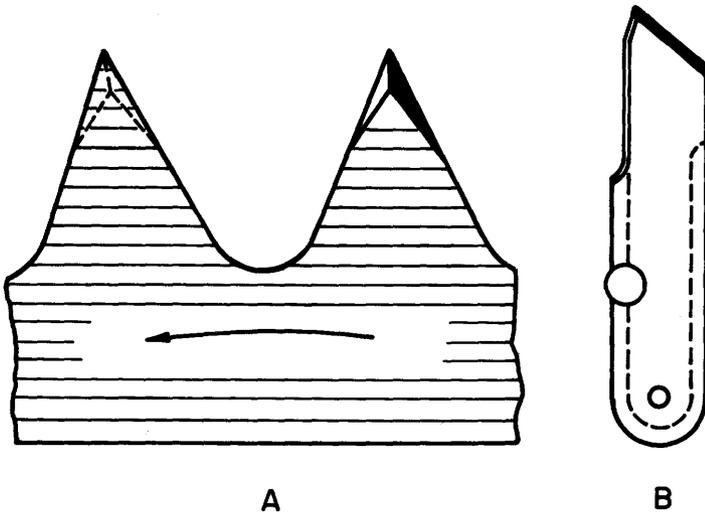


Figure 19-77.—Tooth styles commonly used for log cutoff saws. (A) Solid tooth. (B) Inserted tooth.

divided between front and back of the tooth, i.e., both front and top carry a 12 to 15° bevel. The point only is bevelled; the remainder of the tooth and gullet are ground straight across. The teeth are spring set about 3/64-inch to each side of the saw plate.

The inserted tooth shown in figure 19-77B is a commonly used style for log cutoff saws ranging from 66 to 108 inches in diameter. It is spring set (1/8-inch to each side is common) and is riveted into a V-milled socket in the saw plate. The tooth illustrated is 4 9/32 inches long. It fits into a radially oriented socket in the saw plate that is 2 13/16 inches deep. Table 19-31 shows commonly used saw specifications.

TABLE 19-30.—Proportions of general-purpose, solid-tooth swaged ripsaws (Koch 1964b, p. 253)

Diameter (inches)	Gauge	Number of teeth	Diameter (Inches)	Gauge	Number of teeth
6-----	18	36-40	22	8-12	30-36
7-----	18	36-40	24	7-11	30-36
8-----	18	36-40	26	7-11	30-36
9-----	16	36-38	28	10	36
10-----	12-16	24-36	30	10	36
12-----	10-14	24-36	32	10	36
14-----	10-14	24-44	34	9	36
16-----	10-14	24-40	36	9	36
18-----	9-13	24-40	38	8	36
20-----	8-13	24-36	40	8	36

Figure 19-78 illustrates a 108-inch, 3-gauge, log cutoff saw with 164 inserted, spring-set teeth. Hydraulically operated jaws clamp the log on both sides of the cut. To give a rim speed of 10,000 f.p.m., the saw rotates at 354 r.p.m. and is driven by a 75-hp. motor. It is hydraulically fed and requires 2 seconds to cut through a 24-inch log at a feed per tooth of 0.012 inch. In the southern pine region, saw diameters of 60 to 96 inches are more common.

Cutoff saws for rough trimmers.—These crosscutting saws are used to trim green lumber to length. They may be mounted above or below the workpiece and arranged to either counter-saw or climb-saw. Typically the rake angle is 0° and the clearance angle 45° . Face bevel should not exceed top bevel and is commonly 12 to 15° (fig. 19-79). The face bevel should not extend into the gullet. Teeth are spring-set; a set of $2\frac{1}{2}$ BWG gauges to each side of the saw is common. Table 19-32 shows common specifications.

A typical sawmill trimmer chain might travel at 70 f.p.m., which, with a 24-inch, 70-tooth saw rotating at 1,915 r.p.m., would produce a rim speed of 12,000 f.p.m. and a feed per tooth of 0.063 inch.

Smooth-trim saws.—Dry planed southern pine boards and dimension

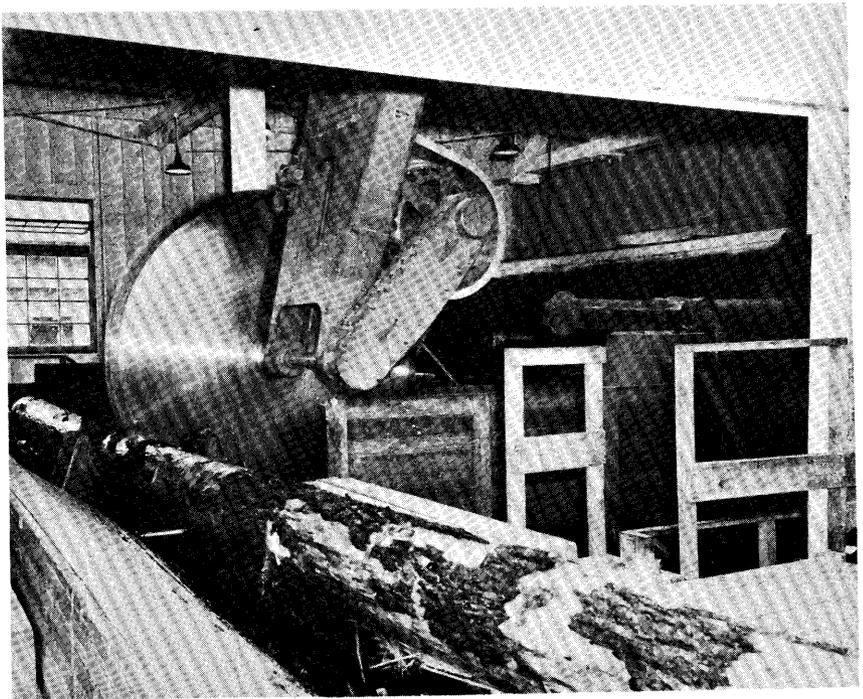


Figure 19-78.—A 108-inch log cutoff saw. Hydraulic clamps hold log on each side of cut. Saw motor is 75 hp. For southern pine 60- to 96-inch saws are more common. (Photo from Sumner Iron Works, A Division of the Black Clawson Company.)

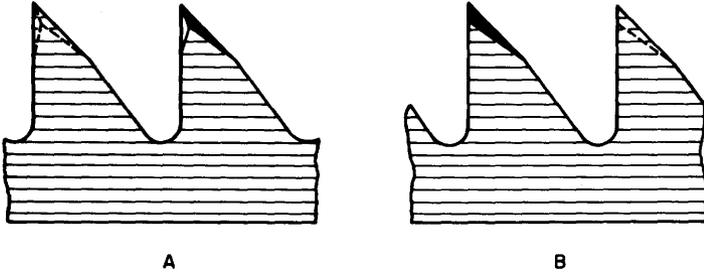


Figure 19-79.—Tooth styles for rough-trimmer saws.

lumber are ordinarily given an extremely smooth end-trim by a hollow-ground saw; this prepares the board end for printing of the mill mark and perhaps waxing to inhibit moisture pickup. Down-milling (climb-sawing) is commonly employed; rim speed is usually 20,000 f.p.m. or higher. On dry lumber, tooth pitch is approximately $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch and tooth height is

TABLE 19-31.—Specifications for log cutoff saws (Koch 1964b, p. 261)

Diameter (inches)	Gauge	Number of teeth
<i>BWG</i>		
60.....	6	96
62.....	6	100
64.....	6	104
66.....	5	108
96.....	4	158
108.....	3	164

TABLE 19-32.—Specifications for rough-trimmer saws (Koch 1964b, p. 263)

Diameter (inches)	Gauge	Number of teeth	Diameter	Gauge	Number of teeth
<i>BWG</i>			<i>Inches</i>		
6.....	18	100	24	10-11	70
8.....	18	100	26	10	70
10.....	16	100-150	28	10	70
12.....	12-14	70-150	30	9-10	70
14.....	12-14	60-150	32	10	70
16.....	12-14	60-150	34	9	70
18.....	10-13	60-100	36	8-9	70-80
20.....	10-13	70-80	38	8	80
22.....	10-12	70	40	6-7	80

$\frac{7}{16}$ -inch (fig. 19–80). Saws are hollow ground to reduce the plate thickness 4 to 5 gauges in an area concentric to the rim (table 19–33). The 45° face bevel, lack of set, high rim speed, and numerous teeth result in smoothly machined kerf walls.

Figure 19–81 illustrates a machine using smooth-trim saws to trim kiln-dry pine. The single operator at the control console in the foreground automatically loads the lugs, double-end trims each board to its longest possible even length (or trims back for grade, or permits the board to pass without trimming), imprints both ends of the random-length boards with one of two different brands, waxes the ends of the boards,

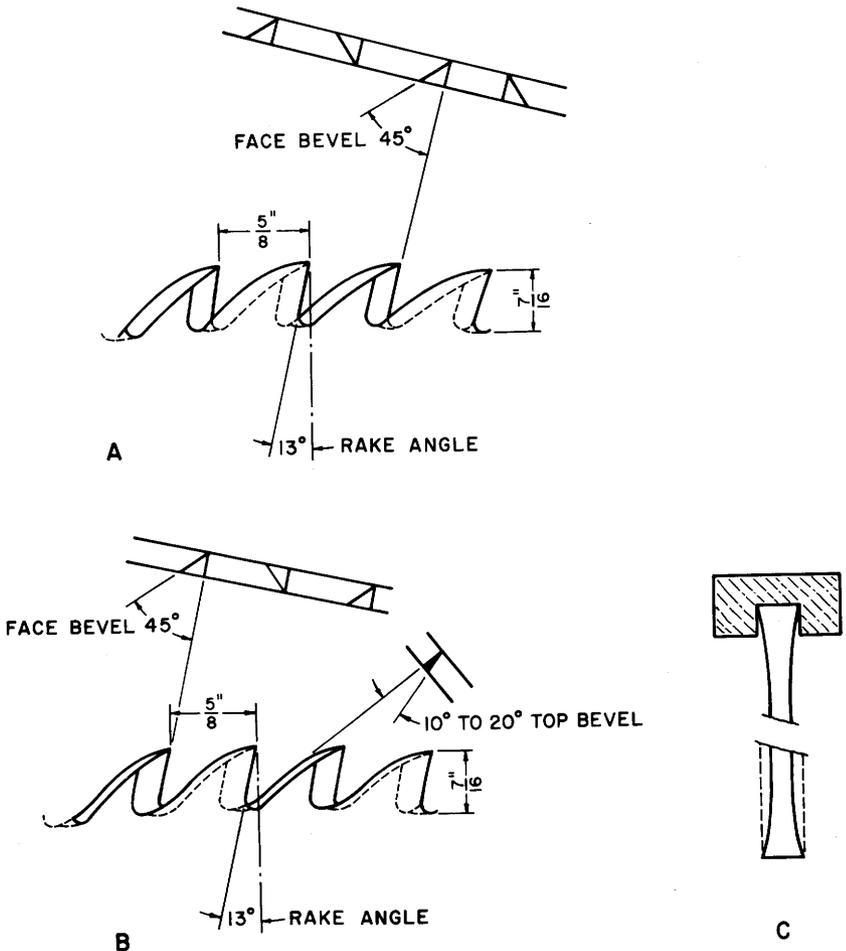


Figure 19–80.—Tooth styles for hollow-ground, smooth-trim saws. (A) Round-back tooth (approximately 45° top bevel). (B) Skew-back tooth (10° to 20° top bevel); this configuration gives more strength to the point of the tooth and is an exception to the rule of equally dividing face and top bevel. (C) Hollow-ground saw plate gives clearance to cutting corners. (Drawings after Peter Koch 1964b, pp. 247, 264, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

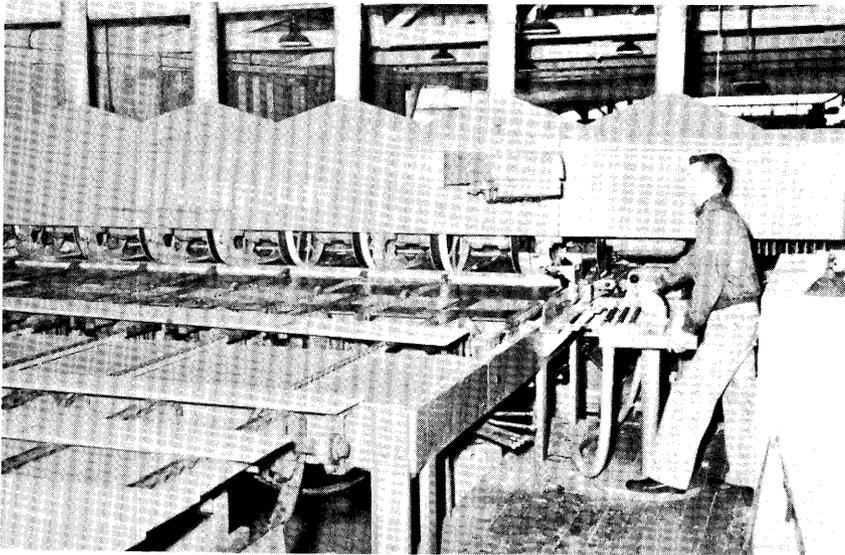


Figure 19-81.—Double-end smooth trim saw for random-length lumber. (Photo from Irvington Machine Works.)

and finally delivers them to one of two different levels for subsequent stacking. He can instantaneously control feed speeds from creeping to approximately 200 f.p.m. The automatic lug-loading device keeps pace with the feed chain, as do the double-end printing and takeaway devices behind the machine. One board per second is easily trimmed by this system.

Typically, the 5-hp. feed motor might drive the feed chains at 120 f.p.m. while trimming 1-inch, kiln-dry, planed pine boards. The saw arbors are individually driven by 7½-hp., arbor-mounted motors to give a spindle speed of 3,600 r.p.m. The 22-inch, 140-tooth, 6-11-6 gauge, hollow-ground saws operate at a rim speed of 20,700 f.p.m. The saw collars are 7 inches in diameter. At this feed speed, the trimmed end produced is smooth

TABLE 19-33.—*Hollow-ground smooth-trim saws for power trimming kiln-dried southern pine*

Diameter (inches)	Gauge	Number of teeth
	<i>BWG</i>	
18-----	8-12-8	100
20-----	8-12-8	120
22-----	6-11-6	140
24-----	6-10-6	140

enough to permit the longitudinal resin canals to be readily observed without magnification. In some installations of this type, the 0- and 16-foot saw are equipped with carbide-tipped teeth inasmuch as they are most frequently in the cut. Carbide saws for this purpose have the following specifications:

Diameter	20 or 22 inches
Number of teeth	120
Tooth style	25° alternate top bevel and 15° alternate face bevel
Saw gauge	9-gauge plate; 0.200-inch kerf

CHAINSAWING

While chainsaws are widely used to fell and crosscut southern pine trees, there are no published, quantitative cutting data specific to southern pine. In crosscutting applications, the cutting action most nearly approaches orthogonal cutting perpendicular to the grain with cutting edge parallel to the grain (90-0 direction); the cutting action is complicated because kerf boundaries are established by cutting (90-90 mode) in the planes of the kerf walls simultaneously with advance of the cutting edge (figs. 19-82, 19-83).

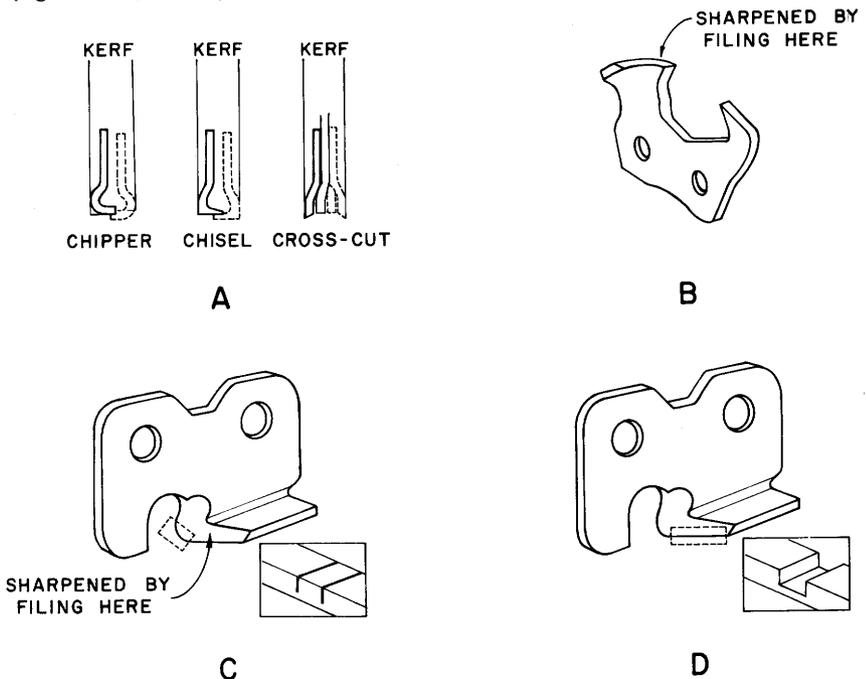


Figure 19-82.—Chain saw teeth. (A) Three types of chain saw teeth. (B) Saw tooth, intermediate between chipper and chisel type that can be sharpened on the back with a flat file. (C) Chipper-type chain; inset indicates that the corner cuts kerf boundary. (D) Chipper-type chain; inset indicates that the cutting edge lifts out the chip. (Drawings after Penberthy 1968.)

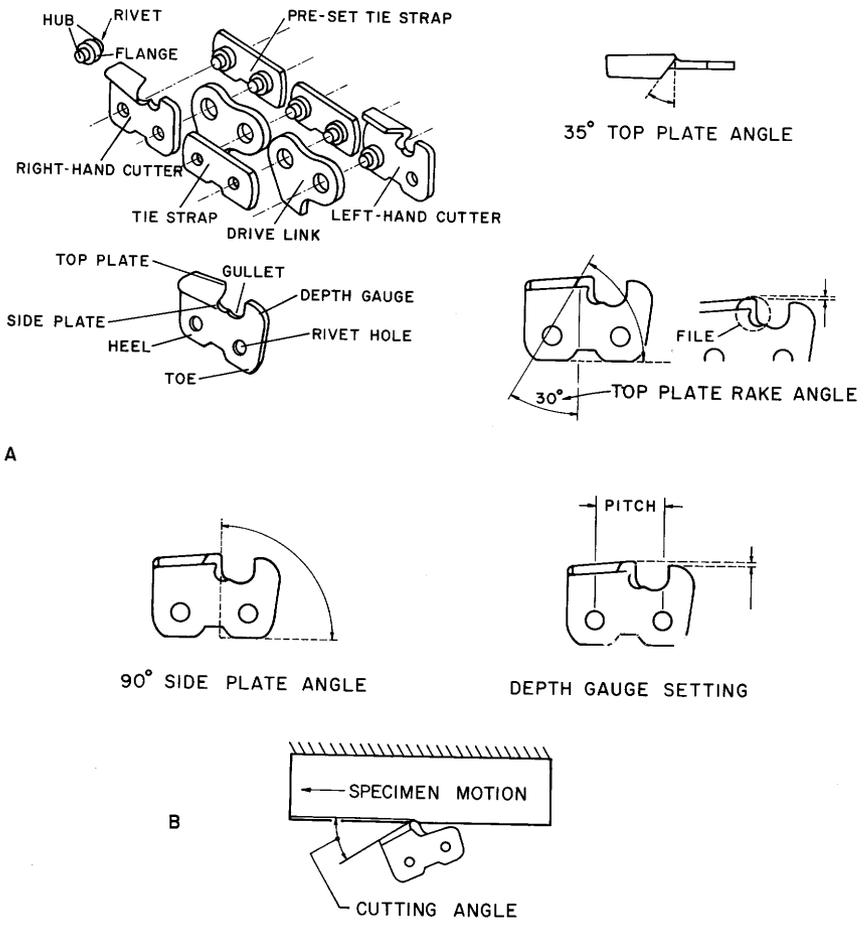


Figure 19-83.—(A) Filing angles and nomenclature for chain saws. (B) Definition of cutting angle in chain saws. (Drawing A from Omark Industries, Inc.; drawing B after Gambrell and Byars 1966.)

Gambrell and Byars (1966) reported data collected while chainsawing green red oak (*Quercus rubra* L.). In the range of cutting speeds from 500 to 3,640 f.p.m. in cuts from 0.010 to 0.060 inch deep, cutting forces in the three principal directions increased appreciably with increased depth of cut and decreased slightly with increased cutting speed; energy consumption was relatively independent of cutting angle (fig. 19-83B). Reynolds et al. (1970) developed relationships that predict power requirements of cutting chains; saw and engine designers should find the information useful.

Most southern pine is cut with one-man saws of less than 6 hp. that carry teeth similar to those illustrated in figure 19-82BCD. These one-man saws may have straight bars 14 to 16 inches long, or they may be equipped with curved rims or bows. The bowsaw is used primarily when

bucking small roundwood on the ground. The bow enables the operator to make plunging cuts and thus avoid stooping unnecessarily; because of its narrow rim, it is pinched less in such cuts than a saw equipped with a straight bar. The trend is toward shorter bars and higher chain speeds. Factors determining chain selection include the following.

Saw chains are primarily classified according to the distance, or pitch, between articulations. Large-pitch chains $\frac{1}{2}$ - to $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch between articulations) are stronger because individual links, pins, and cutters are heavier. They carry longer, wider cutters that produce a wider kerf, take bigger chips, and require more power, but have a longer service life. Since there is more space between individual cutting edges they are less suited for removing small limbs or cutting small trees than chains of smaller pitch.

Small-pitch chains (less than $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch between articulations) operate better on direct-drive saws because at their high chain speed (2,400 to 3,800 f.p.m.) the lighter links, smaller kerf, and lighter feed per tooth minimize shock load on the engine and pounding on bar entry, rails, and sprockets. Only small-pitch chains, whether direct-drive or gear-drive, are satisfactory on low-horsepower saws.

Medium- to large-pitch chains are more suitable for the slower chain speeds of gear-drive saws (800 to 2,000 f.p.m.), where the greater weight of the links has less adverse effects on the mechanism and power is adequate for heavier feeds per tooth. Specific cutting energy is lower with thick chips than with thin chips.

Tree-length logging of small trees is now common; equipment has been developed to cut whole truckloads of pine to shorter lengths suitable for the drum barker, i.e., 5 to 8 feet (fig. 19-84). The $1\frac{3}{16}$ -inch-pitch chain of the saw illustrated is driven by a 25-hp. motor at 1,600 f.p.m. It cuts through loads up to 8.5 by 8.5 feet, controlled by a 10-hp. electric-hydraulic feed mechanism. Capacity is 30 to 45 cords per hour of 5-foot wood, and up to 60 cords per hour of 8-foot wood.

19-8 PLANING AND MOULDING

Peripheral-milling cutterheads (section 19-4) are used in jointers and shapers as well as in planers and moulders. Only planing and moulding will be described here. Readers desiring information on jointers and shapers will find it in chapter 7 of Koch (1964b).

PLANING

The peripheral milling of lumber to smooth one or more surfaces with simultaneous sizing to some predetermined thickness, width, or profile pattern is defined as **planing**. Normally, planing cutterheads, often called **cylinders**, cut in the up-milling direction (fig. 19-29).

Single surfacer.—This most elementary planer smooths one side of a

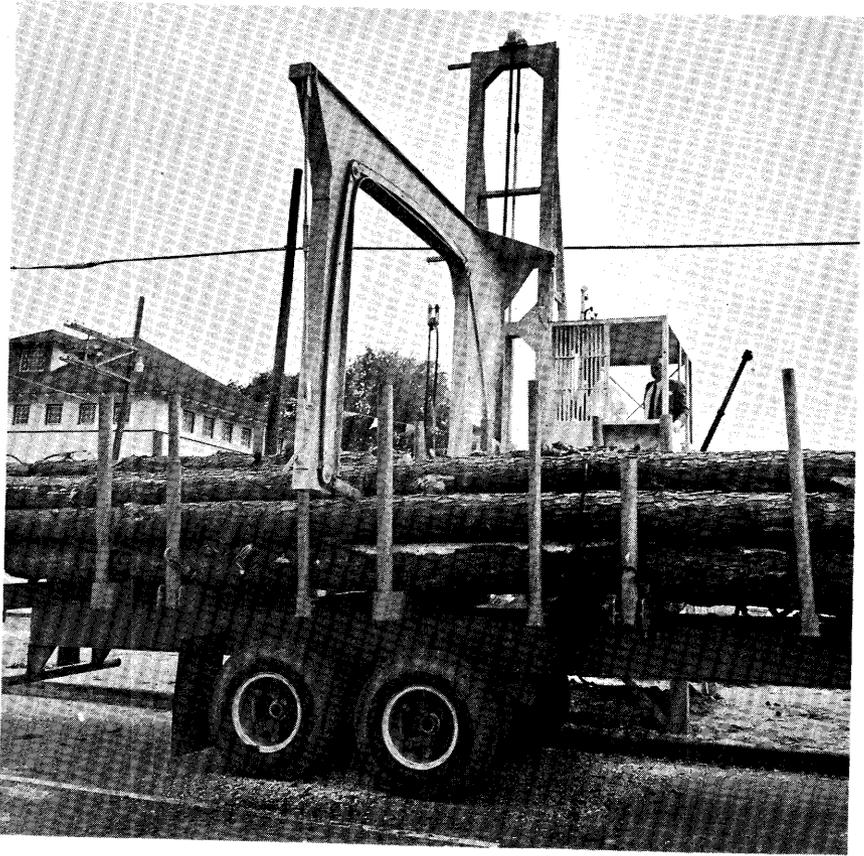


Figure 19-84.—Chain saw designed to reduce tree-length wood to lengths suitable for the drum barker. (Photo from Currie Chain Saw Company.)

board while removing enough wood to reduce it to a predetermined thickness (fig. 19-85). The depth of cut that must be removed to smoothly plane a flat board is determined by the roughness of the sawn surface. Malcolm et al. (1961), in studies of feed per tooth on southern pine, found that eliminating all tooth marks and tear-out required the cutterhead to remove $\frac{3}{32}$ -inch if the lumber has been sawn with a feed per tooth of $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch, $\frac{5}{32}$ -inch if the feed per tooth is $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch, and $\frac{8}{32}$ -inch if feed per tooth is $\frac{1}{3}$ -inch (fig. 19-61).

All industrial planers are power-fed to maintain uniformity of feed rate, reduce breakage, and avoid stoppages that cause burns from cutterheads and skidding rolls. Effectiveness of the feed is improved if both top and bottom rolls are power driven, and if the rolls are large in diameter, corrugated, and mounted in multiples—that is, two pairs of infeeding rolls are more effective than one pair. Ordinarily, the top and bottom rolls are both solid. If, however, the lumber is very uneven in thickness, or

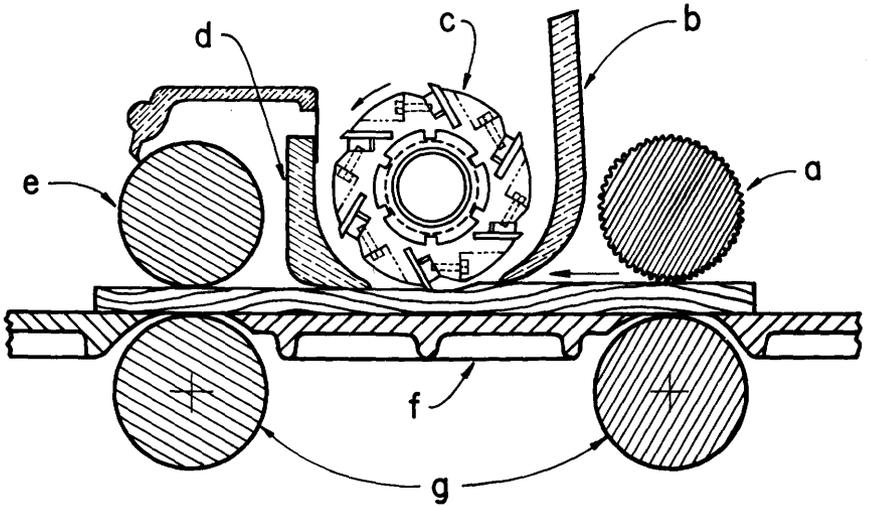


Figure 19-85.—Single surfacer. a, corrugated top infeed roll; b, chipbreaker; c, cutterhead; d, pressure bar; e, top outfeed roll; f, lower platen; g, bottom feed rolls.

if it is fed in multiples across the width of the machine, the top roll may carry independent narrow sections mounted on a common arbor but spring-supported on an internal arbor; in this way each section can yield as much as $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch independently. To attain positive feed of rough or wet lumber, the bottom infeed roll should be corrugated and set a fraction of an inch above the platen; with dry, smooth, flat lumber the infeed roll should be smooth and raised barely above the platen.

In all planers a **chipbreaker** precedes the cutterhead (fig. 19-86). It holds the lumber firmly against the opposite **platen** limiting the cut to yield an accurate board thickness. Pressure of the tips of properly designed chipbreaker shoes helps reduce advance splitting (fig. 19-41A), permitting knives with higher rake angles and accompanying lower power consumption. The front face directs chips into the shavings collector pipe. Chipbreakers also minimize gouged ends or **snipes** when board-ends enter or leave the cutting zone out of control. In cruder designs the chipbreaker is simply a weighted bar resting on the lumber. In more sophisticated machines the bar is divided into counterbalanced hinged sections, permitting each chipbreaker tip to hug the cutting circle as it rises and falls with varying stock thickness; shoes also rock to follow the longitudinal undulations of the lumber. On very fast planers, pressure on the individual shoes may be regulated by air cylinders to suit lumber conditions. This arrangement also permits remote control of pressure and quick lifting of the chipbreaker assembly in the event of a breakup.

Rotating cutterheads in planing machines may be as short as 4 inches or as long as 48 inches (and even longer for timber sizers) depending on the work to be done. Usual width is 15 inches for southern pine lumber. Cutterhead diameter depends on the number of knives to be fitted into

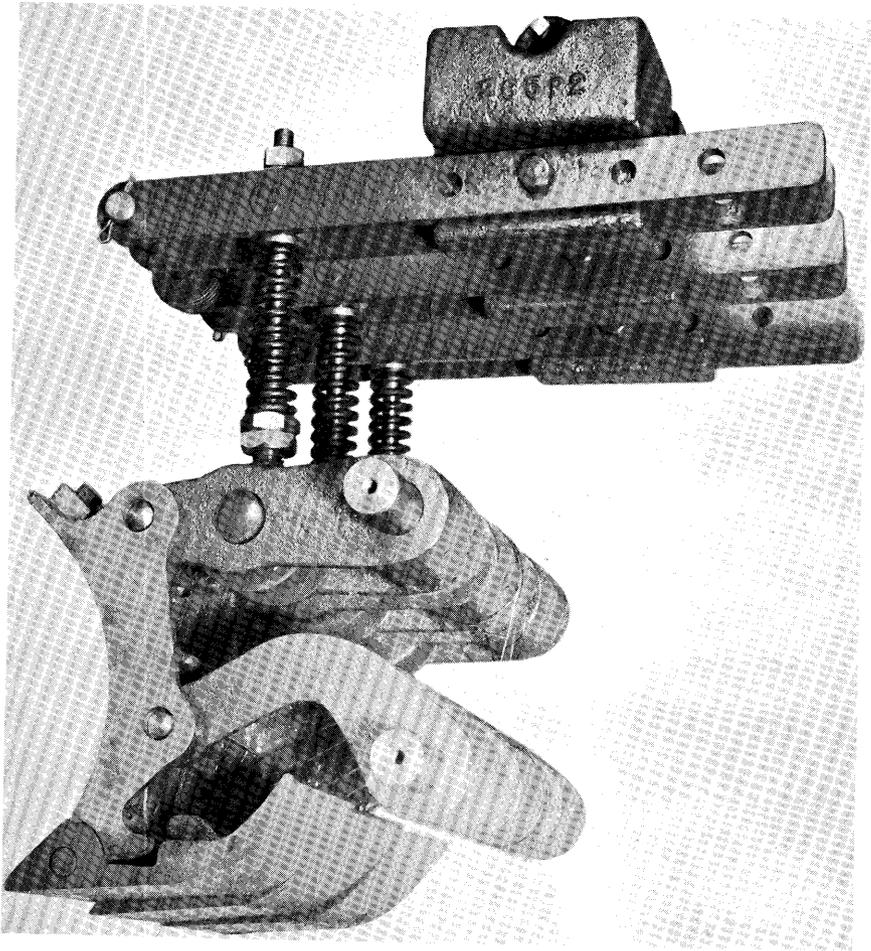


Figure 19-86.—Sectional rocking-nose chipbreaker. (Photo from Stetson-Ross.)

the cutting circle. The 8- to 16-knife planers commonly used on southern pine require cutting circles from 9 to 12 inches in diameter. As explained in section 19-4, the number of knife marks per inch substantially defines the quality of a planed surface (table 19-34 and equation 19-12). Large cutting circles improve surface quality (equation 19-13); however, the desirability of compact planer designs and inability to handle lumber flowing at speeds much above 1,000 f.p.m. have, so far, limited cutterhead diameters to about 12 inches.

A **pressure bar** behind the cutterhead is common to all planers (fig. 19-85). The lower surface of this bar is adjusted parallel to the opposite platen and tangent to the cutting circle. It holds the lumber down as it passes through and leaves the cutting zone. Some designs feature a quick-

release mechanism to assist in clearing jams or breakups in the machine.

Depending on the machine design, the opening between cutterhead and lower platen is set to yield the desired board thickness by adjusting either the cutterhead or the lower platen.

Double surfacer.—A double surfacer smooths both sides of a board and simultaneously reduces it to a predetermined finished thickness. The arrangement shown in figure 19-87A is used on southern pine virtually to the exclusion of other systems in spite of its obvious shortcomings. The board is forced against the lower bed first, and the top cylinder removes the excess thickness, if any, to finish the top. The lower cylinder then takes a fixed cut from the lower side of the lumber regardless of whether the top has been surfaced or not. If the board is too thin to be surfaced on the top, it will be made still thinner by the cut from the lower cylinder. The top cylinder machines the top of the lumber while the lumber is still rough on the bottom. With this arrangement, boards are usually fed best-face-down.

The arrangement in figure 19-87B is used on facing planers, where it is desirable to plane off some degree of cup and twist. Because of the yielding hold-down device over the bottom cutterhead, however, it is not used on production planers where a good surface must be established in one pass through the machine; sudden excessive forces normal to the surface moving the board away from the cutterhead leave the surface uneven.

Although expensive, the arrangement in figure 19-87C has much to recommend it. Lumber is fed face up. The bottom cylinder cuts first, with the workpiece forced upward against the rigid top platen, cutting it to final thickness plus the thickness necessary for surfacing the top face. Thus, a varying cut is taken on the back of the workpiece by the bottom cylinder while it cuts against the solid overplate. Thus the board is, in effect, measured for thickness by the bottom head, and the excess is removed from the back or the low-grade side. If the stock is too thin to allow for planing fully on both sides, only a light cut, or no cut, will be removed from the back. After the lumber passes the bottom cylinder, it is flexed or pressed downward by the top chipbreakers and accurately thickened by the top cylinder. Thus a measured and predetermined cut is taken from the face of the board. The face surfacing is accomplished against a previously surfaced back. A rough board that is less than the desired thickness will emerge from this planer still rough on both sides.

The arrangement shown in figure 19-87C can, in some plants, be advantageously used to double-surface southern pine lumber at very high speeds before (or after) it is kiln-dried; the resulting smooth, uniformly-thick lumber can then be accurately planed to final pattern and width on conventional planers (fig. 19-87A). By this method mills need inventory only a few sizes of accurately-graded S4S boards; from these few, a multiplicity of patterns can be run quickly on order.

Conventional double surfacers (fig. 19-87A) for furniture plants and

TABLE 19-34.—*Relationship of planer feed rate and number of knives to knife cuts per inch; spindle speed 3,450 r.p.m.*

Lineal feed rate (f.p.m.)	Number of knives in cutterhead ¹										
	1	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20
	----- Knife marks per inch -----										
10----	28.8										
15----	19.2										
20----	14.4	28.8									
25----	11.5	23.0									
30----	9.6	19.2									
35----	8.2	16.4									
40----	7.2	14.4	28.8								
45----	6.4	12.8	25.6								
50----	5.8	11.5	23.0								
60----	4.8	9.6	19.2	28.8							
70----	4.1	8.2	16.4	24.6							
80----		7.2	14.4	21.6	28.8						
90----		6.4	12.8	19.2	25.6						
100----		5.8	11.5	17.3	23.0	28.8					
110----		5.2	10.5	15.7	20.9	26.1					
120----		4.8	9.6	14.4	19.2	24.0	28.8				
130----		4.4	8.8	13.3	17.7	22.1	26.5				
140----		4.1	8.2	12.3	16.4	20.5	24.6	28.8			
150----			7.7	11.5	15.3	19.2	23.0	26.8			
160----			7.2	10.8	14.4	18.0	21.6	25.2	28.8		
170----			6.8	10.1	13.5	16.9	20.3	23.7	27.1		
180----			6.4	9.6	12.8	16.0	19.2	22.4	25.6	28.8	
190----			6.1	9.1	12.1	15.1	18.2	21.2	24.2	27.2	
200----			5.8	8.6	11.5	14.4	17.3	20.1	23.0	25.9	28.8
220----			5.2	7.8	10.5	13.1	15.7	18.3	20.9	23.5	26.1
240----			4.8	7.2	9.6	12.0	14.4	16.8	19.2	21.6	24.0
260----			4.4	6.6	8.8	11.1	13.3	15.5	17.7	19.9	22.1
280----			4.1	6.2	8.2	10.3	12.3	14.4	16.4	18.5	20.5
300----				5.8	7.7	9.6	11.5	13.4	15.3	17.3	19.2
325----				5.3	7.1	8.8	10.6	12.4	14.2	15.9	17.7
350----				4.9	6.6	8.2	9.9	11.5	13.1	14.8	16.4
375----				4.6	6.1	7.7	9.2	10.7	12.3	13.8	15.3
400----				4.3	5.8	7.2	8.6	10.1	11.5	12.9	14.4
425----				4.1	5.4	6.8	8.1	9.5	10.8	12.2	13.5
450----					5.1	6.4	7.7	8.9	10.2	11.5	12.8
475----					4.8	6.1	7.3	8.5	9.7	10.9	12.1
500----					4.6	5.8	6.9	8.1	9.2	10.4	11.5
550----					4.2	5.2	6.3	7.3	8.4	9.4	10.5
600----						4.8	5.8	6.7	7.7	8.6	9.6
700----						4.1	4.9	5.8	6.6	7.4	8.2
800----							4.3	5.0	5.8	6.5	7.2
900----								4.5	5.1	5.8	6.4
1,000----								4.0	4.6	5.2	5.8
1,100----									4.2	4.7	5.2
1,200----										4.3	4.8
1,300----										4.0	4.4
1,400----											4.1

¹ Assumes knives are jointed.

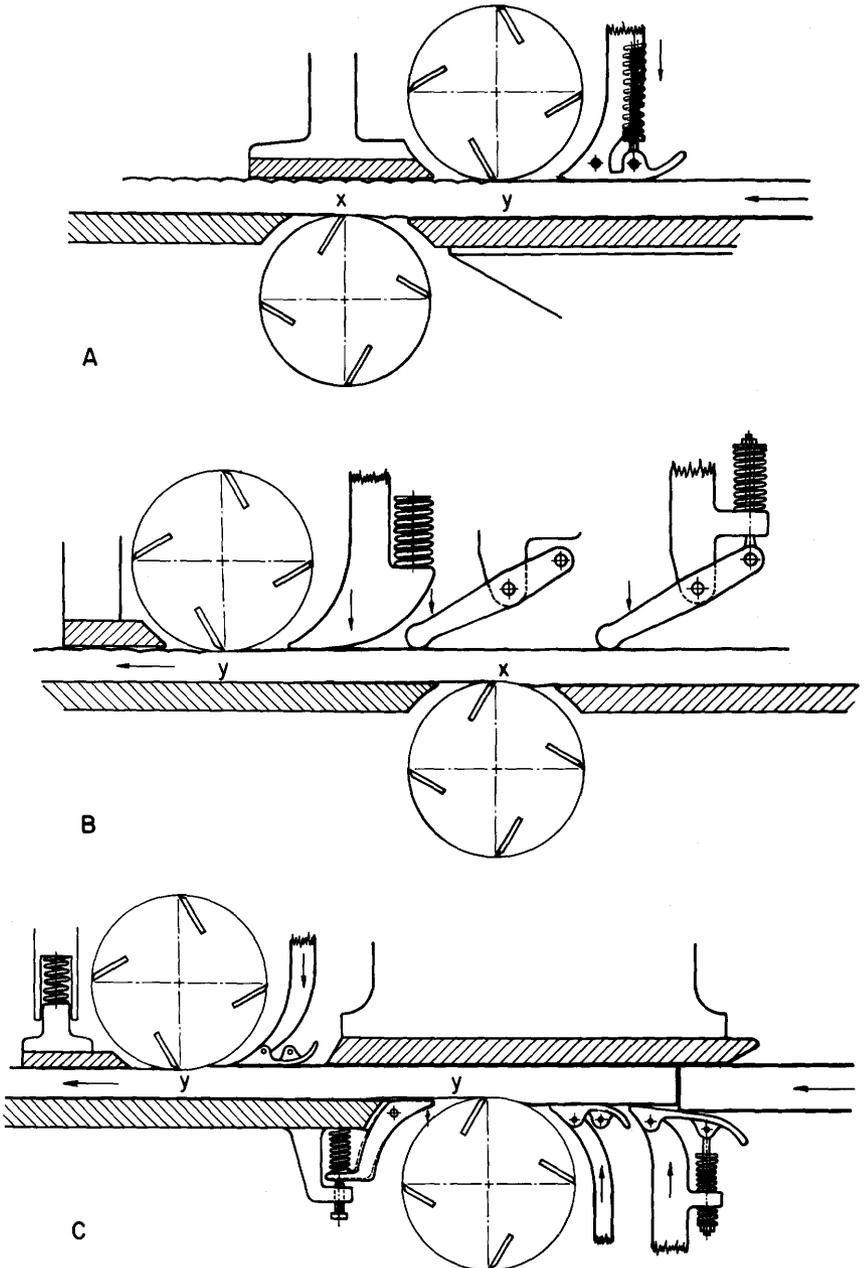


Figure 19-87.—Cutterhead arrangements for double surfacers; x indicates cuts of fixed depth, and y indicates cuts to controlled thickness. (A) Conventional double surfacer. (B) Facing head followed by thickening head. (C) Two-way thickening planer. If lumber has portions where thickness allowance for planing is scant, arrangements (A) and (B) will yield rough surfaces on upper side. (Drawings after Koch 1948.)

other woodworking plants are available in widths up to 50 inches and with feed roll diameters up to 6 inches. Feed and cutterhead horsepower are related to the number of knives in the head (seldom more than 6), class of work involved, width of machine and feed speed desired. Generally speaking, the top cylinder carries less than 40 hp., the bottom cylinder less than 20 hp., and the feed less than 15 hp. Feed speeds are generally below 125 f.p.m.

Figure 19-88 illustrates a specialized type of double surfer that has been designed for the increasingly important timber laminating industry. The four-knife jointed cylinders are V-belt driven at 2,200 r.p.m. The machine has 50 hp. on the top and 50 hp. on the bottom cylinder. The two bottom infeed rolls and the single top infeed roll are all 12 $\frac{5}{8}$ inches in diameter and are driven by a 15-hp. feed motor to yield a feed speed of approximately 50 to 75 f.p.m. The cutterhead arrangement on this design is that shown in figure 19-87B; the weight of the beam is sufficient to keep it from being thrust from the bottom head. The bottom platen preceding the lower cutterhead can be adjusted to permit removal of as much as $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch from the lower surface of the beam.

Planer and matcher.—A planer and matcher is a double surfer equipped with two opposed sideheads that can simultaneously machine both edges of a board. The machine usually has two additional horizontal spindles carrying **profile heads** to machine patterns on the top and/or bottom of the lumber. Profile heads may also be used to smoothly rip wide dimen-

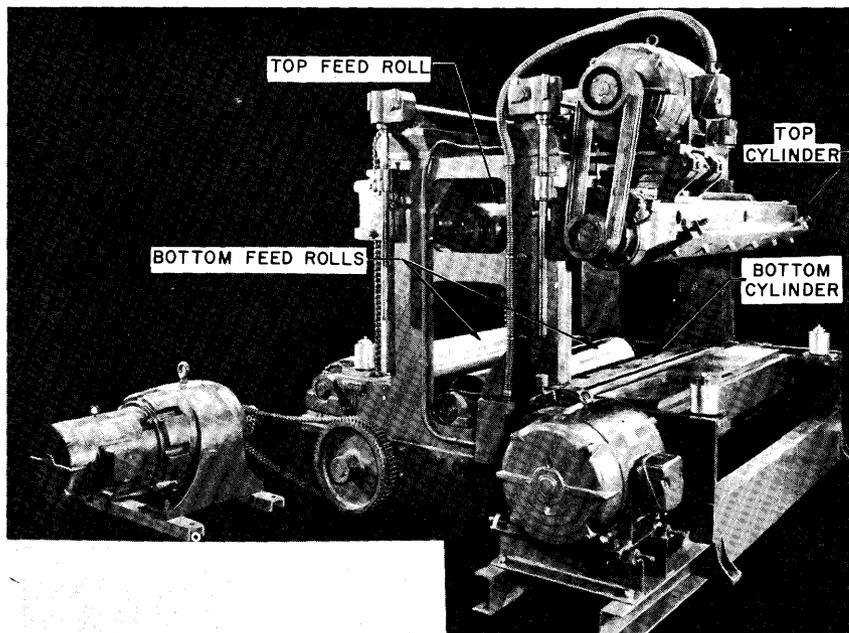


Figure 19-88.—Outfeed end of three-roll 24- by 78-inch double surfer to size laminated beams. (Photo from Stetson-Ross.)

sion lumber into planed 2 by 4's with eased edges; Macomber (1969) has given a description of the technique.

Figure 19-89 illustrates a six-head machine; each cutterhead carries 12 jointed knives. The cylinders (arrangement of 19-87A) are shown surfacing top and bottom, the opposed sideheads are cutting a shiplap pattern on both edges, and the top profile head is cutting a drop-siding pattern. The bottom profiler is idle and not visible. To mill southern pine, most planers and matchers have cylinders 15 inches long and can carry sideheads to machine timbers 6 or 8 inches thick. Proportions of machines suitable for southern pine are given in table 19-35.

Figure 19-90 shows a 16-knife planer and matcher with double profiler and an extra down-milling outside sidehead at the infeed end to remove excess lumber as pulp chips. Not shown, but widely used, is an inside sidehead at the infeed end that joints or planes the horns of incoming crooked lumber; the planed board emerges with much less crook. Some designs of these **crook reducers** have two cutterheads—both on the guide side and both down-milling—between feed table and planer proper.

For a discussion of handling equipment to get lumber into and away from the planer at high speed, the reader is referred to Koch (1951).

Timber sizers are similar to planers and matchers in having cylinders and sideheads (but not profilers) arranged as in figures 19-87A and 19-89. Normally they have one pair of infeeding and one pair of out-feeding rolls. Sizers are made to admit timbers 24 inches thick and 36 inches wide. Current motorized designs are fast and versatile; they can not only plane timbers (at slow speed) but can close down and run 2 by 4's at speeds to 500 f.p.m.

For descriptions of knife styles and sharpening techniques, see Koch (1964b, p. 303-318).

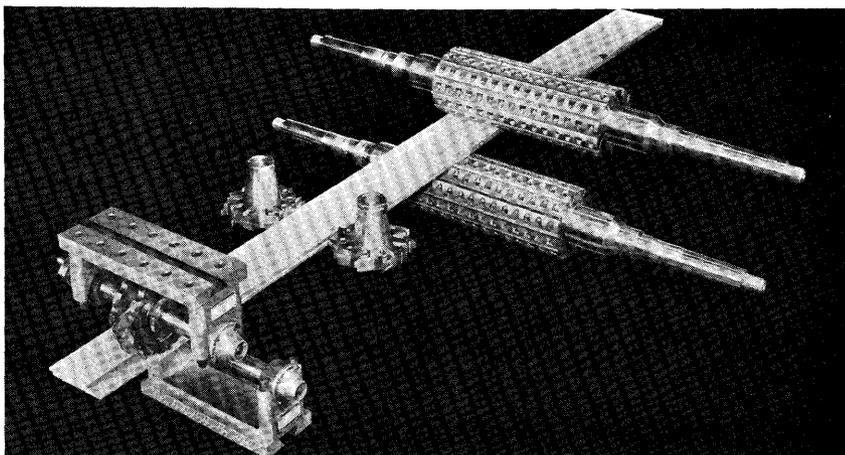


Figure 19-89.—Cutterhead arrangement of planer and matcher with double profilers. No cutterhead is mounted on lower profile spindle. (Photo from Stetson-Ross.)

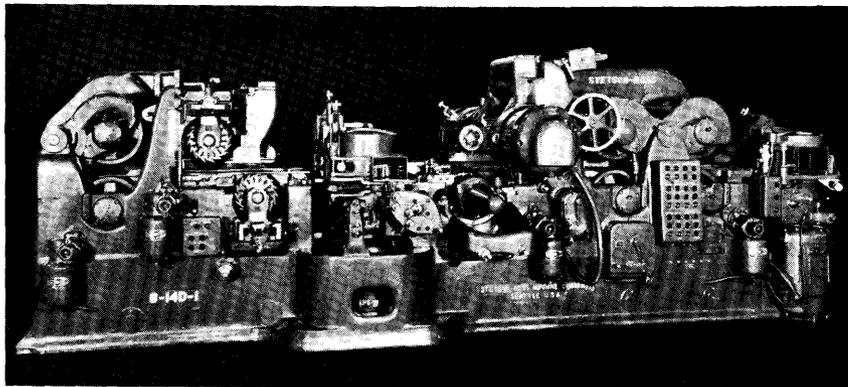


Figure 19-90.—A 16-knife planer and matcher with double profiler. In addition to the six customary cutterheads, the machine has a seventh cutterhead—a down-milling outside sidehead at the infeed end to size overwidth boards by cutting pulp chips from the excess width. Not shown is an eighth cutterhead—an inside sidehead placed at the infeed end to straighten lumber by planing off the horns of boards with crook. (Photo from Stetson-Ross.)

TABLE 19-35.—*Typical proportions of six-head planers and matchers with double profilers* (Data from Koch 1964b, p. 301)^{1 2 3}

	Number of jointed knives per cutterhead			
	8 or 10	12	14	16
Cutting-circle diameter, inches.....	9	9 $\frac{3}{8}$	10	11
Feed-roll diameter, inches.....	10	12	14	16
Maximum feed speed, f.p.m.....	350	500	750	1000
Horsepower:				
Feed table (variable speed).....	15	20	25	30
Planer feed (variable speed).....	25	40	50	60
Top cylinder.....	50	80	130	150
Bottom cylinder.....	25	40	65	75
Outside sidehead.....	25	40	65	65
Inside sidehead.....	15	25	25	40
Top profile head.....	25	40	65	75
Bottom profile head.....	15	25	25	40

¹ The usual machine for southern pine will accept lumber 15 inches wide and 6 or 8 inches thick; 25-inch-wide machines are available.

² Planers and matchers usually have six powered rolls; i.e., two pair infeeding and one pair outfeeding.

³ For southern pine, rake angles of 20 to 30° are commonly used; some profile knives for dry lumber have 15° rake angles.

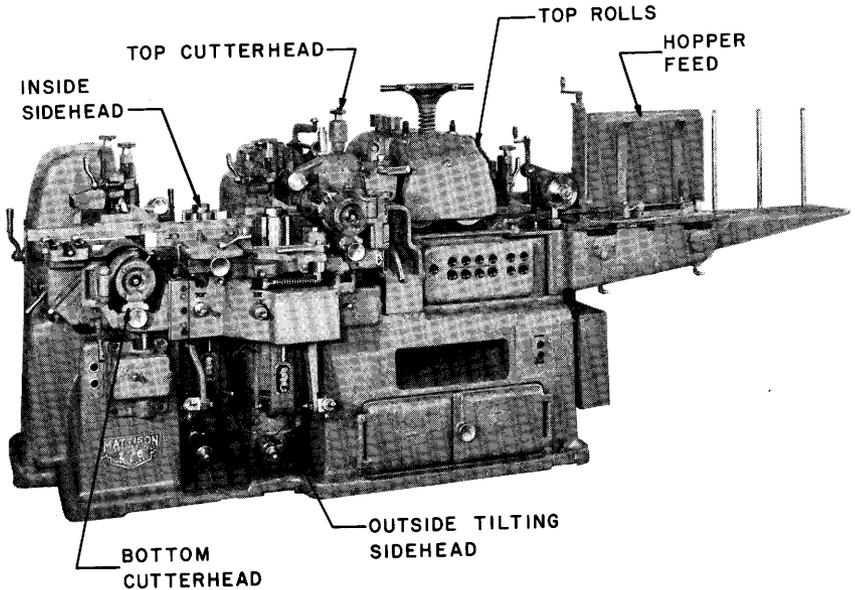


Figure 19-91.—A 6-inch, four-head moulder. Cutterheads can run jointed at 3,600 r.p.m. or unjointed at 6,000 or 7,200 r.p.m. Hopper feed is at infeed end. (Photo from Mattison Machine Works.)

MOULDING

The purpose of the moulder is to machine complex shapes on the surfaces or edges of long or short lumber. Moulding, like planing, is a peripheral milling process. A simple moulder has a top cutterhead followed by two sideheads followed by a bottom cutterhead (fig. 19-91). Instead of being directly opposed as in a planer and matcher, moulder sideheads are staggered to permit their spindle-mounted motors to clear each other when the spindles are tilted. Tilting sideheads permit angled saw cuts and varied bevels on the edges of the workpiece without changing knives. While the moulder can machine a very broad range of shapes, it cannot make tongue and groove flooring as accurately as a planer and matcher because the staggered sideheads do not rigidly control the workpiece width.

Productive capacity.—Characteristically moulders are designed for relatively short runs of any pattern. In some plants as many as 20 different shapes may be run in a day. In others the moulder setup may be unchanged for several days. The productivity of a moulder may be expressed by the following formula:

$$P = V(60T - CX)(Y)(K) \quad (19-42)$$

where:

- P = lineal footage of mouldings produced per shift
- V = feed speed, feet per minute
- T = length of shift, hours
- C = idle machine time due to each pattern change, minutes
- X = number of pattern changes per shift
- Y = pattern multiples
- K = continuity of feed, percent efficiency expressed as a decimal fraction. This factor must include all nonmachining time due to all causes other than pattern change.

From this expression it can be seen that quick pattern change is important. If, for example, eight different patterns were required during an 8-hour shift, and each pattern change took 60 minutes, the resulting production would be zero. Production is directly proportional to feed rate, which is in turn dictated by the desired surface quality as expressed in knife marks per inch.

There are two ways to increase the lineal rate of feed without reducing surface quality (16 to 30 knifemarks per inch for most mouldings):

- Increasing the cutterhead spindle speed
- Increasing the number of jointed knives in the cutterhead.

Of the several synchronous spindle speeds in common use, i.e., 3,600 r.p.m., 6,000 r.p.m., and 7,200 r.p.m., none but the 3600-r.p.m. speed can be consistently jointed. For this reason moulders with spindle speeds of 6,000 or 7,200 r.p.m. are limited to single-knife operation, that is, one cutting knife and one balancing knife per head. On the other hand, the feeding rate of moulders equipped with spindles operating at 3,600 r.p.m. may be increased in direct proportion to the number of jointed knives in each cutterhead. To maintain 20 knife marks per inch, a 7,200-r.p.m., one-knife machine must feed at 30 f.p.m., while a 3,600-r.p.m. machine with six jointed knives in each cutterhead can feed at 90 f.p.m.

Machine types.—The controls of many machines are so designed that synchronous spindle speeds can be selected at 3,600, 6,000, or 7,200 r.p.m. This arrangement permits one-knife operation at high spindle speed on short runs of nonstandard patterns as well as multiknife, 3,600-r.p.m. operation with jointed knives at high feed speeds on long runs of standard patterns.

In the cutterhead arrangement most frequently used on a four-head moulder, the top cutterhead cuts first and the bottom one last. Since the sides are machined while the bottom of the workpiece is still rough, pattern registration on the edges may not be accurate. Prior surfacing would, of course, eliminate this difficulty. The usual five-head arrangement places a second top head between the sideheads and the final bottom head. Designs are also available in which the fifth head cuts first and is on the bottom in order to smooth the bottom surface of the stock as an initial machining step. Six-head machines are available also.

Moulders are commonly equipped with two pairs of power-driven infeeding rolls, or with two top infeeding rolls over a lower endless bed. Figure 19-91 illustrates a machine with two 6-inch-diameter, corrugated, sectional, top infeed rolls and a bottom endless bed, all powered by a 5-hp., two-speed motor. Moulders do not have outfeed rolls. A hopper feeding device permits feeding short stock at speeds above 50 f.p.m. (fig. 19-91).

Moulders are made in 4-, 6-, 8-, 10-, and 12-inch widths and usually accept a workpiece up to 4 inches thick. Cutting circles range in diameter from 5 to 9 inches. Sideheads are provided with as much as 45° inward tilt and 15° outward. Cutterhead power depends entirely on the class of work to be done. The 6-inch moulder illustrated in figure 19-91 carries 7½ hp. on the top and bottom heads, and 5 hp. on each sidehead.

19-9 MACHINING WITH COATED ABRASIVES

Wood panels are sanded to flatten and smooth their surfaces and, in some cases, to reduce their thickness to the desired dimension. While southern pine lumber is infrequently sanded, an important percentage of southern pine plywood—and virtually all particleboard—is smoothed and thickened on wide-belt sanders. A detailed discussion of machining with coated abrasives is available (Koch 1964b, chapter 11).

Panel sanding machines are usually double deck, that is, they simultaneously machine both top and bottom of the panel in one pass. Feed speeds range up to about 200 f.p.m. The coated abrasive belts are commonly 50 to 53, 63, or 67 inches wide. Belts 103 or 142 inches long are widely used. Most machines have four heads, and six heads are not uncommon; half the heads cut on the top and half on the bottom (fig. 19-92).

The **primary** heads, i.e., the first top and first bottom heads, do the major cutting job. Cuts of 0.03 inch per primary head on plywood and 0.04 inch on particleboard are common, but on neither should they exceed 0.1 inch. Belts are expected to last 50 to 60 hours, with 80 to 100 hours of machining not unusual (Stevens 1966). The steel **contact roll** (fig. 19-92) on each primary head has a diamond pattern of serrations. **Secondary** or finishing heads have steel contact rolls in which spiral serrations are milled.

Belt speeds of 5,000 to 6,750 f.p.m. are common. Belts are assembled with a skived splice ¾-inch wide made at an angle to the length of the belt. Cloth backing for the abrasive is the toughest possible x-weight drill, woven from long staple cotton and internally filled to increase wear resistance and stiffness. A thin film of urethane polymer on the inside of belts for primary heads may increase life of belts and rolls, but on secondary heads tends to strip the graphite covers from smoothing bars (Stevens 1966).

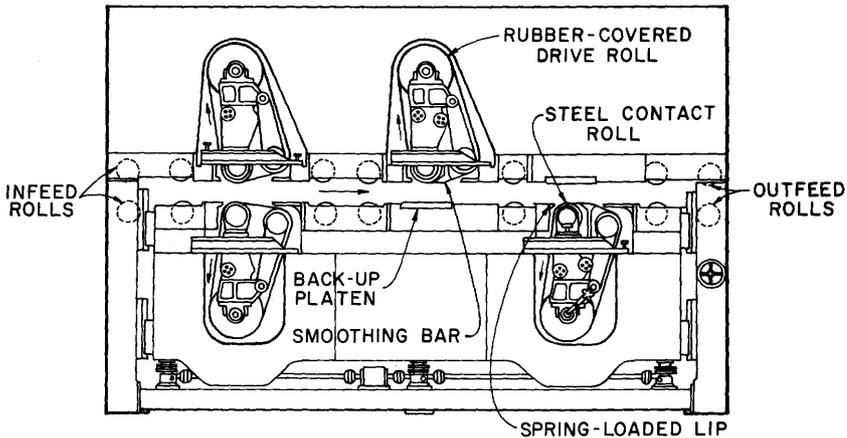


Figure 19-92.—Four-head panel sander for finishing plywood or particleboard. Abrasive belts travel counter to direction of panel feed. For maximum stock removal the first two heads are opposed; the next pair of top and bottom heads are staggered and provided with smoothing bars to yield a smooth surface. On a 53-inch-wide machine capable of feed speeds to 200 f.p.m. each sander head carries 125 hp. A total of 25 hp. drives the feed rolls; the top seven rolls are driven independently of the bottom. (Drawing from Tidland Machine Co.)

Silicon carbide, the hardest and sharpest of man-made abrasives, is most commonly used for primary heads on southern pine plywood and particleboard (Stevens 1966); Ferguson (1968), however, states that for rapid wood removal (deep cuts) aluminum oxide is best. Coarse grits (24, 36, or 40) are most effective. Secondary heads for either plywood or particleboard commonly use silicon carbide in grits from 80 through 120 (Stevens 1966).

The abrasive grains are bonded to primary belts with phenolic resin in both the underlying *make coat* and the later applied *size coat* (fig. 19-93). **Open-coat** construction—that is, with abrasive grains spaced apart—is preferred for sanding the somewhat resinous southern pines. The closed-coat belts are heavy and stiff and afford a maximum number of cutting points, but they have a tendency to load up.

R. Birkeland of the National Institute of Technology in Oslo, Norway has proposed (in a patent application) that abrasive grains should be placed in the “*make coat*” in such a manner that their cutting tips fall on a common plane; he would accomplish this either by classifying the abrasive particles by length as well as screen size, or by imbedding the particles at variable depths in the “*make coat*.” By this means, he has found that coarse grits can be made to cut surfaces that are substantially smoother than surfaces made by commercial papers of the same grit (fig. 19-93 Bottom). For a greatly enlarged view of a conventionally sanded surface see fig. 25-7.

The performance of sanding heads can be measured in terms of the quality of the surface produced, the power required, and the amount of

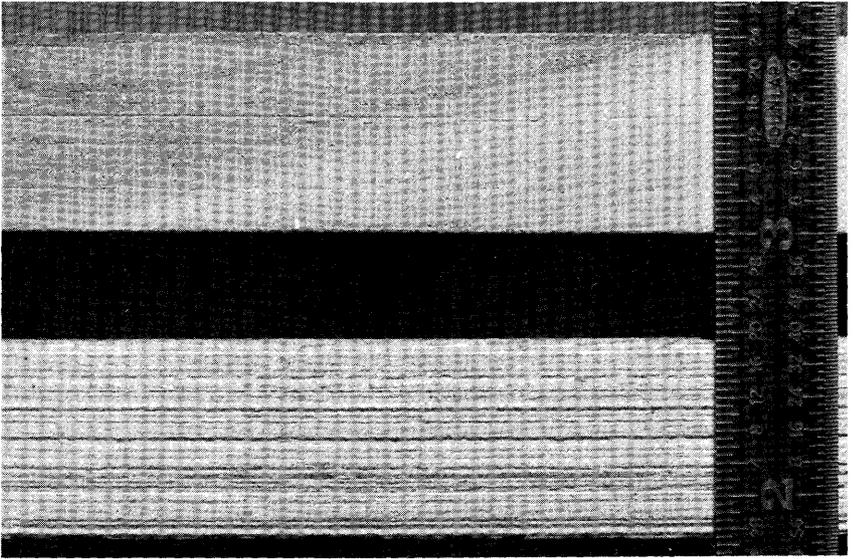
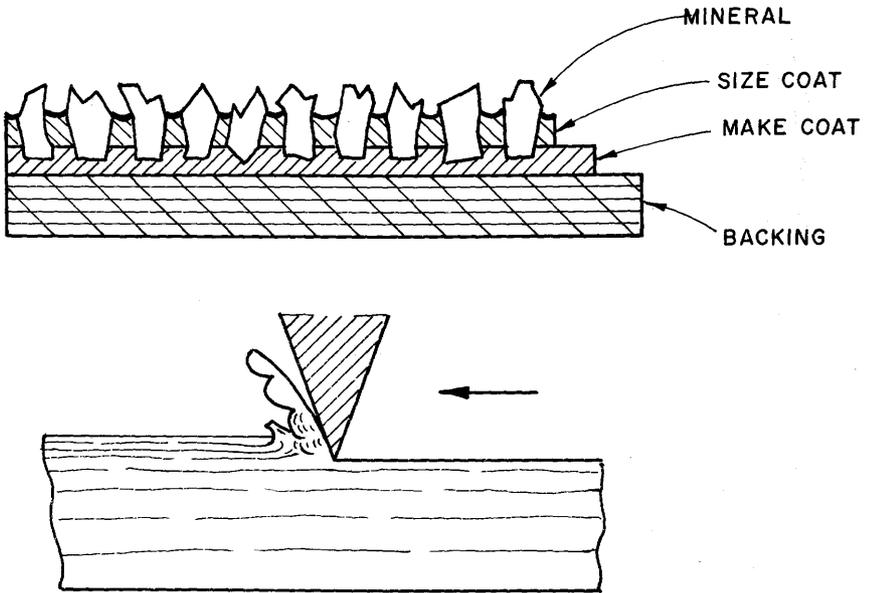


Figure 19-93.—(Top) Construction of a belt coated with abrasives. (Middle) Cutting action of an abrasive particle. (Bottom) Surfaces on dry (7-percent moisture content) yellow poplar produced with 36-grit, aluminum oxide, open-coat paper. The rougher of the two surfaces was made with commercial paper in which the mineral was imbedded on the backing without regard to the location of the cutting points; the smooth surface was made with the same grit carefully arranged so that the cutting points were all in a common plane. (Photo from R. Birkland.)

wood removed. All of these factors are time related—that is, as the belt wears, surface quality deteriorates, power rises, and wood removal slows. Factors affecting performance include grit size, belt pressure and velocity, depth of cut and feed speed, direction of feed, running time, and wood factors. To establish meaningful relationships specific to southern pine, a factorial experiment is required; to date no such comprehensive data are published. Available data are presented in the following paragraphs.

GRIT SIZE

Coarse grits (compared to fine) produce rougher surfaces, remove more wood per unit of time (Pahlitzsch and Dziobek 1959, 1961) and cause a greater temperature rise at the surface (Franz and Hinken 1954).

BELT PRESSURE AND VELOCITY

Increased pressure of the belt against the workpiece increases rate of wood removal (Franz and Hinken 1954; Hayashi and Hara 1964; Pahlitzsch and Dziobek 1959) and increases workpiece temperature (Franz and Hinken 1954; Pahlitzsch and Dziobek 1961). Power consumed by the belt is also proportional to the force applied by the contact roll to the machined surface (Nakamura 1966).

In a comparison of smooth and corrugated contact rolls, Holland (1966) found that rolls with narrow bands separated by open grooves gave the fastest wood removal, lowest belt temperature, and least belt clogging.

Belt velocity is positively correlated with rate of wood removal (Franz and Hinken 1954; Hayashi and Hara 1964; Nakamura 1966). According to Ward (1963) high belt speeds yield a smoother surface and consume less energy per unit volume of wood removed than low speeds. Belt velocity is, however, positively correlated with power consumed by the belt (Nakamura 1966). Temperature of the workpiece is positively correlated with belt velocity (Franz and Hinken 1954; Pahlitzsch and Dziobek 1961). According to Pahlitzsch and Dziobek (1959), the optimum belt speed—for maximum rate of wood removal on a modified stroke sander—is 5,850 f.p.m. for grit size 60 and slightly less for grit 120; there is some doubt that this conclusion is equally applicable to a wide-belt sander. Wear on the backing is one practical limit on the belt speed of a wide belt sander.

DEPTH OF CUT AND FEED SPEED

In a study probably applicable to southern pine, Stewart (1970) reported a positive linear correlation between depth of cut and power required for abrasive planing of hard maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh) parallel to the grain (90-0 mode).

Power demand is positively correlated with feed rate (Ward 1963); Stewart (1970) found that the relationship was linear. According to Seto

and Nozaki (1966) and Nakamura (1966), however, the amount of wood removed per unit of time is negatively correlated with feed speed; this appears anomalous, and additional study seems warranted.

DIRECTION OF FEED

According to Ward (1963) and Seto and Nozaki (1966), it is preferable to feed panels against the direction of belt travel.

In an experiment on hard maple—the results of which may be applicable to southern pine plywood—Stewart (1970) found that abrasive planing across the grain (0-90 mode) took 20- to 25-percent less power than parallel to the grain (90-0 mode); surface roughness was about the same for both modes. According to Pahlitzsch and Dziobek (1962), surface roughness is greatest when the angle between fiber axis and sanding direction is 0 to 30°.

The machined surface is smoother if the belt is oscillated (Pahlitzsch and Dziobek 1962). An oscillation of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch amplitude at 20 to 25 cycles per minute is common on wide belt sanders for southern pine. Optimum frequency of oscillation is positively correlated with feed speed.

RUNNING TIME

As the belt dulls with use, the rate of wood removal decreases. The energy consumed per unit volume removed increases as the abrasive gets very dull, even though the rate of power consumption is somewhat reduced (Pahlitzsch and Dziobek 1959, 1961, 1962). Abrasive belts fail not only from dulling but also from broken splices, lengthwise tears originating from punctures caused by debris riding on top of panels, and from edge damage caused when belt tracking controls fail.

WOOD FACTORS

At constant pressure between belt and panel, wood moisture content is positively correlated with rate of wood removal because the grit cuts moist wood more easily than dry wood. Wood is seldom sanded at a moisture content above 15 percent (Franz and Hinken 1954).

It has been reported that energy consumed per unit volume of wood removed is positively correlated with specific gravity (Seto and Nozaki 1966). Despite observable differences among species, no published data afford comparisons of sanding effectiveness between southern pine and other species.

POWER DATA

From the foregoing discussion it is evident that many factors affect the power required by each head on a wide belt sander. Unfortunately, there are no published data specific to southern pine.

From unpublished information on the sanding of particleboard with a

belt speed of 6,688 f.p.m. and feed speed of 110 f.p.m. it appears that net belt power is linearly proportional to depth of cut in such a way that doubling the depth of cut more than doubles the power required.

Grit size	Depth of cut	
	0.015 inch	0.045 inch
	<i>Net hp. per inch of belt width</i>	
24	0.5	2.7
36	0.5	2.7
50	1.1	4.6

Unpublished data from another source gives the following information on power required to sand 4-foot-wide southern pine plywood at a feed speed of 80 f.p.m. with a 50-inch belt.

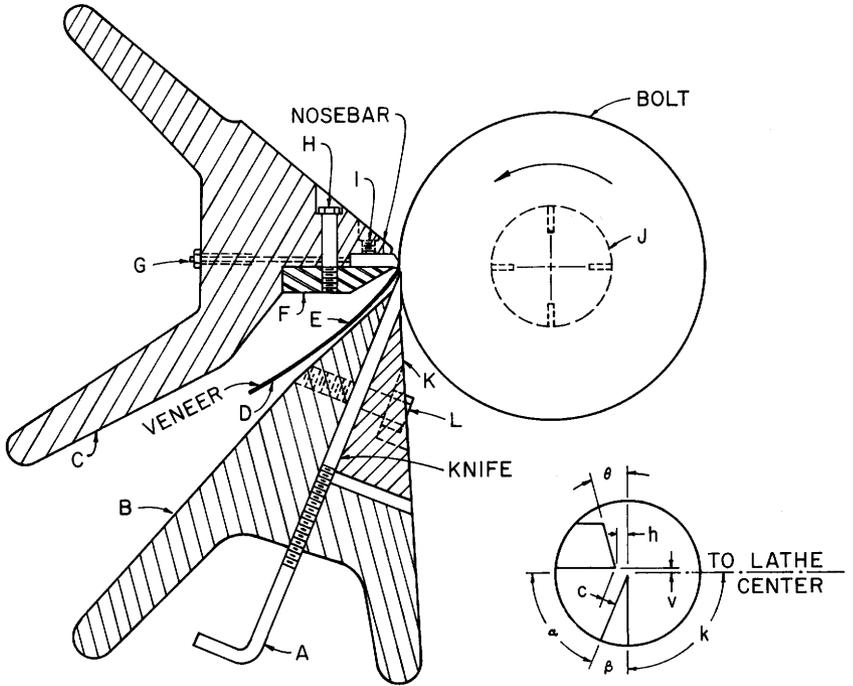
Belt grit	Depth cut	Approximate power on the sander head
	<i>Inch</i>	<i>Horsepower</i>
36	0.100	90
50	.050	70
60	.040	60
80	.025	42
100	.010	34
120	.006	23
280	.003	11
320	.002	7

19-10 VENEER CUTTING

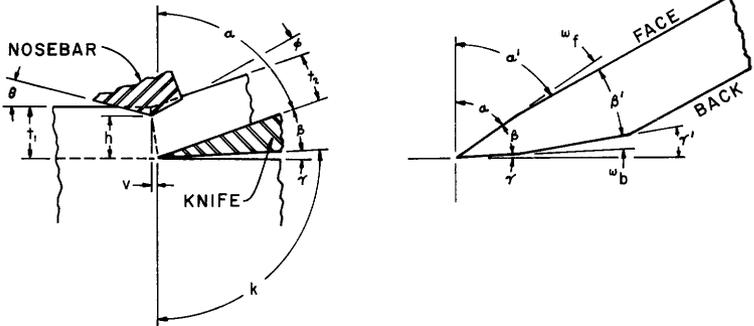
The first southern pine plywood plant became operational in December 1963. Other mills soon followed, and by 1967 the annual capacity of the new industry reached 2.6 billion sq. ft., $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch basis (Guttenberg and Fasick 1968). By January 1, 1968 the 34 plants in operation (or under construction) in the southern pine region comprised about 18 percent of the softwood plywood plants in the United States with a capacity of about one-fifth of the total U.S. production of 13.0 billion sq. ft. (Bryan 1968; Anonymous 1968). The South's share of the plywood industry is still increasing.

This industry uses only rotary-peeled veneer. Although thin vertical-grain sliced southern pine veneer checks less and holds finishes better than rotary-cut veneer and has an attractive appearance, it is little used because it is costly to produce. It appears possible, however, that thick-sliced southern pine (**slicewood**) may become a limited competitor of sawn lumber (Lutz et al. 1962). If this happens, the technique of thick slicing will be of great commercial importance to the southern pine industry.

Veneer peeling and slicing closely approximate orthogonal cutting in the 0-90 mode (sec. 19-2) except that a **nosebar** is used to compress the wood ahead of the cutting edge (figs. 19-94, 19-95). Peeled or sliced veneer has a **loose side** (the side with tension checks—see figs. 19-14 and 19-94DE) and a **tight side**.



DETAIL OF NOSEBAR AND KNIFE EDGE



Whether southern pine veneer is peeled or sliced, if the knife is sharp, the surface of latewood veneer differs from that of earlywood. In latewood, the surface is frequently formed by separation of the cells at the middle lamella; in earlywood, cell walls are usually severed cleanly at the cutting plane (fig. 19-96). For reasons not clear, this difference makes it difficult to achieve good latewood-to-latewood bonds (Hse 1968, fig. 4). See also figures 23-7 and 23-8.

NOMENCLATURE

Figure 19-94 illustrates peeling; figure 19-95 shows slicing. In figure 19-94 Bottom, veneer cutting geometry is drawn to correspond to the



Figure 19-94.—Nomenclature in veneer cutting. (Top) Cross section of rotary veneer lathe. A, knife adjusting screw; B, knife bar; C, pressure bar; D, loose side of veneer; E, tight side of veneer; F, nosebar cap; G, nosebar adjusting screw (horizontal); H, nosebar locking screw; I, nosebar adjusting screw (vertical); J, chuck; K, knife cap; L, knife cap bolt; Inset, detail of cutting edge and nosebar. (Bottom) Cross sections through cutting edge and solid nosebar arranged in convention of orthogonal cutting diagrams.

- α Primary rake angle
- α' Secondary rake angle
- β Primary sharpness angle
- β' Grinding angle, angle of ground bevel
- γ Primary clearance angle
- γ' Secondary clearance angle
- ω_f Face honing angle
- ω_b Back honing angle
- θ Nosebar compression angle
- ϕ Nosebar clearance angle
- k Knife angle used in commercial practice (90° plus the clearance angle)
- t_1 Depth of cut; undeformed veneer thickness
- t_2 Actual veneer thickness
- h Horizontal nosebar opening
- v Vertical nosebar opening
- c Nosebar clearance

when v/h is equal to or less than $\tan (90 - \alpha)$

$$c = [h + v \tan (90 - \alpha)] \cos (90 - \alpha)$$

when v/h is more than $\tan (90 - \alpha)$

$$c = \sqrt{v^2 + h^2}$$

(Drawings after Peter Koch 1964b, pp. 439, 440, WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

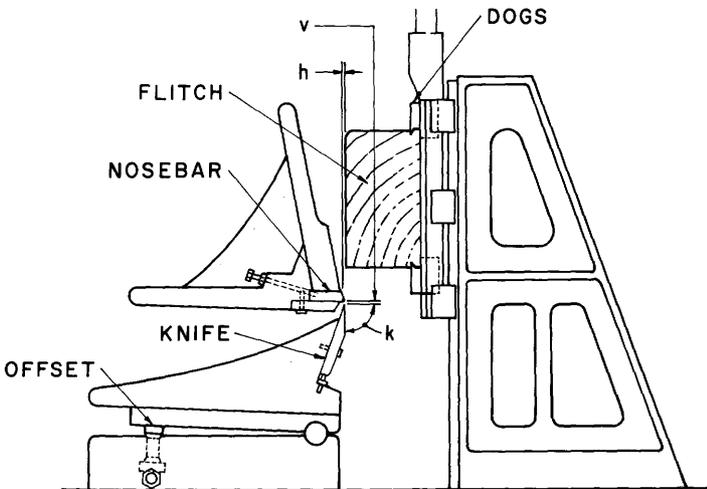
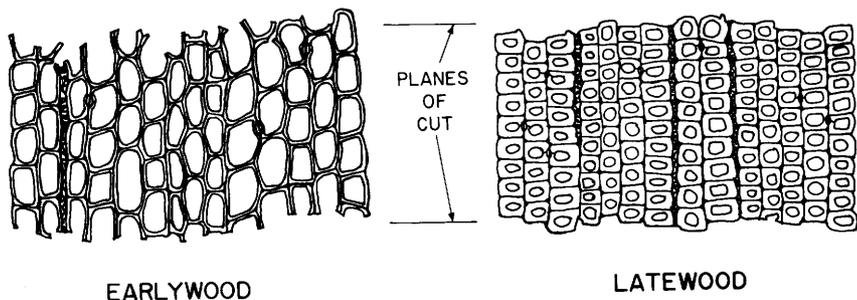


Figure 19-95. Cross section of veneer slicer. Knife is stationary; dogs holding flitch move up and down in vertical (or inclined) guides.



EARLYWOOD LATEWOOD
Figure 19-96.—Cross sections through earlywood and latewood veneer peeled from southern pine.

terminology and diagrams of section 19-2 (fig. 19-2). Adjustment of the nosebar is sometimes stated in terms of percent nosebar compression:

$$\text{Percent nosebar compression} = \frac{(100)(t_1 - c)}{t_1} \quad (19-43)$$

The **face** of the knife is the surface in contact with the veneer. (While this is not the terminology used by industry, it conforms to that used in fundamental machining studies.) The **back** of the knife is the ground bevel next to the bolt or flitch.

ROTARY PEELING

The cutting of rotary veneer is affected by the characteristics of the wood, pretreatments to soften the wood, knife angles, placement and shape of the nosebar, and cutting velocity. For a general discussion of veneer cutting, see Koch (1964b, chapter 12).

Wood factors.—Lutz (1956) has shown that in southern pine, with its prominent growth rings, eccentricity of the pith or off-center chucking of the bolt causes rough veneer. Surfaces are smoothest when the knife cuts in the mode shown in figure 19-97A. Veneer cut in the vicinity of knots or curly grain tends to be rough.

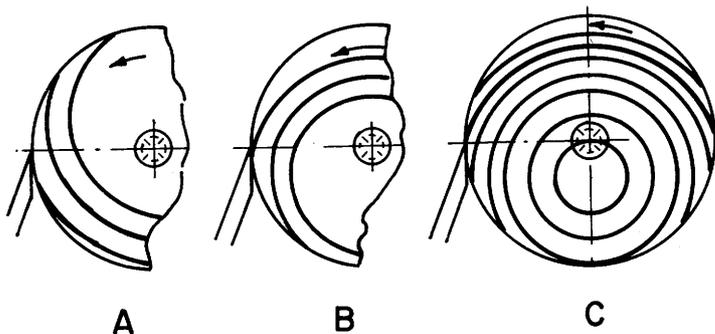


Figure 19-97.—Diagram of annual ring orientation in relation to cutting plane. (A) Favorable. (B) Unfavorable. (C) Combination of unfavorable and favorable. (Drawing after Lutz 1956.)

Fewer knife checks (fig. 19-14) occur in veneer peeled from slow-grown southern pine than from fast-grown. Lutz (1964) concluded that a growth rate that assures two annual rings or more in the thickness of the veneer will reduce warping, shelling, and depth of knife checks.

Moisture content of the wood when peeled affects veneer quality. Peeling southern pine at room temperature, high moisture content (about 110 percent), and high cutting speed (e.g., 300 f.p.m.) results in high loads on the nosebar, thin veneer, and veneer weak in tension perpendicular to the grain when compared to similar pine peeled at similar temperatures and speeds, but at 60-percent moisture content (Lutz et al. 1967).

Pretreatments.—Southern pine veneer bolts are generally heated in steam or hot water to reduce severity of knife checks (Koch 1965) and to soften knots. Veneer cut from heated pine has been reported to yield more uniform glue bonds (Bloomquist 1966). There is evidently a practical upper limit, however; H. H. Haskell (at a southern pine plywood seminar at Meridian, Miss., January 12-13, 1965) stated that bolts heated to temperatures above 180° F. may yield veneer having excessively pitchy surfaces. The pitch is detrimental to glue bond quality.

Knife deflection and nosebar loads decrease with increasing temperature of the wood (Lutz 1967). Temperature did not significantly affect thickness and roughness of veneer peeled from clear wood. Sound, pitchy knots that cut well at 140° F. turned the knife edge when temperature of the wood was dropped to 35° F. Veneer cut at 140° F. or higher had greater strength in tension perpendicular to the grain than that cut at 77° F. or lower. Usable veneer could not be cut from disks at 0° F.

If conditioned in water at 180° F., southern pine bolts, 12, 18, and 24 inches in diameter require heating times of approximately 8, 24, and 46 hours (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1956).

Storage of southern pine veneer bolts in warm water or under water sprays in warm weather can lead to pronounced bacterial attack on the sapwood, removal of parenchyma, and increased permeability (Lutz et al. 1966); when disks stored for 6 months in warm water were rotary cut, loads on the nosebar were less than loads with matched disks stored at 35° F. Veneer from the disks stored in warm water was thicker and stronger in tension perpendicular to the grain than that cut from disks stored at 35° F.

Knife factors.—When rotary peeling southern pine, clearance angle γ is commonly 0°, i.e., $k = 90^\circ$ (fig. 19-94). Sharpness angle β is commonly 20 or 21°. A carefully sharpened knife requires only 50 to 75 percent of the cutting force of a knife dulled by use; the effect is less pronounced when cutting thick veneers (Leney 1960).

Veneer knives can cut effectively with minute negative clearance angles if the resulting interference is confined to the region immediately adjacent to the cutting edge by means of a **microbevel** (fig. 19-98). Microbevelled

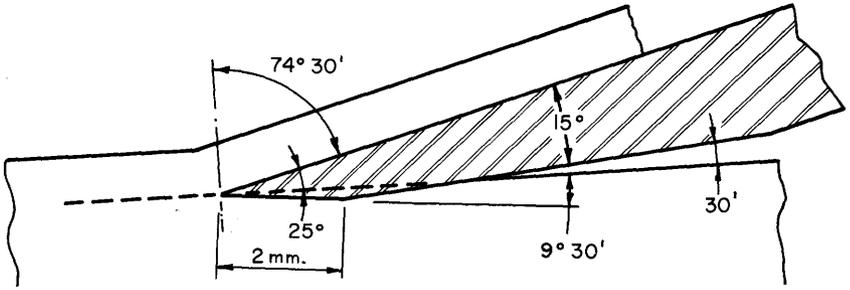


Figure 19-98.—Micro-bevelled veneer knife; for clarity, all angles are not drawn to scale. (Drawing after Peter Koch 1964b, p. 454, *WOOD MACHINING PROCESSES*, Copyright © 1964, The Ronald Press Company, New York.)

knives have been shown by Leney (1960) to have a number of advantages:

- An increased rake angle can be used thereby reducing the incidence of tension checks.
- A cutting edge with a 25° effective sharpness angle is more durable than one with a lesser angle (fig. 19-98).
- A tendency toward a “wire edge” at the cutting edge is eliminated.
- A short microbevel with 9½° negative clearance angle appears to depress the wood cells under the microbevel and thus increase the tension on the cells in front of the cutting edge. This effect tends to decrease the amount of compression tearing that would otherwise occur at the cutting edge.
- Force measurements indicate that microbevelling decreases the parallel cutting force, F_p , compared to a knife with the same geometry as figure 19-98 but not microbevelled.
- The normal force exerted on the workpiece by the negative clearance of the microbevel tends to counteract the normal force exerted on the forming chip by the face of the knife so that the net magnitude of the normal force, F_n , approaches zero or is at least reduced.

In the laboratory it has been shown that oscillation of the knife to give it the effect of inclined cutting (see sec. 19-2) reduces power demand and improves the surface of veneer. This feature has been incorporated into veneer lathes. No data specific to southern pine are published, but one firm is peeling Idaho white pine (*Pinus monticola* Dougl.) on an 8-foot lathe with an oscillating knife (1-inch amplitude and 180 cycles per minute) and 5/8-inch roller nosebar. The lathe, so equipped, can cut 1/8-inch veneer at 800 f.p.m.; less lathe power is required and spinouts are fewer than with a fixed knife. The oscillating knife evidently has had no effect on the number and depth of knife checks or on thickness variation in the veneer.

Nosebar.—Several manufacturers of southern pine veneer use lathes with solid nosebars; most of these have single bevels (fig. 19-94, inset), but others have a double bevel (fig. 19-94, Bottom). In more common use

are 5/8-inch-diameter roller nosebars. While usually power driven, the roller bar may run idle. Ordinarily it is set to specific horizontal and vertical openings (fig. 19-99) and furnished with a quick-release mechanism so the lathe operator can draw it clear and remove jammed veneer. The roller bar is seated in a backup support along its entire length so that it does not deflect under load. Porter and Sanders (1970) have provided data on hydrostatic lubrication of roller nosebars that should be of interest to machine designers.

Table 19-36 presents optimum nosebar settings for peeling southern pine with a 5/8-inch diameter, idle nosebar in conjunction with a knife having zero clearance angle and 21° sharpness angle; cutting speed was about 20 f.p.m.

The horizontal forces (i.e., those normal to the workpiece) per inch of knife and bar were calculated for these settings (Lutz and Patzer 1966).

Nominal veneer thickness	Force per inch of knife		Force per inch of roller bar	
	Mean	Range	Mean	Range
<i>Inch</i>			<i>Pounds</i>	
0.094	45	0-70	105	10-170
.364	80	20-100	170	60-270

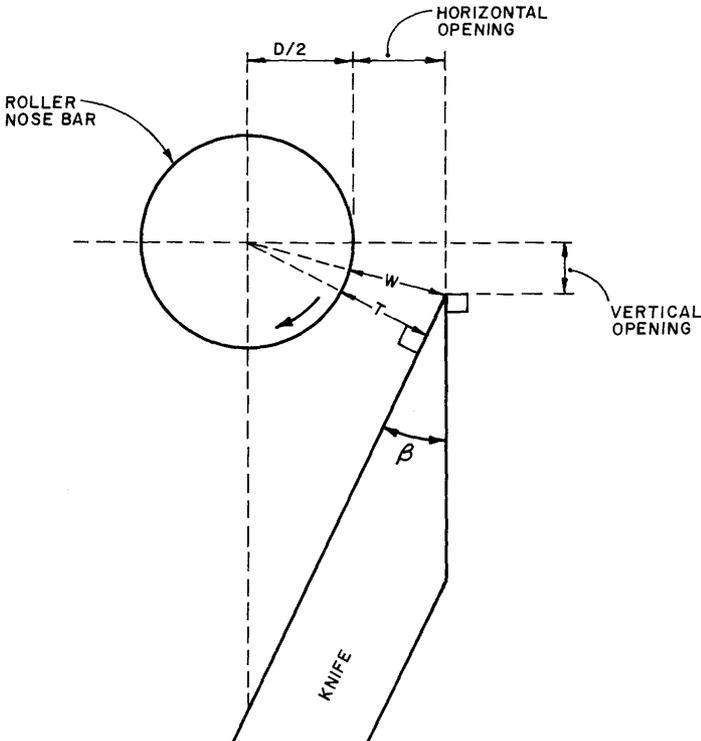


Figure 19-99.—Geometry of roller nosebar.

TABLE 19-36.—*Roller bar openings for southern pine (after Lutz and Patzer 1966)*¹

Nominal veneer thickness (inch)	Horizontal opening (h)	Vertical opening (v)	W ²	T ³
----- Inch -----				
0.094-----	0.084	0.074	0.081	0.075
.364-----	.324	.062	.327	.304

¹ For southern pine of 0.51 specific gravity (green volume-oven-dry weight basis) and 16 rings per inch.

² Clearance between roller and knife edge (see fig. 19-99).

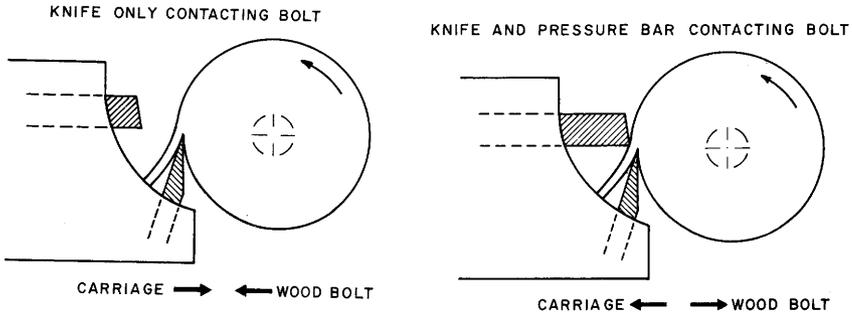
³ Clearance between roller and face of knife (see fig. 19-99).

In those mills where a solid nosebar with 15° angle (θ in fig. 19-94) is used, the following settings have been found satisfactory (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1956).

Veneer thickness	Horizontal opening (h)	Vertical opening (v)
----- Inch -----		
$\frac{1}{8}$	0.110	0.028
$\frac{1}{16}$	.055	.016
$\frac{1}{32}$	.025	.008

On commercial lathes, the nosebar is set rigidly to prescribed vertical and horizontal openings. Following a suggestion by Lutz and Patzer (1966), Feihl and Carroll (1969) studied the practicality of veneer peeling with nosebar pressure applied hydraulically (elastically) instead of by fixing it rigidly in relation to the knife. They found that bolts peeled with an elastically-mounted solid nosebar (fig. 19-94) required about 30 to 40 pounds of force per lineal inch on the bar, with no indication that this force was strongly influenced by species or veneer thickness. When $\frac{1}{10}$ - and $\frac{1}{6}$ -inch veneer was peeled from red pine, *Pinus resinosa* Ait. (a species fairly comparable to the southern pines), with an elastically mounted, power-driven, roller nosebar, optimum veneer quality was achieved with a force of 50 to 60 pounds per lineal inch of bar. The elastically mounted bar yielded veneer whose thickness was not affected by wear and play in the horizontal adjustment mechanism of the bar—a frequent and serious defect in commercial lathes with rigid nosebars. Feihl and Carroll (1969) concluded that the direct reading of nosebar force (possible with the hydraulically actuated elastic nosebar) gave the operator better control than the fixed settings of a rigid bar.

Most lathes have some degree of play or looseness in the knife carriage mechanism. As shown by Lutz et al. (1969), forces between bolt and knife carriage reverse depending on whether or not the nosebar is in contact with the bolt (fig. 19-100). In the absence of a nosebar, carriage and bolt are pulled together; when the nosebar is pressed against the



M-136325
 Figure 19-100.—Direction of forces acting on carriage and bolts when the knife only is contacting the bolt (left) and when both nosebar and knife are contacting the bolt (right). (Drawings after Lutz et al. 1969.)

bolt, carriage and bolt are forced apart. Normally veneer is peeled with the nosebar closed, but since many operators round up the log with nosebar open, and also at intervals clear jams by opening the nosebar, forces are frequently reversed and the play in the lathe carriage causes variations in veneer thickness. In brief, variation in veneer thickness is least if the nosebar can be kept in contact with the bolt at all times.

Cutting velocity.—Lutz et al. (1967) found that at very slow cutting speeds (0.2 f.p.m.) compression tearing of earlywood was more common than at 20 f.p.m. In the range from 20 to 300 f.p.m., cutting velocity was positively correlated with load on the roller bar and negatively correlated with veneer strength perpendicular to the grain; i.e., better southern pine veneer was cut in the laboratory at 20 f.p.m. than at 300 f.p.m. (Lutz et al. 1967). The large forces and accompanying veneer damage observed in southern pine peeled at high speed were attributed to wood ruptures caused by water pressure in the wet wood.

At a southern pine mill, Cade and Choong (1969) found that veneers from bolts heated in water to 106° F. were substantially weaker across the grain when cut at 500 f.p.m. than when cut at 100 f.p.m.

Commercial lathes.—An 8-foot lathe for peeling southern pine will normally accept a log 8½ feet long and 30 inches in diameter. Most have retractable chucks to permit turning to a 5¼-inch core (fig. 19-101). Most use a power-driven, 5/8-inch-diameter roller nosebar synchronized to the speed of the veneer. However, there is a trend toward use of a solid bar with a nosebar compression angle (θ in fig. 19-94) of 15°. Chuck rotation is variable up to 300 to 350 r.p.m. Power to rotate the bolt is commonly in the range from 125 to 175 hp. Automatic lathe chargers can maintain a charging rate in excess of two bolts per minute; some can charge as many as four or five bolts per minute over a short period. With good operating conditions, 900 to 1,200 bolts can be charged and peeled in 8 hours. Four-foot lathes are frequently used to cut core veneer from smaller bolts.

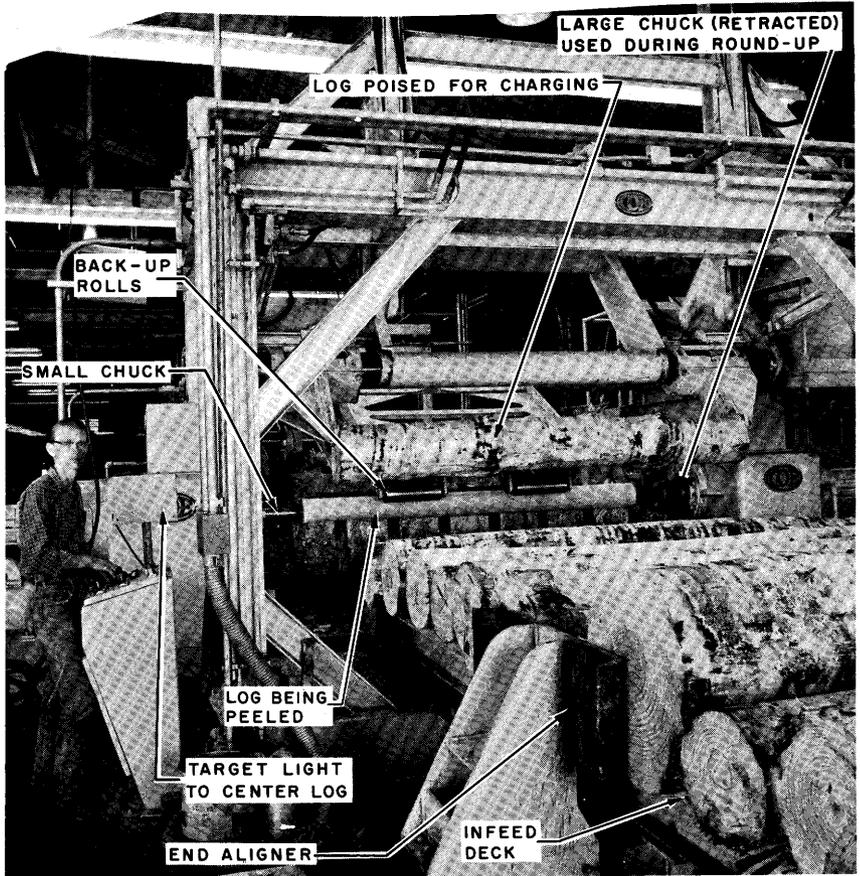


Figure 19-101.—Lathe charger with end aligner and log infeed conveyor. One log, gripped by small-diameter chucks, is being peeled; a second log, gripped near top of both ends, is poised for a quick swinging transfer to the chucks after the veneer core is dropped. (Photo from Coe Manufacturing Company.)

SLICING

Sliced veneer is usually cut to display vertical grain (fig. 19-1A, 0-90 mode), whereas peeled veneer has flat grain (fig. 19-1B, 0-90 mode). Commercial sliced veneer is cut by intermittent engagement of the knife (fig. 19-95) rather than by continuous peeling. In general, vertical-grain sliced veneer is smoother, has less shrinkage, is more attractive in appearance, and holds finishes better than rotary-peeled veneer.

Fitches are prepared for slicing to get the most favorable orientation of wood. Veneer is smoother if the cut proceeds from heartwood to sapwood. Quarter-cut (vertical-grain) veneer is usually smoother than flat-cut. Figure 19-102A shows favorable orientation of the fitch to minimize splits along planes of weakness caused by rays. In figure 19-103C, when the pith has been passed, the fitch should be turned end for end.

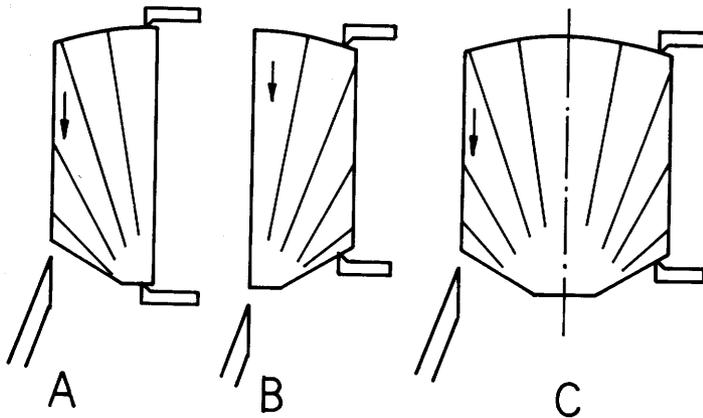


Figure 19-102.—Diagram of ray orientation in relation to the cutting plane for quarter-cut veneer. (A) Favorable. (B) Unfavorable. (C) Combination of favorable and unfavorable. (Drawings after Lutz 1956.)

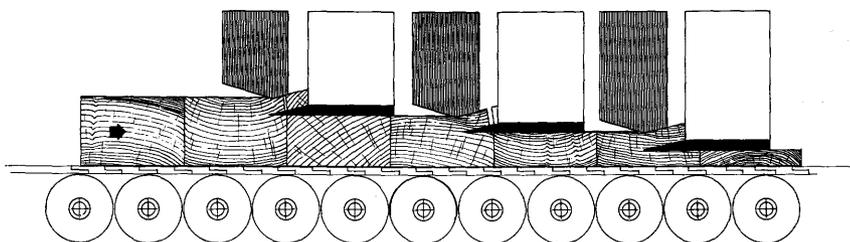
Satisfactory thin veneer can be sliced with a knife having a sharpness angle of 22° and knife angle (k) of $90^\circ 15'$ when used in conjunction with a solid nosebar ($\theta = 12^\circ$) having the following settings (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1956):

Veneer thickness	Horizontal opening (h)	Vertical opening (v)
----- Inch -----		
$\frac{1}{4}$	0.240	0.035
$\frac{1}{8}$	.115	.035

Of great promise to southern pine utilization is the developing technology of thick-sliced veneer, i.e., slicewood. Lutz et al. (1962) did early work on the process. He and his co-workers have recently constructed a heavy experimental slicer for cutting veneer as thick as 1 inch. Peters et al. (1969) have published data specific to southern pine. One-half- and 1-inch-thick slices were cut at 5, 50, 200, and 500 f.p.m. from flat-grain cants heated in water to 190° F. The cants had four or five rings per inch with specific gravity of about 0.52. The knife had a 20° sharpness angle and 0.5° clearance angle. The 15° solid nosebar was set to give a **restraint** (normal veneer thickness minus c in fig. 19-94) of 0.057 inch for the $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch slices and 0.154 inch for 1-inch slices.

Depth of knife checks was positively correlated with velocity as shown by the following tabulation of fracture depth expressed as a percent of veneer thickness.

Cutting velocity	$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch thick	1 inch thick
<i>F.p.m.</i>	----- Percent -----	
5	46	59
50	64	68
200	66	73
500	76	82



M-134597

Figure 19-103.—Concept of slicing multiple flitches. (Drawing after Peters 1968.)

Forces exerted on the knife and bar are shown in table 19-37.

In thick slicing, tearout is severe where the knife leaves the cant or flitch. This can be minimized by backing one cant with another (fig. 19-103). The multiple-flitch method would also afford good productivity at slower cutting speeds than conventional machines.

19-11 CHIPPING

To make chemical pulp or refiner groundwood, southern pine must first be reduced to chips of relatively uniform size.

CHIP DIMENSIONS

Optimum size and proportions of pulp chips vary according to pulping process and equipment. A study by Schmied (1964) of the effects of chip size and shape on the uniformity of wood delignification led to several conclusions. Size of the chips affects the cook when the cooking is rapid and if the chips have a high moisture content. Large chips are undercooked because their long diffusion paths delay penetration of the pulping chemicals to the chip centers. Hence, if large chips are used, the time of digester heating must be prolonged. A twofold increase of chip size requires a fourfold prolongation of the cooking time. Mixed sizes are detrimental; excessive absorption and side reactions in the small chips may

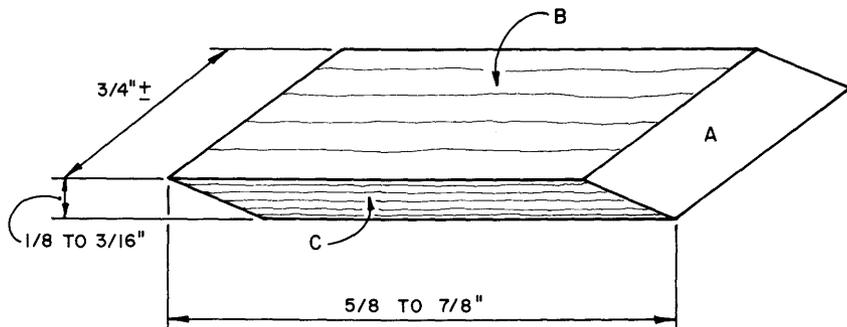


Figure 19-104.—Chip for kraft pulp. Surface A cut by chipping knife, surfaces B and C are split parallel to the grain.

TABLE 19-37.—*Summary of forces on knife and nosebar when southern pine is sliced into thick veneer (Peters et al. 1969)*

Feed thickness (inch)	Velocity	Forces ¹ and horsepower per inch of bolt length					
		Knife		Bar		Combined	Net cutting power ⁴
		Parallel	Perpendicular ²	Parallel	Perpendicular	Parallel ³	
	<i>F.p.m.</i>	-----		<i>Pounds</i>	-----		<i>Hp.</i>
½	5	123	171	45	283	168	0.03
	50	121	193	51	295	172	.26
	200	123	200	59	284	182	1.10
	500	191	246	84	339	275	4.17
1	5	195	279	79	438	274	.04
	50	186	295	74	319	260	.39
	200	239	420	140	623	379	2.30
	500	290	440	136	603	426	6.47

¹ Parallel and perpendicular to cutting direction.

² Perpendicular knife forces are in the opposite direction to perpendicular bar forces.

³ Perpendicular forces as measured in this study cannot be combined.

⁴ Horsepower calculated from combined parallel force and velocity.

deplete chemicals in the liquor penetrating the large chips. This is one reason for avoiding mixtures of chips with sawdust. Initially, the diffusion front of the chemicals follows the edges of the chips, but in later stages of cooking the front assumes a rounded form and the undercooked chips, depending on their initial shape, are either cylindrical or ellipsoidal. Schmied concluded that the effects of chip size and heterogeneity are considerably reduced when chips are dry because the lumens of dry wood can be filled more easily.

Specific recommendations concerning chip thickness were made by Wahlman (1967); in laboratory trials he found that maximum-strength alkaline pulps were made from chips 2 to 5 mm. (0.08 to 0.20 inch) thick and that screenings, i.e., particles of undigested wood, began to be excessive when chip thickness exceeded 5 mm. In the southern pine region, pulp chip dimensions shown in figure 19-104 are commonly used; there are, however, considerable differences in preferences at individual mills. For the interested reader, Borlew and Miller (1970) have reviewed the literature on the effect of chip thickness on the kraft pulping process.

CHIP SHREDDING

Miller and Rothrock (1963) and Nolan (1967) have shown that for the kraft pulping process there are some advantages to be gained from shredding southern pine chips prior to digestion.

In Nolan's experiments, conventionally cut slash pine chips at 40- to 45-percent moisture content were passed through a 28-inch Vertiflex attrition mill. The plates had teeth $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch high in the inner zone and $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch high at the outer periphery. Plate clearance for shredding was 0.900 inch, corresponding to a clearance of 0.525 inch between the tips of the teeth on rotor and stator. Rotor speed was 1,800 r.p.m. Feed rate to the mill was 1.2 tons (air-dry) of chips per hour, which was less than 10 percent of the capacity of the 100-hp. unit.

Shredding increased the exposed surface of chips by splitting them along natural lines of cleavage without breakage across the grain and without crushing or otherwise damaging the fibers. The chief gains were: (1) high-yield pulps more easily produced; (2) chip screens eliminated; (3) knot breakers eliminated or operated lightly; (4) washing improved; (5) fiberizing power reduced; (6) pulp made cleaner; (7) cooking time reduced; and (8) digestion production increased.

CHIP FORMATION AND POWER REQUIRED

Pulp chips can be cut in any of three major modes (figs. 19-1, 19-54). Energy consumed per cubic inch of wood chipped is least if chips are long and thick rather than short and thin, if rake angles are high, if knives are sharp, and if 0-90 or 90-0 cutting mode is used rather than the 90-90 mode.

Conventional disk-type chippers (fig. 19-105) cut in a mode intermediate between 90-90 and 90-0. In these chippers, several straight knives are bolted in more or less radial disposition into a heavy disk that revolves in a vertical plane. Severed chips pass through a slot in the disk and may be discharged from top, bottom, or sides of the disk housing. Logs, slabs, or edgings are fed against the disk through the infeed spout (figs. 19-105 and 19-106). The angle between the face of the disk and the axis of the spout is usually $37\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ (fig. 107, top); this angle may be attained by attaching the spout at a horizontal angle (ω in fig. 19-106) only, or in combination with a vertical angle (not illustrated). Chippers with a vertical spout angle are usually gravity fed; a powered conveyor delivers wood into horizontally fed chippers.

Erickson (1964) and Papworth and Erickson (1966) on tests of a three-knife disk chipper cutting 4- by 4-inch by 8-foot wood found that vertical spout angle had no effect on specific cutting energy; however, a 30° horizontal spout angle (ω in figure 19-106) decreased specific cutting energy slightly compared to a 0° angle; knife sharpness angle noticeably affected power consumption, with blunt knives requiring more power; long chips required less specific cutting energy than short chips.

On disk chippers, the angle θ (figure 19-107) appears to control the ratio of chip thickness to length, the chips becoming thicker as θ becomes larger; if θ is less than 90° , bristles are formed on the ends of the chips; if θ is more than 90° , the ends of the chips are compressed (Hartler

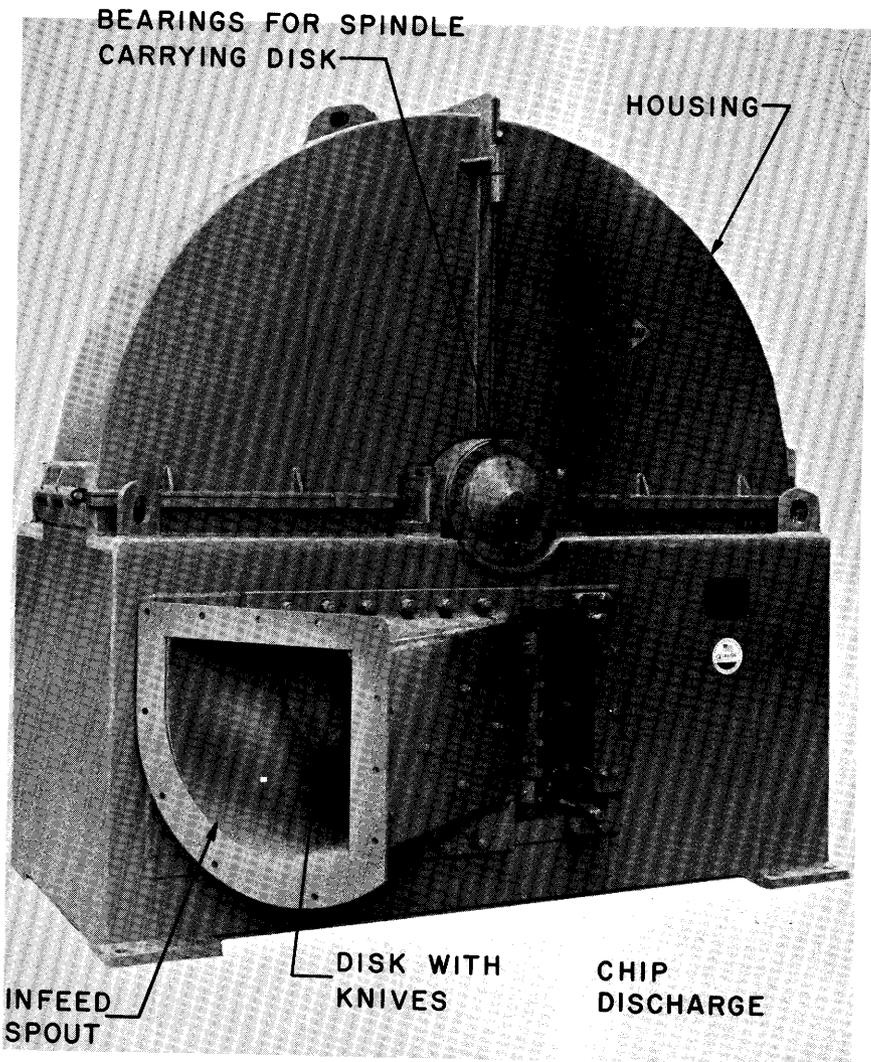


Figure 19-105.—Horizontal-feed, whole-log chipper designed for bottom discharge. (Photo from Bush Manufacturing Company.)

1962). Helically-formed surfaces following each knife (fig. 19-107) keep the workpiece in full contact with the face plate and help control chip size. Swept-back knives (fig. 19-106) diminish knife impact and provide an oblique cut that should reduce power and diminish bruising. Many manufacturers place the knives radially, but place the spout so that the bedknives and workpieces (see figs. 19-106 and 19-107B) are aligned to prevent simultaneous impact of all parts of the knife edge across the full width of a rectangular piece of wood to be chipped.

The power demand of a chipper is proportional to the volume of wood

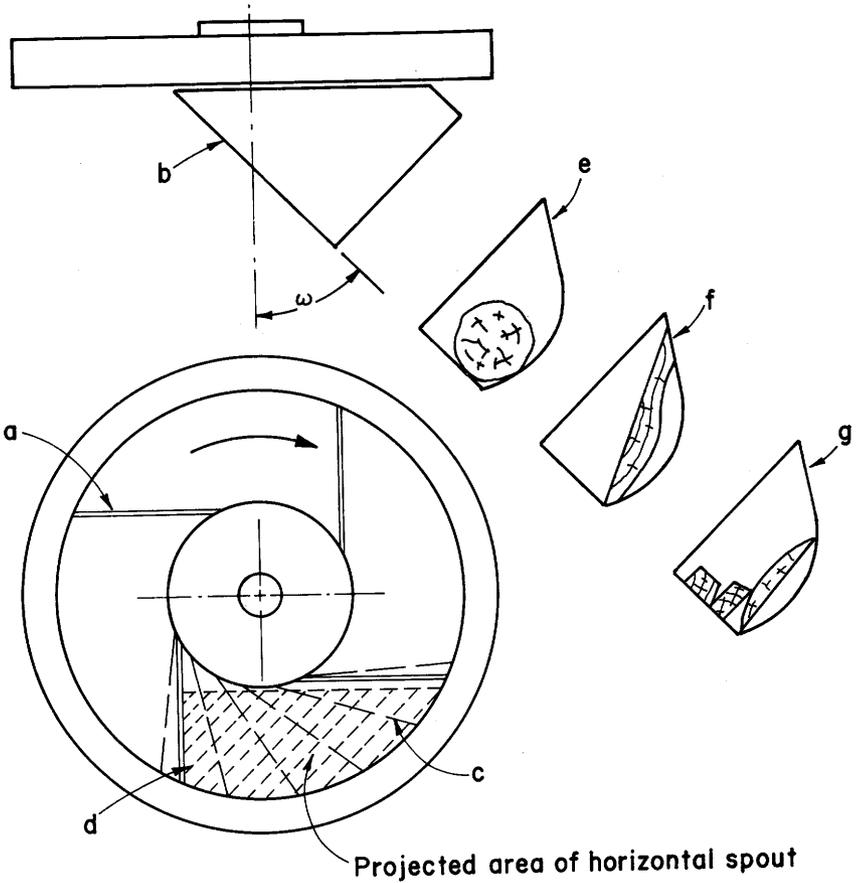


Figure 19-106.—Diagram of disk chipper. a, swept-back knives; b, spout position for horizontal feed; c, slicing action of knives across projected spout area; d, location of bedknife or anvil, against which the wood is pressed by the knives in passing. Infeed spout will admit wood in several forms; e, roundwood; f, wide slabs; g, slabs and edgings. ω = horizontal spout angle (commonly $90^\circ - 37\frac{1}{2}^\circ = 52\frac{1}{2}^\circ$).

it chips in a unit time. The number of cuts a machine makes per cubic foot of solid roundwood chipped is as follows:

$$X = 6912 / L\pi D^2 \tag{19-44}$$

where:

- X = number of cuts per cubic foot of solid wood chipped
- L = chip length, inches
- D = diameter of bolt, inches

Thus, when cutting $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch-long chips, about 35 cuts per cubic foot are required for a 10-inch log, and 880 cuts per cubic foot are required for a pulp stick measuring 2 inches in diameter, or 3.5 and 88 revolutions, respectively, for a 10-knife disk.

The productiveness of a chipper is determined by the size of workpiece it will admit and the number of cuts it makes per minute. Therefore, the following relationship expresses the output of a chipper.

$$V = nN/X \quad (19-45)$$

where:

- V = cubic feet of solid wood chipped per minute
 n = revolutions per minute of chipper disk
 N = number of knives in the disk
 X = number of cuts per cubic foot (from equation 19-44)

According to Rogers (1948) and Fobes (1959), specific cutting energy for disk-type chippers is proportional to wood specific gravity as follows:

Specific gravity	Horsepower-seconds per cubic foot of solid wood chipped
0.3	195
0.4	300
0.5	430
0.6	570

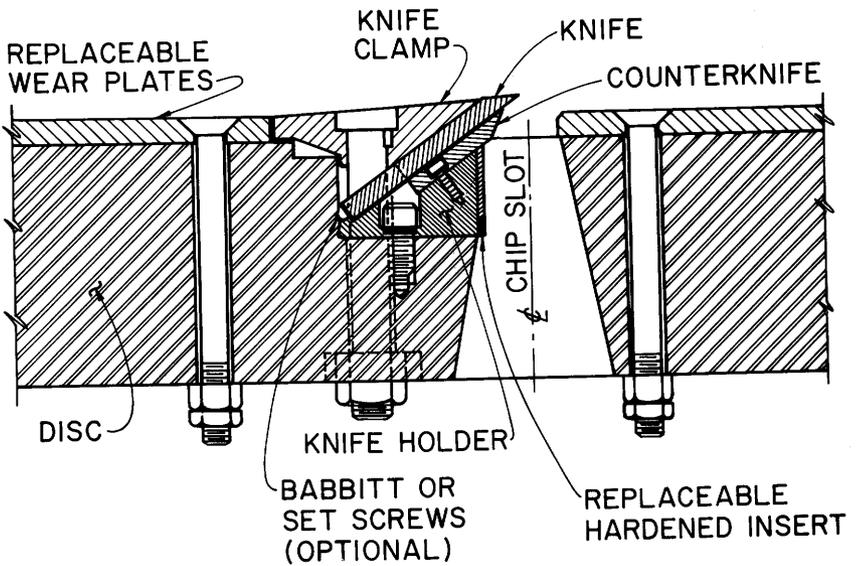
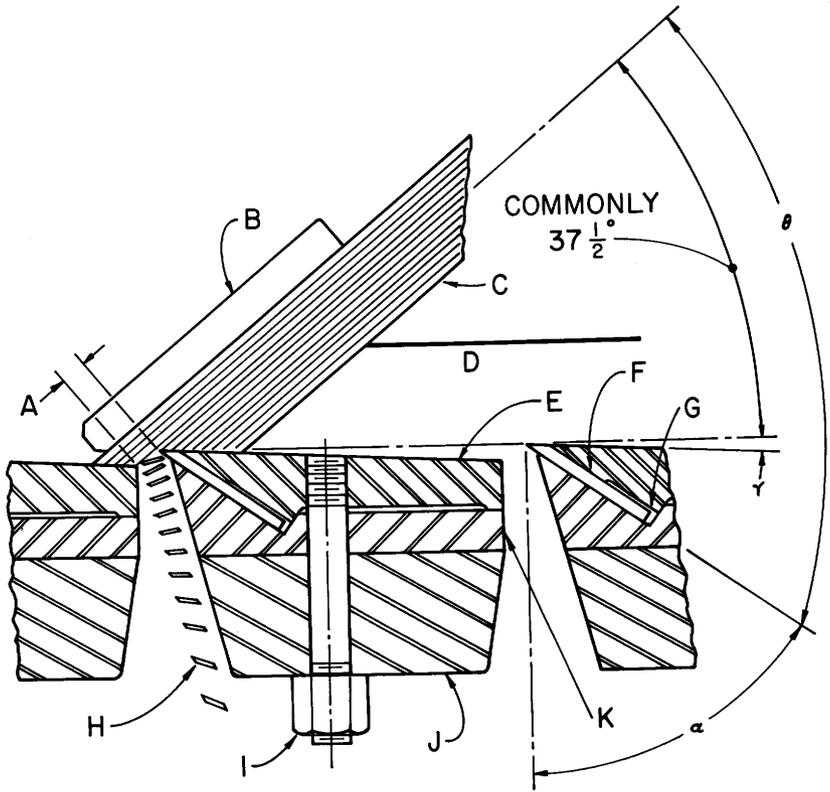
CHIPPER TYPES

Chippers are designed specifically for the wood to be chipped, e.g., pulpwood bolts, long logs, sawmill residues, or veneer residues. Spout shapes are tailored to the raw material and may be rectangular, square, V-shaped, round, or modified round. Rim speed on disk chippers is commonly 12,000 f.p.m.

For interested readers, McKenzie (1970) briefly reviewed the advantages and disadvantages of several types of chippers other than disk chippers.

Cordwood chippers at pulp mills.—The usual pulpwood chipper for southern pine receives wood in short lengths as it comes from the drum barker. These machines usually have vertically inclined spouts, are gravity-fed, will accommodate sticks up to 24 inches in diameter, and discharge from the bottom. A typical machine carries 10 to 12 knives in a 104-inch disk that rotates at 400 r.p.m. and is driven by a direct-connected 1,250-hp., wound-rotor (or synchronous) motor. When efficiently fed, output of the chipper is approximately 40 to 50 cords per hour.

Longwood chippers.—At many locations in the South, long-log chip mills have been installed in conjunction with a ring barker (commonly 26 to 30 inches). Disk chippers for these mills are chain fed horizontally; typically, the 75- or 84-inch disk carries eight knives and is rotated at 500 to 450 r.p.m. by a synchronous, 500- to 1,000-hp. motor (fig. 19-105). Assuming that operation is reasonably continuous, output should be about 30 cords per hour if wood averages 6 inches in diameter.



Chipping headrigs.—The development of the chipping headrig (sec. 19-6) is greatly changing chip procurement patterns in the South. Usually saw logs are more valuable than pulpwood, and veneer bolts are more valuable than saw logs. The chipping headrig can be the center of a wood conversion system that diverts each section of the tree to its most valuable use. Trees are logged in tree length; at the mill, tops are chipped as roundwood; 7- to 12-inch-diameter logs are converted on the chipping headrig to dimension lumber; 12-inch and larger sections are diverted to veneer mills. For each ton of green lumber manufactured, more than a ton of pulp chips is simultaneously produced.

Residue chippers.—Disk chippers for slabs and edgings usually carry three to six knives; smaller disks turn at higher rotational speed than larger disks to achieve comparable outputs. A mill equipped with saws and edgers (as contrasted to a mill with chipping headrig and chipping edger) that produces 10,000 bd. ft. of lumber per hour might chip all its residues in one chipper. Typically the 58-inch disk would carry six knives, turn at 720 r.p.m., and be driven by a 150-hp. squirrel-cage induction motor. Such a chipper would normally produce about 15 tons of green chips per hour of mill operation.

A veneer plant with two 8-foot lathes could have three chippers. Cores and lathe spinouts might be chipped on a horizontal-feed, top-discharge, 66-inch, eight-knife, 250-hp., 600-r.p.m. disk chipper. Waste veneer requires a special horizontal feed with crushing rolls; a typical installation would discharge from top or bottom, carry eight knives in an 84-inch disk driven at 500 r.p.m. by a 250-hp. motor. The trim ends of the veneer bolts (*lily pads*) require a special chipper that cuts chips in the 0-90 mode by an action somewhat similar to that illustrated in figure 19-54A. The 40- to 60-inch drum that carries the knives rotates at 205 to 100 r.p.m. and is driven by a 30- to 150-hp. motor. Productivity is in the range from 10 to 20 tons per hour.

Rechippers.—Oversize chips are objectionable to the pulpmills. They are screened out and either recycled through the chipper or rechipped on equipment specifically designed for this job.

Portable chippers.—Because it is becoming increasingly difficult to find labor to harvest southern pine pulpwood in the traditional cordwood lengths, much effort has been expended to improve the processing of tree-length material. Some mills do not have large consolidated timber



Figure 19-107.—Cutting action of knives in disk chipper. (Top) Cross section through one type of disk. A, chip length; B, side bedknife; C, workpiece; D, bottom bedknife; E, helical face plate; F, knife; G, shim; H, chips; I, face plate stud and nut; J, chipper disk; k, knife carrier; α , rake angle (approximately 50°); γ , clearance angle (2° to 8°), θ , angle between rake face of knife and grain direction of workpiece. (Bottom) Cross section through disk in common use on southern pine. (Drawing at top from Sumner Iron Works; drawing at bottom from Bush Manufacturing Company.)

holdings, but must rely on small woodyards scattered throughout an area 200 or 300 miles in diameter. Such chip users may find it economically feasible to use mobile chip mills to process tree-length wood.

Several designs have been developed and are under test in the South, including some that are self-mobile with all the components on one chassis. A hydraulic loader places long logs in the infeed conveyor, which carries them at speeds up to 100 f.p.m. through an 18-inch ring barker and directly into a close-coupled chipper (disk or twin-cone—see fig. 19-59). The chipper is fan discharged to a chip truck. In locations where bark has high value, it may go to a pulverizer (**bark hog**)—also equipped with a fan discharge. Total power for the unit is commonly in the range from 300 to 600 hp. Production capacities vary, but 15 to 20 cords per hour on logs having an average diameter of 6 inches is considered attainable. The features, performance, and cost of seven different designs of mobile chip mills have been reviewed by Grant (1967).

19-12 BORING

Machine boring is a common operation whenever dowels, rungs, or screws are required in assembling wood components. Holes are also needed for bolted connections in poles, crossarms, trusses, and structural timbers. With appropriate selection of bit type and feed speed (chip thickness) it is possible to bore the required holes rapidly and smoothly in southern pine.

BIT TYPES AND NOMENCLATURE

Although there are many specialized bit designs, six types are most important. Figure 19-108A shows a double-spur, double-lip, single-twist, solid-center bit on which the spurs cut ahead of the lips. This bit may have a threaded or brad (plain) point.

Figure 19-108B illustrates a double-spur, double-lip, double-twist bit which may also have a threaded or brad point. The flat-cut, double-lip, double-twist bit (fig. 19-108C) is similar in design except that outlying spurs are not used. With the flat-cut bit, the side cutting spurs sever the end surface of the chip simultaneously with the cutting action of the lips.

Holes in excess of 6 inches deep are frequently bored with a ship auger (fig. 19-108D), a single-twist design with one cutting lip and one side cutting spur. The four types of bits described above are sharpened by filing on the rake face of the cutting lips and the inside surfaces of the spurs. The lips are commonly filed with a rake angle (α) of 30 to 35 degrees and a clearance angle (γ) of 10 to 15 degrees.

In contrast to the foregoing types, the spur machine bit illustrated in fig. 19-108E is sharpened by grinding on the clearance surface, or back side, of the lips. The rake angle therefore continuously varies along the cutting lip from about 0 degrees near the axis of rotation to about 45 degrees at the bit periphery.

The twist drill illustrated in figure 19-108F is also sharpened by grinding on the clearance surface of the lips. It has neither spurs nor point, and is most frequently used to drill in end grain and to bore dowel holes.

The symbols used in subsequent text of this section are defined as shown in figure 19-108 and the following tabulation.

α	Rake angle, degrees	P	Power required at the spindle, horsepower
β	Sharpness angle of lips, degrees	T	Torque on spindle, inch-pounds
β_1	Sharpness angle of spurs, degrees	n	Spindle speed, revolutions per minute
β_2	Sharpness angle of side cutting spurs, degrees	f	Feed speed, inches per minute
γ	Clearance angle of lips, degrees	E	Energy, kilowatt-hours
δ	Skew angle of lips, degrees	E_s	Specific cutting energy, kilowatt-hours per cubic inch
ϵ	Angle of lead (spur to lip measured at circumference), degrees	t	Chip thickness, inches
D	Diameter of bit, inches	N	Number of cutting lips
h_1	Height of point above lip, inches	v	Velocity of cutting edge of lip, feet per minute
h_2	Height of spur above lip, inches	d	Depth of hole, inches
L	Length of spur at root, inches	V	Volume of hole, cubic inches
r_1	Radius of bit, inches		
r_2	Effective radius of point, inches		

Table 19-38 lists typical geometrical specifications for all types except the twist drill.

FUNDAMENTAL ASPECTS

The velocity of the cutting edge varies with the spindle speed and the distance (r_1) from the axis of rotation.

$$v = 2\pi r_1 n / 12 = 0.5236 r_1 n \tag{19-46}$$

A 1-inch diameter bit rotating at 3,600 r.p.m. has a maximum cutting velocity of 942 f.p.m.

The thickness of the undeformed chip (t) is directly proportional to the feed speed and inversely proportional to the number of cutting lips and the spindle speed.

$$t = f / nN \tag{19-47}$$

The tabulation below gives feed speeds required to yield 0.010, 0.020, and 0.030-inch thick chips at spindle speeds of 1,200, 2,400, and 3,600 r.p.m. for bits having two cutting lips. For bits having only one cutting lip, feed speeds are one-half those shown.

Chip thickness	Spindle speed		
	1,200 r.p.m.	2,400 r.p.m.	3,600 r.p.m.
<i>Inches</i>	----- <i>Inches/minute</i> -----		
0.010	24	48	72
.020	48	96	144
.030	72	144	216

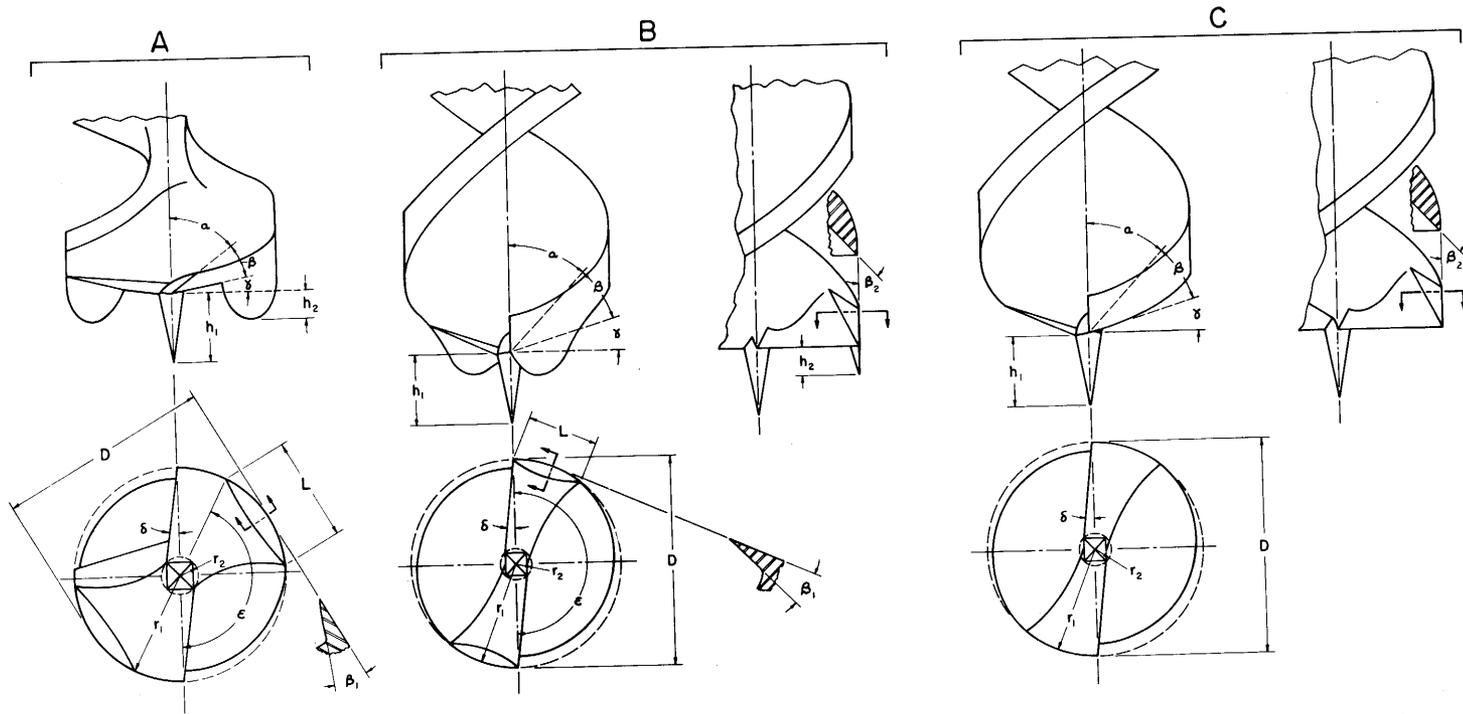


Figure 19-108ABC.—Bit types. (A) Double-spur, double-lip, single-twist, solid-center bit. (B) Double-spur, double-lip, double-twist bit. (C) Flat-cut, double-lip, double-twist bit. (Drawings after Woodson and McMillin.⁵)

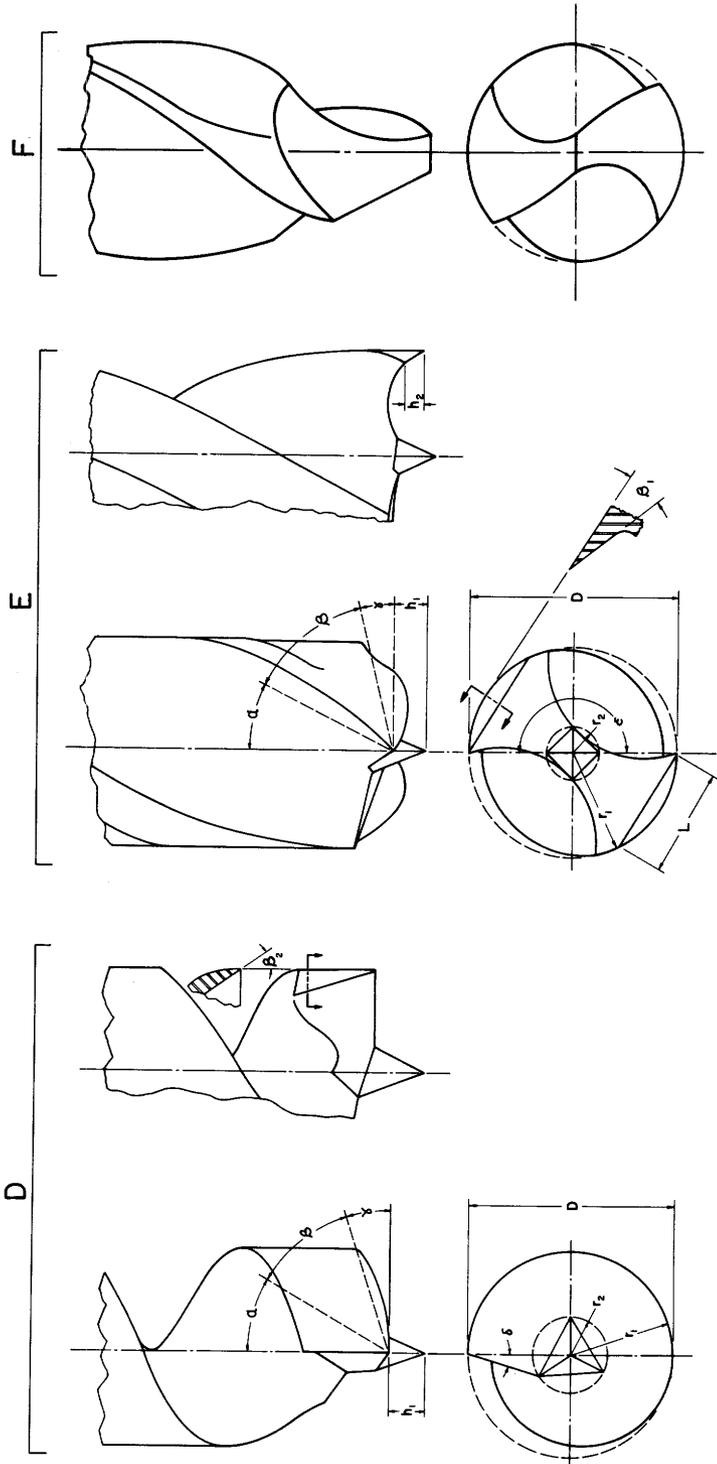


Figure 19-108DEF.—Bit types. (D) Ship auger. (E) Spur machine bit. (F) Twist drill. (Drawings after Woodson and McMillin.)

TABLE 19-38.—Geometrical specifications for five bit types

Bit type and diameter (inches)	α	β	β_1	β_2	γ	δ	ϵ	h_1	h_2	L	r_1	r_2
	Degrees						Inches					
Spur machine bit ¹												
0.50	20.2	54.4	37.3		15.4			0.10	0.03	0.21	0.250	0.07
1.00	19.3	60.6	35.1		10.1			.20	.10	.53	.500	.09
1.25	18.6	61.4	36.3		10.0			.20	.11	.62	.625	.11
Double-spur, double-twist												
0.50	30.6	44.9	31.9	33.2	14.6	18.2	161.8	.11	.05	.23	.250	.08
1.00	33.5	45.6	29.6	32.4	10.9	14.8	164.9	.21	.11	.45	.500	.14
1.25	31.8	47.7	29.7	35.9	10.4	12.1	167.9	.22	.12	.55	.625	.14
Flat-cut, double-twist												
0.50	29.6	45.1		31.1	15.3	17.8		.13			.250	.08
1.00	35.7	40.9		35.2	13.4	13.2		.23			.500	.11
1.25	33.3	42.7		33.7	14.1	10.9		.24			.625	.12
Double-spur, single-twist, solid-center												
0.50	30.0	47.8	29.8		12.2	15.5	151.5	.10	.04	.25	.250	.09
1.00	27.4	51.6	28.2		11.0	12.8	148.3	.22	.12	.46	.500	.13
1.25	31.8	46.1	27.8		12.1	11.7	152.3	.23	.12	.58	.625	.15
Ship auger, 12-inch twist												
1.00	37.5	45.2		35.0	7.3	15.1		.29			.500	.15

¹ For the spur machine bit, α , β , and γ were measured at the midpoint of the bit radius.

The net horsepower (P) requirement at the spindle is a positive linear function of the torque and the rotational speed of the spindle.

$$P = \frac{2\pi nT}{(33,000)(12)} = (1.587)(10^{-5})nT \quad (19-48)$$

Since equation 19-48 neglects no-load idling losses of the motor and spindle assembly, actual power demand is somewhat higher than that indicated. Neither does the equation include power (normally only a fraction of a horsepower) to overcome thrust when advancing the bit.

Least energy is consumed boring a hole if bits cut thick chips. The net cutting energy (E), consumed in boring a hole can be calculated in kilowatthours from the following:

$$E = \frac{0.746Pd}{60f} = \frac{(12.43)(10^{-3})Pd}{tnN} \quad (19-49)$$

Specific boring energy (E_s), an expression of efficiency of the cutting action, is defined as follows:

$$E_s = \frac{\text{Net cutting energy}}{\text{Volume removed}} = \frac{\text{Kilowatthours}}{\text{Cubic inches}} \quad (19-50)$$

Since the volume of wood removed in boring a hole of depth d is

$$V = \frac{d\pi D^2}{4} \quad (19-51)$$

$$\text{then: } E_s = \frac{15.83(10^{-3})P}{fD^2} = \frac{(15.83)(10^{-3})P}{tnND^2} \quad (19-52)$$

BORING DIRECTION AND CHIP FORMATION

Holes are usually bored in one of the three primary directions illustrated in figure 19-109. For southern pine, torque and thrust requirements do not differ significantly for holes bored in the tangential and radial directions; both directions may therefore be regarded as boring across the grain (Woodson and McMillin⁵). Generally, torque is greater and thrust is less when boring along the grain (longitudinal direction) than when boring across the grain. The tabulation below compares the effect of direction for a double-spur, double-lip, single-twist, solid-center

⁵ Woodson, G. E., and McMillin, C. W. Machine boring of southern pine wood. III. Effect of six variables on torque, thrust, and hole quality. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report—Phase III FS-SO-3201-2.30 dated December 30, 1971.

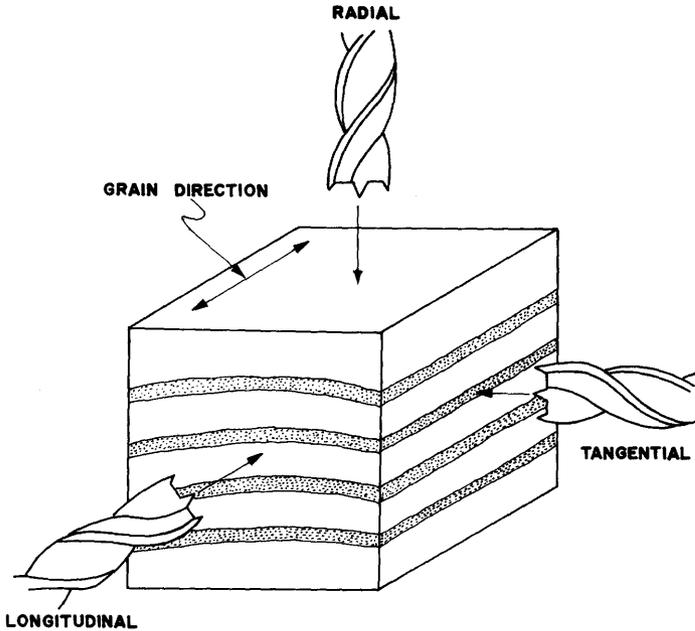


Figure 19-109.—Designation of the three main boring directions: feed longitudinal along the grain, and feed across the grain in radial or tangential direction. (Drawing after Woodson and McMillin⁵.)

bit boring dry southern pine (*Pinus* spp.) at 2,400 r.p.m. and removing 0.020-inch thick chips.

Bit diameter	Along the grain		Across the grain	
	Torque	Thrust	Torque	Thrust
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Inch-pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Inch-Pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
0.50	16.6	73.5	13.7	106.3
1.00	56.6	137.3	37.7	183.1
1.25	71.3	161.4	53.6	197.5

Woodson and McMillin⁵ found that thrust is related to the force required to advance the spurs and brad into the work and, to a lesser extent, to the normal force component exerted by the cutting lips. When drilling across the grain, the spurs and brad stress fibers perpendicular to their long axes. When drilling along the grain, fibers are separated parallel to their long axes. Since fibers are stronger when stressed in a direction perpendicular to their axes, greater thrust forces would be expected when drilling across the grain than when drilling along the grain.

Torque is primarily related to the parallel tool force component of the lips and the spurs and brad. When drilling along the grain, the lips sever tracheids perpendicular to their long axes. In contrast, tracheids are cut in a plane parallel to their axes when drilling across the grain. Since tracheids are stronger when stressed in the perpendicular direction, greater

torque would be expected when boring along the grain than when boring across the grain.

When drilling in the longitudinal direction, the action of the lips (the cutting edges generating chips) approximates orthogonal cutting across the grain. For across the grain boring, cutting continuously alternates from the veneer cutting direction to the planing direction. (See sec. 19-2 for a discussion of the basic modes of chip formation in orthogonal cutting.)

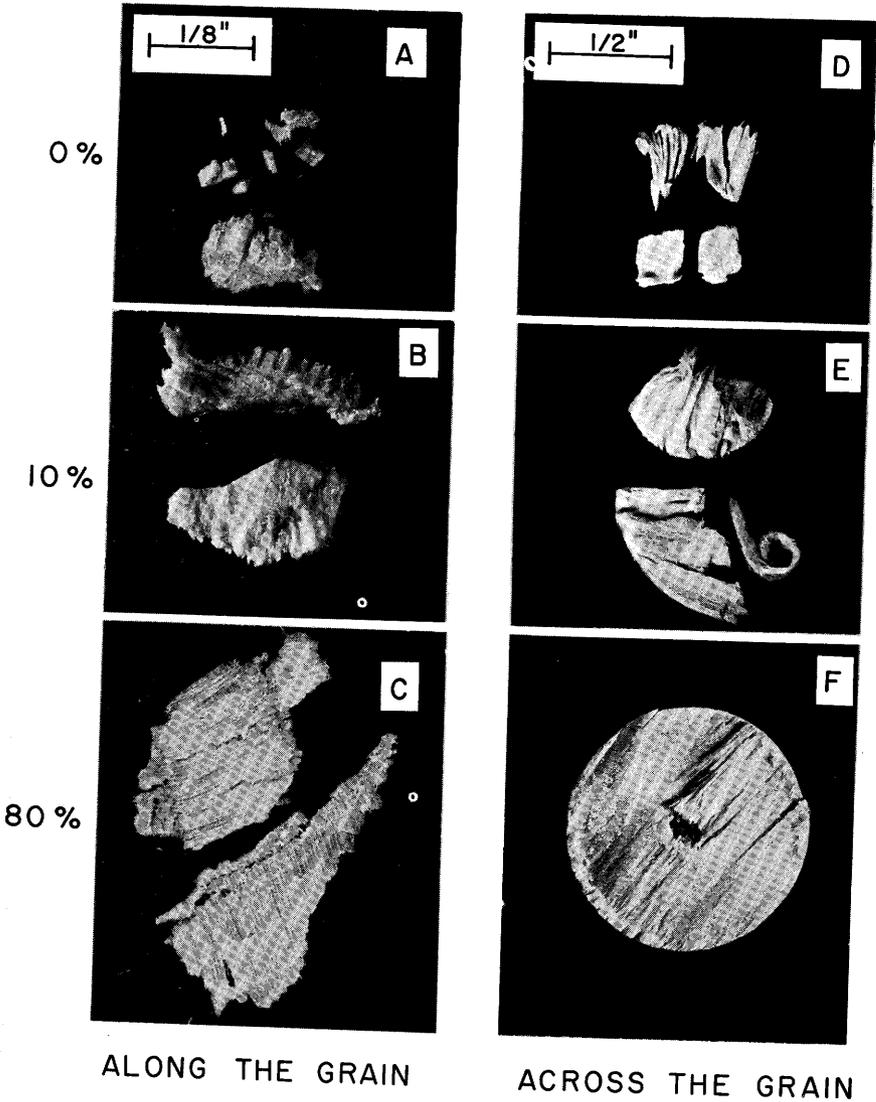


Figure 19-110.—Typical chips formed when boring in two directions at three moisture contents. The scale shown in A is applicable to B and C as well; the scale shown in D is applicable to E and F. (Photo from Woodson and McMillin⁸.)

F-520988

Woodson and McMillin⁶ have described some general trends in chip formation with changes in wood moisture content when boring with a 1-inch diameter spur machine bit at 2,400 r.p.m. and removing 0.020-inch-thick chips. Typical chips are illustrated in fig. 19-110.

For along the grain boring, at 0- and 10-percent moisture content, chips similar to McKenzie Type II are generated (fig. 19-110A and 19-110B). Chips formed above the cutting plane (upper portions of the figures) were sheared into numerous, small subchips at 0-percent moisture; they were longer and more continuous at 10 percent. Chips formed below the cutting plane (lower portions of the figures) were somewhat smaller for holes bored at 0-percent moisture than for holes bored at 10 percent. At 80-percent moisture, typical McKenzie Type I chips were formed (fig. 19-110C). Although shear failures were present, most particles remained relatively intact. (For definition of McKenzie Type I and Type II chips see figures 19-16 and 19-17.)

For across the grain boring at 0- and 10-percent moisture content, Franz Type I chips were generally formed when the lips were cutting in the planing direction (lower portion of fig. 19-110D and 19-110E). The chips generated at 0-percent moisture were considerably shorter and less curled than those produced at 10 percent. At 80-percent moisture, chips similar to Franz Type II were most frequently formed (fig. 19-110F). (For definition of Franz Type I and Type II chips see figures 19-3 and 19-5.)

Cantilever beam type failures were generally observed when boring at 0- and 10-percent moisture content with lips cutting in the veneer direction (upper portion of fig. 19-110D and 19-110E). Failure occurred closer to the cutting edge for wood at 0-percent moisture than for wood at 10-percent moisture. At 80-percent moisture, chips appeared to form by failure in compression tearing (fig. 19-110F). (For definition of compression tearing see figure 19-12.)

FACTORS AFFECTING TORQUE AND THRUST

Woodson and McMillin⁵ examined in detail the effects of seven variables on torque and thrust when boring 3½-inch deep holes in southern pine (*Pinus* spp). Variables in their factorial experimental design were:

Bit diameter—0.50-inch; 1.00-inch; 1.25-inch.

Spindle speed—1,200 r.p.m.; 2,400 r.p.m.; 3,600 r.p.m.

Chip thickness—0.010-inch; 0.020-inch; 0.030-inch.

Wood specific gravity (ovendry weight and volume at 10.4-percent moisture content)—Less than 0.52 (avg. 0.48); more than 0.55 (avg. 0.60).

Moisture content—Dry (avg. 10.4 percent); wet (avg. 73 percent).

Boring direction—Tangential; radial; longitudinal.

Depth of hole—1-inch; 2-inch; 3-inch.

⁶ Woodson, G. E., and McMillin, C. W. Machine boring of southern pine wood. I. Effect of moisture content on tool forces and chip formation in machine boring. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report—Phase I FS-SO-3201-2.30 dated October 30, 1971.

TABLE 19-39.—Torque demand for four bit types when boring along the grain¹

Bit type and diameter (inches)	Chip thickness (inches)		
	0.010	0.020	0.030
	----- Inch-pounds -----		
Spur machine bit			
0.50-----	9.1 (11.8)	14.1 (16.6)	19.1 (22.9)
1.00-----	27.9 (36.8)	40.5 (52.7)	50.8 (64.9)
1.25-----	47.5 (65.1)	64.3 (92.2)	81.8 (112.3)
Double-spur, double-twist			
0.50-----	9.2 (13.0)	11.8 (14.2)	14.2 (18.7)
1.00-----	35.1 (44.8)	44.0 (53.4)	52.7 (70.7)
1.25-----	44.1 (60.0)	67.5 (85.7)	73.6 (103.0)
Flat-cut, double-twist			
0.50-----	7.5 (10.4)	11.7 (14.6)	16.5 (21.0)
1.00-----	22.7 (31.2)	40.1 (45.7)	44.1 (57.2)
1.25-----	34.4 (46.4)	51.0 (66.7)	55.3 (75.1)
Double-spur, single-twist, solid-center			
0.50-----	9.2 (14.9)	13.2 (20.0)	20.3 (28.5)
1.00-----	31.6 (43.8)	45.2 (61.8)	54.5 (70.2)
1.25-----	45.6 (63.0)	63.0 (83.4)	79.6 (103.1)

¹ The first number in each entry is the torque for wood of low specific gravity (avg. 0.48); the number following in parentheses is the torque for wood of high specific gravity (avg. 0.60).

Four types of bits were evaluated: spur machine bit; double-spur, double-twist; flat-cut, double-twist; and double-spur, single-twist, solid-center. Schematic drawings are provided in fig. 19-108; geometrical specifications (based on a 33 $\frac{1}{3}$ -percent sample of the bits used) are given in table 19-38.

Boring along the grain.—When boring along the grain (longitudinal direction) torque was primarily correlated with bit diameter, wood specific gravity and chip thickness; it did not vary with spindle speed when the thickness of chips was held constant. Table 19-39 compares torque demand for each bit type when the data were averaged over all levels of depth, moisture content, and spindle speed. From the table, torque was a positive curvilinear function of diameter for all chip thicknesses and specific gravities. For a given bit diameter and wood density, torque increased with increasing chip thickness; the slope of the relationship between torque and chip thickness increased with increasing diameter. For a given diameter and chip thickness, torque was greater when boring wood of high density than when boring wood of low density. The magnitude of the difference increased with increasing diameter.

For 0.50-inch diameter bits, torques were essentially the same for all types. However, with 1.00- and 1.25-inch bits, the flat-cut, double-twist bit required less torque than did the other types.

With the exception of the double-spur, single-twist, solid-center bit, torque increased somewhat with increasing depth when holes were bored in wet wood with 0.50-inch diameter bits. Torque was unrelated to depth for the 1.00- and 1.25-inch diameter bits. Chips formed in dry wood are fragmented into small particles while those formed in wet wood remain relatively intact (fig. 19-110). When boring wet wood, it is probable that the increase in torque with increasing depth is associated with difficulty in exhausting such intact chips from deep holes.

In some cases, wet wood required less torque than did dry wood, although generally the effect of moisture content was slight for holes bored along the grain (Woodson and McMillin^{5,6}).

Table 19-40 summarizes the results for thrust along the grain; the values shown are averages for all levels of depth, chip thickness and spindle speed. For most bits, the effect of chip thickness was small. Thrust was unrelated to spindle speed.

From the table, thrust increased rapidly with increasing diameter for all types except the flat-cut, double-twist bit. For a given diameter and moisture content, thrust was less when boring wood of low density than when boring wood of high density. For a given diameter and density, thrust was less for wet wood than for dry wood.

TABLE 19-40.—*Thrust requirements for four bit types when boring along the grain*¹

Bit type and diameter (inches)	Specific gravity	
	Low (avg. 0.48)	High (avg. 0.60)
	----- Pounds -----	
Spur machine bit		
0.50-----	48.9(40.3)	67.8(49.8)
1.00-----	107.2(71.2)	149.1(79.0)
1.25-----	145.0(105.0)	224.6(133.5)
Double-spur, double-twist		
0.50-----	48.5(31.3)	62.3(44.6)
1.00-----	106.0(82.1)	148.7(108.8)
1.25-----	138.8(100.6)	199.7(133.6)
Flat-cut, double-twist		
0.50-----	28.5(24.7)	49.9(25.6)
1.00-----	44.0(38.8)	62.3(35.7)
1.25-----	43.0(30.2)	56.7(33.3)
Double-spur, single-twist, solid-center		
0.50-----	60.2(47.8)	91.9(70.9)
1.00-----	108.2(81.5)	150.2(105.3)
1.25-----	124.4(96.8)	179.5(128.6)

¹ The first number in each entry is the thrust for dry wood (avg. 10.4-percent moisture content); the number following in parentheses is the thrust for wet wood (avg. 72.5-percent moisture content).

With the flat-cut bit, thrust did not meaningfully differ with diameter; the average was 39.4 pounds. Thrust was less when boring wet wood (avg. 31.4 pounds) than when boring dry wood (avg. 47.4 pounds). It was also less for wood of low gravity (avg. 34.8 pounds) than for wood of high gravity (avg. 43.9 pounds).

In general, thrust also decreased with increasing depth of hole although the effect was slight. It is probable that frictional forces develop between the surface of the hole and the severed chips. These forces exert a component in a direction which lifts the workpiece. The lifting effect would be greater in deep holes since the total area in contact increases with increasing depth.

Of the four types of bits studied, the flat-cut bit required least thrust. Since this bit does not have outlining spurs, the result was expected.

Boring across the grain.—Woodson and McMillin's⁵ factorial experiment revealed that torque and thrust requirements do not differ between the tangential and radial boring directions; therefore, their data for the two directions were pooled and regarded as boring across the grain. As when boring along the grain, they found that torque did not differ with spindle speed for chips of constant thickness. Torque demand did vary with bit diameter, chip thickness, moisture content and specific gravity. Their results are summarized in table 19-41.

From the table, torque increased with increasing diameter for all chip thicknesses, specific gravities, and moisture contents (except there was no significant difference in torque between the 1.00- and 1.25-inch diameter double-spur, double-twist bits when removing 0.010-inch-thick chips in wet wood). Torque increased with increasing chip thickness when boring wet or dry wood of all specific gravities. For a given diameter, chip thickness and moisture content, torque was greater when boring wood of high density than when boring wood of low density.

The variation in torque with changes in moisture content were less consistent. For the spur machine bit, torque was greater for wet than for dry wood when boring with the 0.50-inch diameter bit. It is probable that the intact chips formed when boring wet wood clogged the bit flutes. With the 1.00- and 1.25-inch bits, the trend reversed and torque was less for wet than for dry wood. For the double-spur, double-twist, and the double-spur, single-twist, solid-center bits, torque was less for wet than for dry wood. The effect of moisture was small and inconsistent when holes were bored with the flat-cut machine bit.

While not shown in table 19-41, torque also increased with increasing depth for all 0.50-inch diameter bits; the effect was greatest for holes bored in dense dry wood. For most combinations tested, torque was least when holes were bored with the flat-cut machine bit.

Values for thrust when boring across the grain are summarized in table 19-42. The values are arrayed by combinations of diameter, chip thickness, moisture content, and specific gravity.

TABLE 19-41.—Torque demand for four bit types when boring across the grain¹

Bit type and diameter (inches)	Chip thickness (inches)					
	0.010		0.020		0.030	
	Dry	Wet	Dry	Wet	Dry	Wet
	----- Inch-pounds -----					
Spur machine bit						
0.50-----	8.0(10.6)	11.6 (9.7)	11.3(15.0)	14.9(19.2)	15.1(19.8)	19.2(26.2)
1.00-----	22.3(28.7)	18.3(20.0)	30.3(38.1)	24.6(31.6)	38.3(45.8)	33.5(38.6)
1.25-----	34.7(41.5)	31.6(37.1)	52.4(64.0)	47.2(55.4)	62.4(78.8)	57.7(71.5)
Double-spur, double-twist						
0.50-----	12.4(20.6)	12.8(15.5)	19.1(26.2)	13.6(20.0)	21.7(30.0)	16.5(23.4)
1.00-----	28.7(34.0)	29.2(33.0)	34.0(41.0)	33.3(36.8)	41.9(54.2)	36.3(45.0)
1.25-----	34.7(42.2)	28.7(33.4)	45.7(56.1)	37.6(44.1)	56.3(68.4)	44.9(53.7)
Flat-cut, double-twist						
0.50-----	13.1(19.3)	13.0(14.8)	14.2(22.2)	18.6(19.1)	17.1(24.3)	21.0(24.3)
1.00-----	16.0(20.2)	21.6(24.6)	25.2(32.6)	28.0(34.4)	32.7(39.4)	34.7(42.2)
1.25-----	24.8(29.6)	25.9(29.0)	32.0(39.4)	33.8(40.6)	42.7(47.7)	42.8(48.5)
Double-spur, single-twist, solid-center						
0.50-----	9.5(12.9)	6.7 (7.5)	12.8(15.8)	9.9(11.4)	14.5(19.1)	12.8(14.9)
1.00-----	22.3(29.8)	20.7(23.8)	32.8(42.5)	28.3(36.1)	40.1(49.7)	32.9(38.7)
1.25-----	36.7(41.3)	29.1(34.9)	48.0(59.2)	38.0(45.4)	56.5(70.5)	46.4(53.3)

¹ The first number in each entry is the torque for wood of low specific gravity (avg. 0.48); the number following in parentheses is the torque for wood of high specific gravity (avg. 0.60). The moisture content of dry wood was 10.4 percent; for wet wood moisture content averaged 72.5 percent.

TABLE 19-42.—*Thrust requirements when boring across the grain*¹

Bit type and diameter (inches)	Chip thickness (inches)					
	.010		.020		.030	
	Dry	Wet	Dry	Wet	Dry	Wet
----- Pounds -----						
Spur machine bit						
0.50-----	52.9 (78.4)	46.3 (50.2)	65.1 (100.1)	55.5 (82.2)	75.7 (112.7)	61.5 (96.4)
1.00-----	109.5 (175.1)	72.0 (88.7)	125.2 (183.0)	76.1 (111.9)	151.2 (206.6)	96.7 (132.5)
1.25-----	141.0 (193.0)	92.7 (125.3)	195.7 (274.4)	118.5 (164.6)	209.2 (297.3)	128.2 (194.0)
Double-spur, double-twist						
0.50-----	79.4 (118.8)	59.2 (76.2)	109.2 (150.7)	58.3 (102.0)	117.4 (169.2)	61.1 (105.7)
1.00-----	105.0 (163.0)	75.0 (94.7)	136.3 (211.8)	85.4 (128.8)	170.6 (249.7)	99.2 (149.5)
1.25-----	145.2 (205.6)	89.1 (122.3)	181.0 (261.9)	110.0 (154.6)	215.0 (307.2)	131.1 (174.8)
Flat-cut, double-twist						
0.50-----	56.4 (90.6)	30.3 (43.2)	53.2 (88.9)	34.6 (48.9)	50.9 (90.9)	32.3 (52.2)
1.00-----	41.3 (62.4)	33.1 (44.2)	67.9 (93.0)	33.0 (48.0)	83.0 (110.6)	41.5 (64.2)
1.25-----	43.5 (63.5)	26.7 (39.6)	59.6 (85.6)	38.3 (60.3)	74.1 (101.7)	39.5 (54.5)
Double-spur, single-twist, solid-center						
0.50-----	63.9 (87.0)	35.0 (45.9)	78.7 (113.1)	42.8 (62.2)	86.1 (129.3)	55.2 (77.9)
1.00-----	93.4 (143.8)	64.7 (90.9)	137.6 (217.9)	91.2 (137.2)	142.6 (216.7)	86.9 (131.7)
1.25-----	147.5 (185.6)	89.1 (120.4)	176.6 (244.5)	106.6 (144.6)	195.6 (282.9)	122.4 (162.9)

¹ The first number in each entry is the thrust for wood of low specific gravity (avg. 0.48); the number following in parentheses is the thrust for wood of high specific gravity (avg. 0.60). The average moisture content of dry wood was 10.4 percent; the average for wet wood was 72.5 percent.

For all types except the flat-cut machine bit, thrust increased with increasing diameter; the trend was curvilinear. For a given diameter, thrust increased with increasing chip thickness in wet and in dry wood of both densities. For a given diameter and chip thickness, thrust was less for holes bored in wet than in dry wood and was less for wood of low than for wood of high specific gravity.

Thrust was unrelated to diameter for holes bored with the flat-cut bit. For the 0.50-inch bit, thrust did not differ with chip thickness, but with the 1.00- and 1.25-inch bits, it increased with increasing thickness. For a given diameter and chip thickness, thrust was less for holes bored in wet than in dry wood and less for wood of low than for wood of high specific gravity.

While not shown in table 19-42, thrust increased slightly with increasing depth for holes bored with the 0.50-inch bits. The trend reversed with the 1.00- and 1.25-inch bits and thrust decreased with increasing depth.

Except for the flat-cut machine bit, Woodson and McMillin's results indicate that, for chips of constant thickness, thrust was somewhat greater when holes were bored at 3,600 r.p.m. than when bored at 1,200 r.p.m. To cut chips of a given thickness, the plunge rate must increase with increasing spindle speed. It is probable that thrust may be greater at high plunge speeds because the strength of wood increases with increasing rate of loading.

HOLE QUALITY

Woodson and McMillin⁵ evaluated the smoothness of holes using a subjective rating scale of 1 to 3. Good quality holes were rated 1, fair quality rated 2, while poor quality holes were rated 3. Thus, holes of better quality had low numerical ratings. Figure 19-111 illustrates representative surfaces for wood bored wet and dry in each direction.

Table 19-43 tabulates the results in terms of smoothness units; the data are arrayed by bit types, boring direction, moisture content and diameter. In those cases where smoothness of the machined surface is of primary importance, the bit or bits having the lowest numerical ratings should be given preference.

Although not shown in table 19-43, Woodson and McMillin's data generally indicated that hole quality improved with decreasing chip thickness. Quality was unaffected by spindle speed (for chips of constant thickness) and wood specific gravity.

BORING DEEP HOLES

Thrust, torque, hole quality, and chip clogging were studied by Woodson and McMillin⁷ when boring 10½-inch-deep holes in southern pine (*Pinus*

⁷ Woodson, G. E., and McMillin, C. W. Machine boring of southern pine wood. II. Boring deep holes. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report—Phase II FS-SO-3201-2.30 dated February 26, 1971. (See also 1972 For. Prod. J. 22(4): 49-53.)

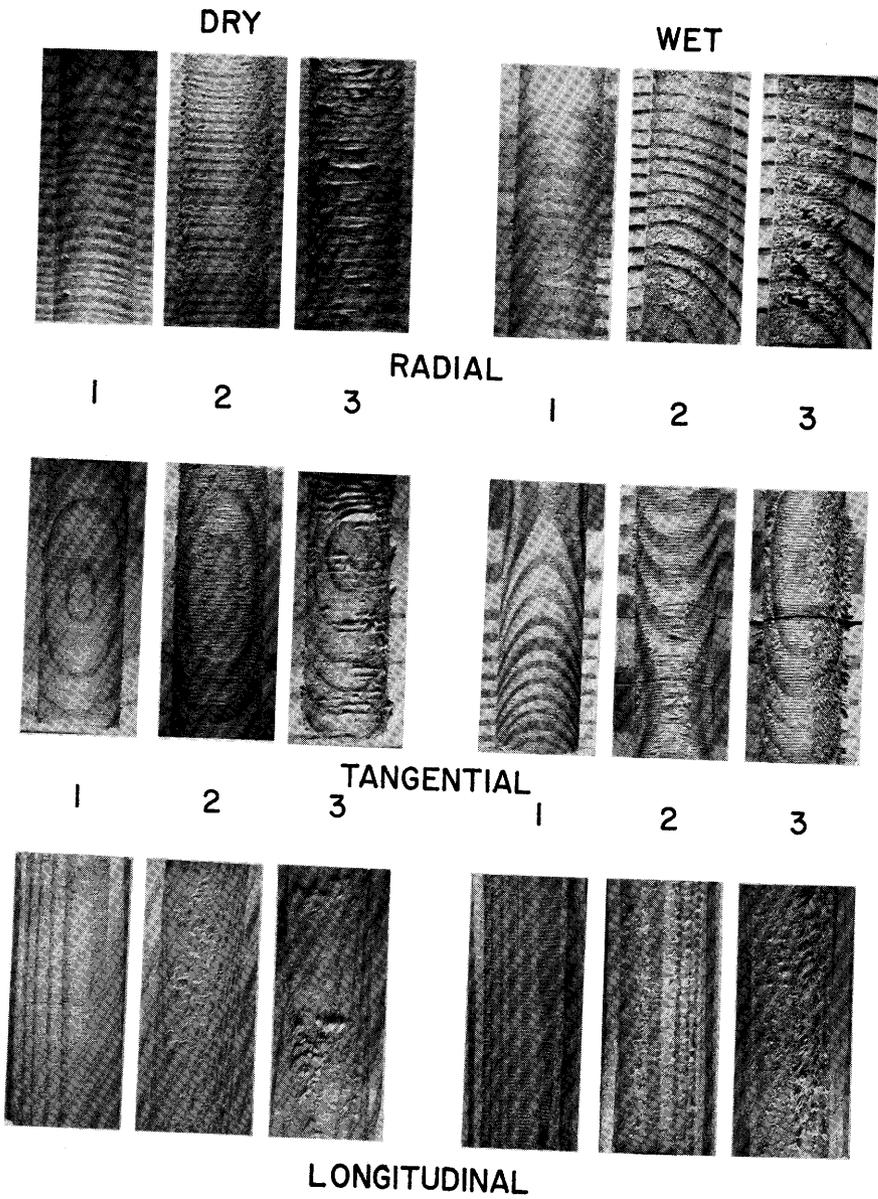


Figure 19-111.—Surface quality ratings (smoothness) for the three principal boring directions in dry (left) and wet (right) wood. (Photo from Woodson and McMillin⁶.)

F-520989

spp.). They used a factorial experimental design with variables as follows:

Bit type—1-inch diameter double-spur, double-twist machine bit with two cutting lips. 1-inch diameter ship auger, with one cutting lip. (See table 19-38 for geometrical specifications and fig. 19-108 for schematic drawings.)

Spindle speed—1,200 r.p.m., 2,400 r.p.m.

Chip thickness—0.010-inch, 0.020-inch, 0.030-inch.

Wood specific gravity—Less than 0.52, More than 0.55 (ovendry weight and volume at 10.4-percent moisture content).

Moisture content—10.4 percent, Saturated.

Direction of boring—Along the grain, Across the grain.

Figure 19-112 illustrates typical clogged chips when boring deep holes with the ship auger (left) and double-spur, double-twist (right) bits. The maximum depth of hole attainable without evidence of chip clogging differed with boring direction—it was unaffected by other study factors. For both bits, clogging occurred at a shallower depth when boring across the grain (avg. 6.5 inches) than when boring along the grain (avg. 10.1 inches). There was no significant difference between bit types for a given boring direction.

When the data were averaged over all study variables for a given boring direction, thrust and torque (average values prior to evidence of

TABLE 19-43.—Results of quality ratings for four bit types¹

Bit type and diameter (inches)	Boring direction		
	Longitudinal	Tangential	Radial
-----Smoothness units ² -----			
Spur machine bit			
0.50-----	1.6(2.5)	1.1(1.4)	1.0(1.6)
1.00-----	1.2(2.1)	1.0(1.0)	1.1(1.1)
1.25-----	1.4(2.2)	1.1(1.1)	1.3(1.2)
Double-spur, double-twist			
0.50-----	1.7(2.3)	1.1(1.4)	1.6(1.6)
1.00-----	1.6(2.6)	1.1(1.2)	1.1(1.3)
1.25-----	1.6(2.2)	1.1(1.1)	1.2(1.3)
Flat-cut, double-twist			
0.50-----	1.6(2.6)	1.5(2.7)	1.6(2.8)
1.00-----	1.7(2.2)	1.3(2.5)	1.5(2.5)
1.25-----	1.5(2.1)	1.3(2.3)	1.5(2.4)
Double-spur, single-twist, solid-center			
0.50-----	2.1(2.9)	1.0(1.1)	1.2(1.3)
1.00-----	1.6(2.6)	1.1(1.4)	1.3(1.4)
1.25-----	1.6(2.6)	1.3(1.4)	1.3(1.4)

¹ The first number in each entry is the quality rating for dry wood (avg. 10.4-percent moisture content); the number following in parentheses is the quality rating for wet wood (avg. 72.5-percent moisture content).

² A quality rating of 1 indicates a smooth hole; a rating of 3 indicates a very rough hole; 2 is intermediate.

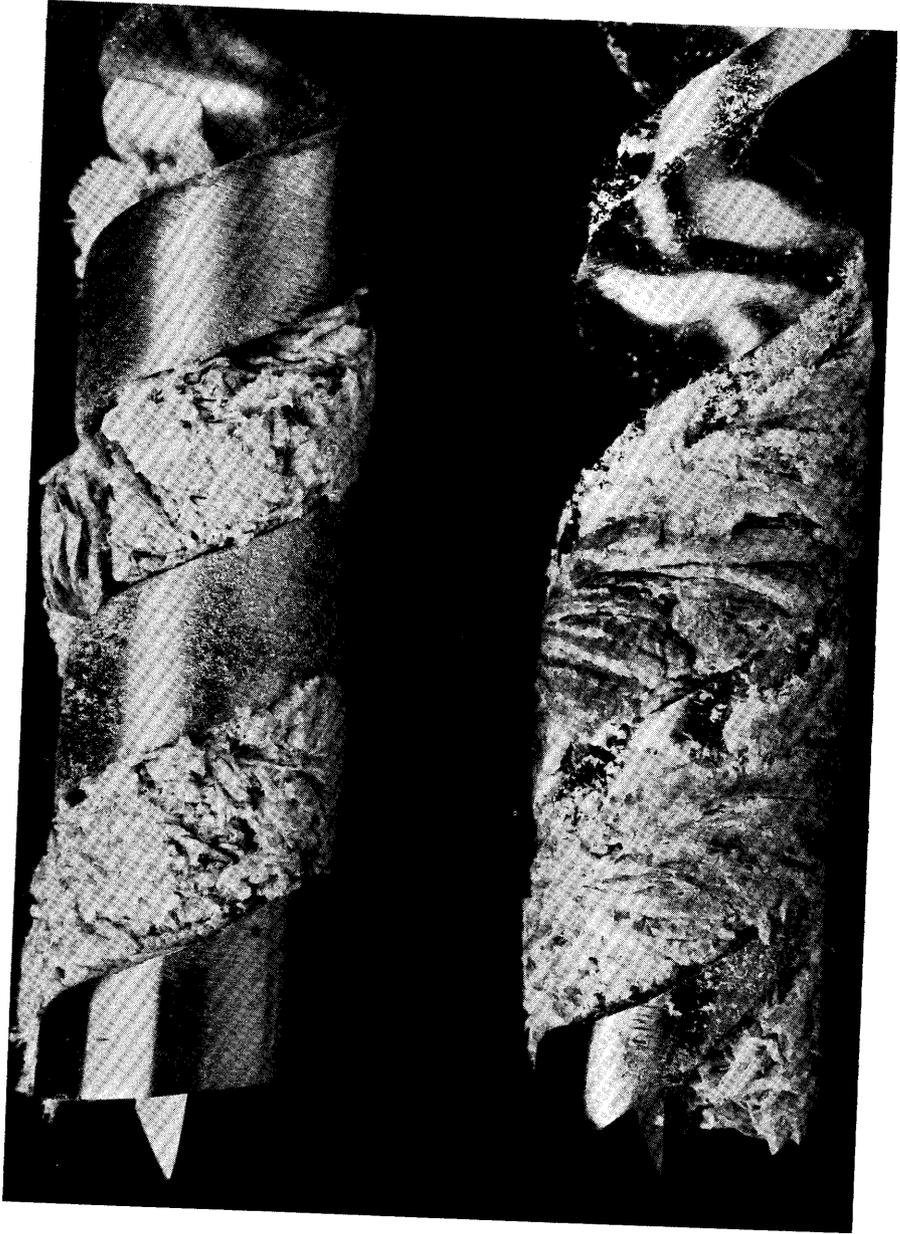


Figure 19-112.—Typical clogged chips when boring deep holes with a ship auger (left) and a double-spur, double-twist bit (right). (Photo from Woodson and McMillin⁷.)

F-520990

chip clogging) were substantially lower when boring with the ship auger than when boring with the double-spur, double-twist machine bit. Under all conditions, plunge speed of the single-lip ship auger was half that of the double-lip machine bit.

Bit type	Along the grain		Across the grain	
	Torque	Thrust	Torque	Thrust
	<i>Inch-pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Inch-pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
Double-spur, double-twist bit-----	67.1	132.9	50.4	157.8
Ship auger-----	39.9	61.1	29.0	38.6

Generally, torque and thrust were positively correlated with chip thickness and specific gravity for both types of bits studied. Neither torque nor thrust differed with spindle speed when chip thickness was held constant. When boring in either direction with the double-spur, double-twist machine bit, wet wood required less thrust than did dry wood.

Although the ship auger required less horsepower than the machine bit, it was slightly less efficient; i.e., more energy was required to remove a unit volume of wood with the ship auger than with the machine bit.

For dry wood bored to 10 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch depth along the grain, quality was best when holes were drilled with the ship auger. There was no significant difference between bit types when boring wet wood. When boring across the grain, the double-spur, double-twist machine bit yielded holes of better quality in both wet wood and dry wood than did the ship auger.

19-13 MACHINING WITH HIGH-ENERGY JETS

Exploratory studies have been made (Bryan 1963a) on the cutting of wood with jets of water under a pressure of 35,000 pounds per square inch or more. At this time, the process is not competitive with conventional cutting methods for southern pine.

Development of continuous pumping systems, improved nozzle designs, and incorporation of additives that improve the cohesiveness of the water jet are all contributing to advancement of the technology, however. It is anticipated that in the near future water-jet cutting of certain products—e.g., corrugated board—will be practical and economically competitive with other methods (Franz 1970).

19-14 MACHINING WITH LASERS

Lasers (acronym for light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation) generate photon energy through an internal amplification process in which stimulated emission plays a dominant role. They emit a coherent beam of highly collimated monochromatic light that when focused to minimum diameter can produce power densities sufficient to vaporize most materials. Lasers offer a number of advantages over conventional machining processes, as follows:

- No residue (sawdust) is formed.
- Narrow kerf reduces waste.
- Ability to cut complicated profiles.
- No tool wear.
- Produces a smooth surface.
- Little noise.
- No reaction force exerted on the workpiece.

Bryan (1963b) investigated the feasibility of machining wood with a beam of highly collimated monochromatic light emitted from a pulsed ruby laser. Because of the low power output and single pulse nature of this type of laser, cutting was limited to 0.030-inch-diameter holes about $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch deep.

A greater potential for laser cutting was realized with the development of the carbon-dioxide molecular gas laser. The collimated beam from this laser is continuous and output powers in excess of 1,000 watts are possible. The cutting action of the carbon dioxide laser can be further improved by using a co-axial jet of gas, usually air, to assist in removal of vapor and particles from the cut region and cool the top surface (Lunau and Paine 1969; Harry and Lunau 1971). With the gas jet, it is possible to produce deep, uniform cuts with square edges in a variety of materials.

Carbon-dioxide laser profile cutting machines have recently been developed for industrial use (Anonymous 1970ab; Doxey 1970; March 1970). These machines are used to prepare steel-rule die blocks of the type used for cutting and/or creasing paper cartons, gaskets and cloth. In this application, an intricate and accurate pattern of narrow slots is required in $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch plywood (fig. 19-113); steel rules are inserted into the slots. At a cutting speed of 8 inches per minute, laser preparation of

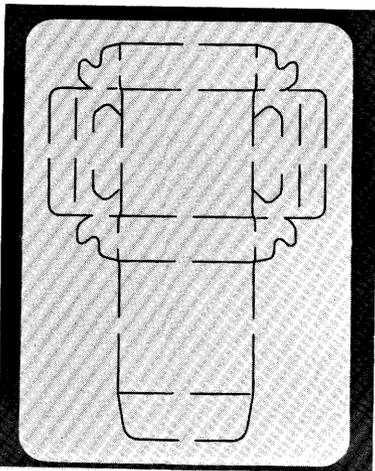


Figure 19-113.—Pattern of laser-cut kerf slots in steel-rule die block of $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch birch plywood. With steel rules inserted in the kerf slots, the die is used to cut and crease stock for a cardboard box. The pattern measures about 7 inches in length; the kerf, which penetrates through the block, measures about 0.028 inch wide. (Photo from British Oxygen Co., Ltd., London, England.)

the die blocks is reported to be 10 times faster than conventional methods.

McMillin and Harry (1971) demonstrated that southern pine lumber can be cut with a carbon-dioxide laser and explored factors which affect the maximum rate of cutting. The laser used contained a mixture of carbon dioxide, nitrogen and helium and emitted radiation at a wavelength of $10.6 \mu\text{m}$. The beam emerged horizontally from the laser tube and was deflected downwards by a 45 degree mirror (fig. 19-114). It was then focused by a lens which formed the upper sealing surface of an air-jet nozzle. The focused beam passed concentrically down the axis of the nozzle and was at minimum diameter about 2 mm. outside the nozzle. An air-hydraulic, variable speed feed system was used to traverse the workpiece past the focused beam. All cuts were made at 240 watts of output power.

The maximum feed speed at full penetration of the laser beam differed with workpiece thickness, wood specific gravity and moisture content. There was no significant difference in feed speed when cutting in a direction along the grain as compared to cutting across the grain.

As tabulated below, maximum feed speed at which southern pine wood could be cut decreased with increasing workpiece thickness in both wet and dry samples; the trend was curvilinear. For a given thickness, slower feed speeds were required for wet than for dry wood. The magnitude of the difference increased as the thickness of the workpiece decreased.

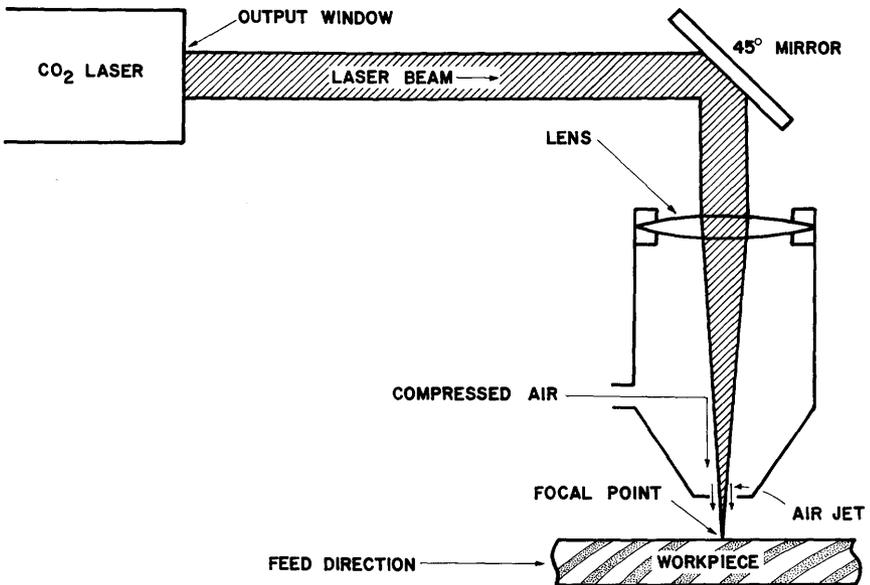


Figure 19-114.—Diagram of experimental air-jet-assisted, carbon-dioxide, laser-cutting device. (Drawing after McMillin and Harry 1971.)

Moisture content (percent)	Workpiece thickness (inches)		
	0.25	0.50	1.00
	----- Inches/minute -----		
Dry (avg. 12-percent)---	111.0	46.4	17.2
Wet (avg. 70-percent)---	87.1	36.1	12.0

When cutting wet wood, maximum feed speed was unrelated to specific gravity. For dry wood, slower speeds were required when cutting wood of high density than when cutting wood of low density. The difference was greatest for the 0.25-inch-thick samples.

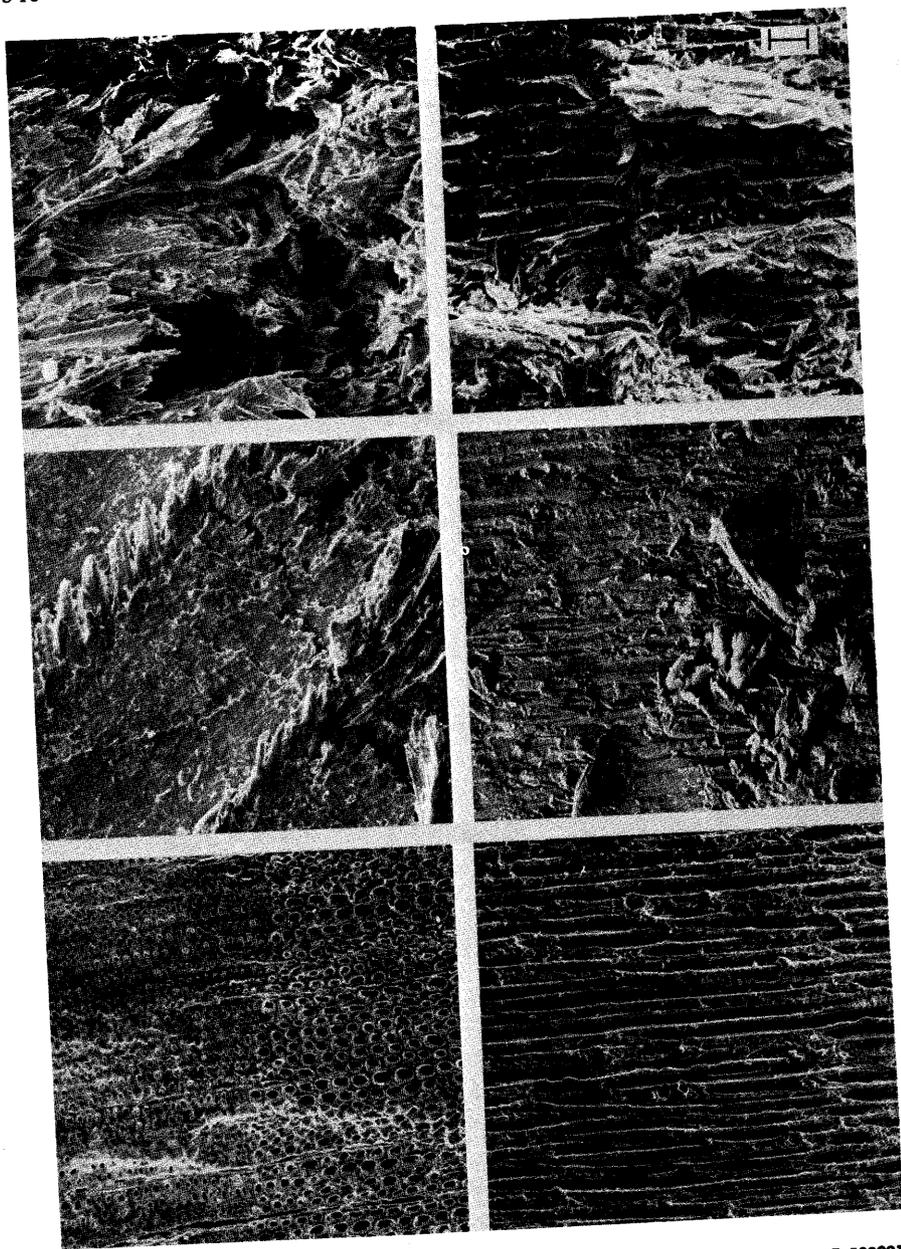
Specific gravity (green volume and ovendry weight)	Workpiece thickness (inches)		
	0.25	0.50	1.00
	----- Inches/minute -----		
Low (avg. 0.45)-----	123.9	49.9	22.0
High (avg. 0.54)-----	98.2	42.9	12.5

The width of the kerf produced by the laser beam is extremely small (avg. 0.012 inch) compared to the kerfs produced by conventional saws. McMillin and Harry's data showed that kerf width was unrelated to cutting direction, moisture content and specific gravity but increased with increasing workpiece thickness. Kerf widths were 0.009, 0.012, and 0.015 inches for 0.25-, 0.50-, and 1.00-inch thick samples respectively.

Wood-based materials and paper products may also be cut with the carbon-dioxide laser. McMillin and Harry provided the following examples:

Material	Thickness	Power	Feed speed
	<i>Inch</i>	<i>Watts</i>	<i>Inches/minute</i>
Southern pine plywood-----	0.50	240	20
Southern pine particleboard_	.50	240	16
Tempered hardboard-----	.25	240	13
Hardboard-----	.25	180	12
Fiber insulation board-----	.50	180	14
Corrugated boxboard-----	.17	180	236
Illustration board-----	.10	180	91
Kraft linerboard-----	.02	180	207

Scanning electron micrographs prepared by McMillin and Harry (1971) show that laser-cut surfaces—while blackened—are far smoother than conventionally cut surfaces (fig. 19-115). On laser-cut surfaces, there is little evident damage to wood structure (fig. 19-116); some carbon deposits, however, are evident on cell walls and in lumen cavities.



F-520991

Figure 19-115.—Scanning electron micrographs of southern pine surfaces cut across the grain (left column) and along the grain (right column) by (from top to bottom) bandsawing, circular sawing and laser cutting. Scale mark shows 0.1 inch. (Photos from McMillin and Harry 1971.)

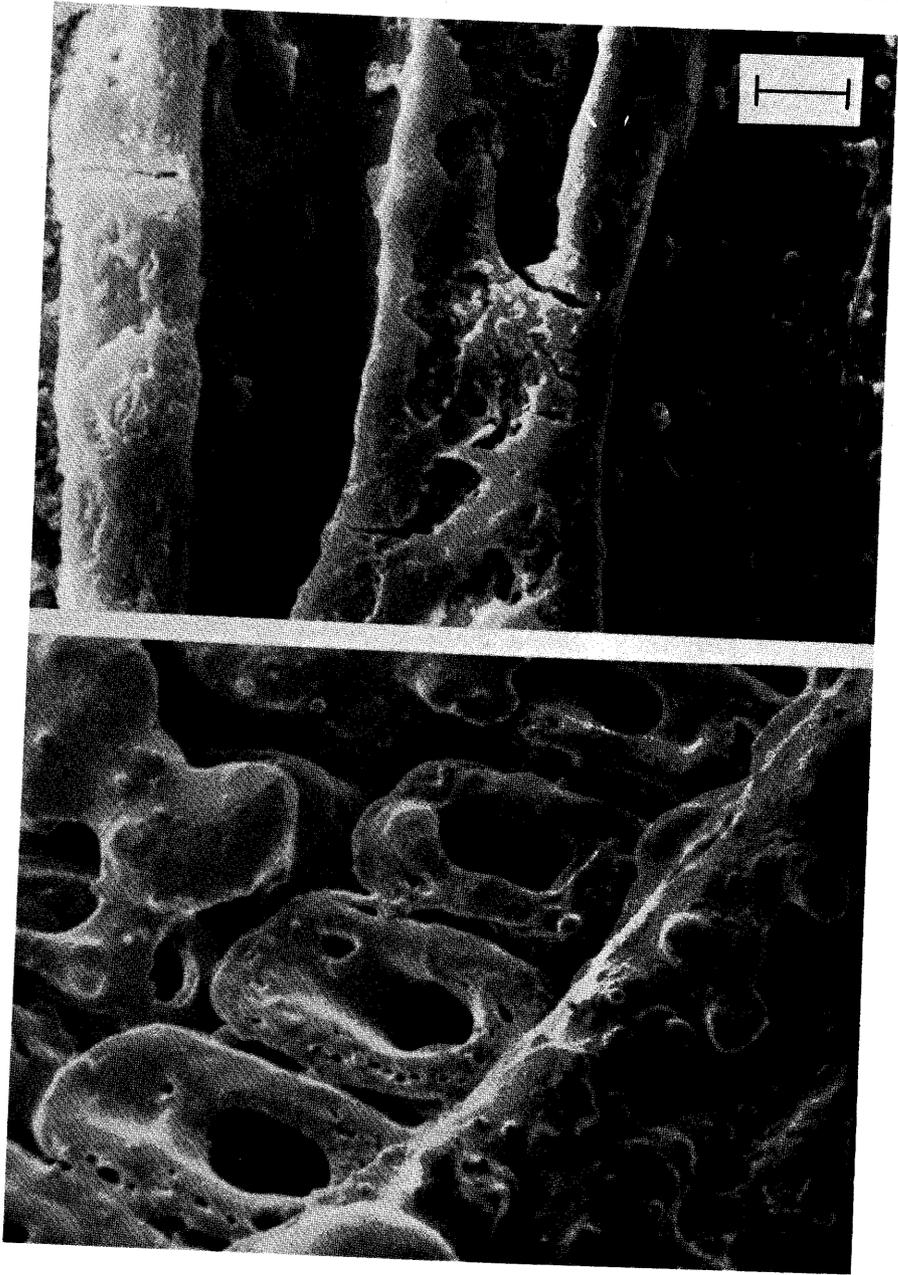


Figure 19-116.—Scanning electron micrographs of southern pine surfaces cut with a carbon dioxide laser along the grain (top) and across the grain (bottom). Scale mark shows 10 μm . (Photos from McMillin and Harry 1971.)

F-520992

19-15 LITERATURE CITED

- Anonymous.
1968. Final tally records 1967 as another year of declining plywood production, but South's share still increasing. *Forest Ind.* 95(5): 13.
- Anonymous.
1970a. Laser die-cutting. Part I. Paperboard Packag. 55(3): 29-31.
- Anonymous.
1970b. Laser die-cutting. Part II. Paperboard Packag. 55(5): 38-41.
- Anderson, W. C., and Kaiser, H. F.
1970. Economic implications of chipping headrigs for milling southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(3): 42-46.
- Andrews, G. W.
1955. Sawing wood with circular headsaws. *Forest Prod. J.* 5: 186-192.
- Aralo, R. A.
1971. Crosscut shearing of roundwood bolts. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. NC-68, 21 pp. N. Cent. Forest Exp. Sta., St. Paul, Minn.
- Blackford, J. M.
1961. Separating bark from wood chips. *Forest Prod. J.* 11: 515-519.
- Blackford, J.
1965. Pulpwood harvesting now and twenty years from now. APA Quart., April 1965, pp. 4-6.
- Bloomquist, P. R.
1966. Southern pine plywood adhesives technology. *Forest Ind.* 93(2): 39-41.
- Borlew, P. B., and Miller, R. L.
1970. Chip thickness: A critical dimension in kraft pulping. *TAPPI* 53: 2107-2111.
- Bridges, R. R.
1971. A quantitative study of some factors affecting the abrasiveness of particleboard. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(11): 39-41.
- Bryan, E. L.
1963a. High energy jets as a new concept in wood machining. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 305-312.
- Bryan, E. L.
1963b. Machining wood with light. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 14.
- Bryan, R. W.
1968. Economic factors begin to mitigate pine plywood boom. *Forest Ind.* 95(1): 46-47.
- Cade, J. C., and Choong, E. T.
1969. Influence of cutting velocity and log diameter on tensile strength of veneer across the grain. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(7): 52-53.
- Clark, F.
1969. High strain band mills. *In Proc. North. Calif. Sect. FPRS*, pp. 2-5. Calpella, Calif.
- Collins, E. H.
1965. Method of and apparatus for kerfless cutting of wood. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,327,747) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Cumming, J. D.
1969. Stresses in band saws. *In Proc. North. Calif. Sect. FPRS*, pp. 21-23. Calpella, Calif.
- Demsky, S.
1967. Merits of the Klear-Kut saw. *Proc., 22nd Annu. Northwest Prod. Clin.*, pp. 33-35. Spokane, Wash.
- Detjen, R. K.
1961. The linebar resaw in the southern pine and hardwood sawmill. *Lumber J.* 65(11): 12-13.
- Dobie, J.
1970. Advantages of log sorting for chipper headrigs. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(1): 19-24.
- Dobie, J., Sturgeon, W. J., and Wright, D. M.
1967. An analysis of the production characteristics of chipper headrigs, scrag mills and log-gang mills. *Dep. Forest. and Rural Develop. Forest Prod. Lab. Inform. Rep. VP-X-21*, 10 pp. Vancouver, Brit. Columbia.
- Doxey, B. C.
1970. Line-following laser system for cutting die board. *Boxboard Containers*, Aug., pp. 50-55. BOC-Murex Welding Res. and Develop. Lab., London.
- DuClos, A.
1967. Thin kerf sawing. *Proc., 22nd Annu. Northwest Prod. Clin.*, pp. 37-42. Spokane, Wash.

- Einspahr, D. W., Benson, M. K., and Peckham, J. R.
1969. Observations on a bark and wood chip separation procedure for aspen. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(7): 33-36.
- Endersby, H. J.
1965. The cutting action of woodworking tools. IUFRO Congr. Proc. 1965, Vol. 3, Sect. 41, 7 pp. Melbourne.
- Erickson, J. E.
1964. An investigation of power requirements for chipping hardwoods under various cutting conditions. *Woodland Sect. Index, Can. Pulp and Pap. Assoc.* 2301 (B-1) Append. B: 4-5.
- Erickson, J. R.
1967. Crosscut shearing of wood. IUFRO Congr. Proc. 1967, Vol. 8, Sect. 31-32, pp. 324-337. Munich.
- Fassnacht, D.
1966. Boards or chips? *South. Lumberman* 193(2417): 243-244.
- Feihl, A. O., and Carroll, M. N.
1969. Rotary cutting veneer with a floating bar. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(10): 28-32.
- Ferguson, J. S.
1968. What you should know about today's coated abrasives. *Ind. Woodworking* 20(6): 22-23, 28.
- Fobes, E. W.
1959. Wood-chipping equipment and materials handling. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 2160, 25 pp.
- Forest Products Research Society.
1959. Wood machining abstracts, 1957-1958. *Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 20 pp.
- Forest Products Research Society.
1960. Wood machining abstracts, 1958-1959. *Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 19 pp.
- Forest Products Research Society.
1961. Wood machining abstracts, 1959-1961. *Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 18 pp.
- Foschi, R. O., and Porter, A. W.
1970. Lateral and edge stability of high-strain band saws. *Can. Dep. Fish. and Forest. Forest Prod. Lab. Inform. Rep.* VP-X-68, 13 pp. Vancouver, B.C.
- Franz, N. C.
1958. An analysis of the wood-cutting process. Ph.D. Thesis. Univ. Mich. Press. Ann Arbor. 152 pp.
- Franz, N. C.
1970. High-energy liquid jet slitting of corrugated board. *TAPPI* 1111-1114.
- Franz, N. C., and Hinken, E. W.
1954. Machining wood with coated abrasives. *J. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 4: 251-254.
- Gambrell, S. C., and Byars, E. F.
1966. Cutting characteristics of chain saw teeth. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(1): 62-71.
- Goodman, W. L.
1964. The history of woodworking tools. 208 pp. London: G. Bell and Sons, Ltd.
- Grant, S. E.
1967. New developments in field manufacture and transportation of wood chips. *TAPPI* 50(5): 96A-98A.
- Gronidal, B. L.
1956. New process barks alder. *Pulp and Pap.* 30(3): 125-126.
- Guttenberg, S., and Fasick, C.
1968. Economics of plywood production in the southern pine region. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(5): 43-47.
- Hallock, H.
1965. Sawing to reduce warp of loblolly pine studs. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap.* FPL-51, 52 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Hanchett, K. S., editor.
1946. The Hanchett saw and knife fitting manual. Ed. 6, 471 pp. Big Rapids, Mich.: Hanchett Manufacturing Co.
- Harry, J. E., and Lunau, F. W.
1971. Electrothermal cutting processes using CO₂ laser. *Inst. Elec. and Electron. Eng. Tech. Conf. on Elec. Process Heating in Ind. Proc.*, pp. 34-40. Milwaukee.
- Hartler, N.
1962. The effect of spout angle as studied in an experimental chipper. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 65(9): 351-362.

- Harvin, R. L., Nolan, W. J., and Brown, W. F.
1952. The barking of turkey oak. *TAPPI* 35(9): 164A-168A.
- Hayashi, D., and Hara, O.
1964. Studies of surface sanding of lauan plywood. *Wood Ind.* 19(9): 16-21.
- Hobbs, L. H., and Thomason, R. E.
1967. Lumber and chip production: A new approach. *N. C. Agr. Ext. Serv. Misc. Pub.* 22, 40 pp.
- Holland, C. J.
1966. The changing face of wood sanding. *Wood and Wood Prod.* 71(4): 34, 36.
- Holzhey, G.
1969. Modern debarkers—their technological and economical aspects. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 27: 81-102.
- Hsc, C. Y.
1968. Gluability of southern pine earlywood and latewood. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(12): 32-36.
- Johnston, J. S.
1967. Investigation of some variables in the crosscutting of small logs by shear blades. *IUFRO Congr. Proc.* 1967, Vol. 8, Sect. 31-32, pp. 338-363. Munich.
- Johnston, J. S.
1968a. An experiment in shear-blade cutting of small logs. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 69(3): 77-82.
- Johnston, J. S.
1968b. Crosscutting trees and logs by shear blades. *Can. Forest Ind.* 88(6): 34-37.
- Johnston, J. S.
1968c. Experimental crosscut shearing of frozen wood. *Proc., Forest Eng. Conf. Amer. Soc. Agr. Eng., ASAE Pub. PROC-368*, pp. 47-49, 55. East Lansing, Mich.
- Johnston, J. S.
1968d. Experiments in cross-cutting wood with shear blades. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(3): 85-89.
- Kaiser, H. F., and Jones, C. A.
1969. Chipping head-rigs can help maintain profits in southern sawmills. *South. Lumberman* 219(2728): 141-142.
- Kempe, C.
1967. [Forces and damage involved in the hydraulic shearing of wood.] *Stud. Forest. Suecica* 55, 38 pp.
- Kintz, A. H.
1969. The role of the top arbor edger in precision thin sawing. *In Proc. North. Calif. Sect. FPRS*, pp. 6-10. Calpella, Calif.
- Kivimaa, E.
1950. Cutting force in woodworking. *State Inst. Tech. Res. Pub.* 18, 101 pp. Helsinki, Finland.
- Kivimaa, E.
1959. Cutting force in frame sawing. *Pap. ja Puu* 40(1): 3-6, 8-16.
- Koch, P.
1948. Planc talk for better lumber. Two parts. I.—*Wood* 3(10): 26, 28, 30; II—3(11): 34, 36, 38, 53.
- Koch, P.
1951. The ABC's of modern planing mill layout. A problem in tooling. *Timberman* 52(6): 56-58, 60, 62, 64, 68, 70-71.
- Koch, P.
1954. An analysis of the lumber planing process. Ph.D. Thesis. Univ. Wash. Seattle. 339 pp. Available on microfilm from Univ. Mich. Ann Arbor.
- Koch, P.
1955. An analysis of the lumber planing process: Part I. *Forest Prod. J.* 5: 255-264.
- Koch, P.
1956. An analysis of the lumber planing process: Part II. *Forest Prod. J.* 6: 393-402.
- Koch, P.
1964a. Square cants from round bolts without slabs or sawdust. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 332-336.
- Koch, P.
1964b. Wood machining processes. 530 pp. N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.
- Koch, P.
1965. Effects of seven variables on properties of southern pine plywood. I. Maximizing wood failure. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 355-361.

- Koch, P.
1967a. Development of the chipping headrig. Rocky Mountain Forest Ind. Conf. Proc. 1967: 135-155. Fort Collins, Colo.
- Koch, P.
1967b. History of wood machining. Wood Sci. and Technol. 1: 180-183.
- Koch, P.
1967c. Too many crooked small logs? Consider a shaping-lathe head-rig! Southern Lumberman 215(2680): 147-149.
- Koch, P.
1968a. Converting southern pine with chipping headrigs. Southern Lumberman 217(2704): 131-138.
- Koch, P.
1968b. Wood machining abstracts, 1966 and 1967. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SO-34, 38 pp. Southern Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Koch, P.
1969. Sharing the tree. South. Lumberman 219(2718): 18.
- Koch, P.
1970. New procurement approach increases pine utilization. Forest Ind. 97(3): 46.
- Koch, P.
1971. Force and work to shear green southern pine logs at slow speed. Forest Prod. J. 21(3): 21-26.
- Koch, P., and McMillin, C. W.
1966. Wood machining review, 1963 through 1965. Part I. Forest Prod. J. 16(9): 76-82, 107-115; Part II. 16(10): 43-48.
- Kollmann, F. F. P., and Côté, W. A., Jr.
1968. Principles of wood science and technology. I. Solid wood. 592 pp. N.Y.: Springer-Verlag New York, Inc.
- Kubler, H.
1960. [Cutting timber with vibrating knives.] Holz Zentralbl. 86: 1605-1606.
- Leney, L.
1960. Mechanism of veneer formation at the cellular level. Mo. Agr. Exp. Sta. Res. Bull. 744, 111 pp.
- Liiri, O.
1960. [Debarking of birch chips.] Paperi ja Puu 42: 293-298.
- Liiri, O.
1961. [Investigations on the debarking of birch chips by the soaking method.] Paperi ja Puu 43: 711-715.
- Lubkin, J. L.
1957. A status report on research in the circular sawing of wood. Cent. Res. Lab. Tech. Rep. CRL-T-12, 193 pp. Amer. Mach. and Foundry Co., Greenwich, Conn.
- Lunau, F. W., and Paine, E. W.
1960. CO₂ laser cutting. Welding and Metal Fabr. 37(1): 9-14.
- Lutz, J. F.
1956. Effect of wood-structure orientation on smoothness of knife-cut veneers. Forest Prod. J. 6: 464-468.
- Lutz, J. F.
1964. How growth rate affects properties of softwood veneer. Forest Prod. J. 14: 97-102.
- Lutz, J. F.
1967. Research at Forest Products Laboratory reveals that heating southern pine bolts improves veneer quality. Plywood and Panel Mag. 7(9): 20-28.
- Lutz, J. F., Duncan, C. G., and Schef-fer, T. C.
1966. Some effects of bacterial action on rotary-cut southern pine veneer. Forest Prod. J. 16(8): 23-28.
- Lutz, J. F., Haskell, H. H., and McAlister, R.
1962. Slicewood—a promising new wood product. Forest Prod. J. 12: 218-227.
- Lutz, J. F., Mergen, A., and Panzer, H.
1967. Effect of moisture content and speed of cut on quality of rotary-cut veneer. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0176, 13 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Lutz, J. F., Mergen, A. F., and Panzer, H. R.
1969. Control of veneer thickness during rotary cutting. Forest Prod. J. 19(12): 21-28.

- Lutz, J. F., and Patzer, R. A.
1966. Effects of horizontal roller-bar openings on quality of rotary-cut southern pine and yellow-poplar veneer. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(10): 15-25.
- McKenzie, W. M.
1961. Fundamental analysis of the wood-cutting process. Dep. Wood Technol. Sch. Natur. Resources. Univ. Mich., Ann Arbor. 151 pp.
- McKenzie, W. M.
1970. Chipping for pulp production. *Aust. Timber J.* 36(4): 21-31.
- McKenzie, W. M., and Cowling, R. L.
1971. A factorial experiment in transverse-plane (90/90) cutting of wood. Part I. Cutting force and edge wear. *Wood Sci.* 3: 204-213.
- McKenzie, W. M., and Franz, N. C.
1964. Basic aspects of inclined or oblique wood cutting. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 555-566.
- McKenzie, W. M., and Hawkins, B. T.
1966. Quality of near longitudinal wood surfaces formed by inclined cutting. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(7): 35-38.
- McIntosh, J. A., and Kerbes, E. L.
1969. Lumber losses in tree shear felling. *Brit. Columbia Lumberman* 53(10): 43-46.
- McMillin, C. W.
1958. The relation of mechanical properties of wood and nosebar pressure in the production of veneer. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 23-32.
- McMillin, C. W.
1970a. Wood machining abstracts, 1968 and 1969. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SO-58, 35 pp. South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- McMillin, C. W., and Harry, J. E.
1971. Laser machining of southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(10): 34-37.
- Macomber, D.
1969. Smooth splitting. Paper presented at Brit. Columbia Planerman's Educ. Assoc. Annu. Meeting. 5 pp. Seattle: Stetson-Ross Machine Company.
- Malcolm, F. B., and Koster, A. L.
1970. Locating maximum stresses in tooth assemblies of inserted-tooth saws. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(10): 34-38.
- Malcolm, F. B., Reineke, L. H., and Hallock, H.
1961. Saw performance and lumber characteristics when producing pulpable southern pine sawdust. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 2210, 37 pp.
- Mansfield, J. H.
1952. Woodworking machinery—history of development from 1852-1952. *Mech. Eng.* 74: 983-995.
- March, B. W.
1970. Laser profiling machine gives high quality cuts in plywood. *Furniture Industry Res. Assoc. Bull.* 8(30): 34-35. Stevenage, Herts., England.
- Miller, R. L., and Rothrock, C. W., Jr.
1963. A history of chip shredding. *TAPPI* 46(7): 174A-178A.
- Nakamura, G.
1966. Studies on wood sanding by belt-sander. II. Industrial test of plywood sanding by wide belt-sander. *Tokyo Univ. Agr. and Technol. Exp. Forest. Bull.* 5, 17 pp.
- Necesany, V.
1965. [Effect of heat and moisture on the properties of the middle lamella.] *Drev. Vyskum* 3: 149-154.
- Nolan, W. J.
1967. Chip shredding—why not investigate further? *Pulp and Pap.* 41(44): 57-58.
- Pahlitzsch, G., and Dziobek, K.
1959. [Investigation concerning belt polishing of wood using a straight-line cutting movement.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 17: 121-134.
- Pahlitzsch, G., and Dziobek, K.
1961. [On the blunting of sanding belts while sanding wood.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 19: 136-149.
- Pahlitzsch, G., and Dziobek, K.
1962. [Contribution to the determination of the surface quality of wood worked by chipping methods.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 20: 125-137.

- Papworth, R. L., and Erickson, J.R.
1966. Power requirements for producing wood chips. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(10): 31-36.
- Penberthy, R. J.
1968. Engineering aspects of saw chain cutting. Proc., Forest Eng. Conf. Amer. Soc. Agr. Eng., ASAE Pub. PROC-368, pp. 44-46. East Lansing, Mich.
- Peters, C. C.
1968. Multiple-flitch method for thick slicing. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(9): 82-83.
- Peters, C. C., Mergen, A. F., and Panzer, H. R.
1969. Effect of cutting speed during thick slicing of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(11): 37-42.
- Plough, I. L.
1962. The use of a vibrated knife to machine superior wood surfaces. M.S. Thesis. Univ. Mich., Ann Arbor. 44 p.
- Porter, A. W.
1970. Some engineering considerations of high-strain band saws. *In Proc. Northwest Wood Prod. Clinic*, pp. 13-32. Spokane, Wash.
- Porter, A.W.
1971. Some engineering considerations of high-strain band saws. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(4): 25-32.
- Porter, A.W., and Sanders, J.L.
1970. A hydrostatic roller bar for veneer lathes and thick slicing studies. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(10): 42-49.
- Prokes, S.
1966. History of woodworking tools. *Drevo* 21(9): 318-320.
- Reynolds, D.D., Soedel, W., and Eckelman, C.
1970. Cutting characteristics and power requirements of chain saws. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(10): 28-34.
- Rogers, H. W.
1948. The wood chipper. *Pap. Ind. and Pap. World* 30: 883-888, 1042-1047.
- Salemme, F. J.
1969. Thin carbide saws in the sawmills. *In Proc. North, Calif. Sect. FPRS*, pp. 10-13. Calpella, Calif.
- Sampson, G. R., and Fasick, C. A.
1970. Operations research application in lumber production. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(5): 12-16.
- St. Laurent, A.
1965. Effect of induced lateral vibration of a saw tooth on the cutting of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 113-116.
- Schlieve, R.
1969. Thin kerf sawing considerations. *In Proc. North. Calif. Sect. FPRS*, pp. 14-18. Calpella, Calif.
- Schmied, J.
1964. [The effect of the size, size nonuniformity, and the shape of chips on the cooking uniformity in pulping.] *Pap. a Celulosa* 19(4): 100-106.
- Seto, K., and Nozaki, K.
1966. On the machining of plywood surface with coated abrasives; the performance of drum sander and drum type wide belt sander. *Hokkaido Forest Prod. Res. Inst. Rep.* 49, 27 pp. Japan.
- Simons, E. N.
1966. The evolution of the saw. Part I. *Wood* 31(9): 33-36; Part II 31(11): 37-40.
- Stevens, S. F.
1966. Care of belts and rolls—keys to good panel sanding. *Ind. Woodworking* 18(11): 24-25, 47.
- Stewart, H. A.
1970. Abrasive vs. knife planing. *Forest. Prod. J.* 20(7): 43-47.
- Thrasher, A.
1969. Mill tour briefing. *In Proc. North. Calif. Sect. FPRS*, p. 21. Calpella, Calif.
- Thunell, B.
1967. History of wood sawmilling. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 1: 174-176.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1955. Raised, loosened, torn, chipped and fuzzy grain in lumber. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 2044, 9 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1956. Veneer cutting and drying properties. Southern pine. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 1766-11, 5pp.

- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1964. Annual report of research at the Forest Products Laboratory. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab., 40 pp.
- Wahlman, M.
1967. Importance of chip thickness in alkaline pulping, and chip thickness analysis. *Pap. ja Puu* 49(3): 107-110.
- Ward, D.
1963. Abrasive planing challenges your knife cutting techniques. *Hitchcock's Wood Working Dig.* 65(11): 29-32.
- Wesner, A. L.
1962. Vac-sink for recovery of pulpwood chips from wood-bark waste. I. *Pulp and Pap.* 36(17): 61.
- Wiklund, M.
1967. Forces and damage in felling and bucking with knife and shear type tools. *Forsk. Skogsarbeten Rep.* 9, 39 pp.
- Wilkins, G. R.
1966. History of circular saws. *Timber Trades J. Annu. Spec. Issue: S/1-S/3, S/27, S/29.*
- Woodson, G. E., and Koch, P.
1970. Tool forces and chip formation in orthogonal cutting of loblolly pine. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap.* SO-52, 25 pp. *South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.*

20

Drying

CONTENTS

	Page
20-1 AIR-DRYING	951
LUMBER	953
<i>One-inch lumber</i>	955
<i>Two-inch lumber</i>	956
TIMBERS	956
<i>Pile design</i>	957
<i>Sapwood vs. heartwood</i>	957
<i>Size of timbers</i>	957
<i>Air-drying curves for timbers</i>	958
POLES	959
CONTROL OF END CHECKS	962
20-2 FORCED-AIR-DRYING	964
LUMBER	964
POLES AND ROUND BOLTS	965
20-3 KILN-DRYING	967
LUMBER	968
<i>Drying</i>	969
<i>Equalizing</i>	973
<i>Conditioning</i>	974
<i>Curves showing moisture content vs. time in kiln</i>	975
<i>Drying defects</i>	976
<i>Degrade</i>	981
TIMBERS	982
POLES AND PILING	985
20-4 HIGH-TEMPERATURE DRYING	988
LUMBER	989
<i>Air velocity</i>	996
<i>Board thickness</i>	1000
<i>Wet-bulb depression</i>	1000
<i>Initial moisture content and specific gravity</i> <i>of wood</i>	1001
<i>Energy required to dry to 10-percent moisture</i> <i>content</i>	1001

<i>Shrinkage</i>	1001
POLES AND TIMBERS	1002
VENEER	1004
<i>Drying rates</i>	1007
FLAKES, PARTICLES, AND FIBERS	1011
<i>Configuration of high-temperature flash dryers</i> ..	1011
<i>Initial moisture content of furnish</i>	1015
<i>Size and shape of particles</i>	1015
<i>Feed system and ambient conditions</i>	1015
<i>Contaminations and discolorations</i>	1015
FIBER MATS	1016
<i>Thick mats</i>	1016
<i>Thin mats</i>	1017
PRESS DRYING	1020
<i>Drying rates</i>	1022
<i>Warp and shrinkage</i>	1022
<i>Resin exudation</i>	1023
DRYING WITH INFRARED ENERGY	1024
20-5 HIGH-FREQUENCY DIELECTRIC HEATING	1025
20-6 CHEMICAL SEASONING	1025
20-7 DRYING IN CONDUCTIVE HEAT TRANSFER	
MEDIA	1027
IMMERSION IN HOT ORGANIC LIQUIDS	1027
VAPOR DRYING	1028
SOLVENT SEASONING	1031
20-8 LITERATURE CITED	1032

Drying

For most uses, wood must first be dried. There are important reasons for drying wood prior to use:

- Because wood shrinks as it loses moisture, it should be dried to the moisture content it will have during use.
- Wood is dried to substantially reduce its shipping weight.
- Drying reduces the likelihood of stain or decay developing during transit, storage, or use.
- Dry wood is less susceptible to damage by insects than wet wood.
- Most strength properties of wood increase as it is dried below a moisture content of about 30 percent.
- Nailed and screwed joints are stronger in seasoned wood.
- Glued wood products perform better when assembled from dry wood.
- Prior drying usually makes treatment of wood with preservatives more successful.
- Dry wood takes finishes better than green wood.
- The electrical resistance of dry wood is much greater than that of wet wood.
- Dry wood is a better thermal insulating material than wet wood.

While it is possible to dry many southern pine products in "cook-book" fashion according to published schedules, some knowledge of wood-water relationships is helpful. A discussion of these relationships is contained in chapter 8 under section headings as follows: (8-1) MOISTURE CONTENT IN LIVING TREES; (8-2) FIBER SATURATION POINT; (8-3) EQUILIBRIUM MOISTURE CONTENT; (8-4) SHRINKING AND SWELLING; (8-5) HEAT OF SORPTION; (8-6) PERMEABILITY; (8-7) MECHANISM OF DRYING. References describing techniques for measuring and computing the moisture content of wood are listed in the opening pages of chapter 8.

Discussion in this chapter (chapter 20) is confined to the methods, schedules, and equipment required to dry various classes of southern pine products.

20-1 AIR-DRYING

Although most southern pine lumber is kiln-dried green from the saw, many timbers and poles, and sizeable amounts of lumber, are air-dried. The process depends upon air circulation within the pile, and is greatly affected by precipitation and the temperature and relative humidity of

outdoor air. Air entering a pile cools because it loses energy as water in the wood is moved and evaporated; vertical air movement—generally downward—is caused by increase in density of the air as it is cooled. Horizontal air movement is induced by this vertical flow. Of course, natural wind currents increase the velocity of horizontal airflow.

Drying conditions in the southern pine region are best from approximately April to October because of the high air temperatures (fig. 20-1). Equilibrium moisture content values are relatively constant at about 15 percent throughout the year. Because of seasonal and local variations in precipitation and climate, the time required to air-dry southern pine of a particular dimension can only be approximated.

Air-drying yards should be located on high, well-drained ground. Air near low ground, swamps, or bodies of water is likely to be damp. Nearby

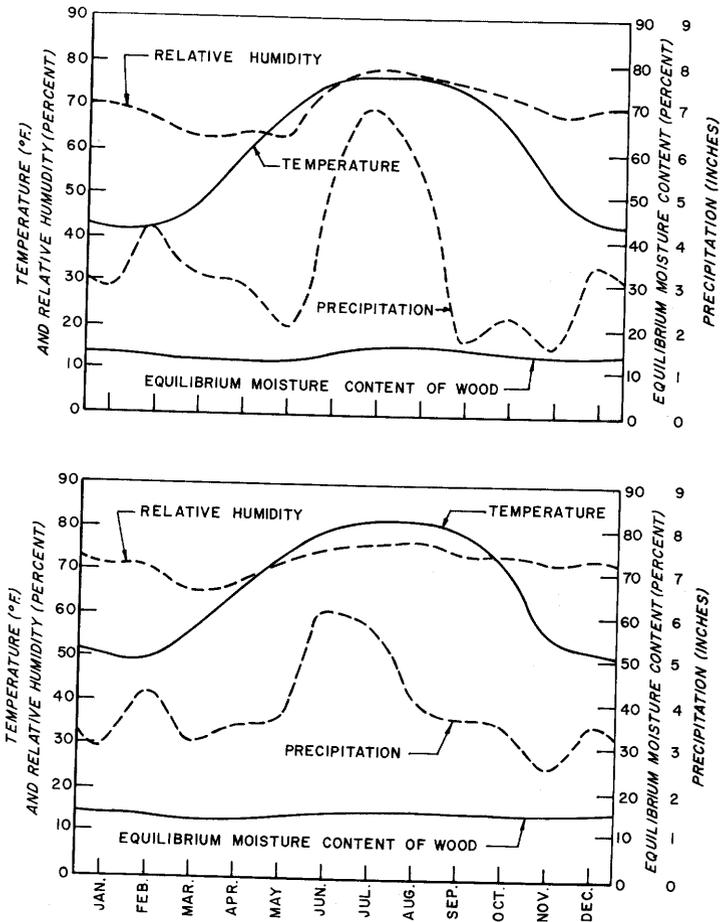


Figure 20-1.—Mean monthly temperatures, relative humidities, precipitation, and equilibrium moisture content of wood. (Top) In North Carolina, South Carolina, Virginia, and West Virginia. (Bottom) In eastern Texas, Louisiana, Mississippi, Georgia, northern Florida, and Arkansas. (Drawings after Peck 1961.)

ZM-85755F, ZM-85752F

trees, buildings, or hills are detrimental if they restrict air movement across the yard site.

A good yard surface is smooth, firm, well-drained, free from vegetation and debris, and preferably, paved. The yard layout for forklift operation includes main alleys, cross alleys, and rows of 6 to 12 piles having lateral spaces between piles and spaces between rows. Figure 20-2 illustrates this terminology (Peck 1961). The width of the main alley is determined by the length of the longest material to be stacked; 30 feet is suitable in yards designed for forklift handling of southern pine lumber. When main alleys are oriented north-south, the sun has best opportunity to dry up rainfall quickly. Alternatively, the main alleys can be lined up with the prevailing wind to stimulate airflow through the stickered packages. Lateral spaces and spaces between rows should be sufficient to permit air circulation. Wide cross alleys increase air circulation, reduce fire hazard, and permit quick identification of blocks of piles for inventory purposes.

The foundations for yard piles (pile bottoms) should be well designed and well placed. They must support the pile at least a foot clear of the yard surface without undue deflection, permit access by the handling equipment, and be durable.

Additional details on yard layout and operation have been given by Rietz (1970).

LUMBER

The yard layout in figure 20-2 is designed for use with package piles, whose essential features are shown in figure 20-3. While the outer two crossbeams on each end of the pile are fixed—at a spacing sufficient to permit the forklift to enter in the center—the center crossbeam is put into place when the pile is built, and removed when it is razed.

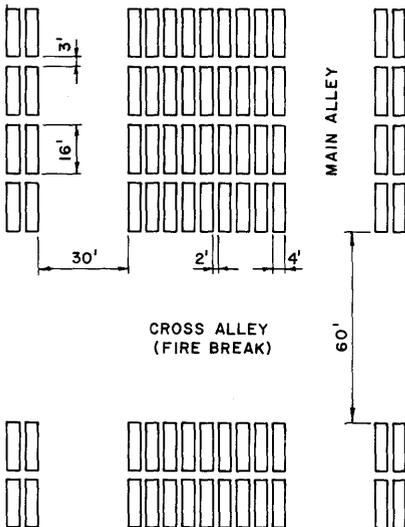


Figure 20-2.—Diagram showing a section of a yard with package piles for forklift handling. (Drawing after Peck 1961.)

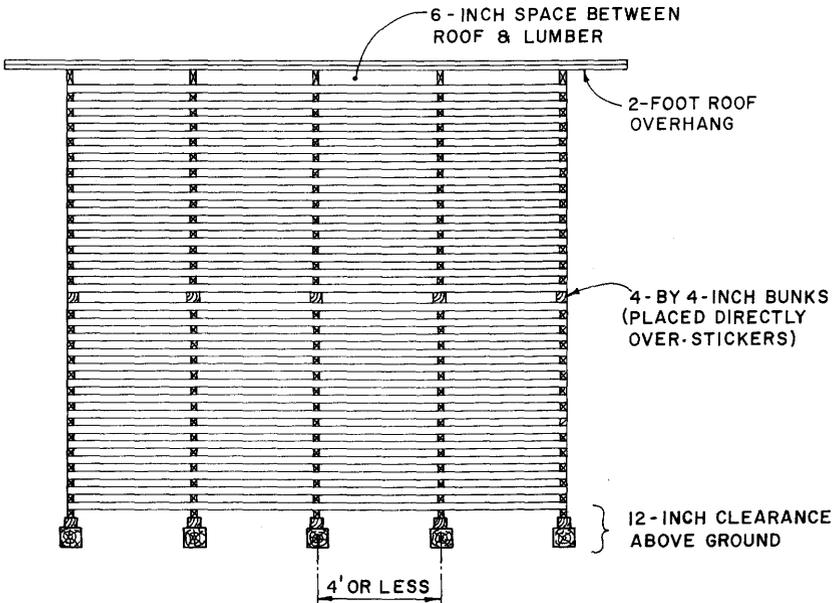


Figure 20-3.—Diagram of essential features of a package pile. Center crossbeam is removable after the pile is razed to permit forklift passage.

Stickers provide columns to support the pile, separate the courses of lumber, and restrain warping by holding the boards in a flat position. They should be perfectly aligned with the crossbeams and in good vertical alignment to prevent sagging of courses and warping of boards. Allowing end stickers to project slightly beyond the ends of the lumber reduces end checks and splits by retarding drying and sheltering the ends from sunshine and rain. Stickers for packages are commonly a uniform $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch thick, approximately $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches wide, and of uniform length (a couple of inches longer than the width of the package); they should be straight. If lumber is thin or prone to warp, it needs more crossbeams and more stickers per course than lumber that is thick and less prone to warp.

The lower levels of a pile tend to dry more slowly than the upper levels. For this reason—and because extreme pile height places excessive weight on foundations and on stickers and boards in the lower part of the pile—package piles are generally limited to 16 or 20 feet in height.

A good pile roof shields the upper courses of lumber, and to a lesser extent the lower part of the pile, from precipitation and direct sunshine. Figure 20-3 illustrates roof construction. Boards may be nailed to a framework of 2x6's and securely covered with roofing paper or corrugated metal. The panel roofs are placed on the top package while it is still on the ground. While the roof for a package pile overhangs the pile at both ends, it can project only on one side—that furthest from the mast of the forklift. One successful operator uses precast concrete pile roofs to provide shelter and reduce warpage; they are put in place with a

forklift. Used on southern pine, the weight of the roof must be sufficiently low to prevent compression of boards or stickers.

One-inch lumber.—Air-drying time for 1-inch southern pine boards varies with season and location. Mathewson¹ made limited observations of 1-inch No. 2 Common longleaf boards hand-stacked for air-drying at Fisher, La. Piles were 6 to 16 feet wide and generally 80 courses high. He tentatively concluded that, during the spring and summer, 2 months is ample drying time for 90 percent of the 1-inch boards to reach 19-percent moisture content or below, with the remaining pieces not exceeding 22 percent. Because of high relative humidities and rains during the late fall and winter, boards in piles razed during these periods may not meet the foregoing specification even though the stock was sufficiently dry during the preceding summer.

Peck² observed that in Malvern, Ark., a summer period longer than 2 months was required for 1-inch shortleaf pine boards to reach an average moisture content below 19 percent (fig. 20-4).

Page and Carter (1957, 1958) studied variations in moisture content of 1-inch southern pine air-dried in seven-package piles in Georgia during the summer of 1956. Among piles dried 31 to 104 days, average moisture content showed no relationship to length of drying time, but piles dried longest were most uniform in moisture content. At the end of the drying period, moisture content averaged 15.5 percent; one-fifth of the boards, however, exceeded 19 percent. Lumber in the top of the piles averaged slightly drier (14.3 percent) but varied more than lumber from the middle (15.8 percent) or from the bottom (16.6 percent).

In the study of Page and Carter (1957), stain was by far the most important degrading factor, accounting for 72 percent of the degrade in package piles. The cause and prevention of stain are discussed in chapter 16 and section 22-1. In brief, a suitable chemical dip within 24 hours of sawing, prompt piling for air-drying, and prevention of rewetting will control stain. Crook, bow, and cup made up the next most important class of defects. These defects can be reduced by sorted-length piling (or box piling so that packages have even ends if length sorting is not practical), by adhering to good piling practices, and by using pile roofs (fig. 20-3). Checking was not a serious problem in the 1-inch lumber. Pile roofs and placement of stickers overlapping board ends reduce degrade from checking.

Peck² summarized the degrade during air-drying of No. 2 Common mixed longleaf and shortleaf pine in hand-stacked flat piles as 1.8 percent of the green value. When this lumber was planed, the loss was an addi-

¹ Mathewson, J. S. 1936. Air seasoning periods for longleaf-pine lumber. Unpublished report, USDA Forest Serv., Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis. Project L257. 9 pp.

² Peck, E. C. [1962]. Air drying of wood. Unpublished report, USDA Forest Serv., Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.

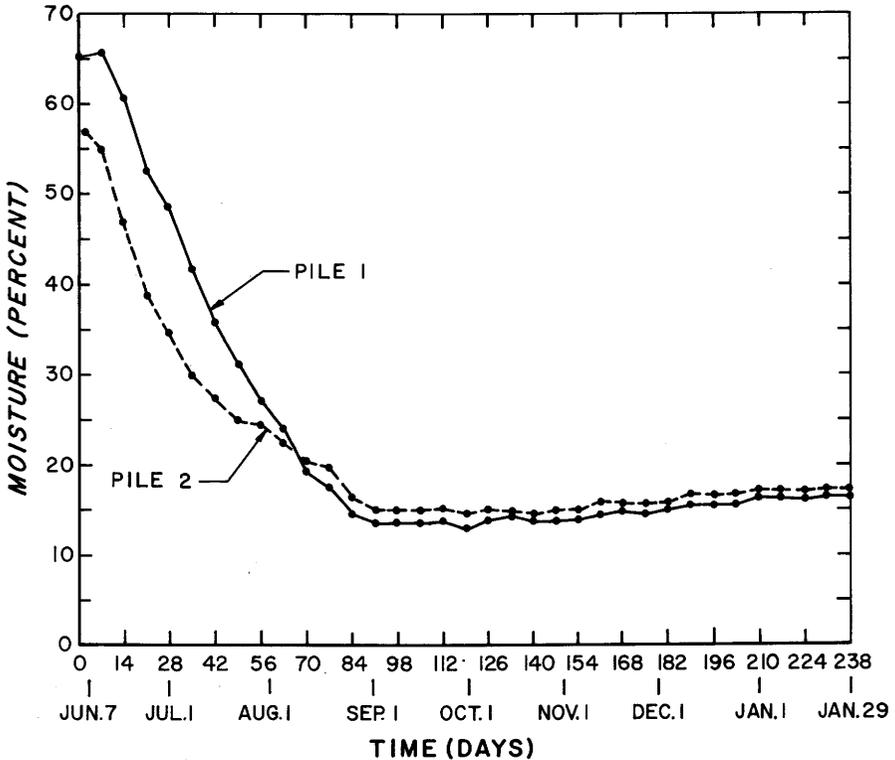


Figure 20-4.—Air-drying curves for 1-inch shortleaf pine in flat piles built by hand at Malvern, Ark. (Drawing after Peck².)

tional 4.6 percent. The loss from rough-green condition to dressed-dry condition was, therefore, equal to 6.4 percent of the rough green value.

Two-inch lumber.—A few data are available on the time required to air-dry 2-inch-thick southern pine. Mathewson¹ tabulated information taken in 1929 and 1930 at Fisher, La. on longleaf lumber hand stacked for air-drying in piles 6 to 16 feet wide and 24 to 42 courses high. Table 20-1 shows that in April, May, June, July and August of 1929, 8/4 lumber was dried to about 14-percent moisture content in 57 to 139 days. In 1929 the precipitation at Fisher, La. was 1.06 inches in July and 0.26 inch in August; e.m.c. during late August was about 10 percent.

In February, March, and April of 1930—when the rainfall was 3.56, 3.69, and 0.43 inches, and the e.m.c. was 16, 15, and 13 percent—8/4 lumber averaged about 19-percent moisture content after 41 to 46 days of drying.

TIMBERS

As with lumber—a well-drained yard location, a good yard surface, and well-elevated, durable pile foundations are required for a good timber drying operation. Some additional factors are also of importance to timber drying.

TABLE 20-1.—*Air-drying data for 2-inch longleaf pine at Fisher, La.*

Size (inches)	Average piling date	Air- seasoning period	Moisture content of pieces sampled		
			Maximum	Minimum	Average
	<i>Month and Year</i>	<i>Days</i>	<i>Percent</i>		
2 by 4.....	April 1929	139	18.4	12.4	13.7
2 by 4.....	May 1929	103	15.4	12.4	13.5
2 by 4.....	June 1929	70	15.6	12.7	13.5
2 by 4.....	June 1929	74	18.4	13.2	14.5
2 by 6.....	April 1929	121	16.1	12.5	14.4
2 by 6.....	June 1929	57	15.2	12.9	13.6
2 by 8.....	May 1929	110	14.6	12.3	13.3
2 by 8.....	February 1929	203	15.5	12.4	14.3
2 by 4.....	February 1930	46	23.4	17.5	19.2
2 by 4.....	March 1930	41	20.7	17.3	18.9
2 by 6.....	February 1930	46	19.2	16.6	18.2
2 by 6.....	February 1930	45	22.5	15.9	18.5
2 by 8.....	February 1930	45	22.1	16.9	19.3
2 by 8.....	March 1930	42	22.6	15.0	20.2

Pile design.—Kempfer (1913) found that isolated piles of crossties permitted rapid seasoning regardless of spacing between ties in the stack, but if the piles were crowded together the influence of pile form became evident. The effect of pile form was demonstrated by air-drying cross-arms. Ten-foot, 3¼- by 4¼-inch arms of loblolly pine sapwood were cut in July and piled openly with 20 arms in each tier; after 60 days' seasoning they reached 30-percent moisture content. Similar crossarms were stacked in the same size piles but with 28 arms per tier; after the same 60-day drying period they still contained 50-percent moisture content (fig. 20-5). Where the climate is especially favorable to rapid decay, a roof to provide protection against rainwetting may be desirable.

Sapwood vs. heartwood.—Figure 20-6 shows the average losses of moisture from crossarms cut in the spring months, of heartwood, sapwood, and heartwood mixed with sapwood. Because of initial differences in moisture content, the heartwood arms weighed 42.6 pounds per cubic foot, the mixed grade 50.3 pounds, and the sapwood 57.9 pounds. All had seasoned to the same weight in a little over a month's time. After further seasoning, the relative position of the sapwood and heartwood arms was reversed, the sapwood being considerably lighter than the heartwood.

Size of timbers.—The size of the piece influences the time required for seasoning because cross-sectional dimensions control the relation of the volume of a timber to its surface area, the total amount of water to be evaporated, and the distance which the moisture on the interior must travel to escape from the surface. This influence, according to Kempfer (1913), is not as great as might be expected. Shortleaf pine 5- by 8-inch

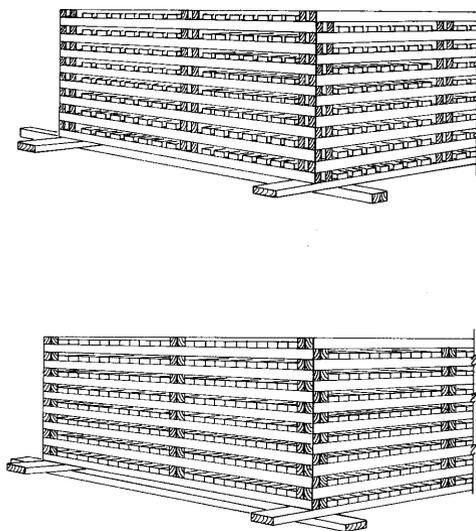
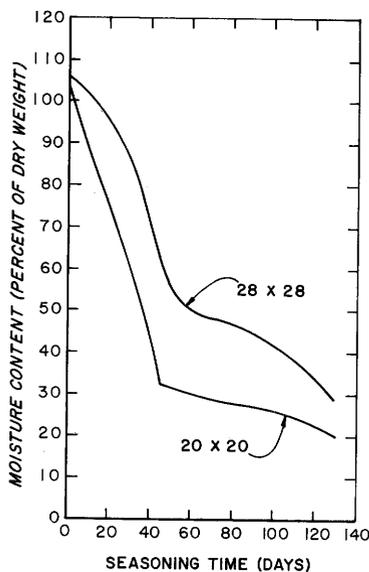


Figure 20-5.—Effect of pile form on drying rate of 10-foot-long, $3\frac{1}{4}$ - by $4\frac{1}{4}$ -inch, sapwood, loblolly pine crossarms air-dried in Norfolk, Va. Crossarms on ends turned on edge so that courses are separated by a 1-inch air gap. (Top right) Piled 20 to each course with all faces exposed to circulation. (Bottom right) Piled 28 to each course leaving no spaces for vertical ventilation. (Left) Comparison of time to dry. (Drawings after Kempfer 1913.)

beams attained only 3 percent lower moisture content after 15 months' seasoning than 8- by 12-inch timbers.

Air-drying curves for timbers.—Crossarms shipped in spring months from Montgomery County, N.C. were air-dried in Norfolk, Va. from an estimated initial moisture content of 80 percent to a final estimated moisture content of 26 percent as shown in figure 20-6 (Kempfer 1913). Arms in piles established in June, July, and August dried more slowly.

Figure 20-7 shows the weight-time relation for 16-foot shortleaf pine timbers measuring 5 by 8 and 8 by 12 inches. The curves show average data for 6 timbers at each size. Initial moisture content averaged 47 percent and final moisture content after 15 months averaged 13 percent (Kempfer 1913).

Air-seasoning rates for 8-foot-long, 6- by 8-inch southern pine cross-ties were reported by Kempfer (1913). Ties cut in January and February were fairly dry at the end of 4 or 5 months; weight loss was about 50 pounds per tie. Ties cut and piled from April to October seasoned so rapidly that there was little loss of weight after the first 2 or 3 months, even when the ties were held over to the following summer. The tests were conducted at Silsbee, Tex., and Ackerman, Miss.

Southern pine heartwood timbers 24 feet long and 12 inches square were air-seasoned to 20-percent moisture content in an open shed in Madison, Wis. in 12 to 15 months. The timbers were piled on 2- by 4-

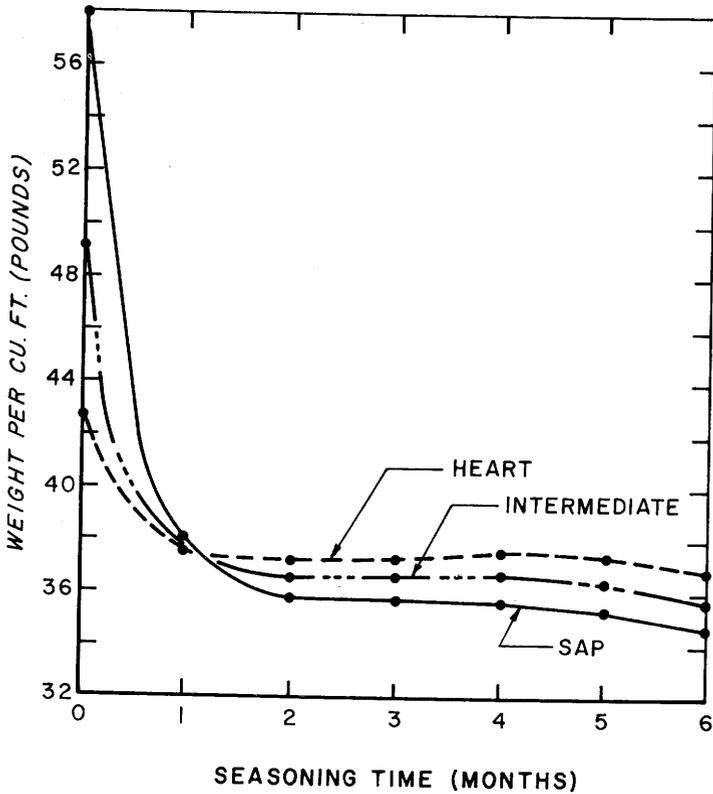


Figure 20-6.—Weight changes during seasoning of 10-foot-long, 3¼- by 4¼-inch, loblolly pine crossarms air-dried in Norfolk, Va. Piles were established in spring months of 1906. (Drawing after Kempfer 1913.)

inch stickers and were spaced 2 to 3 inches apart. In two tests, relatively little moisture was lost during winter months.

POLES

Poles are difficult to protect against fungus attack during air-drying. There are indications that some early failures of treated poles in service are indirectly caused by fungus; inadequate penetration of preservative may result where permeability increases in infected wood and permits excessive rainwater pickup prior to treatment. Section 16-7 (BARK-FREE POLES AND TIMBERS) describes chemical treatment of poles to deter attack by fungi. Later infection is possible, however, if checks provide access to untreated wood still moist enough to sustain fungi. An alternative suggestion calls for brief pressure impregnation of the green material with a waterborne preservative prior to air-drying.

Figure 20-8 (Left) illustrates good piling practice in an air-drying yard

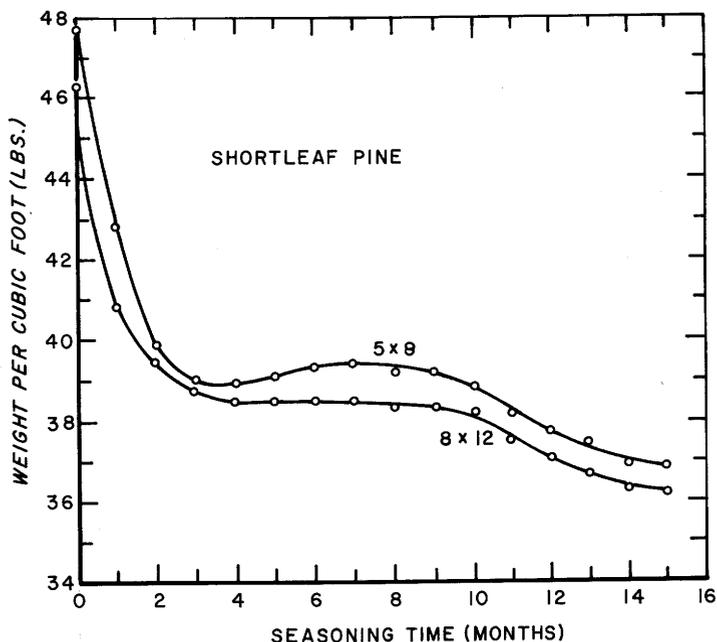


Figure 20-7.—Weight changes during seasoning of shortleaf pine timbers cut in Arkansas and air-dried (commencing July 15, 1907) in an enclosed shed in Lafayette, Ind. (Drawing after Kempfer 1913.)

for southern pine poles. The installation would be improved if the creosoted piers and beams supported the lowest layer of poles about 2 feet off the ground. Successive layers of poles are separated by treated stickers about 4 inches thick. Stickers should be accurately aligned over the piers

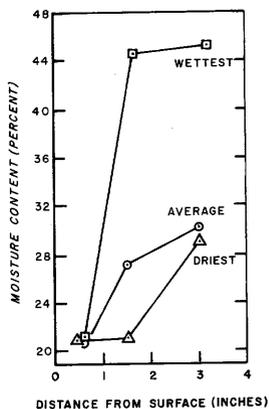
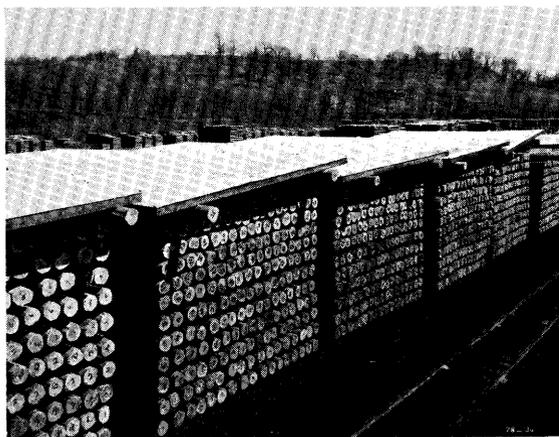


Figure 20-8.—(Left) Well-piled poles in an air-seasoning yard. (Right) Moisture distribution 6 feet from the butt end of the wettest, the driest, and the average of 12, Class 5, 40-foot southern pine poles after air-drying for 96 days. Moisture content at surface was approximately 11.3 percent. (Photo and drawings after Mathewson and Berger 1957.)

to prevent bending of lower poles. Pile height should be limited so that sticks are not crushed into poles of the lowest layer. A chimney 2 feet wide is left in the middle of the pile from top to bottom. Alternatively, poles can be stacked in a cross-hatch pile so that they act as their own pile stickers. According to Mathewson (1930), about 2 months in the summer or 4 months in the winter is the usual seasoning period prior to preservative treatment.

Mathewson and Berger (1957) made a study of moisture distribution in 12 class 5, 40-foot southern pine poles 96 days after they were shipped to an air-drying yard in Finney, Ohio. Their data showed that the moisture content at the surface (estimated at 11.3 percent) and 1/2-inch in from the surface (21 percent) were equal in the wettest and driest of the 12 poles, but 3 inches in from the surface, moisture content was 29 percent on the driest pole and 45 percent on the wettest. Measurements were taken approximately 6 feet from the butt of each pole (fig. 20-8 Right).

Burkhalter and Russell (1969) have proposed that air-drying of southern pine trees cut for poles and piling can be accomplished easily if the tops are not severed from the stem for a few weeks following felling. In a study of loblolly and slash pine they found that some trees left on the ground for a month and a half with crown intact lost as much as 30 percent of their green weight, whereas similar tree stems with crowns severed from stems lost only 3 percent of total weight during the same period on the ground (bark intact). More typically, 4 or 5 months was required for a felled tree with crown intact to lose 30 percent of its green weight (fig. 20-9). To make this drying system practical, a procedure to protect the stems against fungus attack would have to be developed.

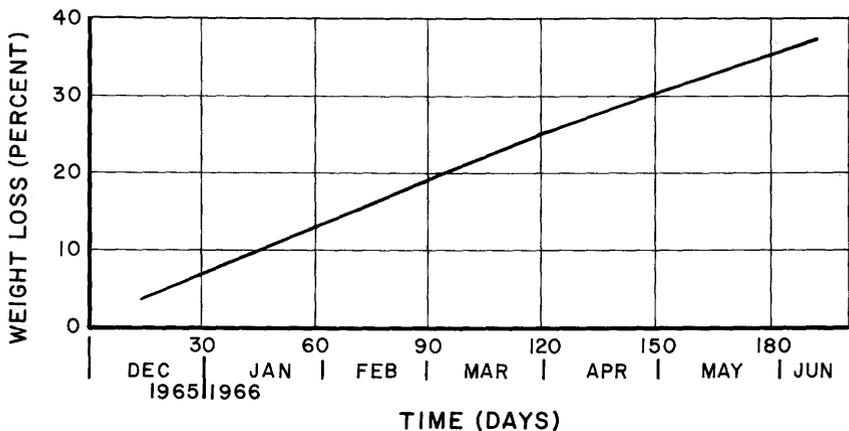


Figure 20-9.—Percent weight loss from the green condition of entire loblolly pine tree severed at ground level and left on the ground with crown intact for 6 months. Curve based on data from six trees. Slash pine trees cut under the same condition lost weight at virtually the same rate. (Drawing after Burkhalter and Russell 1969.)

CONTROL OF END CHECKS

End checking can degrade poles, piling, and heavy timbers during drying. In timbers, end checking can be reduced by prompt application of suitable coatings to freshly cut end surfaces. If applied after checking has begun, coatings rarely prevent deepening of the checks. Usually no attempt is made to control checking in piles, poles, and posts.

Studies have shown that single hot coatings are more effective than single coats of any of the cold coatings. McMillen (1961a) evaluated various hot coatings by completely covering small blocks of green shortleaf pine with the test coatings and exposing them to regulated conditions of temperature and humidity. In figure 20-10 the results are expressed in terms of the percentage of original evaporable moisture (above equilibrium moisture content) remaining in the wood.

Hot coatings must be heated above their melting point when applied. Among the hot coatings, paraffin, rosin and lampblack, coal tar pitches, and asphalt are highly effective when applied in a single coat $\frac{1}{20}$ - to $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch thick. Paraffin is generally suitable only for air-seasoning, rosin and lampblack are suitable for kiln temperatures up to 150° F., and pitches and asphalts can be selected for use at any ordinary kiln temperature. Blends of coal tar pitches and petroleum asphalts of suitable softening points form effective coatings that are tougher and more adhesive than the pitch alone. The coating with the lowest softening point that will safely withstand the drying temperatures used is recommended. Hot coatings can be applied by dipping the ends of the pieces in the molten coating, or more satisfactorily by means of a power-driven roller device.

Cold coatings may be of several types:

<u>Type</u>	<u>Comment</u>
White lead in linseed oil	Good moisture resistance
Aluminum particles in a phenolic-resin, tung-oil varnish (2 pounds aluminum per gallon of varnish)	Three brushed (or sprayed) coats gives best results
Unfilled resin varnish	Becomes brittle in final stages of kiln drying. Not abrasive to machine knives.
Asphaltic (in water emulsion or with petroleum solvent)	Water emulsion subject to breakdown on freezing or exposure to heavy rain.
Wax emulsions	Can be clear or colored. Economical. Subject to breakdown in heavy rain.

A list of manufacturers and distributors of both hot and cold proprietary coatings is available (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1966).

Another approach to the reduction of end checking is application of mechanical restraint to the green wood. There are several forms of anti-checking irons (S and C shapes are popular) that can be driven into the ends of timbers and ties; they are most effective if placed to cross the

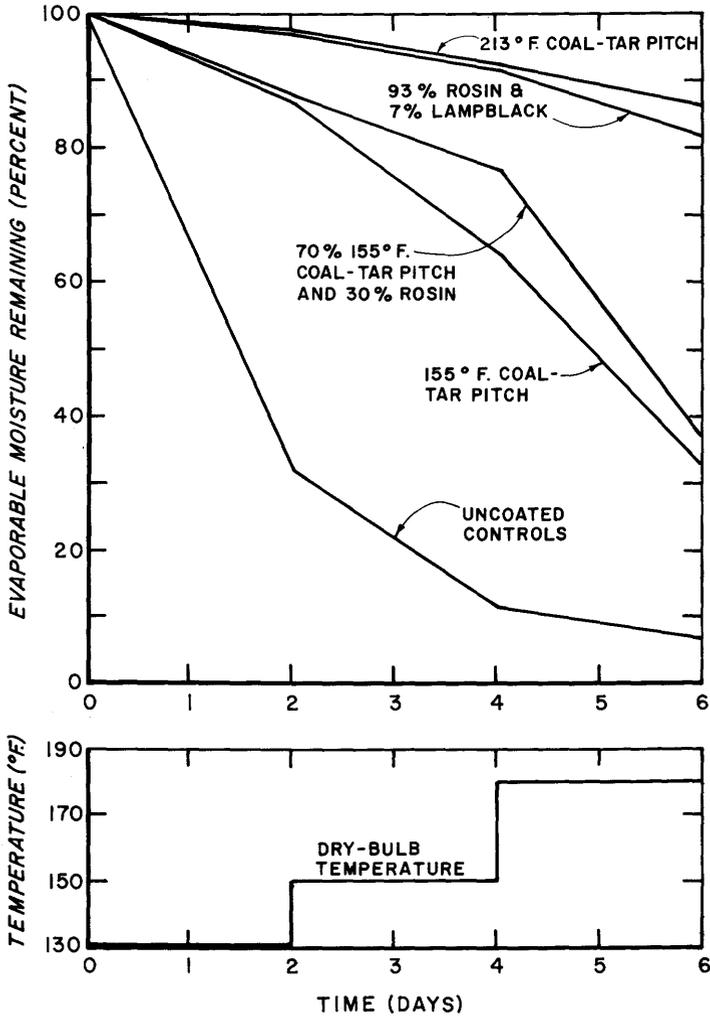


Figure 20-10.—(Top) Moisture content of small green shortleaf pine blocks, uncoated and completely coated with test materials, when subjected to accelerated drying conditions. Tested coal tar pitches are identified by melting point. Evaporable moisture remaining, percent =

$$(100) \left[\frac{\text{current moisture content} - \text{equilibrium moisture content}}{\text{original moisture content} - \text{equilibrium moisture content}} \right]$$

(Bottom) Dry-bulb temperatures during the 6-day drying period; wet-bulb temperatures were continuously adjusted to achieve a humidity appropriate for 11-percent equilibrium moisture content in uncoated controls. (Drawing after McMillen 1961a.)

greatest number of rays. Alternatively, crossties with end splits can be clamped on the ends so that the splits are closed, then drilled transversely across the split 3 inches from each end, and finally secured by driving headless spiral steel dowels into the holes. Data specific to southern pine on the necessity and relative efficiencies of these mechanical devices have not been published.

20-2 FORCED-AIR-DRYING

Shed-fan air-drying is the next step beyond conventional air-drying. In this system stickered package piles are placed in a building with fans on one side. The outdoor air is then pulled through the lumber in a single pass, without recirculation. While surface evaporation is speeded because of higher air velocity and because the air movement prevents buildup of high relative humidity between lumber courses, drying is still dependent on weather conditions.

LUMBER

Gaby (1959, 1961) dried 1-inch, rough, green, southern pine lumber in a wind tunnel simulating such an unheated drier. Fans were not reversible. During the winter (Athens, Ga.) when temperatures averaged 42° F., drying times from 85-percent moisture content to an average of 25-percent were 12, 10, and 7.5 days respectively for air velocities of 300, 500, and 800 feet per minute (f.p.m.) (fig. 20-11). The following spring when temperatures averaged 72° F., drying times from 91-percent moisture content to an average moisture content of 25 percent were 7.3, 5.6, and 4.0 days respectively, for similar velocities. Blue stain occurred when air velocity was low or when outside humidity was high; in the most severe case 44 percent of the boards had sufficient stain to cause degrade. Drying rate dropped substantially as load width was increased beyond 8 feet (fig. 20-12).

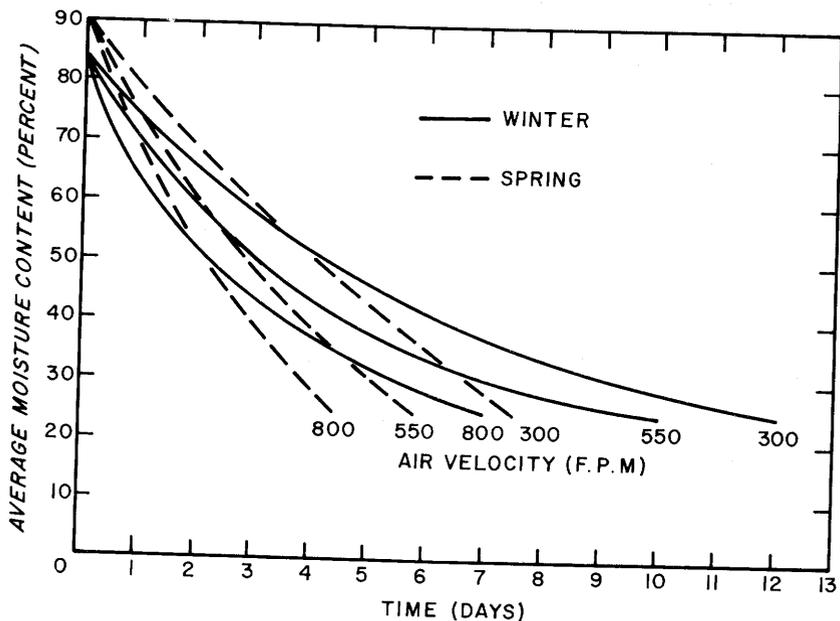


Figure 20-11.—Effect of air velocity and season on drying time of 1-inch southern pine in an unheated wind tunnel during spring and winter. (Drawing after Gaby 1961.)

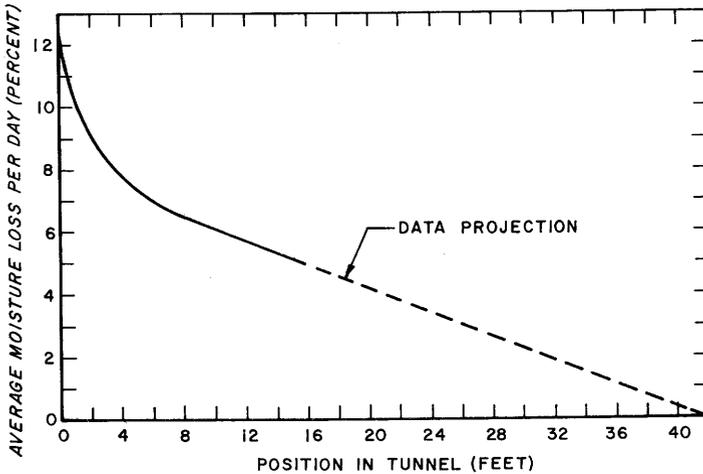


Figure 20-12.—Effect of length of air travel on drying rate of 1-inch southern pine. Drying time 8 days; air velocity 500 f.p.m.; no fan reversal; no control of drying conditions. (Drawing after Gaby 1961.)

The forced-air dryer, or predryer, has two added features—a confining structure to permit recirculation of the air, and a source of heat to raise the temperature somewhat above ambient. These dryers generally operate continuously at one relatively low temperature (120° F. or less) and do not control humidity except by this slightly elevated air temperature.

With dryer temperature constant at 80° F and reversing the fans at 3-hour intervals Gaby (1959, 1961) found that 1-inch, rough, green southern pine could be dried from green condition (110-percent moisture content) to an average of 17 percent (with 95 percent of the boards at 20 percent or less) in 4 to 6 days (fig. 20-13). Two-inch pine required about twice this time. Seasoning degrade was minor. Higher temperatures (up to 110° F.) can be expected to reduce drying time without increasing degrade. Fan reversal reduced drying time compared to one-way airflow. Length of air travel across the load should be limited to 8 feet or less if possible.

POLES AND ROUND BOLTS

Gaby (1967) dried freshly cut, peeled slash and loblolly pine short logs in a forced-air dryer after first storing them 1 week under water. Bolts were 18 inches and 55 inches long. Air circulation was reversed every 6 hours. The mean air velocity was between 600 and 700 f.p.m. Bolts were not end coated and were piled in bins without stickers so that circulating air travelled the length of the bolts. A mean dry-bulb temperature of 120° F. was maintained. Wet-bulb temperature was not controlled, but with vents open atmosphere in the dryer reached an e.m.c. condition of 3 to 4 percent early in the cycle.

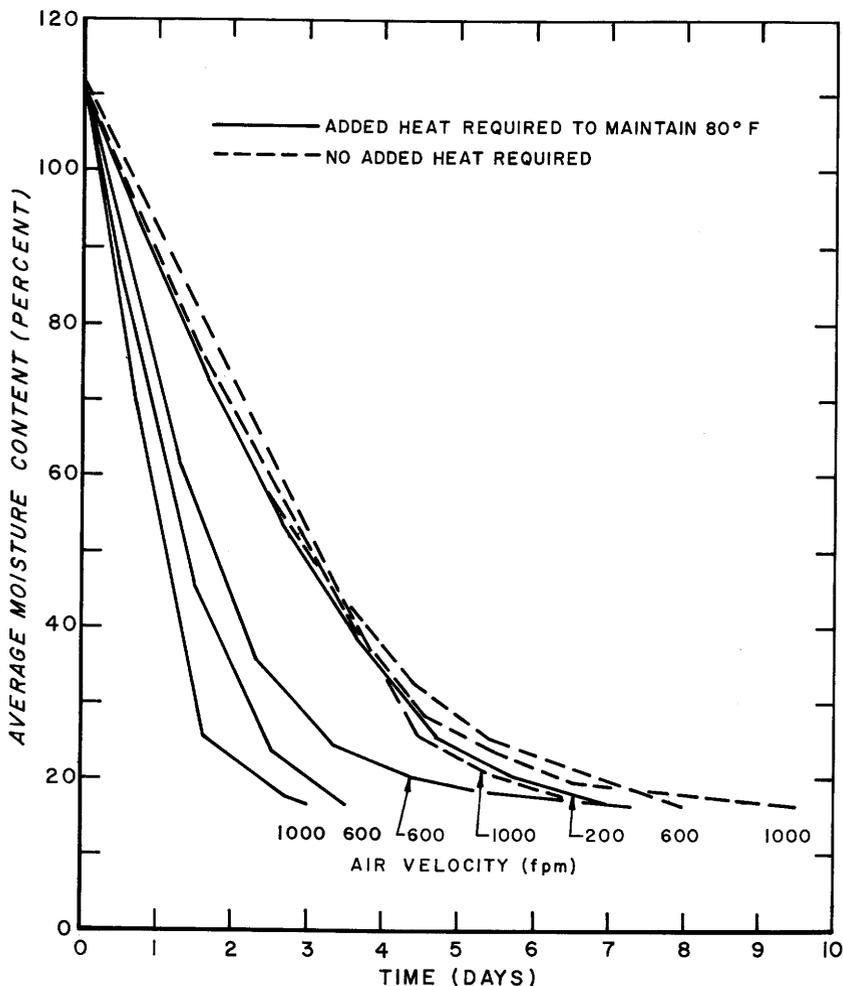


Figure 20-13.—Moisture content of 1-inch southern pine lumber dried at a constant 80° F. and at three air velocities. Addition of heat not required during warm months. (Drawing after Gaby 1961.)

Bolt diameter significantly affected drying rates. Time to dry 55-inch-long bolts from 115-percent initial moisture content to a target 25-percent was 4.8 days for 4- to 5-inch bolts, 10.2 days for 8- to 9-inch bolts, and 15.8 days for 12- to 13-inch bolts (fig. 20-14). Half-round bolts, originally 12 to 13 inches in diameter, dried in the same time as round bolts 8 to 9 inches in diameter.

Surprisingly, in diameter classes from 4 to 9 inches, 55-inch-long bolts dried 1 to 2 days sooner than 18-inch-long bolts. Drying rates were not affected by mixing large- and small-diameter bolts in the bins; bolts of comparable diameters dried at very similar rates.

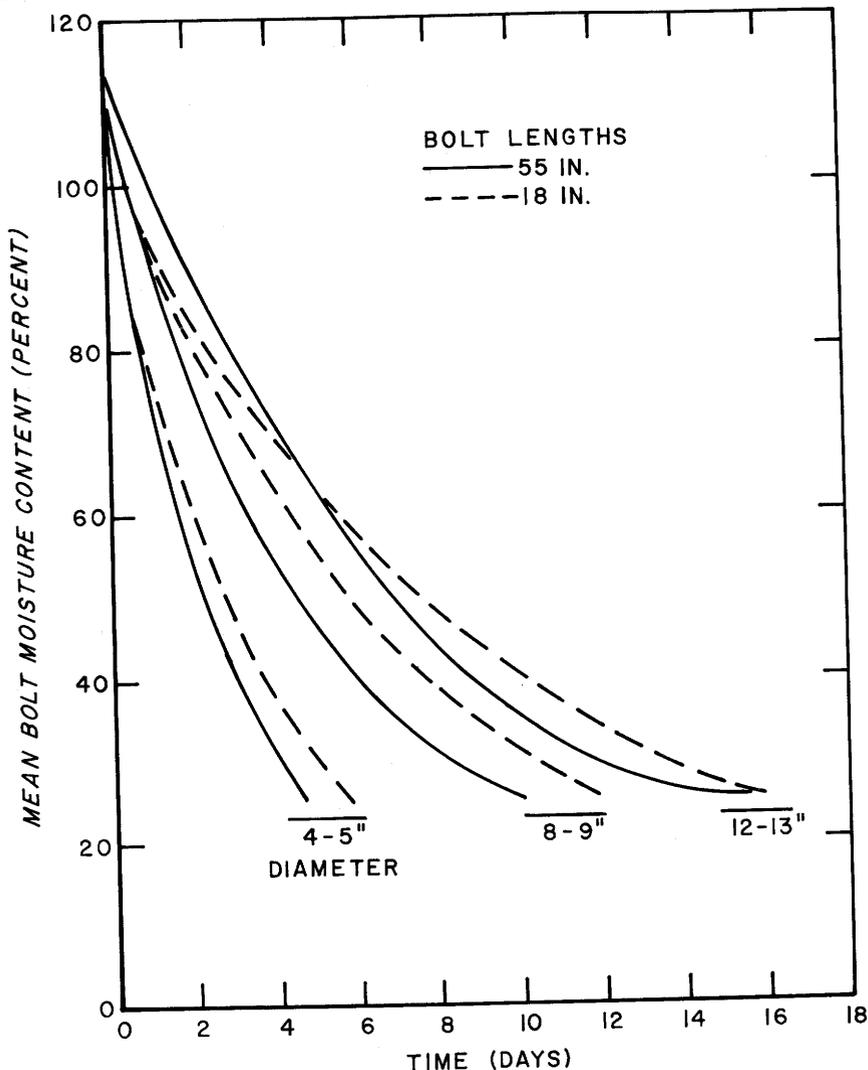


Figure 20-14.—Drying curves for two lengths of round, peeled southern pine bolts at 120° F., 17-percent relative humidity, and air velocity of 600 to 700 f.p.m. (Drawing after Gaby 1967.)

As would be expected, the outer shell of the bolts was substantially drier (15 percent) than the interior (30 to 40 percent) at the end of the drying cycle. Steam-equalization of these bolts (120° F. for 2 or 3 days) is discussed at the end of section 20-3.

20-3 KILN-DRYING

Dry kilns differ from forced-air dryers; they operate at dry-bulb temperatures generally in excess of 120° F. and with controlled wet-bulb temperatures. This is true of both indirectly heated (steam) and directly heated (gas-fired) kilns. The sensing elements for dry-bulb control are

so located that regardless of direction of air circulation, the temperature of air entering the stack of lumber is controlled. The wet-bulb thermal element is conveniently located so that the wicks can be replaced readily. Wet-bulb instrumentation controls venting, fresh air intake, and moisture supply. When the wet-bulb temperature exceeds the set point, vents are opened; they close when the wet-bulb temperature drops to near the set point. The wet-bulb temperature has to drop somewhat below the setting before moisture is injected into the kiln (usually as steam). Venting in most southern pine kilns is accomplished through roof vents; differences in static air pressure on opposite sides of the fan baffle draw in fresh air and discharge kiln air to the atmosphere. Such venting wastes heat. Where the cost of fuel is high, the newly developed pressure-venting process should be considered (Dineen 1968).

Over the years, air circulation rates have been increased; research has shown that if lumber has moisture on the surface, high air velocity will increase the drying rate. Today, circulation rates in the range from 200 to 400 f.p.m. are usual; equipment manufacturers have infrequently used velocities in excess of 500 f.p.m. to dry lumber because of additional horsepower required to drive the fans.

Most southern pine is dried on the basis of manually adjusted time schedules for wet- and dry-bulb settings. The operator resets the recorder-controller according to time in the kiln. There are few program controllers in use that have precut cams or other devices for automatically adjusting settings as a function of time in the kiln.

It is probable that kiln controls will become increasingly automated. The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1970) has developed a control system that monitors and records conditions within the kiln and automatically adjusts steam valves and air vents in response to moisture content of the charge so as to maintain programmed temperatures, airflow, and humidity for each stage of drying.

Most kilns in the South are steam heated and may be fired by gas, oil, or wood waste. Direct-fired kilns are also commercially available; those not equipped with auxiliary steam or water-spray humidification are less well adapted to equalization and conditioning treatments. Kilns may have single or double tracks to accommodate 8-foot-wide loads on rails, or they may be forklift loaded with smaller packages. Southern pine dries so readily and uniformly that large kilns can be used to advantage. Details of kiln construction can be found in chapter 2 of Rasmussen (1961).

LUMBER³

Through their cooperative efforts, the USDA Forest Products Laboratory and the Southern Pine Association (now the Southern Forest Products Association) have greatly stimulated good kiln-drying practices for lumber.

³ The kiln schedules tabulated for lumber under this heading are taken from Rasmussen (1961).

Teesdale's (1930) USDA Technical Bulletin 165 was a landmark in this program. Today, the ventilated, forced-air-circulation dry kiln is the most economical equipment for drying lumber (Rietz 1965); its operation may be separated into three phases, i.e., drying, equalizing, and conditioning.

Drying.—Section 8-7 explained that while removal of moisture from the surface is the limiting factor, drying time is directly proportional to board thickness; it is inversely proportional to wet-bulb depression and approximately inversely proportional to air velocity over the surface. When moisture diffusion is the limiting factor, drying time is approximately proportional to board thickness squared; it is inversely proportional to the water vapor pressure at saturation.

While all of the southern pines are relatively easy to dry, natural variability within the tree complicates the process. For example, the green moisture content of sapwood is higher than that of heartwood (see sec. 8-1), but sapwood dries faster than heartwood. Because of this, either one may be overdried before the other reaches desired dryness. This may necessitate an equalizing treatment. Quarter-sawed boards generally dry more slowly than plain-sawed, but they are less susceptible to surface checking. Therefore, a faster drying schedule can be used on quarter-sawed boards to reduce drying time.

Over a period of time the USDA Forest Products Laboratory has developed a conservative group of schedules for drying various grades and thicknesses of a large number of commercial species. These schedules plus a wealth of additional information on the kiln-drying of lumber are available in handbook form (Rasmussen 1961). In general, the schedules are divided into two groups.

In **moisture content schedules**, sequential steps of dry- and wet-bulb temperatures are determined by observed moisture contents of sample boards in the kiln charge. Changes in wet-bulb depression between 15 and 35° F. are made gradually—not over 5° at a time, and depressions of 35° F. or more are avoided until the average moisture content of the wettest half of the kiln samples (**controlling samples**) reaches 25 percent. The initial temperature is maintained until the controlling kiln samples have an average moisture content of 30 percent. A disadvantage of this system is the difficulty in retrieving samples from a hot kiln, which should be cooled to a wet-bulb temperature of 130° F. or lower before it is entered to remove samples.

Moisture content schedules vary with lumber grade and thickness. Those in the accompanying tables are designed to dry southern pine lumber green from the saw without prior air-drying. Table 20-2 is for upper-grade 4/4, table 20-3 for lower-grade 4/4 and upper-grade 6/4 and 8/4, while table 20-4 is designed for 10/4 and 12/4 lumber.

Few southern pine lumber manufacturers use these kiln schedules based on change in moisture content, but instead use schedules based on time. With **time schedules** drying conditions are changed at convenient intervals,

TABLE 20-2.—*Moisture content kiln schedule for upper grades of 4/4 southern pine*¹

Moisture content at start of step (percent)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	°F.			Percent	
Above 40.....	170	15	155	69	9.2
40.....	170	20	150	60	7.8
35.....	170	25	145	52	6.7
30.....	180	30	150	47	5.7
25.....	180	35	145	41	5.0
20.....	190	35	155	43	4.9
15.....	190	50	²	28	3.3

¹ Schedule T13-C6 from Rasmussen (1961).

² Close control of wet-bulb temperature not necessary. Steam spray shut off.

TABLE 20-3.—*Moisture content kiln schedule for upper grades of 6/4 and 8/4, and lower grades of 4/4, southern pine*¹

Moisture content at start of step (percent)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	°F.			Percent	
Above 40.....	160	10	150	77	11.5
40.....	160	14	146	69	9.7
35.....	160	20	140	58	7.9
30.....	170	25	145	52	6.7
25.....	170	30	140	45	5.7
20.....	180	35	145	41	5.0
15.....	180	50	²	26	3.3

¹ Schedule T12-C5 from Rasmussen (1961).

² Close control of wet-bulb temperature not necessary. Steam spray shut off.

TABLE 20-4.—*Suggested moisture content kiln schedule for upper grades of 10/4 and 12/4 southern pine*¹

Moisture content at start of step (percent)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	°F.			Percent	
Above 40.....	140	7	133	82	13.8
40.....	140	10	130	75	11.9
35.....	140	15	125	64	9.6
30.....	150	20	130	57	8.0
25.....	160	25	135	50	6.8
20.....	170	30	140	45	5.7
15.....	180	50	²	26	3.3

¹ Schedule T10-C4 from Rasmussen (1961).

² Close control of wet-bulb temperature not necessary. Steam spray shut off.

usually 12 or 24 hours. The schedules are guides developed from experimental work and mill experience. They are geared to performance of single-track (or booster-coil-equipped, double-track) internal fan kilns with air velocities from 200 to 400 f.p.m. through the loads. Individual mills may modify them to compensate for differences in lumber, kiln type, and kiln performance.

Time schedules in commercial use vary with lumber grade and thickness and are designed to dry lumber green from the saw without prior air-drying. Tables 20-5, 20-6, and 20-7 apply to upper grades of southern pine, and are for 4/4, 6/4, and 8/4 respectively. Tables 20-8 and 20-9 are for 4/4 and 8/4 lumber of the lower grades.

TABLE 20-5.—*Time-based kiln schedule for upper grades of 4/4 southern pine¹*

Time (hours)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	----- °F. -----			--- Percent ---	
20-12.....	165	15	150	68	9.3
1-24.....	170	15	155	69	9.2
24-36.....	175	20	155	61	7.7
36-48.....	180	20	160	62	7.6
48-60.....	190	25	165	56	6.4
60-72.....	190	25	165	56	6.4
72-96 ²	200	30	170	57	6.2

¹ Schedule AS11-BK6 from Rasmussen (1961). Stock slightly air-dried on kiln trucks before entering the kiln probably will dry to 8-percent average (11-percent maximum) moisture content in approximately 96 hours.

² Conditioning may be desirable at conclusion of this schedule.

TABLE 20-6.—*Time-based kiln schedule for upper grades of 6/4 southern pine¹*

Time (hours)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	----- °F. -----			--- Percent ---	
0-12.....	160	7	153	83	13.4
12-24.....	165	10	155	78	11.4
24-36.....	170	15	155	69	9.2
36-48.....	180	20	160	62	7.6
48-60.....	180	25	155	54	6.5
60-72.....	190	30	160	49	5.5
72-96.....	190	35	155	43	4.9
96-120 ²	190	35	155	43	4.9

¹ Schedule AS10-AK4 from Rasmussen (1961). Stock slightly air-dried on kiln trucks before entering the kiln possibly will dry to 8-percent average (11-percent maximum) moisture content in approximately 120 hours. If the operator wishes to stop at a high average moisture content, equalization and/or conditioning should be started earlier.

² Conditioning may be desirable at conclusion of this schedule.

TABLE 20-7.—*Time-based kiln schedule for upper grades of 8/4 southern pine*¹

Time (hours)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	----- °F. -----			-- Percent --	
0-12.....	160	7	153	83	13.4
12-24.....	165	10	155	78	11.4
24-36.....	170	15	155	69	9.2
36-48.....	180	20	160	62	7.6
48-60.....	180	25	155	54	6.5
60-72.....	190	30	160	49	5.5
72-96.....	190	35	155	43	4.9
96-120.....	190	35	155	43	4.9
120-144 ²	190	35	155	43	4.9

¹ Schedule AS10-AK4 from Rasmussen (1961). Stock slightly air-dried on kiln trucks before entering the kiln possibly will dry to 9-percent average (12-percent maximum) moisture content in approximately 144 hours. If the operator wishes to stop at a higher average moisture content, equilization and/or conditioning should be started earlier.

² Conditioning may be desirable at conclusion of this schedule.

TABLE 20-8.—*Time-based kiln schedule for lower grades of 4/4 southern pine*¹

Time (hours)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	----- °F. -----			-- Percent --	
0-24.....	165	10	155	78	11.4
24-48.....	170	15	155	69	9.2
48-68.....	175	20	155	61	7.7

¹ Schedule BS11-BK5 from Rasmussen (1961). Stock slightly air-dried on kiln trucks before entering the kiln probably will dry to 15-percent average (19-percent maximum) moisture content in approximately 68 hours.

TABLE 20-9.—*Time-based kiln schedule for lower grades of 8/4 southern pine*¹

Time (hours)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb depression	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	----- °F. -----			-- Percent --	
0-12.....	165	15	150	68	9.3
12-24.....	170	15	155	69	9.2
24-36.....	175	20	155	61	7.7
36-48.....	180	20	160	62	7.6
48-60.....	190	25	165	56	6.4
60-72.....	190	25	165	56	6.4
72-100.....	200	30	170	51	5.4

¹ Schedule AS11-BK6 from Rasmussen (1961). Stock slightly air-dried on kiln trucks before entering the kiln possibly will dry to 15-percent average (19-percent maximum) moisture content in approximately 100 hours.

While each table carries a footnote giving an approximate ending moisture content, it is recognized that results will differ according to the initial moisture content of the green lumber. It is usual practice to lengthen or shorten the final step to obtain the desired final average moisture content. At some mills, however, when the lumber is quite wet the initial step is prolonged or is preceded by a step with less wet-bulb depression; this practice sometimes reduces kiln degrade. In any event, final moisture content must be checked and the schedule lengthened or shortened accordingly.

It is sometimes necessary to kiln-dry lumber that has been previously air-dried. Rasmussen (1961, p. 132) outlines the procedure for southern pine.

- Sample representative slow- and fast-drying material and use the average moisture content of the wettest half of the samples.
- If the controlling moisture content is above 40 percent, dry the material as green stock.
- For moisture below 40 percent, use the suggested moisture-content schedule beginning at the temperature step corresponding to the moisture content as follows:

Grade and thickness	Dry-bulb temperature step				
	Above 30 percent	30 percent	25 percent	20 percent	15 percent
	°F.				
Upper grades of 3/4-----	170	180	180	190	190
Upper grades of 3/4 and 5/4; lower grades of 3/4-----	160	170	170	180	180
Upper grades of 10/4 and 12/4-----	140	150	160	170	180

- If the controlling moisture content is 40 percent or less, change the wet-bulb depression as follows:
 - a. Use a depression of 10 to 15° F. for the initial 8 to 16 hours. (For stock over 8/4 thickness, use the 10° F. depression during the first 16- to 24-hour period and 15° F. for the second such period.)
 - b. After this, if the controlling moisture content is between 15 and 25 percent, change the wet-bulb depression to 20° F.
 - c. Use a depression of 30° F. or more after the stock reaches 15-percent moisture content.

Equalizing.—At the end of the drying schedule the moisture content may vary considerably among boards in a kiln charge. Such variation may cause serious trouble during storage, fabrication, or use. Too much variation also makes it difficult to relieve drying stresses (casehardening). Equalizing treatment near the end of drying is desirable to reduce variation in moisture content.

The procedure for equalizing a kiln charge of upper-grade lumber (in the range of 5- to 11-percent moisture content) is as follows:

- Start equalizing when the driest kiln sample in the charge has reached an average moisture content 2 percent below the desired final average. If, for example, the target moisture content is 8 percent, equalizing would start when the driest kiln sample reaches 6 percent.
- Establish kiln conditions for an equalizing e.m.c. 2 percent below target moisture content. In the example above, the equalizing e.m.c. would be 6 percent. During equalizing, use as high a dry-bulb temperature as the drying schedule permits.
- Continue equalizing until the wettest sample reaches the desired final average moisture content. In the example, the wettest sample would be dried to 8 percent. Samples on the outside of the load dry faster than those on the inside (Hallock 1965, fig. 11).

For construction lumber (or laminating lumber) limited to a 15-percent maximum moisture content, start equalizing when the driest material reaches 9 percent and use a 9-percent e.m.c.

For a 19-percent maximum, start equalizing when the driest material reaches 11 percent and use an 11-percent e.m.c.

If a conditioning treatment is to follow equalizing, it may be necessary to lower the temperature to obtain conditions for the desired conditioning e.m.c. When this is necessary, begin lowering the temperature 12 to 24 hours prior to the start of conditioning. Meanwhile, maintain the desired equalizing e.m.c. by lowering the wet-bulb temperature.

Conditioning.—If the boards are to be resawed, ripped into thin strips, or machined nonuniformly, a conditioning treatment is desirable. Such a treatment accomplishes two things—it relieves drying stresses, and it produces a more uniform moisture content throughout the thickness of the boards. Drying stresses and nonuniformity of moisture can result in serious deformation during fabrication and use.

The conditioning treatment, whether or not preceded by an equalizing treatment, should not be started until the average moisture content of the wettest sample reaches the desired final average moisture content.

The procedure for conditioning a kiln charge of lumber is as follows:

- The conditioning temperature is the same as the final step of the drying schedule or the highest temperature at which the conditioning e.m.c. can be controlled. Set the wet-bulb temperature so the conditioning e.m.c. will be 3 percent above the final average moisture content. (This procedure applies to moisture contents of 11 percent or less; conditioning is difficult at higher moisture contents; a 14-percent average moisture content can be approached in kilns which will maintain the correct high e.m.c. at temperatures of 140° F. or above.)
- Continue conditioning until satisfactory stress relief is attained.

The time required for conditioning varies considerably, depending upon thickness of the lumber, the type of kiln used, and kiln performance. One-inch pine can be conditioned in as little as 4 hours. The least time necessary to get stress relief is determined by prong tests (fig. 20-15). Reversing of air circulation during conditioning is desirable for uniform stress relief (Winkel 1956).

Average moisture content immediately after the conditioning treatment will be about 1 to 1½ percent above the desired value because of the surface moisture regain. After cooling, the average moisture content of the lumber should be close to that desired.

Curves showing moisture content vs. time in kiln.—The foregoing portion of section 20-3 has discussed and tabulated kiln schedules. Hopkins et al. (1969) have published data specific to 6-inch-wide, flat-grain, No. 2 Common and better southern pine that show the change in moisture content of ¾-inch, 1-inch, 1½-inch, and 2-inch lumber versus time in the kiln when dried under various time-based schedules taken from Rasmussen

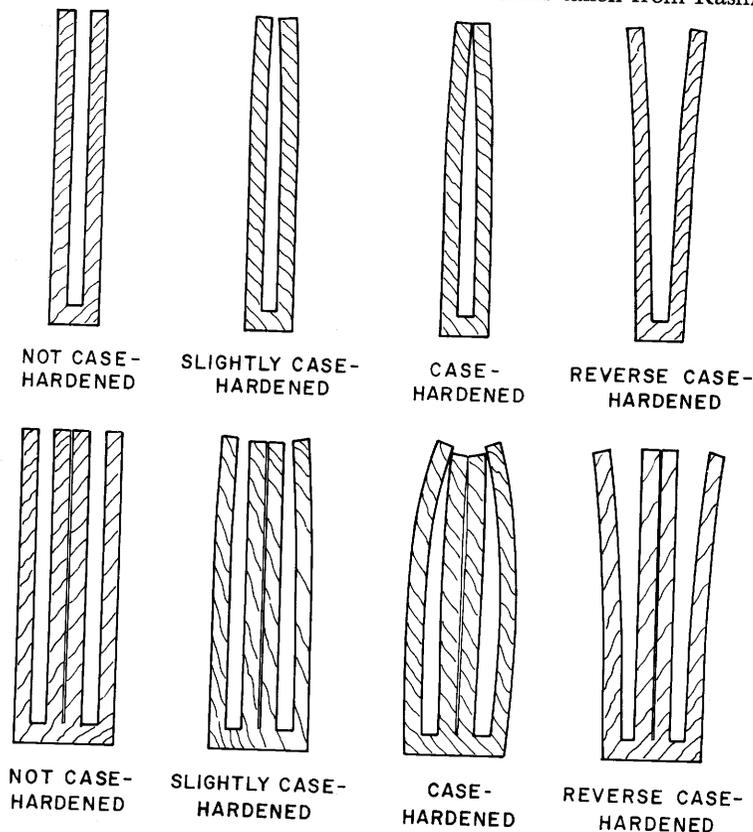


Figure 20-15.—Method of cutting specimens to determine degree of stress relief. Material that is less than 1½ inches thick is cut into three prongs, and the middle prong is removed; material that is 1½ inches thick or thicker is cut into six prongs, and the second and fifth prongs are removed.

M-60300F

(1961). In the kiln, air was cross-circulated at 450 f.p.m.; direction of airflow was reversed every 4 hours.

In figure 20-16 the top two drawings show an average commercial schedule for upper grades of 1-inch lumber; it ends with a wet-bulb depression of 30° F. at 200° F. and is designed to achieve rapid drying with a relatively mild initial temperature (165° F. with 15° depression). The middle two drawings show a moderate schedule with initial temperature of 170° F. and final wet-bulb depression of 50° F. at 200° F. achieved after 72 hours. The bottom drawings depict the most severe schedule; it starts at 170° F. with 20° F. depression and after 60 hours finishes at 200° F. with a 50° F. depression. Average ending moisture contents were as follows (Hopkins et al. 1969).

Schedule	$\frac{3}{4}$ -inch lumber		1-inch lumber	
	Moisture content	Time in kiln	Moisture content	Time in kiln
	Percent	Hours	Percent	Hours
Mild.....	7	84	3	84
Moderate.....	6	84	4	84
Severe.....	3	72	4	72

In figure 20-17, also from Hopkins et al. (1969), curves for 1½- and 2-inch-thick lumber are compared. Shown at the top is a mild schedule starting at 160° F. with 7° F. wet-bulb depression; in the final step, made after 72 hours, the ending temperature is 190° F. with depression of 35°. The middle drawings show a moderate schedule beginning at 165° F. with 15° F. depression; the final step—also reached after 72 hours—has a 50° F. depression from a dry-bulb temperature of 200° F. At the bottom is the most severe schedule; it begins at 170° F. with 20° F. depression and reaches the final step 60 hours later to end with a temperature of 200° F. and a 50° F. depression. Average ending moisture contents were as follows (Hopkins et al. 1969).

Schedule	1-½-inch lumber		2-inch lumber	
	Moisture content	Time in kiln	Moisture content	Time in kiln
	Percent	Hours	Percent	Hours
Mild.....	10	72	12	96
Moderate.....	11	60	13	84
Severe.....	13	48	10	84

Drying defects.—Residual drying stresses in lumber—in particular **case-hardening**—may be considered drying defects. Casehardened lumber cups when resawn, or when more is planed off one side than the other; cupped boards tend to suffer degrade from splits when planed. In addition, end checks frequently develop in freshly crosscut, casehardened boards that are exposed to dry air.

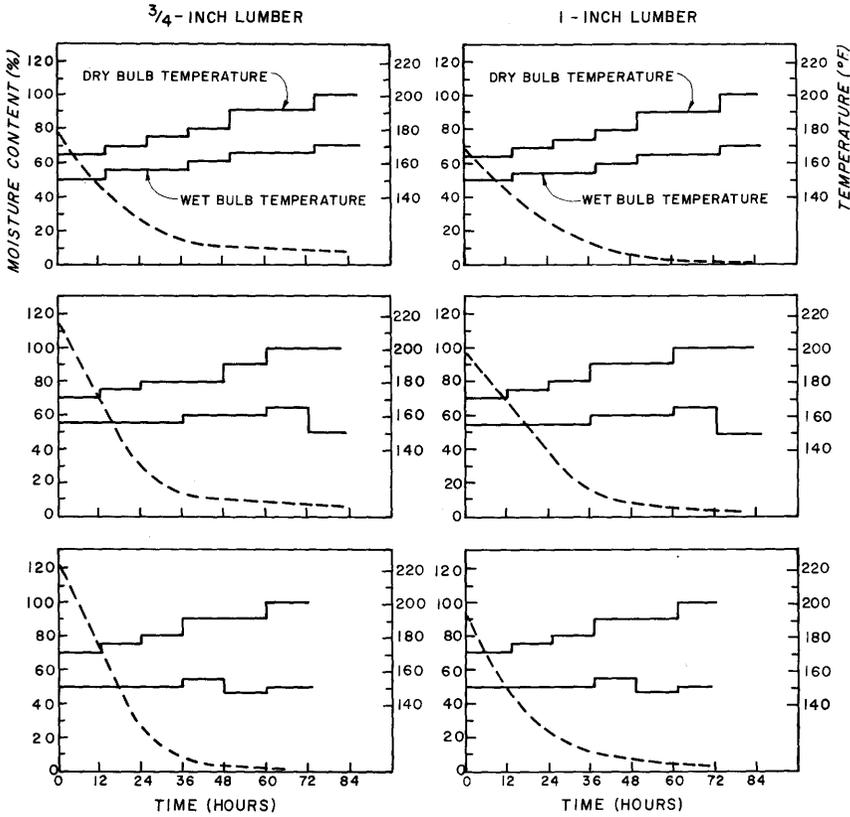


Figure 20-16.—Moisture content (dashed line) of 3/4-inch by 6-inch (left) and 1-inch by 6-inch (right) southern pine lumber versus time in kiln when dried according to time-based schedules from Rasmussen (1961). (Top) Mild schedule AS11-BK6. (Middle) Moderate schedule AS11-AK6. (Bottom) Severe schedule AS12-AK8. (Drawings and data after Hopkins et al. 1969.)

The formation and effects of stresses in drying wood are influenced by several factors (McMillen and Youngs 1960) :

- As any portion of a piece of wood loses moisture below the fiber-saturation point, it tends to shrink.
- If the normal shrinkage is restrained, a tensile stress is developed in that portion.
- Portions of the material that do the restraining tend to develop compressive stresses.
- The tendency of one portion of the wood to restrain the shrinkage of an adjacent portion produces shearing stress.
- When a material is stressed, it deforms or is strained. Stress that develops slowly and continues for long periods produces some inelastic (or plastic) strain. Such strain remains after removal of stress. This permanent strain is known as plastic deformation, creep, or set.

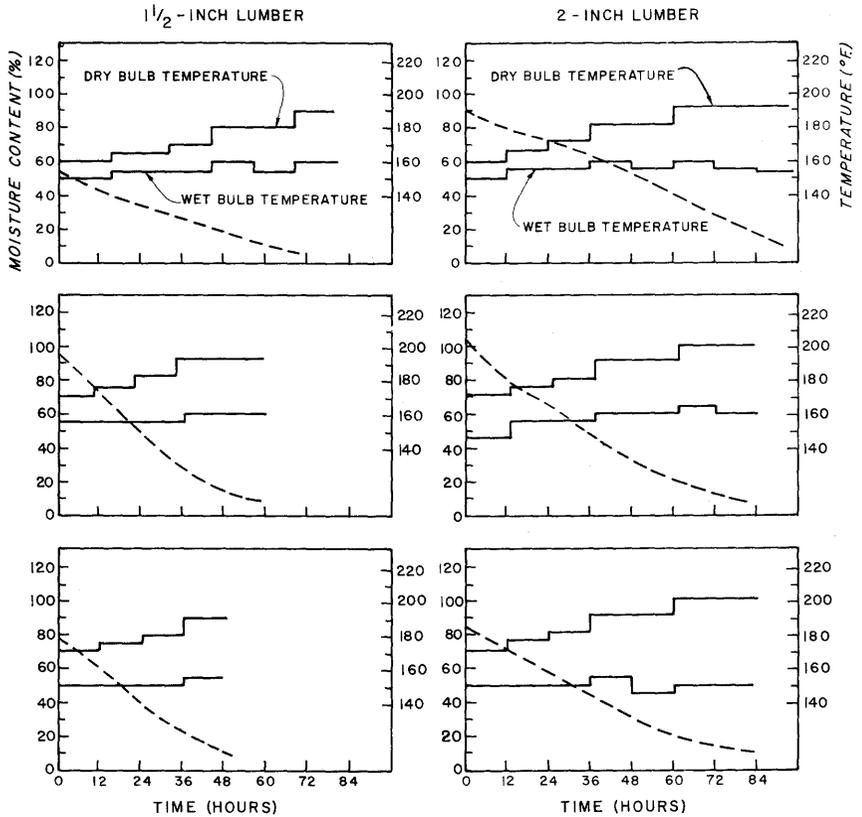


Figure 20-17.—Moisture content (dashed line) of 1½-inch by 6-inch (left) and 2-inch by 6-inch (right) southern pine lumber versus time in kiln when dried according to time-based schedules from Rasmussen (1961). (Top) Mild schedule AS10-AK4. (Middle) Moderate schedule AS11-AK6. (Bottom) Severe schedule AS12-AK8. (Drawings and data after Hopkins et al. 1969.)

Quantitative information on drying stresses and strains in southern pine is lacking. However, data on strains and sets for 2-inch ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa* Laws.) give some clue to the probable behavior of southern pine during kiln-drying (McMillen 1968). When dried at 110° F., tension set in the outer portions of ponderosa pine planks built up to a moderately high value during the first half of drying. Compression set in the interior portion of the planks developed mainly during the middle third of drying and was generally small. Stress reversal (so that the wood near the surface ended up in compression and the interior wood was stressed in tension) occurred after average moisture content was at or below 20 percent. Residual stress and set were relieved by a 6-hour conditioning treatment.

Warp defects—twist, bow, crook, and cup—can be reduced most effectively by good kiln stacking practice. Lumber on each kiln truck should

be of uniform thickness to reduce cupping of lumber and deformation of kiln stickers. Preferably, lumber of a single length should constitute each kiln pile. If this is not possible the lumber should be **box piled** (fig. 20-18 Left) with flush ends; a box pile is as long as the longest board, i.e., shorter boards are alternately pulled to opposite ends so that package ends have no projecting boards. A less desirable practice is **step-back stacking** (fig. 20-18 Right). Step-back kiln piles require extra baffling at the ends to maintain air velocity through the lumber courses. Kiln piles need strong foundation supports spaced not over 4 feet apart on the kiln trucks to prevent the lower courses from sagging. Stickers should be dry, straight, and of uniform thickness (usually about $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch) and width (usually about $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches). Preferably, end stickers should be flush with board ends; a spacing of 2 to 4 feet between stickers is usual. Data from Teesdale (1930, p. 57) shows that 16-foot longleaf pine developed almost no crook when piled with 9 stickers per course, whereas, crook was very common in similar lumber stacked with 4 stickers per course. Stickers should be placed directly over pile supports and be in accurate vertical alignment.

Data from Hopkins et al. (1969) relate warp in 8-foot-long, 6-inch-wide No. 2 Common and better, southern pine lumber to the kiln schedules shown in figures 20-16 and 20-17 (see table 20-10). In Hopkins' study, no space was left between edges of the lumber; courses were separated by $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch sticks placed on 2-foot centers. To reduce warping, especially in the upper courses, each 4-foot-wide load had weights placed on top to distribute a total weight of 4,000 pounds on the bottom layer. As Koch (1969, 1971) has shown, southern pine lumber dried under restraint warps less than unrestrained lumber.

The severe schedule (fig. 20-16 Bottom) caused greater bow and crook in $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch and 1-inch lumber than the mild and moderate schedules; $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch lumber had less twist and cup than 1-inch. Lumber dried by all three

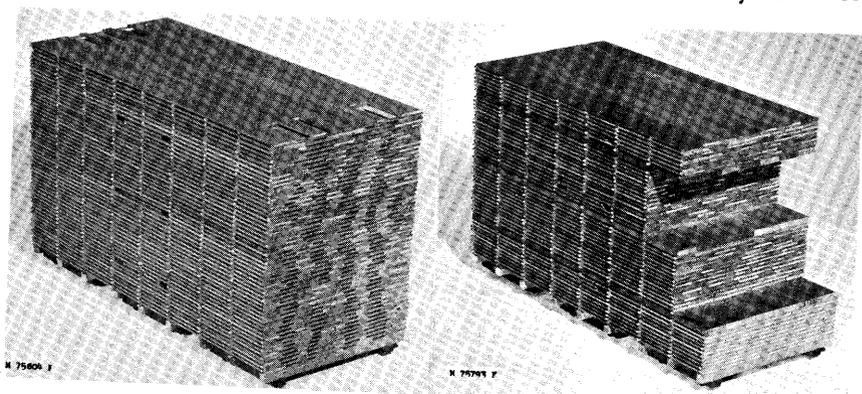


Figure 20-18.—Kiln piles with sample pockets and kiln samples shown. (Left) Box pile of random-length lumber. (Right) Step-back stacking in lower part of load and step-out stacking in upper part. Courses of thick dunnage, located as shown, minimize warp. (Photos from Rasmussen 1961.)

TABLE 20-10.—*Change in warp in No. 2 Common and better, 6-inch-wide, flat-sawn southern pine lumber when kiln dried on various schedules (Hopkins et al. 1969)¹*

Schedule and thickness (inch)	Bow	Crook	Twist	Cup
----- $\frac{1}{32}$ -inch -----				
Mild ²				
0.75----	1.3(-7, +14)	2.6(-3, +19)	2.8(-3, +10)	1.4(0, +4)
1.00----	.5(-19, +13)	2.4(-4, +20)	3.3(-6, +16)	1.7(0, +4)
Moderate ²				
0.75----	3.3(-3, +36)	2.6(-4, +29)	2.8(-3, +12)	1.1(0, +4)
1.00----	1.1(-13, +13)	3.4(-2, +35)	3.2(-3, +23)	1.1(0, +3)
Severe ²				
0.75----	2.6(-13, +24)	6.3(-3, +40)	1.3(-2, +8)	1.4(0, +4)
1.00----	3.5(-11, +23)	4.2(-2, +42)	3.2(-4, +14)	2.5(0, +5)
Mild ³				
1.5-----	.6(-5, +11)	.7(-4, +10)	4.7(0, +28)	.6(0, +3)
2.0-----	.3(-6, +8)	.9(-4, +6)	2.1(0, +10)	.0(0, +1)
Moderate ³				
1.5-----	1.1(-16, +23)	2.1(-5, +27)	3.1(-2, +32)	.6(0, +3)
2.0-----	1.1(-17, +9)	2.7(-4, +25)	2.6(-3, +21)	.0(0, +2)
Severe ³				
1.5-----	.1(-6, +10)	1.2(-2, +21)	4.7(-2, +15)	.6(0, +2)
2.0-----	.1(-8, +9)	2.6(-3, +36)	4.5(-3, +20)	.0(0, +0)

¹ The first number in each entry is average warp; the numbers following in parentheses are minimum and maximum warp. A negative value indicates a decrease in warp during drying.

² See figure 20-16 for schedule.

³ See figure 20-17 for schedule.

schedules had about the same amount of twist; cup was least in lumber dried on the moderate schedule.

When dried under the schedules shown in figure 20-17, lumber 1½ inches thick developed less crook than 2-inch lumber, and the mild schedule caused less crook than the moderate and severe schedules. The 1½-inch-thick lumber, however, twisted more than that 2 inches thick. The 1½-inch-thick lumber developed some cup, while the 2-inch lumber had virtually none.

More than half of the samples taken from the lumber dried by Hopkins et al. (1969) on the schedules shown in figures 20-16 and 20-17 were casehardened. This indicates that lumber dried according to these schedules should be conditioned before removal from the kiln.

Checks and splits that develop at board ends during drying usually stop at the first sticker they reach; therefore, stickers should be aligned as near the ends of the load as possible. Surface checks may develop during the kiln-drying of thick, wide, flat-sawn planks. These failures, usually occurring at wood rays and resin canals, are caused by transverse tensile

stress in the relatively dry surface layer while it is restrained from shrinking by the relatively wet interior. Therefore, schedules that avoid extreme tensile stresses at the surface minimize surface checking. Knots check because of differences in shrinkage parallel to and across the annual rings within the knots. Knot checking, almost impossible to prevent, can be minimized by drying at high relative humidities and only to high moisture contents. Encased knots, held in place only by bark and pitch, loosen when the knot shrinks to a size smaller than the knothole. The drier the lumber, the more dead knots will fall out during machining (fig. 11-2).

Hopkins et al. (1969, p. 14) have provided data on surface checking observed in 6-inch-wide southern pine dried according to the schedules shown in figures 20-16 and 20-17. The $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch and 1-inch lumber had very few surface checks when dried on the mild schedule; more checks developed during the moderate and severe schedules. The 1-inch lumber developed more checks than the $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch lumber. In lumber $1\frac{1}{2}$ and 2 inches thick, surface checking was most severe in the $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch lumber; the severe schedule caused more checking than the moderate or mild schedules.

Shrinkage caused by drying is a defect only when it is sufficient to cause the lumber to be undersize after planing. The lumber manufacturer must obviously have some idea of the range of shrinkage commonly observed during kiln-drying if he is to avoid undersize lumber. Hopkins et al. (1969) have tabulated data applicable to 6-inch-wide, flat-grain, 8-foot-long, southern pine lumber dried on a variety of schedules (table 20-11). When thick and thin lumber were dried on the same schedule, shrinkage in length was generally greatest in the thickest lumber; in an 8-foot piece, longitudinal shrinkage was generally less than 0.1 inch but was sometimes as high as 0.7 inch. Width shrinkage of the $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch and 1-inch lumber (dried to 4 or 5 percent moisture content) was commonly 0.27 to 0.37 inch, but was observed in some boards to be nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch. In the $1\frac{1}{2}$ - and 2-inch-thick lumber, which was dried to about 12-percent moisture content, the width shrinkage was commonly 0.07 to 0.16 inch. Thickness shrinkage averaged 0.03 to 0.05 inch for $\frac{3}{4}$ - and 1-inch lumber; for $1\frac{1}{2}$ - and 2-inch lumber it averaged 0.02 to 0.04 inch.

Pitch exudation is sometimes a defect in lumber. As southern pine dries, some of the volatiles from resin canals and pockets evaporate, causing the pitch to harden somewhat. Pitch can be thoroughly set (in boards for use at normal temperatures) by using a kiln temperature of 160° F. or higher (Rasmussen 1961). Teesdale (1930) observed that kiln temperatures in excess of 220° F. and low moisture content (2 to 4 percent) cause degrade in southern pine because of pitch exudation during the drying process. Koch (1971) found that pitch exudation caused by drying at 240° F. was readily removed by planing.

Degrade.—Carpenter and Schroeder (1968) measured the combined effects of drying, surfacing, and trimming on loss of grade and volume in

TABLE 20-11.—*Shrinkage during kiln-drying of 6-inch-wide, 8-foot-long, flat-grain, southern pine lumber dried on variety of schedules (Hopkins et al. 1969)¹*

Schedule and thickness (inch)	Length	Width	Thickness
----- Inch -----			
Mild²			
0.75.....	0.057 (0-.25)	0.270 (.13-.36)	0.025 (0-.07)
1.00.....	.072 (0-.25)	.284 (.15-.41)	.044 (0-.08)
Moderate²			
0.75.....	.062 (0-.38)	.356 (.17-.45)	.030 (0-.07)
1.00.....	.076 (0-.11)	.321 (.17-.42)	.047 (0-.10)
Severe²			
0.75.....	.151 (0-.53)	.345 (.19-.41)	.033 (0-.08)
1.00.....	.119 (0-.46)	.370 (.13-.40)	.047 (0-.10)
Mild³			
1.5.....	.046 (0-.28)	.153 (.03-.30)	.031 (0-.08)
2.0.....	.076 (0-.59)	.066 (0-.34)	.023 (0-.09)
Moderate³			
1.5.....	.059 (0-.62)	.164 (.06-.32)	.042 (0-.09)
2.0.....	.073 (0-.62)	.096 (0-.21)	.025 (0-.10)
Severe³			
1.5.....	.067 (0-.28)	.153 (.03-.22)	.028 (0-.07)
2.0.....	.078 (0-.69)	.146 (.06-.28)	.039 (0-.10)

¹ The first number in each entry is average shrinkage; the numbers following in parentheses are minimum and maximum shrinkage. Lumber 0.75 and 1.00 inches thick was dried to 4- or 5-percent moisture content; the 1.5- and 2.0-inch lumber was dried to about 12-percent moisture content.

² See figure 20-16 for schedule.

³ See figure 20-17 for schedule.

southern pine lumber. Over 7,700 boards were graded and scaled when green, and again after drying and surfacing. Some of the substantial grade changes in tables 20-12 and 20-13 can be explained by remanufacturing—ripping or crosscutting to make two boards from one, end trimming to raise the grade of the board, and surfacing to remove minor defects. Also, a portion of the lumber grade change can be related to the difficulty of grading rough-green lumber.

The data reflect the practices of only one mill. No doubt the amount of grade change and volume loss from drying and processing varies from mill to mill.

TIMBERS

Although most timbers are not kiln-dried because of the long drying time required, a few products do call for kiln-drying. Roof decking, which may be machined from 4- by 6-inch timbers, needs to be dried prior to use. Industry practice for western species (no information is published

TABLE 20-12.—Grade and volume change of 1-inch southern pine lumber from rough-green to dry-surfaced (Carpenter and Schroeder 1968)

Rough-green		Dry-surfaced ¹							
Lumber grade	Volume	B & B	C	D & 1C	2C	3C	4C	Volume lost ²	Total
	<i>Bd. ft.</i>	<i>Percent of rough-green volume</i>							
B & B.....	4,384	56	22	15	--	1	--	6	100
C.....	7,602	23	33	35	3	--	--	6	100
D & 1C.....	14,491	1	3	64	23	2	--	7	100
2C.....	19,207	-----	1	5	73	15	--	6	100
3C.....	2,390	-----	--	3	26	64	2	5	100
4C.....	267	-----	--	8	21	29	19	23	100
Total...	48,341								

¹ Dried to approximately 15-percent moisture content.

² Cull and remanufacturing.

TABLE 20-13.—Grade and volume change of southern pine dimension lumber from rough-green to dry-surfaced (Carpenter and Schroeder 1968)

Rough-green		Dry-surfaced ¹							Volume lost ²	Total
Lumber grade	Volume	1D	2D & Special	3D	4D	1 Dense	2 Dense	3 Dense		
	<i>Bd. ft.</i>	<i>Percent of rough-green volume</i>								
1D.....	1,556	43	36	14	1	1	1	-----	4	100
2D & Special....	2,091	6	57	20	5	6	5	-----	1	100
3D.....	354	2	-----	76	17	-----	-----	-----	5	100
4D.....	48	--	-----	--	100	-----	-----	-----	-----	100
1 Dense.....	13,666	--	-----	--	---	71	24	2	3	100
2 Dense.....	2,052	--	-----	--	---	8	67	22	3	100
3 Dense.....	313	--	-----	--	---	13	25	56	6	100
Total...	20,080									

¹ Dried to approximately 15-percent moisture content.

² Cull and remanufacturing.

for southern pine) is to dry the outer 1/2-inch to 15-percent moisture content or less in 7 to 10 days under a schedule that allows a small amount of surface checking (Rasmussen 1961).

Southern pine timbers measuring 3 by 6 and 4 by 8 inches are kiln-dried prior to conversion into treated flooring blocks. One manufacturer dries 8- and 10-foot lengths on a 10-day schedule.

Time in each step	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb temperature
<i>Days</i>	°F.	
2	140	125
2	150	130
2	160	135
2	170	138
2 (Approx.)	180	140

The timbers usually exceed 60-percent moisture content when charged; the 180° final step is prolonged if necessary to reduce the wettest samples to 18-percent moisture content.

Two commercial kiln schedules for partially air-dried crossarms are at hand. J. S. Mathewson in 1957 observed that 4½- by 5½-inch southern pine crossarms 8 feet long were being dried in a little over 100 hours by one Georgia firm, as follows:

Time in each step	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb temperature
<i>Hours</i>	°F.	
30	160	150
24	170	150
24	180	150
24	190	150
10-12	195	175

Final moisture content at 1-inch depth was 17 to 22 percent. Smaller crossarms took 10 to 12 hours less time.

Using somewhat lower temperatures, a Florida manufacturer took 137 hours to kiln-dry 3½- by 4½-inch, partially-air-dried crossarms, as follows:

Time in each step	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb temperature
<i>Hours</i>	°F.	
69	135	125
24	145	125
29	150	125
15	165	132

The foregoing schedules dry crossarms adequately for preservative treatment, i.e., to about 25-percent moisture content. If timbers are to be kiln-dried to 10 or 15 percent, longer schedules are required. Gerhards (1968) dried green 4- by 8-inch southern pine beams in a laboratory kiln with a mild schedule that started at 130° F. dry-bulb with 5° F. wet-bulb depression and ended 31 days later at 150° F. dry-bulb with 30° F. wet-bulb depression. This schedule was followed by 30 days of conditioning at 75° F. and 64-percent relative humidity. At the end of the 61-day period, moisture contents for shells of the beams ranged from 10 to 14 percent with an average of 11.5 percent. Core moisture contents ranged from 11 to 17 percent and averaged 13.4 percent.

POLES AND PILING

As is the case with heavy timbers, most poles and piles are not usually kiln-dried. Before they are given preservative treatment, they are conditioned by steam (sec. 20-4), vapor-dried (sec. 20-7), or air-dried (sec. 20-1). Materials of this size do not need to be completely free from seasoning checks.

A few firms do kiln-dry poles. Table 20-14 shows the 14-day schedule used by one Mississippi firm to dry poles to approximately 35-percent moisture content in gas-fired, track-type kilns with external blowers. Shorter schedules are more common, however.

A 7-day schedule has been used successfully to kiln-dry 10½-inch pile segments; the schedule was cited as typical of industrial practice (Wilkinson 1968, p. 22).

Time in each step	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb temperature
<i>Hours</i>	<i>°F.</i>	
24	134	120
47	144	120
47	153	120
46	165	120

Kiln-dried poles and piles are generally steamed 1 to 4 hours before starting preservative treatment.

Shorter and more severe schedules for drying southern poles prior to creosoting were tested around 1940 by Segelken (1941, 1942). To dry class 5 poles (25 and 40 feet in length) to 25-percent moisture content in 130 hours, the initial dry-bulb temperature of 140° F. was increased more or less linearly to 195° F. during the first 95 hours and then maintained at 195° F. for the final 35 hours; relative humidity was raised to 90 percent in the first 24 hours and then decreased more or less linearly to 30 percent by the end of the 130-hour run. During this time moisture content dropped from 66 percent to 25 percent. Weight per cubic foot

TABLE 20-14.—*Time-based kiln schedule for southern pine poles*¹

Time in each step (days)	Dry-bulb temperature	Wet-bulb temperature	Relative humidity	E.m.c.
	<i>°F.</i>		<i>Percent</i>	
2.....	130	120	73	12.1
2.....	140	120	54	8.0
2.....	150	120	41	5.8
8.....	160	120	31	4.3

¹ Srepetis, G. Schedule for southern pine poles. Unpublished memorandum. USDA Forest Service. State and Private Forestry, Alexandria, La., 1967.

dropped from about 54 pounds to about 41 pounds, i.e., water loss per cubic foot was 0.10 pound per hour. In this particular test, 5 pounds of steam were required to evaporate 1 pound of water. The dry poles were a dark straw color and free of gummy deposits, and checking was uniform over the whole pole surface, individual checks averaging 0.10 to 0.15 inch in width and 12 to 36 inches in length.

The following year, Segelken (1942) used a different kiln to dry a mixture of shortleaf and longleaf pine poles of classes 1 to 7 in lengths varying from 20 to 45 feet. The poles were dried from about 83-percent moisture content to about 30-percent moisture content in 100 hours by holding the dry-bulb temperature constant at 232° F. and the wet bulb constant at 142° F. During the 100 hours, weight per cubic foot dropped from about 55 pounds to about 40 pounds, i.e., a weight loss per cubic foot of 0.15 pound per hour. In this well-insulated, cross-circulating kiln, only 2 to 2½ pounds of steam were required to evaporate 1 pound of water from the poles. Both stickered and unstickered charges were dried; evidence of faster drying rates in stickered loads was not conclusive. Checks in the dry poles averaged 30 inches long, 0.12 inch wide, and 1.75 inches deep. The poles were successfully treated with creosote. No evaluation of possible strength loss due to sustained exposure to high temperature (100 hours at 232° F.) was made; however, it is probable that pole temperature did not exceed 212° F. during most of the drying period. Section 15-2 discusses the weakening effect of long exposures to high temperatures.

A milder schedule, with time extended to bring poles near the moisture content they will reach in use, has been reported. Thompson (1969) found that 30-foot-long southern pine poles, 25 inches in circumference 6 feet from the butt, and with 40-percent or higher moisture content in the outer ½-inch of radius, could be kiln-dried to 13-percent moisture content (pole average) in 160 hours with dry-bulb temperatures of 170 to 180° F. and wet-bulb depressions of 50 to 65° F. He also dried similar poles to an average moisture content of 31.5 percent in 158 hours by using initial conditions of 140° F. dry-bulb with 20° F. wet-bulb depression and final conditions of 152° F. dry-bulb and 35° F. wet-bulb depression.

Thompson and Stevens (1972) reported on accelerated drying of green southern pine poles averaging 8 to 10 inches in diameter and about 60-percent moisture content. In air circulated at 300 feet per minute with dry-bulb temperatures of 225°, 212°, and 160° F. (with corresponding wet-bulb depressions of 50°, 42°, and 40° F.) poles required about 44, 66, and 90 hours, respectively, to reach 30-percent moisture content. These times were substantially less than the 177 hours required with the control—a conventional schedule, i.e., 120° F. wet-bulb temperature and initial and final dry-bulb temperatures of 130° and 160° F., with the latter reading attained in 10° increments over several days. Modulus of rupture

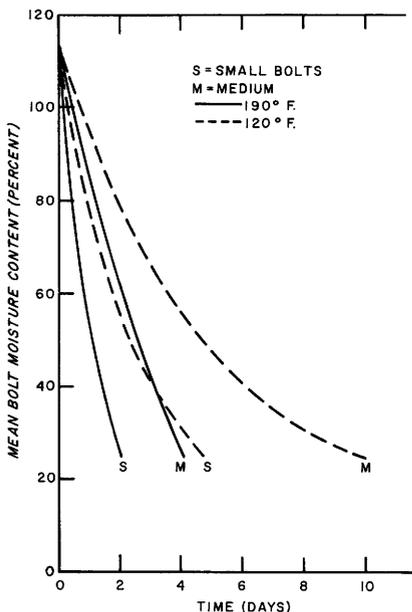


Figure 20-19.—Effect of temperature on drying time of round, peeled loblolly and slash pine bolts. Small bolts were 4 to 5 inches in diameter, medium bolts 8 to 9. (Drawing after Gaby 1967.)

of clear wood samples taken from poles dried at 225° F. was 14 percent lower than that of control samples. Strength of clear wood from poles dried at 212° F. was not significantly reduced. In commercial trials, checking patterns were similar in poles dried on accelerated and conventional schedules. When pressure treated, penetration and retention of creosote, pentachlorophenol, and CCA preservatives were adequate in the poles dried on the accelerated schedules.

Section 20-2 described forced-air drying of round, 18- and 55-inch-long, peeled bolts at 120° F. Gaby (1967) dried similar slash and loblolly pine bolts at 190° F. with an air velocity of 600 to 700 f.p.m. in a conventional dry kiln. Wet-bulb temperature was not controlled, but with vents open throughout the test, the e.m.c. reached a constant level of 3 to 4 percent early in the run. Figure 20-19 shows that a kiln temperature of 190° F. dried the bolts in only half the time required at 120° F. At the higher temperature, bolts 4 to 5 inches in diameter dried to approximately 25-percent moisture content in 2 days. Eight- to 9-inch bolts required approximately 5 days.

Figure 20-20 shows the radial and lengthwise distribution of moisture content after bolts were dried at 120° F. Two equalization treatments were tried. Soaking the bolts for 1 hour in cold water caused a moisture gain of 10 to 12 percent, compared to 3 to 5 percent during 2 to 5 days of steaming. With steaming, more moisture penetrated radially into the deeper parts of the bolt shell. Within-bolt variation in moisture content was controlled best by steaming at 120° F. (fig. 20-20); all parts of the bolts were brought within the range from 20- to 30-percent moisture content after 2 or 3 days of steaming.

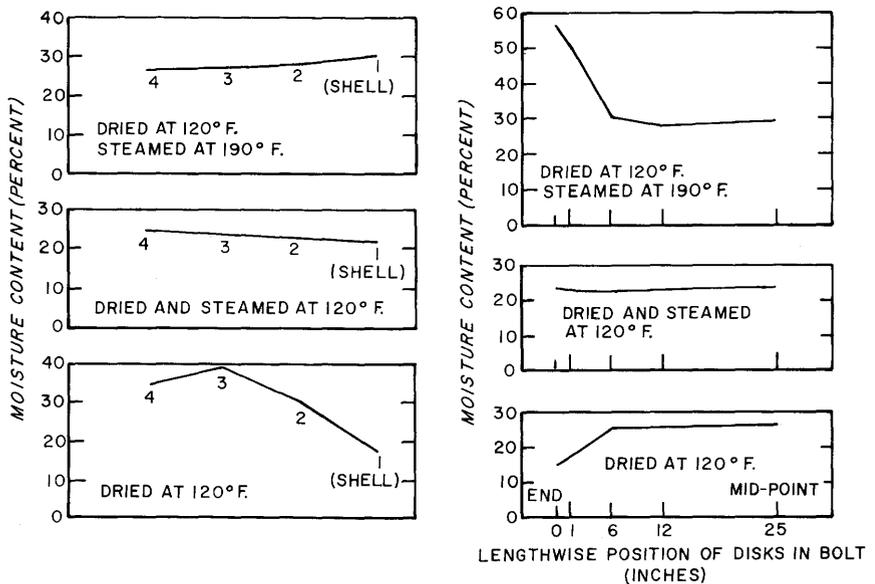


Figure 20-20.—Within-bolt moisture content distribution after drying and after steam equalizing. (Left) Radial distribution. Point 1 refers to the outer shell (one-fourth of radius in thickness); point 4 refers to the core (one-fourth of bolt diameter across); points 2 and 3 are intermediate between shell and core. (Right) Lengthwise distribution from end to midpoint of 55-inch-long bolts. (Drawings after Gaby 1967.)

At least one large surface check usually developed during the drying cycle. Steaming at temperatures of 120° F. or 190° F. caused a brown discoloration throughout the bolts.

20-4 HIGH-TEMPERATURE DRYING

Lowery et al. (1968) and Salamon (1969) have reviewed the history and technology of kiln-drying lumber at dry-bulb temperatures above 212° F. Following is a brief discussion of techniques and principles; some data specific to southern pine are presented.

There are two processes of high-temperature drying. The first uses superheated steam, i.e., steam above the boiling point of water. In this system, the steam occupies the kiln to the complete exclusion of air. The kiln, or retort, is completely sealed except for a single outlet which controls pressure buildup above atmospheric pressure. Heat is supplied primarily by coils within the kiln rather than by admitting steam under pressure. The steam can give up its superheat without condensing and thus acts as a drying agent. There is no air present and the process is controlled solely by manipulation of dry-bulb temperature. Superheated steam, like air, requires circulation to carry its heat to the lumber. Figure 8-12 shows the relationship of the e.m.c. of wood to the temperature of pure saturated steam at atmospheric pressure. During World War I,

this process was used in the Pacific Northwest to dry 1-inch green softwoods to 10-percent moisture content in as little as 24 hours. Since kilns deteriorated rapidly at these high temperatures, the process is not used currently for drying lumber in the United States.

The other process of high-temperature drying uses mixtures of air and steam. Air is brought into the kiln in the conventional manner; any steam present (apart from low-pressure steam injected for deliberate humidification) is moisture expelled from the lumber. The process is controlled by wet- and dry-bulb thermometers, as in a kiln with conventional temperatures. Table 8-3 shows wood e.m.c. values corresponding to various combinations of dry-bulb temperatures above 212° F. with wet-bulb temperature below 212° F. For example, at a dry-bulb temperature of 240° F., e.m.c. values corresponding to wet-bulb temperatures of 169, 189, 202, and 212° F. are 2, 3, 4, and 5 percent (Ladell 1957, p. 18). By 1954 over a hundred small kilns specifically designed for this process were in service (Mathewson 1954); their acceptance in Europe prompted research on high-temperature drying of softwoods at the Forest Products Laboratories of Canada (Ladell 1955, 1957; Guernsey 1957; Calvert 1958, 1965; Salamon and McBride 1966; Salamon and McIntyre 1970; Salamon 1970), in the United States (Kimball and Lowery 1967ab; Koch 1969, 1971), and in Australia (Christensen 1970).

There is not complete agreement on the manner in which moisture moves out of wood during high-temperature drying. Kollmann and Schneider (1961) classify three stages of drying. During the first stage—the constant-drying-rate period—which occurs only if the initial moisture content of the wood is above fiber saturation point, evaporation takes place at the wood surface. The second stage—the falling-rate period—occurs when free water is no longer present over all the surface and the surface temperature rises above the wet-bulb temperature. The third and final stage—also a falling-rate period—begins when the wettest portion of the wood falls below fiber saturation point and continues until all of the wood is in equilibrium with the drying conditions. Hann (1964) has also described stages two and three. A general description (after Hart 1965) of the mechanism of high-temperature drying is given in section 8-7.

LUMBER

There are no published data on the drying of southern pine lumber in superheated steam with air excluded. Data specific to southern pine are, however, available for the process of drying southern pine lumber at a dry-bulb temperature of 240° F. in a mixture of air and steam (Koch 1969, 1971; Koch⁴).

⁴ Koch, P. Effects of wet-bulb depression, board thickness and specific gravity, and circulation velocity on time required to dry southern pine lumber at 240° F. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-2.31 dated December 30, 1971.

In the first of two experiments, Koch (1971) compared 8-foot 2 by 4's (studs) conventionally stacked and kiln-dried on a mild schedule with temperatures not exceeding 180° F. (air velocity of 500 f.p.m.) with 2 by 4's dried on a high-temperature schedule; studs dried at high temperature were mechanically restrained against warp.

The 24-hour, high-temperature schedule was simple. The green lumber was clamped rigidly in aluminum frames, in almost total mechanical restraint against crook, bow, and twist (fig. 20-21). Still in frames, the studs were wheeled into the preheated kiln and dried for 21 hours at a dry-bulb temperature of 240° F. and a wet-bulb temperature of 160° F. Then, for the last 3 hours they were steamed at a dry-bulb temperature of 195° F. and a wet-bulb temperature of 185° F. Throughout the 24 hours, air was cross-circulated at 1,000 f.p.m.; direction of airflow was reversed every 75 minutes. Weight of charge together with energy consumption for heat, humidity control (steam spray), and fan were continuously charted against time. With the schedule completed, the studs were wheeled from the kiln and cooled under restraint for 48 hours in an atmosphere that ranged from 70 to 80° F. and 40- to 60-percent relative humidity.

To insure inclusion of juvenile wood in the kiln charges, half the lumber to be dried was cut from cores residual from steamed veneer logs and the remainder cut from very small logs. Lumber from these two sources was dried separately during the experiment. Prior to drying, the green studs were planed to uniform thickness ($1\frac{7}{8}$ inches) and width (4 inches).

Ending moisture content for the low-temperature charges averaged 11.8 percent, whereas the high-temperature charges averaged 9.1 percent at the finish (fig. 20-22).

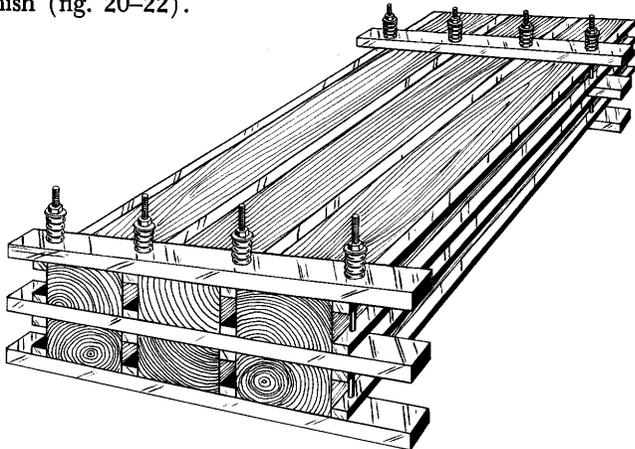


Figure 20-21.—Experimental setup provided restraint against warp during high-temperature drying. Longitudinal strips visible between 2 by 4's prevented excessive crook. Spring-loaded bolts running through the strips, from top to bottom of the pile, prevented excessive twist and bow. The studs were 8 feet long, 4 inches wide, and $1\frac{7}{8}$ inches thick. Aluminum cross stickers were spaced 2 feet apart and measured $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch thick and $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches wide. (Drawing after Koch 1971.)

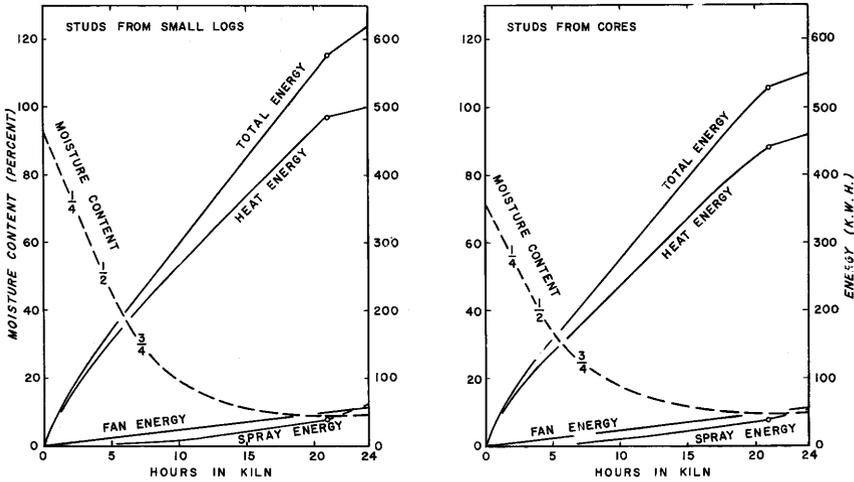


Figure 20-22.—Moisture content change and kilowatt-hour demand by 24-stud charge first dried 21 hours with dry- and wet-bulb temperatures of 240° and 160° F., and then steamed 3 hours with dry- and wet-bulb temperatures of 195° and 185° F. Air cross-circulated at 1,000 f.p.m. Lumber was 1 7/8 inches thick. Moisture contents were calculated from the green and oven-dry weights of each entire charge. Data from three charges were averaged to derive each curve. Numbers inset in moisture content curve indicate time to one-fourth, one-half, and three-fourths of total moisture loss. (Drawings after Koch 1971.)

Moisture content 48 hours after discharge from kiln

	High-temperature schedule	Low-temperature schedule
	----- Percent -----	
Studs from veneer cores		
Average.....	9.3	11.8
Standard deviation...	3.3	2.4
Range.....	5.4-21.2	2.1-21.7
Studs from small logs		
Average.....	8.9	11.7
Standard deviation...	3.2	2.7
Range.....	5.2-21.2	5.3-21.3

In general, the high-temperature schedule took less than one-fourth the time and about one-half the energy required for the low-temperature schedule (table 20-15).

While cheaper energy sources are available to most commercial kilns, the electric power used in the study for both heating and air circulation afforded valid and convenient comparisons of energy required. Largely because it took less time, requirements for the high-temperature schedule were lower. Thus power for fan motors in the high-temperature schedule, despite the 1,000-f.p.m. circulation rate, was only about half that for the low-temperature schedule. The longer, low-temperature schedule, with its high initial humidities, required five times as much energy for humidity

TABLE 20-15.—Time and energy expended to kiln-dry each charge of 24 southern pine studs cut from veneer cores and small logs¹ (Koch 1971)

Expenditure	High temperature		Low temperature ²	
	From cores	From small logs	From cores	From small logs
Time, hours.....	24	24	102	113
Energy, k.w.h.				
Heat ³	442	500	700	790
Humidity control ⁴	54	61	295	290
Fan.....	55	57	107	119
Total.....	551	618	1102	1199

¹ Each figure is the average for three charges.

² Approximately the schedule shown in table 20-3.

³ Supplied by electric resistance-type heating coils.

⁴ Steam for humidification was provided by electric immersion heaters in a water bath.

control, and more than 1½ times as much for heat, as the high-temperature schedule.

Of course, results with this very small experimental kiln cannot be scaled directly to a commercial kiln, but the trends are evident. In experiments in Europe, Keyleworth (1952) found that a high-temperature kiln using air-steam mixtures required 1.2 to 1.5 kilowatt-hours per kilogram (2.2 pounds) of water evaporated; this compared with 2 to 4 kilowatt hours for low-temperature drying. The lower energy requirements were attributed to lower heat loss, lower heat capacity of the construction materials, and the shorter drying time in the high-temperature kiln.

Koch (1971) found that studs dried under restraint at high temperature warped significantly less than those conventionally stickered and dried at low temperature. Warp in the studs was measured 48 hours out of the kiln, just before planing, after planing, after a 20-day humid cycle (81° F. dry-bulb and 78° wet-bulb temperature) during which the studs were individually and freely suspended from hooks placed in one end, and after a 20-day dry cycle (130° F. dry-bulb and near 80° wet-bulb temperature). The differences charted in figure 20-23 were significant at all stages of manufacture.

Warp measured immediately after planing largely determines the mill grade and selling price of studs. Average values at this stage were:

Warp	High temperature, restrained	Low temperature, unrestrained
	----- Inch -----	
Crook.....	0.12	0.23
Bow.....	.21	.29
Twist.....	.09	.24

When studs are incorporated in buildings, they are frequently exposed

--- UNRESTRAINED, LOW TEMPERATURE
 — RESTRAINED, HIGH TEMPERATURE

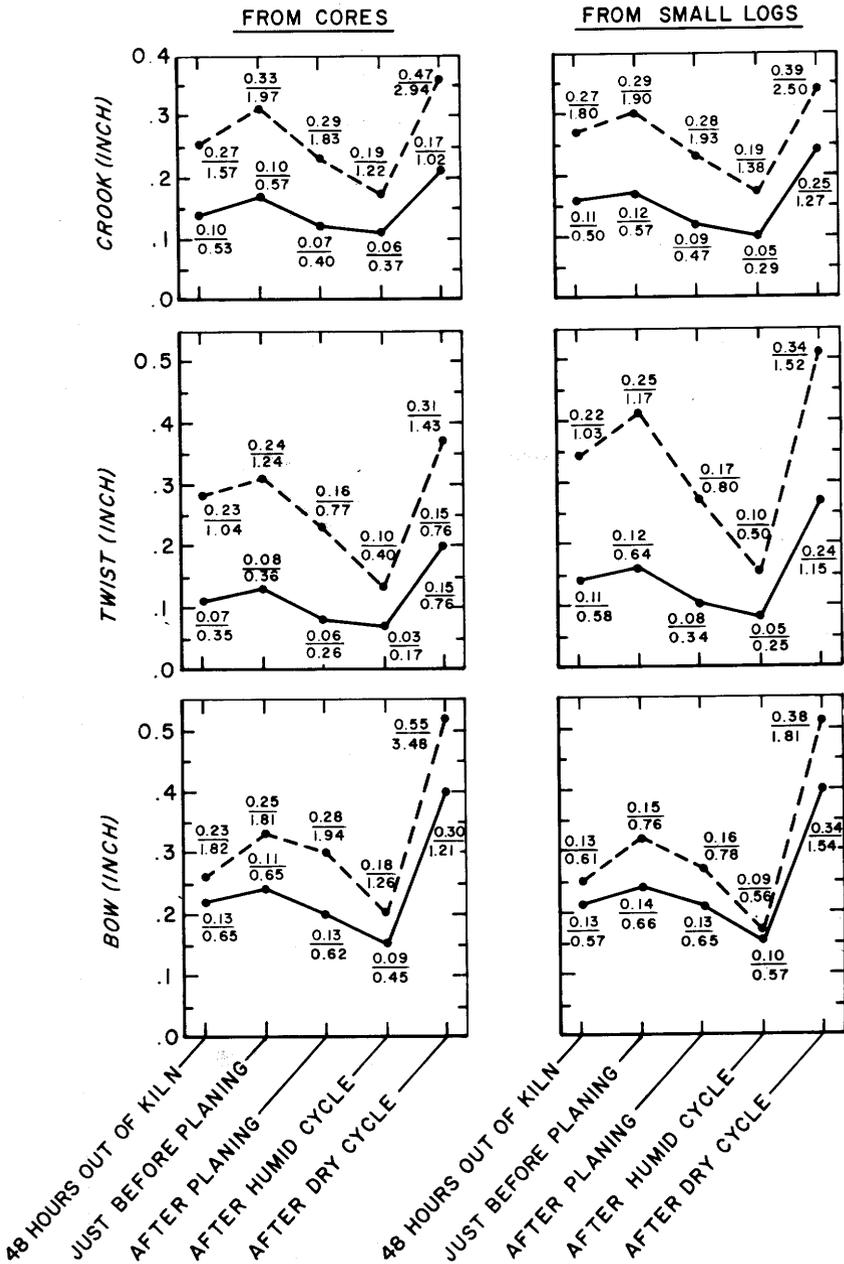


Figure 20-23.—Warp in 8-foot southern pine 2 by 4's cut from small logs (right) and steamed veneer cores (left), when kiln-dried at high temperature under restraint and at low temperature stacked conventionally. Each plotted point is the average for 72 studs; adjacent to each point, the standard deviation is printed just above the maximum value of warp observed at that point. (Drawing after Koch 1971.)

to high humidities until the roof is in place and the heating or air conditioning system activated. Exposing planed studs to high humidity for 20 days simulated this situation; average warp after exposure was least in wood dried at high temperature:

Warp	High temperature, restrained	Low temperature, unrestrained
	<i>Inch</i>	
Crook.....	0.10	0.17
Bow.....	.15	.18
Twist.....	.08	.14

Studs built into attic spaces may first go through a period of high humidity as described above, and then be subjected to extremely dry atmospheres when heat is turned on in winter. At the end of the 20-day dry cycle following the humid cycle, average warp was severe in all studs, but less extreme in the wood dried under restraint at high temperature:

Warp	High temperature, restrained	Low temperature, unrestrained
	<i>Inch</i>	
Crook.....	0.23	0.35
Bow.....	.42	.52
Twist.....	.23	.44

On average, studs cut from cores twisted significantly less than those cut from small logs when measured just after planing and after the dry cycle. When data from both schedules were pooled, average values were as follows:

Time of measurement	Twist in studs from veneer cores	Twist in studs from small logs
	<i>Inch</i>	
Just after planing.....	0.14	0.19
After dry cycle.....	.28	.39

With these exceptions warp in studs from cores did not significantly differ from that in studs from small logs.

In general, Koch (1971) found that studs dried under restraint at high temperature graded substantially higher after planing than those dried at low temperature (table 20-16). Because 8-foot 2 by 4's of Stud grade or better have approximately twice the value of studs in number 3 and 4 grades, a tabulation is of interest.

SPIB Grade	High temperature	Low temperature
	<i>Percent</i>	
No. 1, No. 2, and Stud.....	91	59
No. 3 and No. 4.....	9	41
Total\$.....	100	100

TABLE 20-16.—Grade distribution of studs immediately following planing (Koch 1971)

Grade ¹	High temperature		Low temperature	
	From cores	From small logs	From cores	From small logs
	----- <i>Number</i> -----			
No. 1 Common.....	31	17	22	11
No. 2 Common.....	21	17	18	19
Stud Grade.....	17	28	6	9
No. 3 Common.....	1 ²	6 ⁴	20	23
No. 4 Common.....	2 ³	4 ⁴	6	10
	—	—	—	—
Total.....	72	72	72	72

¹ Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (1968).

² Had crook of 0.38 inch.

³ Warp was within Stud Grade limitations on both of these pieces, but both were downgraded to No. 4 because of readily identifiable compression wood.

⁴ Three of the 10 studs in grades 3 and 4 were within Stud Grade limitations on warp.

With data from both schedules pooled, cores yielded more No. 1 Common and less No. 3 and 4 Common than small logs:

SPIB Grade	Studs from cores	Studs from small logs
	<i>Percent</i>	<i>Percent</i>
No. 1.....	37	19
No. 1, No. 2, and Stud..	80	70
No. 3 and No. 4.....	20	30

The higher grade yield in studs cut from cores was particularly evident with the high-temperature schedule; studs from cores yielded only 4 percent in grades 3 and 4, while studs from small logs yielded 14 percent in grades 3 and 4.

The 24-hour schedule brought considerable resin to the surface of the rough, dry 2 by 4's but planing removed all traces of resin and discoloration. All of the studs dried on the 24-hour schedule developed end checks that ranged from 1.5 to 2.1 inches in depth. In no case, however, were the checks a cause for degrade.

Koch (1971) compared the strength properties of southern pine studs cut from small logs or veneer cores when kiln-dried 24 hours at temperatures not exceeding 240° F. (see fig. 20-22 for schedule) with studs kiln-dried about 100 hours at temperatures not exceeding 180° F. Since studs cut from very small logs and veneer cores contain juvenile wood of low specific gravity, as well as defects such as knots and cross grain, they vary greatly in strength.

By analysis of variance, Koch found the edgewise bending properties of modulus of elasticity, proportional limit, and modulus of rupture did not differ significantly between the two drying treatments. In all three strength properties, however, the studs cut from veneer cores were significantly stronger than those from small logs (table 20-17).

Studs from small logs had the same specific gravity as those from cores (0.51, basis of oven-dry volume and weight). It is likely, however, that knots in the wood from cores were smaller than those in wood cut from small logs. In the southern pines, the butt log (source of most veneer cores) tends to shed its limbs at an early age, whereas tops of mature southern pines (probably the source of most of the small logs) may have fairly large, live branches; large knots reduce the strength of studs containing them.

Toughness and specific gravity of clear wood cut from the studs did not differ significantly (0.05 level) between the two drying treatments. Each value in the following tabulation represents data from 72 studs (two replications per stud); average moisture content at test was 8.6 percent with standard deviation of 0.5 and range from 7.1 to 11.4 percent.

Property	High temperature		Low temperature	
	From cores	From small logs	From cores	From small logs
Toughness, inch-pounds				
Average-----	202	191	200	183
Standard deviation---	71	75	77	63
Range-----	56-402	59-355	79-268	61-338
Specific gravity (basis of volume at test and oven-dry weight)				
Average-----	0.52	0.52	0.52	0.52
Standard deviation---	.06	.08	.08	.10
Range-----	.41-.70	.38-.72	.40-.85	.37-.89

Clear wood in studs from veneer cores was significantly tougher (201 inch-pounds) than clear wood in studs from small logs (187 inch-pounds). Since the specific gravities did not differ significantly, an explanation of this result is not readily seen.

In further experiments, Koch⁴ obtained information about the effects of air velocity, lumber thickness, and wet-bulb depression. A total of 108 kilnloads (24 boards per load) of southern pine lumber was dried at 240° F. in an air-steam mixture. Boards were 8 feet long, 4 inches wide, and planed green to exact thicknesses of 1.9, 1.5, and 1.0 inches. Prior to drying, the lumber was stored in water, and therefore green moisture content was somewhat above normal—it averaged about 120 percent.

Air velocity.—Air velocities tested were 510 and 930 feet per minute. In the early stages of drying, moisture content was reduced more rapidly

TABLE 20-17.—Comparison of edgewise-bending properties of southern pine studs cut from small logs or veneer cores when kiln-dried for 24 hours at temperatures not exceeding 240° F. or for about 100 hours at temperatures not exceeding 180° F.^{1 2} (Koch 1971)

Property ³	High temperature		Low temperature	
	From cores	From small logs	From cores	From small logs
	----- P.s.i. -----			
Modulus of elasticity				
Average.....	1,624,000	1,457,000	1,630,000	1,510,000
Standard deviation....	393,000	433,000	498,000	496,000
Range.....	812,000-2,585,000	594,000-2,828,000	550,000-2,692,000	584,000-2,858,000
Proportional limit				
Average.....	5,050	4,650	5,390	4,740
Standard deviation....	1,850	1,770	2,190	1,950
Range.....	1,490-9,130	1,090-9,600	1,180-10,000	1,100-10,220
Modulus of rupture				
Average.....	6,980	6,520	7,540	6,560
Standard deviation....	3,330	3,020	3,620	3,290
Range.....	1,600-17,100	1,960-13,820	1,450-16,725	1,630-18,210

¹ Each average value shown represents data from 72 studs. Average moisture content at test was 7.6 percent with range from 6.1 to 9.6 percent.

² Studs cut from cores or small logs, dried at either high or low temperature; all averaged 0.51 specific gravity (basis of oven-dry volume and weight).

³ For all three properties, values for studs from cores were significantly higher than values for studs from small logs; the kiln schedules, however, did not significantly (0.05 level) affect values. Interactions were not significant.

at the high velocity (fig. 20-24). For example, the 1.9-inch lumber (stud thickness) at 80° wet-bulb depression, was brought to about 60 percent moisture content after 5 hours in high-velocity air. In low-velocity air similar boards were near 80 percent after 5 hours. This early advantage is reflected in the number of hours required to reach 10 percent moisture

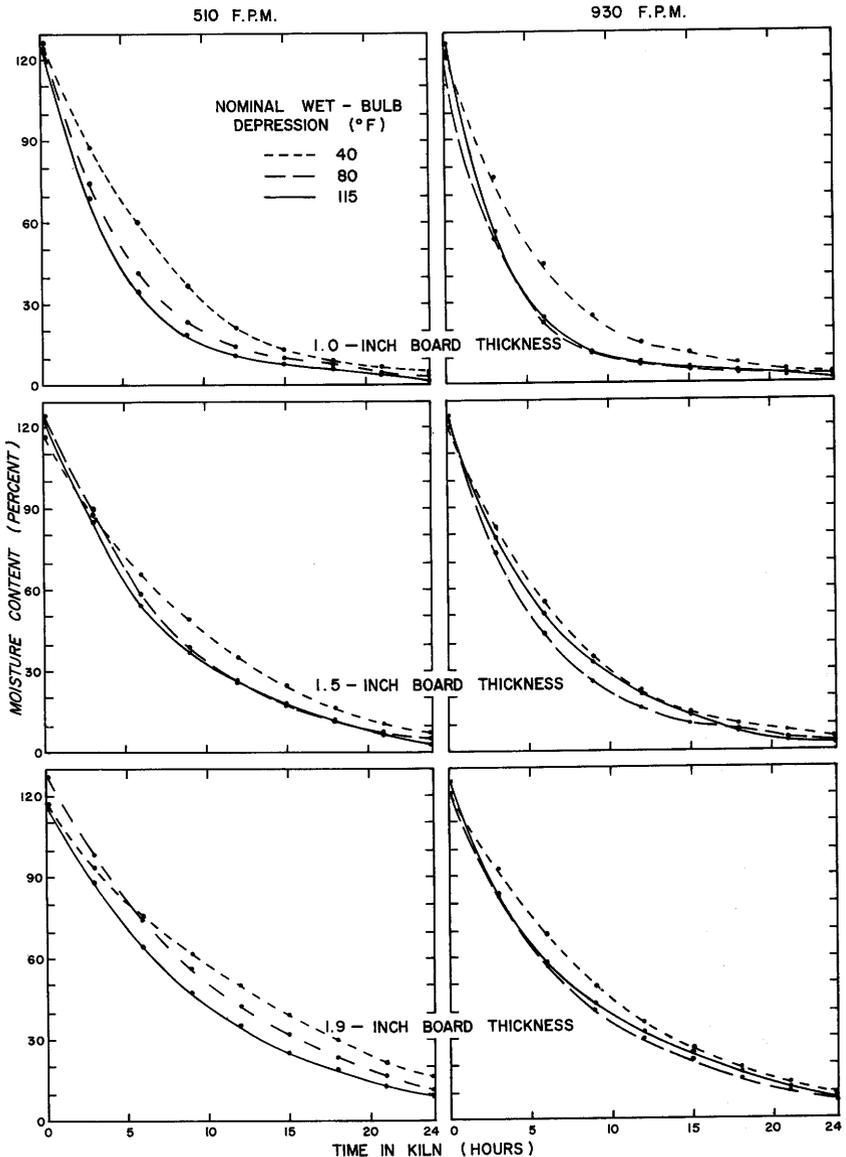


Figure 20-24.—Moisture content changes in 24-board charges of 4-inch-wide southern pine lumber dried at 240° F. in air-steam mixtures circulated at 510 f.p.m. (left) and 930 f.p.m. (right) as affected by board thickness and wet-bulb depression. Circulation velocities were measured at 70° F. Each curve is based on data from six kiln loads. (Drawing after Koch⁴.)

content—that is, 21 hours at the high velocity and nearly 25 hours at the low velocity (fig. 20-25, bottom right and left).

Since Koch's⁴ experiment had only two levels of circulation velocity (510 and 930 f.p.m.), it was not possible to establish the mathematical relationship between drying rate and circulation velocity. Kollmann and Schneider (1961), however, found that in the velocity range from 230 to 2,100 f.p.m., the drying rate during the first stage of drying increased as the 0.5 to 0.6 power of velocity. In the following stage of falling drying

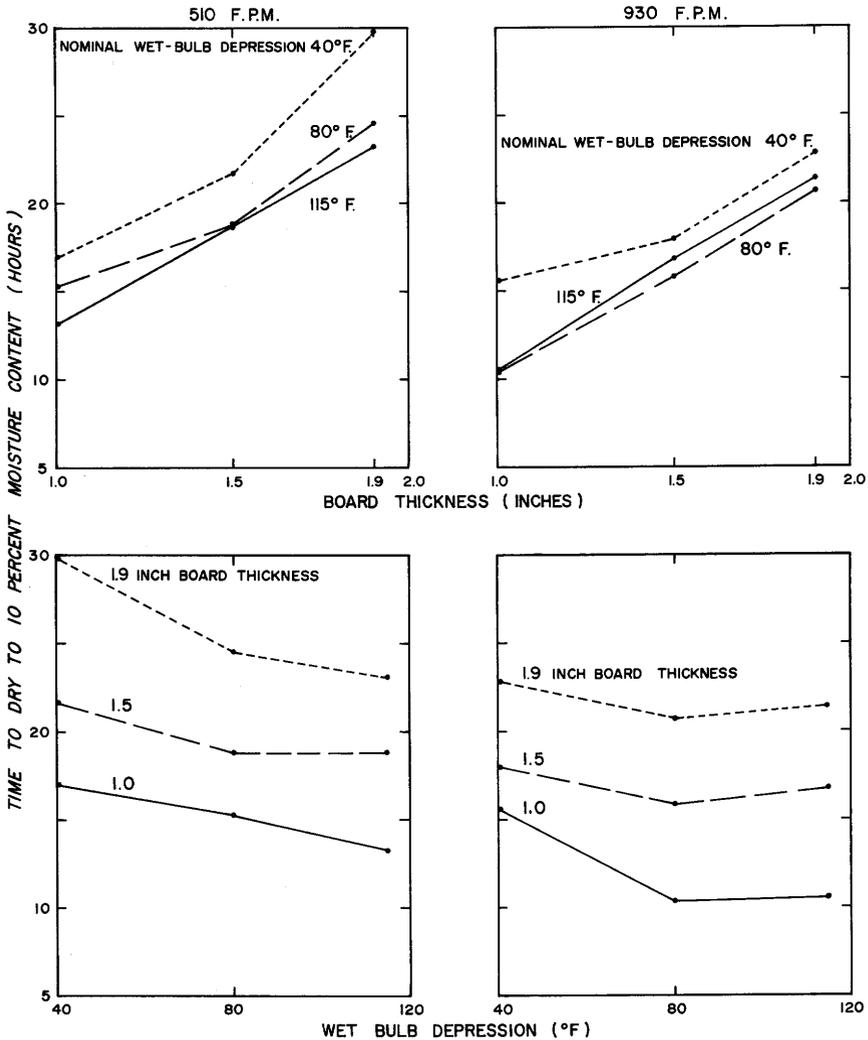


Figure 20-25.—Time required for 4-inch-wide southern pine lumber to dry at 240° F. from about 120-percent moisture content to 10-percent moisture content in an air-steam mixture circulated at 510 f.p.m. (left) and 930 f.p.m. (right) as affected by board thickness and wet-bulb depression. Circulation velocities of 510 and 930 f.p.m. were measured at 70° F. Each point is based on data from six kiln loads. (Drawing after Koch.⁴)

rate, the effect of flow velocity became steadily smaller but was still discernible at 20-percent moisture content.

Board thickness.—Time to dry to 10-percent moisture content was approximately proportional to board thickness. With high air velocity and large wet-bulb depressions the relationship was nearly linear (fig. 20-25, top right).

Wet-bulb depression.—Three wet-bulb depressions were tested. A depression of 80° caused substantially faster water loss than a depression of 40° at both air velocities. A depression of 115° was slightly better than 80° in slow air, but in fast air it was no better than an 80° depression and may have been slightly inferior (fig. 20-25, bottom right).

For drying at 240°, then, the combination of 80° wet-bulb depression and the 930-foot air velocity proved faster than all other combinations tested. The times required to dry lumber to 10-percent moisture content were:

<u>Lumber thickness</u>	<u>Time in kiln</u>
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Hours</i>
1.0	10.4
1.5	15.8
1.9	20.7

Thus, wood of stud thickness was dry in 21 hours.

At the dry-bulb temperature of 240° F., time to dry to 10-percent moisture content could be expressed by regression formulas in terms of air velocity, board thickness (inches), and wet-bulb depression (°F.):

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{For air velocity of 510 f.p.m.} && (20-1) \\
 &\text{Time in hours} = 10.83 \\
 &\quad + 11.69 \quad (\text{board thickness}) \\
 &\quad - 0.1503 \quad (\text{wet-bulb depression}) \\
 &\quad + 0.0005776 \quad (\text{wet-bulb depression})^2
 \end{aligned}$$

This expression accounted for 84 percent of the observed variation, with standard error of the estimate (square root of the error mean square) of 2.14 hours.

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\text{For air velocity of 930 f.p.m.} && (20-2) \\
 &\text{Time in hours} = 10.77 \\
 &\quad + 10.56 \quad (\text{board thickness}) \\
 &\quad - 0.2354 \quad (\text{wet-bulb depression}) \\
 &\quad + 0.001283 \quad (\text{wet-bulb depression})^2
 \end{aligned}$$

This expression accounted for 83 percent of the observed variation, with standard error of the estimate of 1.89 hours.

Initial moisture content and specific gravity of wood.—In Koch's⁴ experiment neither initial moisture content of the loads (range 90 to 140 percent) nor load specific gravity was strongly correlated with drying time. The experimental design did not include moisture content as one of the main factors, and therefore data were insufficient to draw firm conclusions about the effect of moisture content and specific gravity as isolated factors. Average initial moisture contents of the loads in the three gravity classes were as follows:

<u>Gravity class</u>	<u>Moisture content</u>
	<i>Percent</i>
Low	140
Medium	124
High	105

Boards of low gravity had a greater percentage of moisture content than those of high gravity, and they lost water more rapidly during drying. This generalization was true for boards of all three thicknesses at the three humidities and two air velocities tested; pooled data were as follows:

Load specific gravity class	Initial water content per load	Average water loss per load after various times in the kiln		
		6 hours	12 hours	24 hours
		<i>Pounds</i>		
Low.....	284	156	224	271
Medium.....	275	148	213	260
High.....	258	143	201	243

Energy required to dry to 10-percent moisture content.—In the electrically powered and heated experimental kiln, energy was required for three purposes: heat, air circulation, and humidification by steam spray. For the three lumber thicknesses tested, total energy required per load was minimum with 80° F. depression; air circulation velocity did not significantly affect total energy to dry to 10 percent moisture content.

Shrinkage.—Since green lumber must be sawn sufficiently oversize to allow for later planing, the amount of shrinkage during high-temperature drying is of interest. Koch⁴ observed the following shrinkage in 8-foot-long, 4-inch-wide southern pine boards dried for 24 hours at 240° F. with 80° F. wet-bulb depression and circulation velocity of 930 f.p.m.; each value is the average for 48 boards:

Specific gravity class (basis of oven-dry weight and green volume) and dimension	Board thickness		
	1-inch	1.5-inch	1.9-inch
	----- <i>Inch</i> -----		
0.34-0.45			
Thickness.....	.04	.06	.07
Width.....	.15	.15	.11
Length.....	.14	.14	.16
0.45-0.48			
Thickness.....	.05	.06	.08
Width.....	.17	.16	.12
Length.....	.13	.12	.11
0.49-0.75			
Thickness.....	.05	.06	.08
Width.....	.18	.19	.15
Length.....	.10	.12	.10

In assessing the foregoing values, it should be noted that the thinner boards had substantially lower moisture content than the thicker boards (fig. 20-24) at the end of the 24-hour period. Boards of 1.0-, 1.5-, and 1.9-inch thicknesses were at 4.2-, 5.5-, and 10.3-percent moisture content when measured.

POLES AND TIMBERS

When southern pine poles and timbers are not air-dried or kiln-dried prior to preservative treatments, a steaming and vacuum process is frequently used to condition them under limitations stipulated by standards of the American Wood Preservers' Association. Southern pine timbers are steamed in a treating cylinder for a maximum of 17 hours; poles and piles are steamed for a maximum of 17 or 20 hours. Maximum permitted steaming temperature is 245° F. (about 12.5 p.s.i.) and the temperature must be reached in less than 1 hour. The wood is then subjected to a vacuum for an hour or more.

During the steaming period, usually 6 to 15 hours, water condenses on the surface of the poles and there is practically no loss in moisture content. When the steam pressure is released, moisture at temperatures above 212° F. (fig. 20-26) moves rapidly under slight steam pressure as a pressure flow of water vapor from the wet line to the wood surface.

Vacuum is applied to lower the boiling point and speed up the flow of water vapor to the surface. The wood is cooled rapidly by the evaporating moisture; most of the moisture loss takes place in the first hour after

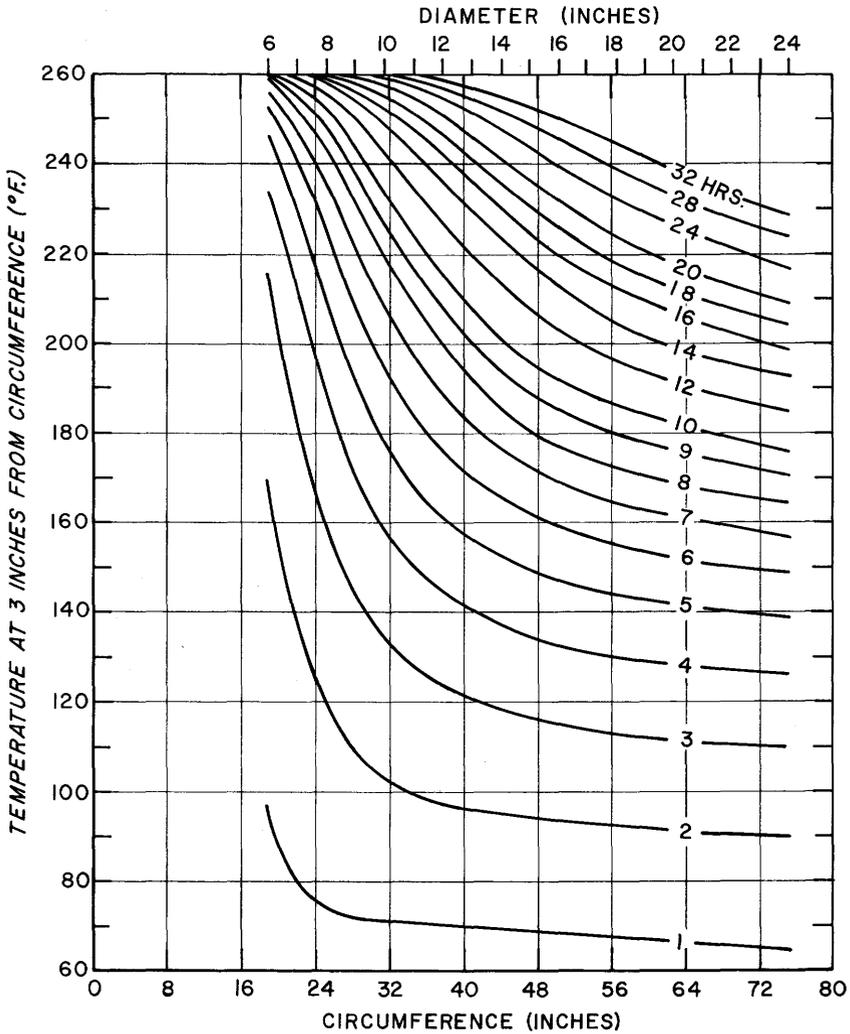


Figure 20-26.—Temperatures 3 inches in from the circumference of round, green longleaf and slash pine timbers of different dimensions, steamed at 260° F. (approximately 20 pounds gage pressure) for the times indicated on the curves. Initial temperature of wood taken as 60° F. (Drawing after MacLean 1934.) Note: Steaming at 260° F. is no longer permitted under the American Wood Preservers' Association standards. The temperatures attained in the wood at the 240° and 245° F. steaming temperatures now permitted would, of course, be lower than those shown in this figure. With MacLean's (1960) method they can be calculated from these curves.

application of vacuum. When steamed, green, round southern pine timbers are subjected to a 5- to 6-hour vacuum, 50 to 60 percent of the total moisture removed is taken out during the first hour and 70 to 80 percent during the first 2 hours (MacLean 1960). Approximately 5 to 6 pounds of water are removed per cubic foot of round, green, southern pine

sapwood by the average steaming and vacuum treatment; smaller amounts are removed from timbers, particularly if they contain considerable heartwood. Little, if any water will be withdrawn from partially seasoned wood (MacLean 1960).

Section 15-2 describes the effects of steaming on the properties of wood. In brief, wood subjected to prolonged exposure in a steam atmosphere loses weight and strength, becomes discolored, and undergoes chemical degradation. It is for these reasons that limitations are placed on the severity of steam-drying schedules. (For air-steam drying see p. 986.)

veneer

Southern pine veneers in the range of thicknesses commonly used in plywood ($\frac{1}{10}$ - to $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch) are fairly easily dried; checking and warping of veneer—sometimes a problem in older dryers—is not usually serious in modern impingement dryers. Rotary veneer, which shrinks considerably more than radially sliced veneer (see fig. 8-17), comprises the bulk of production; most of it goes into sheathing-grade plywood used in construction. Because southern pine veneer is rotary-cut from logs that average about 14 inches in diameter (leaving a 4- to 6-inch core), it is predominantly sapwood. Prior to peeling, most plants either steam the logs or soak them in hot water to improve cutting characteristics of the wood (see sec. 19-10). After the peeling operation, green southern pine veneer is customarily sorted by thickness, length, width and grade into solid piles without sticks; it remains in these solid piles for a period of hours, or days, until routed to the dryer. Moisture content of green veneers at the dryer commonly ranges from 40 to 180 percent; an average of nearly 120 percent is not unusual. (Sec. 8-1 contains a discussion of range in the moisture content of southern pine wood.) In one study of southern pine veneer cut in east Texas, an average moisture content of 114 percent was observed; sorting prior to drying according to weight of water per unit volume of green veneer was proposed for more uniform drying and increased dryer output (Walters 1970).

Dry veneers (for sheathing) are spread with phenol-formaldehyde glue, assembled into several-ply panels, and the glue cured in a hot press at about 285° F. Glue adds moisture to the veneer. Because panels that are too moist will suffer steam blows in the hot press, veneer must be quite dry before the glue is spread; moisture contents from 2 to 5 percent are common. Veneer dried to a slightly higher moisture content can be used with glues formulated with minimum water.

Jet dryers (fig. 20-27) are used by virtually all the plants. In this dryer design, the long (about 14 feet) top and bottom feed rolls are approximately 4 inches in diameter and the roll pairs are spaced about 1 foot apart along the length of the dryer. Between each roll pair, curtains of hot air impinge vertically on both the top and bottom surfaces of the

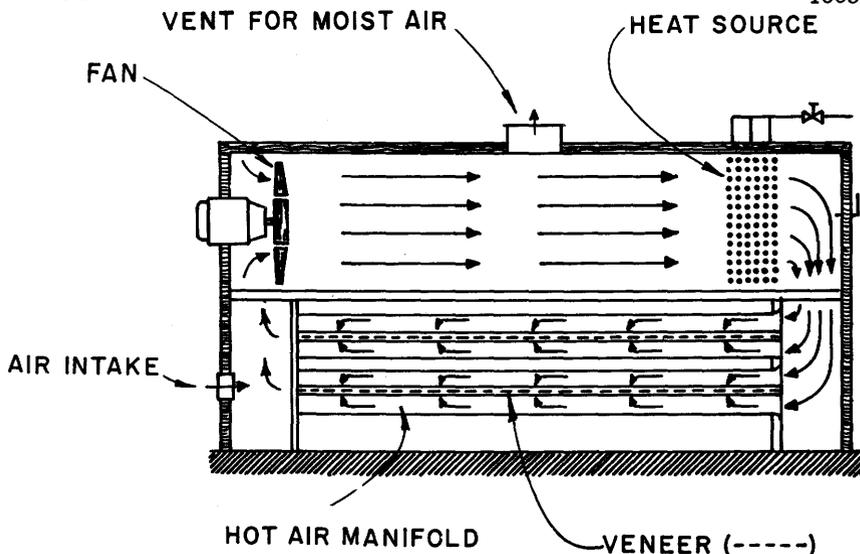


Figure 20-27.—Schematic cross section (transverse to veneer flow) through a two-deck, impingement-jet dryer. Heat can be applied by steam coils, but direct-gas-fired dryers are more common. Long slits in the hot-air manifolds cause curtains of hot air to impinge vertically at high velocity on both top and bottom surfaces of the moving veneer. (Drawing after Fessel 1964.)

veneer as it moves through the dryer. The air travels at very high velocity—usually 2,000 to 4,000 f.p.m. The dryers are arranged with multiple decks so that several layers of veneer flow simultaneously through the machine; four-deck dryers are in common use. The dryers are made in sections so that length is variable. A common arrangement incorporates four sections, each with conditions under separate control; the first three sections are used for drying and the final section for cooling. Cooling is needed where veneer goes directly to the glue spreaders. A better practice calls for dry, solid-piled veneer to be cooled and equalized for 48 hours prior to spreading.

The number of decks, width, length, and feed speed of the dryer depend on the production required and the operating temperatures. Table 20-18 shows drying temperatures and times (for impingement-jet dryers) in common use by the southern pine plywood industry.

Experience with Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) on the West Coast (Corder 1963) has shown that about 15 pounds of air are taken into a veneer dryer for each pound of water evaporated from the veneer. In theory the intake of air could be reduced to zero, since the e.m.c. of wood is 2 or 3 percent in pure, saturated, atmospheric steam at 300° F. (Kauman 1956). Reduced inflow of air lowers heat requirements, increases attainable temperatures and dryer capacity, and reduces likelihood of fires in the dryer. Minimizing the flow of air into the dryer is generally desirable.

TABLE 20-18.—Typical drying schedules for rotary-peeled southern pine veneer in direct-gas-fired jet dryers¹

Kiln	Veneer thickness	Zone temperatures					Cooling zone	Time in dryer	Final moisture content
		Entering Zone 1	Zone 2	Zone 3	Zone 4	Zone 5			
	<i>Inch</i>	<i>Degrees F.</i>						<i>Min.</i>	<i>Percent</i>
A ³	1/10	390	375	360	-----	-----	2	8.0	Below 6
	1/8	400	375	360	-----	-----	2	10.0	Below 6
	1/6	400	375	360	-----	-----	2	13.0	Below 6
	3/16	400	375	360	-----	-----	2	13.0	Below 6
	1/4	400	375	360	-----	-----	2	15.0	Below 6
B ⁴	1/10	450	425	425	380	320	100-110	8.5	6
	1/8	450	425	425	380	320	100-110	10.5	6
B-1 ⁴	1/10	470	430	410	380	350	100-110	8.5	6
	1/8	470	430	410	380	350	100-110	10.5	6
C ⁵	1/10	400	350	350	-----	-----	70-100	6.0	5
	1/8	500	400	350	-----	-----	70-100	8.0	5
	1/6	550	400	350	-----	-----	70-100	11.0	5
	3/16	550	400	350	-----	-----	70-100	13.0	5

¹ Based on industrial practice.

² Variable, but as cool as possible; in some cases cooling air is brought from outside the plant.

³ Impingement velocity 2,800 to 3,000 f.p.m.

⁴ Impingement velocity 3,700 f.p.m.

⁵ Impingement velocity 3,500 f.p.m.

Drying rates.—Operators of veneer dryers should find the work of Fleischer (1958) useful in estimating veneer drying rates. Experimental data specific to southern pine veneer are not published for all thicknesses of veneer, but a few observations have provided some guidelines. Increases in dryer temperature accelerate the drying rate, but the surface temperature of the veneer must not go too high, or the veneer will be difficult to glue. Suchsland and Stevens (1968) found the acceptable momentary limit to be about 425° F. for unextracted southern pine veneer of relatively low specific gravity; extracted veneer tolerated a somewhat higher surface temperature before its gluability was impaired. It is probable that unextracted dense veneer will not tolerate surface temperatures above 400° F. without adverse effects on gluability. A study by Isaacs and Choong (1969) supports this conclusion.

Figure 20–28 shows the changes in moisture content and surface temperature of 1/8-inch, hot-peeled, sapwood, southern pine veneer when dried in an electrically heated, cross-circulation oven maintained at 500° F. Similar veneer, if subjected to vertical jet impingement of air at 500° F., could be expected to dry faster, and surface temperature would increase more rapidly.

The drying rate of 1/8-inch veneer subjected to jets of steam was studied by South (1968). The southern pine sapwood was dried using superheated steam over a range of temperatures, velocities, and angles of impingement. Parallel and 90° impingement (fig. 20–29) were found to yield similar drying curves, while 45° impingement was least effective. Although gluability of the steam-dried veneer was not studied, it would probably be impaired by momentarily attained surface temperatures above 400° F., as was unextracted oven-dry veneer. Therefore, a dryer employing vertically impinging superheated steam would use a high initial temperature, followed by a lower temperature for the final drying. For example, it is estimated that at 50 feet per second impingement velocity, 1/8-inch southern pine veneer could be dried in about 6 minutes from an initial moisture content of 140 percent if steam at 600° and 350° F. were used in the first and second stages (fig. 20–29).

With the apparatus shown in figure 20–29, Laity (1970) found that at 350° F. jets of air dried more effectively than jets of steam; at 600° F. and above, however, steam was more effective than air. Laity further concluded that perpendicular impingement of the hot medium dries southern pine veneer more uniformly than parallel flow.

The drying of sawn southern pine veneers planed to 7/16-inch thickness was studied by Koch (1964). The veneers ranged in moisture content from 45 to 180 percent and averaged about 117 percent. Four drying treatments were tried: a batch-type, cross-circulation kiln; a conventional roller-veneer dryer at 300° F.; an impingement jet dryer at 300° F.; and the same jet dryer at 350° F.

After 72 hours in a batch-type, cross-circulation kiln, the veneers reached

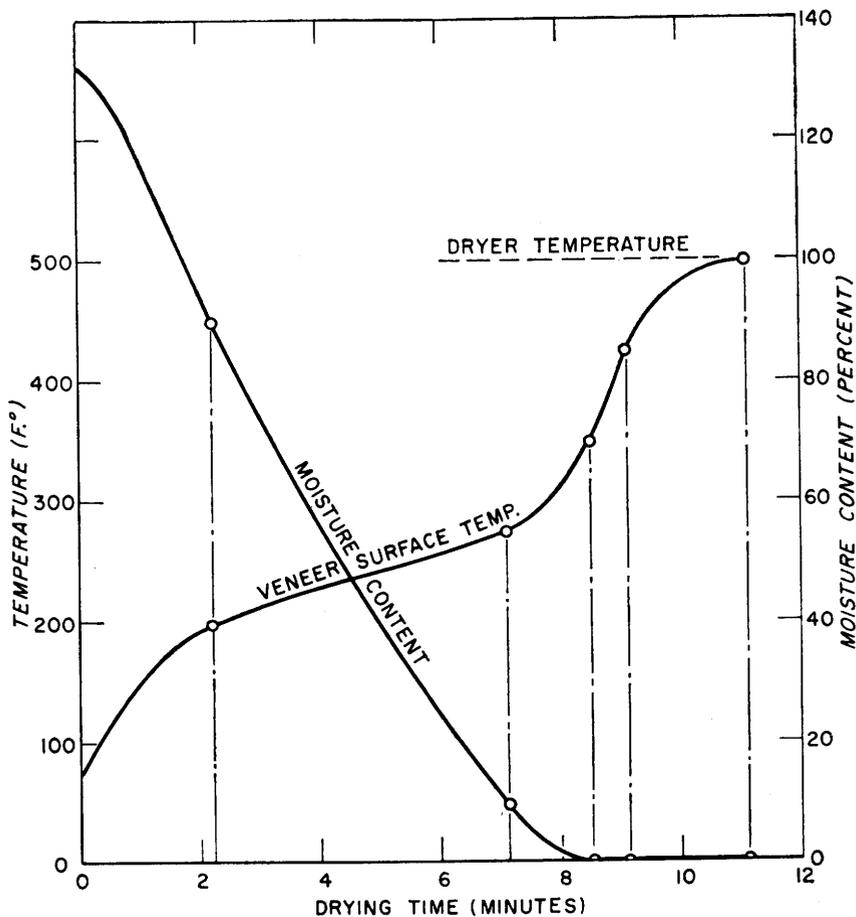


Figure 20-28.—Moisture content and veneer surface temperature for $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch southern pine veneer dried in a 500° F., cross-circulating, electrically heated oven until the surface temperature reached 500° F. (Drawing after Suchsland and Stevens 1968.)

an average moisture content of 4.7 percent with a range from 2.3 to 7.2 percent; the schedule called for 24 hours at 165° F. dry bulb and 150° F. wet bulb, plus 42 hours at 180° F. dry bulb and 156° F. wet bulb, and a final 6 hours at 186° F. dry bulb and 156° F. wet bulb. Resin exudation was spotty and light over 25 percent of each surface.

A 90-minute pass through a conventional roller veneer dryer at 300° F. brought the moisture content to an average of 4.4 percent with a range from 0 to 17.6 percent (fig. 20-30). The veneer was continuously fed longitudinally, as in a jet dryer, but the air was circulated in a counter-flowing horizontal direction instead of impinging vertically. Nominal air velocity was 600 f.p.m. Resin exudation was light but solid over a considerable portion of the veneers.

A 60-minute pass through an impingement jet-dryer at 300° F. with

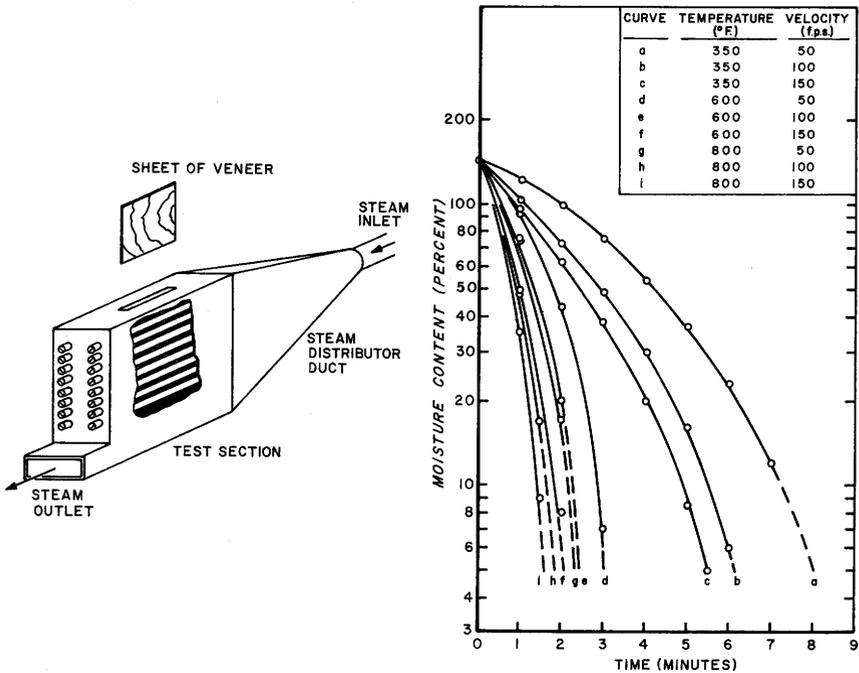


Figure 20-29.—Drying 1/8-inch, rotary-cut, southern pine sapwood veneer with superheated steam jets. (Left) Test apparatus for 45° and 90° impingement. (Right) Drying curves for 90° impingement. (Drawings after South 1968.)

air velocity of about 3,500 f.p.m. brought the 7/16-inch veneers to an average moisture content of 5.1 percent with range from 0.2 to 14.3 percent (fig. 20-30).

When the temperature of the impingement-jet dryer was raised to 350° F., all of the veneers were dried to less than 10-percent moisture content in 40 minutes (fig. 20-30). In both of the jet dryer trials, resin exudation was heavy and solid over part of the surface of a good many of the veneers.

Kimball (1968) made a comparative evaluation of drying times for sawn and sliced loblolly pine veneers in the thickness range from 3/16- to 9/16-inch. Figure 20-31 shows that the sliced veneer dried somewhat faster than the sawn veneer in an impingement-jet dryer at 300° F. Impingement velocity was approximately 4,000 f.p.m. The 3/16-inch veneer dried to 10-percent average moisture content in about 20 minutes, the 3/8-inch in about 40 minutes, and the 9/16-inch in approximately 70 minutes. To have uniformity of final moisture content, either the original (green) moisture content must be uniform, or the dried veneer must be given an equalization treatment.

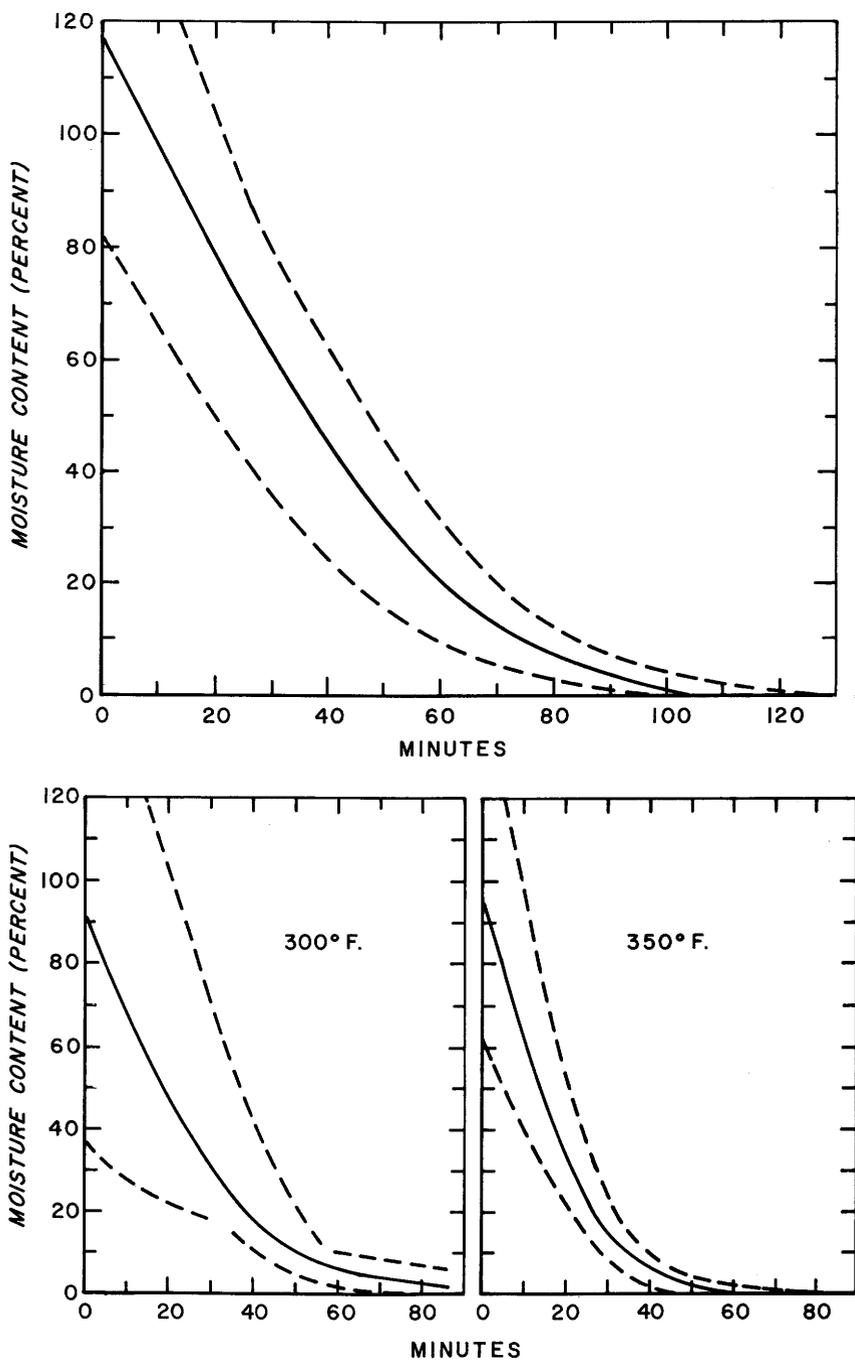


Figure 20-30.—Drying curves for S4S, 7/16-inch-thick southern pine veneers. Solid lines show average; dotted lines define envelope containing all veneers. (Top) Conventional roller veneer dryer at 300° F. (Bottom) Impingement-jet dryer at 300° and 350° F. (Drawings after Koch 1964.)

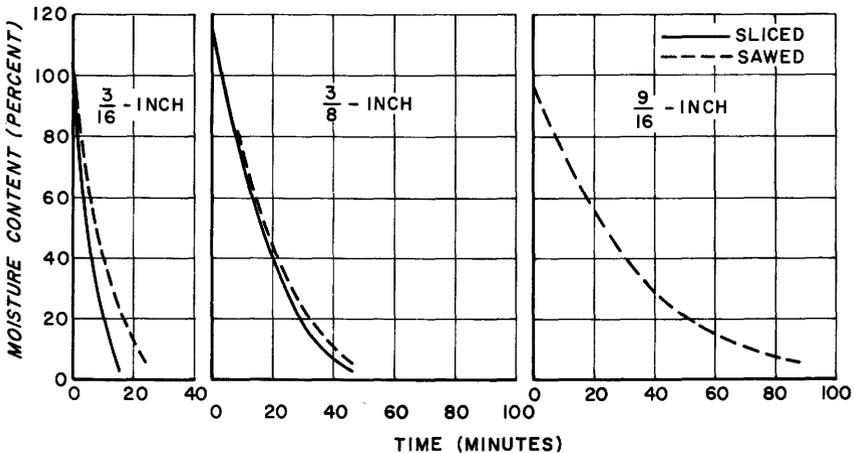


Figure 20-31.—Drying curves for 54S (sawn and planed) and sliced loblolly pine veneer in an impingement-jet dryer at 300° F. (Drawing after Kimball 1968.)

FLAKES, PARTICLES, AND FIBERS

Growing use of southern pine in flakeboards, particleboards, and fiberboards requires efficient equipment for bulk drying wood in finely divided form. Kollmann (1955) reviewed and diagrammed the characteristics of a variety of European machines designed to dry wood particles. Johnson (1956, pp. 145–153) edited an English-language handbook that included much of Kollmann's information. Maloney (1967, pp. 163–215) edited a compilation of papers that described current methods of drying wood particles.

The object of particle dryers is to reduce particle moisture content to a uniform low value of about 5 percent (ovendry basis) at a minimum drying cost. While travelling screen dryers and dryers that tumble the particles over heated elements are in use, most plants dry southern pine particles in a hot airstream (Stillinger 1967a). In these dryers, the furnish is introduced into a high-velocity, high-temperature airstream in a manner that exposes the maximum surface area of each particle to the drying atmosphere; drying time is very short.

Configuration of high-temperature flash dryers.—In the southern pine region, dryers are usually heated by natural gas. It is not uncommon to find primary gas burners with oil burners on standby in case of interrupted gas flow. Burners for finely ground wood residues may also be included in the design to reduce fuel costs and dispose of otherwise unusable residues.

Flash dryers may be classified as rotating horizontal (fig. 20-32), fixed horizontal (fig. 20-33), or vertical (fig. 20-34). In the rotating horizontal design, maximum inlet temperature is 1,200 to 1,400° F. and the entrance velocities for the inner, middle, and outer concentric drums (fig. 20-32 Top) are approximately 1,600, 640, and 320 f.p.m. The wet furnish enters

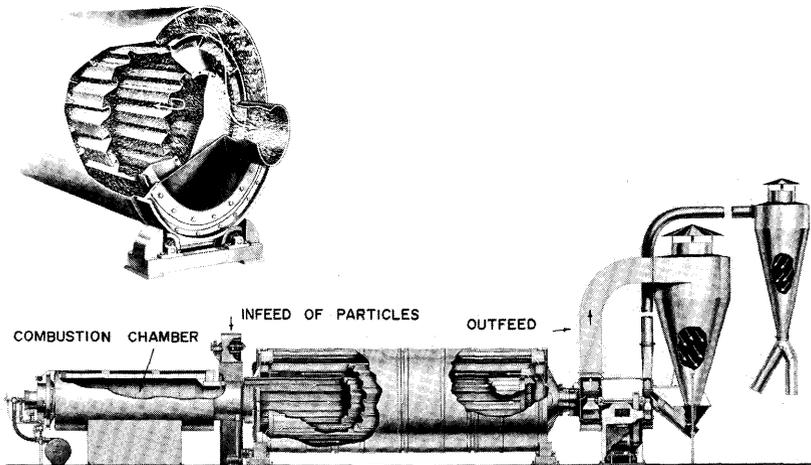


Figure 20-32.—Rotating, horizontal, high-temperature flash dryer. (Bottom) Major components. Infeed of furnish and hot air to inner drum on left; discharge from outer drum to hot cyclone (to separate hot gases from the dry particles) and final cyclone on right. (Top) Flow-path of furnish from hot inner drum to intermediate drum to cooler outer drum; baffles cause particles to tumble as they pass through the three drums. Outfeed end shown. (Drawings after Stillinger 1967b.)

the high-velocity, hot, central drum, and is discharged from the low-velocity, cooler, outer drum. Moisture content of the output is controlled by holding the outlet air temperature within narrow limits; the burner has a turn-down ratio of 10:1. With furnish having 400-percent moisture content (dry-weight basis), about 1,400 B.t.u. (British thermal units) are required to evaporate a pound of water; at 100- to 180-percent moisture content, 1,500 to 1,700 B.t.u. are required; and at 18- to 33-percent moisture content, about 1,800 to 1,900 B.t.u. (Stillinger 1967b). The dry output is normally separated from the hot gases through two cyclones before it is discharged into a storage bin.

In the fixed horizontal dryer shown in figure 20-33, wet material is fed into one end of a stationary drum; heated air is admitted through slots extending the entire length of the bottom of the drum. This heated air blows through the bed of material; the fluffing and forward movement of the bed is assisted by rotating raker arms. The slots are arranged so that the hot air enters tangentially and causes the material in the bed to rotate as it moves through the drum. The dried material is drawn out of the dryer drum, through a circulating fan, and is discharged from the drying system through a rotary air lock at the bottom of the cyclone collector. For maximum heat economy, spent air is recirculated, only enough being exhausted to equal the volume of moisture evaporated plus the makeup combustion gases from the heating unit. In this system the finer particles, which dry quickly, move faster through the drum than the coarser

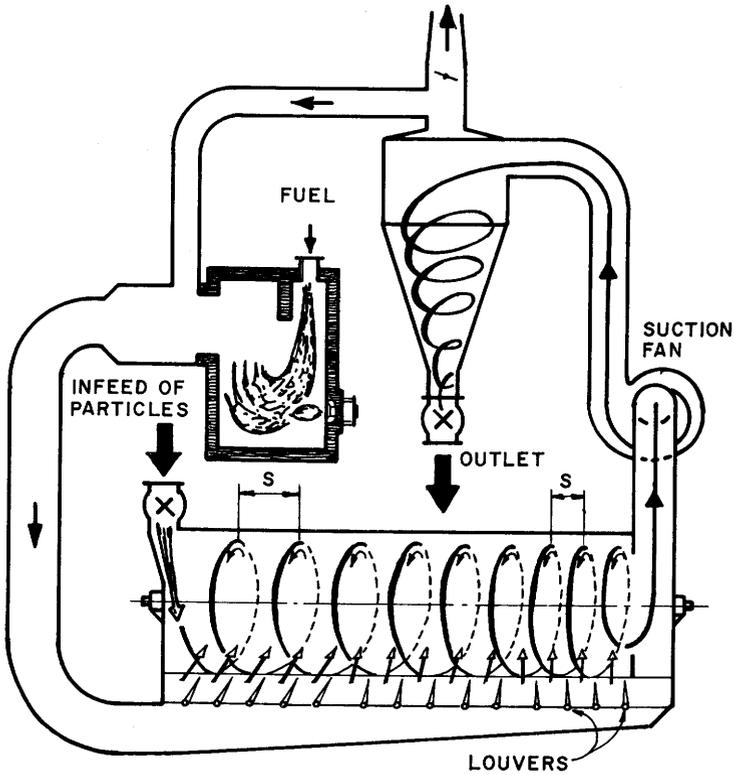


Figure 20-33.—Fixed, horizontal, high-temperature flash dryer. In this design gas (or oil) can be supplemented with sander dust from the particleboard sanders. Dimension "S," and hence retention time of particles in the dryer, is controlled by adjustment of vanes at bottom. (Drawing after Mottet 1967.)

material, which needs longer drying time. The drying process is controlled by: (1) adjusting firing rate of heating unit to regulate temperature of outlet air; (2) controlling proportion of recirculated exhaust air and fresh air; and (3) controlling vanes of entering-air slot to adjust dwell time in drum. These direct-heated dryers operate with inlet temperatures of 700 to 750° F. Energy consumption is in the range from 1,400 to 1,650 B.t.u. per pound of water evaporated, with average conditions in one West Coast plant requiring slightly under 1,650 B.t.u. per pound (Mottet 1967). A gas-fired dryer 8 feet in diameter and 26 feet long with heater capacity of 9 million B.t.u. per hour and drying capacity of 6,000 pounds of water per hour has 78½ connected horsepower driving the circulating fan, raker arms, air locks, and furnace.

In the vertical flash, or air-lift dryer, the furnish and the thoroughly mixed heated air are admitted to the bottom of a tower and discharged

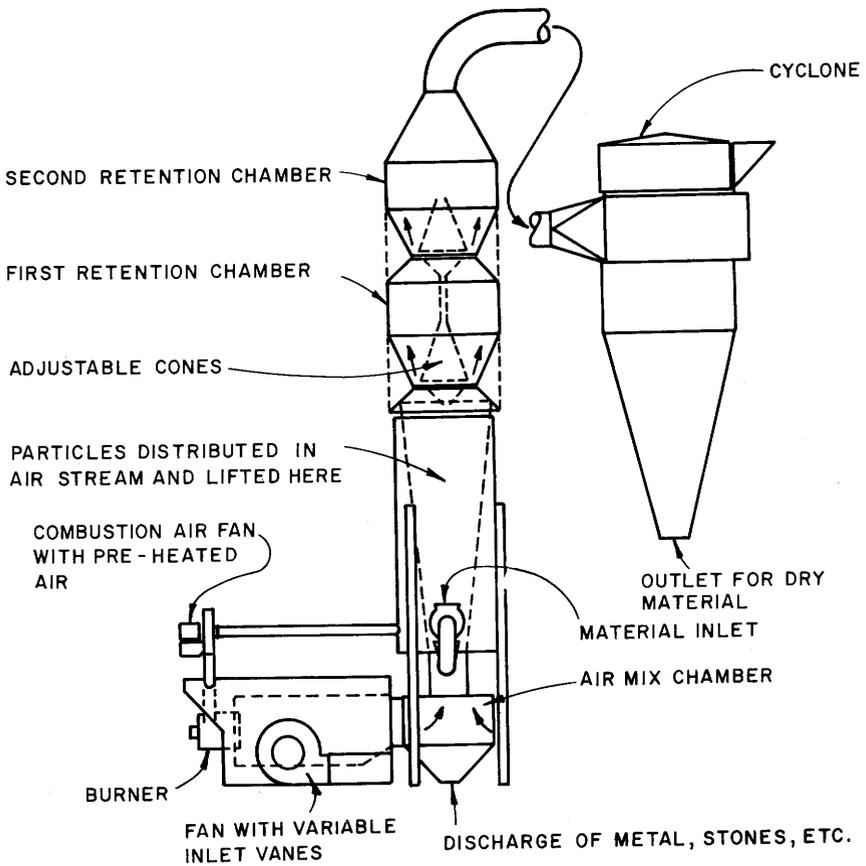


Figure 20-34.—Positive-pressure vertical flash dryer with two retention chambers. (Drawing after Lengel 1967.)

from the top. Air circulation may be positive with the fan located at the bottom (fig. 20-34), or negative—with the fan located near the top discharge. The dryer in figure 20-34 has two retention chambers in a single tower. The geometry of these chambers is adjusted by internal cones when the plant initially starts up; thereafter the cones are adjusted infrequently. After the material passes the cones at high speed, it enters the large-diameter chambers. Placement of the cones influences the length of time that particles will dwell in each retention chamber. If the particles are heavy, they will tend to remain in each chamber longer and thus be exposed to the drying atmosphere for a longer time than light particles. The two chambers illustrated give longer dwell time than a single chamber. If, however, there is a large spread of particle size in the furnish, or if large particles are present, the relatively long retention times required may call for additional towers in series.

Either fibers or particles can be dried in a vertical dryer; one manufacturer successfully dried wood fiberized in an attrition mill under 50

to 90 pounds of steam pressure, the fibers being blown directly into the drying tower. The operation is difficult to start and requires a very uniform feed because the wet fibers tend to plaster inside the dryer. The manufacturer claims good efficiency for the system once it is started because the flashing off of the steam accomplishes part of the drying job (Lengel 1967).

Initial moisture content of furnish.—Drying of fine materials is complicated by wide variations in the moisture content of wood; some southern pine heartwood has less than 40-percent moisture, while sapwood may exceed 180 percent; an average of about 100 percent (ovendry basis) is common. The source of the furnish adds further variation. Dry planer shavings or dry veneer clippings will obviously need less drying capacity than furnish from green sawmill or veneer residues. Variation in the moisture content of the furnish is, however, more important than the average level of moisture content in determining the final quality of the drying operation. If surges of very wet and very dry material follow each other, the equipment must make rapid responses in fuel input (or retention time) to adjust for the changing heat requirements. The problem is minimized when changes in average moisture occur very slowly; preferably it is solved by uniformly mixing the moist and dry material to maintain a fairly constant average moisture content.

Size and shape of particles.—At a constant average moisture content, increasing the size of a particle of a given shape will tend to increase the cost of drying because more heat is required to remove a given weight of water from large particles. Small particles dry faster than large particles of the same general shape because they have a greater surface area per unit of volume. Variation in the size of particles causes varying final moisture content because the small particles get overdried. From a practical operating standpoint, this may not present a serious problem if the dried material is kept in in-process storage long enough to allow some moisture equalization.

Feed systems and ambient conditions.—Although most infeeding devices such as screw-feed or belt-feed equipment deliver a uniform volume of material, a better system would provide a constant rate of input based on weight. With a constant volume input, the load of the dryer changes with the bulk density of the furnish. Gradual changes cause no particular problem, but sudden changes cause the final moisture content of the output to fluctuate.

After leaving the dryer, the particles change moisture content in response to changing temperature and humidity in the board plant. A sudden rise in humidity can raise moisture content of the furnish 1 or 2 percent as it is conveyed through cyclones in the necessary handling operations prior to forming and pressing the board. These changes often call for minor adjustments in dryer outlet temperature.

Contaminations and discolorations.—If fuels, particularly oil, are not

completely burned, they may contaminate particle surfaces. This contamination can impair adhesion when the particles are later bonded into a board. Excessively high inlet temperatures can char fine particles and scorch large particles. This scorching weakens glue bonds and may darken the color of the finished board.

FIBER MATS

Two different drying techniques are widely used, one for thick fiberboard mats and the other for thin mats or paper.

Thick mats.—Mechanical pressure will readily remove water from sawdust and pulps until moisture content approaches the fiber saturation point. To reduce the moisture content of groundwood to a point just below the fiber saturation point, however, requires greatly increased pressures—as high as 10,000 p.s.i. (McCarthy and Jahn 1936).

Commercially, wood fiberboard mats are mechanically prepressed to some degree and are then dried in tunnel dryers by air at temperatures from 250 to 500° F. As with veneer dryers these chambers may be steam heated or direct fired; they are commonly divided into three to five separate temperature zones. The boards move continuously through the zones on rollers (arranged in as many as eight decks or levels), and hot air is blown over the surfaces. Because of the rollers, the velocity of air over the bottom surface and the heat radiated to it, are less than for the top surface. Nominal air velocities are commonly 600 to 1,000 f.p.m. Total length of the dryer may vary from 300 to 550 feet; drying time is commonly 1½ to 3½ hours (Sinclair 1967).

Sinclair (1967) studied the drying process and described it in terms of exponential equations. Drying time depends on the thickness and density of the board, the initial moisture content, the temperature and humidity of the drying air, the temperature of the radiant heating coils, the velocity of the air over the surface of the board, and the thermal conductivity of the board. He observed that the initial constant-rate period—during which removal of water per unit of time is constant—occurred only when the dry board density was 11 pounds per cubic foot or less; for boards of greater density, the falling-rate period began immediately. Boards of high density have a low moisture content, since density is increased by increased pressing of the wet mat.

Figure 20-35 shows the drying curve for an 0.860-inch-thick fiberboard made from pine groundwood. The pilot-plant dryer was operated at 340° F. with air velocity of approximately 900 f.p.m. The board had an initial moisture content of 1.81 pounds of water per square foot of board and a dry density of 14.7 pounds per cubic foot. Drying time to 2-percent moisture content was 3.2 hours (Sinclair 1967).

In a three-zone dryer—420 feet long with average air temperature of over 300° F. (fig. 20-36 Left) and velocity of 850 f.p.m.—a ½-inch-thick

DRYING

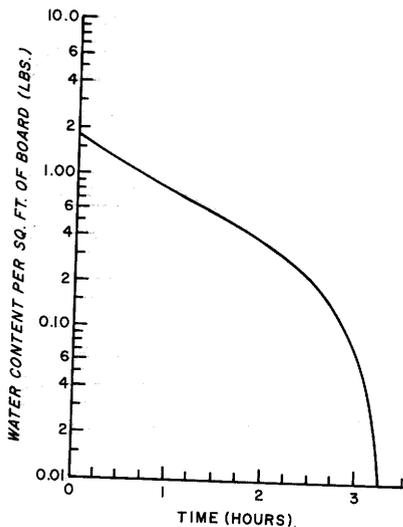


Figure 20-35.—Drying curve for 0.860-inch-thick pine fiberboard in tunnel dryer with air at 340° F. and about 900 f.p.m. velocity. (Drawing after Sinclair 1967.)

board was dried to 0.6-percent moisture content in about 90 minutes (fig. 20-36 Right); the board had a dry density of 16.7 pounds per cubic foot. Figure 20-36(Left) shows that the center of this board remained at 175° F. for an hour and then rose to a little over 200° F. during the last 30 minutes; the board surface finally approached close to air temperature (Sinclair 1967).

Thin mats.—As paper is formed on a moving wire screen by deposition of pulp fibers suspended in water, most of the water drains through the screen. The density of the fiber mat deposited on the screen varies locally

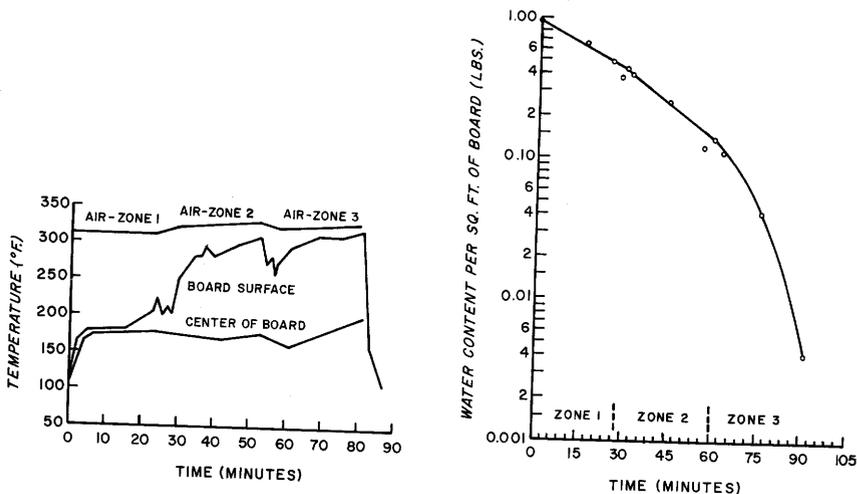


Figure 20-36.—Tunnel-drying data for 1/2-inch-thick fiberboard with dry density of 16.7 pounds per cubic foot. (Left) Board and zone temperatures. (Right) Drying curve. (Drawings after Sinclair 1967.)

to some degree, depending on the formation characteristics of the paper machine. The mat is further dewatered to near the fiber saturation point by its passage between pairs of nip rolls that mechanically press or wring out most of the free water. The dense spots in the sheet are compacted more than the surrounding fibers, but the sheet in these spots still remains somewhat thicker.

The sheet is then further dried by heat conduction as it passes over a series of large (e.g., 6 feet in diameter) drying rolls. Target final moisture content may be from 2 to 9 percent depending on product. The drying rolls or cylinders may have surface temperatures as low as 190° F. or as high as 290° F.; they are often in the range of 260 to 280° F. (Gardner 1967). The paper probably does not attain intimate contact with the dryer rolls; except where thick spots in the mat touch the rolls, a very small airgap generally separates the paper from the roll. The dense spots—because of closer contact with the hot surface and high rate of heat transfer due to density—may be overdried and further accentuate the variations resulting from poor mat formation.

The dryer rolls are mounted in multiples with the paper threading a passageway through them; felts or synthetic screens are commonly used to back up the paper sheet so that closer contact is maintained between the paper and the hot surface of the roll (fig. 20-37 Top).

The stacks or nests of rolls are all gear driven from one side (the back side); these gears with their housings often restrict airflow longitudinal to the roll axes, and hence the paper sheet across its width tends to be drier on the back side adjacent to the gears than on the front side. In addition, moist air is trapped in the pockets formed by the dryer rolls and the felt loops (fig. 20-37 Top). These traps hinder circulation of dry air to the center of the sheet with the result that the sheet typically has higher moisture content in the center than near the edges (fig. 20-37 Bottom). The problem is further aggravated by the extreme width of modern paper machines.

Metcalf (1968) has described some remedies for this problem. For paperboard only, nozzles can be placed to blow dry air vertically against the full width of the surface of the moving sheet; air jet velocities range from 3,000 to 10,000 f.p.m. Another approach calls for jets of air to blow parallel to the roll axis in the areas where moisture is trapped; depending on nozzle design, air velocities may be as high, although with light sheets nozzles must be designed for lower velocities (4,000 to 8,000 f.p.m.) to avoid causing the sheet to flutter and wrinkle.

A current and effective solution is **pocket ventilation** whereby dry air is blown through the more or less permeable backup felts; moist air is exhausted laterally out the front and back sides of the machine (fig. 36A).

While variations as prominent as those shown in figure 20-37 (Bottom) are not uncommon, Metcalf (1968) states that with proper attention to drying conditions, moisture differences across the sheet can be reduced

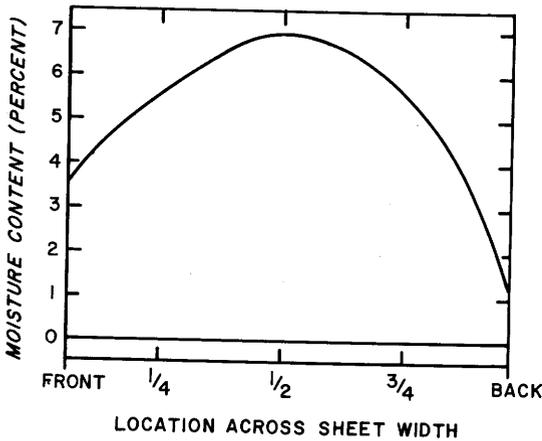
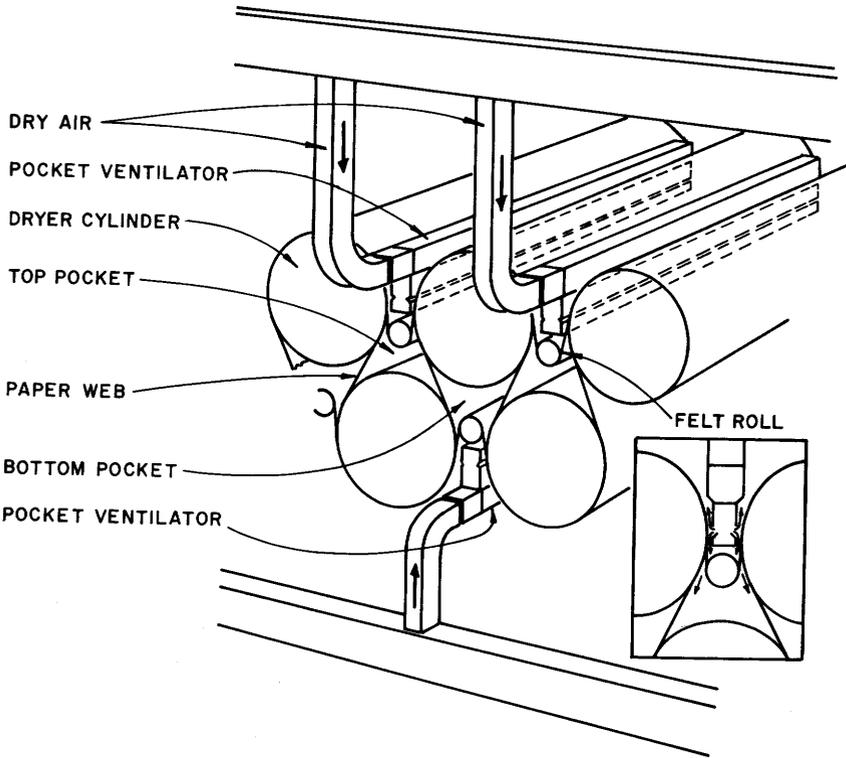


Figure 20-37.—Paper drying. (Top) Paper passes over heated drying rolls; backup felts on top and bottom hold paper in contact with rolls. Pocket ventilators even out variation in moisture content. (Bottom) Example of variation of moisture content across width of paper sheet emerging from dryer. (Top drawing after Gardner 1966; bottom drawing after Metcalfe 1968.)

to 0.3 percent. This degree of control is rare; knowledgeable people in the industry state that the best current practice when drying newsprint to 8-percent moisture content might give moisture differences across the sheet of $\pm 3/4$ -percent.

Dryers on modern paper machines are fast, large, and expensive. Newsprint running at 2,500 lineal f.p.m. might pass over 50 rolls each 5 feet in diameter and 25 feet long. Temperature of the first rolls is usually about 180° F., while the main group of rolls are heated to about 240° F. Passage through such a dryer would reduce the moisture content of newsprint from about 62 percent to about 9 percent.

The reader desiring a more fundamental discussion of fiber and mat drying phenomena is referred to Wrist (1966) and Han and Matters (1966). Other papers, that should be helpful to readers desiring additional information include: Gardner (1970), Han (1970), Hankin et al. (1970), Herdman (1970), Iannazzi and Strauss (1970), Janet (1970), Kennedy (1970), Khandelwal (1970), Race (1970), Rantala (1970), Wahlstrom (1970), Wieselmann (1970), and Rhorer (1971).

PRESS DRYING

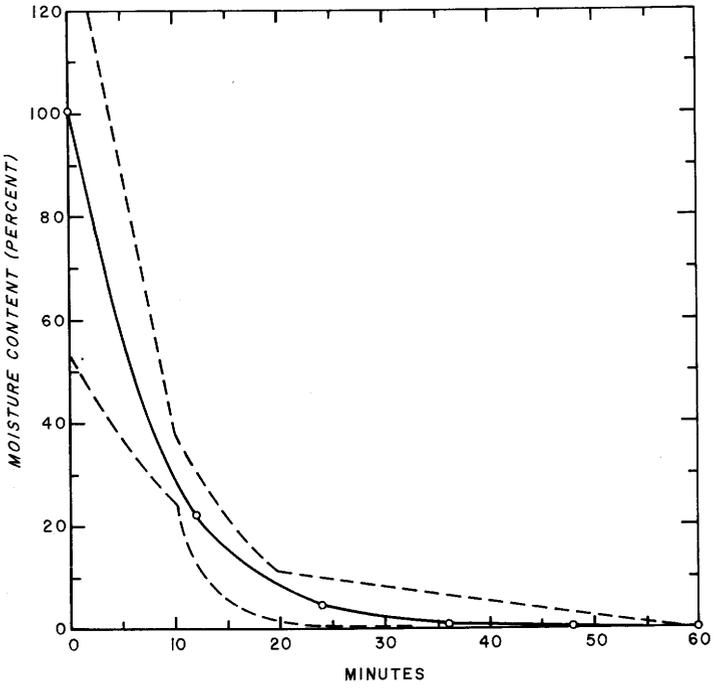
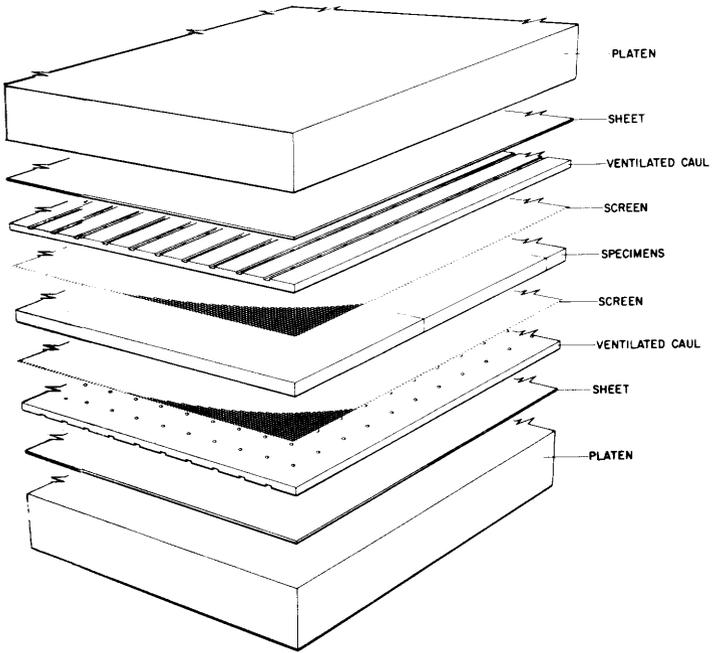
Press drying is high-temperature drying of sawn or sliced lumber and veneer; it is accomplished by applying a pair of heated platens (250 to 450° F.) to the board or veneer—one to each face. Good thermal contact between the heated platens and the board face is obtained by using a platen pressure of 25 to 85 p.s.i.

During drying, heat is transferred, mainly by conduction, from the platens to the wood, causing air in the wood to expand and water to vaporize. A mixture of vapor and liquid then moves to the surface of the board where it escapes. Ventilated cauls and wire screens have been interposed on top and bottom between the platens and the board to help vapor escape from the faces of the board (fig. 20–38 Top).

Heated platens as a heat source serve the useful purposes of holding the board flat during drying and of reducing width shrinkage; however, platen pressure and high temperatures generally lead to thickness shrinkage greater than that caused by conventional drying. Cyclic shrinking and swelling tests (Hittmeier et al. 1968) indicated that press-dried hardwood lumber was 30 to 60 percent more stable in width dimension than con-

➔

Figure 20–38.—Hot-press drying of 545 southern pine veneers 7/16-inch thick. Temperature of platens 300° F. Specific pressure 82.6 pounds per square inch. (Top) System of ventilated cauls. The aluminum protector sheets are 0.064 inch thick. Top and bottom cauls are of aluminum and measure 1/4 by 26 by 104 inches. Rectangular grooves 1/16-inch deep by 3/16-inch wide were milled on 1-inch centers on the back of each caul. One-eighth-inch holes were drilled at 1-inch intervals along each groove. A 75-mesh Fourdrinier wire screen was interposed between the veneer and each ventilated caul. (Bottom) Drying curves. Solid line is average; dotted lines define envelope containing all veneers. (Drawings after Koch 1964.)



ventionally kiln-dried material but was, in general, 10 to 80 percent less stable in thickness dimension.

Drying rates.—The press-drying process for southern pine was evaluated by Koch (1964) on 8-foot-long, $\frac{7}{16}$ -inch-thick, S4S, green veneers; the planed veneers were sawn (through and through) from heart-center cants measuring 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12 inches square. Veneers were dried in a 2- by 8½-foot, single-opening, hot-plate press (fig. 20–38 Top). Platen temperature was 300° F., and platen pressure was 82.6 p.s.i. Drying was accomplished in a single closed-press cycle of 23 minutes. Thermocouples placed in test boards indicated that the surface of the veneers reached 250° F. within ½-minute after press closure, and moved slowly up to a maximum of 280° F. during the remainder of the cycle. The center of these $\frac{7}{16}$ -inch-thick S4S veneers reached 235° F. within 5 minutes after press closure and increased slowly to a maximum of 250° F. by the end of the cycle. Within 7 minutes from the time the press opened and the veneers were removed, surface temperature dropped to 175° F. and the center temperature to 145° F. The green test veneers had an average initial moisture content of 105 percent and ranged from 36 to 164 percent. The 23-minute drying procedure reduced the average to 3.4 percent, with a range of 0 to 15.1 percent (fig. 20–38 Bottom).

Figure 20–39 shows that if loblolly pine is submerged for 15 hours in hot water (180° F.) and then sliced to $\frac{3}{16}$ - or $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch thickness, the resulting veneer can be press dried at 300° F. slightly more rapidly than planed veneer of the same thickness sawn from the same logs (Kimball 1968). Results are summarized below:

Veneer thickness and description	Average green moisture content	Average dry moisture content	Drying time
	— — — Percent	— — —	Minutes
$\frac{3}{16}$ -inch			
Sliced.....	97.0	2.2	9
Sawn.....	110.6	8.1	9
$\frac{3}{8}$ -inch			
Sliced.....	111.1	5.4	26
Sawn.....	99.5	6.9	26
$\frac{1}{16}$ -inch			
Sawn.....	98.2	10.1	48

Warp and shrinkage.—The 8-foot-long, $\frac{7}{16}$ -inch, press-dried, sawn veneers described by Koch (1964), when at the final moisture content of 3.4 percent, developed the following warp and shrinkage:

Shrinkage, percent	
Width.....	0.82
Length.....	.05
Thickness.....	8.07
Warp, inch	
Cruck.....	.11
Cup.....	.04
Twist.....	.07
Bow.....	.21

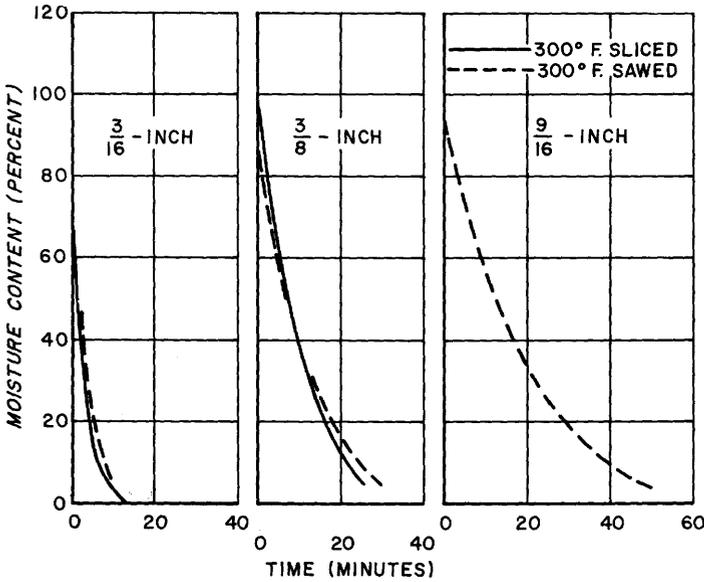


Figure 20-39.—Hot-press drying of sliced and sawn loblolly pine of three thicknesses. Specific pressure, 75 pounds per square inch. (Drawing after Kimball 1968.)

The 45-inch-long, press-dried, loblolly pine veneer evaluated by Kimball (1968) had the following values of shrinkage and warp when conditioned to a moisture content between 6 and 7 percent. Cup is expressed as the reciprocal of the radius of curvature in inches.

Veneer thickness and description	Shrinkage		Warp	
	Width	Thickness	Cup	Crook
	----- Percent -----		1/rad.	Inch
3/16-inch				
Sliced.....	0.46	11.93	0.007	0.00
Sawn.....	1.54	8.89	.010	.01
3/8-inch				
Sliced.....	.56	10.78	.007	.02
Sawn.....	1.42	9.60	.010	.02
9/16-inch				
Sawn.....	1.97	10.02	.015	.07

These data appear to indicate that sawn veneer develops more width shrinkage and cup than sliced wood when press dried.

Resin exudation.—The southern pine veneer press dried by Koch (1964) showed a varnishlike resin exudation over a substantial portion of the surface. By contrast, the loblolly pine press dried by Kimball (1968) showed no pitch exudation. The reason for this observable difference is not yet clear.

DRYING WITH INFRARED ENERGY

Heat radiated from an infrared source (see fig. 15-4 for definition) penetrates wood slowly because wood is a good insulator and because wood is opaque to infrared. Continued heating to raise the interior temperature of lumber tends to cause excessive surface temperature (hence a steep moisture gradient) with accompanying surface checks and warpage (Keylwerth 1951). In contrast with normal kiln-drying practice, where hot air circulates through the pile, infrared radiation heats only the directly exposed surfaces.

While no information specific to southern pine is at hand, Narayanamurti and Prasad (1952) provided data on a number of species of rotary-cut, $\frac{1}{16}$ - and $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch-thick veneers dried under banks of 250-watt, tungsten-filament lamps. The lamps were placed to deliver 290 mW/cm² (mW = milliwatt = 10⁻³ watts) to each side of the veneer. With this irradiation, $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch veneers required 15 to 50 minutes to dry from a green moisture content in the range from 67 to 101 percent to a dry moisture content in the range from 4.6 to 11.2 percent. In the same range of moisture contents, $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch thick veneer required 55 to 65 minutes. Surface temperatures rose to approximately 190° C. after about 10 minutes of radiation and then remained constant. Narayanamurti and Prasad (1952) conclude that: (1) with proper equipment power consumption could be as low as 1 to 1½ kilowatt hours per kilogram (1,549 to 2,323 B.t.u. per pound) of water removed; (2) less power is consumed removing free water than bound water; and (3) efficiency is greatest with thin veneers. The green veneers were defect-free, and after drying they were in satisfactory condition.

Researchers in the United States believe that 1½ kilowatt hours per kilogram (a process efficiency of 60 percent) is a somewhat optimistic estimate. Even with this efficiency, assuming an electricity rate of 3¢/kilowatt hour and a water content of 1,800 pounds per thousand board feet (M b.f.) of lumber, electricity cost per M b.f. dried would be \$36.

Kollmann et al. (1967) conducted detailed observations of spruce (*Picea* spp.) wood exposed to infrared. He concluded that far infrared was more effective than near in heating and drying wood.

If wood is exposed to radiation on both sides with natural air velocities of 0.2 to 0.3 m. per second, drying takes place more than twice as fast at high moisture content (during the constant-rate period) than if only one side is exposed. As drying proceeds into the range of decreasing drying rate (falling-rate period), the ratio between drying rates for two-sided and one-sided radiation increases progressively. If air is circulated past the specimen (2.6 m. per second) the drying rate is decreased considerably. It appears that natural air convection is adequate to take up and remove the moisture evaporated from the drying wood (Kollmann et al. 1967).

20-5 HIGH-FREQUENCY DIELECTRIC HEATING

It is technically possible to season southern pine by placing it in an electric field that oscillates at a high frequency (e.g., 1 million cycles per second) between condenser plates or electrodes. Such a field quickly heats the free water more than the wood because of the polarity of water molecules; the water is supplied energy sufficient to vaporize it and also heat the wood. In permeable woods, such as southern pine, the temperature tends to level off slightly above the boiling point as long as free water exists. When only bound water remains, the temperature rises. If these high temperatures are prolonged, they weaken the wood; local explosions or splits may result.

To date, this method of drying southern pine wood has not been of economic importance because of the high cost of high-frequency generators, power tubes, and electricity. McMillen and James (1961) estimated these costs to be at least \$26 per M b.f. when drying green sapwood of ponderosa pine or western white pine (*Pinus monticola* Dougl.) to 8-percent moisture content.

20-6 CHEMICAL SEASONING ⁵

Surface checking of wood occurs when the outer layers are dried below the fiber saturation point while the inside layers remain wet and swollen. As the outer layers shrink, they are subjected to large tension stresses across the grain because they remain attached to the still swollen wet core. Checks and splits develop to relieve these stresses; or in some cases, where the wet core has less strength to resist failure in compression than does the outer layer to resist failure in tension, internal collapse results.

Some organic chemicals and concentrated salt solutions depress the vapor pressure of water to a high degree (Stamm 1934). If these hygroscopic chemicals are applied to the surface of wood, they diffuse into the wood with diminished concentration at increasing depths from the surface. By this means, the moisture content in the surface layer is maintained above fiber saturation even though exposed to air of fairly low humidity. The inner layers, which contain no salt, continue to dry; because shrinkage is reduced in the wetter swollen shell, surface checking is reduced or eliminated (Loughborough 1948; McMillen 1960; Haygreen 1962).

Both inorganic and organic chemicals have been used as chemical seasoning agents. Among the inorganic are: sodium chloride (Colgrove 1956), calcium chloride, zinc chloride, borax, boric acid, ammonium sulfate, ammonium phosphate, magnesium sulfate, and sodium sulfate. Organic chemicals have included sucrose, dextrose, urea (Peck 1941), etc. Any low-cost hygroscopic chemical can be an effective chemical seasoning agent, but

⁵ With some changes, secs. 20-6 and 20-7 are condensed from Hudson (1969) by permission of M. S. Hudson and the Forest Products Research Society.

practically, the method is greatly restricted because of undesirable side effects.

The lowest cost chemical found useful for this purpose has been ordinary salt (sodium chloride), but it is so corrosive to equipment in dry kilns, to woodworking machinery used to remove it, and to hardware applied to the wood in use if the salt layer is not planed off, that the process has severe limitations. Efforts to overcome this corrosive effect by the addition of corrosion inhibitors, such as sodium dichromate, have not been entirely successful.

Sodium chloride and in some cases urea have been the only chemicals used in commercial drying of southern pine. With sodium chloride, shrinkage will not take place at the surface until the prevailing relative humidity falls below 75 percent (Stamm 1934); with urea, shrinkage starts at a relative humidity of 90 percent (Stamm 1964, p. 453). Urea was used to some extent during World War II to dry Douglas-fir ponton stock; large Douglas-fir timbers have also been dried in arid climates by application of urea. No evaluation of urea as a drying agent for southern pine has been made.

Southern pine less than 4 inches thick dries so readily by ordinary methods that chemical seasoning pretreatment is not necessary. There may be some items of greater thickness that would benefit from such treatment, especially timbers in which heartwood is exposed on one face. No research has been done on this specific situation, however.

In the first of two studies (unpublished), the U.S. Forest Products Laboratory dried green 5- by 5-, 6- by 6-, and 7- by 7-inch timbers after soaking them in saturated sodium chloride solutions. These southern pine timbers were essentially sapwood, with heartwood small and almost centrally located. The most effective treatment reduced the average width of the large checks that formed in all specimens after air-drying to about one-third of the width of the checks in the untreated pieces. When treated wood was kiln-dried (initial drying condition about 150° F. and 50-percent relative humidity), check width was about one-half that observed in the untreated air-dried controls. The salt absorption was 13 percent of the oven-dry weight after soaking the timbers in the saturated solution for 4 days at room temperature and 8 days at 150° F. When soaked 4 days cold and 2 days hot, absorption was 8 percent. At the end of treatment by the first method, salt concentration just under the surface was 45 percent; at 1 inch it was 11 percent; and at 2 inches it was less than 2 percent. During the early stages of drying there was further diffusion of salt toward the pith, but also some migration back towards the surface. In general, final salt concentration across the sapwood was 3 percent or higher. Very little salt entered the interior heartwood during the treating period, but some entered by diffusion during drying.

Results of chemical seasoning are best when the humidity during early drying is not too much below equilibrium with the saturated seasoning

agent. In the case of salt, this is 75 percent. Perhaps an initial relative humidity of 65 or 60 percent would have dried the timbers essentially check-free. In a second experiment, dry salt was spread at the rate of 75 pounds per M b.f. on 3- and 4-inch by 6- and 8-inch southern pine timbers to be used in the production of end-block flooring. A relatively high temperature was used in the kiln schedule, and drying time was $8\frac{3}{4}$ days compared with 15 days being taken by the regular kiln schedule. The initial conditions were 180° F. with 55-percent relative humidity. The quality of drying was better than that of untreated material in the same kiln charge, but there was checking in the pieces containing boxed heart.

With relative humidity conditions above 75 percent, metal in contact with salt treated wood has corroded (even with corrosion-inhibiting chemicals present). Salt and similar chemicals also affect the electrical properties of the wood.

At the present time southern pine is not commercially dried by chemical seasoning. No estimate of the amount of southern pine dried in this way in the past is available.

20-7 DRYING IN CONDUCTIVE HEAT TRANSFER MEDIA⁵

Drying can be accelerated by heating wood in media that have greater heat conductivity than air. Several processes have been developed.

IMMERSION IN HOT ORGANIC LIQUIDS

The boiling-in-oil process, i.e., immersion of wood in an organic liquid and then heating the liquid above the boiling point of water, is probably the oldest method for evaporative drying of wood (McMillen 1961b; Maroney 1962). Like many other processes it has been promoted for a time, then forgotten, then rediscovered later and practiced on a little higher level using better chemicals and equipment. Barksdale (1949) revived interest in the boiling-in-oil process. He boiled southern pine lumber in number 2 fuel oil containing a small amount of paraffin. The lumber was heated in the oil to 260° F. in an open tank. It took about 16 hours to dry 4- by 8-inch southern pine timbers from 77-percent down to 22-percent moisture content. Severe casehardening occurred during drying. The wood absorbed about 4 percent of its weight of the drying oil (McMillen 1961b).

About 1958 a boiling-in-oil process using non-inflammable perchloroethylene as the drying agent was promoted by McDonald (1958). The method required very sophisticated equipment; the boiling operation was carried out in a closed vessel, and the drying agent that was steam distilled off with the water was recovered by condensation and gravity separation.

Neither of these processes was commercially successful because both methods badly discolored and severely casehardened the wood. Extrac-

tives from the wood contaminated the drying agent; prolonged heating darkened the contaminated liquid.

As a conditioning process prior to preservative treatment in pressure cylinders, the **Boulton** process of boiling green wood in oil under vacuum has the advantage of relative low temperature—and hence less damage to the strength of the wood—together with the capability of reducing the moisture content of sapwood in round green timbers below the fiber saturation point. With a creosote temperature of 200° F., temperature change in round southern pine specimens is about the same with or without vacuum (about 25 inches of mercury) until the wood reaches about 160° F. Under vacuum, the wood temperature then changes but little until a considerable amount of water has been removed from the sapwood. With the creosote at 200° F., green southern pine pole sections approximately 9 to 11 inches in diameter and 10 feet long lost 9 to 12 pounds of water per cubic foot of wood during 10 to 13 hours of boiling under a 25-inch vacuum (MacLean 1960).

When the empty-cell treatment is to be used following the Boulton process—as is commonly the case with southern pine—the hot oil must be drained from the cylinder and air admitted. Southern pine has a large preliminary absorption after the vacuum is discontinued and while the oil is being drained—particularly if air pressure is applied to hasten the draining. Because such preliminary absorption takes place under approximately full-cell conditions, the preservative does not penetrate as deeply as it should for the weight absorbed. Better penetrations can be obtained with 8- to 10-pound retentions if southern pine poles are conditioned by steaming and vacuum rather than boiled under vacuum (Hunt and Garratt 1967, p. 164). Steaming under vacuum is described in section 20-4 under the heading POLES AND TIMBERS.

VAPOR DRYING

Like the boiling-in-oil process, vapor drying is an improvement of older processes. The earliest reference to the method is a patent issued to Cresson in 1865 which disclosed a very crude process and apparatus for drying wood in vapors of organic chemicals.

The vapor-drying process as it is presently used was developed by Hudson (1947, 1948) in 1940. The process is carried out in the apparatus shown in figure 20-40. An organic liquid having a boiling point between 212 and 400° F. is used as the drying agent. This would include liquids like xylene, Stoddard solvent, and kerosene. Lower boiling liquids, e.g., hexane or benzene, that have boiling points below 212° F. could be used; being immiscible with water, they form azeotropes with the water, and the boiling points of the mixtures are below that of the lower boiling constituent. Maroney (1962) has reported on the azeotropic drying of hard-

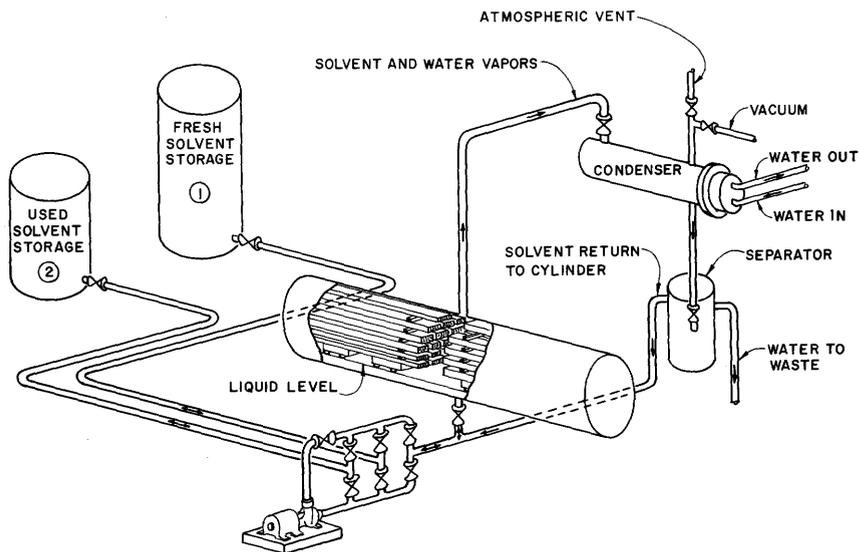


Figure 20-40.—Pressure-impregnating cylinder equipped for vapor drying and solvent recovery. (Drawing after Hudson 1969.)

woods with the solvent perchloroethylene. However, these liquids lengthen drying time, and they are hazardous because of low flash-point.

Wood to be dried is placed in a closed cylinder (fig. 20-40) and separated by stickers, as in air- or kiln-drying, to allow the vapor access to all surfaces. Drying agent sufficient to cover heating coils on the bottom of the cylinder is admitted and heated to its boiling point, usually about 260 to 280° F. Vapor from the boiling liquid condenses on the cold wood, delivering to the wood its latent heat of vaporization. This rapidly heats the wood up to the boiling point of its free water, which begins to boil off. Wherever there is free water in the wood, the temperature of the wood cannot rise above 212° F. despite vapor temperatures of 260 to 280° F., because the system is open to the atmosphere through the condenser and separator.

The water boiling from the wood is swept upward out of the cylinder by excess drying agent vapor. The vapor mixture is led to a condenser, where the temperature is lowered to about 150° F., condensing both the water that boiled from the wood and the drying agent to liquids. The drying agent is usually immiscible with water, so the two separate; the water in most cases is heavier and sinks to the bottom, where it leaves the separator. The drying agent returns to the cylinder, where it begins a new cycle.

After the wood has dried sufficiently—this point determined by reading a water meter on the separator discharge—heat is cut off, the cylinder is emptied of drying agent, and the hot wood is subjected to a vacuum applied through the separator. Under vacuum, the drying agent absorbed by the wood is rapidly evaporated and recovered at the condenser.

The approximate time required to vapor dry southern pine lumber from an initial moisture content of 100 percent down to 20 percent is as follows:

Thickness of lumber	Boiling point of drying agent	Time required to dry
<i>Inches</i>	<i>°F.</i>	<i>Hours</i>
1	240	9
3	240	11
1	260	5
3	260	8
1	280	4
3	280	7

Southern pine lumber can be dried to 20-percent moisture content with little or no degrade, but continuation of drying beyond that point can result in very severe casehardening. In addition, if relatively dry wood is held at these high temperatures for prolonged periods, some weakening can be expected.

The drying agent, whether it be xylene, kerosene, perchloroethylene, or other chemical, carries out its drying function merely as a heat transfer medium; the higher its boiling point, the faster the wood dries. However, if drying temperatures in excess of about 280° F. are used, there are increased troubles from excessive drying stresses. The drying agents, of course, must be inert with respect to the wood. The chemical properties of the drying agents seem to have no bearing on the rate of drying or on the quality of the dried wood unless they are polar chemicals like alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, esters and the like. These latter keep the wood swollen as it dries; therefore, with them it is possible to dry below 20 percent without casehardening. Because of their higher cost, however, these have not been used commercially.

Since a plant equipped for preservative impregnation of wood can be modified for vapor drying at moderate cost, the process combines well with wood preserving operations. It is used mainly to dry wood in preparation for treatment with preservatives, or to redry it after treatment with waterborne preservatives, or both. It is rarely used for drying only.

Figure 20-41 shows a typical schedule for predrying, preservative treatment, and redrying of 2- by 8-inch southern pine lumber using xylene as the drying agent. Green wood having an initial moisture content of about 75 percent is heated in xylene vapor for 6 hours. The average temperature of the vapor in the cylinder is 260° F., although the boiling point of xylene is 280° F. This is because water vapor in the mixture reduces the temperature. A vacuum of 25 inches of mercury is used to remove and recover drying agent absorbed by the wood. At this point the wood has a moisture content of about 35 percent. It is then impregnated with a water solution of a preservative salt for 3 hours. At the end of impregnation, the moisture content is about 110 percent. About 8 hours is required to redry the treated wood to 25-percent moisture content.

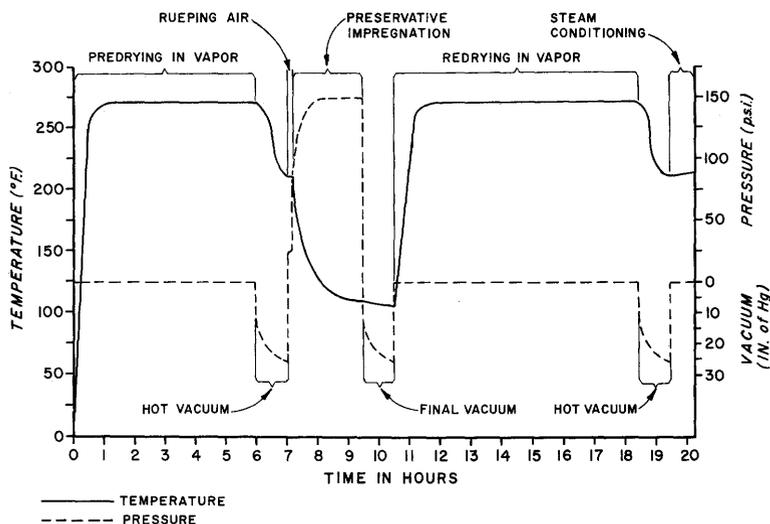


Figure 20-41.—Vapor drying schedule for processing lumber in salt treatment. Drying agent: Xylene. (Drawing after Hudson 1969.)

During drying of a charge containing 35,000 bd. ft. of pine lumber, the volume of drying agent condensing on the lumber amounts to about 10,000 gallons. This hot solvent pouring over the surface extracts large amounts of pine oleoresin. In the case of 1-inch lumber, the amount of extractives amounts to 16 to 20 pounds per M b.f. The used drying agent may be distilled to dryness to obtain the crude pine oleoresin.

Huffman (1955) found that most, if not all, of the extractives in the outer layers of southern pine lumber were removed by the vapor-drying process. It is probable that vapor-dried lumber, when painted, has less bleed-through and discoloration of the paint over knots and pitch streaks than does air- or kiln-dried southern pine.

Southern pine poles can be dried quickly by the vapor process. About 15 hours of heating in vapor is required to dry 12-inch-diameter poles from 90-percent moisture content to 35-percent with a drying agent temperature of 280° F. Hudson (1946) reported that vapor-dried southern pine poles were 20- to 25-percent stronger than poles dried by the steam (260° F. for 12 hours) and vacuum process. The strength tests were performed on 100 matched 25-foot sections cut from fifty 55-foot poles.

SOLVENT SEASONING

The solvent seasoning process developed by Anderson and Hermann (1950) uses liquid polar solvents, e.g., acetone or methanol, to dry wood. The heated, water-free solvent is passed over the wood, transferring heat to the wood and extracting water and other polar-solvent soluble constituents (McMillen 1961b; Anderson 1966). This process has not been used on the southern pines, but it should be as effective on these species as it is for western pines on which it has been used.

20-8 LITERATURE CITED

- Anderson, A. B.
1966. Solvent drying pays dividends with ponderosa pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(12): 31-35.
- Anderson, A. B., and Hermann, A.
1950. Process of treating wood. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,500,783) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Barksdale, B. E., Sr.
1949. Apparatus for drying lumber. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,464,429) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Burkhalter, H. D., and Russell, E. J.
1969. Tree harvesting method. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,460,288.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Calvert, W. W.
1958. High-temperature kiln-drying of lumber: A summary of Canadian progress. *Forest Prod. J.* 8:200-204.
- Calvert, W. W.
1965. High-temperature kiln-drying of eastern Canadian species. *Can. Wood Prod. Ind.* 5(7): 34-39.
- Carpenter, B. E., Jr., and Schroeder, J. G.
1968. Combined effects of drying, surfacing, and trimming on grade and volume of southern pine lumber. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note SE-93, 3 pp. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.
- Christensen, F. J.
1970. Breakthrough in drying softwoods. *CSIRO Forest Prod. Newslett.* 377, pp. 3-5. Melbourne, Australia.
- Colgrove, W. H.
1956. Chemical seasoning of lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 6:417-419.
- Corder, S. E.
1963. Ventilating veneer dryers. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 449-453.
- Dineen, N. J.
1968. Dry kiln pressure venting and lumber drying. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(5): 19-23.
- Fessel, F.
1964. Continuous veneer drying with jet ventilation. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 22: 129-139.
- Fleischer, H. O.
1958. A graphic method of estimating veneer drying rates. USDA Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 2104, 8 pp.
- Gaby, L. I.
1959. Operation predry . . . Variables in drying southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 9(5): 23A-27A.
- Gaby, L. I.
1961. Forced air-drying of southern pine lumber. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Sta. Pap. 121, 20 pp.
- Gaby, L. I.
1967. Controlled drying of pine roundwood. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(1): 19-23.
- Gardner, T. A.
1966. Pocket ventilator controls drying atmosphere. *TAPPI* 49(8): 113A-114A.
- Gardner, T. A.
1967. Moisture profile variation on paper machines. *TAPPI* 50(7): 110A-114A.
- Gardner, T. A.
1970. Realizing the best performance from a conventional dryer section. *TAPPI* 53: 990-992.
- Gerhards, C. C.
1968. 4-inch southern pine lumber: Seasoning factors for modulus of elasticity and modulus of rupture. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(11): 27-35.
- Guernsey, F. W.
1957. High temperature drying of British Columbia softwoods. *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 368-371.
- Hallock, H.
1965. Sawing to reduce warp of loblolly pine studs. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-51, 52 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Han, S. T.
1970. Drying of paper. *TAPPI* 53: 1034-1046.
- Han, S. T., and Matters, J. F.
1966. Vapor transport in fiber mats during drying. *TAPPI* 49:1-4.
- Hankin, J. W., Leidigh, W. J., and Stephens, E. W.
1970. Microwave paper drying experience and analysis. *TAPPI* 53: 1063-1070.

- Hann, R. A.
1964. Drying yellow-poplar at temperatures above 100° C. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 215-220.
- Hart, C. A.
1965. The drying of wood. N. C. State Univ. Sch. Forest. Tech. Rep. 27, 24 pp.
- Haygreen, J. G.
1962. A study of the kiln-drying of chemically seasoned lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 12: 11-16.
- Herdman, R.
1970. Paper drying features of a modern computerized machine. *TAPPI* 53: 1007-1009.
- Hittmeier, M. E., Comstock, G. L., and Hann, R. A.
1968. Press drying nine species of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(9): 91-96.
- Hopkins, W. C., Choong, E. T., and Fogg, P. J.
1969. Kiln-drying different thicknesses of southern pine lumber. *La. State Univ. Bull.* 636, 21 pp.
- Hudson, M. S.
1946. Poles seasoned quickly in hydrocarbon atmosphere. *I. Elec. World* 126(11): 90-93; *II.* 126(13): 107-108.
- Hudson, M. S.
1947. Vapor drying: The artificial seasoning of wood in vapor of organic chemicals. *Forest Prod. Res. Soc. Proc.* 1: 124-146.
- Hudson, M. S.
1948. Apparatus and method for drying wood. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,435,218) U. S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Hudson, M. S.
1969. Chemical drying of southern pine wood . . . a review. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(3): 21-24.
- Huffman, J. B.
1955. Distribution of resinous extractives after seasoning. *Forest Prod. J.* 5: 135-138.
- Hunt, G. M., and Garratt, G. A.
1967. *Wood preservation*. Ed. 3, 433 pp. N.Y.: McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc.
- Iannazzi, F. D., and Strauss, R.
1970. Comparative manufacturing costs for wet-laid and dry-laid materials. *TAPPI* 53: 1026-1028.
- Isaccs, C. P., and Choong, E. T.
1969. Effect of temperature during drying on surface properties of southern pine veneer. *La. State Univ. LSU Wood Util. Notes* 15, 5 pp.
- Janett, L. G.
1970. Profile correction and economics in drying of paper. *TAPPI* 53: 981-988.
- Johnson, E. S., editor.
1956. *Wood particle board handbook*. 303 pp. Raleigh: N.C. State Coll.
- Kauman, W. G.
1956. Equilibrium moisture content relations and drying control in superheated steam drying. *Forest Prod. J.* 6: 328-332.
- Kempfer, W. H.
1913. The air-seasoning of timber. *Amer. Railway Eng. Assoc. Bull.* 15(161): 163-231.
- Kennedy, W. H.
1970. Water removal by twin vertical wires. *TAPPI* 53: 974-975.
- Keylwerth, R.
1951. [Infrared radiators in the wood industry.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 9: 224-231.
- Keylwerth, R.
1952. High-temperature drying installations. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 10: 134-138.
- Khandelwal, K. K.
1970. Relationship between sheet formation and dryer section performance. *TAPPI* 53: 971-972.
- Kimball, K. E.
1968. Accelerated methods of drying thick-sliced and thin-sawn loblolly pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(1): 31-38.
- Kimball, K. E., and Lowery, D. P.
1967a. Methods for drying lodgepole pine and western larch studs. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(4): 32-40.
- Kimball, K. E., and Lowery, D. P.
1967b. Quality of studs dried by high and conventional temperatures. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(9): 81-85.
- Koch, P.
1964. Techniques for drying thick southern pine veneer. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 382-386.

- Koch, P.
1969. At 240° F. southern pine studs can be dried and steam-straightened in 24 hours. *South. Lumberman* 219(2723): 26, 28-29.
- Koch, P.
1971. Process for straightening and drying southern pine 2 by 4's in 24 hours. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(5): 17-24.
- Kollmann, F.
1955. *Technology of wood and wood material*. Ed. 2, 1183 pp. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.
- Kollmann, F., and Schneider, A.
1961. [The influence of flow velocity on the kiln drying of timber in superheated steam.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 19: 461-478.
- Kollmann, F. F. P., Schneider, A., and Bohner, G.
1967. Investigations on the heating and drying of wood with infrared radiation. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 1: 149-160.
- Ladell, J. L.
1955. High temperature drying of lumber. *Timber of Can.* 15(11): 19, 22, 46.
- Ladell, J. L.
1957. High-temperature kiln-drying of eastern Canadian softwoods, drying-guide and tentative schedules. *Forest Prod. Lab. of Can. FPL Tech. Note 2*, 18 pp. Ottawa.
- Laity, W. D.
1970. Heat and mass transfer rates associated with the drying of southern pine and Douglas-fir veneer in air and steam at various temperatures and angles of impingement. M. S. Thesis. Ore. State Univ., Corvallis. 128 pp.
- Lengel, D. L.
1967. The Reitz dryer. In *Proc. of first symposium on particleboard*, pp. 183-193. Pullman, Wash.: Wash. State Univ.
- Loughborough, W. K.
1948. Chemical seasoning: its effectiveness and present status. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. D1721*, 13 pp.
- Lowery, D. P., Krier, J. P., and Hann, R. A.
1968. High temperature drying of lumber—a review. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. INT-48*, 10 pp. Inter-mountain Forest and Range Exp. Sta., Ogden, Utah.
- McCarthy, J. L., and Jahn, E. C.
1936. Measurement of gelatinization of wood and pulp by water retention under pressure. *Pacific Pulp and Pap. Ind.* 10(6): 9-11.
- McDonald, D.
1958. Method of drying and impregnating wood. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,860,070) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- MacLean, J. D.
1934. Temperatures in green southern pine timbers after various steaming periods. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 30: 355-374.
- MacLean, J. D.
1960. Preservative treatment of wood by pressure methods. *USDA Agr. Handbook 40 rev.*, 160 pp.
- McMillen, J. J.
1960. Special methods of seasoning wood: Chemical seasoning. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1665-6 rev.*, 4 pp.
- McMillen, J. M.
1961a. Coatings for the prevention of end checks in logs and lumber. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1435*, 20 pp.
- McMillen, J. M.
1961b. Special methods of seasoning wood: Boiling in oily liquids. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1665 rev.*, 4 pp.
- McMillen, J. M.
1968. Transverse strains during drying of 2-inch ponderosa pine. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL 83*, 26 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- McMillen, J. M., and James, W. L.
1961. High-frequency dielectric heating. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1665-7 rev.*, 4 pp.
- McMillen, J. M., and Youngs, R. L.
1960. Stresses in drying lumber. *Southern Lumberman* 201(2513): 115-119.

- Maloney, T. M., editor.
1967. Proceedings of first symposium on particleboard. 474 pp. Pullman, Wash.: Wash. State Univ.
- Maroney, W. H.
1962. Azeotropic drying of hardwood lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 12: 7-10.
- Mathewson, J. S.
1930. The air seasoning of wood. USDA Tech. Bull. 174, 56 pp.
- Mathewson, J. S.
1954. High-temperature drying: Its application to the drying of lumber. *J. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 4: 276-280.
- Mathewson, J. S., and Berger, P. J.
1957. Comparison of three methods of determining whether southern pine poles are well air seasoned. *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 174-177.
- Metcalf, W. K.
1968. Paper machine air drying. *TAPPI* 51(4): 98A-102A.
- Mottet, A. L.
1967. The Buettner jet dryer. *In Proc. of first symposium on particleboard*, pp. 175-181. Pullman, Wash.: Wash. State Univ.
- Narayanamurti, D., and Prasad, B. N.
1952. Infrared-drying of veneers. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 10: 92-94.
- Page, R. H., and Carter, R. M.
1957. Heavy losses in air seasoning Georgia pine and how to reduce them. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Sta. Pap. 85, 20 pp.
- Page, R. H., and Carter, R. M.
1958. Variations in moisture content of air-seasoned southern pine lumber in Georgia. *Forest Prod. J.* 8(6): 15A-18A.
- Peck, E. C.
1941. Chemical seasoning of wood: Hygroscopic and antishrink values of chemicals. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 33: 653-655.
- Bariska, M., Skaar, C., and Davidson, R. W.
1969. Studies of the wood-anhydrous ammonia system. *Wood Sci.* 2: 65-72.
- Peck, E. C.
1961. Air drying of lumber. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab Rep. 1657, 21 pp.
- Race, E.
1970. The economic value of paper machine clothing in water removal. *TAPPI* 53: 993-999.
- Rantala, P. P.
1970. Modern press structures. *TAPPI* 53: 976-980.
- Rasmussen, E. F.
1961. Dry kiln operator's manual. USDA Handbook 188, 197 pp.
- Rietz, R. C.
1965. The kiln drying of wood. *In Moisture in materials in relation to fire tests*, pp. 38-51. Amer. Soc. for Testing and Mater. Spec. Tech. Bull. 385.
- Rietz, R. C.
1970. Air drying lumber in a forklift yard. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0209, 16 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Rhorer, C. R.
1971. Diagnosis and correction of moisture profile problems on paper machines. *TAPPI* 54: 43-46.
- Salamon, M.
1969. High-temperature drying and its effect on wood properties. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(3): 27-34.
- Salamon, M.
1970. White spruce kiln schedule employs mixed air velocities. *Can. Forest Ind.* 90(9): 48-50.
- Salamon, M., and McBride, C. F.
1966. High temperature drying: A comparison of western hemlock and balsam fir dried at high and conventional temperatures. *Brit. Columbia Lumberman* 50(11): 44, 46, 48-52.
- Salamon, M., and McIntyre, S.
1970. Combination schedule improves drying of western white spruce lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(7): 41-42.
- Segelken, J. G.
1941. Kiln drying longleaf southern pine poles. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 37: 135-154.

- Segelken, J. G.
1942. Kiln drying southern pine poles. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 38: 251-263.
- Sinclair, D.
1967. Drying wood fiberboard. *TAPPI* 50: 424-432.
- South, V.
1968. Heat and mass transfer rates associated with the drying of plywood veneer using superheated steam at various angles of impingement. M. S. Thesis. Ore. State Univ., Corvallis. 61 pp.
- Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
1968. Standard grading rules for southern pine lumber. 171 p. New Orleans, La.: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
- Stamm, A. J.
1934. Effect of inorganic salts upon the swelling and shrinking of wood. *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.* 56: 1195-1205.
- Stamm, A. J.
1964. Wood and cellulose science. 549 pp. N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.
- Stillinger, J. R.
1967a. Drying principles and problems. *In Proc. of first symposium on particleboard*, pp. 163-173. Pullman, Wash.: Wash. State Univ.
- Stillinger, J. R.
1967b. The Heil dryer. *In Proc. of first symposium on particleboard*, pp. 205-215. Pullman, Wash.: Wash. State Univ.
- Suchsland, O., and Stevens, R. R.
1968. Gluability of southern pine veneer dried at high temperatures. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(1): 38-42.
- Teesdale, L. V.
1930. The kiln drying of southern yellow pine lumber. *USDA Tech. Bull.* 165, 66 pp.
- Thompson, W. S.
1969. Effect of steaming and kiln drying on the properties of southern pine poles. I. Mechanical properties. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(1): 21-28.
- Thompson, W. S., and Stevens, R. R.
1972. Kiln drying of southern pine poles: results of laboratory and field studies. *Forest Prod. J.* 22(3): 17-24.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1966. List of manufacturers and dealers for log and lumber end coatings. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Job 66-004 rev.*, 1 p.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1970. Research news. *USDA Forest Serv. Nat. Wood Res. Center*, 4 pp. Madison.
- Wahlstrom, P. B.
1970. Water removal on modern corrugating and kraft bag machines. *TAPPI* 53: 1011-1014.
- Walters, E. O.
1970. Green southern yellow pine veneer—saturation principle of moisture measure to establish drying sorts. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(2): 25-28.
- Wieselman, L.
1970. Survey of operating results of paper machines equipped with pocket air rolls. *TAPPI* 53: 1032-1033.
- Wilkinson, T. L.
1968. Strength evaluations of round timber piles. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-101*, 44 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Winkel, L. D.
1956. Casehardening stress relief of ponderosa pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 6: 124-128.
- Wrist, P. E.
1966. New concepts concerning paper structure and paper physics. *TAPPI* 49: 287-292.

21

Bending

CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
21-1 STEAM BENDING	1038
TECHNIQUE	1039
AVERAGE RATING	1042
PROPORTION OF USABLE SPECIMENS	1048
CHANGE IN CURVATURE WITH TIME AND EXPOSURE CONDITION	1501
21-2 PLASTICIZING WOOD WITH UREA	1054
21-3 PLASTICIZING WOOD WITH AMMONIA	1054
GASEOUS AMMONIA	1055
21-4 COLD BENDING BY LAMINATING	1057
21-5 LITERATURE CITED	1058

21

Bending

For many purposes, bending wood over a curved mold is preferable to machining it. Bending processes are quick and simple, require little power, and do not waste wood as chips or shavings. The resulting bent wood is generally stronger and stiffer than wood machined to the same contour. Major disadvantages are loss of wood by breakage and a tendency of the bent stock to lose some of its curvature when exposed to humid conditions.

The concave surface of a bent stick is shorter than the convex surface. Solid wood therefore can be permanently bent only when plastic enough to take and retain the proper amount of compressive deformation. Because wood is more plastic when hot and moist than when cool and dry, exposure to heat and moisture is an effective plasticizing treatment. Some chemicals, notably urea and ammonia, also plasticize wood.

21-1 STEAM BENDING¹

The most complete discussion of the bending process appears to be that of Stevens and Turner (1948, 1970). Less extensive reviews include those by Wangaard (1952), Kubler (1957), Jorgensen (1965), and Kollmann and Côté (1968). Stress distributions during bending are discussed by Peck (1968, pp. 31-37). Peck also notes (p. 4) that hardwoods can be steam-bent more successfully than coniferous woods. He lists 25 hardwoods in descending order of bending quality; the top half of the list includes hackberry (*Celtis* spp.), white and red oaks (*Quercus* spp.), chestnut oak (*Quercus prinus* L.), magnolia (*Magnolia grandiflora* L.), pecan (*Carya illinoensis* (Wangenh.) K. Koch), black walnut (*Juglans nigra* L.), hickory (*Carya* spp.), beech (*Fagus grandifolia* Ehrh.), American elm (*Ulmus americana* L.), willow (*Salix* spp.), yellow birch (*Betula alleghaniensis* Britton), and white ash (*Fraxinus americana* L.).

Stevens and Turner (1948, 1970) list the minimum radius of curvature to which various species can be formed without breaking more than 5 percent of the pieces. They give the radii listed below as applicable to air-dry,

¹ With some editorial changes, section 21-1 is condensed from Lemoine and Koch (1971) by permission of the Forest Products Research Society.

1-inch-thick wood of good bending quality—steamed at atmospheric pressure and bent with a tension strap:

	Minimum radius of curvature
	<i>Inches</i>
Hardwoods	
Dutch elm (<i>Ulmus hollandica</i> var. <i>major</i>) -----	0.4
White oak -----	1.0
Yellow birch -----	3.0
European beech (<i>Fagus sylvatica</i>) -----	4.0
American ash -----	4.5
Softwoods	
Caribbean pine (<i>Pinus caribaea</i> Morelet) -----	14.0
European spruce (<i>Picea abies</i>) -----	30.0

Lemoine and Koch (1971) have provided some information specific to southern pine. Their study was designed to determine the kind of southern pine wood that can be most successfully steam bent; some relationships affecting the percentage of specimens surviving the bending operation were observed, and changes in radius of unrestrained bent specimens were related to changes in service humidity conditions. Because knots, decay, shakes, and severe cross grain in wood cause excessive breakage during bending, only knot-free, sound, and straight-grained specimens were selected for the study.

Lemoine and Koch did not measure strength properties of steam-bent southern pine wood, but research on hardwoods has indicated that specimens steam bent to small radii have substantially less strength in flexure than matched straight specimens (Wangaard 1952), and less flexural strength and stiffness than wood laminated from thin strips into a bend of equal radius (Luxford and Krone 1962). According to Luxford and Krone (1962), however, steam-bent oak boat frames will absorb several times more impact energy before breaking than similar laminated frames.

TECHNIQUE

In preliminary tests with 1/2- and 1-inch stock, Lemoine and Koch (1971) found that the probability of a successful bend was greatest when specimens were conditioned to about 17-percent moisture content and then steamed for a short time. Steaming times of 10 minutes and 20 minutes per inch of thickness appeared to be sufficient. Longer steaming times generally resulted in an excess of both tension and compression failures.

Prebending treatments rejected as less desirable included water soaking the specimen until saturated (with or without subsequent steaming), and boiling in water (starting from a 10-percent moisture content or from a saturated condition). Steaming under pressure was not attempted since the literature indicates it is less effective than atmospheric steaming.

Preliminary trials showed that a bending jig incorporating a tension

strap was essential for successful bending of southern pine (fig. 21-1). Steaming wood greatly increases its compressibility parallel to the grain but does not greatly affect its ability to elongate under tension. The tension strap, uniformly applying an end load during the bending operation, reduces breakage by decreasing tension stress in the convex side of the specimen.

A stratified random sample of 1½-inch-wide S4S southern pine wood was collected from sawmills and retail yards in central Louisiana. Most specimens were probably cut from loblolly pine, with some shortleaf, longleaf, and slash pine wood included. Study variables were:

- Thickness: ½-inch and 1 inch.
- Rings per inch: either less than 6 or more than 6.
- Specific gravity (oven-dry volume and weight): either less than 0.58 or more than 0.58.
- Orientation of annual rings: flat grain or edge grain.
- Radius of curvature, inches: $12t-3$ inches, $12t$, and $12t + 3$ inches; where t = specimen thickness in inches.
- Time steamed at atmospheric pressure before bending: 10 and 20 minutes per inch of specimen thickness.
- Replications of factors: two.
- Replications of specimens within each factor replication: 10.

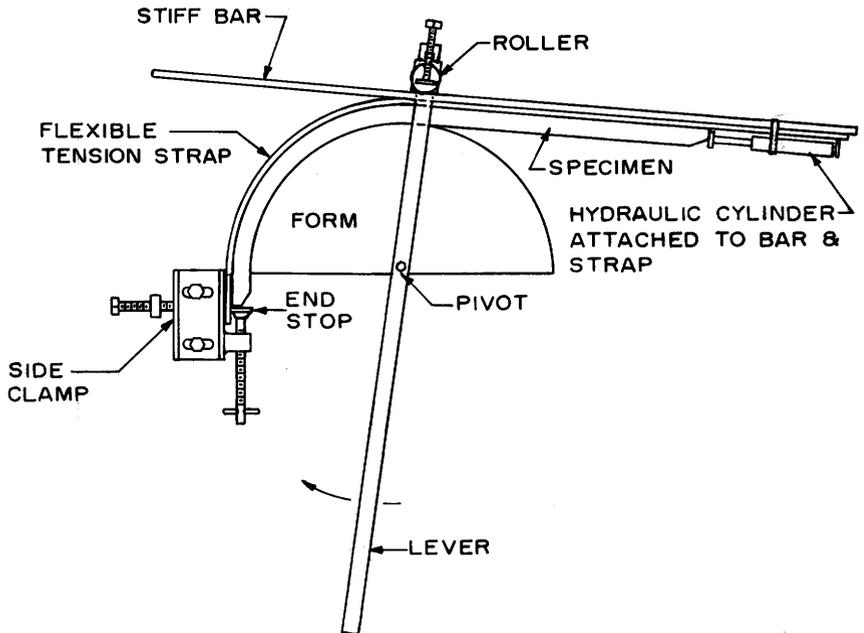


Figure 21-1.—End load applied through a flexible metal tension strap preloads the specimen in compression as it is being bent, thus reducing tensile stress on the convex side. (Drawing after Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

Thus, the experiment required 1,920 specimens.

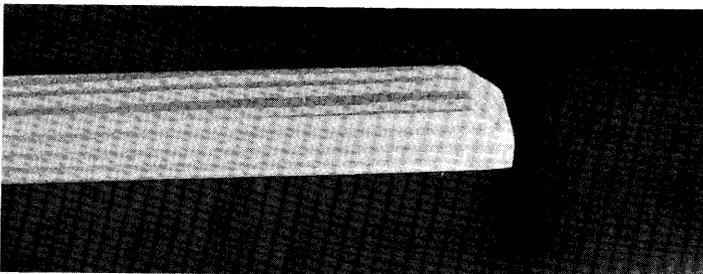
While not a primary factor in the experiment, the maximum angle between resin canals exposed on the edge of each specimen and the face (resin canal angle) was observed as an indicator of cross grain. Both edges were measured and the largest angle recorded.

Bending direction (toward the pith or toward the bark) was at random, and was recorded after bending. While most readily determined on flat-grain pieces, it was also possible on those classified as edge grain because none had precisely vertical grain.

Specimens, equilibrated to 10-percent moisture content, were cut to length, end bevelled (fig. 21-2), and dipped in cool water until they picked up sufficient weight for 17-percent moisture content. They were then stored in polyethylene bags (at least 24 hours for 1/2-inch specimens and 48 hours for 1-inch specimens) to permit the moisture to diffuse into each piece.

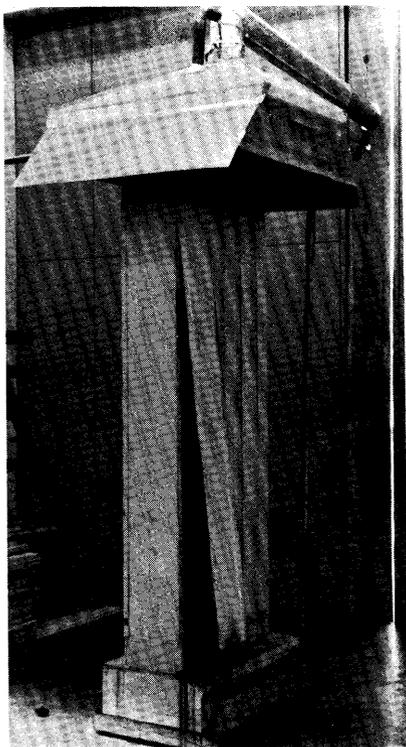
Each was steamed over vigorously boiling water for the specified time in a vertical chamber vented through a fan at the top (fig. 21-3). The steady flow of steam produced appeared ample to prepare the wood for bending.

Following steaming, the bevelled-end specimen (fig. 21-2) was quickly transferred to the bending jig shown in figure 21-4. One end was firmly clamped with the screw shown on the lower left side of figure 21-4B, and the ball-bearing pressure point was made "finger-tight" with the screw shown in the upper left corner; then a steady end load was applied with a hydraulic cylinder (fig. 21-4C) so that the outside, or convex side, of the specimen was preloaded in compression. The 1/2-inch-thick pieces were given a 500-pound preload on a bearing surface of 0.375 sq. in., while a 1,000-pound load was applied to the 0.750-sq. in. bearing surface of the 1-inch-thick specimens. Woodclips visible in figures 21-4A, B, C prevented bowing in the specimen. Figure 21-4D shows the thin, flexible metal strap that was arranged on the convex side; the strap was anchored by a clamp at one end and to the hydraulic cylinder on the other. One end of a thicker bar was attached to the base of the hydraulic cylinder; its other end was



F-520993

Figure 21-2.—Specimens to be steam bent should have both ends bevelled to midthickness so that prestress compression force applies principally to the convex side. (Photo from Lemoine and Koch 1971.)



F-520994

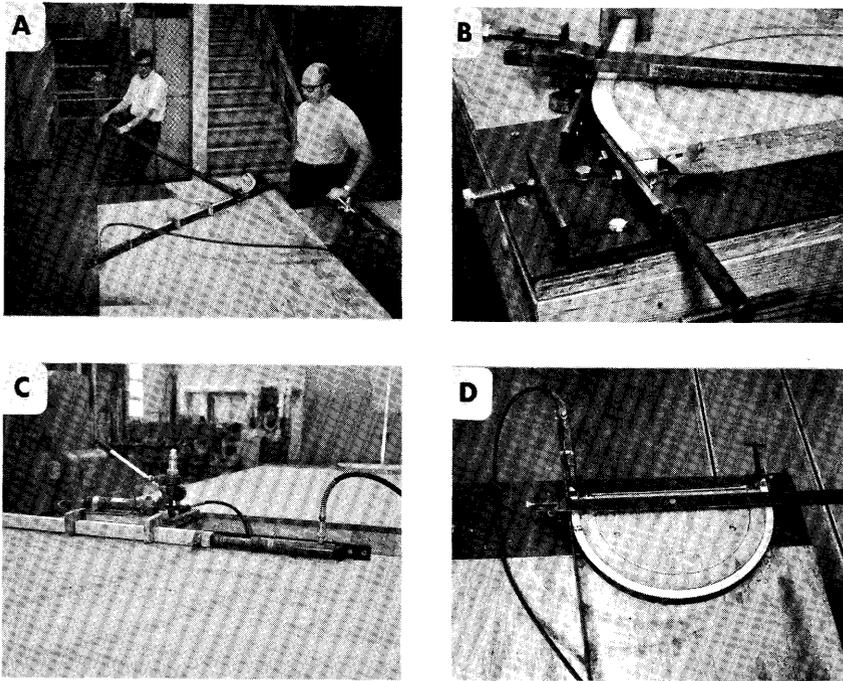
Figure 21-3.—Vertical 10-chamber steamer; fan-vented duct leads steam out of building. Not visible are the immersion heaters in the water bath at the bottom. The hinged door of one chamber is partially open. For best control, each chamber should have its own water bath and heater. (Photo from Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

free. A pivoted lever rolled a ball-bearing pressure point over the surface of the bar, bending the strap and specimen into semicircular form (fig. 21-4D). A wire retaining rod was secured to the two sheet metal end clips shown in figures 21-4B, C; the bent specimen was then lifted from the jig, secured with glass filament tape so the retaining rod could be removed, and allowed to reach equilibrium in an atmosphere held at 72° F. and 50-percent relative humidity.

Twenty-four hours after removal from the bending jig, each specimen was rated on a scale ranging from 0 to 10; 0 indicated total failure and 10 complete success. In general, only specimens rated 8 or above would be serviceable for any purpose, and a rating of 10 would be required for most applications where appearance is a ruling factor (fig. 21-5).

AVERAGE RATING

Relationships influencing the average bending rating are evident in five two-factor interactions shown to be significant by analysis of variance (table 21-1). Steaming time was not a significant factor—alone or in combination with other factors. Specimen thickness entered into three interactions; growth rate, specific gravity, and thickness were each in-

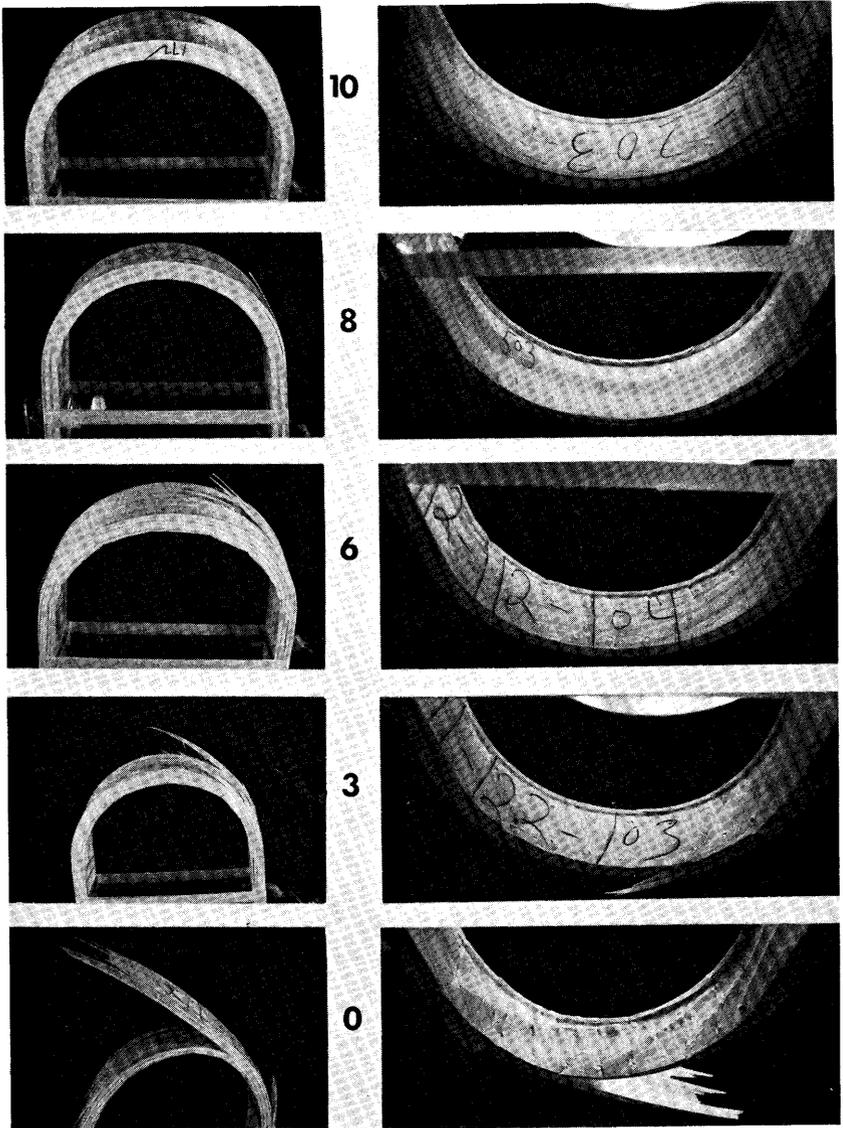


F-520995

Figure 21-4.—Bending jig with 1-inch-thick specimen in place. (A) As the lever bar is moved around its pivot, a constant end load is maintained by means of a hydraulic cylinder. Two removable plywood clips to prevent specimen bow are visible. (B) End clamp. The thin metal band running around convex side of specimen is attached to the hydraulic cylinder. Pivoted lever bar with ball-bearing pressure point is shown rolling over the thick steel bar also attached to the hydraulic cylinder. (C) Hydraulic pump, cylinder, and pressure controlled bypass valve for application of controlled force to reduce tension to convex side of specimen. (D) Specimen bent in full semicircle and ready for removal. Retaining rod is secured to metal end clips visible in figures 4B and C. (Photos from Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

volved in two of the interactions. Grain type interacted only with radius of curvature.

Factor	Specimen thickness	
	$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch	1 inch
	--- Rating ---	
Rings per inch		
Less than 6 -----	7.1	6.5
More than 6 -----	6.8	4.9
Specific gravity		
Under 0.58 -----	7.1	6.4
More than 0.58 -----	6.9	5.1
Radius of curvature, inches		
12t - 3 -----	4.9	4.6
12t -----	7.2	5.7
12t + 3 -----	8.8	6.9



F-520996

Figure 21-5.—Rating system for steam-bent southern pine. Numerals show representative ratings from 0 (worst) to 10 (best). The ledge visible on the concave side of each specimen was caused by a too-narrow form, i.e., the form should have been wider than the specimen. (Photos from Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

Rings per inch	Specific gravity	
	Less than 0.58	More than 0.58
Less than 6 -----	7.0	6.7
More than 6 -----	6.5	5.3

----- Rating -----

TABLE 21-1.—*Effects of primary variables on bending ratings of southern pine wood (Lemoine and Koch 1971)*¹

Factor	Average rating	Percent of bent specimens with ratings of:		
		8, 9, 10	9, 10	10
----- Percent -----				
A. Replication ²				
B. Rings per inch				
Less than 6.....	6.8	57	47	33
More than 6.....	5.9	43	34	19
C. Specific gravity ³				
Under 0.58.....	6.7	55	46	28
Over 0.58.....	6.0	44	36	24
D. Steaming time per inch thickness				
10 minutes.....	6.3	49	40	26
20 minutes.....	6.5	51	41	26
E. Radius of curvature, inches				
12t-3.....	4.7	23	17	9
12t.....	6.5	53	42	24
12t+3.....	7.9	74	63	44
F. Thickness				
½-inch.....	7.0	57	49	33
1 inch.....	5.7	43	33	19
G. Grain description				
Flat.....	5.9	42	32	17
Edge.....	6.9	58	50	36
Grand means.....	6.4	50	41	26
Significant interactions ⁴ (and significant factors where interactions did not involve them).....			C	C
	BC	BC		
	BF	BF	BF	
	CF	CF		
	EF	EF	EF	
	EG	EG	EG	BDEFG

¹ Averages include data on all 1,920 observations; the only segregation is by the factors in column 1.

² Dummy factor.

³ Basis of oven-dry volume and weight.

⁴ Significant at 0.01 level.

Radius of curvature	Grain description	
	Flat	Edge
<i>Inches</i>	----- Rating -----	
12t - 3	4.6	4.9
12t	5.6	7.4
12t + 3	7.4	8.3

These data indicate that southern pine bending stock yielded the highest ratings if edge grained, fast grown, and low in specific gravity. Highest ratings were achieved with thin stock bent to large radii. Thus, low-gravity, edge-grain, fast-grown specimens gave average ratings as follows when data from both steaming times were pooled.

Radius	Average rating for ½-inch thickness	Average rating for 1-inch thickness
<i>Inches</i>		
3	4.7	—
6	7.7	—
9	8.8	5.7
12	—	8.1
15	—	8.4

The interactions show that low ratings resulted when specimens were slow grown and thick, dense and thick, or slow grown and dense. When bent to small radii, flat-grain specimens—or thick specimens—had particularly low average ratings.

It was thought possible that bending ratings might be improved if the side of the specimen nearest the pith was always placed on the concave side of the bend; however, analysis of variance showed no significant effect. With all data pooled, average rating of specimens with the pith on the concave side was 6.5; with pith on the convex side, the average rating was 6.3.

Regression analyses, separate by each thickness, showed that no combination of factors was closely correlated with average bending rating. Only the following had an *r* value of 0.20 or greater.

Factor correlated with bending rating	<i>r</i> value	
	½-inch	1 inch
Radius of curvature -----	0.49	0.25
Radius of curvature ÷ grain angle -----	.34	
Resin canal angle -----	— .21	
Resin canal angle squared -----	— .20	
Rings per inch -----		— .20
(rings per inch) (specific gravity) -----		— .26

Had data been available on a spectrum of thicknesses, doubtless thickness would have proven significantly correlated with rating.

While success in explaining the total variability in bending ratings was not notable, a multiple regression expression was selected for each thickness through use of the Rex Program (Grosenbaugh 1967) as giving the best fit to the data; the equations provide considerable guidance to optimum selection of southern pine wood to be steam bent.

According to the equations, bending rating (average for ½- and 1-inch specimens was 7.0 and 5.7 respectively) can be predicted by summing the products of the coefficients and independent variables shown in table 21-2.

TABLE 21-2.—Coefficients and independent variables in regression equations for prediction of average bending ratings of ½- and 1-inch-thick southern pine (Lemoine and Koch 1971)

Coefficient ¹		Independent variable	Average values ¹		Range
½-inch	1 inch		½-inch	1 inch	
-3.007	1.650	(This coefficient is a constant.)	7.130	6.980	1-32
-.2067	.0790	Rings per inch	63.38	61.28	-----
.00782	.0191	Rings per inch squared	.5774	N.S.	0.35-0.83
24.34	N.S.	Specific gravity, basis of oven-dry volume and weight	.3381	N.S.	-----
-23.77	N.S.	Specific gravity squared	N.S.	4.06	-----
N.S.	-1.185	(rings per inch) (specific gravity)	N.S.	15.0	10-20
N.S.	.0321	Steaming time, minutes per inch thickness	6.0	12.0	12t-3 to 12t+3 ²
.9341	.8439	Radius of curvature, inches	42.0	150.0	-----
-.0323	-.0183	Radius of curvature squared	43.65	45.30	0-90
.0895	.0321	Grain angle (flat or edge), degrees	2813.8	2855.4	-----
-.000870	-.000055	Grain angle squared	262.47	N.S.	-----
.00239	N.S.	(radius of curvature) (grain angle)	3.394	3.592	0-14.1
.5016	-.6284	Resin canal angle, degrees	15.17	16.36	-----
.000650	.0166	Resin canal angle squared	.1525	N.S.	-----
2.022	N.S.	Resin canal angle ÷ grain angle			-----

¹ N.S. means not significant in the Rex Program.

² t = specimen thickness, inch.

The equation for 1/2-inch stock accounted for 32 percent of the variation in bending rating with standard error of the estimate of 2.8; comparable figures for the equation applicable to 1-inch specimens were 25 percent and 3.2.

Trends indicated by the equations are plotted in figures 21-6 and 21-7. For both thicknesses, the equations show that bending ratings were highest for specimens with specific gravity (ovendry volume and weight basis) of 0.4 to 0.5, 0° resin canal angle, and 1 to 5 growth rings per inch. While steaming time was not a significant factor for the 1/2-inch thickness, the 1-inch specimens yielded higher bending ratings when steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness. With 1-inch specimens, high-gravity, slow-grown wood yielded very low ratings.

PROPORTION OF USABLE SPECIMENS

The factors and interactions that affected the proportion of specimens rated 8, 9 or 10 are indicated in table 21-1.

To yield a maximum proportion of pieces with ratings of 8, 9, and 10, or 9 and 10, southern pine bending stock should be edge grain, fast grown, and low in specific gravity. Obviously, greatest success in bending will be achieved with thin stock bent to a large radius. Steaming time—considered by itself or in interactions—proved to be not significant. Among specimens with the above characteristics, ratings after bending were as follows:

Specimen thickness and bending radius	Pieces rated 8, 9, and 10	Pieces rated 9 and 10
<i>Inches</i>	----- <i>Percent</i> -----	
1/2-inch		
3	20	20
6	80	70
9	88	85
1 inch		
9	45	38
12	75	63
15	80	68

Recovery of perfectly bent specimens, rated 10, was higher from low-gravity than from high-gravity wood (28 percent compared to 24 percent). There were interactions involving growth rate, steaming time, radius of curvature, thickness, and grain type which make further generalization difficult. Certain patterns, however, permitted description of the southern pine bending stock that yielded the highest percentage of 10-rated pieces (table 21-3). As the footnotes to table 21-3 indicate, high-gravity wood did not always perform badly in comparison to low-gravity wood.

In summation, the data of Lemoine and Koch (1971) suggest that fast-grown, edge-grain, low-gravity wood free of cross grain is probably the

best selection for steam bending 1/2-inch and 1-inch southern pine. A steaming time of 20 minutes per inch of thickness appears to be adequate.

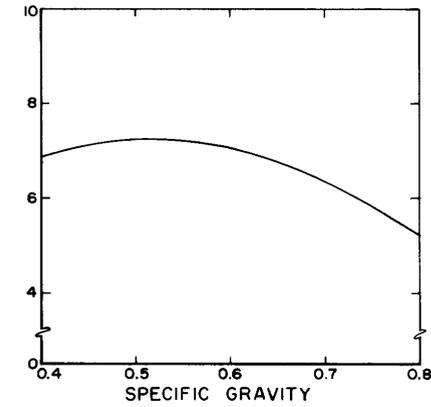


Figure 21-6.—Relationships, for 1/2-inch-thick southern pine specimens, between bending rating and primary factors. Curves plotted from regression equation shown in table 21-2 by holding all factors but the ones of interest at average value. (Drawing after Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

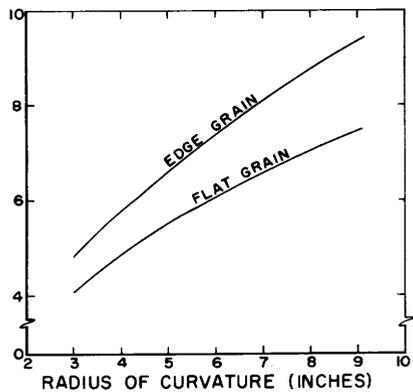
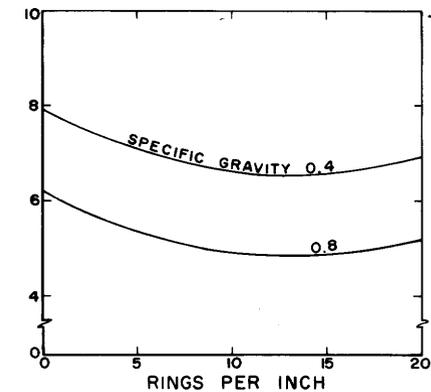
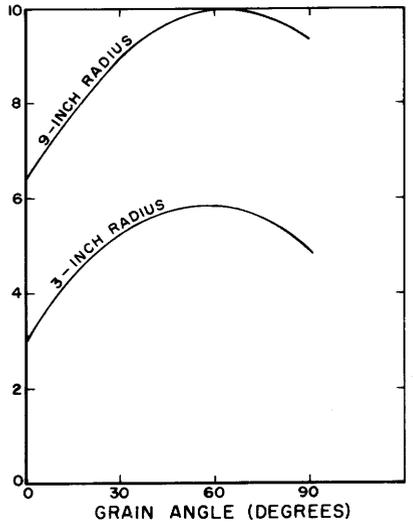
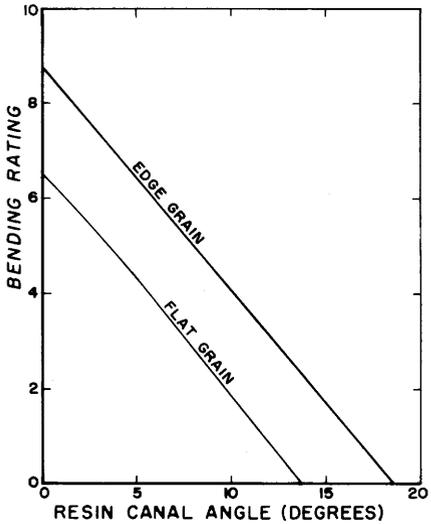


TABLE 21-3.—*Characteristics of southern pine wood and steaming time for maximum recovery of 10-rated pieces after bending (Lemoine and Koch 1971)*

Radius of bend (inches)	Optimum characteristics and steaming time	Portion bent with rating of 10
<i>Percent</i>		
½-INCH-THICK SPECIMENS		
3.....	Fast grown, edge grain, low gravity, steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness.....	25
6.....	Slow grown, edge grain, low gravity; steaming time not critical.....	48
9 ¹	Slow grown, edge grain, low gravity; steaming time not critical.....	75
1-INCH-THICK SPECIMENS		
9.....	Fast grown, edge grain, low gravity; steaming time not critical.....	30
12 ²	Fast grown, edge grain, low gravity, steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness.....	40
15.....	Fast grown, edge grain, low gravity, steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness.....	75

¹ When ½-inch stock was bent to a 9-inch radius, 85 percent of the edge-grain, high-gravity stock was rated 10; growth rate and steaming time were not critical. The reason for the good results with high-gravity wood at the 9-inch radius is not clear.

² When 1-inch stock was bent to a 12-inch radius, 55 percent of the fast-grown, edge-grain, high-gravity stock, which was steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness, was rated 10. The reason for the relatively good performance of the high-gravity wood at this radius is not clear.

CHANGE IN CURVATURE WITH TIME AND EXPOSURE CONDITION

From the bent specimens in three categories (½-inch-thick bent to 12-inch diameter, ½-inch-thick bent to 18-inch diameter, and 1-inch-thick bent to 30-inch diameter), Lemoine and Koch (1971) found it possible to select six pieces in every factorial combination that rated 8 or better; these were studied for changes in formed diameter when the restraining tapes were cut. Then, two of each set of six were left in the laboratory at about 50-percent relative humidity; two were placed in a sealed polyethylene bag along with a water-soaked sponge, and two were sealed in a polyethylene bag together with a substantial quantity of desiccant; all were held at a dry-bulb temperature of 72° F. Diameter measurements were made weekly for 4 weeks. Finally, all specimens were oven-dried and the diameter of each measured again.

The moisture content at the time the restraining tapes were cut averaged 8.7 percent with range from 7.5 to 10.9. After 4 weeks of exposure to the three conditions, moisture contents were as follows:

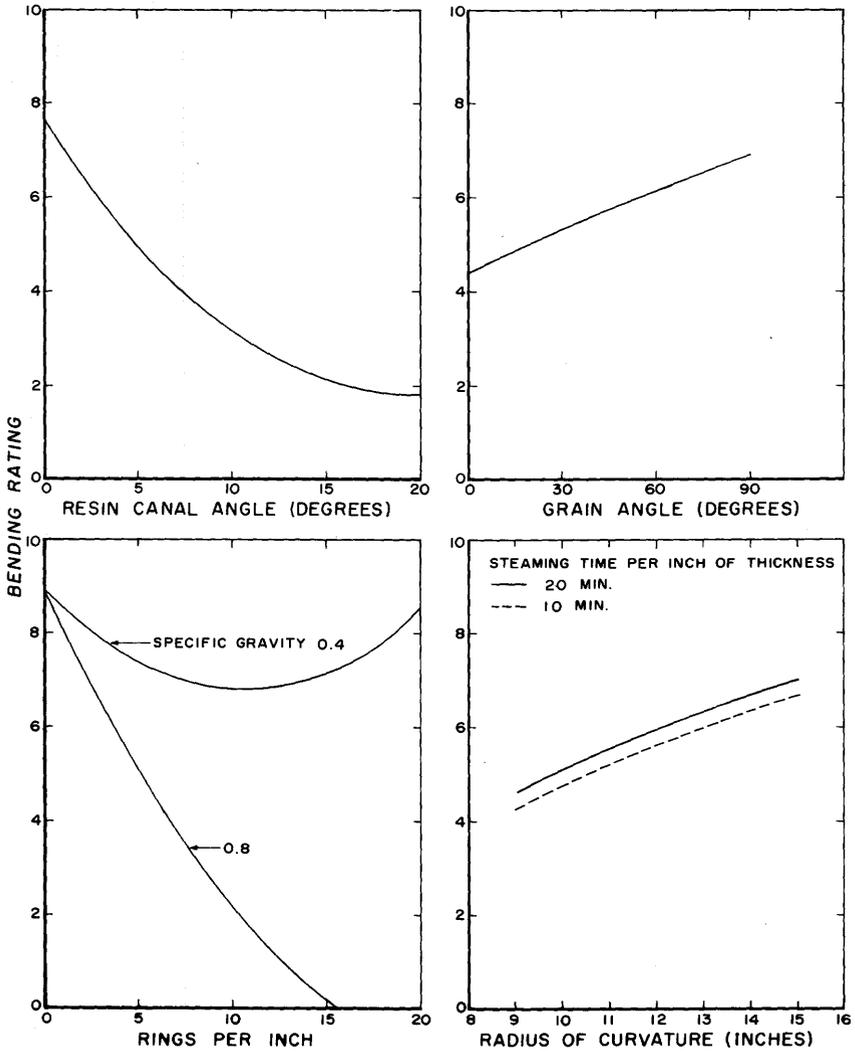


Figure 21-7.—Relationships, for 1-inch-thick southern pine specimens, between bending rating and primary factors. Curves plotted from regression equation shown in table 21-2 by holding all factors but the ones of interest at average value. (Drawing after Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

Condition	Average	Range in
	moisture content	moisture content
	----- Percent -----	
In laboratory at about 50-percent relative humidity	8.2	7.1 to 9.0
In bags with desiccant -----	7.3	6.1 to 9.5
In bags with water-soaked sponge -----	13.6	11.3 to 15.7

When the restraining tapes were cut, diameter of the average specimen increased 0.50 inch. In general, diameter change on release was least in edge-grain wood that had been steamed 20 minutes per inch; also,

diameter change on release was least in the 1/2-inch specimens bent to a 12-inch diameter (table 21-4). Specific gravity and growth rate of the wood did not significantly affect the change in diameter when the restraining tapes were cut.

After 4 weeks of exposure, the specimens in the humid atmosphere had increased in diameter most (from the restrained dimension), and those in the desiccators least; specimens held at about 50-percent relative humidity were intermediate. In general, change was least in edge-grain wood steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness; the 1/2-inch-thick specimens bent to 12-inch diameter changed least; 1/2-inch specimens bent to 18-inch diameter changed most (table 21-4). Neither specific gravity nor growth rate of the wood had a significant effect on change in diameter. Figure 21-8 shows diameter changes for each of the three specimen categories as a function of time and exposure condition.

TABLE 21-4.—Changes in formed diameter of 1/2- and 1-inch-thick, steam-bent southern pine specimens related to exposure conditions and experimental factors (Lemoine and Koch 1971)^{1 2}

Factor and level	Increase in diameter when restraint removed	Change in diameter after 4 weeks of exposure	Change in diameter after then overdrying
		----- Inches -----	
Post treatment		**	**
In laboratory at 50 percent relative humidity-----		0.69	0.48
In bags with desiccant-----		.31	.36
In bags with water-soaked sponge-----		3.04	1.68
Growth rate, rings per inch			
Less than 6-----	0.49	1.35	.74
More than 6-----	.51	1.35	.94
Specific gravity (basis of overdry volume and weight)			
Less than 0.58-----	.49	1.36	.94
More than 0.58-----	.50	1.34	.74
Grain angle	**	**	**
Flat grain-----	.54	1.45	.96
Edge grain-----	.45	1.24	.72
Pretreatment, steaming time	**	**	**
10 minutes per inch of thickness-----	.52	1.43	.96
20 minutes per inch of thickness-----	.48	1.26	.72
Thickness and bent diameter	**	**	**
1/2-inch thickness, 12-inch diameter-----	.24	.99	.43
1/2-inch thickness, 18-inch diameter-----	.64	1.65	1.28
1-inch thickness, 30-inch diameter-----	.61	1.40	.81

¹ Changes in diameter are increases from the restrained diameter. Each value listed is an average, with data on all factors pooled.

² Values tabulated below two asterisks differ significantly at the 0.01 level.

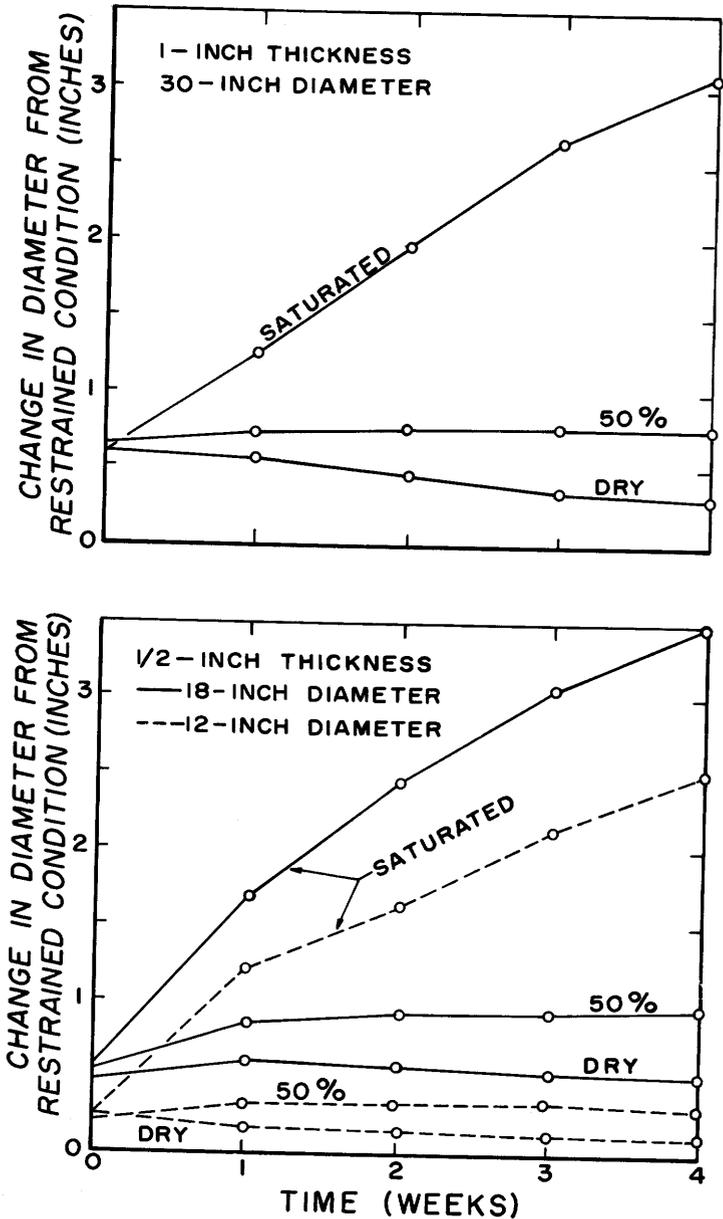


Figure 21-8.—Change in diameter, from the restrained condition, during 4 weeks of exposure to air which was saturated, at 50-percent relative humidity, or desiccated. The 0-week points show the changes in diameter that occurred when the restraining tapes were cut. Each curve based on data averaged from 32 specimens. (Drawings after Lemoine and Koch 1971.)

When the specimens were oven-dried, all but the ones previously held in bags with desiccant were reduced somewhat in diameter; after oven-drying, all had diameters larger than the diameters measured when they were under restraint by the glass tape (table 21-4). Edge-grain specimens that had been steamed 20 minutes per inch of thickness most nearly contracted to their original restrained diameters when they were oven-dried. Also, the ½-inch specimens bent to 12-inch diameter and stored in bags containing a desiccant, when subsequently oven-dried, approached most closely to their original restrained diameter; the ½-inch specimens bent to 18-inch diameter and stored in water-saturated air contracted least when oven-dried.

21-2 PLASTICIZING WOOD WITH UREA

Loughborough (1942) has shown that wood treated with urea alone or together with formaldehyde or dimethylolurea becomes thermoplastic and can be bent when hot even when the moisture content is low. When the treated wood cools, it retains its form.

No data specific to southern pine have been published. According to Peck (1968, p. 12), however, urea-treated wood does not bend as well as steamed wood and is weaker. His data show that white oak boiled in a urea solution for 20 minutes was bent successfully 28 times out of 40 attempts, but 14 of the successful bends failed in tension during drying; by contrast, steaming for 20 minutes yielded 37 successful bends out of 40 tries, and no tension failures occurred during drying. Urea-treated wood is more hygroscopic, and may be darker in color, than untreated wood.

21-3 PLASTICIZING WOOD WITH AMMONIA

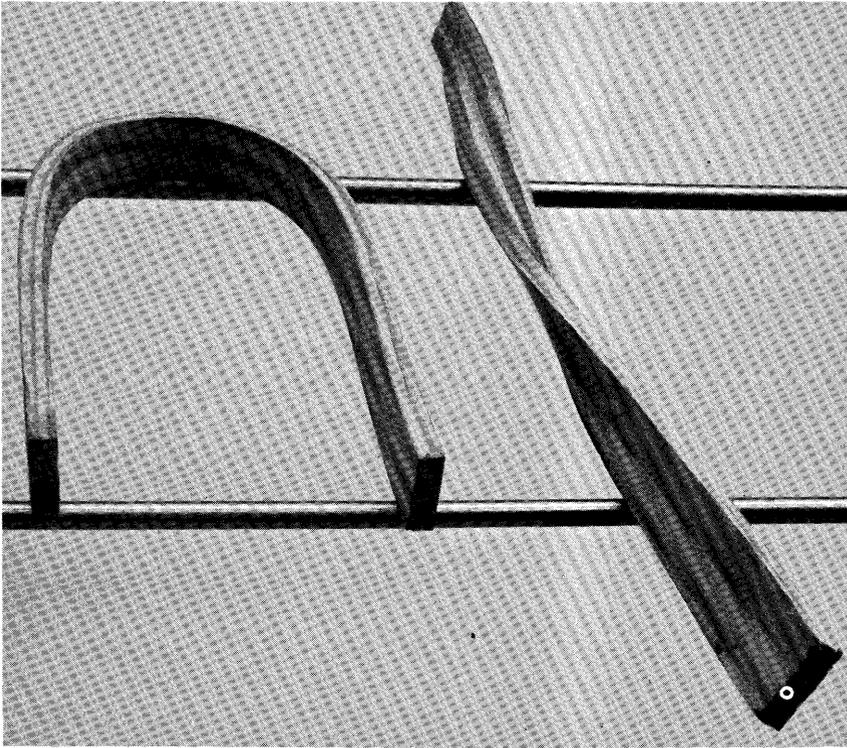
The use of liquid (anhydrous) ammonia to plasticize wood was suggested by Stamm (1955) and given more comprehensive study by Schuerch (1963, 1964). Pentoney (1966) reported on some of the physical properties of wood treated with ammonia.

No data specific to southern pine have been published, but Schuerch (1964) reported that immersion in liquid ammonia plasticizes all species; he further observed that low-density species failed in compression when bent more frequently than high-density species.

From the limited data available, it appears that southern pine is somewhat more plastic when ammonia treated than when steamed, and when bent may retain its shape better than steam-bent pine (fig. 21-9).

Anhydrous ammonia is a commercial chemical sold as a liquid under pressure (about 150 p.s.i.) in tanks. At atmospheric pressure ammonia boils at -28° F. (-33° C.) and freezes at -108° F. (-78° C.).

Schuerch (1964) stated that wood samples, preferably precooled, can be directly immersed in an open vessel of chilled ammonia. The moisture content of the wood is not critical, but air-dried wood has been most used



F-520997

Figure 21-9.—Ammonia-treated, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick by 1.1-inch-wide, southern pine, flat-grain strips. (Left) Bent to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch radius. (Right) Twisted 180° within a 20-inch length.

in experimental work. Time required to plasticize is dependent on specimen thickness and permeability. Veneer strips $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch thick, 1 inch wide and 4 inches long have been softened in less than $\frac{1}{2}$ -hour. Hardwood slats $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch by 4 by 40 inches have required times in excess of 4 hours. Thicker stock should be evacuated before treating with the liquid ammonia or should be pressure treated.

Schuerch (1964) found that if sufficiently treated and then warmed toward room temperature, thin specimens become pliable and could be readily manipulated with gloved hands. Maximum plasticity is reported to last 8 to 30 minutes; wood will retain extreme bends after being handled or clamped in position for a few minutes.

GASEOUS AMMONIA

Wood will adsorb either gaseous or liquid ammonia; the amount of gaseous ammonia adsorbed is dependent on the relative vapor pressure of the ammonia atmosphere. Davidson (1968) reported that, when exposed to an ammonia atmosphere at 77° F. in which the relative vapor

pressure of ammonia is about 1.0, hard maple adsorbed ammonia in an amount equal to 30 to 40 percent of its dry weight. Plasticization from the gaseous treatment was about equal to that obtained from immersion in liquid ammonia.

No data specific to southern pine are published, but Davidson (1968) reported general information on the process that is probably applicable to southern pine. He proposed that the treating system diagrammed in figure 21-10 has promise. With this system wood in the treating chamber is first subjected to a vacuum for 5 or 10 minutes before admitting the gaseous ammonia maintained at 77° F. and 145 p.s.i. pressure. Thick stock requires longer treating time than thin material; between zero- and 20-percent moisture content, optimum treating time is inversely proportional to moisture content. Davidson (1968) tentatively suggested the following times under pressure.

Thickness <i>Inch</i>	Treating time		
	Ovendry	10-percent moisture content	20-percent moisture content
	Hours		
1/8	8	1	1/2
1/4	8	2	1

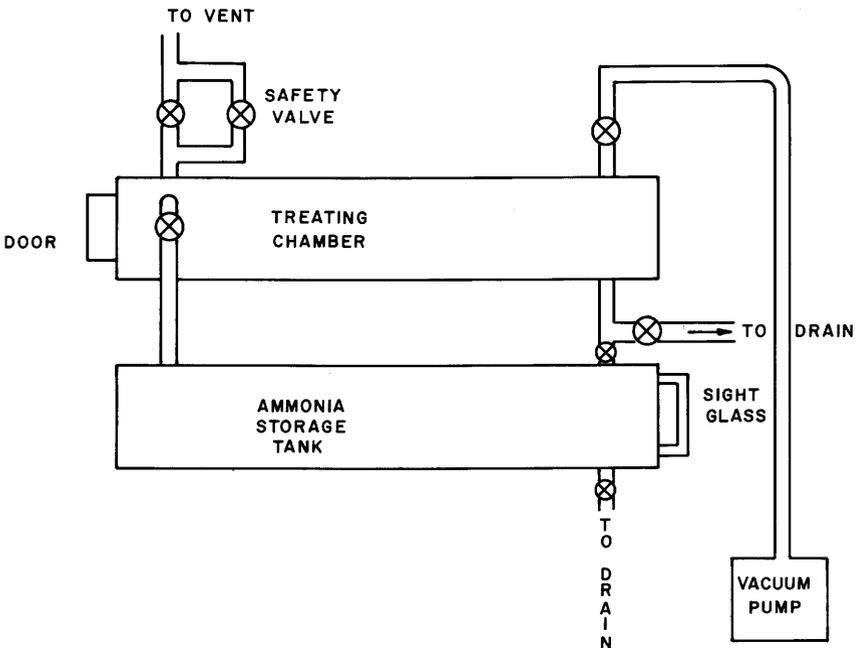


Figure 21-10.—Essential features of a treating plant for gaseous ammonia. Not shown are heaters required to maintain the treating temperature and pressure at about 77° F. and 145 p.s.i. (Drawing after Davidson 1968.)

At the end of the treating period, excess ammonia in the chamber is vented, and the wood is removed and formed immediately. Davidson (1968) reported that when room temperature is about 70° F., and wood is not exposed to intense sunlight, 1/8-inch-thick maple strips were formable for about 1/2-hour. If held on forms for about an hour, stresses in the wood relaxed and formed pieces could be released from clamps without danger of springback.

Further information on the properties of ammonia-treated wood has been published by Bariska et al. (1969) and Davidson and Baumgardt (1970). U.S. Patent 3,282,313 has been issued on the process.

21-4 COLD BENDING BY LAMINATING

If wood is very thin, it can be bent cold to a fairly small radius without breaking. When the bending force is removed, it will of course, return to original straight form. When thin strips, or laminae, are placed one on top of each other to build up a desired dimension, then the entire assembly can still be bent sharply—much in the manner of a deck of playing cards. If the laminae have been spread with adhesive prior to assembly, and if they are held in a bending form until the glue has cured, then the individual strips will no longer be free to move in relation to each other, and the bent shape will become permanent. By end joining individual strips into lengthy laminae, it is possible to fabricate long curved beams in this way.

Curved, laminated southern pine wood is both stiff and strong and is an important structural material. Because of stresses arising from forming the curved beam, however, strength of the assembled beam may be considerably less than that of a matched straight beam.

Woodson and Wangaard (1969) have published some basic information on the amount of strength reduction caused by various ratios of lamination thickness to radius of curvature (t/R). Their data were based on destructive tests of 120 small beams laminated from 0.2- to 0.5-inch-thick, vertical-grain laminae of clear loblolly pine; results can be conveniently expressed as **curvature stress factor**, i.e., the ratio of the strength of a curved beam to the strength of a matched straight beam. In the Woodson-Wangaard study, curved laminated beams loaded on the convex side had higher modulus of rupture values than matched straight beams. When loaded on the concave side, however, both modulus of rupture and fiber stress at proportional limit were substantially less than corresponding values for straight beams (fig. 21-11).

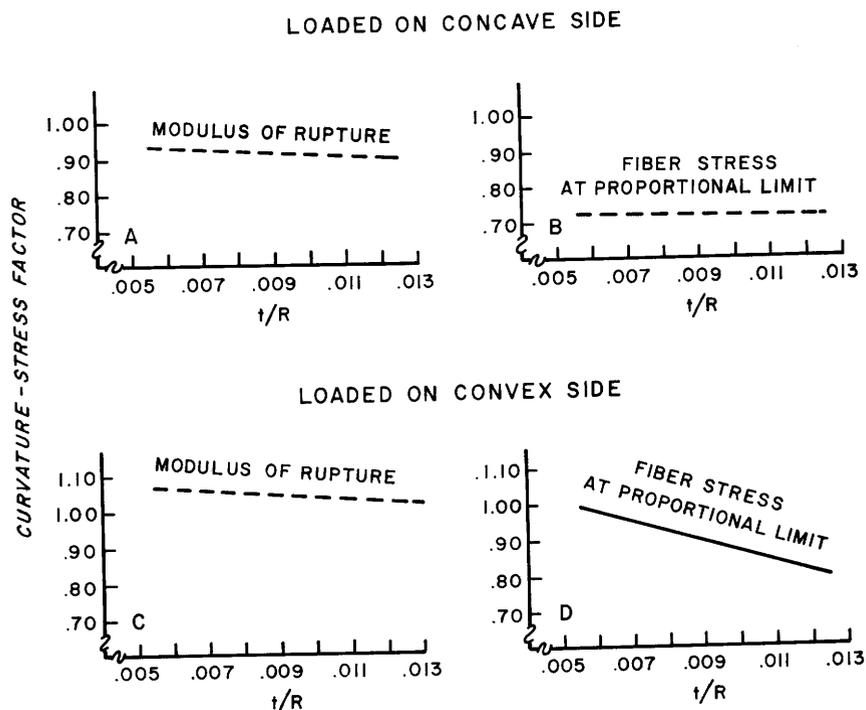


Figure 21-11.—Relationships between ratio of lamina thickness to radius of curvature and ratio of strength of curved beams to strength of straight beams when loaded on convex side and concave side. Only curve D showed a significant effect of t/R on curvature stress factor. (Drawings after Woodson and Wangaard 1969.)

21-5 LITERATURE CITED

- Bariska, M., Skaar, C., and Davidson, R. W.
1969. Studies of the wood-anhydrous ammonia system. *Wood Sci.* 2:65-72.
- Davidson, R. W.
1968. Plasticizing wood with anhydrous ammonia. State Univ. Coll. Forest., 4 pp. Syracuse.
- Davidson, R. W., and Baumgardt, W. G.
1970. Plasticizing wood with ammonia—a progress report. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(3): 19-25.
- Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1967. Rex—Fortran-4 system for combinatorial screening or conventional analysis of multivariate regressions. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. PSW-44, 47 pp. Pacific Southwest Forest Exp. Sta., Berkeley, Calif.
- Jorgensen, R. N.
1965. Furniture wood bending. I. *Furniture Design and Manufacturing* 37(12): 60, 62.
- Kollmann, F. F. P., and Côté, W. A., Jr.
1968. Principles of wood science and technology. I. Solid wood. 592 pp. N.Y.: Springer-Verlag, New York, Inc.

- Kübler, H.
1957. [On the persistancy and shape of bent and compressed wood.] Holz 11(10): 217-219. (English Transl. by W. C. Stevens as Transl. 58, Forest Prod. Res. Lab., Princes Risborough, Aylesbury, Bucks, England.)
- Lemoine, T. J., and Koch, P.
1971. Steam-bending properties of southern pine. Forest Prod. J. 21(4): 34-42.
- Loughborough, W. K.
1942. Impregnating and plasticizing wood. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,298,017) U.S. Pat. Off., Wash., D.C.
- Luxford, R. F., and Krone, R. H.
1962. Laminated oak frames for a 50-foot Navy motor launch compared to steam-bent frames. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1611, 52 pp.
- Peck, E. C.
1968. Bending solid wood to form. USDA Agr. Handbook 125, 37 pp.
- Pentoney, R. E.
1966. Liquid ammonia-solvent combinations in wood plasticization: Properties of treated wood. Ind. and Eng. Chem. Prod. Res. and Develop. 5:105-110.
- Schuerch, C.
1963. Plasticizing wood with liquid ammonia. Ind. and Eng. Chem. 55(10): 39.
- Schuerch, C.
1964. Principles and potential of wood plasticization. Forest Prod. J. 14: 377-381.
- Stamm, A. J.
1955. Swelling of wood and fiberboards in liquid ammonia. Forest Prod. J. 5: 413-416.
- Stevens, W. C., and Turner, N.
1948. Solid and laminated wood bending. Dep. Sci. & Ind. Res., 71 pp. London: His Majesty's Stationery Office.
- Stevens, W. C., and Turner, N.
1970. Wood bending handbook. Forest Prod. Res. Lab., 110 pp. London: Her Majesty's Stationery Office.
- Wangaard, F. F.
1952. The steam-bending of beech. Beech Util. Ser. 3, 26 pp. USDA Forest Serv. Northeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Upper Darby, Pa.
- Woodson, G. E., and Wangaard, F. F.
1969. Effect of forming stresses on the strength of curved laminated beams of loblolly pine. Forest Prod. J. 19(3): 47-58.

22

Treating

CONTENTS

	Page
22-1 TREATMENT FOR PRESERVATION	1064
WOOD PRESERVATIVES	1067
<i>Oils and oilborne preservatives</i>	1067
<i>Waterborne preservatives</i>	1067
<i>Effectiveness in ground or fresh water</i>	1069
<i>Effectiveness in salt water</i>	1075
<i>Effectiveness against ants, beetles, and woodpeckers</i>	1082
FACTORS AFFECTING PENETRATION AND	
ABSORPTION	1082
<i>Anatomy</i>	1083
<i>Specific gravity</i>	1083
<i>Grain direction</i>	1083
<i>Sapwood and heartwood</i>	1083
<i>Earlywood and latewood</i>	1084
<i>Fungus infections</i>	1084
<i>Rough vs. dressed lumber</i>	1084
<i>Treating procedures and preservatives</i>	1085
<i>Form of timber and effect of glue lines</i>	1085
DETERMINATION OF PENETRATION AND	
RETENTION	1086
PRETREATMENT AND CONDITIONING	1087
<i>Peeling</i>	1087
<i>Machining</i>	1088
<i>Seasoning</i>	1088
<i>Post-treatments</i>	1089
PROCESSES	1089
<i>Pressure processes applied in closed cylinders</i>	1090
<i>Nonpressure processes</i>	1092
PRESERVATION OF PARTICULAR PRODUCTS	1095
<i>Logs, bolts, cordwood, and pulp chips</i>	1095
<i>Piling</i>	1095
<i>Poles</i>	1096
<i>Posts</i>	1097
<i>Lumber and timbers</i>	1099
<i>Crossties</i>	1103
<i>Laminated wood</i>	1105

	Page
<i>Plywood</i>	1106
<i>Crossarms</i>	1107
<i>Millwork and other wood requiring clean treatment</i>	1107
<i>Particleboard</i>	1109
<i>Fiberboard</i>	1109
22-2 TREATMENT FOR FIRE RETARDATION	1110
FIRE PERFORMANCE	1110
REASON FOR EFFECTIVENESS OF FIRE	
RETARDANTS	1111
METHODS FOR EVALUATION OF FIRE	
RETARDANTS	1111
<i>Large tunnel test ASTM E84</i>	1111
<i>USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube test</i>	1112
<i>Eight-foot tunnel furnace test</i>	1112
<i>Schlyter panel test</i>	1115
<i>Comparability</i>	1116
IMPREGNATION WITH FIRE RETARDANTS	1116
<i>Effectiveness of various chemicals</i>	1117
<i>Standards for formulation, penetration and retention</i>	1124
<i>Permanence</i>	1125
<i>Corrosive effects</i>	1125
<i>Moisture absorption</i>	1125
<i>Strength</i>	1126
<i>Machinability</i>	1126
<i>Glueability</i>	1126
<i>Paintability</i>	1126
<i>Use and acceptance</i>	1127
FIRE-RETARDANT COATINGS	1127
22-3 TREATMENT FOR MODIFICATION OF	
PROPERTIES	1128
HEAT-STABILIZED WOOD (<i>Staybwood</i>)	1129
HEAT-STABILIZED COMPRESSED WOOD	
(<i>Staypak</i>)	1129
WOOD-PHENOL-FORMALDEHYDE COMPOSITE	
(<i>Impreg</i>)	1130
COMPRESSED WOOD-PHENOL-FORMALDE-	
HYDE COMPOSITE (<i>Compreg</i>)	1130
POLYETHYLENE GLYCOL (PEG)	1131
ACETYLATION	1131
ETHYLENE OXIDE TREATMENT	1132

	Page
CROSSLINKING WITH FORMALDEHYDE	1132
β -PROPIOLACTONE TREATMENT AN	
CYANOETHYLATION	1133
OZONE GAS-PHASE TREATMENT	1133
AMMONIUM LIQUID AND VAPOR TREAT-	
MENT	1134
GAMMA AND BETA IRRADIATION	1134
WOOD-VINYL-POLYMER COMPOSITES (WPC)	
AND OTHER WOOD-PLASTIC COMBINA-	
TIONS	1134
<i>Dimensional stability</i>	1138
<i>Strength</i>	1139
<i>Weathering</i>	1141
<i>Biological attack</i>	1142
FUTURE PROSPECTS	1142
 22-4 LITERATURE CITED	 1143

22

Treating¹

22-1 TREATMENT FOR PRESERVATION ²

Wood is given preservative treatment to make it durable. The resulting extended useful life reduces the annual cost of keeping wood in service. Preservative treatment also reduces the need for oversize design of structural members to compensate for anticipated deterioration.

The amount of wood treated with preservatives peaked in 1929 and 1947 (fig. 22-1). Trends for individual products have varied widely (Gill and Phelps 1968). In 1967, 23.4 million cross ties were treated—much less than the 63.3 million treated in 1930; since 1962, however, the number of cross ties treated has increased at least 10 percent per year. In 1930, 175.5 million bd. ft. of switch ties were treated; this compares to 97.3 million in 1967. The amount of lumber and construction timber treated has been increasing over the years to 801 million bd. ft. in 1967. In 1967, 5.9 million poles, 34.4 million fenceposts, 4.8 million crossarms, and 27.6 million lineal feet of piles were treated; consumption in all of these categories is increasing. In 1967, 1.1 million sq. yd. of wood blocks, 20.7 million bd. ft. of mine ties and timbers, and 19.1 million cu. ft. of miscellaneous products were treated. The amount of plywood treated in 1967 was 1.2 million cu. ft.—nearly double the 1966 volume. In all, 286.4 million cu. ft. of wood were treated (by 403 reporting plants) in

¹ Mention of a chemical in this chapter or elsewhere in this text does not constitute a recommendation; only those chemicals registered by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may be recommended, and then only for uses as prescribed in the registration—and in the manner and at the concentration prescribed. The list of registered chemicals varies from time to time; prospective users, therefore, should get current information on registration status from Pesticides Regulation Division, Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C. This chapter contains frequent references to Federal (and other) specifications; since these specifications are changed from time to time, the reader is cautioned to get current information from the specifying agency.

² Sec. 22-1 is expanded from an outline: Blew, J. O., Jr. Preservations and preservative processes for southern pine wood—a review. Presented at a symposium, "Utilization of the Southern Pines," Alexandria, La., Nov. 6-8, 1968.

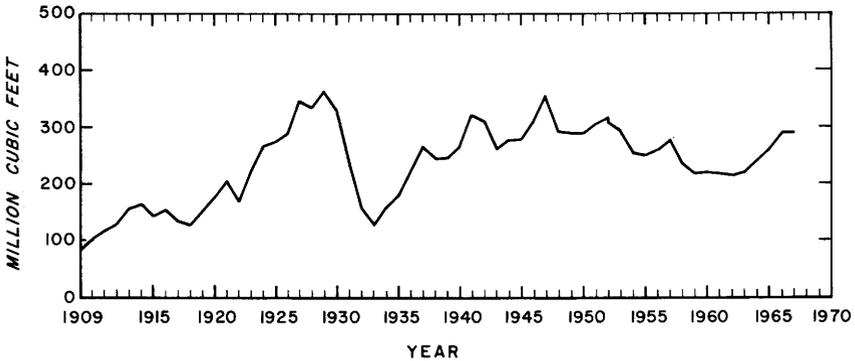


Figure 22-1.—Forest products treated with preservatives in the United States. (Drawing after Gill and Phelps 1968.)

1967; this compares to a total of 332.3 million cu. ft. treated by 204 plants in 1930.

In 1967, the total number of treating plants in the United States was 421 (fig. 22-2); of these, 57 percent, or 238, were in the Southeast or South-central States (Gill and Phelps 1968). Eighty-eight percent of the fenceposts, 77 percent of the poles and piling, and 58 percent of the lumber treated in the United States were southern pine. Other species predominated in marine piling, plywood, crossarms, switch ties, and crossies (table 22-1).

TABLE 22-1.—Proportion of treated products made from southern pine in 1967 (Gill and Phelps 1968)

Product	Unit	Southern pine
		<i>Percent of U.S. total</i>
Fenceposts.....	Number.....	88
Poles (all).....	Number.....	77
Poles (construction).....	Number.....	71
Poles (utility).....	Number.....	76
Piling (all).....	Lineal feet.....	77
Piling (marine).....	Lineal feet.....	41
Piling (foundation).....	Lineal feet.....	86
Lumber.....	Board feet.....	58
Crossarms.....	Lumber.....	21
Plywood.....	Square feet.....	7
Crossies.....	Number.....	5
Switch ties.....	Board feet.....	4

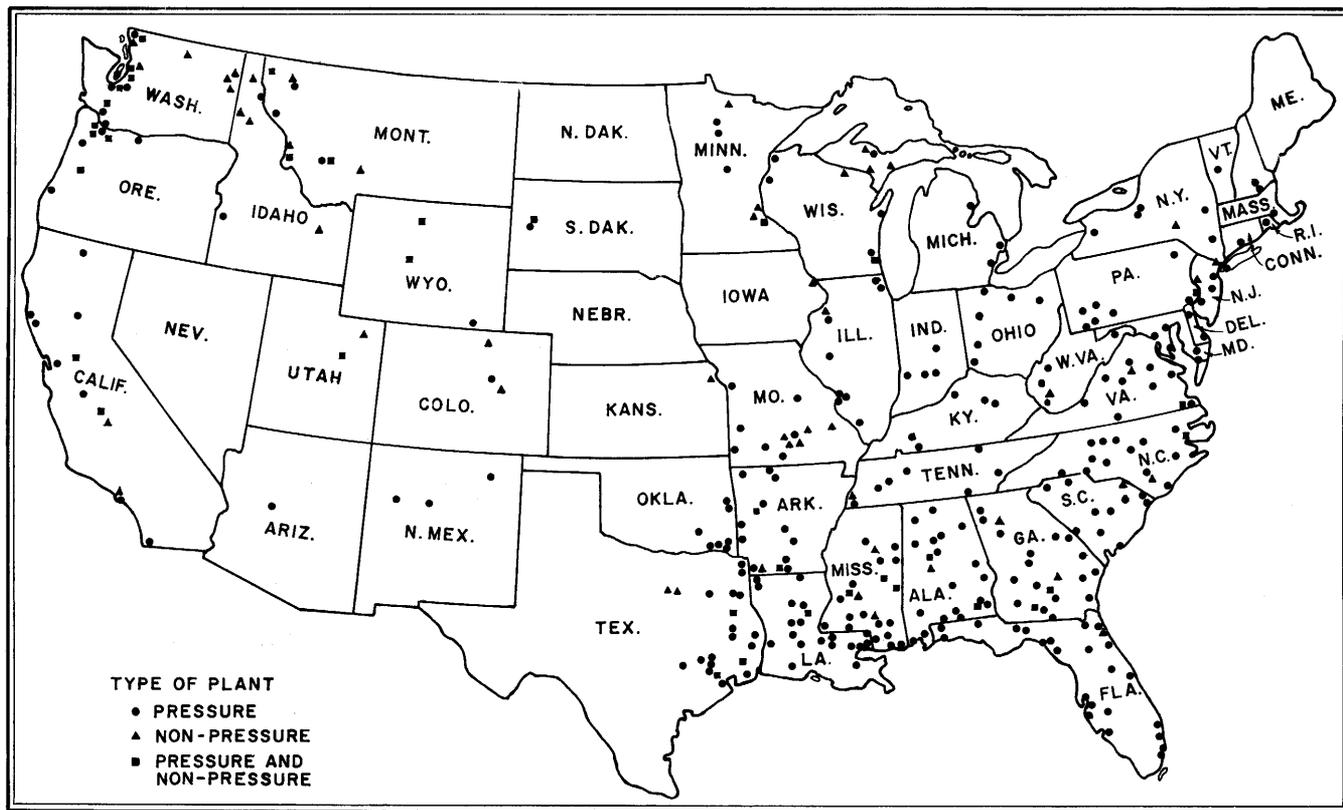


Figure 22-2.—Wood-preserving plants in the United States in 1967. (Drawing after Gill and Phelps 1968.)

WOOD PRESERVATIVES¹

According to the American Wood Preservers Association (1951), chemical compounds (or mixtures of compounds) must satisfy seven requirements to be suitable for general use as wood preservatives. They must:

- Be toxic to wood-destroying organisms.
- Be supported by field and/or service data.
- Possess satisfactory physical and chemical properties relating to permanence under conditions recommended for use.
- Be free of objectionable qualities in handling and use.
- Be subject to satisfactory laboratory and plant control.
- Be available under provisions of current patents.
- Be in actual commercial use.

The preservatives in general use are described in readily available references (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955; Hunt and Garratt 1967). The principal preservatives are of two main types: oils and oilborne preservatives, and waterborne preservatives.

Oils and oilborne preservatives¹.—These include preservative oils in general use, e.g., the creosote formulations. The group also includes preservatives prepared by dissolving toxic chemicals such as pentachlorophenol in low-cost, light or heavy petroleum oils. The Federal specification number is in parentheses where applicable in the following list¹:

By-product oils and oil mixtures

coal tar creosote (TT-C-645)
 liquid coal tar creosote
 anthracene oils
 low-temperature coal tar creosotes
 lignite-tar creosote
 coal tar
 creosote and coal tar solutions
 (TT-C-650)
 petroleum oils
 creosote-petroleum solutions
 (TT-W-568)
 water-gas tar
 wood-tar creosote
 creosote emulsions

Oil solutions of toxic chemicals

pentachlorophenol (TT-W-570)
 other chlorinated phenols
 tetrachlorophenol
 trichlorophenol
 chloro-2-phenylphenol
 copper pentachlorophenate
 zinc tetrachlorophenate
 copper naphthenate
 other naphthenic acids
 zinc naphthenate
 mercuric naphthenate
 iron naphthenate
 solubilized copper-8-quinolinolate
 phenyl mercury oleate
 water-repellent preservatives

Waterborne preservatives¹.—As a solvent for preservatives, water is cheap, available, incombustible, nontoxic, and it penetrates wood well. Treatments with waterborne chemicals are relatively cheap, add little to wood weight, and leave wood clean and free from solvent odor or added fire hazard; they are particularly suited for wood used in buildings. Because water swells wood, there may be shrinkage as wood is redried. Since water soluble chemicals tend to leach out of wood in wet situations, the newer waterborne preservatives are designed to form relatively insoluble compounds as the wood dries after treatment. Hager (1969) has provided

data on the leaching of pine sawdust treated with copper-chromium-arsenic preservatives (type CCA), and Levi et al. (1970) discuss the role of a water-repellent additive used with such preservatives to lengthen service life.

Listed below are 10 low-solubility preservatives now in extensive commercial use for wood in contact with the ground or fresh water as well as for wood in interior use. Most of these mixed-salt preservatives increase the electrical conductivity of wood by leaving soluble chlorides, or sulfates of sodium or potassium in it. Since chemical changes are likely to occur in the mixed-salt preservatives if heated to high temperatures, standards of the American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C1-69) limit the maximum temperatures that may be used during the treating process or in use to 120, 140, or 150° F. depending on the preservative.

The following are standard waterborne preservatives whose designation and component chemicals can be listed (Federal specification number shown where applicable)¹:

- Boliden salt (CZA): arsenic acid, sodium arsenate, sodium dichromate, and zinc sulfate.
- Boliden salt K-33 (CCA type B): arsenic acid, chromic acid, copper oxide, and water. TT-W-550, type II.
- chromated copper arsenate (CCA type C): arsenic acid, chromic acid, copper oxide, and water.
- Celcure (ACC): chromic acid, copper sulfate, and sodium (or potassium) dichromate. TT-W-546.
- Chemonite (ACA): acetic acid, arsenic trioxide, and copper hydroxide in ammonia and water. TT-W-549.
- chromated zinc chloride (CZC): sodium (or potassium) dichromate and zinc chloride. TT-W-551.
- copperized Boliden salt (CuCZA): arsenic acid, copper sulfate, sodium arsenate, sodium (or potassium) dichromate, and zinc sulfate.
- copperized chromated zinc chloride (CuCZC): cupric chloride, sodium (or potassium) dichromate, and zinc chloride.
- Erdalith Greensalt (CCA type A): arsenic pentoxide, copper sulfate, and potassium dichromate (or sodium dichromate, or chromic acid). TT-W-550.
- Osmose Osmosar (FCAP type B): dinitrophenol (or sodium pentachlorophenate), sodium arsenate, sodium (or potassium) dichromate and sodium fluoride. TT-W-535.
- Tanalith-Wolman salt (FCAP type A): dinitrophenol (or sodium pentachlorophenate), sodium arsenate, sodium chromate, and sodium fluoride. TT-W-535.

Hunt and Garratt (1967) list many other water soluble chemicals, some sold under proprietary names, most of which are little used in the United States today. An exception is sodium pentachlorophenate, a very satisfactory dip to control blue stain during air-seasoning of southern pine. Waterborne preservatives for which service life specific to southern pine posts is available (Blew and Davidson 1967) include: ACC, borax-boric acid, copper sulfate (with sodium arsenate applied by double diffusion), CZC, FCAP-A, FCAP-B, mercuric chloride, sodium chromate, sodium dichromate, zinc chloride, and zinc meta arsenite. Also, southern pine

stakes treated with chromated copper arsenate (CCA types I and II) are under field test in Mississippi (Blew and Davidson 1969).

Effectiveness in ground or fresh water¹.—Laboratory tests for initial screening of toxicity and other characteristics of preservatives and standards applicable to them are described by Hunt and Garratt (1967, p. 79).

Ultimately, the effectiveness of preservatives must be proven in service tests on wood in commercial form, in actual use, and carrying the accustomed loads under a range of exposure conditions. Since controlled service tests are expensive and time consuming, accelerated field tests such as exposure of treated stakes are often used. Tests with full-sized fenceposts, while accelerated only in extreme soils and climates, are not considered service tests unless the wood is in use and carrying normal loads; results are, however, comparable to those of service installations.

Southern pine has been exposed in stake tests at Saucier, Miss., Madison, Wis., Bogalusa, La., Jacksonville, Fla., and in the Panama Canal Zone. Installations began in 1938 and have been added to periodically. The stakes were all sapwood, 2 by 4 by 18 inches, and were set upright with half their length in the ground. Some smaller, untreated stakes were similarly installed. While no substitute for actual service trials, such tests are useful for screening out ineffective materials and exploring preservative properties of materials showing promise in the laboratory. Results with generally used preservatives at the Saucier, Miss. site are summarized in table 22-2¹. Details of these and other tests were reported by Blew and Davidson (1969).

Untreated stakes.—In these tests untreated 2- by 4-inch southern pine sapwood stakes had an average life of approximately 1 year in the Panama Canal Zone, 1.8 to 3.6 years at Saucier, Miss., Bogalusa, La., and Jacksonville, Fla., and 4 to 6 years at Madison, Wis. Untreated ¾-inch pine sapwood stakes in Mississippi have had an average life of 1.4 to 2.1 years.

Pressure-treated stakes.—Many pressure-treated stakes are still under observation, especially those in newer installations and those with more effective preservatives. While average life cannot be determined from such treatments, it has been estimated where failures have been sufficient to establish firm trends.

In the Canal Zone, stakes treated with **chromated zinc arsenate (Boliden salt)** and retaining 0.33 pound of the preservative per cubic foot have had an average life of 9 years, while those retaining 1.0 pound averaged 15.3 years. In Mississippi a failure was noted only with the low retention after 26 years, but failures have occurred in Wisconsin at both retentions. This is attributed to the presence of arsenic-tolerant fungi at the Wisconsin test area.

Stakes treated with retentions of from 0.5 to 1.0 pound of **chromated zinc chloride** per cubic foot have lasted, on an average, about 5 to 7 years in Panama, 14 to 20 years in Mississippi, and 15 to 18 years in Wisconsin. Stakes treated with **fluor chrome arsenate phenol (Wolman**

TABLE 22-2.—Summary of Mississippi tests of 2- by 4-inch southern pine sapwood stakes pressure treated with wood preservatives in general use (Blew and Davidson 1969)

Preservative	Average retention ¹	Average life	Remarks
	<i>Pounds per cubic foot</i>	<i>Years</i>	
Acid copper chromate-----	0.26	11.6	-----
(Fed. Spec. TT-W-546)	.30	-----	10 percent failed after 2 years
	.52	-----	10 percent failed after 23 years
	.60	-----	10 percent failed after 2 years
	.75	-----	20 percent failed after 23 years
	.28	-----	20 percent failed after 24 years
Ammoniacal copper arsenite-----	.59, 1.12, 1.45	-----	No failures after 24 years
(Fed. Spec. TT-W-549)	.26	-----	60 percent failed after 23 years
Chromated copper arsenate-----	.50, .78	-----	No failures after 23 years
Type I (Fed. Spec. TT-W-550)		-----	
Type II (Fed. Spec. TT-W-550)	.26, .37, .52	-----	No failure after 19 years
	.79, 1.04	-----	
	.42	-----	10 percent failed after 26 years
Chromated zinc arsenate-----	.55 to 1.34	-----	No failure after 26 years
(Former Fed. Spec. TT-W-538)	.28	-----	30 percent failed after 17 years
	.48, .97, 1.27	-----	No failures after 17 years
	.49	14.2	-----
Chromated zinc chloride-----	.76	20.2	-----
(Fed. Spec. TT-W-551)	1.02	20.1	-----
	1.5	-----	40 percent failed after 15 years
	2.91, 6.0	-----	No failures after 13 years
Copper naphthenate			-----
0.11 percent copper in No. 2 fuel oil-----	10.3	15.9	-----
.29 percent copper in No. 2 fuel oil-----	10.2	21.8	-----
.57 percent copper in No. 2 fuel oil-----	10.6	-----	50 percent failed after 25 years
.86 percent copper in No. 2 fuel oil-----	9.6	-----	20 percent failed after 25 years

Creosote, coal tar.....	4.2	17.8	-----
	8.0		20 percent failed after 26 years
	8.3		No failures after 19 years
	11.8, 16.5		No failures after 26 years
	4.6	21.3	-----
	10.0		60 percent failed after 28 years
	14.5		No failures after 28 years
	4.1	14.2	-----
Low residue, straight run.....	8.0	17.8	-----
Medium residue, straight run.....	8.0	18.8	-----
High residue, straight run.....	7.8	20.3	-----
Medium residue, low in tar acids.....	8.1	19.4	-----
Medium residue, low in naphthalene.....	8.2	21.3	-----
Medium residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene.....	8.0	18.9	-----
Low residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene.....	8.0	19.2	-----
High residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene.....	8.2	20.0	-----
English, vertical retort.....	8.0	18.9	-----
	5.3		60 percent failed after 20 years
	10.1		20 percent failed after 20 years
	15.0		No failures after 20 years
English, coke oven.....	7.9	13.6	-----
	4.7	16.3	-----
	10.1		70 percent failed after 20 years
	14.8		60 percent failed after 20 years
Fluor chrome arsenate phenol.....	.2	10.2	-----
(Type A) (Fed. Spec. TT-W-535).....	.3	18.0	-----
	.61	24.1	-----
	.35, .50, .75		No failures after 9 years

See footnote at end of table, page 1072.

TABLE 22-2.—(Blew and Davidson 1969)—Continued

Preservative	Average retention ¹	Average life	Remarks
	Pounds per cubic foot	Years	
Pentachlorophenol (various solvents)			
Liquefied petroleum gas-----	.14	-----	10 percent failed in 7-1/2 years
	.19	-----	10 percent failed in 7-1/2 years
	.34	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.34	-----	No failures in 5 years
	.49	-----	No failures in 5 years
	.58	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.65	-----	No failures in 5 years
Stoddard solvent (mineral spirits)-----	.14	-----	10 percent failed in 7-1/2 years
	.18	-----	10 percent failed in 7-1/2 years
	.38	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.67	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.2	13.7	-----
	.2	9.5	-----
	.4	15.5	-----
Heavy gas oil (Mid-United States)-----	.2	-----	22 percent failed in 20-1/2 years
	.4	-----	10 percent failed in 20-1/2 years
	.6	-----	10 percent failed in 20-1/2 years
No. 4 aromatic oil (West Coast)-----	.2	-----	60 percent failed in 17 years
	.4	-----	20 percent failed in 17 years
AWPA P9 (heavy petroleum)-----	.11	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.19	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.29	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
	.53	-----	No failures in 5 years
	.67	-----	No failures in 7-1/2 years
Untreated stakes-----		1.8 to 3 6	-----

¹ Except for copper naphthenate and creosote (for which total preservative solution retained is indicated), values show retention of dry chemical.

FCAP) to retentions of 0.2 to 0.3 pound per cubic foot have had an average life in Panama of about 3 and 6 years, respectively, while those treated with 0.6 pound per cubic foot averaged 14 years. In Mississippi, stakes treated with 0.2, 0.3, and 0.6 pound of that preservative per cubic foot have had an average life of about 10, 18, and 20 years, respectively. In Wisconsin, average life for similar retentions was 14 to 16 years.

Of the waterborne preservatives under test, the formulations containing either copper and arsenic (**ammoniacal copper arsenite**) or copper, chromium, and arsenic (**chromated copper arsenate**) are the better performers, with no failures after 19 to 24 years when retentions were 0.5 pound per cubic foot or higher. **Acid copper chromate** with a retention of 0.26 pound per cubic foot has shown an average life of 11.6 years in Mississippi; there were failures after 23 years, with retentions of 0.52 and 0.75 pound per cubic foot and, after 2 years, with retentions of 0.3 and 0.6 pound per cubic foot.

Results thus far in tests of **pentachlorophenol** (approximately 0.2 pound per cubic foot) with different **hydrocarbon solvents** show better performance with heavy solvents such as heavy gas oil, lube oil extract, No. 4 aromatic oil, and AWP A-P9 (heavy petroleum solvent) than with volatile (LPG) or light oils such as Stoddard solvent (mineral spirits). Preservatives such as **rosin amine-D-pentachlorophenate**, **tributyltin oxide**, and **copper-8-quinolinolate** also show better performance with the heavy petroleum solvent than with the light Stoddard solvent (mineral spirits).

Ten **coal tar creosotes** installed in 1948 were less effective than those used in 1940-41, 8-pound treatments showing only a few serviceable stakes after 20 years, with average life estimated at 14 to 21 years. For comparable retentions, failures after 25½ to 28 years were 20 to 50 percent in the earlier installation.

Stakes pressure treated with a **fire-retarding formulation** containing ammonium phosphate and ammonium sulfate lasted, on an average, only 2 to 3 years in Mississippi. With these ammonium salts plus borax and boric acid average life was about 4 years. The fire-retarding formulation with borax and boric acid alone has provided protection against decay and termites for an average of about 6 years. The addition of zinc chloride and chromium compounds to combinations of boron and ammonium salts in fire retardants improves protection against decay fungi and termites.

In Mississippi, **copper naphthenate** is furnishing greater protection (average life 16, 22, and more years in four tests—see table 22-2) than zinc naphthenate with similar retentions.

Rosin amine D **pentachlorophenate** in Stoddard solvent is performing less satisfactorily than is pentachlorophenol with that solvent and similar retentions. Naval stores products such as rosin oil, oleoresin, and drop liquor concentrate in petroleum solvents appear to have limited value as preservatives but are improved by the addition of pentachlorophenol. Urea has also afforded limited protection, 5.8 pounds per cubic foot giving

stakes average life of 9.1 years in Mississippi. Other products showing limited preservative value in the retentions used are acrylonitrile (cyanoethylation), ammonium hydroxide (thiamine destruction), amyl phenyl acetate, capric acid, copper-8-quinolinolate (in Stoddard solvent), diamyl phenol, DDT, dodecylamine, nickel stearate, and tribulytin oxide (in Stoddard solvent).

Average life increases with **size of test stakes**; with coal tar creosote retention of 8 pounds per cubic foot, 1/2-inch-square stakes showed an average life of 17 years with 100-percent failure in 21 1/2 years. After 27 1/2 years, 1-inch-square stakes show 90-percent failures, 1 1/2-inch-square stakes 80 percent, and 2- by 4-inch stakes 30-percent failures.

Stakes with nonpressure treatments.—Blew and Davidson (1969) also reported tests of southern pine stakes treated by nonpressure methods. Stakes given such treatments as brushing and brief dipping in coal tar creosote and solutions of pentachlorophenol, copper naphthenate, zinc naphthenate, and phenyl mercury oleate, have, in general, lasted 1 to 4 years longer than untreated controls. Stakes dipped for 15 minutes in coal tar creosote had a life of about 8 years in Mississippi. Stakes soaked 18 hours in solutions of pentachlorophenol or mixtures of chlorinated phenols have lasted 5 to 10 years in the Canal Zone and 8 to 16 years in the United States.

Pine stakes soaked in urea solution have lasted about 1 to 1 1/2 years longer than control stakes in Mississippi, while those soaked in urea-formaldehyde solutions have outlasted controls by about 3 to 4 years. Stakes with higher retentions of copper chromate and with copper arsenate applied by **double diffusion** continue to perform well after 25 years in Mississippi. Failures thus far are attributed to poor penetration of the preservative.

Southern pine posts.—Blew and Davidson (1967) have reported on southern pine posts installed in exposure tests at the Harrison Experimental Forest, Saucier, Miss. in 1936, 1937, 1938, 1941, 1949, and 1964. The posts—round, bark-free, free of fungi, mostly sapwood, 6 to 7 feet long, and from 2 1/2 to 7 inches in top diameter—were installed in dry, moist, and wet sites. Seventy preservative treatments were applied, including a few duplicates. Tables 22-3 and 22-4 summarize observations through January 1967¹.

In the older tests, both treated and untreated posts have generally lasted longer on wet than on dry or moist sites. With few exceptions, this has been true for salts as well as oilborne preservatives.

Research indicates treatments¹ that should protect posts for an average life exceeding 40 years under southern Mississippi conditions include pressure treatments with coal tar creosote and used crankcase oil (50-50), pentachlorophenol (3 to 5 percent) in used crankcase oil, water-gas tar, and zinc meta arsenite, as well as double diffusion treatment with copper sulfate and sodium arsenate. Slightly less effective (25- to 40-year average

life) are pressure treatments with acid copper chromate (Celcure), chromated zinc chloride, coal tar, coal tar creosote, fluor chrome arsenate phenol (Tanalith), lignite coal tar creosote, tetrachlorophenol (3 to 5 percent) in used crankcase oil, and zinc chloride; steeping in mercuric chloride and full-length Osmose (diffusion) treatments should also result in average lives of more than 25 years.

Results from the 1949 installation are still tentative, but only a few materials (relatively nontoxic ones) have so far proved ineffective. For the majority of treatments in the test, on which failures have been less than 10 percent in 18 years, average life should exceed 26 years. This is true of the treatments testing several petroleum oils as carriers for pentachlorophenol and diluent for creosote to replace used crankcase oils. The latter are unsuitable for pasture fencing because they may contain chemicals reported to be a cause of "X-disease" (hyperkeratosis) in cattle. Performance to date does not suggest any loss of effectiveness from the substitution¹.

While some waterborne treatments have proved quite effective at Saucier, these and other salt preservatives may be more effective where exposure to leaching is less severe.

Effectiveness in salt water.—Chief deteriorators of wood exposed to salt water are molluscan borers, called shipworms, of the genera *Bankia* and *Teredo*, and crustacean borers of the genus *Limnoria*, which are relatives of the common terrestrial sowbugs. (See sec. 17-3.) The shipworms attack wood as free-swimming larvae, remaining as adults within a single burrow. They tolerate brackish water as dilute as 10 parts salts per million (by weight), and polluted water with dissolved oxygen as low as 2 parts per million. *Limnoria* adults are ant-size, mobile, limited to sea water (25 to 30 parts salt per million), and concentrate their attacks in the outer inch of submerged wood³.

Creosote is the preservative most widely used to protect wood from marine organisms¹. While adult shipworms tolerate this poison to some extent, larvae are more sensitive and rarely infect creosoted wood. Protection may fail, however, where untreated wood is exposed in, or in contact with a treated timber. One species of crustacean borer, *Limnoria tripuncta* Menzies, attacks creosoted wood (Beckman et al. 1957). Because copperbased paints and arsenicals have limited protective life in sea water, and it is virtually impossible to long maintain the essential complete coverage, heavy impregnations of creosote remain the best protection against *Limnoria*.

The American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C18-69) specification calls for creosote, or creosote-coal tar solution, applied with vacuum and pressure in the full-cell process to a retention of 20 or 25 pounds per

³ Menzies, R. J. The nature of, and prevention of, marine borer attacks on southern pine wood—A review. Presented at a symposium, "Utilization of the Southern Pines," Alexandria, La. No. 6-8, 1968.

TABLE 22-3.—Summary of observations on round southern pine posts installed at Saucier, Miss. 1936 to 1941, as of January 1967
(after Blew and Davidson 1967)

Treatment ¹	Retention	Failures						Average life ^{1 2}	Remarks
		Site			Cause				
		Dry	Moist	Wet	Decay	Decay and termites	Termites		
	<i>Pounds per cu. ft.</i>	<i>Percent</i>						<i>Years</i>	
Untreated controls.....	0	100	100	100	13	84	3	3.3	2.6, 4.0, and 4.8 years average life on dry, moist, and wet sites, respectively
Acid copper chromate (Celcure)...	.92 ³	33	7	12	21	4	-----	38	75 percent serviceable in January 1967
Beta-naphthol, 5 percent, in oil....	6.20	100	100	100	22	59	19	11.6	All posts had failed after 30 years
Borax-boric acid (50-50 mixture)...	.92 ³	100	100	100	18	46	36	10.6	Average life—dry site 9.8, moist 11.0, and wet 13.2 years
Chromated zinc chloride.....	.87 ³	58	81	82	38	29	-----	28	
Coal tar.....	6.50	69	40	44	40	20	-----	30	
Coal tar creosote, grade 1.....	6.00	30	12	30	22	7	-----	37	71 percent serviceable in January 1967
Coal tar creosote and used crankcase oil, 50-50 mixture....	5.40	12	2	1	15	-----	1	43	84 percent serviceable in January 1967

TABLE 22-3.—Summary of observations on round southern pine posts installed at Saucier, Miss. 1936 to 1941, as of January 1967
(after Blew and Davidson 1967)—Continued

Treatment ¹	Retention	Failures						Average life ^{1 2}	Remarks
		Site			Cause				
		Dry	Moist	Wet	Decay	Decay and termites	Termites		
	<i>Pounds per cu. ft.</i>	<i>Percent</i>						<i>Years</i>	
Coal tar creosote 10 percent, used crankcase oil 90 percent.....	7.10	91	82	65	75	9	1	11	Retention in failed posts—5.8
Crankcase oil (used).....	7.60	100	87	88	92	4	-----	8	
Fluor chrome arsenate phenol (Tanalith) (AWPA-P5).....	.35 ³	57	71	60	34	19	7	30	
Lignite coal tar creosote.....	6.30	57	35	47	23	26	3	32	Retention in failed posts—3.4
Mercuric chloride.....	.09 ³	83	59	72	25	37	15	27	Treated by steeping process
No-D-K (hardwood-tar creosote).....	6.60	97	63	45	31	48	4	21	
Osmosar.....	.30 ³	87	81	59	30	39	12	26	Treated by Osmose (diffusion) process
P.D.A. (Phenyldichlorasine) 0.84 percent in gas oil.....	5.90	95	81	72	22	53	13	21	
Pentachlorophenol, 4.82 percent in used crankcase oil.....	6.70	3	-----	-----	2	1	-----	40+	97 percent serviceable in January 1967
Pentachlorophenol, 3.02 percent in used crankcase oil.....	6.40	18	-----	-----	13	4	1	42	Retention of failed posts—4.3
Sodium dichromate.....	.88 ³	95	100	89	8	40	47	18	
Sodium chromate.....	.93 ³	98	88	88	8	33	53	16	

TABLE 22-3.—*Summary of observations on round southern pine posts installed at Saucier, Miss. 1936 to 1941, as of January 1967*
(after Blew and Davidson 1967)—Continued

Treatment ¹	Retention	Failures						Average life ^{1 2}	Remarks
		Site			Cause				
		Dry	Moist	Wet	Decay	Decay and termites	Termites		
Tetrachlorophenol, 2.9 percent in used crankcase oil.....	7.10	42	7	6	29	1	-----	37	70 percent serviceable in January 1967
Tetrachlorophenol, 4.83 percent in used crankcase oil.....	5.80	21	-----	-----	14	7	-----	40	79 percent serviceable in January 1967
Water-gas tar.....	6.30	20	20	18	14	6	-----	41	80 percent serviceable in January 1967; retention of failed posts—4.2
Zinc chloride.....	.94 ³	74	75	76	35	39	1	27	
Zinc meta arsenite.....	.42 ³	3	-----	1	3	1	-----	40+	96 percent serviceable in January 1967
Copper sulfate and sodium arsenate (installed 1941).....	{ .35 ³ .16	4	1	1	5	1	-----	40+	Double diffusion treatment, 94 percent serviceable after 26

TABLE 22-3.—*Summary of observations on round southern pine posts installed at Saucier, Miss. 1936 to 1941, as of January 1967 (after Blew and Davidson 1967)—Continued*

Treatment ¹	Retention	Failures						Average life ^{1 2}	Remarks
		Site			Cause				
		Dry	Moist	Wet	Decay	Decay and termites	Termites		
Osmoplastic groundline treatment (installed 1941)-----		100	100	100	32	55	13	11.2	0.34 pound per post applied to 15-inch band and top of post. All posts failed in 20 years

¹ All chemicals applied by pressure treatment, except as noted under remarks.

² Except where all posts have failed, tests are still in progress, and estimates of average life are based on projected curves.

³ These numbers show retention of dry chemical, all others indicate total preservative solution retained.

TABLE 22-4.—Summary of observations on longleaf pine sapwood posts exposed at Saucier, Miss. since 1949; as of January 1967
(after Blew and Davidson 1967)

Treatment ¹	Form of preservative	Retention of preservative	Posts	Average life ²
			serviceable January 1967	
			Percent	Years
Ammoniacal copper arsenite (Chemonite) (AWPA-P5).....	Dry salt	0.34	100	—
Boliden salt B ($ZnO + H_3AsO_4 + CrO_3$).....	do.....	.50	100	—
Carbosota (coal tar creosote).....	Oil	6.0	100	—
Chromated zinc arsenate (Boliden salts) (AWPA-P5).....	Dry salt	.70	96	—
Chromated zinc chloride, copperized ($ZnCl_2 + Na_2CrO_7 \cdot 2H_2O + CuCl \cdot (2H_2O)$).....	do.....	.98	76	23
Chromated zinc chloride, FR ($ZnCl_2 + Na_2Cr_2O_7 \cdot 2H_2O + H_3BO_3 + (NH_4)_2SO_4$).....	do.....	3.25	96	—
Coal tar creosote:				
Straight run, low residue.....	Oil	5.9	100	—
Straight run, medium residue.....	do.....	5.6	96	—
Straight run, high residue.....	do.....	6.0	100	—
Medium residue, low in tar acids.....	do.....	5.7	100	—
Medium residue, low in naphthalene.....	do.....	6.1	96	—
Medium residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene.....	do.....	6.0	100	—
Low residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene.....	do.....	6.0	96	—
High residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene.....	do.....	6.1	100	—
Medium residue, low in fraction from 235° to 270° C., crystals removed.....	do.....	6.1	88	26
High residue, crystals removed.....	do.....	6.0	100	—
Low temperature.....	do.....	6.3	100	—
English, vertical retort.....	do.....	6.3	100	—
English, coke oven.....	do.....	6.0	100	—
English, vertical retort 50% and coke oven 50% (by volume).....	do.....	6.0	100	—
Medium residue (low in tar acids and naphthalene) with 2-½% pentachlorophenol (by weight).....	Solution	6.0	100	—
Coal-tar creosote 70%, and coal-tar 30% (by volume).....	do.....	6.0	100	—
Coal-tar creosote (medium residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene) 50%, and petroleum oil (No. 2 distillate) 50% (by volume).....	do.....	6.1	100	—
.....	do.....	5.9	100	—

Coal-tar creosote (medium residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene) 50%, and petroleum oil (Wyoming residual) 50% (by volume)-----	do-----	6.0	100	—
Coal-tar creosote (medium residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene) 50%, and petroleum oil (Wyoming residual) 50% (by volume); fortified with 2-½% pentachlorophenol (by weight of total solution)-----	do-----	6.0	100	—
Copper naphthenate, 0.5% copper-metal equivalent (by weight) in petroleum oil (No. 4 aromatic residual)-----	do-----	6.0	96	—
Gasco (oil-tar creosote)-----	Solution	5.9	100	—
Gasco (oil-tar creosote) with 2% pentachlorophenol (by weight)-----	do-----	5.8	100	—
Lignite coal-tar creosote-----	Oil	6.3	88	26
Lignite coal-tar creosote, 50% and coal-tar creosote (medium residue, low in tar acids and naphthalene), 50% (by volume)-----	Solution	6.3	100	—
Lignite coal-tar creosote, 50% and petroleum oil (Wyoming residual), 50% (by volume)-----	do-----	6.4	88	26
Pentachlorophenol: ³				
Five percent (by weight) in petroleum oil (No. 2 distillate)-----	do-----	6.3	100	—
Five percent (by weight) in petroleum oil (No. 4 aromatic residual)-----	do-----	5.9	100	—
Three percent (by weight) in petroleum oil (No. 4 aromatic residual)-----	do-----	6.0	100	—
Five percent (by weight) in petroleum oil (Wyoming residual)-----	do-----	6.0	96	—
Pentachlorophenol, 5% in petroleum oil (No. 4 aromatic residual), 50%; and copper naphthenate, 0.5% copper-metal equivalent, in petroleum oil (No. 4 aromatic residual), 50% (by volume)-----	do-----	6.2	100	—
Petroleum oil:				
Aromatic, high residue (S.W.)-----	Oil	6.1	100	—
Aromatic, low residue (S.W.)-----	do-----	6.1	100	—
Highly aromatic (S.O.)-----	do-----	6.0	84	25
Highly aromatic, high residue (S.O.)-----	do-----	6.1	80	24
No. 2 distillate (mid-United States)-----	do-----	5.9	—	6.2
No. 4 aromatic residual (California)-----	do-----	5.9	88	26
Wyoming residual-----	do-----	5.8	8	8
Termiteol (softwood-tar creosote)-----	do-----	6.1	76	23
Untreated control posts-----	—	—	—	2.3

¹ All treatments by pressure impregnation; 25 posts per treatment installed in April and May 1949.

² Estimated on basis of recorded failures. Where less than 10 percent of posts have failed in 18 years, average life is expected to be 26 years or more.

³ Retention of pentachlorophenol stated in terms of solution weight.

cubic foot by assay of borings taken in the outer 3-inch shell. The 20-pound treatment will protect southern pine in salt water from Molluscan borers for a period of 10 to 20 years—or even longer under special ecological situations³. The 25-pound treatment is intended for application where *Limnoria* are active.

Baechler (1968) has reviewed causes for variable performance of creosoted marine piling. Many premature failures could be explained by low retentions, the use of unsuitable oil, or a combination of both. Baechler states that in producing a creosote for marine use, the type of tar selected is far more important than the manner in which it is distilled. Treatment of test panels with various high-temperature coal-tar oils was comparatively effective in combating *Limnoria* in tests at Aransas Pass, Texas.

The *Limnoria* hazard may be aggravated by depletion of creosote or its toxic constituents from the outer layers of wood. Absorption of petroleum oils, common in most harbors from waste marine fuel, lowers toxicity of creosote; oil coatings probably hasten loss of creosote also (Baechler and Roth 1961).

Three approaches are underway to improve the service given by creosoted piling exposed to *Limnoria* in warmer harbors (Baechler 1968): (1) pretreatments with waterborne copper compounds; (2) additives to enhance permanence of creosote and toxicity to *Limnoria*; and (3) mechanical barriers in the form of coatings, plastic wrappings, or shields of some firm material. Readers desiring additional information on factors affecting performance of marine piling under attack by *Limnoria tripuncta* will find Colley (1969), Baechler et al. (1970ab), and Gjovik et al. (1970) of interest.

Effectiveness against ants, beetles, and woodpeckers.—Treatments specific to termites can be found in section 17-1. Preservatives effective against carpenter ants, powder post beetles, and other chewing insects are described in section 17-2. Section 17-4 describes progress in finding treatments that effectively protect southern pine wood from woodpeckers.

FACTORS AFFECTING PENETRATION AND ABSORPTION

While service life is the ultimate test of effectiveness of treatment, the immediate criteria are the amount of preservative retained, the depth of penetration, and the distribution of preservative within the zone of penetration. In creosoted southern pine poles, poor penetration of sapwood is the most important cause of decay. Inspection of over 3,000 poles in line 5 to 26 years showed that 95 percent of the failures were in poles with creosote penetration less than 1.8 inches and 60 percent of the sapwood thickness. No failures occurred in poles penetrated more than 2.1 inches and 75 percent of sapwood thickness (Colley and Amadon 1936). Inadequately penetrated wood fails early when checks extend beyond the treated zone or mechanical wear of the treated shell exposes untreated

wood. Absorption of preservatives is affected by permeability of the wood, form of the timber to be treated, and the treating procedure.

Anatomy.—The anatomy and permeability of southern pine wood are described in chapter 5 and section 8–6. Southern pine sapwood is relatively permeable, i.e., it allows the passage of fluids under pressure. Tracheid lumens in southern pine are not occluded, and the pit membranes between sapwood cells contain relatively large openings. Pit aspiration is generally not sufficiently severe to cut off flow. Absorption and penetration obtained by dip treatment vary significantly within and between southern pine trees (Verrall 1965).

From a microscopic examination of southern pine wood pressure treated with pentachlorophenol in oil and with creosote, Behr et al. (1969) reported that there was little difference in distribution between the two preservatives. In heavily treated zones many lumens were full of preservative; in zones of lower retention the preservative was present as drops or “plugs” of liquid and in the tips of the cells. Preservative was present in both ray tracheids and ray parenchyma cells and in earlywood tracheids adjacent to the rays, but not in those at a distance. Resin canals and most epithelial cells contained preservative, as did many tracheids adjoining resin canals.

Resch and Arganbright (1971), in a study of Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) pressure impregnated with pentachlorophenol in liquefied petroleum gas, found evidence of the presence of pentachlorophenol not only on the lumen surfaces of cells, but also in the cell walls.

Specific gravity.—General experience with pressure treatment of the southern pines indicates that low-density samples often are the most difficult to penetrate, although density per se may not be the determining factor. When pressure treated to refusal, low-density material usually shows greater retentions than high-density wood.

Grain direction.—Penetration of preservative is greatest in the longitudinal grain direction. For southern pine heartwood under liquid pressure, Teesdale (1914) found the following ratios of tangential/radial/longitudinal penetration: longleaf 1/4/100, shortleaf 1/7/55, and loblolly 1/40/80. MacLean (1929) observed that in pressure-treated southern pine heartwood, coal tar creosote penetrated 12 times as far longitudinally as laterally, while zinc chloride penetrated 16 times as far. In dip treatments of heartwood and sapwood of southern pine in water and light oils, Verrall (1957) found the ratios of absorptions through radial, tangential, and transverse sections were 1/1.7/11.7, and the ratios of penetrations in tangential, radial, and longitudinal directions were 1/1.6/11.2; i.e., in dip treatments penetrations were proportional to absorptions.

Sapwood and heartwood.—While most southern pine trees are predominantly sapwood (sec. 5–1), every pole or pile contains some heartwood, and in some products, such as fenceposts cut from veneer cores, heartwood may predominate. Heartwood is less permeable than sapwood. In shortleaf

pine, dips and cold soaks have been found to penetrate sapwood further than heartwood (Blew 1955). Verrall (1965) observed that during a 3-minute dip in oilborne preservatives southern pine sapwood absorbed about twice the amount absorbed by heartwood, although some heartwood specimens absorbed more than some sapwood specimens. Similarly, Teesdale (1914) found that some heartwood samples reacted like sapwood to pressure treatment. Differences between sapwood and heartwood are probably more pronounced with pressure treatments than with dips.

Earlywood and latewood.—In most species, latewood generally treats better under pressure than earlywood, or at least allows a greater lateral penetration (Blew 1955; Teesdale 1914). The earlywood of rapidly grown southern pine has particularly low lateral penetrability (Teesdale and MacLean 1918). In contrast, pressure-flow studies show that longitudinal flow through southern pine sapwood (Erickson et al. 1937) is greater in earlywood than in latewood. Earlywood has a greater void volume and can retain more preservative (Buckman 1936). In three dip tests (Verrall 1965), the penetration in latewood was usually double that in earlywood. This relation held for pentachlorophenol alone or with a water repellent, and for treatment with dyed water. Differences were marked in fast-grown wood but were small or absent in slow-grown, even-textured wood. Lateral penetration was greatest when latewood was exposed on the surface of the lumber. In samples heavily infected with *Trichoderma* or *Penicillium*, penetration of earlywood and latewood was equal.

Fungus infections.—Lindgren and Scheffer (1939) found that stain fungi increased creosote absorptions in pine sapwood 1.2 to 1.7 times with a 30-minute soak, and 2.1 to 2.5 times with hot-and-cold bath or pressure treatments.

Lindgren (1952) reported that *Trichoderma* mold greatly increased the permeability of southern pine posts to oilborne and waterborne preservatives and to rain water. Infected, end-sealed post sections soaked 5 minutes in pentachlorophenol in oil picked up 5 to 9 pounds per cubic foot, whereas uninfected sections absorbed only 1 pound per cubic foot. During 2 days of drizzling rain with intermittent showers, the infected posts picked up 28 to 30 pounds per cubic foot, and the uninfected only 7 to 8 pounds. Some early failures of poles may result from poor preservative penetration due to excessive rainwater in infected wood at the time of treatment.

Blew (1961) also showed that the degree of general fungus infection markedly affects absorption of preservative by southern pine posts treated by the cold-soaking process. Knuth and McCoy (1962) concluded that *Bacillus polymyxa* was the major organism producing porous sapwood in pond-stored pine logs. Verrall (1965) reported that infection of southern pine wood with various mold, stain, and decay fungi increased absorption of both oil and water.

Rough vs. dressed lumber.—In small laboratory tests with both water solutions of sap-stain-control chemical and pentachlorophenol in mineral

spirits, rough samples removed 1.7 to 1.8 times as much solution from a dipping vat as did planed samples. Presumably, the roughened surface held more liquid on the surface, and some of this liquid later penetrated deeper, thus influencing the degree of stain control (Verrall and Mook 1951). This difference is probably of much less magnitude in pressure processes.

Treating procedures and preservatives.—Penetration and retention are of course, influenced by the treating procedure. (See subsection, PROCESSES.) Because southern pine sapwood is so permeable, some non-pressure methods give good penetration (but sometimes with excessive retention); these include diffusion of strong solutions of waterborne preservatives into green wood, hot-and-cold bath treating southern pine posts and poles with creosote or pentachlorophenol, and vacuum treating millwork with water-repellent preservative. In general, however, pressure treatments give better penetration and control of retention than nonpressure treatments; they are usually required where service conditions are severe.

With comparable treating procedures, waterborne salts usually give better penetration and retention than oilborne preservatives. Straight creosote penetrates deeper than creosote in coal tar or petroleum oil. In general, preservatives of low viscosity penetrate more readily than those of high viscosity. Under pressure, heated preservatives usually penetrate better than cool, and into hot wood more easily than into cool wood. MacLean (1960, p. 68) gives temperature-viscosity curves for zinc chloride and a number of creosote and oil preservatives.

In pressure treatment, penetration increases with pressure and time under pressure. Better penetrations usually result from moderate treating pressures and moderately long pressure periods than from very high pressures for very short periods (MacLean 1960).

Form of timber and effect of glue lines.—A round southern pine pile, pole, or fencepost in its natural form is readily penetrated because an unbroken layer of permeable sapwood surrounds the heartwood. In contrast, a fencepost made from a veneer core or a heart-center timber may have little if any sapwood exposed and therefore may be more difficult to penetrate. Four-inch-square southern pine posts treated with 0.35 pound of Tanalith per cubic foot, and those treated with 1.0 pound of chromated zinc chloride, showed an average life of 10 and 15 years in Mississippi (American Wood Preservers Association 1949); round southern pine posts with similar retentions of these preservations showed an average life of 26 and 25 years in the same area (Blew and Davidson 1967).

Large round or sawed timbers require less retention per gross cubic foot than smaller ones because they have less surface in proportion to their volume. Sawn timbers, however, often require heavier treatment to insure that exposed heartwood is adequately penetrated. Under these conditions, empty-cell processes give better penetration at a given retention than full-cell treatment.

The effect of glue lines on the absorption of preservatives in laminated timbers is not yet fully evaluated. Southern pine laminated bridge timbers creosoted after gluing have performed well for periods up to 20 years (Selbo et al. 1965). While most southern pine laminating stock today is sapwood, considerable heart-center 2-inch lumber is used in laminated beams. Probably most pressure-treated southern pine beams are penetrated to the first glue line at least; in most cases this provides a $\frac{3}{4}$ - to $1\frac{3}{4}$ -inch treated layer top and bottom. Deep, narrow laminated beams having much surface per unit of volume require relatively high retentions in severe service. Penetration from the sides of narrow beams should be readily achieved.

Plywood made from southern pine is virtually all sapwood. Most is made with three or less phenol-formaldehyde glue lines. The permeability of the veneer, the lathe checks present, and gaps in the core veneers should combine to make three-ply southern pine plywood relatively easy to treat; five-ply is more difficult to penetrate fully.

DETERMINATION OF PENETRATION AND RETENTION

Depth of penetration of the preservative is the best single measure of treatment adequacy. It is most accurately measured on sawn cross sections removed near midlength of treated timbers or poles. Because this destroys the products, it is usual practice to extract small cores from near midlength of the piece. An increment borer is used, and the resulting holes are filled with treated plugs. Many preservatives have a distinct color, and the depth of penetration can be accurately measured by prompt observation of the split surface of a full-length core split longitudinally. Penetration of preservatives without distinct coloration can be observed by the use of chemical indicators as described in Standard A3-63 of the American Wood Preservers Association (1969).

Retention of preservative is expressed in pounds per cubic foot, related either to gross volume or to a specified zone (usually an outer shell, 1 to 3 inches thick). Preservative entering wood as the treating cylinder is filled is called "initial absorption"; that retained at the end of the pressure period is "gross absorption"; that remaining in the wood after withdrawal of pressure and any post conditioning treatments is "net retention." "Kickback"—the difference between gross absorption and net retention—results primarily from expansion of air within the wood cells. In the empty-cell treatment of southern pine, "kickback" varies from 25 to 75 percent of gross absorption; with full-cell treatment, it is considerably below 25 percent (MacLean 1960, p. 95).

Average net retentions are usually determined from the volume of preservative in the working tanks before and after treatment. The volume at known temperature is converted into equivalent weight and divided by the volume of the charge to yield pounds per cubic foot retention.

Retention within specific zones is determined by analysis, or assay, of sample cores or groups of cores. Baechler et al. (1962, 1969) reported that, in southern pine timbers and 2-inch lumber, retentions in the outer $\frac{1}{2}$ - to $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch zone were similar to those calculated from gain in weight. In treatment of poles and timbers for severe conditions, adequate retention in an outer shell is critical because much of the central core is not reached by the preservative.

PRETREATMENT AND CONDITIONING

Prior to preservative treatment, southern pine usually requires preparatory measures such as debarking, machining, and seasoning. Such requirements vary with type of product and treating process.

Peeling.—Because bark is virtually impermeable to liquids, it must be removed from posts, poles, and pilings prior to treatment. It should also be removed from wany edges of timbers. Removal of bark accelerates seasoning and diminishes hazards from insects and decay. Since uniform treatment requires complete removal of bark, the mechanical ring barker commonly used in southern pine sawmills is not much used in post, pole, and piling plants. Mechanical pole shavers usually carry two rotating cutterheads; the first head removes the bark and some wood, while the second head smooths the surface of the rotating and slowly advancing pole (fig. 19-53). Skillful operation is required to avoid gouges and excessive diameter reduction with accompanying loss of strength and per-

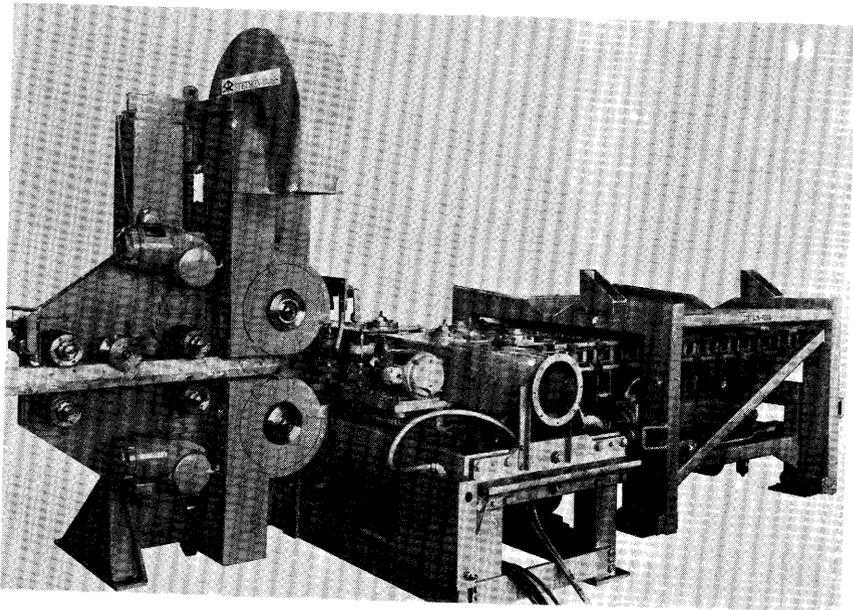


Figure 22-3.—Chipping headrig designed to convert cordwood into fenceposts of uniform hexagonal shape. Surplus wood is converted to pulp chips. (Photo from Stetson-Ross.)

meable sapwood. Hand-peeled roundwood, from a strength standpoint, is superior to wood shaved mechanically.

Recently available for southern pine production is a chipping headrig, which machines conventionally peeled posts to uniform hexagonal size while converting surplus wood to pulp chips (fig. 22-3).

Machining.—Any machining operations required in the finished product should be accomplished prior to treating. Examples would include the adzing and boring of cross-ties, framing (or dapping) timbers, boring poles, and cutting gains in poles to seat cross-arms. Holes that must be bored after treatment should be filled with hot preservative oil, preferably under pressure.

Seasoning.—Free water in the cell lumens of green wood prevents uniform penetration of the preservative (except in some diffusion processes and certain flow processes). The free water may be removed by air-drying (sec. 20-1), forced-air-drying (sec. 20-2), kiln-drying (secs. 20-3 and 20-4), drying in a heat-conductive media (sec. 20-7), steaming and then applying a vacuum (sec. 20-4), or by boiling in oil under vacuum (sec. 20-7).

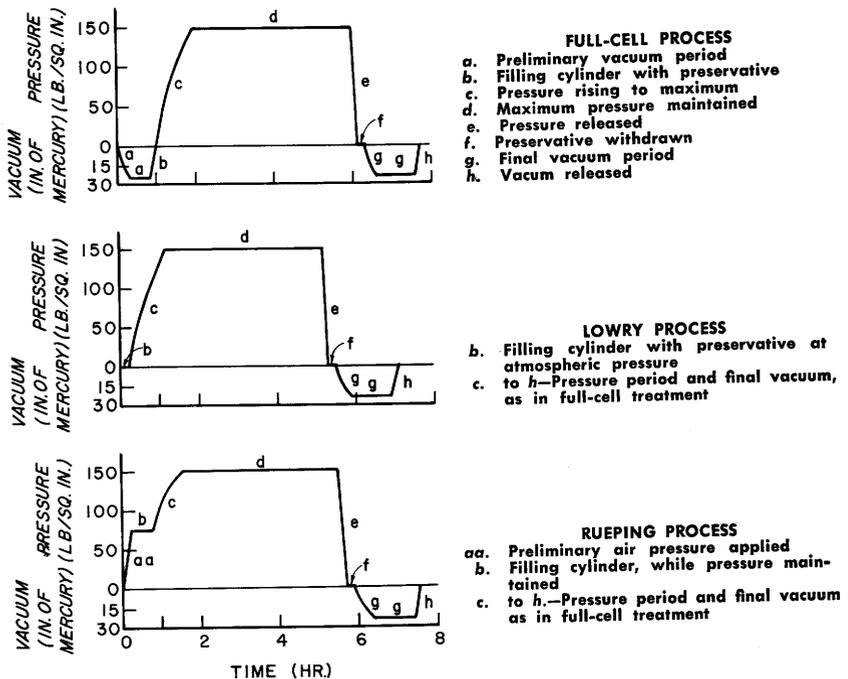


Figure 22-4.—Typical pressure diagrams for full-cell, Lowry, and Rueping processes. When green wood is treated, a preliminary conditioning process precedes the steps shown in the diagrams. The duration of the different steps, as well as the intensity of vacuum, pressure, and preservative temperature, varies widely according to the character and condition of the wood and the judgment of the plant operator or timber purchaser. (Drawing from p. 200, *Wood preservation*, by G. M. Hunt and G. A. Garratt; © 1967 by McGraw-Hill, Inc.; used with permission of McGraw-Hill Book Co.)

Southern pine poles are commonly treated green after steam conditioning. Because prolonged high temperatures weaken wood, steaming time and temperatures as well as temperatures reached from boiling in oil must be limited, thus limiting the amount of moisture that can be removed. Longleaf pine poles with 85 percent sapwood have moisture contents from 60 to 85 percent after steam conditioning (Wood et al. 1960). Such poles may dry in service to an e.m.c. as low as 10 percent (Wood et al. 1960), causing objectionable checking and premature failure. Serviceability and penetration would be improved if the wood were closer to fiber saturation (25- to 30-percent moisture content) prior to treatment.

Figure 20-26 relates pole size and steaming time to interior temperatures of poles steamed at 260° F. MacLean (1960) explains (with examples) how to calculate time required to reach specified wood temperatures with steam at 260° F. and at the lower temperatures now specified.

For dip treatment, southern pine wood should be below 12-percent moisture content because penetration and absorption vary inversely with wood moisture content (Verrall 1965).

Post-treatments.—Southern pine may be subjected to an expansion bath of hot oil following the pressure cycle and before the vacuum is drawn. The purpose is to expand the remaining air in the cell lumens and drive out excess preservative. In general, expansion bath temperature is limited to 220° F. for southern pine.

Wood not destined for use in coastal waters is frequently steamed briefly following the vacuum. This steaming cleans the wood surface of excess preservative; it is generally limited to 240 to 245° F. with a duration dependent on product (American Wood Preservers Association 1969).

PROCESSES ¹

The objective of any treating process is to accomplish uniformly deep penetration into the wood. Methods are of two categories: pressure processes in closed retorts, and nonpressure processes. In general, better penetrations and retentions are obtained by pressure treatments than by nonpressure treatments (Blew 1955). In the United States most wood is treated by pressure processes, as shown by the following figures for 1967 (Gill and Phelps 1968).

<u>Commodity</u>	<u>Pressure</u>	<u>Nonpressure</u>
	----- Percent -----	
Piling -----	100.0	0
Crossties -----	100.0	0
Switch ties -----	100.0	0
Plywood -----	98.7	1.3
Lumber and timbers -----	98.6	1.4
Fenceposts -----	95.2	4.8
Poles -----	92.1	7.9
Crossarms -----	86.7	13.3
Other -----	77.1	22.9

The various treating processes are fully described in readily available references (MacLean 1960; Hunt and Garratt 1967). Salient points of each process are outlined below.

Pressure processes applied in closed cylinders.—There are two principal methods for injecting preservatives under pressure into wood—the full-cell and the empty-cell processes.

The objective in the **full-cell process** (fig. 22-4) is to retain as much liquid in the wood as possible, leaving the cell lumens full of the liquid preservative at the end of the treating cycle. Marine piling, for example, is treated with coal tar creosote by the full-cell method to attain the very high retentions specified. Also, the full-cell method is customarily used with waterborne preservatives; the usual retention of $\frac{1}{3}$ to $1\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of dry salt per cubic foot of wood is obtained by regulating the strength of the salt solution rather than by limiting the amount of liquid injected.

With seasoned southern pine in the cylinder, full-cell treatment with oil begins with a vacuum of at least 22 inches of mercury, which is held for 15 to 60 minutes. This removes much air from the cell lumens. Then, without admitting air, preservative oil at temperatures up to 210° F. is allowed to fill the cylinder to a pressure of 75 to 200 p.s.i. The pressure is maintained until the desired absorption is attained or until refusal. Pressure is then released, the preservative withdrawn, and a final vacuum of 22 inches of mercury is drawn for an hour or so to dry the surface of the timber.

Full-cell treatment with waterborne preservatives is very similar to the process used with oils, except the maximum solution temperature is kept below 120 to 150° F., depending on the mixed-salt used (American Wood Preservers Association 1969, C1-69). Treatment is generally to refusal.

The two **empty-cell processes** (Rueping and Lowry) are primarily used with preservative oils to impregnate crosssties, poles, posts, and lumber. The American Wood Preservers Association (1969) specifies empty-cell treatment in preference to the full-cell process when the empty-cell process can accomplish the specified retention of oil.

In the **Rueping process** (fig. 22-4) conditioned southern pine is first subjected to an initial air pressure as high as 100 p.s.i. for as much as 30 minutes (rather than the vacuum used in the full-cell process). The cylinder is then filled with hot creosote (180 to 220° F.) so that the injected air is trapped in the wood and a pressure up to 100 p.s.i. more than the initial air pressure is maintained until the desired gross absorption is attained. Pressure is then released, the preservative drained, and a high vacuum is drawn for 30 minutes or more. During this final vacuum, the entrapped air expands and a portion of the preservative is ejected from the cell lumens. Net retention in southern pine poles varies from 25 to 75 percent of gross absorption.

The **Lowry process** differs from the Rueping process in that initial air is at atmospheric pressure (fig. 22-4). Maximum pressure on the preservative is limited to 250 p.s.i. For a given gross absorption, net reten-

tion in the Lowry process is intermediate between the full-cell process and the Rueping process.

The new **Cellon treatment** is distinguished by the fact that the preservative is pentachlorophenol in solution in liquefied petroleum gas (Bescher 1965). Either full-cell or empty-cell processing may be used. If applied by the Rueping process, initial pressure is exerted by nitrogen (or other inert gas) since the solvent is highly inflammable. After the cylinder is drained, the solvent in the wood is evaporated under reduced pressure, recompressed, cooled, and stored under pressure. Solution viscosity is only about one-fifth that of water, and penetration is said to be good. Treating times and pressures are similar to those used with other preservatives. Because the treated wood retains no solvent, it is clear, paintable, not discolored, and offers no difficulty in gluing.

The **Slurry-seal process** of impregnating southern pine sapwood with waterborne preservatives in a pressure cylinder works best with green wood (Hudson 1968). In brief, unheated preservative under a pressure of about 200 p.s.i. is forced longitudinally into one end of the stick; the free water is displaced by the preservative, and treatment is complete when, within 1 to 4 hours, relatively undiluted preservative emerges from the low-pressure end.

The process uses a conventional treating cylinder modified as shown in figure 22-5. The wood to be treated is placed in the cylinder, on which the door adjacent to the dosing tank has been replaced by a perforated plate lined on the inside with a filter cloth. The end of each stick

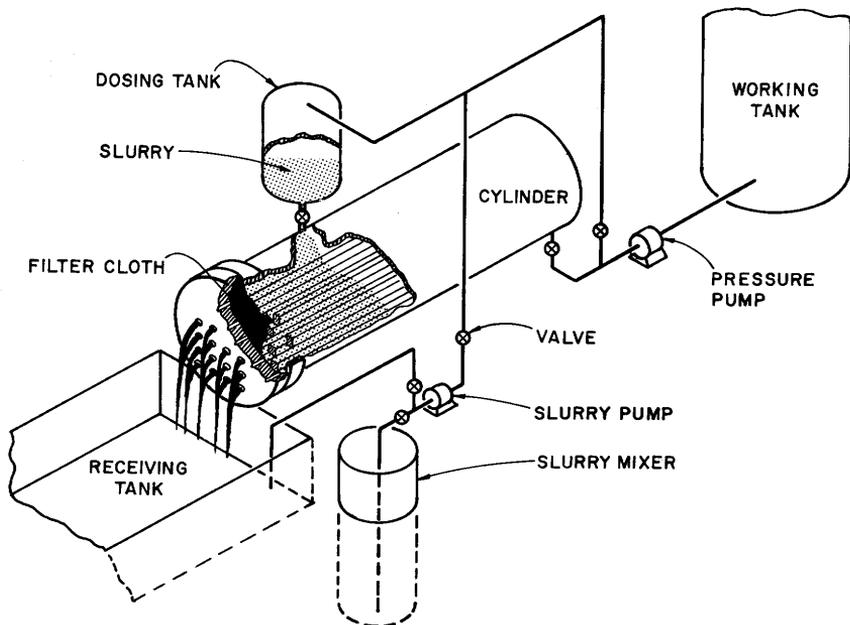


Figure 22-5.—Equipment for the slurry-seal preservative treatment of wood. (Drawing after Hudson 1968.)

to be treated is pressed firmly against the filter cloth. The cylinder is then filled with treating solution under sufficient pressure to cause it to flow out through the perforated door.

At this point, a slurry of finely ground sand and preservative solution is forced from the dosing tank into the cylinder, where it flows up against the filter and the perforated door, forming a seal around the end of each stick and permitting the preservative pressure in the cylinder to be raised to 200 p.s.i. According to the developer of the process, 2 by 4's 8 feet long can be treated in about 2 hours, and 16-foot lumber in 3 hours. With green round wood, peeling is not necessary, but retentions are higher in bark-free wood. A 20-foot peeled pole has been treated to retain 1.40 pounds per cubic foot of waterborne CCA at the butt and 1.16 pounds at the top. Retentions of solid chemical can be adjusted by varying the solution strength.

Advantages claimed for the system include low initial plant cost, elimination of drying prior to treatment, low temperature, and brevity of treatment. Disadvantages include lack of extensive information on uniformity and depth of penetration achievable, and the necessity of drying the wood after treatment to a moisture content approaching that achieved in use. Also, it is likely that the season in which poles are cut affects their treatability by this method.

Nonpressure processes.—If coal tar creosote is flooded over the surface of thoroughly air-seasoned southern pine posts or poles, service life may be extended 1 to 3 years; dipping for a few minutes may extend life 2 to 4 years. It is of little use to brush or spray preservatives over the sides of timbers already in service. **Brushing** and **spraying** are most effective when applied to end-grain surfaces such as pile heads (American Wood Preservers Association 1969, Standard M4-62), or unprotected wood exposed when bolt heads are drilled into treated timbers.

Dipping treatments are advantageous for some specialized purposes such as treating southern pine millwork, sash, doors, or products such as ammunition boxes (Browne 1958; Verrall 1965; Verrall and Scheffer 1969), and protecting green southern pine lumber against stain fungi during air drying (Verrall 1945; Verrall and Mook 1951).

In the **cold soak method**, wood is immersed in an unheated oil solution of the preservative—usually pentachlorophenol. Immersion periods of 2 days to a week or more are desirable to achieve retentions of 2 to 6 pounds of solution per cubic foot in well seasoned southern pine posts; more than half of this absorption takes place in the first 24 hours. Verrall (1965) has reported that the end absorption is about 10 times the lateral absorption; total absorption (for immersions longer than 5 seconds) is linearly correlated with the logarithm of immersion time. If the wood is infected by fungi, absorption may be excessive, i.e., up to 20 pounds per cubic foot.

The **hot and cold bath** (thermal) process has numerous variations. The wood is first heated (in or out of the preservative) to expand the air in the cell lumens and to evaporate surface water. The hot wood is

then promptly submerged in cold preservative. Atmospheric pressure forces the preservative into the wood to fill the vacuum formed by contracting water vapor and air in the cold cavities. Salts that are water soluble at high temperatures are useable, but most operators use coal tar creosote and other oils because their slight evaporation does not modify solution strength. When coal tar creosote is used on southern pine, a hot-bath temperature of 220° F. is suitable. The cold bath should be between 150° F. and the temperature at which solids form in the preservative (American Wood Preservers Association 1969, Standard C7-58). Work done by the Texas Forest Service (Downey 1937) showed that small shortleaf and loblolly pine poles so treated had excellent penetrations averaging 2 inches, but the retentions of 18 to 20 pounds per cubic foot were excessive. Retention was reduced to 12.8 pounds per cubic foot with about the same penetration by a 1-hour bath at 220 to 225° F., followed by a 100° F. bath of just sufficient duration to accomplish 1-inch penetration, followed in turn by a 30-minute hot bath. The thermal process can be used for either full-length or butt treatment of poles and posts, as well as for treatment of lumber and timbers.

In the **vacuum processes**, which can accomplish much the same effect as the thermal method just described, the wood is placed in an empty air-tight tank, a vacuum is drawn, and then the preservative is admitted without allowing air to re-enter. Southern pine millwork can be well treated with pentachlorophenol in a volatile solvent by this method.

Blew et al. (1970) reported that retentions of acid copper chromate and pentachlorophenol in southern pine 2 by 6's vacuum treated at 12-percent moisture content were adequate to protect sapwood not in contact with the ground or water, but were marginal for heartwood. The lumber (54- to 57-percent heartwood) was first subjected to an initial vacuum of 27 inches of mercury for ½-hour; the preservative, at 90° F., was then introduced into the treating tank under vacuum. After the specimens were covered with preservative, they remained in the solution for 7½ hours at atmospheric pressure. A recovery, or final, vacuum was not used. The vacuum treatment for pentachlorophenol was similar, except that initial vacuum was only 20 inches, time in preservative was 6½ hours, and a recovery vacuum of 27 inches was held for 1 hour. The acid copper chromate penetrated 13 percent of the heartwood and 93 percent of the sapwood, while the pentachlorophenol penetrated 52 percent of the heartwood and 100 percent of the sapwood. Retentions were maximum in the outer shell and least in the heartwood, as follows¹:

Chemical and assay zone	Heartwood	Sapwood	Entire cross section
----- Pounds per cubic foot -----			
Acid copper chromate			
Entire cross section.....			0.68
Outer 1/8-inch.....	0.34	1.89	
1/8- to 3/8-inch.....	.06	1.16	
3/8- to 5/8-inch.....	.00	.54	
Core.....	.00	.18	

Chemical and assay zone	Heartwood	Sapwood	Entire cross section
----- Pounds per cubic foot -----			
Five-percent pentachloro-phenol in heavy petroleum oil			
Entire cross section-----	-----	-----	.44
Outer $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch-----	.21	.46	
$\frac{1}{8}$ - to $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-----	.15	.36	
$\frac{3}{8}$ - to $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch-----	.16	.33	
Core-----	.18	.38	

Blew et al. (1970), on the basis of comparative tests, concluded that penetration in vacuum treatment is significantly less than in pressure treatment.

There are a number of **diffusion processes**. In the steeping method green wood is submerged in a tank containing a strong (e.g., 10 percent) salt solution. Absorption takes place over a period of days or weeks by diffusion; the solution concentration in the tank decreases as the chemical diffuses into the green wood.

In a number of other diffusion processes the preservative is applied to the surface of green wood. In the **Osmose process** the preservative is applied in paste form, and the wood is stacked in covered solid piles; in the bandage method a bandage impregnated with salt preservative is wrapped tightly around the green timber; in one process the preservative is inserted in holes bored in green wood.

The **barrel method** of diffusion treatment of pine posts was developed by Clemson Agricultural College (Barker et al. 1950). Green, freshly trimmed posts, with or without bark, are placed butt end down in a waterborne preservative such as chromated zinc chloride. A gallon of solution containing 2 pounds of zinc chloride treats two average posts. About 1 pound of dry preservative per cubic foot is retained if posts stand in the preservative 4 days and then (after a 1-inch slice is cut from the top end) stand top down in the solution for 3 more days. After treating, posts are stored vertically, with tops down, for several weeks to further distribute the preservative.

In the **double diffusion method**, two soluble chemicals, which react to form preservative salts highly resistant to leaching, are separately diffused into the wood. Stake tests with southern pine in Mississippi (Blew and Davidson 1969) have shown good results from high retentions of copper chromate and copper arsenate; green wood is soaked in a solution of copper sulfate and then in a solution containing sodium chromate and sodium arsenate. Other chemicals can be used similarly. Baechler and Roth (1964) have reviewed results gained from 23 years of experiments with the double-diffusion method.

There are numerous treatments which, if well done, will prolong the life of standing poles 5 or 6 years. They have in common the steps of digging the earth away from the pole to a depth of 18 inches, inspection

to see if remaining sound wood justifies the treatment, removal of dirt and decayed wood from the pole, and finally application of the preservative. In the **Osmoplastic process**, a thick coat of preservative is brushed over the cleaned surface and wrapped with a waterproof film before back-filling. The preservative is said to be 3.5 percent dinitrophenol, 2.2 percent pentachlorophenol, 2.5 percent bichromate, 45.8 percent sodium fluoride, and 46.0 percent oils, solvents, bodying agents, binding substances, or inerts (Hunt and Garratt 1967).

In the **Cobra process**, a hollow, tube-like needle is used to inject measured amounts of preservative paste at carefully spaced intervals around the pole, 1½ feet above and below the groundline. The preservative is said to be 23 percent arsenious anhydride, 23 percent dinitrophenol, 47 percent sodium fluoride, and 7 percent oils, solvents, bodying agents, binding substances, or inert (Hunt and Garratt 1967).

Only two of the many processes have been briefly described; others may be as effective.

PRESERVATION OF PARTICULAR PRODUCTS¹

Some combinations of preservatives and treating processes are particularly suited for certain products. While other procedures may be equally effective, a number of preservative systems used widely for southern pine products are highlighted below. Applicable process standards are mentioned where appropriate. Where abbreviations for waterborne preservatives are used, the components can be found in section 22-1 under the paragraph heading: *Waterborne preservatives*.

Logs, bolts, cordwood, and pulp chips.—Water sprays afford temporary protection to logs and bolts (sec. 18-1) and cordwood (sec. 18-2) in storage. Section 16-6 briefly describes deterioration of pulp chips in outside storage; section 18-3 and figure 18-3 describe construction details for chip piles and the conditions that prevail inside the pile after several months of storage.

Piling¹.—Checks that develop during air-seasoning make it difficult to devise an economical treatment to prevent fungi from reaching untreated wood in piles and poles stacked for air-drying. Panek (1963) found that a soak of at least 15 minutes in 30 percent ammonium bifluoride protected southern pine poles for 1 year during air-seasoning. Hunt and Garratt (1967) state that no convenient and inexpensive method of protecting poles and piles during air-seasoning is yet in general use; one plant has gone so far as to run green material into a treating cylinder for a brief pressure impregnation with waterborne preservative.

Piles for marine use are given full-cell pressure treatment. Federal Specification TT-W-571i requires deeper penetrations and heavier retention for severe exposure conditions. For use in coastal waters, 25-pound retention (measured by assay) of creosote-coal tar solutions (Fed. Spec. TT-C-650) in the outer 3 inches is required. Piles for land or fresh water

use are required to have a 12-pound retention (in the outer 3 inches) of:

1. Coal tar creosote (Fed. Spec. TT-C-645 or TT-C-655),
- or 2. Creosote-coal tar solution (Fed. Spec. TT-C-650),
- or 3. Creosote-petroleum solution (Fed. Spec. TT-W-568).

Piles for land or fresh water use under Federal Specification TT-W-571i may also be treated with a 4.5- to 5.5-percent solution of pentachlorophenol (Fed. Spec. 570) in heavy petroleum solvent (conforming to American Wood Preservers Association Standard P9) to an assayed retention in the outer 2 inches of 0.6 pound per cubic foot.

Commercial Standard CS250-62 for preservative-treated marine piles calls for a retention of not less than 25 pounds per cubic foot of creosote-coal tar solution in the outer 3 inches of each pile based on assay of borings. The preservative is required to penetrate at least the outer 4 inches and at least 90 percent of the sapwood of each pile.

The American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C3-69) calls for different treatments depending on the exposure. For all piling, however, initial steaming of the piles is limited to 20 hours at a temperature not to exceed 245° F.; the vacuum must be at least 22 inches of mercury, and the preservative temperature cannot exceed 220° F., with no time limit on immersion. Preservative pressure must be at least 125 p.s.i. but cannot exceed 200 p.s.i., and expansion-bath temperature cannot exceed 220° F. Final steaming is not permitted on marine piles and is limited to 3 hours at a maximum temperature of 245° F. for land and fresh-water piles.

For areas of extreme marine borer hazard, the American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C3-69) calls for two pressure treatments in sequence. In the first, a 1-inch penetration of certain waterborne salt mixtures, i.e., ACA or CCA, with retention (measured by assay) of 1.0 pound per cubic foot, is required. The second required treatment with creosote (American Wood Preservers Association Standard P1 or P13) or creosote-coal tar solution (Standard P2 or P12) calls for penetration of 4 inches or 90 percent of the sapwood and a retention of 20 pounds per cubic foot in the outer 1-inch zone as determined by assay.

For marine piles in areas of moderate and severe borer hazard AWWA Standard C3-68 calls for a single treatment with either creosote or creosote-coal tar solution to achieve penetration of 4 inches or 90 percent of the sapwood. Retention required in the outer 3 inches (measured by assay) is 25 pounds per cubic foot where borer hazard is severe and 20 pounds where hazard is moderate.

For land and fresh-water piles, AWWA Standard C3-68 calls for penetration of 3.5-inch depth or 90 percent of the sapwood. Retention in the outer 1 inch (measured by assay) is required to be 20 pounds per cubic foot with creosote or creosote-coal tar solution.

Poles¹.—Federal Specification TT-W-571i calls for retention of 10 pounds per cubic foot of coal tar creosote (Fed. Spec. TT-C-645 or TT-C-655) in the zone 0.5 to 2 inches from the surface. Alternatively, a 5-per-

cent solution of pentachlorophenol can be used to give a retention of 0.38 or 0.45 pound of dry chemical per cubic foot in the same assay zone; the higher retention is required for poles over 37.5 inches in circumference, for poles in severe service, or for poles costly to replace.

Specification C4-69 (American Wood Preservers Association 1969) for pressure-treated southern pine poles limits initial steaming (245° F. maximum) to 17 hours for poles having a circumference 6 feet from the butt of less than 37.5 inches; if the circumference is more than 37.5 inches, 20 hours of steaming is the limit. A vacuum of at least 22 inches is specified. Maximum preservative temperature is 220° F. with no time limit on immersion. Pressure during treatment cannot exceed 200 p.s.i.; expansion-bath temperature cannot exceed 220° F., and final steaming must not exceed 2 hours at 245° F. or 3 hours at 240° F. Creosote-treated poles must have retentions of 6, 7.5, or 9 pounds per cubic foot measured by assay in the shell 0.5 to 2.0 inches from the surface; the higher retentions are for large poles or severe service conditions. Similarly, with pentachlorophenol in oil, retentions must be 0.30, 0.38, or 0.45 pound per cubic foot measured by assay. With either creosote or pentachlorophenol, the sapwood penetrations corresponding to the three levels of retention must be 2.5 inches or 85 percent, 3.0 inches or 90 percent, and 3.5 inches or 90 percent.

The American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C23-69) further provides a standard for poles in pole building construction. It cautions that where maximum service life is of primary importance, waterborne preservatives are not recommended for use under severe service conditions. Retentions are recommended:

<u>Preservative</u>	<u>Retention</u> <i>Pounds per cubic foot</i>
Creosote	8.00
Creosote-coal tar	8.00
Pentachlorophenol	0.40
ACA	0.40
CCA	0.40

In addition to the above, parallel standards include American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM D1760-62T; and Rural Electrification Administration Specifications PE-9 (telephone) and DT5C (electric).

The foregoing specifications are for pressure processes. The hot-and-cold bath method also gives good results with southern pine poles. (See page 1092 for schedule.)

Posts.—The studies by Blew and Davidson (1967) and by Blew and Kulp (1964) provide data specific to the performance of southern pine posts. The results are summarized in section 22-1 (WOOD PRESERVATIVES, *Effectiveness in ground or fresh water*).

Federal Specification TT-W-571i lists preservatives, specification numbers, and retentions as shown in table 22-5. Retentions for the waterborne chemicals are for solid preservative.

The American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C5-69) standard for pressure treatment of southern pine posts limits initial steaming (245° F. maximum) to not over 10 hours. Vacuum must be not less than 22 inches of mercury. Preservative temperature must not exceed 220° F. at pressures between 75 and 200 p.s.i. Expansion-bath temperature must not exceed 220° F.; final steaming cannot exceed a temperature of 245° F. or a time of 3 hours. Penetration must be at least 2 inches or 85 percent of the sapwood. Retentions required by assay in the outer 1-inch shell or by gauge are as follows:

<u>Preservative</u>	<u>Retention</u> <i>Pounds per cubic foot</i>
Creosote and creosote solutions	
Creosote	6.00
Creosote-coal tar	6.00
Creosote-petroleum	7.00
Oilborne preservatives	
Pentachlorophenol	.30
Waterborne preservatives	
ACC	.50
ACA	.40
CCA	.40
CuCZA	.54
CZC	.62
FCAP	.32

Retentions required by Federal specification are listed in table 22-5. Commercial Standard CS235-61 applies to posts treated with creosote and creosote solutions and parallels the Federal specification.

While the empty-cell process is generally considered the most effective treating procedure for posts, double diffusion, hot-and-cold bath, and the barrel method developed by Clemson Agricultural College can also give good results (Blew and Champion 1967).

TABLE 22-5.—*Preservatives and minimum retentions listed for round posts in Federal Specification TT-W-571i*

<u>Preservative and Federal specification</u>	<u>Retention</u> <i>Pounds per cubic foot¹</i>
Coal tar creosote	TT-6-645 6-15
Creosote-coal tar solutions	TT-C-650 6
Creosote-petroleum solution	TT-W-568 7
Pentachlorophenol equivalent to 5 percent in petroleum oil (AWPA Standard P9)	TT-W-570 0.3-0.75
Acid copper chromate	TT-W-546 1.00
Ammoniacal copper arsenite	TT-W-549 0.45-0.75
Chromated copper arsenate Type I	TT-W-550 0.75-1.2
Chromated copper arsenate Type II	TT-W-550 0.45-0.75

¹ First number applies to fenceposts; second to building posts.

Lumber and timbers¹.—Unless promptly kiln-dried, green southern pine needs protection against stain fungi until the wood is dry. Extensive tests on chemical control of fungi in green lumber during air-seasoning by Scheffer and Lindgren (1940) led to the general adoption by the lumber industry of certain organic mercurials and chlorinated phenolates for fungicidal treatment of green lumber. These are normally applied to southern pine by 5- to 10-second dips in water solutions. Table 22-6 lists principal chemicals used and concentrations considered "full strength"¹. The information on mercurial fungicides, some of which may not be currently registered for use to control stain fungi, is included because of its importance in the record of research on the subject; also, some of the trade products mentioned may no longer be available, but research data pertinent to them are included for similar reasons¹.

Literature on control of fungi during air-seasoning was reviewed by Verrall (1945). Later Verrall and Mook (1951) appraised the effectiveness of chemicals and mixtures of chemicals for controlling fungi in green lumber and concluded (see table 22-6 for details of full-strength formulations)¹:

- Among the commercial products available in 1951 (table 22-6), only those containing sodium pentachlorophenate, sodium tetrachlorophenate, or ethyl mercuric phosphate were effective in small-scale tests. All of the materials that have been thoroughly tested are known to have some disadvantages.
- Sodium pentachlorophenate is generally effective against all fungi, but at the usual lumber-dipping concentration it is irritating to the skin, especially at the concentrations needed for very moist situations or for timbers or surfaced lumber.
- Ethyl mercuric phosphate is effective against all fungi except the mold *Penicillium*. At recommended concentrations this product apparently has caused little skin irritation, but the dry powder can cause severe burns.
- Sodium pentachlorophenate $\frac{1}{2}$ strength plus borax $\frac{3}{16}$ strength was almost as effective as full-strength sodium pentachlorophenate alone. It is much less irritating to the skin than the latter.
- Sodium pentachlorophenate $\frac{1}{4}$ strength plus ethyl mercuric phosphate $\frac{1}{2}$ was highly effective in limited testing.
- Sodium pentachlorophenate $\frac{1}{4}$ strength plus borax $\frac{1}{7}$ plus soda $\frac{1}{20}$ has low skin-irritating tendencies and has given good mold control. In stain control it was less effective on pine under severe conditions, probably because of the low phenolate content. Use of increased concentrations during the warm, wet months should overcome this difficulty.

- Sodium tetrachlorophenate is effective on southern hardwoods and certain west coast coniferous woods, but not on southern pine. It is less irritating to the skin than the pentachlorophenate. Unless planed subsequent to treatment, wood treated with tetrachlorophenate and used for food containers is more likely to impart objectionable odor and taste to certain foods than wood treated with other chemicals.

With the exception of the commercial product containing ethyl mercuric phosphate plus sodium pentachlorophenate, all the commercial products occasionally failed to prevent mold or stain under severe conditions.

The frequency of such prevention failures can be reduced, along with the skin irritation of the phenolates and the mold hazard of the mercurials, by using mixtures of sodium pentachlorophenate with ethyl mercuric phosphate or borax, or with both of these. Performance of the mixtures was as follows:

- Mixtures of ethyl mercuric phosphate and borax appeared to retain the mold hazard of the mercurial alone and showed little or no promise of superior stain control.
- Mixtures of sodium pentachlorophenate and borax at the higher concentrations of sodium pentachlorophenate $\frac{1}{4}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$, plus borax $\frac{3}{8}$, or higher strengths, prevented objectionable stain. When both effectiveness and bulk are considered, the commercial product containing sodium pentachlorophenate $\frac{1}{2}$ plus borax $\frac{3}{16}$ appeared to be the most efficient mixture of this type. Its advantage was that it reduced skin irritation even though it was not superior in controlling stain.

TABLE 22-6.—*Chemicals used in dip treatments to control fungi in green lumber*
(after Verrall and Mook 1951, p. 8)

Chemical	Trade name	Composition of commercial product ¹	Full strength, amount per 50 gallons
Mercurials:			
Ethyl mercuric phosphate.	Lignasan.....	6.25 percent ethyl mercuric phosphate plus 93.75 percent inerts (metallic mercury 4.79 percent).	1 pound (.015 percent mercurial).
Other organic mercurials.	.....	.....	.015 percent mercurial.

TABLE 22-6.—*Chemicals used in dip treatments to control fungi in green lumber* (after Verrall and Mook 1951, p. 8)—Continued

Chemical	Trade name	Composition of commercial product ¹	Full strength, amount per 50 gallons
Chlorinated phenolates:			
Sodium pentachlorophenate.	Dowicide G or Santobrite.	75 percent sodium pentachlorophenate plus 13 percent of other chlorophenates, and excess alkali.	4 pounds ²
Other chlorophenolates.	Various Dowicides.	-----	Do ³ -----
Adjuvants:			
Borax-----	-----	Technical powdered borax.	16 pounds
Soda-----	-----	Mixture of technical sodium carbonate and sodium bicarbonate.	29 pounds
Commercial products..	Permatox 10s-----	Technical sodium pentachlorophenate 40 percent, plus borax 60 percent. ⁴	5 pounds
	Noxtane-----	Technical sodium pentachlorophenate 20 percent, borax 48 percent, and soda 29 percent. ⁵	Do-----
	Melsan-----	Technical sodium pentachlorophenate 50 percent, ethyl mercuric phosphate 1.56 percent, inerts 48.44 percent.	2 pounds.

¹ Composition based mainly on data from container labels. In some instances these data were modified by further information received from the manufacturers.

² Dowicide G and Santobrite are ordinarily used at the rate of 3.5 pounds per 50 gallons. In most of the tests 3.5 pounds were used in reference treatments, but in some early tests 4 pounds were used. Because there was very little difference in the effectiveness of the two concentrations, both were included as "full strength." All reduced concentrations in mixtures are expressed as fractions of 4 pounds.

³ In commercial practice the various chlorophenolates are used at rates of 3 to 4 pounds per 50 gallons. However, for these tests full strength was considered 4 pounds in all cases, so that all would be comparable to sodium pentachlorophenate.

⁴ After these tests were started, the composition of Permatox 10s was changed to technical sodium pentachlorophenate 35 percent, plus borax 65 percent.

⁵ The manufacturers stated that the proportions of the ingredients are being changed.

- Mixtures of sodium pentachlorophenate and ethyl mercuric phosphate are superior stain-control treatments, give good mold control, are low in bulk, and have low skin-irritating properties. Stain control might be better if relatively higher mercurial content was used in the winter and higher phenolate content in the summer, but the advantage probably would not be great. Mixtures containing equal relative proportions of the two seem best.

Mixtures containing $\frac{1}{4}$ strengths of each component were about equal in effectiveness to full-strength sodium pentachlorophenate, while those containing $\frac{3}{8}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$ strengths of each component were superior. The latter two never allowed objectionable amounts of stain in any open-piled test. The commercial mixture (ethyl mercuric phosphate $\frac{1}{2}$ plus sodium pentachlorophenate $\frac{1}{4}$) was about equal in effectiveness to the $\frac{3}{8}$ plus $\frac{3}{8}$ mixture, but it did not show the high degree of superiority that the $\frac{1}{2}$ plus $\frac{1}{2}$ mixture did.

- Mixtures containing sodium pentachlorophenate, ethyl mercuric phosphate, and borax also showed considerable promise. The $\frac{1}{8}$ plus $\frac{1}{8}$ plus $\frac{3}{8}$ was equal to full-strength sodium pentachlorophenate in average effectiveness and in the percentage of tests with objectionable stain. The $\frac{3}{16}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ and the $\frac{1}{4}$ plus $\frac{1}{4}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ mixtures averaged more effective than the full-strength sodium pentachlorophenate and only slightly exceeded the latter in bulk (3.9 pounds and 4.2 pounds, respectively, per 50 gallons compared to 3.5 pounds recommended by manufacturers for the pentachlorophenate alone). The $\frac{1}{4}$ plus $\frac{1}{4}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ mixture never allowed objectionable stain in any open-piled test; the $\frac{3}{16}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ mixture in this respect was equal to the $\frac{1}{8}$ plus $\frac{1}{8}$ plus $\frac{3}{8}$ mixture. There was no indication in the test data that increasing the borax concentrations beyond $\frac{3}{16}$ strength added to the effectiveness of the $\frac{3}{16}$ plus $\frac{3}{16}$ plus borax or the $\frac{1}{4}$ plus $\frac{1}{4}$ plus borax mixtures. The triplex mixtures afford a high degree of fungus control at very low concentrations of phenolate, with resultant low skin-irritation hazard.

When seasoning conditions are abnormally severe for short periods, any of the commercially available treatments are less likely to fail if concentrations are increased. Under such conditions the use of commercial mixtures seems preferable to the use of increased concentrations of phenolates or mercurials alone. With mixtures, superior effectiveness can be attained without increasing skin irritation or mold hazard.

As far as could be determined from the few tests made and from observations at mills, the chemical protection of large, sawed timbers presents no special problem. With good handling practices and treating solutions 1.5 to 2 times as strong as used on 1-inch lumber, satisfactory protection should result for the periods timbers are usually held at mills.

All the treatments tested lost some effectiveness when the treated wood was subjected to leaching immediately after dipping. If washing was delayed until an hour after treating, the effect of leaching was remarkably small. Protection of treated lumber from rainwash is most needed immediately after dipping at the green chain.

Preservative treatments for lumber and timbers in use, as required by Federal Specification TT-W-571i, are listed, with minimum retentions, in table 22-7¹. With pentachlorophenol (Fed. Spec. TT-W-570) retention of 0.3 pound of solid preservative per cubic foot is required for lumber or timbers not in contact with ground or water; 0.5 retention is specified for use in fresh water or in ground contact.

The American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C2-69) standard for lumber, timber, and ties treated by pressure processes limits initial steaming (245° F. maximum) to not over 17 hours. Vacuum must not be less than 22 inches of mercury. Preservative and expansion-bath temperature cannot exceed 220° F., with no limitation on duration of immersion. If the wood is to be exposed in coastal waters, no final steaming is permitted; otherwise, up to 2 hours at not over 240° F. is allowed.

Retentions measured by assay, gauge, or weight are specified for creosote, creosote-coal tar solutions, and creosote-petroleum solutions.

<u>Use</u>	<u>Retention</u>
	<i>Pounds per cubic foot</i>
Coastal waters	20 (full cell with creosote or creosote-coal tar; creosote-petroleum not recommended)
Soil contact	8
Above ground	6

Pentachlorophenol in oil is not suitable for coastal waters; specifications of the American Wood Preservers Association call for dry-chemical retention of 0.4 pound per cubic foot when in soil contact and 0.3 pound when above ground.

Retentions of waterborne preservatives (measured by assay, gauge, or weight) are specified as follows:

<u>Preservative</u>	<u>Above ground</u>	<u>Soil contact</u>
	<i>Pounds of solid chemical per cubic foot</i>	
ACC.....	0.25	not recommended
ACA.....	.23	0.40
CCA.....	.23	.40
CuCZA.....	.27	not recommended
CZC.....	.46	not recommended
FCAP.....	.22	not recommended

In this specification for lumber and timbers, the preservative must penetrate 2.5 inches or 85 percent of the sapwood.

Crossties¹.—In 1967, 5 percent of the 23.4 million crossties and 4 percent of the 97.3 million bd. ft. of switch ties treated in the United States were southern pine.

TABLE 22-7.—*Preservatives and minimum retentions listed for lumber and timbers in Federal Specification TT-W-571i*

Preservative and Federal specification	In coastal waters	In fresh water, in contact with the ground, or for important structural members not in contact with ground or water		Not in contact with ground or water ¹
		----- Pounds per cubic foot -----		
Coal tar creosote	TT-6-645	22	10	6
	or TT-6-655			
Creosote-coal tar solutions	TT-C-650	22	10	6
Creosote-petroleum solution	TT-W-568	-----	12	7
Pentachlorophenol equivalent to 5 percent in petroleum oil (AWPA Standard P9)	TT-W-570	-----	0.5	0.3
Pentachlorophenol in solution with light petroleum solvent (AWPA Standard P9)	TT-W-570	-----	-----	0.3
Pentachlorophenol in solution with volatile petroleum solvent (AWPA Standard P9)	TT-W-570	-----	-----	0.3
Acid copper chromate	TT-W-546	-----	-----	0.50-1.00
Ammoniacal copper arsenite	TT-W-549	-----	-----	0.25-0.45
Chromated copper arsenate type I	TT-W-550	-----	-----	0.40-0.75
Chromated copper arsenate type II	TT-W-550	-----	-----	0.25-.045
Chromated zinc chloride	TT-W-551	-----	-----	0.75-1.00
Fluor-chrome arsenate phenol mixture	TT-W-535	-----	-----	0.35-0.50

¹ Where two figures are given, the second applies to exposure to occasional rain-wetting but not to contact with the ground (except for items of low replacement cost).

Federal Specification MM-T-371d for ties calls for treatment as outlined in TT-W-571i and AWPA Standard C6-67.

<u>Preservative</u>	<u>Federal specification</u>	<u>Minimum retention</u>
		<i>Pounds per cubic foot</i>
Coal tar creosote	TT-C-645 or TT-C-655	8
Creosote-coal tar solutions	TT-C-650	8
Creosote-petroleum solution	TT-W-568	8

An American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C2-69) Standard covers bridge ties and mine ties; these specifications are the same as their standards just cited for *Lumber and timbers*.

An American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C6-67) Standard applies to crossties and switch ties. Crossties under this Standard may be air-dried, kiln-dried, dried by boiling in oil at a temperature from 170 to 210° F. at a vacuum of not less than 22 inches of mercury, or by vapor drying (see sec. 20-7) with a suitable organic solvent having a boiling point between 270 and 340° F. In the vapor-drying process the temperature of the effluent vapor and water-vapor mixture coming from the cylinder should be in the range from 240 to 260° F.; drying should not be continued below 25-percent moisture content, and after drying, a vacuum of at least 22 inches of mercury should be pulled on the retort (through the condenser) for not less than an hour.

Under this standard of the American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C6-67), southern pine crossties and switch ties can be steam conditioned at a temperature not to exceed 245° F. for not more than 18 hours. If the full-cell process is used, vacuum must exceed 22 inches of mercury. Preservative temperature during the pressure period must average 180° F. but not exceed 210° F., and pressure must be between 50 and 200 p.s.i. Retentions of 8 pounds per cubic foot are in general use for creosote, creosote-coal tar solutions, and creosote-petroleum solutions. For 5-percent pentachlorophenol solutions in oil, a retention of 0.4 pound of solid chemical per cubic foot is in general use. The preservative must penetrate 2.5 inches or 85 percent of the sapwood.

Laminated wood¹.—Federal Specification TT-W-572i specifies that laminated timbers and laminates prior to gluing can be treated with coal tar creosote, creosote-coal tar solution, or creosote-petroleum solution; retention by assay in the 0- to 5/8-inch zone to be 6 pounds per cubic foot if a minor member not in contact with ground or water, and 12 pounds if in contact with fresh water or ground or if an important structural member not in contact with the ground or water. If pentachlorophenol is used, retentions of dry chemical under comparable conditions are set at 0.3 and 0.6 pound. Retentions specified for waterborne preservatives are the same as those stated for lumber.

An American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C28-69) Standard covers preservative treatment of glued laminated wood, as well as the laminations prior to treatment. Pressure during treatment of glued wood must not exceed 150 p.s.i., and final steaming is permitted for a total of 3 hours at a temperature not to exceed 240° F. With southern pine, a retention (in a zone 0 to 3 inches from the edge of interior laminates) of 6 pounds per cubic foot for service above ground and 12 pounds for ground contact is required for creosote or creosote-coal tar solutions; creosote-petroleum solutions are not recommended. Retention in pounds of dry pentachlorophenol per cubic foot is specified at 0.3 (above ground) or

0.6 (ground contact). The preservative must penetrate 3 inches or 90 percent of the beam.

Individual laminations treated before gluing should be made oversize so that after treatment (including drying) they can be surfaced to the desired dimension. The full-cell process is recommended for waterborne preservatives; preservative oils should be applied by the process that assures the most uniform penetration with the retention specified. Treating pressure cannot exceed 150 p.s.i.; final steaming is permitted for a total of 3 hours at a temperature not to exceed 240° F. Specified retentions (by assay) in a zone 0.5 to 1.0 inch from the edge of laminates are:

<u>Preservative</u>	<u>Above ground</u>	<u>Ground contact</u>
	- - - - <i>Pounds per cubic foot</i> - - - -	
Creosote.....	6	12
Creosote-coal tar.....	6	12
Creosote petroleum.....	not recommended	not recommended
Pentachlorophenol.....	0.30	0.60
ACA.....	.23	.40
ACC.....	.25	not recommended
CCA.....	.23	.40
CZC.....	.46	not recommended
FCAP.....	.22	not recommended

The preservative is required to penetrate 3 inches or 90 percent of the volume of the lamination.

Plywood¹.—Federal Specification TT-W-571i specifies treatment of plywood with coal tar creosote at 10 pounds per cubic foot if in contact with the ground, and 6 pounds if not in contact with ground or water. If pentachlorophenol is used under similar conditions, retentions of dry chemical at 0.5 and 0.3 pound per cubic foot are specified. Retentions of waterborne salts identical with those for lumber are required.

An American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C9-69) Standard covers the preservative treatment (by pressure processes) of southern pine plywood glued with waterproof adhesives. Full-cell treatment is recommended with waterborne preservatives, but preservative oils should be applied by the process that assures the most uniform penetration with the retention specified. Pressure during treatment must not exceed 150 p.s.i. Final moisture content of the plywood should approximate that which the product will attain in use.

Retentions, as determined by assay taken 12 inches from any edge, are specified:

Preservative	Above ground	Soil or water contact
----- Pounds per cubic foot -----		
Preservative oils		
Creosote.....	6.00	10.00
Pentachlorophenol.....	.30	.50
Waterborne preservatives		
ACA.....	.23	.40
ACC.....	.25	not recommended
CCA.....	.23	.40
CZC.....	.46	not recommended
FCAP.....	.22	not recommended

The Standard requires that each veneer be penetrated as observed in borings taken 12 inches from panel edge.

For use in coastal waters, creosote is required (at a retention of 25 pounds per cubic foot).

Crossarms.—An American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C25-65) Standard covers southern pine crossarms treated by pressure processes. The empty-cell method is required. With creosote, retentions of 6, 8, or 10 pounds per cubic foot are required depending on severity of service. Similarly, the levels of dry pentachlorophenol retention are 0.3, 0.4, and 0.5 pound per cubic foot.

Millwork and other wood requiring clean treatment.—The preservative treatment of millwork such as sash, doors, siding, bleacher seats, and exposed decking should leave the surface clean and paintable. Blew and Panek (1964) reviewed the problems encountered in the production of clean pressure-treated wood and defined the objectives of a clean treatment as follows:

Specifically, where the treated wood is to be finished with a paint or varnish, the preservative should not interfere with these coatings. Where treated lumber or veneer is to be used in manufacturing laminated timber or plywood, the preservative should not interfere with the gluing operation. Where treated lumber is used in buildings, the preservative should not cause an objectionable odor, contribute to staining of adjacent materials such as flooring, plaster, and wallpaper, or should not cause softening and dripping of asphalt in roofing materials. For treating outdoor decks, boardwalks, seating, and tables, there should not be an objectionable powdery surface residue, and wood surfaces should not be too sticky or oily to paint over or for people to walk or sit on.

So-called clean, nonswelling, paintable, water-repellent preservatives containing principally pentachlorophenol, have been used successfully since 1938 for the treatment of window sash and related millwork (Lance 1958). For such treatment, the preservative and water-repellent components are dissolved in solvents of the mineral-spirits type, often with limited amounts of supplementary solvents such as naphtha, kerosene, light fuel oil, or

diesel oil. Small amounts of waxes are added to provide increased water repellency or to prevent recrystallization of pentachlorophenol on the surface of the treated wood after drying. Federal Specification TT-W-572 describes this class of preservative, which usually contains not less than 5-percent pentachlorophenol by weight.

Preservative is applied by brief immersion (3-minute dip or light vacuum), resulting in retentions of approximately 10 gallons of solution per M b.f. or less than 1 pound (dry) per cubic foot. No oil-treating solution will always yield paintable treated wood. Wood with normal absorptions from short-period dips can be painted safely after 24 to 48 hours of drying, but an occasional board will absorb excessive oil, which will bleed through subsequently applied paint unless unusually long drying time is provided (Verrall 1965). Commercial Standard CS 262-63 describes the treatment required in terms of National Woodwork Manufacturers Association test method NWMA-M-2.

Millwork treatments are not adequate for uses that require a high degree of protection against decay fungi and subterranean termites (Blew 1967).

A specification of the Vacuum Wood Preservers Institute covering treatments of wood for use in buildings has been published (Wier 1958, p. 95). Under this specification the dry wood is placed in an initial vacuum; the vacuum is then released and the wood soaked in preservative at atmospheric pressure. Finally, the preservative is drained and a final vacuum applied to remove excess preservative. Retention of water-repellent preservative (Federal Specification TT-W-572) is specified:

<u>Desired properties</u>	<u>Retention of liquid</u> <i>Pounds per cubic foot</i>
High preservative value and paintable 14 days after treatment	2
Lower preservative value but paintable 24 to 48 hours after treatment	1

Vacuum treating (of products not damaged by bleeding) with pentachlorophenol (Federal Specification TT-W-570) dissolved in heavy petroleum oil is also covered by this Specification; it calls for a retention of 6 pounds per cubic foot and penetration of 2½ inches or 85 percent of sapwood depth.

Pressure treatments of southern pine with pentachlorophenol and water repellents in light petroleum distillates have been used overseas with some success by the Department of Defense for protection from fungi and termites. Domestic users have had difficulty evaporating excess solvent to make pressure-treated wood clean and paintable. The problem of achieving cleanliness with a high degree of protection is not yet entirely solved. In southern pine pressure treated by the empty-cell process, Panek (1968) found best paintability from post-treatment conditioning by solvent recovery followed by an emulsion paint. The wood was conditioned by three

solvent recovery cycles in light aromatic solvent vapor at 280° F.—reached in 30 minutes and held for 30 minutes—followed by a 1-hour vacuum.

The Cellon process of applying pentachlorophenol dissolved in liquefied petroleum gas, and evaporating the gas after pressure impregnation, is a major contribution toward achievement of clean treated wood; time and service tests are needed to fully evaluate its effectiveness.

Treatment with waterborne solutions of salts can result in serviceable, paintable, clean southern pine if certain precautionary steps are taken (Blew and Panek 1964).

- Warp should be controlled by rejecting warp-prone boards prior to treatment, by using quarter-sawed lumber, by placing stickers with precision during redrying, and by restraining the wood during redrying with spring takeup devices or weights on top of the stack.
- Checking of lumber treated with waterborne solutions should be controlled by using proper kiln schedules during redrying.
- Adequate penetration (that will permit surfacing prior to lamination) requires that southern pine wood be kiln-dried or thoroughly air-dried prior to treatment. Kiln-drying of poles greatly improves penetration of ammoniacal copper arsenite and chromated copper arsenate—both effective in contact with the ground.
- Dimensional changes can be avoided if wood is dried before, as well as after, treatment to the moisture content anticipated in use.
- Surface deposits or **bloom** of preservative can be removed by sanding after the deposits harden; bloom can be controlled or prevented by setting pitch in kiln-dried wood prior to treatment, by reducing treating temperatures (e.g., to 100° F.), and by stacking lumber or plywood on edge during treatment to avoid accumulation of surface deposits of sludge. To achieve clean treatment, equipment should be used only for waterborne preservatives and not alternated with oil treatments.
- Discoloration to paint and masonry work under wet conditions is understood to be controlled by omission of dinitrophenol from preservative formulations.

Particleboard¹.—Particleboard is not ordinarily used under conditions where decay hazard is high. Research indicates that if preservative treatment is necessary, 1 to 2 percent of pentachlorophenol (based on the dry weight of particles) added to the resin before blending affords satisfactory protection, without impairing board properties (Stolley 1958).

Fiberboard¹.—It is not usual to install fiberboard in contact with ground or water. Under certain local conditions, however, hazards from decay and insects may be high.

Pentachlorophenol is used as a preservative. Sodium pentachlorophenate is added at the stock chest—usually before sizing—and is precipitated as pentachlorophenol by alum during sizing. Based on oven-dry weight of

fiber, 0.50 to 0.75 percent of pentachlorophenol provides adequate protection against decay in most exposures where fiberboard is used. Copper pentachlorophenate can also be used; fiberboard for roof construction should have at least 0.25 percent for effective protection (Meyer and Spalding 1958).

Meyer and Spalding (1958) further state that arsenical compounds are cheaper and perhaps a little more effective against termites than pentachlorophenol. When added at the headbox, a retention of 0.60 percent of arsenic trioxide is considered adequate for tropical conditions.

Insulating boards coated with materials containing starch develop spots caused by growth of the fungus *Aspergillus restrictus*. This spotting can be prevented by addition of 0.5 percent pentachlorophenol to the coating (French and Christensen 1969).

Further information on preservation of fiberboard is available in French and Christensen (1958), Merrill and French (1963, 1964, 1965, 1966ab), and Merrill et al. (1965).

22-2 TREATMENT FOR FIRE RETARDATION^{1 4}

Building fire losses in the United States in 1967 totalled 1.7 billion dollars, and almost 12,000 people lost their lives in fires. On a per capita basis, this loss of life is twice that of Canada, four times that of the United Kingdom, and 6½ times that of Japan. Continued high loss of life and property in building fires has resulted in increased interest in fire research and safety, as evidenced by the Fire Research and Safety Act of 1968. Passage of more restrictive building codes is additional evidence of increased concern.

Untreated wood is a relatively fire-safe material for frame and heavy-timber types of construction. Fire safety in the ordinary frame building—with its open interior arrangement—can best be obtained by limitation of flammable contents, care in smoking, proper installation and use of electrical, heating, and cooking equipment, and by installation of adequate exits. Heavy-timber or mill-type construction provides greater endurance to fire than is obtainable with unprotected metal construction. It is possible, however, to expand the uses of wood in building construction by application of fire-retardant treatments which limit surface flammability, rate of heat release, and smoke.

FIRE PERFORMANCE

Related subjects are discussed elsewhere in the text: burning in chapter 26, heat of combustion in section 9-4, thermal degradation in section 15-2, and destructive distillation in section 28-1. In brief, burning of southern pine is accelerated if the wood is dry, of small particle size surrounded by

⁴ Sec. 22-2 is expanded from a paper: Eickner, H. W. Fire retardant treatments for southern pine wood. Presented at a Symposium "Utilization of the Southern Pines," Alexandria, La., November 6-8, 1968.

adequate oxygen, of high extractive content, low in density, rough in surface texture, and exposed to high temperature from a sustained exterior heat source in the presence of an ignition flame.

Although fire-retardant treatments have little effect on the rate at which wood chars, they reduce its surface flammability and the amount of heat it contributes during the initial phase of fires. When treated with properly formulated fire-retardant chemicals, southern pine is self extinguishing, i.e., it promptly ceases to flame or glow when the primary source of heat is removed or exhausted.

REASON FOR EFFECTIVENESS OF FIRE RETARDANTS

Among the tentative explanations of how fire-retardant-chemical treatments reduce the flammability of wood are theories that they: (1) decompose to release gases which extinguish the flame; (2) form impervious or insulative layers to prevent pyrolysis and release of flammable gases; (3) improve the thermal conductivity or consume heat to undergo physical and chemical change during pyrolysis which retard the ignition of the wood; or (4) that certain chemical decomposition products restrict the flammability range for the combustible gas-air mixture released above the wood surface. Several of these effects may be involved for some of the retardant systems.

The theory most widely accepted, based on recent basic studies, is that the chemicals decompose just below the normal charring temperatures for wood and release a strong acid or base. These chemical products then react with the wood components, particularly the cellulose and hemicellulose, to dehydrate them during pyrolysis to form carbon and water rather than the normal levoglucosan-tar products which are responsible for the flaming of wood.

METHODS FOR EVALUATION OF FIRE RETARDANTS

A number of standardized methods have been devised for testing performance of materials exposed to fire. Tests, for which data are presented in this section, are described below.

Large-tunnel test ASTM E84.—Surface flammability, the factor chiefly reduced by fire-retardant treatment of southern pine is measured for code-rating purposes by the 25-foot-tunnel method. Details of the test equipment and procedures are given in American Society for Testing and Materials Standard E84. This large-tunnel test exposes a test panel 25 feet long and 20 inches wide to a standard gas flame placed at one end of a box-like tunnel. The test panel forms the ceiling of the otherwise non-combustible chamber so that the impinging flames and hot gases maintain contact with the panel as they move toward the outlet. Rate of flame spread is visually observed through viewing ports along the tunnel. Smoke

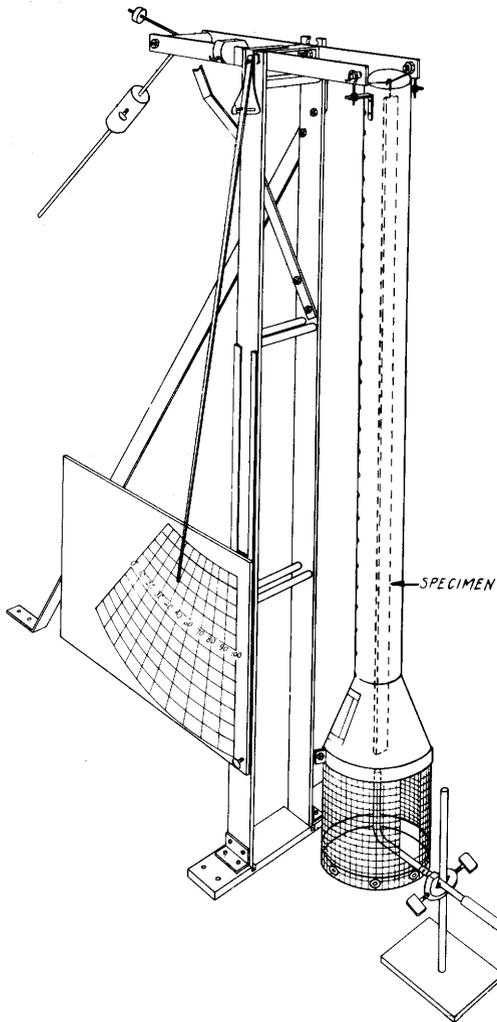
density is measured in the vent pipe with a photoelectric cell. Temperatures in the panel and in the chamber can also be measured. The performance of the test panel is compared with that of a similar panel made from untreated red oak flooring.

Under this test, untreated southern pine lumber has flame-spread values ranging from 130 to 195 on a scale which rates untreated red oak at 100 and asbestos-cement board at 0 (Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. 1968, 1969). While treated lumber with a rating below 70 is eligible for listing by Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., treated southern pine lumber produced by a number of manufacturers is rated at 25 or less in flame spread, heat index, and smoke index. Most of these products also qualify as having rated 25 or less in flame spread in a 30-minute test, and showing "no evidence of significant progressive combustion."

USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube test.—The fire-tube test was developed (Truax and Harrison 1929) as a research tool to screen and evaluate chemicals for effectiveness in retarding fire in wood. The 40-inch-long specimen measures $\frac{3}{8}$ - by $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch in cross section and is suspended in a perforated tube from a weight-sensing device at the top (fig. 22-6). A Bunsen burner is placed with the top of the burner 1 inch or less below the specimen so that an 11-inch-high, 1,000° C. flame envelops the lower end of the specimen for 4 minutes. During the test, loss in weight of the specimen and temperature rise at the top of the tube are indicators of the efficiency of the fire retardant. The test procedure is described by the American Society for Testing and Materials Standard E 69. Untreated wood samples generally lose 80 to 90 percent of their weight while temperatures rise to 700 or 800° C. at the top of the tube. In well-treated specimens, weight loss is only 15 to 20 percent, and tube-top temperature seldom exceeds 200° C. (Hunt and Garratt 1967).

Eight-foot tunnel furnace test.—This test, developed by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory, Madison, Wis., is described in detail in American Society for Testing and Materials Method E 286-65T. The test panel (14 inches wide by 8 feet long) is placed face-down within the angle-iron frame of the furnace (fig. 22-7). This positions the specimen to slope lengthwise at 6° from the horizontal, and to slope at 30° across its short dimension. An asbestos-faced cover is then placed over the back of the specimen. Radiant heat is applied to the face of the panel from a stainless-steel partitioning plate within the furnace, which is heated by a gas burner producing 3,400 B.t.u.'s of heat per minute. A small pilot flame at the lower end of the furnace near the panel surface starts the initial flaming.

The test is conducted for 18.4 minutes, the time normally required for the flames to spread from the pilot to the farthest observation port (87 inches) on a standard red oak lumber specimen (density, 39 pounds per cubic foot). The progress of the flame along the face of the specimen is measured, and expressed as a flame-spread index value, I_s , relative to the



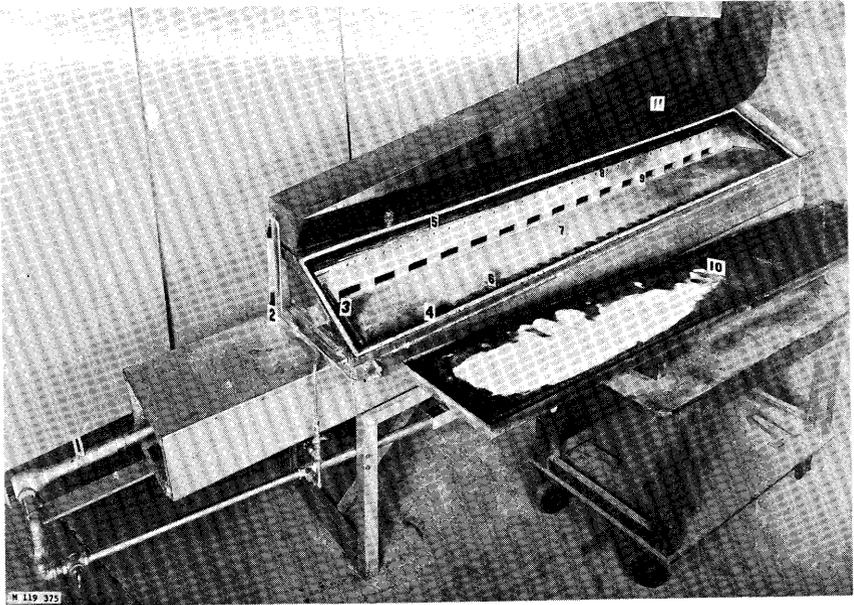
2M-26719F
 Figure 22-6.—The USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube apparatus developed by M. E. Dunlap. The percentage of loss in specimen weight is indicated by the needle and scale.

flame-spread index for red oak lumber, which is arbitrarily assigned 100 by the relationship:

- (1) For flame spread faster than on red oak,

$$I_s = \frac{T_o}{T_s} \times 100 \quad (22-1)$$

where T_o is the standard time of 18.4 minutes for the flame to spread the length of a red oak specimen and T_s is the time for flames to spread the same distance on the test specimen.



ZM-119375

Figure 22-7.—Specimen side of USDA Forest Products Laboratory 8-foot tunnel furnace. 1, tunnel burner in firebox; 2, ignition burner flow meter; 3, ignition burner; 4, sand to seal cover; 5, angle iron specimen holder; 6, holes in hot plate inset with Meker burner tops; 7, hot plate over firebox; 8, flame progress observation ports; 9, natural draft air inlets; 10, specimen cover; 11, collecting hood for combustion gases and smoke; 12, photoelectric equipment for smoke density measurements; 13, thermocouple for stack temperature measurement. Ports for observation of flame spread are on the back side.

(2) For flame spread slower than on red oak,

$$I_s = \frac{D_s}{D_o} \times 100 \quad (22-2)$$

where D_s equals the distance reached by flames on the test specimen in the standard test period of 18.4 minutes, and D_o equals the distance (87 inches) reached by flame on a red oak specimen in the same standard test period.

Smoke density and heat-contribution measurements are also taken throughout the test with a light source and photoelectric smoke meter and with thermocouples embedded in copper rods within the stack of the furnace. Smoke density and heat-contributed index values, I_d and I_e , are computed relative to the red oak standard by comparison with an asbestos millboard specimen:

$$I_d = \frac{A_{ds} - A_{da}}{A_{do} - A_{da}} \times 100 \quad (22-3)$$

where A_{ds} equals under the specimen smoke density curve, A_{da} equals area under the asbestos smoke density curve, and A_{do} equals area under red oak smoke density curve; and

$$I_c = \frac{A_{cs} - A_{ca}}{A_{co} - A_{ca}} \times 100 \quad (22-4)$$

where A_{cs} equals area under the specimen heat-contributed curve, A_{ca} equals area under the asbestos heat-contributed curve, and A_{co} equals area under the red oak heat-contributed curve.

Schlyter panel test.—In this test two panels ($11\frac{7}{8}$ inches by 31 inches) are supported 2 inches apart, vertically, as shown in figure 22-8, with the bottom of the one panel 4 inches above the other. For the severe test, fire exposure is supplied by a modified No. 4 Meker burner, consuming

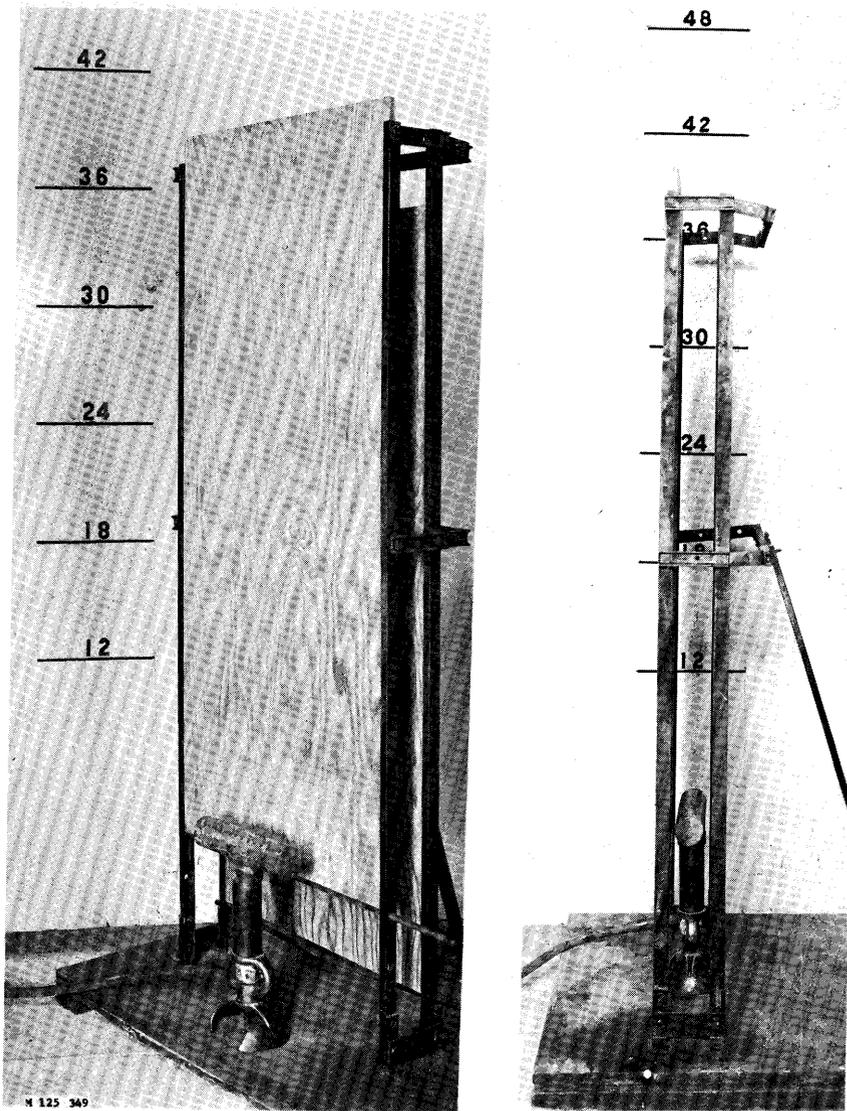


Figure 22-8.—The Schlyter-panel apparatus for the severe fire test. (Photo from Eickner and Schaffer 1967.)

M-125349

natural gas at 18,000 B.t.u.'s per hour. The burner is inserted between the panels, near their lower ends and midway between the panel edges. The vertical height of flames is recorded at 15-second intervals during 3 minutes of exposure. The burner is then removed and the time for flaming and glowing to cease is recorded. An average flame height is calculated, based on the differences between the original height of flaming and subsequent observations during the 3-minute period. An average flame height of 12 inches or less in this test usually indicates an effective chemical treatment.

Comparability.—Each of the four tests measures somewhat different aspects of flammability than the others; generally, results of one test cannot be accurately estimated in terms of the others. Relationships between flame-spread index determined by the FPL 8-foot tunnel furnace and severe Schlyter test values vary with chemicals; they are not well defined for the most effective treatments. Relations between fire-tube weight losses and flame-spread indices are not well defined in the lower range of flammability (Eickner and Schaffer 1967). Data from the large-tunnel test are required by most agencies as a basis for code ratings. The other, less expensive, tests are widely used in research on the effectiveness of fire retardants.

Test procedures for measurement of amount of smoke from wood products under controlled fire exposure are still under development. Readers interested in optical measurement techniques will find Brenden's (1970) discussion useful.

IMPREGNATION WITH FIRE RETARDANTS

Two methods are available for treating wood with fire retardants. One method calls for impregnating the wood with waterborne chemicals. In the second method, fire-retardant coatings are painted on the surface. Of the two, impregnation is usually more effective and lasting. Impregnation is used, therefore, when treating materials prior to construction. For wood in existing structures, surface application of fire-retardant paint is the principal process.

In the impregnation treatment, a waterborne chemical is pressure injected into the wood using full-cell methods and equipment similar to those for pressure preservative treatments. Retentions of fire-retardant chemicals must be fairly high to be effective, ranging from 2.5 to 5.0 pounds of dry chemical per cubic foot of wood near the surface. For wood to be recognized as equal to "noncombustible" materials, the fire retardant must completely penetrate all sections.

As southern pine is easily treated, it is very suitable for fire-retardant treatments requiring deep penetration. It is not normally necessary to incise the surface to improve penetration; but pieces containing high-density heartwood should be excluded, as they are difficult to treat.

Southern pine lumber to be pressure treated is seasoned or kiln-dried,

and then subjected to a vacuum applied for 30 minutes to 1 hour. The fire-retardant solution, usually at a concentration of 12 to 18 percent, is then introduced to completely immerse the charge of wood, and pressure is applied to reach 150 p.s.i. within 30 minutes. This pressure is maintained until solution refusal; from 1.5 to 3.0 hours is required, depending on the dimensions of the lumber.

The charge is then removed, drained of the excess solution, and air- or kiln-dried after treatment to the anticipated moisture content the product will reach in service. In kiln-drying, the maximum drying temperature must not exceed 160° F. Higher temperatures may result in a thermal-chemical degradation reaction. Because of the hygroscopicity of fire-retardant chemicals, it is possible to lower the relative humidity more rapidly for treated wood than for untreated wood during the early part of the drying cycle. This partially compensates for the longer time required at the final drying temperature. Treated wood darkens somewhat during drying.

If the lumber must be resurfaced after treating, a minimum amount of wood should be removed, as retention—hence protection—is greatest in the outermost zone.

Southern pine plywood can be adequately treated with the same schedule used for southern pine lumber. Retention of treating solution in plywood should exceed 25 pounds, and retention of dry chemical should be 3.0 or more pounds per cubic foot. Plywood to be treated must be bonded with an adhesive which can resist delamination during the pressure impregnation and drying cycle. Warping during redrying of plywood can be reduced if kiln sticks are closely spaced and carefully aligned over pile supports. Graham and Erickson (1969) have observed that cross-grooved stickers can greatly reduce the incidence and severity of discoloration under stickers during drying; with certain fire retardants, low initial temperatures may be necessary to prevent the formation of crystals on the surface.

On the basis of tests on Douglas-fir, particleboard can be adequately treated if the fire-retardant solution is applied to the particles before they are dried; tests indicated that modulus of rupture of treated boards was about 75 percent that of untreated boards and gluing was made more difficult, as evidenced by reduced tensile strength perpendicular to the surface (Syska 1969).

Effectiveness of various chemicals¹.—Truax and Harrison (1930) used the fire-tube test (fig. 22-6) to evaluate a large number of chemicals. The progression of weight loss (in treated and untreated specimens) and the rise and fall of tube-top temperature during this test are shown in figure 22-9. Each curve records data taken on a single southern pine specimen. Test sticks had been surfaced following treatment and drying. Figure 22-10, in which each point is the average for 16 to 20 southern pine specimens, shows that approximately 9 pounds of dry diammonium phosphate per 100 pounds of air-dry wood (about 3 pounds per cubic foot)

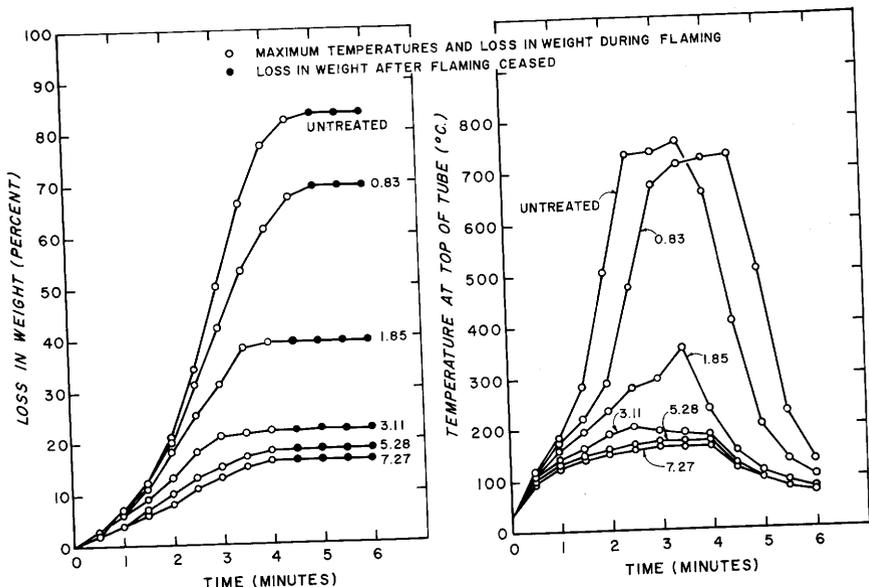


Figure 22-9.—Typical weight-loss curves and tube-top temperatures for southern pine in the fire-tube test. Heat source removed at end of 4 minutes. Numbers on curves indicate absorption of diammonium phosphate, pounds per cubic foot. (Drawing after Truax and Harrison 1930.)

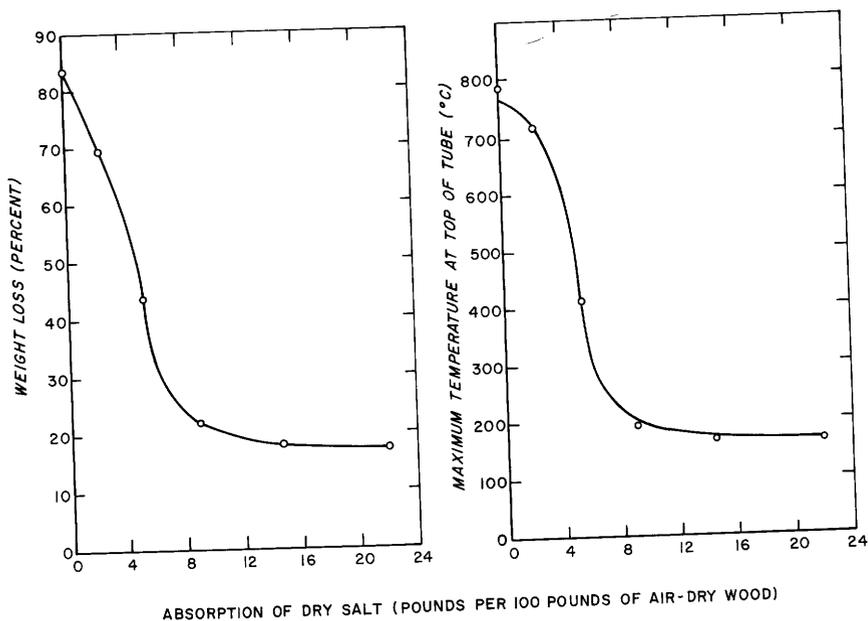


Figure 22-10.—Final weight-loss and maximum tube-top temperatures sustained by southern pine during fire-tube tests. Retentions of diammonium phosphate were varied. Each circle represents the average of 16 to 20 samples. (Drawing after Truax and Harrison 1930.)

are required to substantially reduce total weight loss and maximum temperatures at the top of the tube.

Table 22-8 is a summary of results for selected chemicals evaluated by Truax et al. (1935) with the fire-tube test. Only a few chemicals used singly stopped both flaming and glowing. In addition to ammonium phosphate and monobasic magnesium phosphate (table 22-8), earlier tests showed that phosphoric acid, aluminum sulphate, and ammonium bromide at retentions of 5 to 7 pounds of dry chemical per cubic foot of wood kept weight loss below 20 percent and stopped glowing¹.

Eickner and Schaffer (1967) evaluated the effects of a number of individual salts (table 22-9) on fire performance characteristics of 3/8-inch, Douglas-fir, dry plywood, using the 8-foot tunnel furnace test, the Schlyter panel test, and the fire tube test. While the tests were not specific to southern pine, the results are indicative of the relationships to be expected¹.

Of the individual chemicals evaluated, monoammonium phosphate was the most effective in reducing the **flame-spread index** by the 8-foot tunnel method (fig. 22-11). Flame-spread values were reduced from 115 for the untreated plywood to approximately 55 at a retention of 2.0 pounds per cubic foot, 35 at 3.0 pounds, 20 at 4.0 pounds, and leveled off at about 15 for retentions of 4.5 pounds and higher. The zinc chloride was generally next in effectiveness, but required a retention of about 5.5 pounds per cubic foot to reach the effectiveness of a 3.0-pound retention of monoammonium phosphate. At 7.0 pounds per cubic foot, zinc chloride reduced the flame-spread index to 25.

Ammonium sulfate was as effective as zinc chloride at the lower retentions, but tended to level off at an index value of about 40 at a retention of 6.0 pounds per cubic foot. The borates showed similar performance at the lower retentions, but leveled off between 50 and 45 at retentions of 4.0 pounds per cubic foot and higher.

Boric acid was partially effective as a flame retardant but required a retention of 6.0 pounds per cubic foot to reduce the flame-spread index to 60. The sodium chloride and sodium dichromate slightly reduced flammability at high retentions.

Of the two fertilizer formulations (not plotted in figure 22-11), the 11-37-0 produced flame-spread indices almost identical to monoammonium phosphate, while indices for the 18-46-0 formulation were only 5 to 10 units higher.

Two of the chemicals most effective in reducing flame spread, monoammonium phosphate and zinc chloride, greatly increased **smoke-density index** values (8-foot tunnel furnace) for the plywood at retentions above 2.0 pounds per cubic foot (fig. 22-11). Except for boric acid, the other individual chemicals generally decreased the smoke development. The sodium borates and sodium dichromate notably reduced the smoke-index values for the plywood but either promoted **afterglow reactions** or did not inhibit them.

TABLE 22-8.—*Effectiveness of various chemicals and mixtures of chemicals in preventing glow and controlling weight loss, as evaluated by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube test (after Truax et al. 1935)*

Chemical	Retention of anhydrous chemical/ cu. ft. of wood	Loss in weight ¹	Tendency to glow ²
	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Percent</i>	
None (untreated wood)-----	—	83.5	Moderate
Ammonium chloride-----	1.50	66.5	Slight
	2.10	53.8	Slight
	3.14	23.2	Slight
	5.36	24.2	Slight
	7.54	19.7	Very slight
Ammonium phosphate (dibasic)-----	0.90	69.4	None
	1.84	43.4	None
	3.23	21.8	None
	5.15	17.9	None
	7.25	17.1	None
Ammonium phosphate (monobasic)-----	0.91	67.4	None
	1.84	56.9	None
	2.60	26.5	None
	4.99	19.0	None
	7.29	15.7	None
Ammonium sulfate-----	1.35	70.4	Slight
	1.86	64.3	Slight
	3.17	31.6	Slight
	4.96	25.9	Slight
	6.70	20.1	Slight
Sodium tetraborate (borax)-----	1.02	54.4	Moderate
	1.76	36.0	Moderate
	3.08	25.0	Moderate
	5.36	21.8	Moderate
	6.02	20.0	Moderate
Boric acid, 60 percent; sodium tetraborate (borax), 40 percent-----	1.18	69.5	Slight
	2.08	64.6	Slight
	3.11	60.3	Slight
	5.32	28.3	Slight
	7.14	19.1	None
Borax, 67 percent, ammonium phosphate (monobasic), 33 percent-----	1.09	68.6	Very slight
	2.20	52.9	Very slight
	3.41	27.2	None
	5.69	16.5	None
	8.49	14.6	None

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE 22-8.—*Effectiveness of various chemicals and mixtures of chemicals in preventing glow and controlling weight loss, as evaluated by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube test (after Truax et al. 1935)—Continued*

Chemical	Retention of anhydrous chemical/cu. ft. of wood	Loss in weight ¹	Tendency to glow ²
Boric acid-----	1.00	78.2	None
	2.04	75.1	None
	3.32	72.2	None
	5.42	66.8	None
	6.83	58.4	None
	8.74	29.9	None
Magnesium chloride, 45 percent; ammonium phosphate (monobasic), 55 percent-----	1.09	77.1	None
	2.19	72.0	None
	3.19	67.8	None
	5.85	21.1	None
	8.39	17.4	None
Magnesium chloride, 39 percent; ammonium phosphate (monobasic), 47 percent; ammonia gas, 14 percent-----	1.24	71.4	Very slight
	2.61	52.5	None
	3.88	22.5	None
	6.63	16.6	None
	9.66	15.6	None
Magnesium chloride, 44 percent; sodium phosphate (monobasic), 56 percent-----	1.14	76.9	Moderate
	2.34	73.3	Moderate
	3.57	70.2	Slight
	5.78	54.2	Very slight
	8.83	33.2	Very slight
Magnesium chloride, 38 percent; sodium phosphate (monobasic), 48 percent; ammonia gas, 14 percent-----	1.32	66.4	Slight
	2.64	54.9	None
	4.01	27.4	None
	6.85	19.4	None
	10.09	16.2	None
Magnesium phosphate (monobasic)-----	1.06	75.7	None
	2.18	70.0	None
	3.10	67.4	None
	5.45	54.5	None
	7.44	18.4	None
Magnesium phosphate (monobasic), 81 percent; ammonia gas, 19 percent-----	1.31	70.0	None
	2.68	49.8	None
	3.85	21.6	None
	6.66	16.1	None
	9.38	14.0	None

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE 22-8.—*Effectiveness of various chemicals and mixtures of chemicals in preventing glow and controlling weight loss, as evaluated by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube test (after Truax et al. 1935)—Continued*

Chemical	Retention of anhydrous chemical/cu. ft. of wood	Loss in weight ¹	Tendency to glow ²
Zinc chloride.....	1.13	73.8	Moderate
	1.88	63.5	Moderate
	2.77	47.7	Moderate
	5.08	20.7	Moderate
	8.28	18.3	Moderate
Zinc chloride, 54 percent; ammonium phosphate (monobasic), 46 percent	1.04	75.8	None
	2.09	69.8	None
	3.24	65.8	None
	5.40	22.9	None
	7.60	18.4	None
Zinc chloride, 48 percent; ammonium phosphate (monobasic), 40 percent; ammonia gas, 12 percent	1.19	72.6	None
	2.27	67.9	None
	3.74	37.8	None
	6.15	18.1	None
	8.55	16.3	None

¹ When flaming stopped.

² Based on untreated wood as "moderate".

TABLE 22-9.—*Chemicals evaluated by Eickner and Schaffer (1967) for fire-retardant characteristics*

Name	Formula
Sodium chloride.....	NaCl
Sodium dichromate.....	Na ₂ CR ₂ O ₇ · 2H ₂ O
Sodium tetraborate.....	Na ₂ O · 2B ₂ O ₃ · 10H ₂ O
Sodium 1:4 borate.....	Na ₂ O · 4B ₂ O ₃ · 4H ₂ O
Sodium 1:5 borate.....	Na ₂ O · 5B ₂ O ₃ · 10H ₂ O
Boric acid.....	H ₃ BO ₃
Monoammonium phosphate.....	NH ₄ H ₂ PO ₄
Ammonium sulfate.....	(NH ₄) ₂ SO ₄
Zinc chloride.....	ZnCl ₂
Ammonium polyphosphate fertilizer 11-37-0	
High-phosphate fertilizer 18-46-0	

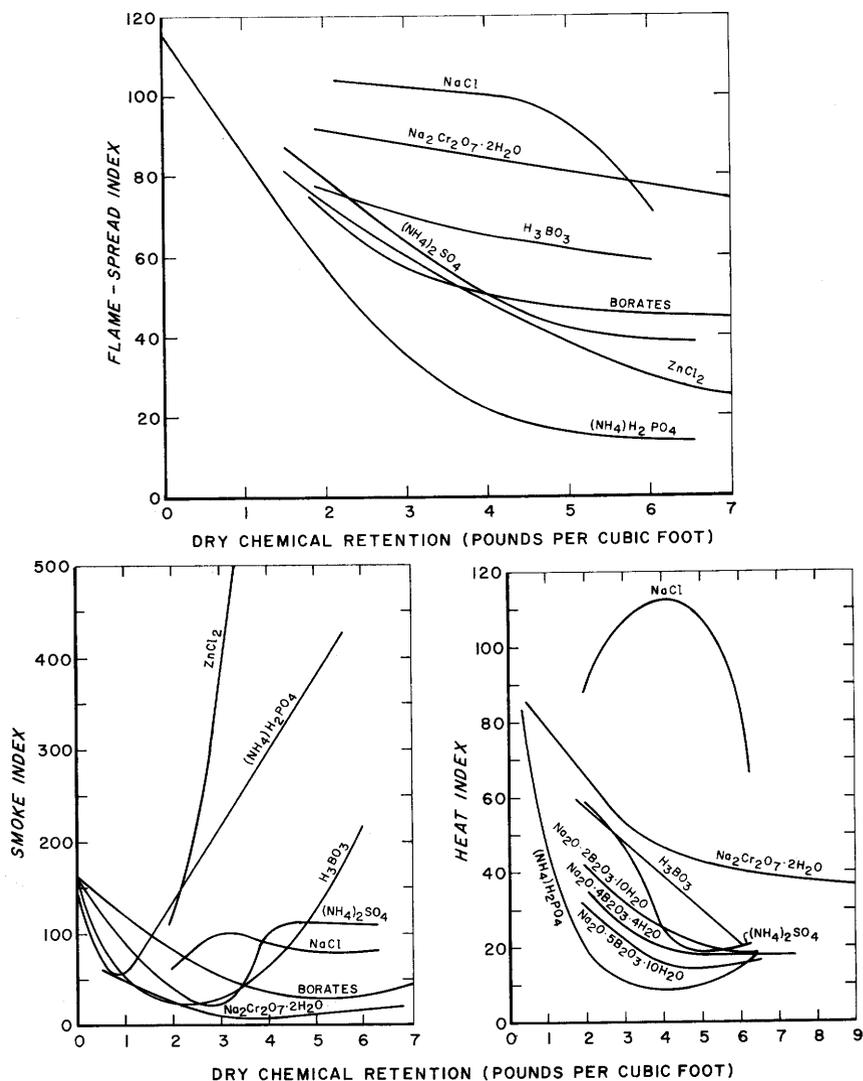


Figure 22-11.—Effect of various chemicals and retentions on fire performance of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch Douglas-fir plywood, as evaluated by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory 8-foot tunnel furnace method. (Top) Flame-spread index. (Bottom, left) Smoke index. (Bottom, right) Heat index. (Drawings after Eickner and Schaffer 1967.)

Generally, the commercial fire-retardant formulations for wood (based either on ammonium phosphate or zinc chloride) are listed (Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. 1969) as having low smoke density values when evaluated by the 25-foot tunnel furnace. The high smoke densities found by Eickner and Schaffer (1967) probably reflect the burning conditions in the 8-foot tunnel furnace, which was designed for high sensitivity in smoke measurements. Their numerical values are not directly comparable to code requirements by other test methods. Several laboratories are at work on techniques for obtaining more widely acceptable data on smoke density.

All of the fire-retardant chemicals (table 22-9) decreased the amount of **heat evolved** in the tunnel test as chemical retention increased. Their individual effectiveness in reducing this evolved heat was positively correlated with their effectiveness in reducing flame spread. Figure 22-11 includes all of the chemicals evaluated except the two phosphate fertilizers and zinc chloride; data for the fertilizers parallel the monoammonium phosphate curve, and the effectiveness of zinc chloride closely parallels that of ammonium sulfate.

For additional information on the use of ammonium polyphosphate liquid fertilizers as fire retardants, see Eickner et al. (1969).

The chemicals in current commercial use as fire retardants include monoammonium and diammonium phosphate, ammonium sulfate, zinc chloride, borax, and boric acid. These are usually combined in formulations intended to give improved overall performance not obtainable with a single chemical.

For example, ammonium phosphate (relatively expensive) and zinc chloride are the most effective flame retardants but do produce considerable smoke under certain conditions. These salts used alone can corrode metals; they also cause premature charring of products when exposed to relatively high temperatures during processing. Ammonium sulfate, a relatively inexpensive chemical, can be combined to reduce flammability without increasing smoke density. Borax is an alkaline salt which reduces flammability without causing premature charring. Borax, ammonium sulfate, and zinc chloride are not particularly effective in reducing afterglow; the incorporation of boric acid or active phosphates in formulations will reduce afterglow. To reduce corrosion, sodium dichromate or other corrosion inhibitors are frequently added to the formulations, but an excess of these inhibitors may promote afterglow.

Standards for formulation, penetration, and retention¹.—An American Wood Preservers Association (1969, P10-68) Standard specifies formulations and tolerances in composition of four commercial fire retardants. Type A (chromated zinc chloride) is used as a preservative treatment; if fire retardance is required, specified retentions are higher than when used as a preservative only. Formulations are:

	Type and component	Composition
Type A	<i>Chromated zinc chloride</i>	<i>Percent</i>
	Zinc chloride ($ZnCl_2$)	81.5
	Sodium dichromate ($Na_2Cr_2O_7 \cdot 2H_2O$)	18.5
Type B	<i>Chromated zinc chloride (FR)</i>	
	Chromated zinc chloride	80
	Ammonium sulfate [$(NH_4)_2SO_4$]	10
	Boric acid (H_3BO_3)	10
Type C	<i>Minalith</i>	
	Diammonium phosphate [$(NH_4)_2HPO_4$]	10
	Ammonium sulfate [$(NH_4)_2SO_4$]	60
	Sodium tetraborate (anhydrous) ($Na_2B_4O_7$)	10
	Boric acid (H_3BO_3)	20

Type D	Type and component	Composition
	<i>Pyresote</i>	<i>Percent</i>
	Zinc chloride ($ZnCl_2$)	35
	Ammonium sulfate ($(NH_4)_2SO_4$)	35
	Boric acid (H_3BO_3)	25
	Sodium dichromate ($Na_2Cr_2O_7 \cdot 2H_2O$)	5

While not included in AWWPA Standards because its formulation has not been disclosed, the fire retardant sold under the registered name of "Nom Com" is used in considerable quantities and has been approved for the label of the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. as effective in fire retardance (Hunt and Garratt 1967). There are also fire-retardant additives, such as triaryl phosphate compounds, which can be used in combination with oilborne preservatives to increase the fire retardancy of treated wood; emulsifying of borax-boric acid or sodium calcium borate with the oilborne preservative is another method of combining fire retardants with preservatives.

The American Wood Preservers Association (1969, C20-69) Standard for structural southern pine lumber specifies that subsequent to treatment, material 2 inches and less in thickness shall be air-dried or kiln-dried to an average moisture content of 19 percent or less; when tested in the large tunnel (American Society for Testing and Materials Standard E84), the material shall have no greater flame spread than 25, and when the test is extended to 30 minutes' duration, it shall have no greater flame spread than equivalent of 25 and no evidence of progressive combustion.

The requirements for military use are set forth in Military Specification MIL-L-19140B, Lumber and Plywood, Fire-Retardant-Treated, 1963.

Permanence.—Most of the fire-retardant formulations are based on inorganic salts, which are not subject to decomposition at normal or slightly elevated temperatures. Treatments are considered permanent in interior applications. Practically all of the salts are water soluble, however, and can be easily leached from the wood by running water; current treatments are not recommended for exterior exposure unless adequately protected. Some progress is evident, however; Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. have tested one proprietary product that provided fire retardancy undiminished by 12 weeks of leaching (Bescher 1967). (See also St. Clair 1969.)

Bromination of wood, through a process developed by Lewin (1964) of the Israel Institute for Fibres and Forest Products Research, is said to result in a water-resistant, fire-retardant treatment.

Corrosive effects.—Some of the individual chemicals used in the fire-retardant formulations are corrosive to certain metals (Van Kleek 1942). Corrosiveness is reduced by combining chemicals in the recognized standard formulations, and by adding sodium dichromate or commercial corrosion inhibitors.

Moisture absorption.—Many of the fire-retardant formulations are hygroscopic (McKnight 1962). Wood treated with these formulations usually has a higher equilibrium moisture content than untreated wood at 65-percent relative humidity and higher (Deery 1941). Prolonged exposure

to relative humidities above 80 percent may cause these salts to migrate to the surface, become damp, and drip. Wood impregnated with conventional fire retardants should not be applied where it will be subjected to such exposure.

Strength.—Some of the chemicals used in the fire-retardant formulations have a marked effect on the strength properties of wood. Combinations specified in the standard formulations minimize any weakening effect of individual chemicals. Tests (unpublished) on closely matched pine specimens treated by current fire-retardant methods showed that modulus of elasticity values were decreased by 8 percent and modulus of rupture values by 10 to 14 percent, as compared to untreated controls. The greatest decrease—32 percent—was in the work-to-maximum load values, a measure of resistance to impact loading not generally considered in structural design, but important for energy absorption. In these tests, the test material was conditioned at the same relative humidity as the controls; it therefore had a slightly higher moisture content and volume and a slightly lower density. There is no direct evidence that wood treated with fire-retardant chemicals will undergo further deterioration on aging under normal exposure conditions.

Percival and Suddarth (1971) found that trusses made from southern pine lumber treated with fire retardants, and assembled with metal plate connectors or nail-glued plywood plates, had slightly lower ultimate strength than trusses made from untreated controls.

The National Lumber Manufacturers Association (National design specification for stress-grade lumber and its fastenings, AIA file 19-B-1, 1962) reduces allowable unit stresses by 10 percent compared to untreated wood. Based on a summary of available test data, Gerhards (1970) concluded that observed reductions in bending strength of fire-retardant-treated wood are consistent with the 10-percent reduction in design stresses recommended for fire-retardant-treated wood.

Machinability.—Wood treated with fire-retardant salts has a dulling effect on conventional cutting tools. Tungsten-carbide knives and saws are recommended for machining large volumes of fire-retardant-treated wood.

Gluability.—For doors and decorative panels, fire-retardant-treated wood can be bonded quite successfully with conventional adhesives. However, for structural assemblies such as glued trusses and beams, present glues and gluing techniques do not generally give as good bonds with treated as with untreated wood. Bonds adequate for interior structural members laminated from treated southern pine can be obtained by lightly surfacing the wood and then bonding it with a specially formulated resorcinol adhesive cured at slightly elevated temperature (Selbo 1965; Schaeffer 1966, 1967, 1969).

Paintability.—The fire-retardant treatment of wood generally has not interfered with the adhesion of paints for interior use except at high equilibrium moisture contents. Preferably, the moisture content of treated

wood should be 12 percent or less at the time of painting. Prolonged exposure to high relative humidity may cause salt crystals to appear on the surface of paint coatings over wood having high salt retentions. Natural finishes generally are not practical for wood treated with fire retardants; the chemicals frequently cause darkening and irregular staining.

Use and acceptance.—Consumption of wood impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals has greatly increased in recent years. The production was 4.7 million cu. ft. in 1967 (Gill and Phelps 1968), more than 10 times the amount produced in 1957, and an increase of 32 percent over 1966. Much credit for the expanded use must be given to the wood-preserving industry, which has worked closely with the insurance and code authorities to gain this acceptance. Fire-retardant-treated wood has become recognized, listed, and labelled as a standard product by organizations such as the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. The wood-preserving industry has been active in performance evaluation, and in developing the standards and process controls upon which this recognition is based.

Retardant-treated wood is used for frames of wood fire doors, cores for decorative paneling in areas requiring low flammability, and for interior trim products. New uses include treated pine studs in combination with gypsum board facings for nonloadbearing partitions (Degenkolb 1965), and treated roof framing and decking in certain types of noncombustible buildings. Some codes permit a 50-percent increase in floor area when treated structural members are used in combustible construction. Fire-retardant-treated wood is also accepted by some codes for construction for exhibition areas, warehouses, and educational and institutional buildings formerly limited to noncombustible materials.

FIRE-RETARDANT COATINGS

Fire retardance for southern pine wood in existing constructions can be obtained by the application of fire-retardant coatings. The degree of protection depends upon the composition, amount, and thoroughness of the application, and the severity of the fire exposure.

Many of the coatings that limit flame spread owe their effectiveness to water soluble compounds such as ammonium phosphate, borax, and sodium silicate. Oil-base fire-retardant paints, depending on zinc borate, antimony trioxide, and chlorinated paraffin, and elastomers to give them fire retardance, are also available.

In addition to these fire-retardant chemicals, many of the fire-retardant coatings have **intumescent** characteristics; the coating foams and expands when exposed to fire, thus insulating and protecting the wood surfaces from thermal decomposition. This intumescent characteristic is obtained by combining certain carbonates, vinyl acetates, starches, acid phosphates, amine aldehydes, tung, or isano oils as a part of the paint formulation.

Flame-spread, heat, and smoke indices, as determined on Douglas-fir plywood panels in the USDA Forest Products Laboratory 8-foot tunnel

furnace for 19 fire-retardant paints, were reported by Eickner and Peters (1963).

To be effective, these fire-retardant paints must be applied in fairly thick films. The recommended coverages are usually 125 to 175 sq. ft. per gallon. This is about three times the amount of paint normally applied. Thus, although the per-gallon cost of fire-retardant paints is only slightly higher, the larger amounts required and the labor to apply the additional coats increase the cost much above that for ordinary decorative paint. Difficulty in brushing out adds further to labor costs.

Properly applied, many of the current commercial fire-retardant paints intumesce, insulate, and protect wood surfaces during moderate fire exposure and have low surface flammability. The Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc. (1969) list a number of formulations with index values less than 25; these index values for flame spread, smoke developed, and fuel contribution are measured according to American Society for Testing Materials Standard E-84. Wood coated with these products may be used as interior finish for such critical applications as the lobbies and corridors of assembly and institutional buildings. To be effective, coatings must be of the required thickness throughout the area, and the surface must be maintained; because inspection is difficult, many code authorities approve such coatings reluctantly. Acceptance is often limited to existing constructions where there is little alternative to treatment in place.

The primary use of these paints should be for interior protection. Some are said to resist weathering, but in general they do not have the durability of conventional exterior paints nor do they maintain their fire-retardant properties after weathering. Because the most effective fire-retardant additives are water soluble, it is difficult to formulate coatings that can resist washings and still maintain fire retardance. In fact, many of the fire-retardant paints lose some of their effectiveness on exposure to high humidity conditions; for these, a sealer topcoat often improves durability. A list of suppliers of fire-retarding coatings is available (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1968).

22-3 TREATMENT FOR MODIFICATION OF PROPERTIES^{1 5}

The objective of treatment to modify properties may be dimensional stabilization or improvement of physical and mechanical characteristics. More or less successful have been applications of heat and pressure, impregnation with plastics or chemical reagents, and exposure to radiation. Two excellent reviews of these processes have been published, each with a large number of references (Seborg et al. 1962; Tarkow 1966). Little

⁵ With minor additions and editorial changes, sec. 22-3 is taken from Meyer and Loos (1969) by permission of J. A. Meyer, W. E. Loos, and the Forest Products Research Society.

of this research used southern pine as a substrate, but some review of all processes is desirable to cover the possibilities available.

HEAT-STABILIZED WOOD (*Staybwood*)

In this process kiln-dried lumber is held at 150 to 300° C. for various lengths of time ranging from minutes to hours. In comparison with moisture-related instability of untreated wood, staybwood has **antishrink efficiencies** (ASE's) up to 60 percent

$$\left(\text{ASE} = \frac{\text{swelling of untreated blank} - \text{swelling of treated sample}}{\text{swelling of untreated blank}} \right)$$

However, this dimensional stabilization is accompanied by a serious loss in strength, toughness, and abrasion resistance. (Seborg et al. 1953; Stamm and Seborg 1955; Stamm 1964, p. 317). There is no commercial application for staybwood.

HEAT-STABILIZED COMPRESSED WOOD (*Staypak*)

Pressures of 400 to 4,000 p.s.i. are applied to the wood after it has been heated. Both heat and pressure plasticize wood. At 320° F. and 12-percent moisture content, the maximum plastic yield per increment of pressure occurs at 1,100 p.s.i. Pressures of 1,500 to 2,500 p.s.i. are generally required to yield a specific gravity of 1.3. Highly densified wood must be cooled in the press. Strength properties are increased in direct proportion to the density; impact strength and hardness are substantially increased. Staypak finds limited application for handles and desk legs (Seborg et al. 1962; Stamm 1964, p. 344).

Haygreen and Daniels (1969) have described experiments with 1-inch green loblolly pine sapwood in which platen drying to 1-percent moisture content at 290 to 340° F. is combined with densification to a specific gravity of 0.7 to 1.0. The process calls for heating green sapwood in a platen press until the core temperature reaches 212° F.; the board is then compressed abruptly to the desired thickness and confined in the hot press until an average moisture content of 1 percent is attained. With a platen temperature of 340° F., 65 minutes were required to dry and densify 0.75-inch loblolly pine to 0.5-inch thickness; 110 minutes were required to dry and reduce 1-inch boards to 0.75-inch thickness.

The product has a slightly lower coefficient of shrinkage (i.e., percent dimensional change per percent of moisture content change) across the wood (and is reverse in direction) than normal wood, but in the thickness direction the coefficient is several times as great as normal wood. Thickness springback due to two humidity cycles from 43-percent to 95-percent relative humidity amounts to 1 or 2 percent; a soaking treatment causes 10- to 15-percent springback in thickness accompanied by a slight negative springback in width.

Steeping treatment to a retention of 8 g. of phenolic resin per 100 g.

of dry wood, followed by a several-day storage period prior to pressing, reduced springback from water soaking by about 90 percent.

Densified (but unsteepled) material had 1- to 2-percent lower e.m.c. than normal sapwood. Bending strength and modulus of elasticity were about proportional to density; hardness increased more rapidly with increases in density than did bending strength.

WOOD-PHENOL-FORMALDEHYDE COMPOSITE (*Impreg*)

Green or kiln-dried veneer is impregnated with a water solution of a phenol-formaldehyde prepolymer whose molecules are small enough to penetrate the cell wall along with the water. The prepolymer swells the cell wall up to 25 percent beyond the swelling in water; after curing, the composite has a final volume about equal to that of water-swollen wood (Seborg and Vallier 1954; Stamm 1964, p. 326). Following impregnation in a vacuum or pressure system, the veneer is dried, but the phenol-formaldehyde is not polymerized. The desired thickness is then assembled from layers of veneer and, under heat and pressure, the impregnant is polymerized to yield a cohesive composite. At a loading of 35 percent by weight of the dry wood there is no visible deposition of the polymer in the voids of the wood, and the composite has an antishrink efficiency of 70 to 75 percent.

Impreg is in commercial use, primarily for die models and patterns in the automobile industry.

COMPRESSED WOOD-PHENOL-FORMALDEHYDE COMPOSITE (*Compreg*)

This material is similar to impreg in that the veneer, whether green or dried, is soaked in a water or alcohol solution of low-molecular-weight phenol-formaldehyde and dried at a temperature low enough to prevent precure. A stack of treated veneer sheets is then placed in a press with heated platens and, as the composite material is heated, pressure up to 1,000 p.s.i. is applied to compress the wood and collapse the cell structure (Stamm and Seborg 1955; Stamm 1964, p. 346). The density of the final cured composite approaches that of the cell wall (solid wall substance) with a specific gravity of 1.3 to 1.4. Incorporation of the resin prevents springback in the presence of high relative humidities and imparts high dimensional stability. Optimum stability requires retention of resin solids equal to about 30 percent of dry wood weight. Compreg will absorb less than 1 percent of moisture when immersed in water for 24 hours. Strength (particularly in compression), hardness, and abrasion resistance are all increased, and the composite is quite resistant to decay and termites. Impact strength, however, is impaired by the process.

Many specialty items, knife and cutlery handles in particular, are made from compreg. It is also used for electrical insulators requiring high tensile

strength. Compreg can be precisely machined, and the natural surface finish can be renewed by sanding and buffing because the treatment penetrates throughout the composite.

POLYETHYLENE GLYCOL (PEG)

The polymers of dihydric alcohols are polyethers with an oxygen atom separating the hydrocarbon groups and with reactive hydroxyl groups only on the ends; up to molecular weights of 6,000, they are highly soluble in water (Stamm 1956, 1964, p. 333). Because of the low vapor pressure of the PEG, it remains in the cell walls when the wood is dried; this bulking action prevents the wood from shrinking. According to Stamm (1964, p. 333), as water evaporates and increases the concentration of PEG in the solution, the rate of diffusion into the cell wall increases. This is evident by the swelling of the treated wood as it dries. Green cross sectional disks of southern pine sapwood $1\frac{1}{4}$ inches thick, treated with polyethylene glycol, have bulked sufficiently to prevent checking during air-drying. Treatment consisted of an overnight, or longer, soak in a 30-percent solution of polyethylene glycol-1000, or two surface coats of molten PEG, a day apart. For thicker disks, soak time should be increased in proportion to the square of the thickness. Heartwood requires more soaking time or more coats than sapwood (Stamm 1959b).

Green loblolly pine 5 inches long, 3 inches wide, and $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch thick can be dried in 10 to 40 minutes by immersion in molten polyethylene glycol-1000 at 135° C.; drying time is shorter than in air. Sufficient PEG diffuses into the samples during the immersion to give about 35-percent antishrink efficiency (Stamm 1967).

The PEG-bulked wood feels moist when relative humidity is above 70 percent because of its hygroscopicity, but certain polyurethane finishes tend to reduce this. The treated wood is highly stable to changes in humidity, but in water the PEG is leached out with time. Treatment causes a slight loss in abrasion resistance and bending strength, but the toughness is essentially unaffected when the wood contains about 45-percent PEG. The antishrink efficiency is approximately 80 percent. PEG treatment is used where wood must have dimensional stability to prevent cracking and checking. Valuable art carvings have been preserved in this manner, and PEG treatment has permitted marine archeologists to preserve waterlogged wooden ships brought up from lakes and oceans.

ACETYLATION

Since the cellulose molecule has many reactive hydroxyl groups available for hydrogen bonding attempts have been made to chemically alter its composition.

One of the most successful approaches was by Stamm (1964, p. 329) and Stamm and Seborg (1955) at the USDA Forest Products Laboratory, where they reacted the OH groups with acetic anhydride and pyridine in

the gas phase. The pyridine acts as a swelling agent (Tarkow et al. 1950; Clermont and Bender 1957) for penetration of the cell wall and as a catalyst for the ester formation. Other anhydrides such as crotonic and butyric have been used but did not show any advantage over acetic (Risi and Arseneau 1957ab; Goldstein et al. 1961). Antishrink efficiencies of 70 percent were obtained with an acetyl content of about 25 percent, and this did not change after 4 months at a relative humidity of 97 percent. The external appearance of the acetylated wood is unaltered, although the oven-dry volume is greater than that of untreated wood. Higher acetyl content is required in softwoods than in hardwoods for comparable stabilization. Since the rate of diffusion of a gas into a porous solid is inversely proportional to the square of the thickness, acetylation is usually used on thin stock, such as $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch veneers. Most mechanical properties are improved slightly. Goldstein has extended this process so that lumber 2 x 6 x 48 inches can be acetylated in 8 to 16 hours (Goldstein et al. 1961).

ETHYLENE OXIDE TREATMENT

An attempt has been made, with some success, to modify the cell wall chemical structure by exposing wood to ethylene oxide gas (McMillin 1963). Samples are placed in a pressure chamber, the air is pumped out, the wood is exposed to the catalyst trimethylamine, and ethylene oxide under high pressure is then admitted. Antishrink efficiencies up to 65 percent have been obtained with a weight increase of 11 percent; there was no deposition of polymer in the capillaries. Maple becomes a distinct brown at high treatment levels. Limited mechanical tests indicate no change in strength due to treatment. There is no known commercial application of this process.

CROSSLINKING WITH FORMALDEHYDE

When wood containing about 2 percent of zinc chloride as a catalyst is exposed to paraformaldehyde for 20 minutes at 120° C., bound formaldehyde content reaches approximately 4 percent of the wood weight. The treatment gives an antishrink efficiency of about 85 percent (Tarkow and Stamm 1953; Stamm 1959a, 1964, p. 328). Dry dimensions of the treated wood are the same as those of untreated controls, but the wet swollen treated samples have a smaller volume. This is just the reverse of impreg and is an indication of crosslinking. Unfortunately mechanical properties such as toughness and abrasion resistance are reduced drastically. Other crosslinking reagents and catalysts have been tried (Sadoh et al. 1960), many of which formed no stable crosslinks (Weaver et al. 1960). There is no commercial use of this process at present.

β -PROPIOLACTONE TREATMENT AND CYANOETHYLATION

Goldstein et al. (1959) treated shortleaf pine with β -propiolactone by the full- and empty-cell methods. The lactone was diluted with acetone to prevent excessive swelling and splitting, the wood was loaded with the solution, and the reaction carried out by heating. The extent of the reaction was measured by the gain in weight. About one-third of the weight increase was attributed to self-polymerization of the lactone. Excellent stabilization was observed when the treated wood was exposed in water and in moist atmospheres because the cellulose was kept in the swollen condition by polyester side chains grafted to the cellulose backbone. The compression strength was increased considerably with no decrease in toughness for moderate treatments. Higher lactone treatments, which cause excessive swelling, decrease toughness.

Attack by fungi was decreased as the gain in weight due to treatment was increased. The polyester chains resulting from treatment contain carboxyl end groups which are capable of reacting with copper and zinc salts in solution. These metallic elements are toxic to fungi. When the ρ -propiolactone-treated pine blocks (25 percent weight gain level) were reacted with copper acetate solution, tests showed essentially no decay after weathering.

Cyanoethylation is the process of reacting cellulose with acrylonitrile. Goldstein et al. (1959) used the empty-cell process to place a 5-percent sodium hydroxide catalyst solution in southern yellow pine samples. This was followed by a full-cell impregnation with acrylonitrile and heating to 70 to 100° C. The amount of reacted acrylonitrile was determined by the percent nitrogen in the wood sample. For treated wood exposed to 100-percent relative humidity, the decrease in equilibrium moisture content was linear with the net weight gain until a minimum of 4.5 percent was reached at 30-percent increase in weight. The inability to completely stabilize the wood indicates that certain regions of the wood structure are accessible to water but not to acrylonitrile. A higher equilibrium moisture content was found for β -propiolactone; the acrylonitrile thus reaches more of the cellulosic hydroxyl groups than the lactone. As the substitution of the hydroxyls increases, the impact strength falls off. At a weight gain of 25 percent, the cyanoethylated wood was not attacked by fungi even under weathering conditions.

OZONE GAS-PHASE TREATMENT

This process holds little promise for solid wood treatment because both the cellulose and lignin are degraded. Lantican et al. (1965) and Schuerch (1963a) describe the effect of ozone on small wood samples, ground wood, and chips.

AMMONIUM LIQUID AND VAPOR TREATMENT

Application of this process shows promise as an alternative to steam bending (see chapter 21). Some of the disadvantages of steam bending include recovery of the original shape if exposed to high relative humidity, necessity of holding the part in a form until the wood is set and partially dried, and high breakage. The use of anhydrous ammonia (in the liquid or vapor phase) for bending many woods into much more complicated shapes is now in the development stage (Schuerch 1963b, 1964; Pentoney 1966; Davidson and Baumgardt 1970). Complicated shapes can be formed without clamping because there is no springback. The evacuated wood is exposed to ammonia vapor at a pressure of 150 p.s.i. at room temperature. The time of exposure is determined by the thickness of the wood and its moisture content and ranges from minutes to hours. One-hundred-and-eighty-degree bends have been made with wood 1½ inches thick. Loblolly pine has been used experimentally and is typical of the softwoods in requiring longer exposure to the ammonia vapor than the hardwoods. After treatment the color of the bent wood is much darker and in many cases streaked. The ammonia vapor reacts with some of the wood components to form a liquid which drains from the wood when the pressure is released. This process is not in commercial use at present, but an active research program is underway at the State University College of Forestry in Syracuse, New York.

GAMMA AND BETA IRRADIATION

Since wood is essentially a mixture of high-molecular-weight polymers, the effect of high radiation doses is to depolymerize the cellulose; lignin is more resistant to radiation. Some slight increase in the mechanical properties and a decrease in hygroscopicity were noted with radiation exposures up to 10^6 rads (Kenaga and Cowling 1959). Exposures above this level degraded the cellulose and impaired the mechanical properties; the wood was entirely soluble above 3×10^8 rads exposure (Mater 1957; Siau et al. 1965).

WOOD-VINYL-POLYMER COMPOSITES (WPC) AND OTHER WOOD-PLASTIC COMBINATIONS

Vinyl monomers have been used in recent years to stabilize wood dimensionally and improve its mechanical properties without impairing desirable aesthetic qualities. Unlike deep-colored, phenol-based, thermosetting polymers, the vinyl polymers are clear, colorless, hard thermoplastic materials. Polymerizing the vinyl monomers in the void spaces of the wood does not discolor the wood or alter in any way its eye-appealing nature. The feel of the surface of a wood-vinyl-plastic object is like wood—in textile terminology, it has a good hand.

Vinyl monomers can be polymerized or cured in the wood by radiation

or by heating with free radical catalysts. Kenaga et al. (1962) at Dow Chemical Company did some of the original research with irradiation and have received many patents covering its application. They used solvent-monomer mixtures to swell the wood prior to the irradiation, which fixes it in its expanded shape to achieve high antishrink efficiencies. A comprehensive research program sponsored and supported by the Atomic Energy Commission during the period 1961 to 1968 at West Virginia University used radiation to produce wood-plastic composites. Gamma radiation, usually from a cobalt-60 source, is used for in-depth polymerization in wood, while beta radiation is used for polymerization of surface coatings⁶.

The catalyst-heat system for making wood-plastic was first mentioned in a paper by DuPont on methacrylate resins (Anonymous 1936). This system for polymerizing vinyl monomers in wood was further developed at the State University College of Forestry in Syracuse, N.Y. (Meyer 1965).

Surface densification and coating of veneers, plywood, solid wood, or particleboard with cured polymers was made possible by the development of a continuous belt press by Lam-N-Hard in Ann Arbor, Mich.⁷ The very hard surface of this composite is scratch and mar resistant, and forms a vapor barrier for the unaltered interior wood. Southern pine has been treated on this press and has characteristics similar to other woods; excess natural resin is forced, along with the polymer, deep into the wood. The heat and pressure required for densification make the final product relatively dark in color; with proper conditions most woods can be made to resemble walnut. Of all the wood-plastic processes in use today, the Lam-N-Hard system appears to offer the most promise for volume production of wall panels, table tops, and other large flat wood surfaces.

Comprehensive work on wood-plastic composites using southern pines was carried out at West Virginia University during the past 8 years and is now being continued at the School of Forestry, Louisiana State University. The results from research sponsored by the Atomic Energy Commission have been published and are available from the Superintendent of Documents in Washington, D.C.

Loos et al. (1967) had no difficulty in filling the cell lumens of loblolly pine with a number of vinyl monomers. The process called for an initial vacuum on the wood of 0.3 inch of mercury; the monomer was then admitted to cover the wood without loss of vacuum, and finally 125-p.s.i. hydrostatic pressure was applied for 18 hours. In other work, Loos found that pressure periods as short as 5 hours may be satisfactory.

⁶ Swanholm, C. E., and Spencer, P. Commercialization of prefinishing by electron radiation. Paper presented at Annual Meeting Forest Products Research Society, Vancouver, B.C., Canada. July 2-7, 1967.

⁷ Wahl, B. D. High-density plastic impregnated wood surfaces. Paper presented at annual meeting Forest Products Research Society, Minneapolis, Minn. July 17-22, 1966.

A wide variety of treating cycles were examined by Loos et al. (1967) in an attempt to find one that would give uniform partial loading in loblolly pine. The Lowry process gave relatively uniform partial loadings, but the average overall polymer loading was always high. The Rueping process gave shell-type loading (fig. 22-12).

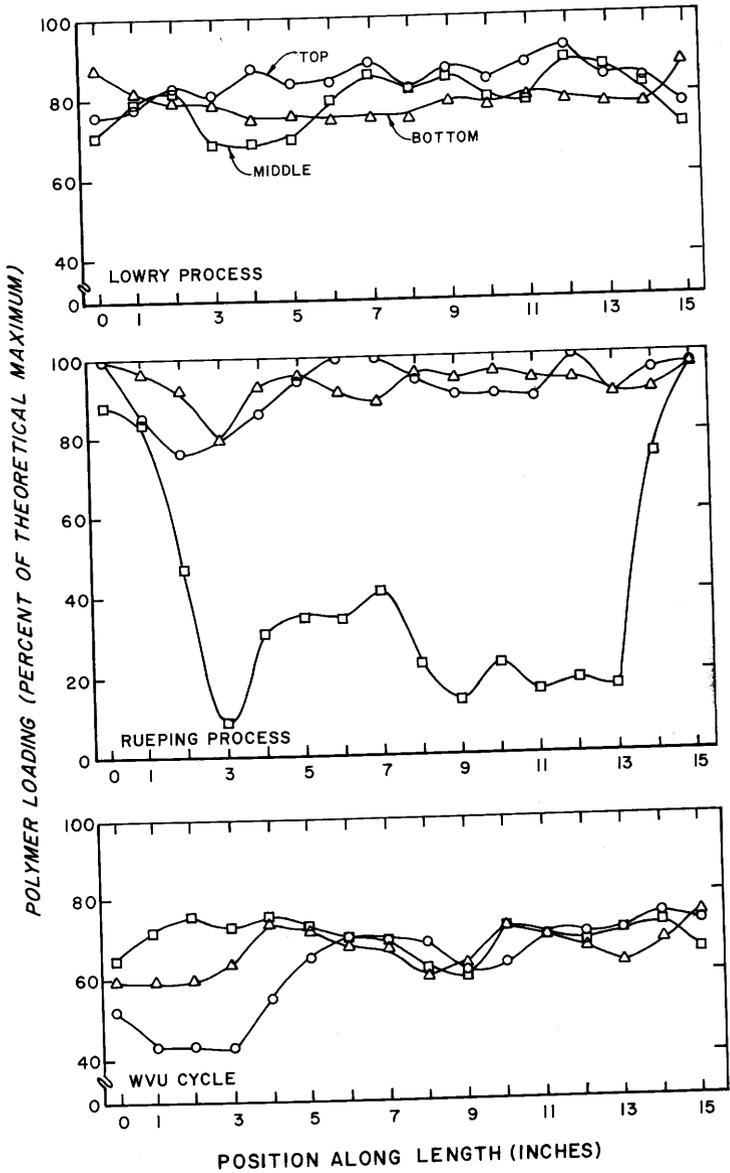


Figure 22-12.—Distribution of polymer in loblolly pine sapwood treated with methyl methacrylate by three processes. Samples were $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches square and $15\frac{1}{4}$ inches long. In the WVU cycle, soak-time objective was 67-percent loading. (Drawing after Loos et al. 1967.)

Good control of the overall polymer loading and distribution was obtained with a procedure called the WVU cycle; the wood was subjected to a partial vacuum, covered with monomer, and then soaked for a specific time depending on the loading desired and the species of wood used. The monomer was then drained away and a super atmospheric pressure of nitrogen applied to distribute the monomer uniformly throughout the wood (fig. 22-12). In a study of the WVU cycle, Loos and Boyle⁸ impregnated four sizes of loblolly pine specimens at two target loading levels (one-third and two-thirds theoretical maximum) with four monomer systems: methyl methacrylate, methyl methacrylate + Phosgard (a fireproofing agent), styrene + acrylonitrile, and ethyl acrylate + acrylonitrile. Size had no significant effect on the ability to attain the desired percent of theoretical maximum loading or uniformity of load. At one-third loading there was a tendency toward concentration of polymer in the outer shell, while at two-thirds loading some surface depletion was observed.

Another approach to uniform partial loading is impregnation of wood with a chemical in its vapor phase. Barnes et al. (1969) treated the four major species of southern pine with vinyl chloride vapors and then polymerized the monomer by radiation. With this technique insufficient quantities of vinyl chloride were absorbed in the wood to change any of the properties measured. In another trial, Barnes et al. (1969) preimpregnated the wood with trimethyl amine catalyst and then vapor-phase impregnated the wood with ethylene oxide; he was able to get approximately 11 percent retention of the chemical in the wood; despite this relatively low retention, antishrink efficiency was comparatively high.

Diffusion is another method by which an impregnant may be put into either the lumen or the cell wall of wood. Choong and Barnes (1969) used two diffusion processes as well as vacuum pressure impregnation to treat the four major species of southern pine with polyethylene glycol, three commercially available phenolic resins, methyl methacrylate, styrene, and styrene-acrylonitrile. The vacuum-pressure treating method was used with all the impregnants; the two diffusion processes (capillary uptake and solvent exchange) were also used on all these impregnants except the phenolic resins. Results of these treatments are shown in table 22-10.

Kent et al. (1967) found that loblolly pine followed the same radiation kinetics as most other species of wood tested, such as sugar maple (*Acer saccharum* Marsh.), birch (*Betula alleghaniensis* Britton), yellow-poplar (*Liriodendron tulipifera* L.), white spruce (*Picea glauca* var. *glauca*), etc., even though it has a high resin content. This is fortunate; eastern white pine (*Pinus strobus* L.), which also has a high resin content, cannot be successfully treated with vinyl acetate to produce a wood-polymer combi-

⁸ Loos, W. E., and Boyle, W. B. Analysis of the WVU treating cycle for uniformity of polymer loading. Unpublished Report U.S. AEC, ORO-2945-10. 1968.

TABLE 22-10.—*Effect of chemicals and impregnation methods on dimensional stability of loblolly pine* (Choong and Barnes 1969)

Impregnation method and chemical or solvent	Polymer loading (Pct. of oven-dry weight of wood)	Average volumetric swelling		Antishrink efficiency oven-dry to water soaked
		(15- to 75-pct. R.H.)	(0- to 100-pct. R.H.)	
----- Percent -----				
POLYETHYLENE GLYCOL				
Capillary uptake.....	62	0.73	1.65	87.8
Solvent exchange.....	63	1.10	1.28	90.5
Vacuum-pressure.....	53	1.07	1.66	87.7
PHENOLIC RESINS				
Vacuum-pressure.....				
Resinox 468.....	78	1.48	2.82	79.2
Compregnite.....	67	2.08	3.11	77.0
Synco 352.....	78	2.09	3.34	75.3
METHYL METHACRYLATE				
Capillary uptake.....	102	4.47	11.44	15.5
Solvent exchange (acetone).....	93	2.37	7.25	46.5
Vacuum-pressure.....	94	3.19	7.98	41.1
STYRENE				
Capillary uptake.....	25	4.76	14.68	8.5
Solvent exchange (ethanol).....	69	2.00	3.57	73.6
Solvent exchange (dioxane).....	49	3.24	6.95	48.7
Vacuum-pressure.....	56	1.93	4.26	68.5
STYRENE-ACRYLONITRILE				
Capillary uptake.....	100	2.97	7.32	45.9
Solvent exchange (ethanol).....	106	2.56	4.03	70.2
Vacuum-pressure.....	98	2.11	3.52	74.0
CONTROL (UNTREATED)				
		4.92	13.54	—

nation. Apparently, certain of the resins present in white pine inhibit polymerization of vinyl acetate so greatly that it will not completely cure with gamma radiation.

Dimensional stability.—Loos (1968) treated loblolly pine with polymethyl methacrylate P(MMA) and a copolymer of poly(styrene + acrylonitrile) P(ST + ACN) by the full-cell process and at one-third and two-thirds of theoretical maximum loading by the WVU treating cycle. The maximum antishrink efficiency of about 20 percent was found to occur at

approximately 50-percent maximum loading when wood was treated with polymethyl methacrylate. About 50-percent antishrink efficiency was obtained with the P(ST + ACN) and was relatively independent of polymer loading.

The higher dimensional stability measured by Loos (1968) in wood-plastic combinations made with P(ST + ACN) than in those made with polymethyl methacrylate is attributed to entry of the former into the cell walls of the wood (Loos and Robinson 1968). In the latter study, loblolly pine wafers were soaked in the two vinyl monomer systems. Swelling of the wafers soaked in the methyl methacrylate monomer was caused primarily by migration from the monomer to the wood. With styrene + acrylonitrile (60:40 solution), swelling was much greater, and virtually all was due to the acrylonitrile, which by itself swells wood much more than can be attributed to the residual water swelling. From his dimension-stability studies Loos (1968) concluded that the dimensional stability results in part from coating action of the polymer in the wood capillaries and in part from a bulking action due to polymer entering the cell wall itself.

The effect of five chemicals on the dimensional stability of loblolly pine impregnated by three different systems is shown in table 22-10. Table 22-11 indicates the antishrink efficiency of specimens of all four major southern pines when treated with four of these chemicals by the method found most effective. Polyethylene glycol gave best results. Treated wood of low specific gravity was more stable than wood of high specific gravity. Stability of treated corewood and treated mature wood did not differ significantly. Additional sampling is required to establish valid species differences (Choong and Barnes 1969).

When the four major southern pines were impregnated with ethylene oxide in vapor phase (Barnes et al. 1969), the treated wood had relatively good dimensional stability for the amount of polymer placed in the wood. The overall average was 42-percent antishrink efficiency for an 11.4-percent polymer loading. This is more than could be obtained if bulking alone had occurred, so some of the hydroxyl groups on the cellulose must have been removed from hygroscopic reactivity.

Strength.—A cooperative research project⁹ was conducted at North Carolina State University and West Virginia University on the production and mechanical testing of radiation produced wood-plastic composites made from four species of wood, including loblolly pine, and with four vinyl monomer systems. The monomer systems were: methyl methacrylate, methyl methacrylate with Phosgard, styrene + acrylonitrile (60:40), and ethyl acrylate + acrylonitrile (80:20). The latter forms a rubbery type

⁹ Atomic Energy Commission. Mechanical properties of radiation-produced wood-plastic combinations. Research Triangle Institute and North Carolina State University. To be published by U.S. Atomic Energy Commission, Division of Isotope Development.

TABLE 22-11.—*Antishrink efficiency¹ of southern pine wood impregnated with selected chemicals by the most favorable process (Choong and Barnes 1969)*

Chemical, and treatment process; age of wood	Pine species				Specific gravity		Group average
	Loblolly	Slash	Longleaf	Shortleaf	Low	High	
	----- Percent -----						
Polyethylene glycol (solvent exchange).....	82.2	75.9	76.2	81.9	81.0	77.1	79.1
Phenolic resin (vacuum- pressure).....	77.4	80.0	76.5	76.4	79.7	75.4	77.6
Methyl methacry- late ² (solvent exchange).....	69.8	68.8	69.3	71.1	72.4	67.1	69.8
Styrene-acryloni- trile (vacuum- pressure).....	69.1	62.7	63.6	71.4	71.0	62.4	66.7
Corewood.....	76.8	70.9	69.4	75.7	75.5	70.9	73.2
Mature wood.....	72.5	72.8	73.4	74.4	76.6	70.1	73.3
Group average....	74.6	71.9	71.4	75.3	76.0	70.7	-----

$$^1 \text{ Antishrink efficiency} = \frac{\text{swelling of untreated blank} - \text{swelling of treated sample}}{\text{swelling of untreated blank}}$$

² Methanol was used as the swelling agent.

polymer when polymerized in bulk. The wood was conditioned to 12-percent moisture content, and the polymer loadings used were one-third, two-thirds, and three-thirds of theoretical maximum loading.

Static bending strength, toughness, and tensile strength perpendicular to the grain were 20 to 50 percent greater in treated than in untreated pine. Strength in compression perpendicular to the grain, hardness, and abrasion resistance were increased several times over untreated pine values.

Adams et al. (1970) have reported on the bending strength of loblolly pine wood impregnated with methyl methacrylate and then subjected to gamma radiation. The 16-inch-long samples were 1 inch square, had six to eight rings per inch, and were about 50-percent latewood. The 21 specimens treated were conditioned to 12-percent moisture content, submerged in the monomer for 12 days at atmospheric pressure, then subjected to a vacuum (26 inches of mercury) for 20 minutes, and finally pressure treated with the monomer for 3 hours at 80 to 90 p.s.i. gauge pressure. Polymerization was accomplished with a cobalt-60 source at a dose rate of 2,000 rads per minute applied for 8 to 30 hours at 40° C. Resulting polymer loading averaged 0.75 grams per gram of oven-dry wood and had a negative linear correlation with wood specific gravity, i.e., highest loadings were obtained in the wood of least density. The treatment did not

affect fiber stress at proportional limit. Modulus of rupture and modulus of elasticity, however, were 27 to 17 percent greater in the treated specimens than in the untreated controls; this improvement was evident for wood of every specific gravity (fig. 22-13) in the range from 0.55 to 0.75 (basis of oven-dry weight and volume at 12-percent moisture content). Modulus of rupture and modulus of elasticity were maximum at a polymer loading of 0.45 gram per gram of oven-dry wood.

Weathering.—Boyle et al.¹⁰ studied the weathering resistance of 4/4, flat-sawn, clear, 6-inch-wide by 12-inch-long, treated southern pine boards.

	<u>Treatment</u>	<u>Loading</u>
Control		
Polymethyl methacrylate (PMMA)	-----	Full
Polymethyl methacrylate	-----	Half
Polymethyl methacrylate plus plasticizer	-----	Full
Polymethyl methacrylate plus plasticizer	-----	Half

When given 4 months of 45° south exposure in Miami, Fla., none of the treatments was satisfactory as a natural finish. The general appearance deteriorated very rapidly in the first 2 months, then tended to level off. The order of general appearance from highest to lowest was full loaded PMMA, full-loaded PMMA + plasticizer, half-loaded PMMA, half-loaded PMMA + plasticizer, and control. The fully loaded PMMA went from an initial rating of 10 (best) to 3, while the controls attained ratings of less than 1. Checks were not a cause of degradation.

¹⁰ Boyle, W., Winston, A., Loos, W. E., and Taylor, G. B. Preparation of wood-plastic combinations using gamma radiation. Unpublished Final Report U.S. AEC, ORO-2045. 1969.

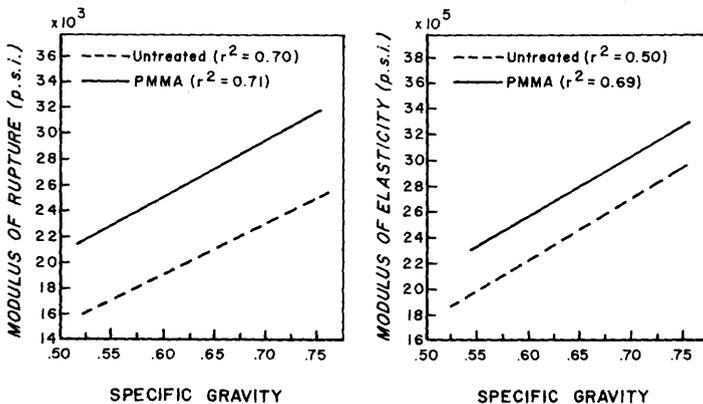


Figure 22-13.—Effect of treatment with methyl methacrylate (PMMA) on relationships between specific gravity of untreated wood (basis of volume at 12-percent moisture content and oven-dry weight), modulus of rupture, and modulus of elasticity of clear loblolly pine wood tested in bending at 12-percent moisture content. All relationships significant at the 0.01 level. (Drawings after Adams et al. 1970.)

High-polymer loading gives the best weatherability, but the composite is still unsatisfactory as a natural finish; if gloss and little discoloration are required, a hard polymer should be used. If protection from checking, cracking, mildew and dirt is more important, then a more plastic polymer should be used.

Biological attack.—Field tests (Boyle et al.¹⁰) indicate that wood-vinyl-polymer composites have good resistance to termite and fungus attack. Additional field evaluations of the composite, with varying amounts of pentachlorophenol dissolved in the monomer, are in process.

FUTURE PROSPECTS

Penetration of the cell wall structure is the key to chemical modification of wood. In an extensive and thought-provoking paper Schuerch (1968) explains that the distribution of any compound in the wood substance will be determined by the hydrogen bonding character of the functional groups on the molecule, "since a high hydrogen bonding capacity is required for any substance to penetrate cellulose or lignin." Penetration depends also upon molecular weight, viscosity, volatility, and other properties.

A question asked by most wood products producers about wood-plastic composites is, "Can I impregiate the finished wood product, complete the polymerization, and simply buff the surface and pack for shipment?" This question can be answered quite simply, but the solution to the problem is far from simple. If the impregnant does not penetrate the cell wall and does not change the moisture content of the wood, then there will be no change in dimension and the finished part can be treated and shipped. On the other hand, if any of the impregnant enters the cell wall, then there will be swelling and a change in dimensions. This swelling is not consistently uniform because of the heterogeneous nature of the wood. Compression wood, earlywood, latewood, heartwood, sapwood, tangential/radial anisotropy, and other physical and chemical properties determine how much impregnant will enter the cell wall. Two parts made from the same tree will seldom react identically to a given treatment.

Extractives can be leached from the solid wood by the liquid monomers and other chemicals during impregnation. This extraction varies with species and treatment. Generally, if treatment removes water from wood at a high equilibrium moisture content or adds water to wood at a low equilibrium moisture content, dimensional changes will take place. Polyethylene glycol exchange is one of the few treatments where water is replaced with little dimensional change.

At the present time, wood-plastic composites containing more than 10-percent polymer probably should be treated in the semifinished form with the final machining done after polymerization.

Vapor phase treatment of wood is obviously the best approach from the standpoint of cell wall penetration. If bulking takes place in the cell walls only, then the void spaces in the wood remain empty. This in turn

means that less chemical is required, the weight of the final composite is much less, and possibly the composite can be nailed like untreated wood. Schuerch (1968) discussed the vapor phase treatment and suggested the use of some new organic compounds, such as butadiene dioxide, propylene oxide, chlorinated poly-p-xylene (which, as coherent film formers, could coat the cells walls and make them less permeable to moisture), methyl borate tin, and lead alkyls, and alkyl hydrides which form solids. Choong and his group at Louisiana State University appear to be making progress in the gas phase treatment of wood with ethylene oxide and vinyl chloride.

The ideal treatment for stabilization would be a gas or vapor that would penetrate the wood structure along the capillaries of the fibers, condense on the cell wall surface, diffuse into the cell wall, swell the cell wall to the same extent saturated water vapor does, and finally polymerize, crosslink, and graft to the cellulose without any byproducts or excessive heat. With such a reagent the wood composite would be only 30 percent heavier than untreated wood, stable, and nailable. Abrasion resistance, hardness, and compressive strength might also be increased. If decay and fire resistant, the wood composite would last indefinitely; it would be an excellent material. Attainment of this ideal wood composite seems remote today, but not impossible.

22-4 LITERATURE CITED

- Anonymous.
1936. Methacrylate resins. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 28: 1160-1163.
- Adams, D. G., Choong, E. T., and McIlhenny, R. C.
1970. Bending strength of radiation-produced southern pine wood-plastic combinations. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(4): 25-28.
- American Wood Preservers' Association.
1948. Report of committee 6-5 —Seasoning practice. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 44: 313-320.
- American Wood-Preservers' Association.
1951. Report of committee P-4, new preservatives. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 47: 32-33.
- American Wood Preservers Association.
1969. AWPA standards (loose leaf and currently revised). *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc., Wash., D.C.*
- Baechler, R. H.
1968. Further thoughts regarding variable performance of creosoted marine piling. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 64: 117-126.
- Baechler, R. H., Blew, J. O., Jr., and Roth, H. G.
1962. Studies on the assay of pressure-treated lumber. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 58: 21-34.
- Baechler, R. H., Gjovik, L. R., and Roth, H. G.
1969. Assay zones for specifying preservative-treated Douglas-fir and southern pine timbers. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 1969: 114-121.
- Baechler, R. H., Gjovik, L. R., and Roth, H. G.
1970a. Marine tests on combination-treated round and sawed specimens. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 66: 249-256.
- Baechler, R. H., Richards, B. R., Richards, A. P., and Roth, H. G.
1970b. Effectiveness and permanence of several preservatives in wood coupons exposed to sea water. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 66: 47-62.

- Baechler, R. H., and Roth, H. G.
1961. Further data on the extraction of creosote from marine piles. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 57: 120-132.
- Baechler, R. H., and Roth, H. G.
1964. The double-diffusion method of treating wood: A review of studies. Forest Prod. J. 14: 171-178.
- Barker, W. J., Stewart, G. H., Nettles, W. C., and Dunkelberg, G. H.
1950. Longer life for fence posts. Clemson Agr. Coll. Ext. Circ. 262 rev., 15 pp.
- Barnes, H. M., Choong, E. T., and McIlhenny, R. C.
1969. An evaluation of several vapor phase chemical treatments for dimensional stabilization of wood. Forest Prod. J. 19(3): 35-39.
- Beckman, C., Menzies, R. J., and Wakeman, C. M.
1957. The biological aspects of attack on creosoted wood by *Limnoria*. Corrosion 13: 32-34.
- Behr, E. A., Sachs, I. B., Kukachka, B. F., and Blew, J. O.
1969. Microscopic examination of pressure-treated wood. Forest Prod. J. 19(8): 31-40.
- Bescher, R. H.
1965. Process for impregnating wood with pentachlorophenol and composition therefor. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,200,003) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Bescher, R. H.
1967. A new class C treatment for wooden shingles and shakes. Fire J. 61(5): 52-56.
- Blew, J. O., Jr.
1955. Study of the preservative treatment of lumber. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 2043, 39 pp.
- Blew, J. O., Jr.
1961. Treating wood by the cold-soaking method. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1445 rev., 20 pp.
- Blew, J. O., Jr.
1967. Comparison of wood preservatives in stake tests (1967 progress report). USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-02, 86 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Blew, J. O., Jr., and Champion, F. J.
1967. Preservative treatment of fence posts and farm timbers. USDA Farmers' Bull. 2049 rev., 33 pp.
- Blew, J. O., Jr., and Davidson, H. L.
1967. Comparison of wood preservatives in Mississippi post study (1967 progress report). USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-01, 24 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Blew, J. O., and Davidson, H. L.
1969. Comparison of wood preservatives in stake tests. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-02, 90 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Blew, J. O., Jr., and Kulp, J. W.
1964. Service records on treated and untreated fence posts. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-068, 52 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Blew, J. O., Jr., and Panek, E.
1964. Problems in the production of clean treated wood. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 60: 89-97.
- Blew, J. O., Panek, E., and Roth, H. G.
1970. Vacuum treatment of lumber. Forest Prod. J. 20(2): 40-47.
- Brenden, J. J.
1970. Determining the utility of a new optical test procedure for measuring smoke from various wood products. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-137, 20 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Browne, F. L.
1958. Preservative treatment of window sash and other millwork. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 919, 12 pp.
- Buckman, S. J.
1936. Creosote distribution in treated wood. Distribution of creosote in the sapwood of freshly creosoted southern yellow pine poles with special references to the bleeding of treated poles. Ind. and Eng. Chem. 28: 474-480.
- Choong, E. T., and Barnes, H. M.
1969. Effect of several wood factors on dimensional stabilization of the southern pines. Forest Prod. J. 19(6): 55-60.

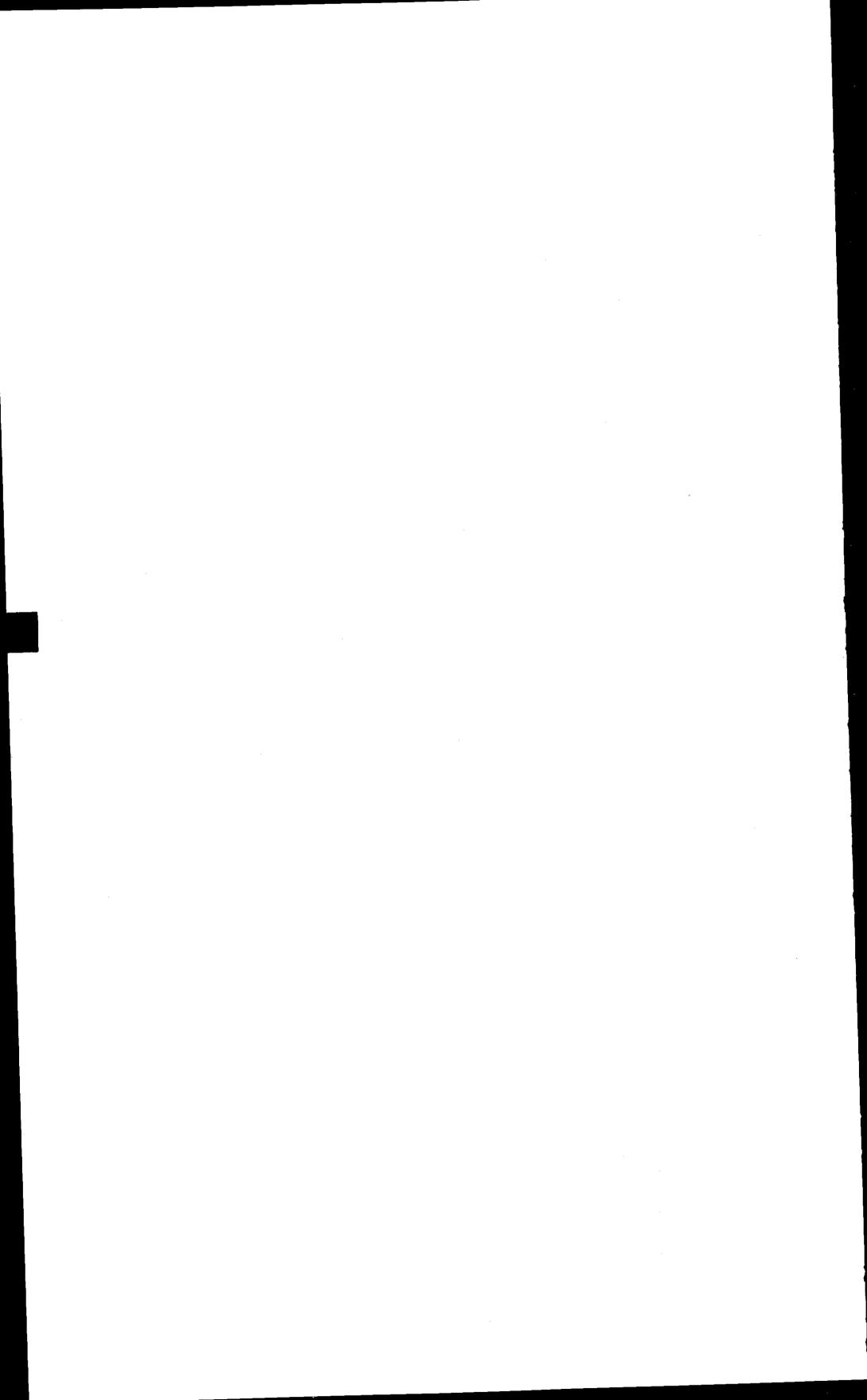
- Clermont, L. P., and Bender, F.
1957. The effect of swelling agents and catalysts on acetylation of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 5: 167-170.
- Colley, R. H.
1969. Treating marine piling for areas of extreme borer hazard. *Wood Preserv.* 47(6): 4-18.
- Colley, R. H., and Amadon, C. H.
1936. Relation of penetration and decay in creosoted southern pine poles. *Bell Telephone Syst. Monogr.* B-937, 17 pp.
- Davidson, R. W., and Baumgardt, W. G.
1970. Plasticizing wood with ammonia—a progress report. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(3): 19-25.
- Deery, H. L.
1941. Equilibrium moisture content of salt-treated wood. *N.Y. State Coll. Forest. Tech. Pub.* 58, 15 pp.
- Degenkolb, J. G.
1965. FRTW framing—24 in. centers. Non-bearing partition passes ASTM 1-hr fire test. *Wood Preserv. News* 42(12): 14-17.
- Downey, E. J.
1937. Open tank creosote treatment of shortleaf and loblolly pine poles. *J. Forest.* 35: 349-352.
- Eickner, H. W., and Peters, C. C.
1963. Surface flammability of various decorative and fire-retardant coatings for wood as evaluated in FPL 8-foot tunnel furnace. *Offic. Dig.* 35: 800-813.
- Eickner, H. W., and Schaffer, E. L.
1967. Fire-retardant effects of individual chemicals on Douglas fir plywood. *Fire Technol.* 3: 90-104.
- Eickner, H. W., Stinson, J. M., and Jordan, J. E.
1969. Ammonium polyphosphate liquid fertilizer as fire retardant for wood. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 65: 260-271.
- Erickson, H. D., Schmitz, H., and Gortner, R. A.
1937. The permeability of woods to liquids and factors affecting the rate of flow. *Minn. Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. Bull.* 122, 42 pp.
- French, D. W., and Christensen, C. M.
1958. Nature and cause of spots on coated insulating boards. *TAPPI* 41: 309-312.
- French, D. W., and Christensen, C. M.
1969. Coated insulating board: influence of coating additives and relative humidity upon spotting by fungi. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(9): 108-110.
- Gerhards, C. C.
1970. Effect of fire-retardant treatment on bending strength of wood. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap.* FPL-145, 8 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Gill, T. C., and Phelps, R. B.
1968. Wood preservation statistics 1967. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 64: 241-261.
- Gjovik, L. R., Roth, H. G., and Lorenz, L. F.
1970. Quantitative differences in preservative penetration and retention in summerwood and springwood of longleaf pine. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 66: 260-262.
- Goldstein, I. S., Dreher, W. A., Jeroski, E. B., and others.
1959. Wood processing—inhibiting against swelling and decay. *Ind. and Eng. Chem* 51: 1313-1317.
- Goldstein, I. S., Jeroski, E. B., Lund, A. E., and others.
1961. Acetylation of wood in lumber thickness. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 363-370.
- Graham, R. D., and Erickson, H. D.
1969. Cross-grooved stickers reduce marking on FRT plywood. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(1): 42-43.
- Hager, B.
1969. Leaching tests on copper-chromium-arsenic preservatives. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(10): 21-26.
- Haygreen, J. G., and Daniels, D. H.
1969. The simultaneous drying and densification of sapwood. *Wood and Fiber* 1: 38-53.
- Hudson, M. S.
1968. New process for longitudinal treatment of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(3): 31-35.

- Hunt, G. M., and Garratt, G. A.
1967. Wood preservation. Ed. 3, 433 pp. N.Y.: McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc.
- Kenaga, D. L., and Cowling, E. B.
1959. Effect of gamma radiation on ponderosa pine: Hygroscopicity, swelling and decay susceptibility. *Forest Prod. J.* 9:112-116.
- Kenaga, D. L., Fennessey, J. P., and Stannett, V. T.
1962. Radiation grafting of vinyl monomers to wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 12: 161-168.
- Kent, J. A., Winston, A., Boyle, W. R., and Taylor, G. B.
1967. Preparation of wood-plastic combinations using gamma radiation to induce polymerization. U.S. At. Energy Comm. AEC Res. and Develop. Rep. ORO-2945-7, 53 pp.
- Knuth, D. T., and McCoy, E.
1962. Bacterial deterioration of pine logs in pond storage. *Forest Prod. J.* 12: 437-442.
- Lance, O. C.
1958. History and development of wood preservation for millwork. *Forest Prod. J.* 8(10): 61A-65A.
- Lantican, D. M., Côté, W. A., Jr., and Skaar, C.
1965. Effect of ozone treatment on the hygroscopicity, permeability and ultrastructure of the heartwood of western red cedar. *Ind. and Eng. Chem. Prod. Res. and Develop.* 4: 66-70.
- Levi, M. P., Coupe, C., and Nicholson, J.
1970. Distribution and effectiveness in *Pinus* sp. of a water-repellent additive for water-borne wood preservatives. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(11): 32-37.
- Lewin, M.
1964. Fire-proofing lignocellulosic structures with bromine and chlorine compositions. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,150,919.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Lindgren, R. M.
1952. Permeability of southern pine as affected by mold and other fungus infection. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 48: 158-168.
- Lindgren, R. M., and Scheffer, T. C.
1939. Effect of blue stain on the penetration of liquids into air-dry southern pine wood. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 35: 325-336.
- Loos, W. E.
1968. Dimensional stability of certain wood-plastic combinations to moisture changes. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 2: 308-312.
- Loos, W. E., and Robinson, G. L.
1968. Rates of swelling of wood in vinyl monomers. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(9): 109-112.
- Loos, W. E., Kent, J. A., and Walters, R. E.
1967. Impregnation of wood with vinyl monomers. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(5): 40-49.
- MacLean, J. D.
1929. Absorption of wood preservatives should be based on the dimensions of the timber. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 25: 129-141.
- McKnight, T. S.
1962. The hygroscopicity of wood treated with fire-retardant compounds. *Can. Dep. Forest Rep.* 190, 12 pp.
- MacLean, J. D.
1960. Preservative treatment of wood by pressure methods. USDA Agr. Handbook 40 rev., 160 pp.
- McMillin, C. W.
1963. Dimensional stabilization with polymerizable vapor of ethylene oxide. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 56-61.
- Mater, J.
1957. Chemical effects of high energy irradiation of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 208-209.
- Merrill, W., and French, D. W.
1963. Evaluating preservative treatment of rigid insulating materials. *TAPPI* 46: 449-452.
- Merrill, W., and French, D. W.
1964. Wood fiberboard studies. I. A nailhead pull-through method to determine the effects of fungi on strength. *TAPPI* 47: 449-451.

- Merrill, W., and French, D. W.
1965. Wood fiberboard studies. III. Effects of common molds on the cell wall structure of the wood fibers. TAPPI 48: 653-654.
- Merrill, W., and French, D. W.
1966a. Decay in wood and wood fiber products by *Sporotrichum pruinosum*. Mycologia 58: 592-596.
- Merrill, W., and French, D. W.
1966b. Wood fiberboard studies. IV. Effects of decay on lateral nail resistance and correlation of lateral nail resistance with nailhead pull-through resistance. TAPPI 49: 33-34.
- Merrill, W., French, D. W., and Hossfeld, R. L.
1965. Wood fiberboard studies. II. Effects of common molds on physical and chemical properties of wood fiberboard. TAPPI 48: 470-474.
- Meyer, F. J., and Spalding, D. H.
1958. Anti-termite and anti-fungal treatment for fiberboard, hardboard and particle board. In Fibreboard and particle board, Vol. 3, Pap. 5.24, 10 pp. Rome: Food and Agr. Organ. of the UN.
- Meyer, J. A.
1965. Treatment of wood-polymer systems using catalyst-heat techniques. Forest Prod. J. 15: 362-364.
- Meyer, J. A., and Loos, W. E.
1969. Processes of, and products from, treating southern pine wood for modification of properties. Forest Prod. J. 19(12): 32-38.
- Panek, E.
1963. Pretreatments for the protection of southern yellow pine poles during air-seasoning. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 59: 189-195.
- Panek, E.
1968. Study of paintability and cleanliness of wood pressure treated with water-repellent preservative. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 64: 178-193.
- Pentoney, R. E.
1966. Liquid ammonia-solvent combinations in wood plasticization: Properties of treated wood. Ind. and Eng. Chem. Prod. Res. and Develop. 5: 105-110.
- Percival, D. H., and Suddarth, S. K.
1971. An investigation of the mechanical characteristics of truss plates on fire-retardant treated wood. Forest Prod. J. 21(1): 17-22.
- Resch, H., and Arganbright, D. G.
1971. Location of pentachlorophenol by electron microprobe and other techniques in cellon treated Douglas-fir. Forest Prod. J. 21(1): 38-43.
- Risi, J., and Arseneau, D. F.
1957a. Dimensional stabilization of wood. Forest Prod. J. 7: 210-213.
- Risi, J., and Arseneau, D. F.
1957b. Dimensional stabilization of wood. II. Crotonylation and Crotylation. Forest Prod. J. 7: 245-246.
- Sadoh, T., Araki, M., and Teruo, G.
1960. Studies on the dimensional stabilization of wood. VIII. Hygroscopicities of formaldehyde-treated wood. J. Jap. Wood Res. Soc. 6(6): 242-246. (Abstr. Forest Prod. J. 11: 328. 1961.)
- St. Clair, W. E.
1969. Leach resistant fire-retardant treated wood for outdoor exposure. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 65: 250-259.
- Schaeffer, R. E.
1966. Preliminary study of the gluing of ammonium salt-treated wood with resorcinol-resin glues. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0112, 9 pp. Forest Prod Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Schaeffer, R. E.
1967. Gluing ammonium-salt-treated southern pine with resorcinol-resin adhesives. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0151, 16 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Schaeffer, R. E.
1969. Cure rate of resorcinol and phenolresorcinol adhesives in joints of ammonium salt-treated southern pine. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-121, 12 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.

- Scheffer, T. C., and Lindgren, R. M.
1940. Stains of sapwood and sapwood products and their control. USDA Tech. Bull. 714, 124 pp.
- Schuerch, C.
1963a. Ozonation of cellulose and wood. *J. Polymer Sci. (Part C. Polymer Symp.)* 2: 79-95.
- Schuerch, C.
1963b. Plasticizing wood with liquid ammonia. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 55(10): 39.
- Schuerch, C.
1964. Principles and potential of wood plasticization. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 377-381.
- Schuerch, C.
1968. Treatment of wood with gaseous reagents. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(3): 47-53.
- Seborg, R. M., Millett, M. A., and Stamm, A. J.
1962. Heat-stabilized compressed wood (Staypak). USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1580 rev., 22 pp.
- Seborg, R. M., Tarkow, H., and Stamm, A. J.
1953. Effect of heat upon the dimensional stabilization of wood. *J. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 3(3): 59-67.
- Seborg, R. M., and Vallier, A. E.
1954. Application of impreg for patterns and die models. *J. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 4: 305-312.
- Selbo, M. L.
1965. Summary of information on gluing of treated wood. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1789, 21 pp.
- Selbo, M. L., Knauss, A. C., and Worth, H. E.
1965. After two decades of service . . . Glulam timbers show good performance. *Forest Prod. J.* 11: 466-472.
- Siau, J. F., Meyer, J. A., and Skaar, C.
1965. A review of developments in dimensional stabilization of wood using radiation techniques. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 162-166
- Stamm, A. J.
1956. Dimensional stabilization of wood with carbowaxes. *Forest Prod. J.* 6: 201-204.
- Stamm, A. J.
1959a. Dimensional stabilization of wood by thermal reactions and formaldehyde cross-linking. *TAPPI* 42: 39-44.
- Stamm, A. J.
1959b. Effect of polyethylene glycol on the dimensional stability of wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 9: 375-381.
- Stamm, A. J.
1964. Wood and cellulose science. 549 pp. N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.
- Stamm, A. J.
1967. Heating dry wood and drying green wood in molten polyethylene glycol. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(9): 91-96.
- Stamm, A. J., and Seborg, R. M.
1955. Forest Products Laboratory resin-treated laminated, compressed wood (Compreg). USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1381, 19 pp.
- Stolley, I.
1958. Some methods of treating particle boards to increase their resistance against fungi and termites. *In* Fibreboard and particle board, Vol. 4, Pap. 5.38, 7 pp. Rome: Food and Agr. Organ. of the UN.
- Syska, A. D.
1969. Exploratory investigation of fire-retardant treatments for particleboard. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0201, 20 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Tarkow, H.
1966. Dimensional stability. *In* *En cycl. Polymer Sci. and Technol.* 5: 98-121.
- Tarkow, H., Stamm, A. J., and Erickson, E. C. O.
1950. Acetylated wood. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1593 rev., 29 pp.
- Tarkow, H., and Stamm, A. J.
1953. Effect of formaldehyde treatments upon the dimensional stabilization of wood. *J. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 3(2): 33-37.
- Teesdale, C. H.
1914. Relative resistance of various conifers to injection with creosote. USDA Bull. 101, 43 pp.

- Teesdale, C. H., and MacLean, J. D.
1918. Tests of the absorption and penetration of coal tar and creosote in longleaf pine. USDA Bull. 607, 43 pp.
- Truax, T. R., and Harrison, C. A.
1929. A new test for measuring the fire resistance of wood. Amer. Soc. Testing Mater, Proc. 29, Part II, pp. 973-988.
- Truax, T. R., and Harrison, C. A.
1930. Measuring fire resistance of wood. Trans. Amer. Soc. Mech. Eng. 52(17): 33-43.
- Truax, T. R., Harrison, C. A., and Baechler, R. H.
1935. Experiments in fireproofing wood—fifth progress report. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 31: 231-245.
- Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.
1968. Wood—fire hazard classification. Card Data Serv. C60. Serial Number UL527.
- Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.
1969. Building materials list. 673 pp. Chicago: Underwriters' Lab., Inc.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1955. Wood handbook. USDA Agr. Handbook 72, 528 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1968. Partial list of suppliers of fire retarding-coatings for wood. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Job 65-034, rev., 2 pp.
- Van Kleeck, A.
1942. Corrosion studies with certain fire-retardant chemicals. Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc. 38: 160-171.
- Verrall, A. F.
1945. The control of fungi in lumber during air-seasoning. Bot. Rev. 11: 398-415.
- Verrall, A. F.
1957. Absorption and penetration of preservatives applied to southern pine wood by dips or short-period soaks. USDA Forest Serv. Southern Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 157, 31 pp.
- Verrall, A. F.
1965. Preserving wood by brush, dip, and short-soak methods. USDA Tech. Bull. 1334, 50 pp.
- Verrall, A. F., and Mook, P. V.
1951. Research on chemical control of fungi in green lumber, 1940-51. USDA Tech. Bull. 1046, 60 pp.
- Verrall, A. F., and Scheffer, T. C.
1969. Preservative treatments for protecting wood boxes. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-106, 8 p. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Weaver, J. W., Nielson, J. F., and Goldstein, I. S.
1960. Dimensional stabilization of wood with aldehydes and related compounds. Forest Prod. J. 10: 306-310.
- Wier, T. P., Jr.
1958. Lumber treatment by the vacuum process. Forest Prod. J. 8: 91-95.
- Wood, L. W., Erickson, E. C. O., and Dohr, A. W.
1960. Strength and related properties of wood poles. Amer. Soc. for Testing Mater. Wood Pole Res. Program Final Rep., 83 pp.



23

Gluing and bonding

CONTENTS

	Page
23-1 GLUES	1154
NONRESIN GLUES	1154
<i>Casein</i>	1155
SYNTHETIC RESIN GLUES	1155
<i>Phenol formaldehyde</i>	1155
<i>Urea formaldehyde</i>	1156
<i>Melamine formaldehyde</i>	1156
<i>Resorcinol formaldehyde</i>	1156
<i>Polyvinyl emulsion</i>	1157
23-2 LAMINATED WOOD	1157
PRODUCTION TRENDS	1157
GLUING UNTREATED WOOD	1158
<i>Glues for interior applications</i>	1158
<i>Glues for exterior applications</i>	1158
GLUING PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD	1159
<i>Durability of preservative-treated laminated</i> <i>beams</i>	1160
GLUING FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD	1161
TECHNIQUES TO ACHIEVE A GOOD GLUEBOND	1161
TECHNIQUE OF FABRICATING LAMINATED TIMBERS	1161
STANDARDS FOR STRUCTURAL GLUED LAMINATED TIMBER	1162
23-3 END-GLUED LUMBER	1163
SCARF JOINTS	1163
FINGERJOINTS	1164
<i>Nonstructural fingerjoints</i>	1165
<i>Structural fingerjoints</i>	1167
<i>Durability, test procedures, and standards</i>	1172
BUTT JOINTS	1174

23-4	PLYWOOD	1175
	SPECIFICATIONS AND TESTING PROCEDURES	1175
	EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR GLUES	1176
	VENEER	1176
	<i>Specific gravity and growth rate</i>	1177
	<i>Earlywood and latewood</i>	1177
	<i>Quality of peel</i>	1180
	<i>Drying method and moisture content</i>	1180
	<i>Mold</i>	1181
	<i>Extractives and pitch</i>	1181
	<i>Chemical treatment</i>	1182
	PHENOL-FORMALDEHYDE-RESIN GLUES	1182
	<i>Resin properties related to bond quality</i>	1182
	<i>Resin formulation related to bond quality</i>	1183
	<i>Extenders</i>	1183
	SPREADING	1183
	<i>Wettability of veneer and surface tension of resin</i>	1184
	<i>Methods and spread rate</i>	1184
	<i>Glueline thickness</i>	1185
	<i>Veneer and mill temperatures</i>	1185
	PRESSING AND CURING	1185
	<i>Assembly time</i>	1186
	<i>Prepressing</i>	1186
	<i>Hot-pressing</i>	1187
	HARDWOOD CORES	1187
	DURABILITY IN EXTERIOR EXPOSURE	1187
	<i>Small specimens</i>	1188
	<i>Large panels</i>	1188
23-5	OVERLAYS	1191
23-6	PARTICLEBOARD	1191
	THE INDUSTRY	1191
	PARTICLE LENGTH-THICKNESS AND	
	DENSIFICATION RATIOS	1196
	<i>Particle length-thickness ratio</i>	1196
	<i>Densification ratio</i>	1197
	STANDARDS AND TEST METHODS	1199
	SUITABILITY OF SOUTHERN PINE FOR	
	PARTICLEBOARD	1199
	SOME FACTORS AFFECTING BOARD	
	PROPERTIES	1199
	<i>Effect of particle geometry, adhesive spread, and</i>	
	<i>wood properties</i>	1200
	<i>Effects of specific surface</i>	1202
	BOARD PROPERTIES VS. GLUE PROPERTIES	1204

	<i>Resin formulation variables vs. board properties</i>	1205
	<i>Resin shrinkage, surface tension, and formaldehyde and methylol content vs. board properties</i>	1205
	<i>pH during resin reaction vs. board properties</i>	1206
	<i>Catlysts vs. board properties</i>	1206
23-7	MOLDED PRODUCTS	1207
23-8	FIBERBOARD	1208
	THE INDUSTRY	1208
	<i>Insulation and low-density fiberboards</i>	1209
	<i>Hardboard</i>	1210
	EFFECTS OF GROSS WOOD CHARACTERISTICS ON FIBERBOARD PROPERTIES	1210
	EFFECTS OF FIBER MORPHOLOGY ON FIBERBOARD PROPERTIES	1210
	STANDARDS AND TEST PROCEDURES	1211
23-9	LITERATURE CITED	1211

Gluing and bonding

Some knowledge of gluing technology is required to manufacture virtually all southern pine solid wood products except lumber and poles; even lumber is sometimes end- or edge-glued and poles are sometimes laminated. In all wood fiber products, strength is dependent on the integrity of fiber-to-fiber bonds. As the southern pine industry more nearly achieves whole-tree utilization, gluing and bonding techniques will become increasingly important; this is so because whole-tree utilization will likely be accomplished through reduction of tops, limbs, bark, roots, and needles into particles or fibers for reconstitution into products.

The text in this chapter is organized to describe published gluing and bonding research specific to major southern pine products. The principal adhesives are briefly described in the initial section. Readers desiring an introduction to the theory of adhesion are referred to Reinhart (1954), Clark et al. (1954, pp. 9-73), Bikerman (1961, pp. 1143), Weiss (1962, pp. 1-45), Voiutskii (1963, pp. 5-178 and 197-233), and Stamm (1964, pp. 488-540).

23-1 GLUES

Adhesives for southern pine are polymers; some are natural, but most are synthetic. Ideally, wood and glue should have similar hygroscopicity and swelling characteristics, coefficients of thermal expansion, and moduli of elasticity. If thus matched, stress concentrations at the glueline are minimized; if hygroscopicity and expansion coefficients differ, the adhesive must be sufficiently plastic to relieve stresses of swelling and shrinking and those built up during cooling of hot-pressed joints. Glues should set with a minimum of volume change. For most purposes they should be thermo-setting. They should be quite viscous at the temperature applied to avoid excessive squeezeout from the joint or absorption into the wood—both of which cause poor joints.

NONRESIN GLUES

Natural glues not much used on southern pine because of their lack of resistance to heat and moisture cycling include animal glue from hides, sinews, and bone marrow of cattle, starch glue made chiefly from the cassava root, blood glue from a slaughter-house byproduct, and soybean glue.

Casein.—Because it cures at room temperature, has a long storage life, is cheap, easily applied, light in color, and moderately resistant to moisture and temperature cycling, casein glue is much used to laminate southern pine for interior use. It is made of protein from soured milk reacted with alkali (Brunauer et al. 1938; Browne and Brouse 1939; USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1939).

Brouse (1956) described two typical formulations that cure at room temperature: (A) 1 part of dry casein, 3.3 parts of water, 0.28 part of hydrated lime, and 0.70 part of sodium silicate; (B) 1 part of dry casein, 2.4 parts of water, 0.5 part of hydrated lime, and 0.12 part of sodium hydroxide. Plywood panels (not southern pine) assembled with these glues showed no delamination during 160 weeks of cycling between 30- and 80-percent relative humidity; when cycled between 30- and 90-percent relative humidity, however, they began to delaminate after 80 weeks.

If required, casein glues can also be formulated for use in a hot press.

SYNTHETIC RESIN GLUES

Synthetic resins are man-made polymers resembling natural resins in physical characteristics, but having special properties that can be tailored to meet specific requirements (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1948). With the exception of polyvinyl emulsions, the synthetic resin glues used in the wood industry—all developed since 1930—are thermosetting and depend on a condensation type of polymerization reaction in which water is eliminated; the water formed in the reaction migrates into the wood. Polyvinyl-acetate emulsions are thermoplastic, entirely prepolymerized, and set by a loss of dispersing solvent. Modern synthetic resin glues are formulated from the corresponding synthetic polymers of the plastics industry. Readers interested in the chemistry of these resins should find the following references useful: Carswell (1947), Delmonte (1947), Mark and Tobolsky (1950), Meyer (1950), Burnett (1954), Schildknecht (1955), Redfarn and Bedford (1960), Sorenson and Campbell (1961), Billmeyer (1957), and Stille (1962).

Phenol formaldehyde.—These dark-colored glues are used, to the virtual exclusion of all other adhesives, in the hot pressing of southern pine plywood. They are relatively cheap and are highly durable in joints subjected to temperature and moisture cycling, and to severe weather exposure.

For use at hot-press temperatures near 275° F., they are manufactured in an alkaline-catalyzed, resin-forming condensation reaction of formaldehyde with phenol or phenol-cresol mixtures. Southern pine plywood plants usually purchase a partially prepolymerized resin (containing the catalyst) in solution in water.

Acid catalyzed resins formulated to set at temperatures as low as 75° F. are also available, but with certain of such resins there is a possibility that the acid catalyst may damage the wood. Phenol-formaldehyde glue is also available as a partially prepolymerized powder ready for dispersion in

water or water-alcohol mixtures. For certain applications where bleed-through of glue must be avoided, e.g., in the attachment of very thin hardwood veneers, or for convenience, it is possible to obtain phenol-formaldehyde resin impregnated into a thin tissue paper; this dry sheet, which is inserted between surfaces to be joined in a hot press, replaces the wet glueline.

Urea formaldehyde.—In the southern pine industry, the light-colored urea resins are primarily used to make hot-pressed, interior grades of particleboard. Formulations designed to set at room temperature (70° F.) are used in some nonstructural laminated products and in some end- and edge-glued products. Urea-formaldehyde glues may also be cured rapidly and easily by radio frequency energy. Because of their light color, low cost, and ability to cure quickly at temperatures below 260° F., urea-formaldehyde glues are much used for interior applications; they should not be used, however, where the product will undergo severe temperature and moisture cycling or exterior service. Urea-formaldehyde glue joints resist cycling and weathering poorly in comparison with those made with phenol-formaldehyde glues (Brouse 1939; USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1956; Blomquist and Olson 1957).

Urea-formaldehyde resins are made in a condensation reaction. The resins are partially prepolymerized and are available in aqueous solution, with a separate acid catalyst to be added just before use; they are also available in powdered form, including the catalyst, to be mixed with water for use. As is the case with phenol-formaldehyde glues, urea-formaldehyde glues can be extended with wheat flour or other extender to reduce glueline cost.

Melamine formaldehyde.—These light-colored glues are more weather resistant than urea-formaldehyde glues (Brouse 1939, 1957); in plywood their resistance to weather is approximately equivalent to that of phenol-formaldehyde or resorcinol-formaldehyde glues. The melamine glues are substantially more expensive than urea-formaldehyde glues, and require curing at 240° F. or higher for most applications.

Resorcinol formaldehyde.—Assemblies made with the dark-colored resorcinol glues are extremely resistant to delamination when exposed to temperature and humidity cycling. Their resistance to weathering and ability to cure at a temperature of 70° F. or slightly above cause resorcinol-formaldehyde glues to be much used in southern pine laminated products designed for exterior exposure. They are, however, several times more costly than phenol-formaldehyde glues. To reduce glue cost, resorcinol formaldehyde and phenol formaldehyde can be copolymerized together to produce phenol-resorcinol resin glues.

In phenol-formaldehyde resins, condensation of the phenol and formaldehyde is usually complete with all formaldehyde reacted during resin manufacture. Resorcinol-formaldehyde resins are only partly reacted, however, and the additional required formaldehyde is added just prior to use as paraformaldehyde hardener or curing agent.

Polyvinyl emulsion.—Because these white glues set rapidly, need no heating in the pot, have a long working life, cure at room temperature, are cheap, and form colorless gluelines, they are much used in place of animal glue in certain furniture joints.

Uses for polyvinyl-acetate emulsion glues are limited because they are thermoplastic; that is, they undergo repeated liquefaction and solidification as temperature is increased and decreased. Hence, at high temperature they tend to soften and yield when continuously stressed. They also soften and yield at high moisture content. Moreover, these glues have little resistance to weathering. Under normal indoor temperature and humidity conditions, however, dowelled or mortised joints assembled with polyvinyl-acetate glues give good service.

The newest class of modified vinyl emulsions—said to have some cross-linking properties—have intermediate weather resistance, outlasting polyvinyl-acetate emulsions but inferior to phenol-formaldehyde and resorcinol-formaldehyde glues. Gluelines in laminated beams assembled with modified vinyl glues cured at room temperature failed in 2 to 3 years of exposure in Ottawa, Canada climate (Canada Department of Fisheries and Forestry 1970).

23-2 LAMINATED WOOD ¹

The wood laminating industry produces thick lumber and timbers by gluing together boards, usually more than 1/2-inch in thickness. Freas (1953) and Selbo and Knauss (1954) traced the growth of the industry and the research that accompanied its early development in this country; they noted that laminated, straight and curved structural beams of southern pine have been manufactured in the United States since the mid-1930's and that use of these products has been steadily increasing.

In 1958, the Census of Manufacturers reported that about 48 million bd. ft. of lumber of all species was used for glued laminated timbers; by 1968, three times this volume (148 million bd. ft.) was converted to laminated timbers valued at more than \$39 million. These figures do not include glued laminated lumber used in combination with sawn lumber for manufactured components, nor do they include laminated decking (Sampson 1970).

PRODUCTION TRENDS

While accurate statistics on the southern pine laminators' share of the total market for glued laminated timber are not available, Sampson (1970) estimated that the volume of southern pine lumber used for laminated arches, beams, and timber decking doubled between 1961 and 1964; in 1969 volume was over 2 1/2 times that in 1961. In 1969, about 30 percent

¹The text under this heading is expanded from Blomquist (1969) by permission of R. F. Blomquist and the Forest Products Research Society.

of this volume was used in church construction, 30 percent in industrial and commercial construction, 13 percent in school buildings, 12 percent in community buildings, and the remaining 15 percent in residential and other construction. He also noted that there is a possibility of developing a major market in laminated wood transmission towers.

GLUING UNTREATED WOOD

According to the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955), wood of the 10 southern pines is moderately easy to glue; that is, it glues well with different adhesives under a moderately wide range of gluing conditions. This rating is based on wood failure in gluelines of natural non-resin glues (Truax 1929). Among 40 softwoods and hardwoods tested, southern pine ranked between 10 and 20 when the species were arranged in order of glueline quality. In later, unpublished studies by W. Z. Olson and R. F. Blomquist, in which synthetic resin glues were used, southern pine was similarly rated.

In tests of southern pine lumber glued with urea-formaldehyde glue and cured at room temperature, Eickner (1942) reported dry block shear strengths of 1,719 p.s.i. with 97 percent wood failure; with casein glue he observed a shear strength of 1,950 p.s.i. and 86 percent wood failure. These results were comparable to those recorded by Truax (1929) and Olson and Blomquist.

Glues for interior applications.—Because it takes a substantial amount of time to lay up and clamp a large laminated beam, adhesives for structural laminated timbers must tolerate a long assembly time; moreover, due to the size and heat conductivity properties of large structural beams, glues for such beams must generally be cured at room temperature.

Of the two major, room-temperature-setting, interior, structural glues (urea formaldehyde and casein), casein will tolerate the longer assembly time. Primarily for this reason, but also because of their low cost, water-resistant casein glues are the principal adhesives used to laminate southern pine structural beams for interior use. On southern pine, the casein glues are normally spread at about 60 to 90 pounds per M sq. ft. of single glueline when single spread and cured at ambient shop temperature. The spread should be 75 to 110 pounds when glue is applied to both mating surfaces; such double spreading is the usual industrial practice.

For the foregoing reasons, and because of their limited durability at elevated temperatures, urea-formaldehyde glues are not used in the United States for interior laminated structural timbers. They are, however, much used for nonstructural, interior, small, laminated or edge-glued southern pine products that can be spread and layed up with a minimum of delay in assembly time and cured quickly with radio frequency or conventional heat energy. Melamine-formaldehyde glues are also used for this purpose.

Glues for exterior applications.—Since straight phenol-formaldehyde

glues are substantially cheaper than resorcinol-formaldehyde glues, some efforts have been made to use them in the lamination of southern pine; because of the higher cure temperature required by these glues and slow heat transfer to gluelines in large members, however, they are today little used by themselves to make heavy timbers. Currently, resorcinol and blends of phenol and resorcinol glues are used on virtually all structural glued laminated wood designed for exterior exposure.

In early work, heating of the resorcinol and phenol-resorcinol gluelines to 110° and 140° F. respectively was considered necessary to achieve a high resistance to delamination in high-density southern pine. Although resorcinol and phenol-resorcinol glues cured at normal room temperatures usually gave good joint strengths and high percentages of wood failure in dry block shear tests, resistance to delamination from moisture changes and shrinkage stresses usually was considerably higher when some heat curing was used.²

In current practice, however, southern pine is commonly laminated with resorcinol and phenol-resorcinol glues without heating above a minimum ambient temperature of 70° F. This change in practice is attributable to better glues and improved control over the gluing process. The glues are spread at about 50 to 75 pounds per M sq. ft. of single glueline when conventional double spreading (on both mating surfaces) is used.

Some years ago in Texas, southern pine 2 by 4 studs were laminated from 1 by 4's on a commercial basis; the studs were glued with acid-catalyzed phenol-formaldehyde and phenol-resorcinol-formaldehyde glues cured in clamp carriers in a chamber heated to 115° to 120° F. for a minimum of 3 hours (Musselwhite 1953). Discontinuance of the operation was probably attributable more to the price and supply situation for 1 by 4's and 2 by 4's rather than to any inadequacy of the glueline.

GLUING PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD

Use of laminated southern pine in exterior exposure may cause decay of the wood as well as delamination at the glueline. It is therefore necessary to protect the wood with suitable preservative treatment either before or after gluing. Since a clean, flat wood surface is required to obtain a good glue joint, it is necessary to resurface treated wood before it is glued.

Oilborne preservatives, such as creosote or pentachlorophenol, do not cause significant gluing problems in southern pine if the oil does not bleed appreciably when lumber is surfaced after treatment (Freas and Selbo 1954; Selbo 1961). Any oil present on the wood surface should be drained and wiped off cleanly before glue application. As preservative-treated wood

² Selbo, M. L. Durability of glue joints in beams laminated of high-density longleaf pine. Unpublished file report. USDA Forest Products Laboratory, Madison, Wis. 1949.

is designed for exterior exposure, glues used are principally resorcinol or phenol resorcinol.

Southern pine lumber treated with waterborne preservatives can also be satisfactorily laminated with resorcinol and phenol-resorcinol glues; the wood must be redried after treatment, however, before resurfacing and gluing. Since some preservatives appear to retard curing of some glues, it is generally considered desirable to use a somewhat higher cure temperature in gluing treated than untreated wood. Selbo (1965) has summarized information on gluing of treated wood, including experience with southern pine.

Henry and Gardner (1954) also studied the gluing of preservative-treated southern pine lumber with resorcinol-type glues. Preservatives included both oilborne and waterborne. Tests were limited to accelerated vacuum-pressure soaking and drying cycles. They reported that wood treated with nine of the tested preservative systems could be glued satisfactorily when the resorcinol and phenol-resorcinol glues were cured at 150° F. glueline temperatures for 2 hours. With some treatments, such as ammoniacal copper arsenite and acid cupric chromate, curing at 150° F. for a longer period was necessary to achieve adequate bonding. Others have reported similar results.

Durability of preservative-treated laminated beams.—Hanna (1955) reported on southern pine crossarms for utility poles, laminated with phenol-resorcinol glues and treated with various preservatives including creosote and pentachlorophenol. Performance, evaluated from outdoor exposure in New Jersey and Colorado, was promising.

The most convincing demonstration of the permanence of glued joints in laminated southern pine is obtained from actual service. Selbo (1967) and Selbo et al. (1965), summarizing 20 years of service experience, cited good performance of shortleaf pine laminated stringers in two railroad trestles. On one in Texas, stringers were glued with phenol-resorcinol resin, cured at 180° F., and pressure treated after gluing with distillate creosote; in the other at Alexandria, Va., laminates pressure treated with creosote-coal tar are still giving good service more than 20 years after installation. Sections from both sets of timbers had been tested initially in block shear tests and cyclic delamination and showed good quality joints. Sections were also exposed outdoors in Madison, Wis. During service in the trestles, very little delamination has been observed, although checking of the wood has sometimes been a problem.

In another installation, a number of laminated stringers of southern pine were glued from lumber that had been treated with a fluor-chrome-arsenate-phenol process (FCAP). These were installed in a bridge in Florida in 1949. Some additional stringers were glued with creosote-treated pine, and some were glued from untreated pine and then treated with the FCAP process. The bridge was rebuilt in 1956 and some of the stringers reused in another open-deck trestle in Florida.

GLUING FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD

Southern pine lumber can also be treated with fire-retardant salt solutions, redried, resurfaced, and then glued. It is desirable to assemble such laminations with resorcinol or phenol-resorcinol glues in order to provide resistance to heat. Laboratory tests and experience have shown that typical ammonium salt fire-retardant systems do reduce the quality of bonds made with these glues. The exact mechanism is not completely understood, but there are probably some side reactions between the ammonium ions and the resorcinol resin (Selbo 1965; Schaeffer 1966, 1967). The percentages of wood failure in block shear tests are often considerably more erratic and lower than with untreated wood, and resistance to delamination in cyclic vacuum-pressure delamination tests is considerably lower. The use of higher curing temperatures in laminating such treated woods is only partially effective, and special resorcinol-type resin systems have been proposed. Because the effects of preservatives and fire retardants on gluing are due primarily to the chemicals involved, they apply equally to other species as well as to southern pine.

TECHNIQUES TO ACHIEVE A GOOD GLUEBOND

Good gluebonds result from close control of many factors, including moisture content of the wood, preparation of the surface, glue selection, mixing and spreading, assembly technique, pressure application, and temperature and time of cure. Adherends must mate with the adhesive. Because of surface irregularities and warp in lumber to be laminated, a substantial amount of pressure is required to accomplish the desired mating of surfaces. For 1- and 2-inch southern pine lumber, experience indicates that a specific pressure of about 100 to 200 p.s.i. is required (Freas and Selbo 1954).

Since research has shown that most beams glue-laminated from southern pine eventually come to equilibrium at a moisture content close to 9 percent (Hann et al. 1970), it is reasonable to adjust lumber moisture content and water content in the gluespread so that the finished beam contains about 9-percent moisture content. Such precautions should minimize unnecessary strains on gluelines caused by shrinkage of the laminae and insure good dimensional stability and performance.

Glue, regardless of formulation, should be spread only on a clean lumber surface. Best bond quality is obtained if the laminae are planed with sharp knives just prior to glue application.

TECHNIQUE OF FABRICATING LAMINATED TIMBERS

It is beyond the scope of this text to describe fabrication procedures; the interested reader should find the comprehensive work by Freas and Selbo (1954) useful. Steps in fabrication include organization of laminae, spreading, layup, curing under pressure, and finishing.

The introduction of nondestructive testing techniques to evaluate the strength of individual laminae has led to several publications describing systems to position southern pine laminae efficiently in beams (Koch 1964ab, 1967ac, 1971; Koch and Bohannon 1965; Koch and Woodson 1968; Bohannon and Moody 1969; Moody and Bohannon 1970). It is likely that the industry will, to some degree, adopt the principle of placing laminae having the highest moduli of elasticity in the outer, most highly stressed region of each beam.

Techniques for applying glue to laminae with roll spreaders are simple and well developed. For structural laminated beams, double spreading of glue on both mating surfaces is the usual practice because of the long assembly periods required to lay up big beams. Application of glue to both mating surfaces permits longer assembly times—both open and closed, but particularly closed—than application of glue to only one surface.

As an alternative to the roll-spreading technique, Webb (1970) reported that a thixotropic phenol-resorcinol glue of high viscosity could be advantageously extruded in a ribbon pattern on southern pine laminae. Advantages claimed for the ribbon spread—which was accomplished by pumping glue through orifices as the lumber passed below—included cleanliness of operation, accurate control of spread rate, little waste of glue, and little solvent evaporation; by this system glue is spread only on one surface.

Following glue application and beam layup, pressure is uniformly applied for a time appropriate for both glue and press temperature. Most heavy laminated beams and arches are pressed several hours (or overnight) in massive clamps temporarily arranged to manufacture only a few of each structure.

Descriptions of presses utilizing the stored-heat principle to laminate small beams and decking have been provided by Marra (1956) and Malarkey (1963). Mann (1954), Syme (1960), and Anonymous (1962) reviewed fast-cycling batch equipment designed to edge-glue and laminate with radio frequency heating, and Carruthers (1965) described a continuous laminating machine for beams that uses radio frequency energy to cure the gluelines. Miller and Cole (1957), Clark (1959), Carruthers (1963), and Miller and George (1965) have reviewed gluing problems associated with the use of radio frequency energy to cure gluelines.

STANDARDS FOR STRUCTURAL GLUE LAMINATED TIMBER

U.S. Commercial Standard CS 253-63 for structural glued laminated timber is a voluntary standard originated by the industry; it—or its current revision—is available from U.S. Superintendent of Documents, Washington, D.C.

AITC 117-71, standard specifications for structural glued laminated

timber of Douglas-fir, western larch, southern pine, and California redwood, is available from the American Institute of Timber Construction, Englewood, Colo. From time to time this standard, also, is revised.

23-3 END-GLUED LUMBER ¹

Well-made edge-glued or face-to-face-glued laminated joints in southern pine have been proven equal in strength to solid wood. Glued end joints equal in strength to solid wood, however, have not yet been developed.

End-jointing is important to the southern pine industry since virtually all long laminated beams are comprised of end-glued lumber. Also, because long southern pine millwork and structural lumber has more value to builders than short, improvement of end-glued joints is a major objective of manufacturers.

Mainly, end-glued joints in lumber take two forms: scarf joints and fingerjoints; butt joints have generally not provided sufficient strength for commercial use.

SCARF JOINTS

Glued joints carefully made by overlapping smoothly machined bevelled ends of boards, i.e., scarf joints, are the strongest end joints in common use. Their strength, both absolute and as a fraction of the strength of solid wood, is negatively correlated with the angle of scarf—i.e., the lower slope, the better the joint; for this reason, structural scarf joints are usually bevelled on a slope of 1/8 or flatter.

Richards and Goodrick (1959) provided data on strength of 1/6, 1/9, 1/12, and 1/15 scarf joints in southern pine of a variety of densities. Urea-formaldehyde and resorcinol-formaldehyde glues were used to make the joints; glue was cured at room temperature. Absolute joint strength increased only slightly with increases in wood specific gravity, but increased markedly as slope of scarf was decreased (fig. 23-1). Joint strengths, expressed as a percentage of matched solid wood strengths, were related to wood specific gravity (basis of oven-dry weight and volume) as follows:

Slope of scarf	Wood specific gravity		
	0.47	0.55	0.62
	----- Percent -----		
1/6 ----	56	54	52
1/9 ----	73	68	64
1/12 ----	81	72	67
1/15 ----	87	81	77

Tensile strength of the solid wood controls increased with increased specific gravity as shown in figure 23-1.

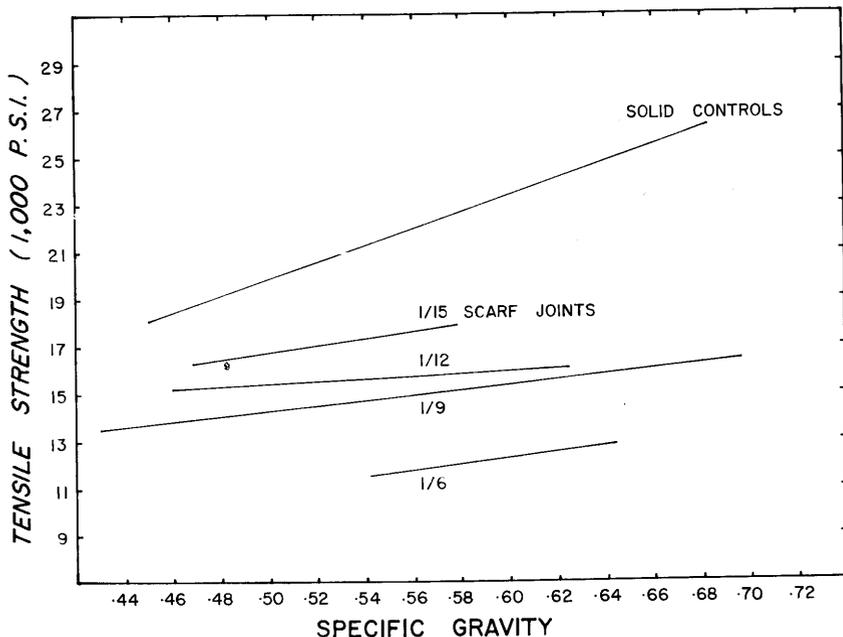


Figure 23-1.—Relationship between tensile strength, at 8.5-percent moisture content, and specific gravity (basis of oven-dry weight and volume) in scarf-jointed southern pine. Top line shows strength of solid wood controls with no joints. (Drawing after Richards and Goodrick 1959.)

Fengel and Kumar (1970) have provided electron micrographs illustrating the penetration of phenol-formaldehyde glue into scarf joints in Scotch pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.). They observed that the glue did not penetrate very deeply, but generally the adhesion between glue and cell wall was very good; they concluded that the glue grafted onto the inner layer of the cell wall. Locally poor adhesion between glue and cell wall appeared to occur where the warty layer (fig. 5-9) adhered poorly to the S_3 layer; the explanation for this lack of adhesion was not entirely clear.

From tests on a number of softwoods (not including southern pine) Marion et al. (1958) concluded that the real problem in obtaining very high strength ratios in scarfed end joints is the strength reduction caused by contact between earlywood and latewood, and the difficulty in transmitting stresses between these two cell types. Research specific to southern pine (Hse 1968) indicates that adequate latewood-to-latewood bonds are the most difficult to achieve.

FINGERJOINTS

A $\frac{1}{12}$ scarf joint in 2-inch lumber calls for an overlap of 24 inches—a footage loss of 12.5 percent if boards average 16 feet in length; moreover, scarf joints are difficult to align and press on a production basis. The footage loss inherent in scarf joints can be substantially reduced by ma-

chining scarfs of about the same slope but in folded multiples to form a fingerjoint (fig. 23-2). Fingerjoints also help keep short pieces aligned as they are rapidly assembled into endless lumber. For high-strength joints, fingertips should have feathered ends and should match perfectly with seats, but such closely matching joints are difficult to machine. Manufacturing problems are substantially lessened, but joint strength is reduced if fingertips and seats are blunt (Selbo 1963). For this reason two major types of fingerjointed lumber have evolved: nonstructural for use in millwork, and structural for use in high-strength products.

Nonstructural fingerjoints.—Numerous designs of fingerjoints are used in the manufacture of pine millwork, but in general they resemble that shown in figure 23-2. Tip thickness commonly measures $\frac{1}{32}$ -inch or more, finger length may be approximately 1 inch, and slope is generally steeper than $\frac{1}{12}$.

In general, the millwork manufacturer desires short joint length to conserve wood and a fingertip thickness that can be cut without undue cutter maintenance. Tip and seat must make a closed butt joint on both top and bottom surfaces so that the resulting straight, even, inconspicuous joint will not detract from surface appearance. On wide, long, heavy lumber it is particularly difficult to fabricate joints that show no openings when assembled. To minimize cutterhead investment and setup time, the pattern selected should be applicable to a range of lumber thicknesses. Oberg (1961) described some of the considerations involved in the selection of a fingerjoint pattern.

In millwork plants, joints are usually cut by conveying the lumber—one

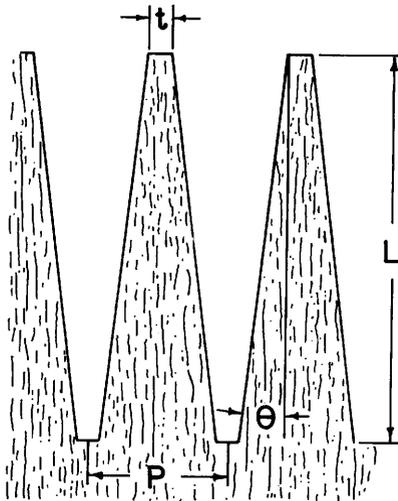


Figure 23-2.—Nomenclature for geometry of fingerjoints. P is pitch, t is tip thickness, L is finger length, and tangent θ is the slope. (Drawing after Selbo 1963.)

piece at a time—past a rotating cutterhead so that the fingers are cut parallel to board faces. A formed roll applicator (or a spray injector) then coats the fingers with 60 to 80 pounds of glue per M sq. ft. of glueline.

In most plants, the glued joint—assembled under end pressure—locks together sufficiently to permit immediate offbearing and stacking so that glue curing is completed at room temperature in the stack. In some plants, however, glue joints made with thermosetting resin glues are cured by application of radio frequency energy as the joint is made. Syme (1960) has provided a description of lumber end-gluing operations in such a millwork plant.

In millwork plants, pieces to be fingerjointed are commonly 2 inches or less in thickness, 12 inches or less in width, and not less than 6 inches long. Completely conveyORIZED equipment commonly processes 60 pieces per minute; from this it can be computed that production (with no lost time) approaches 3,600 bd. ft. per hour if lumber to be jointed averages 1 inch thick, 6 inches wide, and 2 feet long. Because fingerjointed stock is run from previously planed lumber, finished thickness is less than the usual standard, e.g., 4/4 fingerjointed boards commonly measure only $1\frac{1}{16}$ -inch instead of the standard $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch thickness.

Principal glues used, listed in order of increasing water resistance, are polyvinyl acetate and copolymers, urea formaldehyde, and mixtures of melamine-formaldehyde resins with urea-formaldehyde resins. None of these glues are sufficiently waterproof to permit use in products given extended unprotected exterior exposure. Melamine-urea resins require heat for curing—usually supplied by radio frequency energy. Still in the experimental stage is the use of gap-filling adhesives in southern pine fingerjoints. Schaeffer (1970) found that by pretreating southern pine with resorcinol solution and heating mating surfaces or using hot-melt adhesives on untreated cool surfaces, joints comparable in strength to commercial fingerjoints could be made even though the fingers were warped and loose fitting; glues evaluated included three epoxy formulations and one polyurethane hot-melt adhesive. These experimental adhesive formulations were used to improve performance in gap filling, rather than to achieve a high level of durability.

Appearance rather than strength is the governing factor in the manufacture of fingerjointed millwork. Virtually all is made in clear grades. When cutting common and shop grades of lumber into clears for fingerjointing, 30 to 45 percent of the wood is commonly wasted as trim.

The advent of factory-finished millwork in which joints are hidden, stimulated production and consumer acceptance of fingerjointed wood. According to one producer, the prefinished moulding market in 1970 totaled \$100 million in the United States and represented 25 percent of the total moulding footage produced.

Recently, the development of a process to finish certain millwork items with a vinyl wrap has again increased the demand for nonstructural finger-

jointed wood. Moreover, builders and fabricators in the United States increasingly request millwork cut to precise lengths—a demand that is most easily met with fingerjointed wood.

Structural fingerjoints.—Structural fingerjoints differ from those used in millwork because they must unfailingly have high strength; most must be designed for exterior exposure to fluctuating temperature and moisture conditions. For this reason fingertip thicknesses are the minimum achievable and glues used are commonly resorcinol or phenol-resorcinol types. These glues, which cure slowly at room temperatures, call for rigorous control of the cure cycle to maintain joint quality on a production basis.

Fingerjoint designs for southern pine has been greatly influenced by the work of D. B. Richards and his associates (Richards and Cool 1953; Richards 1958ab, 1962, 1963, 1968; Pincus et al. 1966). This work showed that truncated tips should not be located at or near board surfaces, i.e., the surface scarfs of the finished member should run out in a well-glued feather edge. Thick square tips, wherever located, are damaging to strength; rounded tips and seats yield higher strength ratios than square tips and seats.

Selbo (1963) briefly reviewed the literature on structural fingerjoints; based on his tests of fingerjointed Sitka spruce (*Picea sitchensis* (Bong.) Carr.), Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco), and white oak (*Quercus alba* L.), he observed that with thick tips, strength increased significantly with increase in pitch (distance between tips), but with very thin tips the effect of pitch became practically nil. He found that tensile strength of fingerjoints was negatively correlated with slope of scarfs, but the loss in strength was small as slope was increased from 1/16 to 1/12; a slope of 1/14 appeared most efficient for joint strength. With slope and tip thickness held constant, joint strength generally increased with increase in pitch. Joint strength was positively correlated with effective (sloping) glue joint area. Joints with thin tips were stronger than those with thick tips. The joints were made with resorcinol-resin glues and fabricated under close control.

From his data on Sitka spruce, Selbo (1963) summarized the effect of joint geometry (fig. 23-2) on tensile strength of fingerjoints as follows:

“The stress developed in the net section of a fingerjoint (total section minus area of fingertips) is not greatly dependent on slope of fingers in the range 1/10 to 1/16 but is dependent on sloping joint area or ratio of finger length to pitch (L/P), reaching a maximum for L/P greater than about 4. This maximum stress in Sitka spruce was approximately 17 percent less than the strength of the material (probably due to stress concentrations at the tips). Thus the strength of a fingerjoint is dependent on the area of the net section:

$$A_s = 1 - \frac{t}{P} \quad (23-1)$$

and the strength of the scarf joints in the net section.”

Richards (1963), stimulated by experiments of Strickler (1962), demonstrated that very high joint strengths in southern pine could be obtained with feather-edged fingers and seats having virtually zero tip thickness. He modified previously standardized fingers (Auburn B, fig. 23-3 top) so that the male tips were feather edged (fig. 23-3 middle) and then impressed a steel wedge in the female tip, to achieve a matching seat (fig. 23-3 bottom). Tensile strengths for southern pine joined by this system were as follows:

Density of southern pine wood	Unmodified Auburn B fingers	Modified fingers and seats with feather-edge tips
Medium -----	7,167	13,288
Dense -----	10,744	15,023

----- P.s.i. -----

The joints were in dry wood assembled with urea-formaldehyde glue cured under a top pressure of 150 p.s.i.

The system that Stricker (1962, 1966, 1967, 1970) invented employs fingerjoints of greatly reduced length (0.380 inch) and relies on a heated (500° F.) steel die to diminish male and female tip thickness after the rough outlines of the fingers have been machine cut (fig. 23-4). For

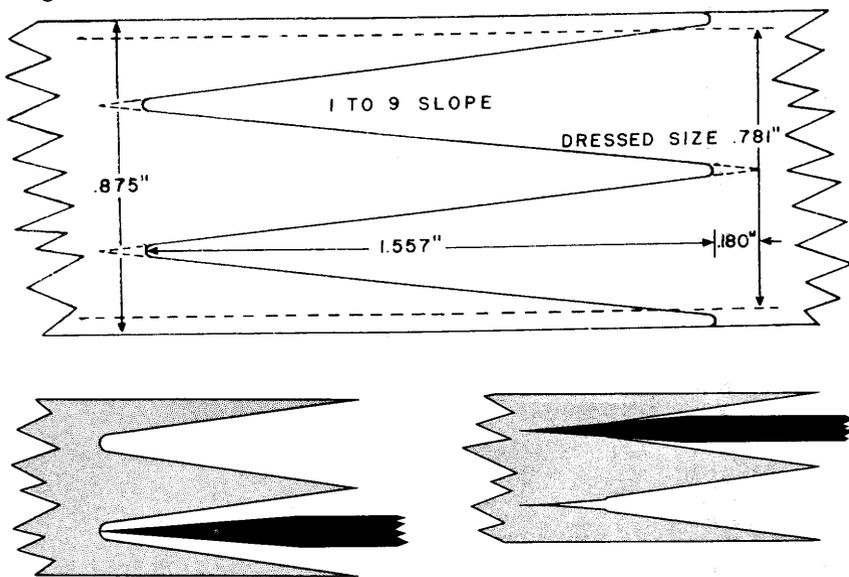


Figure 23-3.—(Top) Solid lines show edge view of Auburn B joint; dotted lines show modification to reduce tip thickness, and lumber thickness as tested. Completed joint measures 1.917 inches long. (Bottom left) Edge view of one member of a fingered scarf joint; the male tips have been machined to a feather edge by a cutterhead. The steel wedge (dark) is in position to wedge open one of the blunt female tips. (Bottom right) Steel wedge in position after cold forming and the resulting feather-edge female tip. (Drawing after Richards 1963.)

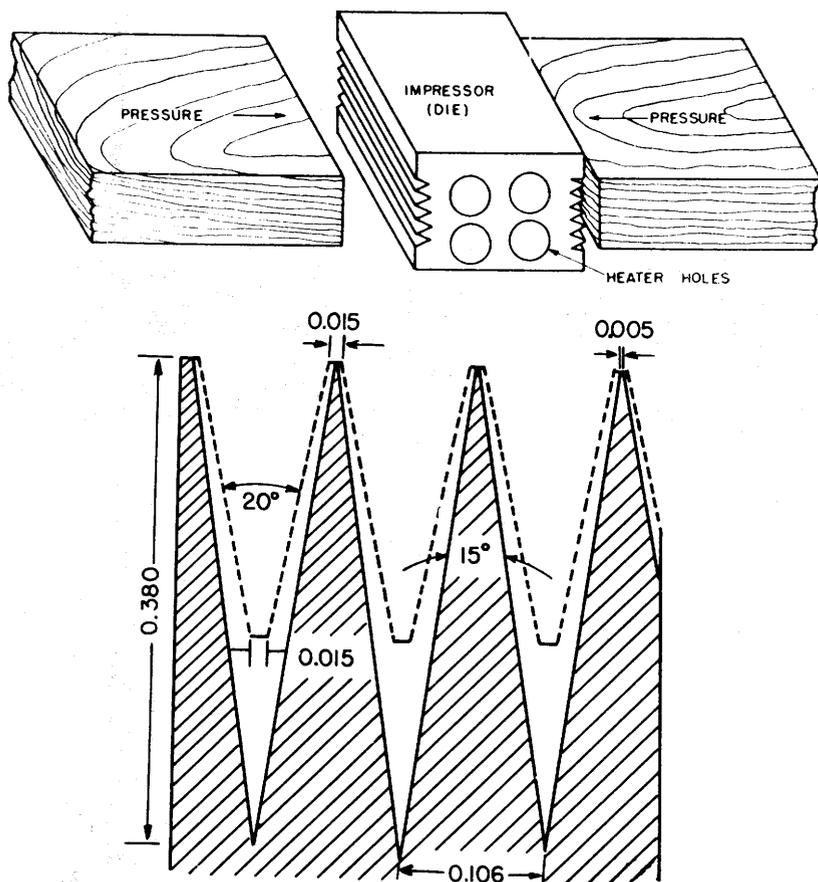
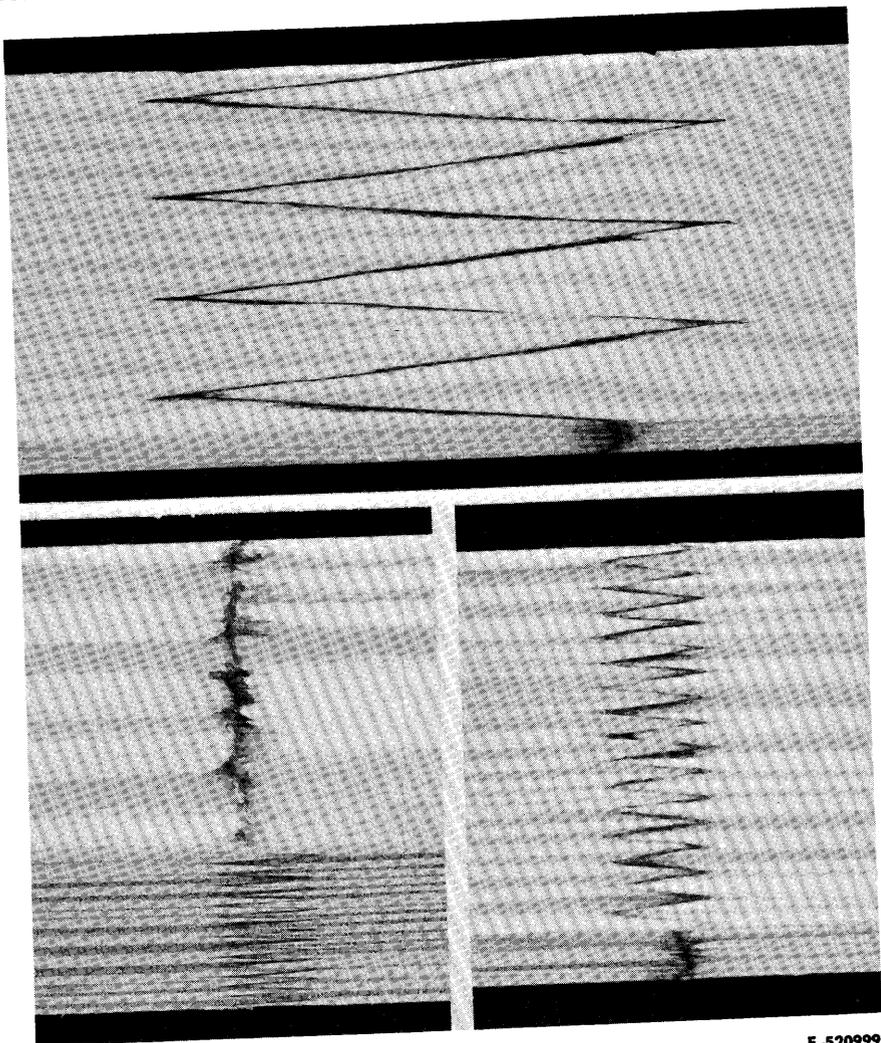


Figure 23-4.—(Top) Technique of forming impression fingerjoints with hot steel die. (Bottom) Dimensions of structural fingerjoint, inches. The dotted lines outline the preshaped machined joint end, and the cross-hatched portion the impressed joint end. (Drawings after Strickler 1967.)

southern pine, a force on the impressor die sufficient to yield about 1,900 p.s.i. pressure on the board cross section is required. Glue is spread subsequent to finger formation, and the heat stored at the surface of the newly formed fingers is used to cure the glueline. No data on joints formed in dry southern pine are published. With dry Douglas-fir, however, Strickler (1967) obtained strengths of about 9,500 p.s.i.

Strickler's process is applicable to green wood as well as dry. Southern pine, under the combined effect of high die temperature and some moisture, softens very quickly, permitting the die to cleave and compress the wood fibers with minimum grain disturbance. The softening effect persists fleetingly during impression, and because moisture migrates rapidly away from the heat source along the wood grain, glue dilution by wood moisture is reduced. Moreover, the combination of heat and pressure densifies the fingers and closes cell lumens, thus reducing excessive glue penetration.



F-520999

Figure 23-5.—(Top) Slice removed from edge of structural, commercial, sawn fingerjoint in 6/4 southern pine. Fingers run parallel to board face, are 2½ inches long, and have tip thickness near zero. (Bottom) 0.38-inch-long impression fingerjoints in southern pine made with the process and dimensions shown in figure 23-4; fingers may be parallel to the face (left) or perpendicular (right).

With Strickler's process (figs. 23-4, 23-5 bottom) 29 fingerjoints were made in green southern pine 2 by 4's with average moisture content of 107 percent. Specific gravity of the 2 by 4's ranged from about 0.38 to 0.52 (basis of green volume and oven-dry weight) with average of about 0.44. When test specimens cut from the 2 by 4's were broken in bending and tension at 15-percent moisture content, modulus of rupture and ultimate tensile strength were as follows (data previously unpublished):

<u>Statistic</u>	<u>MOR</u>	<u>Tensile strength</u>
	----- P.s.i. -----	
Average -----	7,076	6,307
Range -----	4,100—10,000	3,040—8,420
Standard deviation -----	1,379	1,140

Wood failure in the tension specimens averaged 88.4 percent. Many of the failures were in pith-associated wood and not in the joint. High-density pieces bonded to high-density pieces had about 2,100 p.s.i. higher MOR and 1,380 p.s.i. more strength in tension than low-density pieces bonded to low-density pieces. Strengths of bonds between high- and low-density pieces were intermediate. All joints were glued with a resorcinol-formaldehyde resin (fig. 23-5 bottom).

Strickler's process is not without disadvantages. The wet strength of small specimens having impression joints is considerably less than the wet strength of machined joints, having the same geometry, an effect apparently due to surface swelling of the wood fingers densified by die formation. In larger specimens, however, swelling is restrained, and the effect of surface swelling on strength is negligible. Cyclic delamination tests (on species other than southern pine) indicate an acceptable level of durability for impression joints formed in green lumber and assembled with resorcinol-resin glues (Strickler 1970).

A fully machined short fingerjoint similar in appearance to that shown in figure 23-5 (bottom) has been developed and patented (Marian 1968, 1969), and highly mechanized equipment is available that will cut and assemble three to four joints per minute. The joint is 7.5 mm. long with pitch of 2.5 mm. and tip thickness near zero. After the joint is machined by a cutterhead revolving at 6,000 r.p.m., glue is spread and the joint is assembled with a brief end pressure of 1,800 to 2,000 p.s.i. No further pressing is required. Polyvinyl-acetate, urea-formaldehyde, and resorcinol-formaldehyde glues are all used without addition of heat to cure the glueline. The machine will accept pieces up to 12 inches wide and 6 inches thick; minimum acceptable length is 20 inches. The cutup, machining, assembling, and off-bearing equipment cost approximately \$100,000 in 1970. No test data on southern pine end-jointed by the process have been published.

Neither of the short joints (Strickler 1966; Marian 1969) is used by southern pine laminators. At least one producer of southern pine laminated beams, however, has devised a method of cutting, assembling, and curing structural fingerjoints with near zero tip thickness and 7/16-inch pitch; the joint is 2 1/8 inches long (fig. 23-5 top). By use of substantial skill in saw filing and maintenance, the joints are sawn on a production basis. While each joint is assembled under end pressure, a portable hot metal clamp is tightened on the joint; the clamp remains in place when the end pressure is released and the lumber—in a long continuous ribbon—

moves toward the distant cutoff saw where it is cut to length for laminated beams. The portable clamps are then removed and returned to the assembly station. Resorcinol and phenol-resorcinol glues are used.

Structural fingerjoints may be cut so that the fingers are parallel to the face, or they may be perpendicular (fig. 23-5 bottom). Evidence available at this time suggests that the two arrangements can yield bonds of comparable strength. Gluebonds are usually poorest in the outermost fingers, however; members may have reduced strength, therefore, if flexed in such manner that the outermost fingers must carry the highest stresses.

Fingerjoints, more than scarf joints, are weakened by local defects in the wood; strong fingerjoints in southern pine can be consistently manufactured only if wood adjacent to and in the joint is free of knots, cross grain, checks, and pith-associated or juvenile wood.

Moody (1970) evaluated the weakening effect of pith-associated wood on structural fingerjoints commercially fabricated in 2- by 6-inch southern pine lumber selected to meet or exceed the American Institute of Timber Construction (1967) tension lamination grade. The lumber was divided into two classes (fig. 23-6 top), with pith-associated wood (PA) and that with no pith-associated wood (NPA). Specific gravity of the NPA lumber averaged about 0.55 based on oven-dry weight and volume at time of test (13-percent moisture content); the PA lumber averaged about 0.52 in gravity.

Fingers in the joints were 1.11 inches long with 0.03-inch tip thickness and pitch of 0.25 inch. Entire fingerjointed boards and matching solid control boards were tested in tension. Moody's (1970) results are summarized in figure 23-6 (bottom) and as follows:

- Pith-associated material greatly affects the tensile strength of both fingerjointed lumber and lumber without joints.
- For the nonjointed lumber used as controls, the tensile strength of the pith-associated (PA) specimens averaged 34 percent less than that of specimens free of pith-associated material (NPA). About one-half of this difference was attributed to grade and specific gravity effects and the other half to lower strength pith-associated material.
- The average tensile strength of fingerjointed lumber containing PA wood was 22 percent less than that of fingerjointed NPA lumber.
- The tensile strength of fingerjointed NPA lumber averaged 66 percent of the tensile strength of similar control lumber. For the PA lumber, the fingerjointed lumber averaged 79 percent of similar control lumber.
- Fingerjointed lumber consisting of one NPA and one PA board had an average tensile strength about equal to that of fingerjointed lumber made entirely of PA boards.

Durability, test procedures, and standards.—Discussion of the durability of structural fingerjoints and their strength retention under repetitive

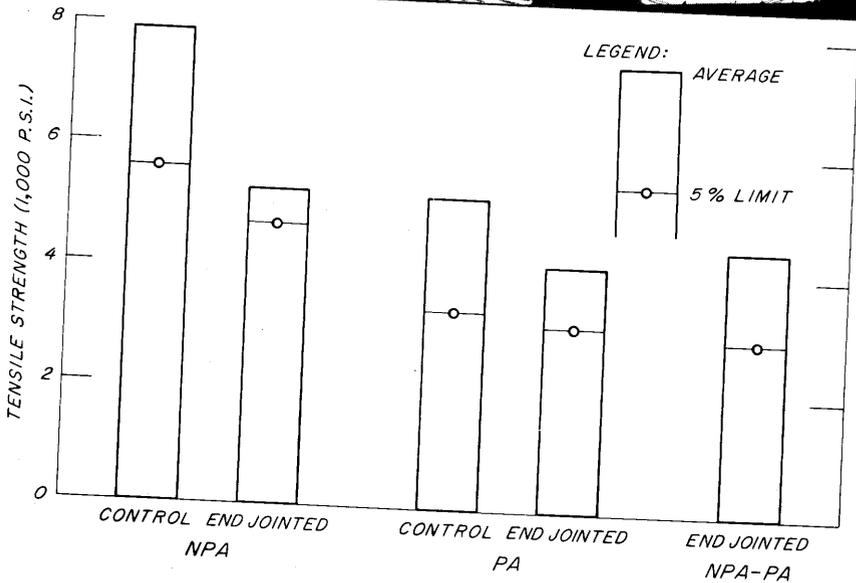
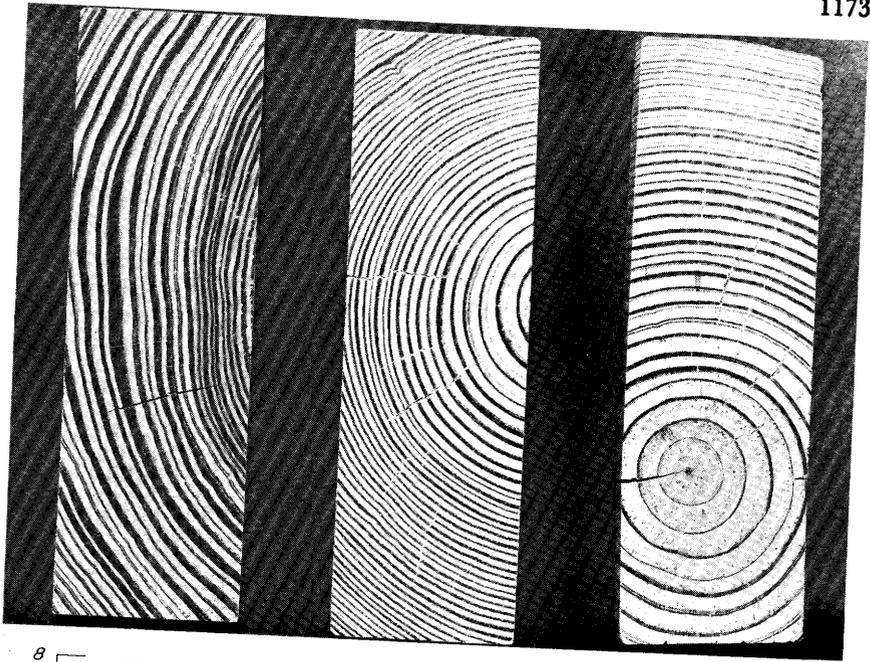


Figure 23-6.—(Top) Examples of end sections from specimens containing a significant amount of pith-associated material (PA) shown on the right and in the center. Non-pith-associated material (NPA) is shown on the left. The PA specimen shown on the right contains the pith and has wide-ringed nondense material over about one-half of the section. The PA specimen in the center has wide-ringed nondense material over the first inch from the pith. All PA specimens contained as much or more nondense pith-associated wood as the one shown in the center. The NPA specimen on the left is narrow-ringed and dense throughout the cross section. (Bottom) Summary of tension tests parallel to grain on southern pine lumber showing averages and 5 percent exclusion limits. (Photo and drawing from Moody 1970.)

M-137074, M-136860

load is beyond the scope of this text. The interested reader, however, should find the following references useful: Dorn and Egner (1961), Egner and Jagfield (1964), Richards (1968), and Bohannon and Kanvik (1969).

Readers interested in methodology for evaluating strength of finger-joints are referred to Markwardt and Youngquist (1956), Richards (1958b), Bolger and Rasmussen (1962), Selbo (1962), Dawe (1964), Bohannon and Selbo (1965), and Strickler et al. (1970).

Standards applicable to glued fingerjoints include: U.S. Department of Commerce (1963), Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (1965), Federal Housing Administration (1969), American Institute of Timber Construction (1969, 1970), and Western Wood Products Association (1969).

BUTT JOINTS

Most simple of all end joints is the butt joint; it requires a minimum of machining (a square end cut), and therefore wastes least wood. The glue in a butt joint is primarily stressed in tension, whereas that in a scarf joint or fingerjoint is primarily stressed in shear. To date, there is no gluing procedure for butt-joining southern pine that approaches the full strength of either adherend or adhesive in tension.

In studies of balsa wood (*Ochroma lagopus* Sw.), a weak wood, Bassett (1960) was generally unable to develop butt-joint strengths higher than 55 percent of the strength of clear wood.

Quirk et al. (1967abc, 1968) reported on extensive studies of transverse bonding of slash pine wood in which carefully machined butt joints in small sections of earlywood and latewood were assembled and tested in tension. Strengths achievable in the butt joints were low, mainly falling in the range from 1,000 to 5,000 p.s.i.; most joints had strengths less than 3,000 p.s.i. Joints were assembled with two forms of an epoxy-resin adhesive. Changing the nature of a basic epoxy resin from a rigid to a ductile form by adding an elastomer resulted in increased strength, efficiency, and quality of bonded joints. Increasing age (and viscosity) of both forms of mixed adhesive significantly reduced joint strength. With a stress-relieving ductile adhesive, joints fabricated from earlywood and from latewood differed significantly in strength; joints in earlywood were stronger. There was no significant correlation between joint strength and average depth of adhesive penetration. A combination of the two materials with the lowest intrinsic tensile strengths (earlywood 8,465 p.s.i. and ductile adhesive 5,900 p.s.i.) produced the strongest joints (4,230 p.s.i.).

In an effort to achieve stronger joints, Schaeffer and Gillespie (1970) later studied butt joints in eastern white pine (*Pinus strobus* L.). By heating and pretreating mating surfaces, they were able to achieve tensile strengths in butt joints with experimental epoxy adhesives that approached the strength of clear eastern white pine wood; however, the toughness of the butt joints under dynamic loading was only about one-third that of the clear wood. Gluelines 15 and 30 mils in thickness gave stronger and

more uniform joints than 5-mil gluelines. In the most generally used pre-treatment, mating smooth-sawn surfaces were dipped for 5 seconds in a 10-percent aqueous solution of resorcinol, dried for 30 minutes, dipped a second time for 5 seconds, and air-dried for 4 hours. Then mating surfaces were exposed for 5 minutes at a distance of 1 inch from a 250-watt infrared lamp; this exposure resulted in wood surface temperatures of about 350° F. The adhesive (modified epoxy resin) was then spread on the hot mating surfaces and the joint was end pressed for 20 hours at 1.3 p.s.i.

Data on southern pine butt joints made by this procedure have not been published.

23-4 PLYWOOD¹

Since events leading to establishment of the southern pine plywood industry have been extensively reported (Anonymous 1963; Fassnacht 1964; Norman 1964ab; Locke³; Orth 1968), they will not be again reviewed here, except to note that early plywood studies of the USDA Forest Products Laboratory, Madison, Wis. (Fleischer and Lutz 1963), played an important part in developing the necessary technology.

The first commercial plant opened in 1963. In 1966 total production of 23 operating plants in the South was 1.3 billion sq. ft. of plywood on a 3/8-inch basis (Sherman 1967). By the end of 1967, 29 plants were operating, with a total capacity of 2.3 billion sq. ft. (Bryan 1968).

In 1968, about 15 percent of the softwood plywood used in the United States was southern pine (Hair and Ulrich 1969, p. 25). This share of the market will likely increase; Guttenberg (1970) predicted that the South's output of plywood will reach 6 billion sq. ft. by the middle 1970's, possibly rising to 8 billion sq. ft. later in the decade. Holley (1969) predicted that by 1975 the South will be supplying 30 percent of the Nation's softwood plywood while maintaining its current proportion of lumber output.

SPECIFICATIONS AND TESTING PROCEDURES

U.S. Product Standard PS 1-66 (U.S. Department of Commerce 1966b) covers southern pine plywood of both interior and exterior types. Procedures for measuring wet shear strength and wood failure in shear specimens—the major test criteria for adequacy of exterior gluelines—are specified in this standard. In brief, exterior southern pine plywood must average 85 percent or more wood failure in gluelines evaluated after the specified wetting cycle.

³ Locke, E. G. Southern pine plywood: Research to reality. Unpublished. 1965.

EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR GLUES

For a number of reasons, one of which is its ready permeability to water, most southern pine plywood is hot pressed with phenol-formaldehyde-resin glues so formulated that the plywood will satisfy the criteria for exterior gluelines as specified by Standard PS 1-66. In understanding this development it is useful to review the work of Blomquist and Olson (1964).

Their principal purpose was to determine whether glues typical of those used by the West Coast Douglas-fir plywood industry could also be used to produce acceptable southern pine plywood. They found that conventional cold-press soybean glue failed to meet acceptable interior-type glue-line requirements by a wide margin. With southern pine, a hot-press, blood-phenol resin glue, and an interior-type phenol resin extended with ligno-cellulosic material widely used on the West Coast, met the requirements for interior-type gluelines; these glues would be logical candidates for interior-type plywood. A hot-press protein blend glue was marginal in quality for joints in interior-type plywood of southern pine. One of the phenol-formaldehyde glues tested was considered suitable, with some modification, for making southern pine exterior plywood.

In short, Blomquist and Olson (1964) concluded that exterior southern pine plywood should be feasible with modified, but conventional, phenol-formaldehyde glues; interior southern pine plywood could be made with some of the better interior-type glues, but the protein glues used at the time in the Douglas-fir industry were not adequate for southern pine.

Weakley and Mehlretter (1965) incorporated dialdehyde starch, a polymeric crosslinking or fortifying agent for proteins, in a low-cost, moderately alkaline, soybean-blood glue for hot pressing interior-type southern pine plywood. Although this fortified glue is a definite improvement over unfortified protein glues for interior applications, it is not commercially used since little interior-grade southern pine plywood is manufactured.

Phenol-formaldehyde, hot-pressed exterior glues have emerged as the dominant adhesives in the southern pine plywood industry. Gluebonds attained with these glues, and their quality as affected by veneers, glue formulations, spread, and pressing and curing techniques are discussed in the following pages. Also discussed are the gluing of hardwood core veneer to southern pine faces and backs, and the durability of southern pine in exterior exposure.

VENEER

From chapters 5 and 7 it is evident that veneer rotary cut from southern pine must show substantial variations in growth rings per inch and specific gravity. These variables, together with roughness of the veneer, its moisture and pitch content, and its degree of surface contamination all affect gluebond quality in southern pine plywood.

Specific gravity and growth rate.—Koch (1965ab) explored the effects of wood specific gravity and rate of tree growth on the properties of exterior plywood made from loblolly pine, together with the interacting effects of tightness of peel, resin content of glue, type of secondary extender, gluespread, and assembly time. Glueline quality, as measured by wood failure in thoroughly soaked shear specimens, was best in veneer of low specific gravity cut from slow-growing trees. Maximum wet and dry shear strengths were obtained by using veneer of high specific gravity, but high specific gravity veneers showed low wood failure and tended to delaminate more rapidly on exterior exposure; tree growth rate was not significantly correlated with either wet or dry shear strength of plywood gluelines (Koch 1965b, 1967b, 1970; Koch and Jenkinson 1965).

Earlywood and latewood.—Southern pine has wider bands of latewood than most other softwood species used for plywood (fig. 25-1). Differences in roughness and other properties between earlywood and latewood veneer surfaces (figs. 23-7, 23-8) thus greatly affect the gluability of southern pine veneers.

From an assumed tracheid model, Hse⁴ derived equations for determining the roughness; with data measured on southern pine veneers, the

⁴ Hse, C.-Y. Characterization of phenol-formaldehyde-resin adhesives as related to effectiveness in gluing southern pine veneer. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-2.23 dated May 1, 1972.

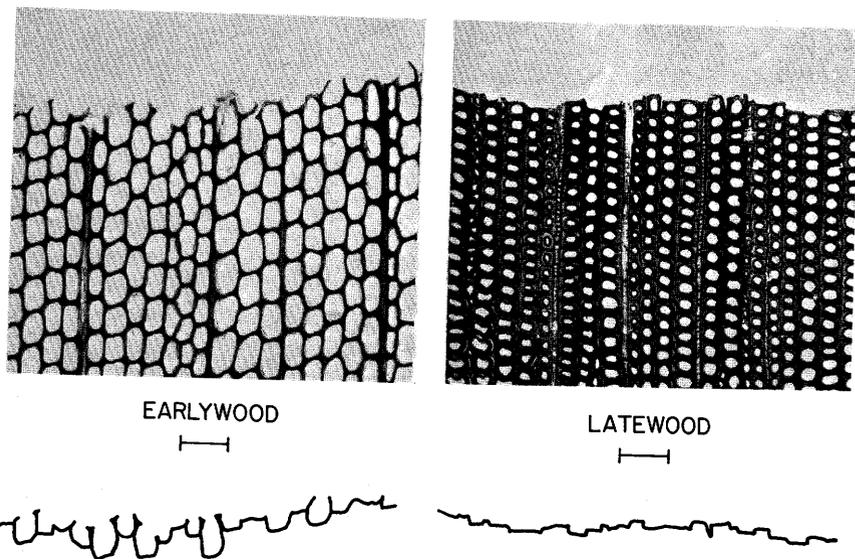


Figure 23-7.—(Top) Transverse sections showing tight side of rotary-cut southern pine veneer. (Bottom) Surface profiles. Scale mark shows 100 μ m. (Photos from Hse⁴.)

F-521000

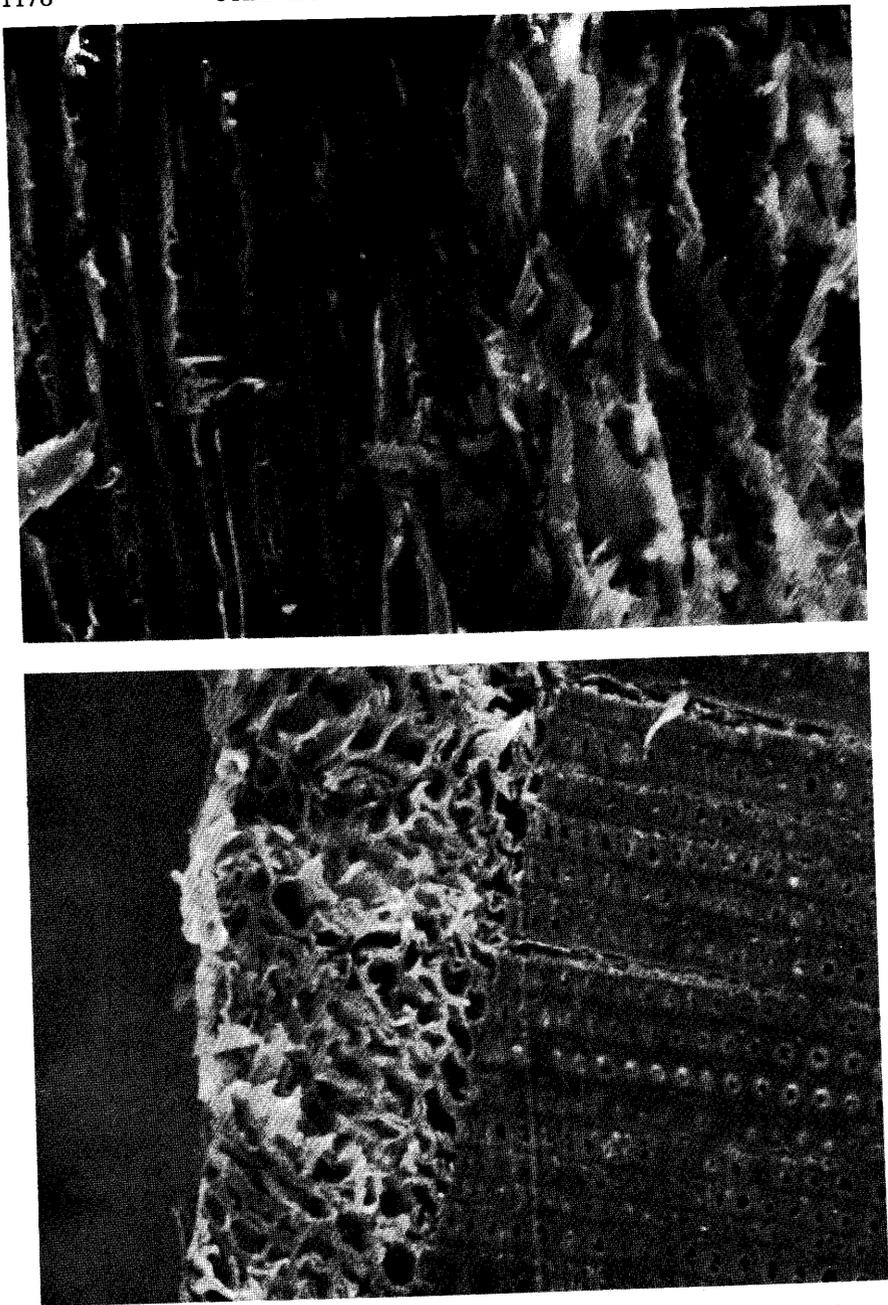


Figure 23-8.—Scanning electron micrographs of southern pine rotary-cut veneer. (Top) Surface, relatively smooth over the latewood tracheids at left; rough earlywood surface at right. 140X. (Bottom) Transverse section, with earlywood veneer surface at left; tracheids at and near the surface are much distorted. 100X. (Photos from Part III of Zicherman, J. B. The localization of coating components within the ultrastructure of wood by use of a micro-incineration technique. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-2.22 dated March 3, 1971.)

equations indicated that the roughness factor of latewood was near unity, whereas that of earlywood was about 2 (fig. 23-7). Roughness factor may be defined as follows:

$$\text{Roughness factor} = \frac{\text{True surface area}}{\text{Apparent surface area}} \quad (23-2)$$

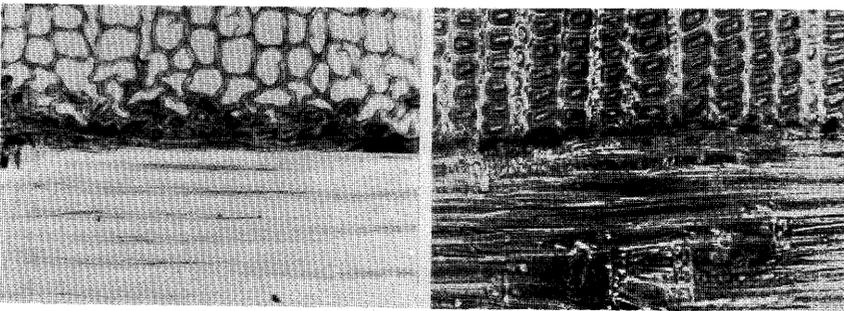
where the true surface area is the total exposed (or daylight) surface including all irregularities, and the apparent surface area is the area of the cut surface projected to the cutting plane.

Hse (1968) also investigated gluebond quality and durability of southern pine earlywood and latewood by studying two-ply, cross-laminated, 1/2-inch-square specimens comprised entirely of earlywood or latewood. He used a commercial exterior phenolic resin.

Gluebond quality, as tested wet and dry in tension, was best with earlywood to earlywood and poorest with latewood to latewood; earlywood to latewood was intermediate. Optimum closed assembly time (glue application to closing of hot press) for latewood to latewood was 0 minutes, while the optimum for earlywood to earlywood was 15 minutes; the range tested was 0 to 120 minutes. When these optima were exceeded by 30 minutes, bond strength and percentage of wood failure decreased 90 percent in latewood-to-latewood bonds but less than 3 percent in earlywood-to-earlywood. Moreover, latewood-to-latewood bonds showed a sharp increase in percentage of delamination (after exterior exposure) with increase in assembly time.

Earlywood cells in the vicinity of the glueline were compressed and impregnated with resin. These cells formed a transition layer between glueline and undeformed wood substrate. The dense, thick-walled latewood showed no such cell deformation, and resin impregnation was confined to the cells immediately adjacent to the glueline (fig. 23-9).

At any given percentage of wood failure, bond strength was proportional to wood density. Percentage of delamination during exterior



F-521001

Figure 23-9.—Photomicrographs of gluelines in southern pine plywood. (Left) Earlywood to earlywood bond. Earlywood cells were deformed near the interface, and resin penetrated deeply. (Right) Latewood to latewood bond. Penetration into latewood was less evident, and cells near the interface were not deformed. (Photos from Hse 1968.)

exposure was not correlated with bond strength or percentage of wood failure.

Quality of peel.—At present, output of southern pine plywood is primarily in the sheathing grades. Sheathing plywood is produced in huge volumes at maximum rates, and from variably dense small logs; as a result, veneer is sometimes excessively rough, its surface uneven, and its thickness variable. Because it is difficult to get a uniform gluespread on such veneer, because its moisture content may be variable, and because uniform pressure distribution on plywood made from it is hard to achieve, rough and uneven veneer makes poorly bonded plywood (Haskell⁵; Freeman 1970). The technique of peeling smooth southern pine veneer of uniform thickness is described in section 19-10.

A greater percentage of wood failure in gluelines may sometimes be obtained with a veneer peeled from unheated logs, and thus with deep lathe checks, than with smoother veneer peeled hot (Koch 1965a); wet and dry shear strength, however, are both highest in plywood made from veneer smoothly peeled from heated logs (Koch 1965b; Koch and Jenkinson 1965). Frequency and depth of lathe checks did not significantly affect the rate of delamination in exterior exposure (Koch 1967b, 1970). Koch's data did suggest, however, that plywood made of dense veneer delaminates more slowly if tight peeled from heated veneer bolts rather than loose peeled from cold bolts. None of the veneer used in Koch's studies was extremely rough, and all was of fairly uniform thickness.

Drying method and moisture content.—With commonly used phenol-formaldehyde glues, optimum moisture content of southern pine veneers to be glued is near 4 percent; if moisture content is excessive, steam formed during hot pressing causes localized blowups when the press is opened. Overdried veneer yields very poor gluebonds as measured by percentage of wood failure in wet shear specimens, as follows:

Reference and veneer moisture content	Wood failure <i>Percent</i>
Bloomquist (1966)	36
Ovendry.....	36
Near 4 percent.....	86
Haskell et al. (1966)	
Ovendry.....	59
Near 4 percent.....	94

Similar results have been observed by others working with southern pine veneers.

Because commercial dryers do not perfectly control veneer surface temperatures throughout veneer passage, hot spots (and overdried veneer) may result from very high dryer temperatures. Fairly low temperatures in the dryer may lessen the amount of overdried veneer. Haskell⁵ noted that

⁵ Haskell, H. H. The triangle: Veneer, adhesives, and production conditions. Unpublished paper presented at Borden Chemical Co. Symposium, Meridian, Miss. Jan. 12-13, 1965.

most consistent joints were obtained when kiln temperature was 350° to 375° F., and that higher temperatures caused excessive flow of pitch and glazed veneer surfaces, which impaired glueline quality.

If the kiln is under good control, however, higher temperatures are practical and time in the dryer can be reduced substantially. Suchsland and Stevens (1968) found that veneers could be safely dried at a dryer temperature of 500° F., if drying was terminated before the veneer reached the temperature of the drying air (fig. 20-27); the gluability of unextracted veneers deteriorated if surface temperatures were allowed to exceed about 400° F. If veneers were solvent extracted prior to drying, however, acceptable joints could be glued even when veneer surface temperatures were allowed to reach 500° F.

From research at Oregon State University, Kozlik⁶ concluded that in the initial stages of drying, southern pine veneer could tolerate even higher kiln temperatures without loss of strength or gluebond quality. His research indicated that, if circulation velocity of the heating medium did not exceed 25 feet per second, initial dryer stages could operate at 800° F. (with steam or air atmosphere); Kozlik further concluded, however, that dryer temperature should not exceed about 350° F. in those stages where veneer moisture content is reduced below the fiber saturation point.

Mold.—Where green core veneers are stored for several days preparatory to drying, molds growing on surfaces to be glued can cause poor gluelines (see sec. 16-9). Haskell et al. (1966) observed that moldy veneer yielded only 63 percent wood failure compared to 97 percent in matched clear southern pine veneer. The obvious solution is elimination of mold by prompt drying of all veneer as it comes from the lathe.

Extractives and pitch.—Gluebonds may be adversely affected if wood surfaces are contaminated with extractives or pitch before glue is spread. When southern pine wood is dried at high temperature, the extractives tend to concentrate on the surface; the effect is more noticeable on thick veneer than on thin. Heavy depositions of extractives may adulterate glue and reduce its cohesive strength. Moreover, extractives may block reaction sites on wood surfaces and prevent wetting by the adhesive. Oxidation of some extractives may increase acidity of wood, promote degradation, and weaken cohesive forces between wood fibers.

In spite of these effects, pitch in southern pine veneers causes relatively few production problems. Haskell et al. (1966) found that pitch-soaked southern pine veneer made slightly poorer gluelines than normal veneer; wood failures in their tests averaged 86 and 90 percent respectively. They attributed the poorer bonds not only to presence of the pitch, but also to the roughness often associated with pitch-soaked veneer.

⁶ Kozlik, C. J. Gluability and strength of Douglas-fir and southern pine rotary-peeled veneer dried in air and steam at temperatures to 800° F. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Progress Report FS-SO-3201-2.26, dated April 23, 1971.

Chemical treatment.—Data on gluability of southern pine veneers treated with preservatives, fire retardants, and stabilizing chemicals is meager. Choong and Attarzadeh (1970) found that dipping green southern pine veneers for 5 minutes in ammonium salts fire retardant, Wolman salts preservative, and polyethelene glycol—or dry veneers for 5 minutes in copper naphthenate and methyl methacrylate—did not seriously diminish their gluability with a phenol-formaldehyde, hot-press glue. A 24-hour soak in the same chemicals, however, caused all treated veneers to fall below the acceptable limit for percent wood failure (85 percent) in plywood.

PHENOL-FORMALDEHYDE-RESIN GLUES

Gluebond quality in southern pine plywood is strongly affected by the properties of the resin, the resin formulation variables, and by the extenders.

Resin properties related to bond quality.—Hse (1971) reported on the relationships between the quality of gluebonds in southern pine plywood and the physical and chemical properties of resins incorporated in the glues. His conclusions, based on experimental plywood panels assembled with 36 glues mixed to incorporate 36 different phenol-formaldehyde resins plus water, furafil, wheat flour, and caustic are summarized as follows.

In the range tested, contact angle (fig. 23-10) between resin and veneer (57° to 105°), heat of resin curing reaction (95 to 235 calories per gram), and glueline thickness (8 to 21 μm .) were linearly and positively correlated with wet shear strength and percentage of wood failure. Resin shrinkage (11 to 21 percent) during cure also was linearly correlated with shear strength and percentage of wood failure, but the relationship was negative, i.e., resins with the most shrinkage yielded glues with the poorest bonds.

Surface tension, time to cure, and pH of resins were in general negatively correlated with wet shear strength and wood failure; the regression relationships were parabolic with maxima.

The most effective bonding occurred when the resin wetted—but did not overpenetrate—the veneer surfaces. For the formulations tested, this condition resulted when the resin had a high contact angle and a surface tension of approximately 68.4 dynes per centimeter.

The optimum gluebonds were from resins with high chemical reactivities. Such resins appeared to produce a high degree of crosslinking when cured and required short cure times.

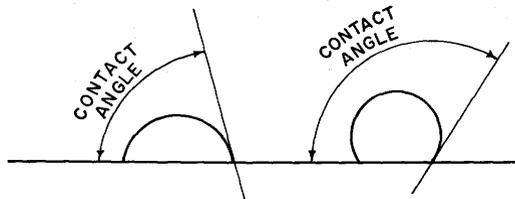


Figure 23-10.—Definition of contact angle between glue droplet and veneer surface. (Drawing after Hse 1971.)

Koch (1965ab, 1967b, 1970) and others have observed that glue-line quality in southern pine plywood—as measured by percentage of wood failure, wet shear strength, and durability in exterior exposure—is improved if percentage of resin solids in the mixed glue is 26 percent rather than 21 percent.

Resin formulation related to bond quality.—Hse⁴ studied bond quality in southern pine plywood by measuring shear strength and percentage wood failure in thoroughly wetted shear specimens, and percentage delamination of duplicate small exposure specimens (all earlywood or all latewood) assembled with 36 phenolic glues. Resins for the glues were factorially prepared with three formulation variables: mole ratio of sodium hydroxide to phenol (0.4, 0.7, and 1.0), level of resin solids content (37, 40, and 43 percent), and mole ratio of formaldehyde to phenol (1.6, 1.9, 2.2, and 2.5)—all replicated.

Gluebond quality decreased substantially with a change of NaOH/phenol ratio from 0.4 to 0.7, but was not significantly affected by a change in ratio from 0.7 to 1.0. On average, bond quality increased as percent solids content increased. Changes in formaldehyde/phenol ratio affected only percentage delamination; the lower ratios yielded glue-lines that delaminated least.

Extenders.—Published evaluations of extenders for phenol-formaldehyde glues are limited in number and not comprehensive in coverage.

Koch (1965ab) studied performance of extenders in glues comprised of water (19.7 to 27.4 percent), furafil primary extender (9.0 to 13.7 percent), soluble blood secondary extender (0 to 1.9 percent), wheat flour secondary extender (0 to 2.6 percent), 50 percent caustic soda solution (2.8 to 4.6 percent), soda ash (1.1 to 1.7 percent), and phenol-formaldehyde resin (52.6 to 64.8 percent). He concluded that percentage of wood failure was highest and gluebonds best when wheat flour only was used as a secondary extender. Wet shear strength was greatest with no secondary extender, but glue extended only with wheat flour made bonds nearly as strong. Extension with blood reduced gluebond quality as measured by wood failure, wet shear strength, and durability in exterior exposure. The glues were spread at 65 and 75 pounds per M sq. ft. of core, equally divided on the two sides of the core. The three-ply southern pine plywood was $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch thick.

Fischer and Benseid (1969) reported acceptable wet shear strengths and percentages of wood failure in southern pine plywood glued with 90-pound spreads of exterior phenolic glues containing 5 percent soluble beef blood. The plywood was glued with no closed assembly time prior to prepress, 4.5 minutes prepress time, and 5.5 minutes in a hot press at 285° F.

SPREADING

The quality of a gluebond is substantially affected by the uniformity with which the glue is spread, the amount spread, the manner in which

it wets the wood, and the temperature of glue and wood at time of spreading.

Wettability of veneer and surface tension of resin.—Hse⁴ judged the wettability of the veneers by measuring contact angles (fig. 23-10) made between southern pine veneers at about 5-percent moisture content and 36 phenol-formaldehyde resins. Resins were factorially prepared by mole ratio of sodium hydroxide to phenol (0.4, 0.7, and 1.0), level of resin solids content in the reaction mixture (37, 40, and 43 percent), and mole ratio of formaldehyde to phenol (1.6, 1.9, 2.2, and 2.5). All resins were mixed with furafil and wheat flour to achieve 26 percent resin solids in the final glue mix.

He found that the mole ratio of sodium hydroxide to phenol was the dominant factor affecting contact angle; mole ratio of formaldehyde to phenol was second in importance. As mole ratios of sodium hydroxide to phenol increased and ratios of formaldehyde to phenol decreased, the contact angle decreased. Contact angle was not related to solids content. Contact angle on earlywood was less than that on latewood, apparently because earlywood surfaces were rougher.

Hse⁴ observed that contact angle (in range 57° to 105°) was positively correlated with gluebond quality. High contact angle of the resin—and low wetting of the veneer—may prevent excess glue penetration, which often causes poor bonds in southern pine plywood.

With the same 36 resins and glues described above, Hse⁴ found that the relationship between surface tension of the resin (not the mixed glue) and bond quality in southern pine plywood was curvilinear. The optimum gluebond was obtained with a resin having a surface tension of 68.4 dynes per centimeter; higher surface tensions caused poor spreading, and lower ones caused excess penetration of the glue. Glues made from resins with high surface tensions tended to form impervious skins; contraction (of the spread glue) accompanying condensation during curing took place inside the skin so that voids were produced and adhesive bonds weakened.

Methods and spread rate.—In most southern pine plywood mills, roll spreaders are used to apply the glue. The design of these machines is fairly well standardized, and their construction features will not be discussed here. Readers concerned with roll design will find descriptions by Barnes (1970) and Lambuth (1970) of interest.

Two alternative methods of spreading glue on veneer have been developed. In one (Cone 1969), the glue is first foamed to about five times its original volume and then extruded onto the veneer top surface in the form of flexible coherent rods about $\frac{1}{10}$ -inch in diameter deposited in straight parallel lines. In this system there are areas of bare wood between the rods; less than half the veneer surface is directly covered with glue. Advantages claimed for the system included improved bond quality and less waste of glue. As yet, the system has not been applied in southern pine plywood plants.

In a second method now being evaluated in southern pine plywood mills, liquid glue is sprayed rather than rolled onto the top surface of the moving veneer. Impetus for adoption of the spray and extrusion methods comes from mill managers who desire more complete mechanization of gluespreading and layup operations. Manual feeding and offbearing of a roll spreader is hard, dirty work, and expensive in terms of manpower.

Efforts are also being made to find methods for reducing the amount of glue required to bond each M sq. ft. of exterior-type plywood. On a $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch basis, Douglas-fir requires only about 57 pounds per M sq. ft. Data from Koch (1965ab, 1967b, 1970) and others indicate that southern pine generally requires a gluespread in excess of 65 pounds per M sq. ft. to obtain acceptable gluelines; if assembly time is long, even heavier spreads are required.

Glueline thickness.—Hse⁴ correlated glueline thickness with bond quality in southern pine plywood glued with the 36 phenolic resins previously described. Glueline thickness ranged from 8 to 21 μm . and was negatively correlated with NaOH/P ratio; i.e., high NaOH/P ratios yielded relatively thin gluelines. Resin solid content and F/P ratio had little effect on the glueline thickness.

Of the resin properties, surface tension, contact angle, and time to cure were found related to the glueline thickness. Because panel preparation and gluing conditions were the same for all resins, differences in glueline thickness presumably reflected the combined effects of flow, transfer, penetration, wetting, and hardening of the resin in the process of bond formation.

Hse⁴ concluded that, within the range of his data, wet shear strength and percentage of wood failure increased as glueline thickness increased. Since thin gluelines were likely to develop discontinuities or defective spots, they yielded weak gluebonds.

Veneer and mill temperatures.—Glues for southern pine plywood are frequently formulated to match the season of the year because mill temperatures may range from as low as 50° F. in winter to 100° or 120° F. in summer. Resins for use in summer are generally in a less polymerized state, whereas in winter a more advanced resin can be used (Haskell et al. 1966). Control of both resin and water temperature is desirable so that glue temperature remains uniform.

Veneers moved too quickly from kiln to spreader may be warm (85° to 115° F.) or even hot (over 115° F.). Glue spread on hot veneers warms immediately, and its water content migrates into the wood; the resulting dried-out glueline yields a poor bond. Freeman (1970) found that mill temperatures up to 108° F. did not adversely affect gluebonds as long as there was no appreciable delay between spreading and layup.

PRESSING AND CURING

The curing of plywood glue is a complex reaction involving properties

of the resin and the wood, assembly times, prepressing procedures, and hot pressing technique.

Readers interested in the mechanism of cure of thermosetting phenolic plywood adhesives will find Hse's⁴ discussion of interest. In brief, he observed that crosslinking of such resins (formulations previously described) is achieved mainly through methylene linkages. In these resins, an exothermic cure reaction took place rapidly at about 148° C.

Assembly time.—Gluebond quality in southern pine exterior-type plywood is sensitive to assembly time, i.e., the elapsed time between the moment glue is spread and the moment the hot press is closed. For earlywood-to-earlywood bonds, optimum time may be near 15 or 20 minutes with tolerable time as much as 30 minutes; for latewood-to-latewood bonds, however, zero assembly time (at 70° F.) is optimum with conventional phenol-formaldehyde glues (Hse 1968).

Koch (1965ab, 1967b, 1970) has shown that gluebond quality in high-density southern pine plywood—as measured by wood failure, wet shear strength, and durability in exterior exposure—decreases as assembly time is lengthened beyond about 13 minutes (at 70° F.). With low-density veneers, a 24-minute assembly time was tolerable. Long assembly times were more tolerable if glue was spread liberally.

If mill temperatures are high, permissible assembly times are even shorter than those indicated above.

One glue manufacturer now offers a series of new phenol resins for pine veneering which can be allowed to dry to a dust-dry film before pressing. Flow and transfer from the coated veneers to the adjacent uncoated veneers is provided by melting under heat and pressure. These glues are said to avoid the "dryout" problem of longer assembly periods encountered in some plants processes, since they tolerate assembly times up to 30 or 40 minutes. Such glue formulations would seem to be similar to the early bag-molding phenol-resin glues used during World War II, where the glue films were dried essentially to a tackfree condition during open assembly and yet had the necessary flow under hot-pressing conditions for transfer and flow for good adhesion. This same firm now provides a series of phenol resins in five stepwise levels of reactivity versus flow to meet various mill conditions for pine plywood production. Adoption of these new resin systems has apparently been limited to date, however.

Prepressing.—Prepressing of panels—i.e., cold-pressing before placement in the hot press—is practiced in many southern pine plywood plants, but not in all. Compacting panels by prepressing speeds mechanical loading into the hot press; those using prepresses believe the extra step reduces manufacturing defects.

Many plants in which the hot press is loaded manually prefer not to prepress since the operation may add 4 to 8 minutes to total assembly time unless carefully scheduled. Lengthened assembly time, particularly in warm weather when veneers are warm, can cause poor gluebonds.

Hot-pressing.—Southern pine plywood made with phenol-formaldehyde glues is pressed between hot platens in multiple-opening hydraulic presses. Panels produced may have from three to 11 plies, but usually have three or five. Panel thickness may be as much as 2 inches, but is usually 1 inch or less. Specific pressures used may range from 100 to 300 p.s.i., but are usually 175 to 225 p.s.i. Freeman (1970) found that pressures in this range gave better bonds than lower pressures. Temperatures are usually 275° to 315° F. but may range up to 325° F. Time in the press is dependent on panel thickness and glue formulation; 3/8-inch, three-ply panels pressed two to the opening at 285° F. may require about 6½ minutes of closed press time. Press times for phenol-formaldehyde glues have been decreased substantially in recent years (Shelton 1969).

With the increasingly large presses used—up to 36 openings—preure of gluelines in the first panels loaded in the press is likely; increasing the gluespread by 5 to 10 pounds per M sq. ft. of double glueline may alleviate problems caused by this preure (Haskell et al. 1966).

All southern pine plants stack the plywood as it is discharged from the press and leave the stacks undisturbed for at least 4 hours so that the heat stored in the wood completes the glueline cure.

HARDWOOD CORES

Product Standard PS 1-66 allows hardwood inner plies to be incorporated with southern pine faces and backs. Limited studies by Blomquist and Olson (1964) showed that when hickory (*Carya* sp.) was glued to southern pine veneers with conventional phenol-formaldehyde exterior glues, percentages of wood failure were inconsistent and sometimes low, particularly in the hickory plies. Similar observations were made by Haskell⁵ on white and red oaks (*Quercus* spp.) veneers glued to southern pine. Hursey and Fogg (1970), however, obtained acceptable bonds in three- and five-ply panels with oak and sweetgum (*Liquidamber styraciflua* L.) cores and southern pine faces. They used a phenol-formaldehyde-resin glue extended with blood and spread at 85 to 90 pounds per M sq. ft. of double glueline. Even after these panels were pressure treated with FCAP (type B) preservative salt to a retention of 0.35 pound per cubic foot, they had acceptable shear strength and percentage of wood failure.

Because hardwood trees suitable for core veneer bolts are available at lower stumpage prices than pine, it is likely that research will accelerate until a glue can be formulated that will make an acceptable gluebond under production conditions.

DURABILITY IN EXTERIOR EXPOSURE

Tests specified in U.S. Product Standard PS 1-66 are designed to control the quality of southern pine plywood at the time it is manufactured; it is assumed that a glue of established durability (such as a conventional phenol-formaldehyde type) is used. While the major criterion, percent

wood failure in thoroughly soaked shear specimens after a soak-dry cycle, is positively correlated with durability in exterior exposure, final proof of durability can be established only by observing plywood in service. Since the southern pine plywood industry dates from 1963, little service information is available, and much of what is available came from accelerated tests that used small samples rather than conventional 4- by 8-foot panels. All available evidence indicates, however, that southern pine plywood, properly hot-pressed with phenol-formaldehyde glues, is an excellent and durable structural material.

Small specimens.—Hse (1968) investigated the durability of gluebonds in two-ply, cross-laminated, $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-square specimens comprised entirely of southern pine earlywood or latewood glued with a commercial exterior phenolic resin. He found that the latewood-to-latewood bonds delaminated far more rapidly on exterior exposure than the earlywood-to-earlywood bonds; earlywood-to-latewood bonds were intermediate in durability. Explanation of his data lies in the fact that latewood is denser than earlywood and it shrinks and swells more with changes in moisture content; the resulting glue-line stresses accelerate delamination. Increased assembly time in manufacture, in the range from 0 to 120 minutes, sharply increased percentage of delamination after exterior exposure in latewood-to-latewood bonds.

Koch (1967b, 1970) reported on delamination observed over a 3-year period in 1,152 pieces of southern pine plywood assembled in 576 different ways. The plywood was made from eight loblolly pine trees selected to exhibit a range of specific gravity and growth rate and glued with exterior-type phenol-formaldehyde resins. The $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick, three-ply specimens (1 by $3\frac{1}{4}$ inches) were exposed outdoors in Pineville, La. on a 45° , south-facing deck. Percentage of delamination was measured annually.

Rings per inch and tightness of peel had minor effects. A low glue-spread resulted in rapid delamination, particularly with high-density veneer or long assembly time. Of glues having a low percentage of resin solids, those extended solely with wheat flour resisted delamination best. Glues extended with blood suffered more severe delamination, even when percentage of resin solids was high. High specific gravity wood delaminated more rapidly than low specific gravity wood, particularly if glue-spread was low or assembly time long. All plywood given a long assembly time tended to delaminate, and dense veneer or light glue-spread accelerated the effect. Rate of delamination decreased after the first year, but general conclusions about the primary variables were the same after 3 years as after 6 months (fig. 23-11).

An 11-factor equation explained 35 percent of the variation in terms of wood properties and results of a standard shear test (fig. 23-12).

Large panels.—Selbo (1969) found that 18- by 18-inch laboratory-made southern pine plywood panels painted and exposed to the weather near Madison, Wis. and Gulfport, Miss. showed no glue joint separation after

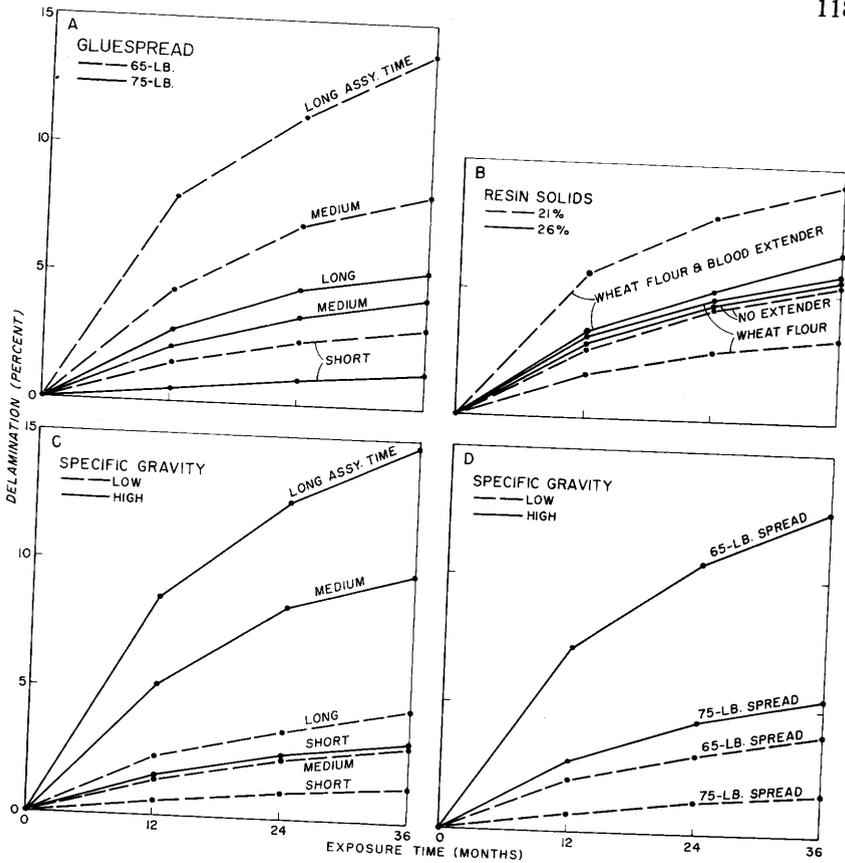


Figure 23-11.—Delamination of small specimens of 1/8-inch three-ply, southern pine plywood during 45°, south-facing, exterior exposure in Pineville, La.
 (A) Interaction of gluespread per M sq. ft. of double glueline and assembly times of 13, 24, and 32 minutes including 5 minutes of prepress time.
 (B) Effect of three types of secondary extender and percentage of resin solids in the final glue mix.
 (C) Interaction of specific gravity of peelable portion of log (0.45 and 0.55 on basis of oven-dry weight and green volume) and assembly time.
 (D) Interaction of specific gravity and gluespread.
 (Drawing after Koch 1970.)

5 years; face checking and some mold growth occurred on all panels. The three-ply, 3/8-inch panels were assembled from loblolly and long-leaf pine veneer, of less than 5-percent moisture content, hot-pressed for 8 minutes at 175 p.s.i. and 275° F. The glue was a commercial phenol-formaldehyde mix spread at about 85 pounds per M sq. ft. of double glueline; closed assembly time was 15 minutes. Wood failure and wet shear strength averaged 77 percent and 192 p.s.i.

Similar southern plywood panels overlaid with medium-density, phenolic-resin-impregnated overlay, and painted with two coats of an acrylic-emulsion paint, were in excellent condition after 5 years of weathering at both

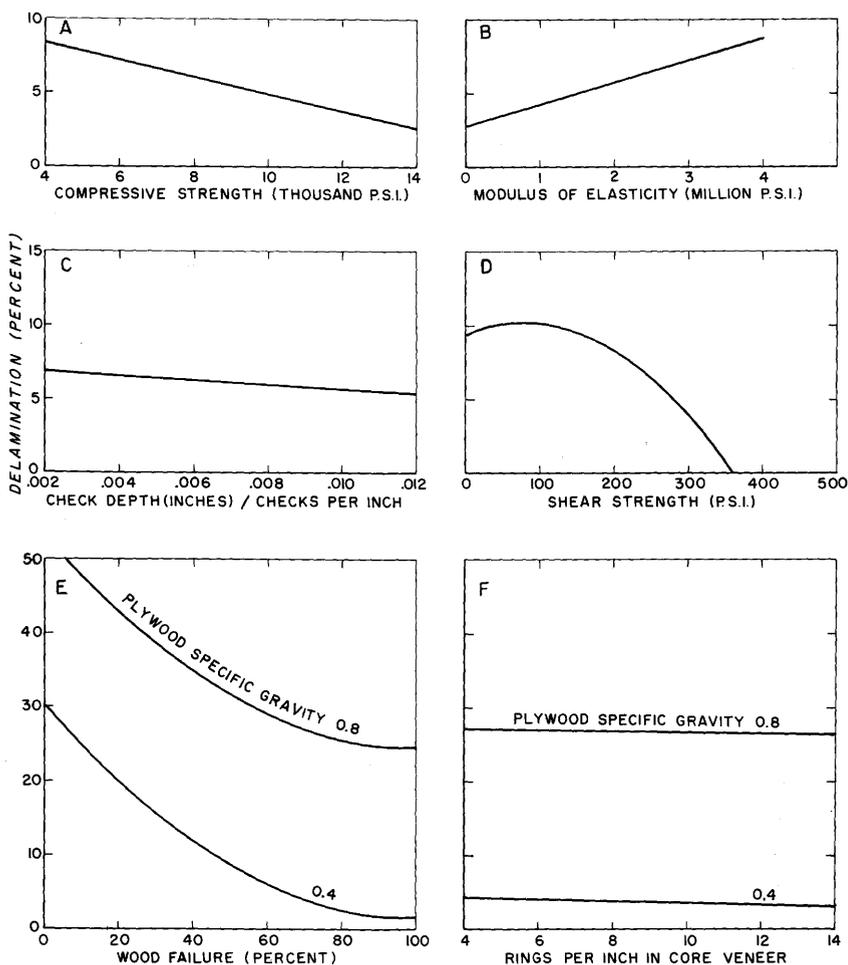


Figure 23-12.—Delamination of small specimens of southern pine plywood after 36 months of exterior exposure, as related to wood properties and to percent of wood failure and wet shear strength in standard American Plywood Association vacuum-pressure-soak test. (Drawing after Koch 1970.)

the northern and southern exposure sites. Mold growth occurred on the overlaid panels at both sites (Selbo 1969).

While not directly causing delamination, severe face checks in plywood may contribute to delamination over a long period of exterior exposure; for this reason, control measures are of interest. Koch (1965c) studied face checks in 10.5-inch-square, three-ply, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick exterior plywood hot-pressed from loblolly pine veneer. As is customary, the tight side of face and back veneer was placed outermost. Using Batey's (1955) index, panels were quantitatively evaluated for severity of face checking after several cycles of wetting and drying.

Face checking was minimized by: (1) Reducing the hygroscopicity of

the plywood by dipping the panels for 10 seconds in a water repellent. Checking index was 4.4 for treated panels and 12.8 for untreated. (2) Peeling veneer hot and tight rather than cold and loose. Checking index was 5.5 for tight-peeled face veneers and 11.7 for loose-peeled. (3) Using veneer of low specific gravity rather than high. Checking index was 6.9 for low-density faces and 10.4 for high-density faces.

With all the above factors favorable, the average checking index was minimum at 2.4; if all were unfavorable, the checking index was 20.4.

Factors that did not significantly affect severity of face checking were: rate of growth (rings per inch in the veneer); moisture content of the veneer before gluespreading; and proximity of plywood face to hot platen when pressing two panels per opening.

23-5 OVERLAYS

Since southern pine plywood tends to check severely on exterior exposure, overlays of various types are sometimes applied. A short discussion of factors involved in the selection and gluing of these overlays can be found in sections 25-5 and 25-6.

23-6 PARTICLEBOARD

In the South, as in the Nation, production of particleboard has increased substantially since the end of World War II. Between 1956 and 1966 average annual increase in particleboard production capacity (national) was 24 percent (Dougherty 1968). A high rate of increase has been maintained through 1970, and is expected to continue (fig. 23-13). There is an accelerating trend toward larger plants; 75 percent of capacity in 1972 will be in plants producing more than 60 million sq. ft. annually. The proportion of the output used in construction has increased in recent years. One-third of the nation's particleboard capacity in 1967 was in the South; by 1972 the South's proportion will be 46.5 percent (Vajda⁷).

THE INDUSTRY⁸

Of the 26 particleboard mills operating in the South in 1968, the six pioneer plants built mostly in the 1950's to make extruded board (fig. 23-14) accounted for less than 10 percent of southern production. Only two of the six used southern pine; 25 percent of the output of all six was captive, i.e., it went into products made by the firm manufacturing the particleboard.

Of the 20 plants making flat-pressed boards, 13 used predominantly southern pine (fig. 23-15), and their combined 1968 capacity was rated

⁷ Vajda, P. The economics of particleboard manufacture revisited or an assessment of the industry in 1970. Presentation at a symposium, "Fourth Particle Board Symposium," Washington State University, Pullman, Wash., March 1970.

⁸ The text under this heading is taken, with minor editorial changes, from Suchsland (1968) by permission of O. Suchsland and the *Southern Lumberman*.

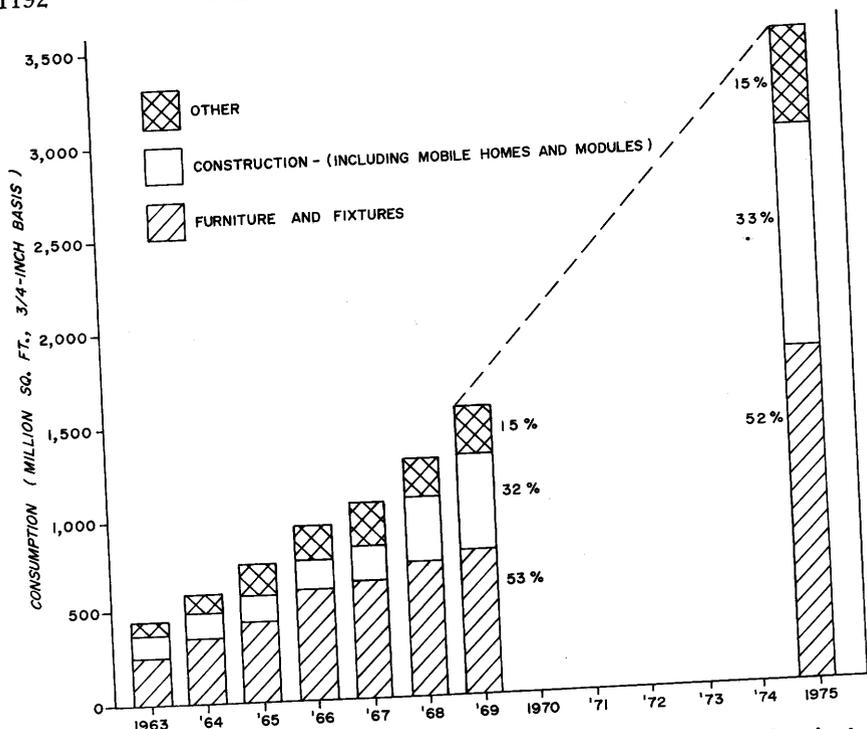


Figure 23-13.—Particleboard consumed in the United States, 1963-1969, and estimated consumption in 1975. (Drawing after Vajda⁷.)

at 550 million sq. ft. of $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch board annually. The 1967 production of these 13 plants was approximately 260 million sq. ft., or about 23 percent of total U.S. output of 1,120 million sq. ft. (Dougherty 1968; Suchsland 1968).

Nine of the 13 mills had 90 percent of the southern pine capacity in 1968; these mills all produce three-layer or multi-layer boards. The four

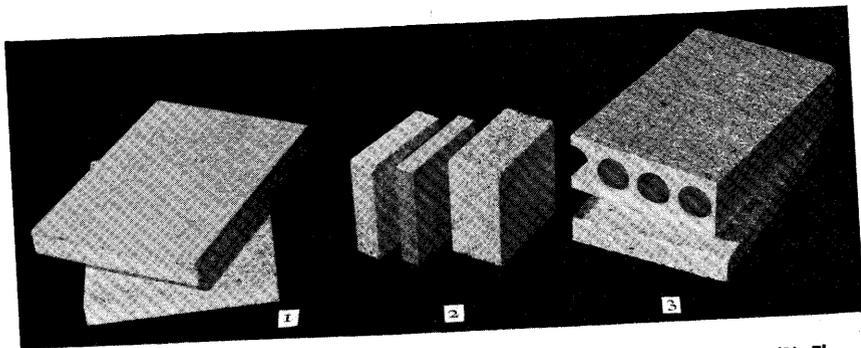


Figure 23-14.—Samples of commercial particleboard made from southern pine. (1) Three-layer. (2) Single-layer. (3) Extruded. (Photo from Suchsland 1968.)

**ANNUAL CAPACITY
(MILLION SQUARE FEET, 3/4 - INCH BASIS)**

- 0 - 9
- 10 - 49
- 50 OR MORE

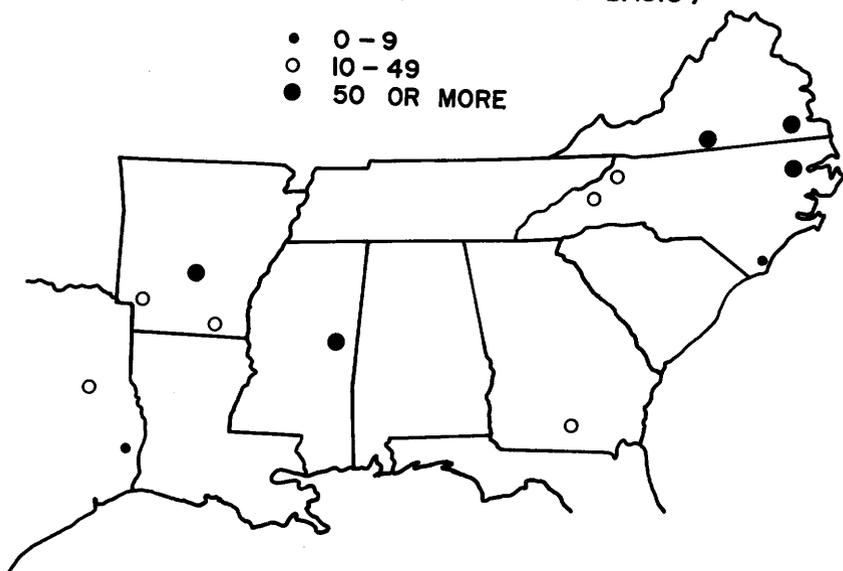


Figure 23-15.—Location and capacity of 13 particleboard plants using southern pine as a primary raw material source in 1968. (Drawing after Suchsland 1968.)

smaller mills had 10 percent of the capacity and make single-layer boards (fig. 23-14).

Since 1968, a number of new, large, southern-pine-using plants have been built or announced; included in the expansion are three plants in Louisiana with combined annual capacity of about 200 million sq. ft., 3/4-inch basis (Anonymous 1970; Louisiana Forestry Association 1971), and one in Mississippi with capacity of 100 million sq. ft. (Bryan 1970). Continued further expansion is anticipated.

In 1968, underlayment was the primary product of the 13 southern pine plants and accounted for 54 percent of the total production. Boards—primarily core stock—for the furniture and cabinet industries accounted for 37 percent of the output. Industrial markets took 6 percent, and the balance of 3 percent was sold in miscellaneous markets.

The industry anticipates major expansion into product lines other than core stock and underlayment. Since 1968, for example, the mobile home industry has accepted particleboard as its preferred product for floors. In this application, the product is designed to be intermediate in strength between the present relatively weak underlayment and the present relatively strong furniture core stock.

In 1968, 52 percent of the wood raw material for the 13 previously mentioned plants was in the form of planer shavings. Only 24 percent was in the form of cordwood; the remaining 24 percent was waste wood, primarily from plywood plants and sawmills. There is some evidence of a

trend away from manufactured flakes produced from roundwood. Although there is good equipment available for generating flakes, the economics of starting with roundwood and ending with dry flakes at the forming station results in an additional cost of approximately \$25 per 1,000 sq. ft. ($\frac{3}{4}$ -inch basis) for producing flakeboard vs. board made from planer shavings. Consumers have recently appeared unwilling to pay a premium price for flakeboard since several other particle-type board products are now available with strength properties approaching that of flakeboard. A major Arkansas flakeboard plant now uses planer shavings rather than flakes manufactured from roundwood.

Incoming material, whatever its form, is milled and screened (fig. 23-16) and dried (see sec. 20-4 and figs. 20-32, 20-33, and 20-34) before use. Glue is sprayed on the milled and screened particles, which are then formed into a mat and hot-pressed into flat boards by a variety of processes; notable are the Novoply, Behr, and Bahre-Bison processes.

Figure 23-17 illustrates the material flow chart for the Bahre-Bison process for making three-layer, flat-pressed board; the air classification system used in the board-forming process (fig. 23-18) results in a graduated dispersion of particle size with the finest material concentrated on top and bottom of board surfaces (Anonymous 1968). Boards made by this and

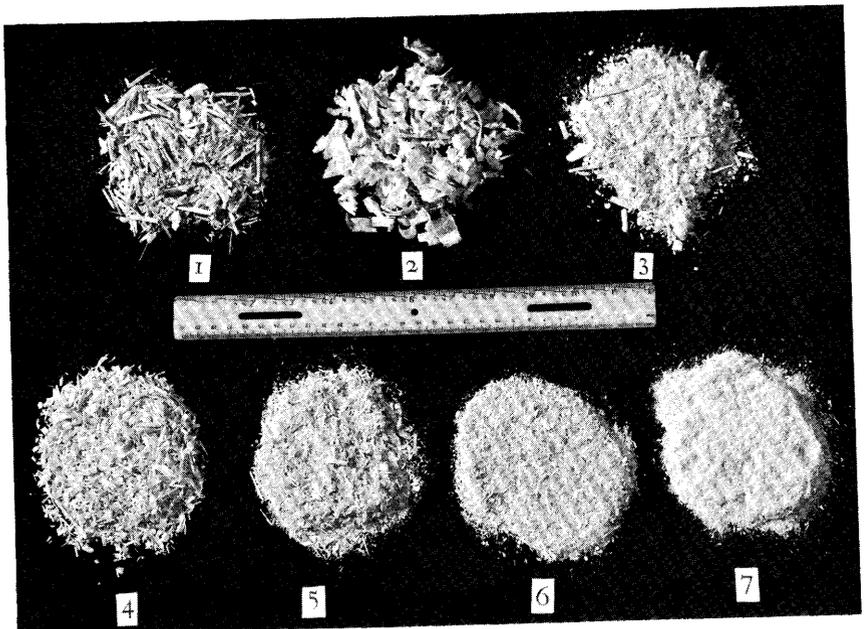


Figure 23-16.—Raw materials for southern pine particleboard. (1) Plywood trim. (2,3) Planer shavings, unmilled. (4,5,6,7) Milled and screened particles. (Photo from Suchsland 1968.)

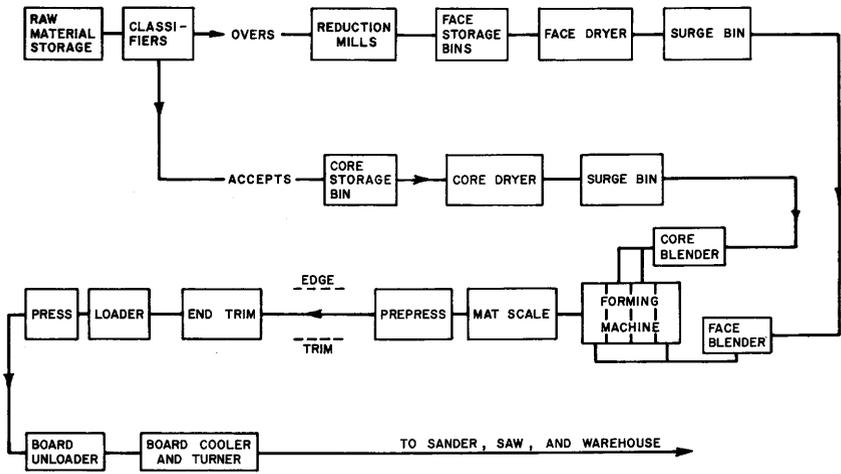


Figure 23-17.—Typical flow chart for Bahre-Bison particleboard process. Sized, dry particles are coated with glue in the blenders before the mat is formed. (Drawing after Suchsland 1968.)

similar processes combine smooth surfaces with high bending strength at moderate board densities. Forming by wind separation (fig. 23-18) does not preclude the possibility of applying extra faces to the core thus formed. These faces can be made of very fine particles, or even fibers, for special surface smoothness or hardness. These surface layers can also be graduated by using one-half of the forming device for each face layer, one preceding the core forming machine and one following it.

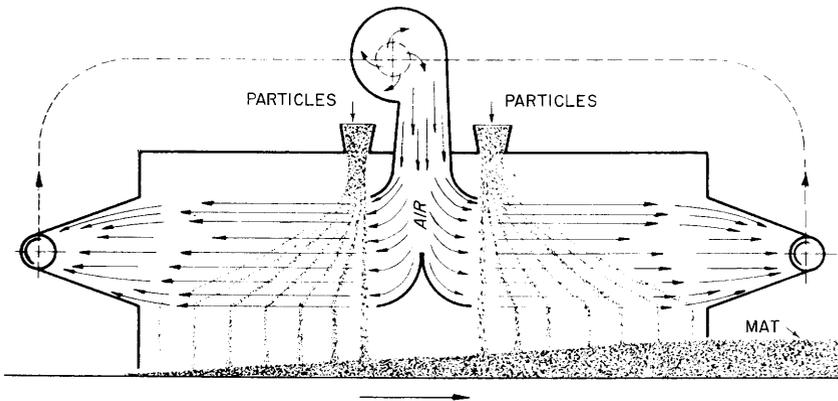


Figure 23-18.—Air classification of particle size in the Bahre-Bison mat-forming machine places finest particles on top and bottom surfaces and coarser particles in the core. (Drawing after Greten 1965.)

PARTICLE LENGTH-THICKNESSES AND DENSIFICATION RATIOS⁸

Particle geometry and **densification ratio**, i.e., the quotient of board specific gravity divided by species specific gravity, have long been recognized for their effects on mechanical properties of particleboard (Post 1958, 1961; Keylwerth 1959; Suchsland 1959, 1960; Plath 1963; Rackwitz 1963).

Particle length-thickness ratio.—Gluelines in plywood, due to continuity of the laminae, contribute relatively little to most of the elastic and mechanical properties of plywood (fig. 23-19 top). The laminae in particleboard, however, are discontinuous; and the gluelines must transmit stresses from one particle to the next.

A simplified model (fig. 23-19 bottom) indicates that the tensile strength of particleboard is determined either by the tensile strength of the individual particles or by the shear strength of the glue joints. The tensile strength of the particle will be limiting when the glue joints are able to transmit forces equivalent to the particle strength. If, however, the glueline fails in shear before the ultimate tensile strength of the particle has been reached, then particle strength is of secondary importance. It is clear from figure 23-19 (bottom) that the balance can be shifted in the direction of shear failure or tension failure by varying the particle geometry. Increasing

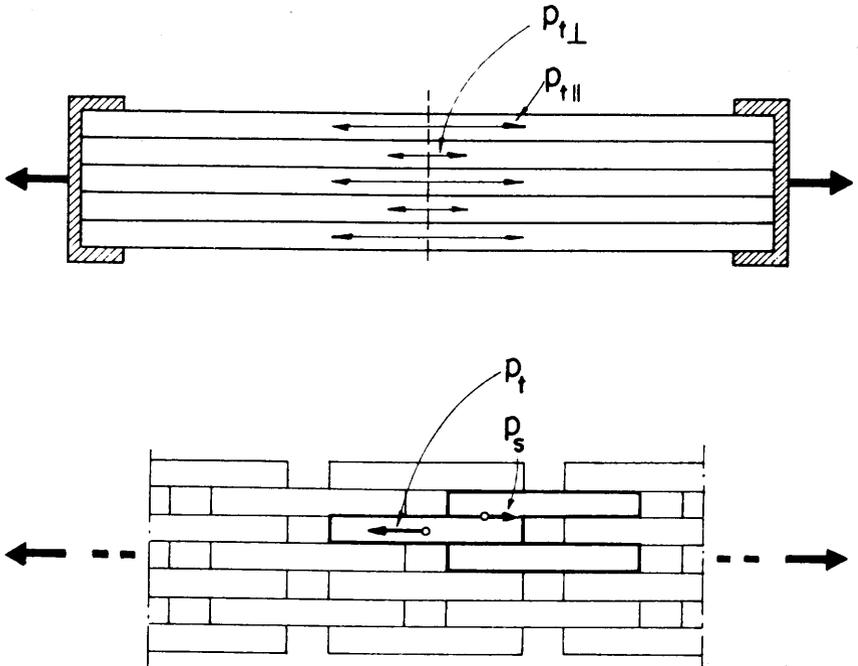


Figure 23-19.—Forces in members under tensile load P . (Top) Plywood; $P_{t\perp}$ is tensile force parallel to grain, and $P_{t\parallel}$ is force perpendicular to grain in cross bands. (Bottom) Particleboard; P_t is tensile force within a particle, and P_s is shear force in the glueline. (Drawing after Rackwitz 1963.)

the length of overlap of particles results in larger forces transmitted by the glue joints and consequently in higher tensile strength of the board until a point is reached where the shear forces equal the ultimate tensile strength of the particle. Beyond this point, longer overlap will not increase tensile strength of the board (fig. 23-20).

If particle thickness is held constant, the average length of overlap can be increased by increasing the ratio of particle length to particle thickness; i.e., long particles overlap more than short particles. Figure 23-21 suggests that over a wide range of particle length-to-thickness ratios the glueline is the weakest link in the composite, and that the leveling-off point is outside the practical range of particle dimension.

Densification ratio.—If the density of plywood is changed by using veneers of a different density, the elastic and mechanical properties of the plywood will change according to the well-established relationship between elastic and mechanical properties of solid wood and its density.

The density of a particleboard can be changed in two ways—by using wood of different specific gravity, and by varying the densification of the mat (fig. 23-22). A particleboard of a given density, if made from a heavier and therefore often stronger wood, has a lower bending strength than a board made from a lighter wood. This is true because there are fewer particles per pound and per cubic inch in the board made from the heavier wood. Consequently, there are fewer bonds per unit volume and probably less overlap between particles in this board. To make boards of equal bending strength from particles of a given geometry, higher density wood requires higher board densities.

In brief, the strength of particleboard is largely dependent on the strength of the gluelines; the spacers—or particles—which contribute bulk

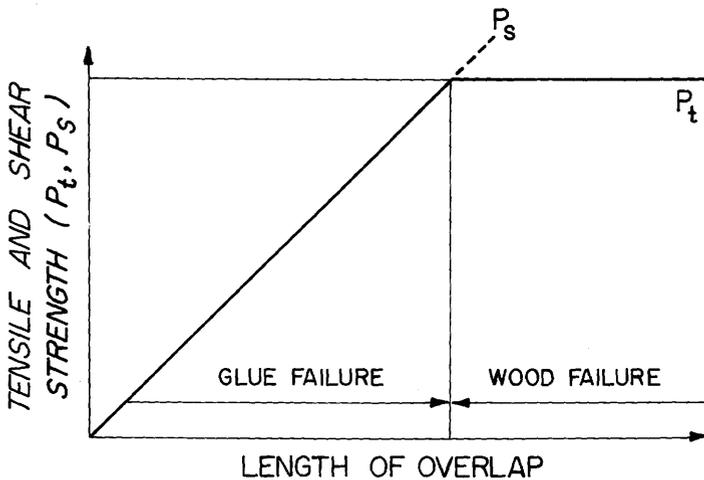


Figure 23-20.—Tensile and shear strengths of glued particles as a function of length of overlap. P_t is tensile force in particle; P_s is shear force in glueline. (Drawing after Rackwitz 1963.)

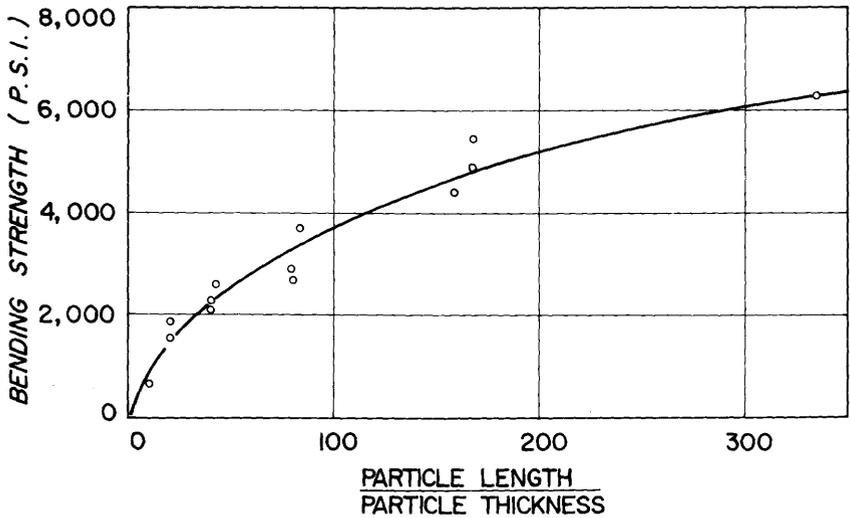


Figure 23-21.—Bending strength of particleboard as affected by ratio of particle length to thickness. Board density, gluespread, and manufacturing conditions constant. (Drawing after Keyworth 1959 from data by Post 1958.)

and mass should preferably be low in density and have a high ratio of particle length to particle thickness.

The quality of particleboard is not judged by strength alone, of course; light color, surface smoothness, dimensional stability, machinability, and screw-holding capacity are also desirable properties for most purposes.

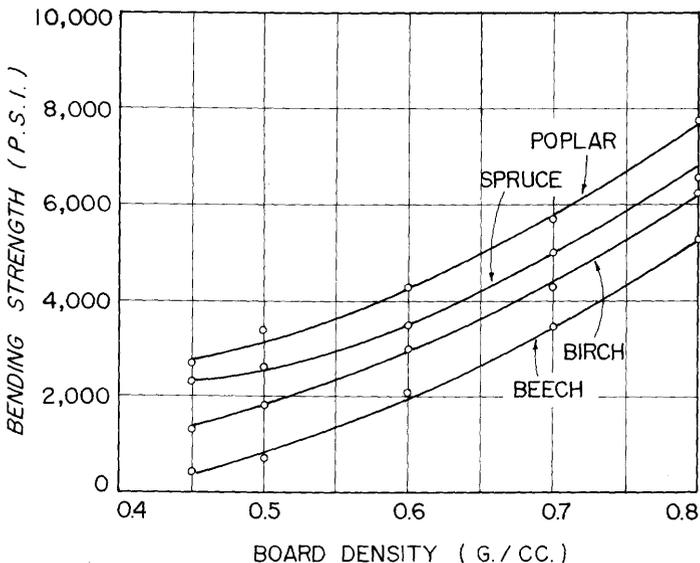


Figure 23-22.—Relationship between board density and bending strength of particleboard made from four species. (Drawing after Klauditz and Stegmann 1957.)

STANDARDS AND TEST METHODS

Major standards for particleboard include Commercial Standard CS 236-66 (U.S. Department of Commerce 1966a) and ASTM Designation D 1037-64 (American Society for Testing and Materials 1964). Due to the youth and rapid growth of the industry, standards and test procedures are still in the process of development. A few references on developing test procedures are listed as follows.

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Reference</u>
Accelerated aging	West Coast Adhesive Manufacturers Association (1966, 1970)
Dimensional stability	Heebink (1967b)
Effect of fire retardants on strength	Syska (1969)
Internal bond strength	Shen (1970)
Showthrough of particleboard cores	Heebink (1960)
Standard for particleboard decking for factory built housing	National Particleboard Association Standard 2-70 dated June 1970

SUITABILITY OF SOUTHERN PINE FOR PARTICLEBOARD ⁸

The specific gravity of southern pine wood is somewhat higher than that of most other softwoods and considerably higher than that of aspen (*Populus grandidentata* Michx.) and yellow-popular (*Liriodendron tulipifera* L.). Southern pine particleboards therefore must be pressed to slightly higher densities if mechanical properties comparable to those of boards made from lighter species are required.

The pH of southern pine particles is within the range of other commonly used species, so usually glues need not be specially formulated for southern pine particleboard. Southern pine wood has substantially higher pitch content than some other species in common use. Pitch, while it may cause some problems in gluing (Suchsland and Stevens 1968), causes most difficulty by accumulating on surfaces of dryers and conveyors and by loading abrasive belts used to sand the finished board to thickness.

SOME FACTORS AFFECTING BOARD PROPERTIES

In addition to particle length-thickness ratio and densification ratio, numerous factors affect the properties of particleboard in a complex interaction among wood properties, surface texture of particles, particle-drying technique, particle size distribution, glue formulation and application, method of mat formation, prepressing procedure, and hot-pressing technique.

While particleboards can be fabricated with phenol-formaldehyde resin, allowing more severe exterior exposure (Deppe and Ernst 1966; Gatchell et al. 1966; Heebink 1967a; Deppe 1969), most southern pine particleboard is designed for interior use and is assembled with urea-formaldehyde glues. Information specific to southern pine particleboard assembled with urea-formaldehyde glues is presented in the two following subsections.

For the reader wishing to study in greater depth, the 99 references in Halligan's (1969) review of the literature on gluing of particleboard, and Mitlin's (1968) 222-page text on the manufacture and application of particleboard, should prove helpful. Proceedings from the series of symposia on particleboard that have been held periodically since 1967 by the College of Engineering, Washington State University, Pullman, Wash., and which are available from the Wood Technology Section of that institution, provide a useful and up-to-date compendium of information related to the manufacture of particleboard.

Effect of particle geometry, adhesive spread, and wood properties⁹.—McMillin studied the effect of wood specific gravity, flake thickness, and adhesive spread on the properties of boards made from loblolly pine. Variables in his factorial experimental design were:

Specific gravity of unextracted wood (ovendry weight and green volume)

Less than 0.49

More than 0.49

Flake thickness (width constant at $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch, length constant at $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches)

0.035 inch

.025 inch

.015 inch

Adhesive spread (based on weight of adhesive solids per unit area of surface)

6 g./m.²

12 g./m.²

Because adhesive was applied on a surface area basis, content in terms of percent of ovendry wood weight (range 5 to 12 percent) differed depending on the flake thickness and wood specific gravity.

Board consolidation factors were held constant as follows:

Board density—45 pounds/cu. ft. ovendry.

Mat moisture content at pressing—10 percent.

Adhesive—Liquid urea-formaldehyde, uncatalyzed.

Press temperature—325° F.

Press closing time (time to stops)—1 minute.

Total press time—7 minutes.

Flakes having the desired geometry were obtained from ribbons produced on a metal-working lathe in a manner similar to rotary veneer cutting. The cutting geometry reasonably simulated that of the shaping-lathe chipping headrig (fig. 19-54A). With this type of headrig, the

⁹ The text under this heading is condensed from: McMillin, C. W. Aspects of wood and particle characteristics affecting the properties of aggregates from southern pine flakes. USDA Forest Serv., Southern Forest Exp. Sta., Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-3.10, dated November 23, 1971.

entire volume outside the cant is machined into flakes which are suitable for certain types of board products. Because the resulting cant has high value, a substantial portion of the cost of producing such flakes can be absorbed by the solid wood product produced from the cant.

Adhesive was applied to dried ribbons by feeding them between two spray guns. After brief reconditioning, the ribbons were clipped into 3/8-inch-wide flakes, hand felted, and consolidated into boards. In general, properties were evaluated in accordance with ASTM Designation D 1037-64.

By analysis of variance, modulus of rupture in bending (MOR) differed with flake thickness and wood specific gravity, as follows; it was unrelated to resin coverage:

Flake thickness	Wood specific gravity	
	Low (avg. 0.45)	High (avg. 0.53)
<i>Inches</i>	----- <i>P.s.i.</i> -----	
0.015 -----	5,300	5,000
.025 -----	4,300	3,400
.035 -----	3,200	2,300

As expected, MOR increased with decreasing flake thickness for both wood of low and high specific gravity; the trend was curvilinear. For a given flake thickness, MOR was greater for boards made from wood having low specific gravity.

Modulus of elasticity differed with only one study variable—flake thickness. Values were 487,000, 645,000 and 825,000 p.s.i. for thicknesses of 0.035, 0.025, and 0.015 inch, respectively.

Internal bond strength differed with resin coverage and wood specific gravity; it was unrelated to flake thickness. From the following tabulation, internal bond strength was greatest for boards made from wood of low specific gravity; it was also improved by using the higher adhesive coverage:

Resin coverage	Wood specific gravity	
	Low (avg. 0.45)	High (avg. 0.53)
<i>g./m.²</i>	----- <i>P.s.i.</i> -----	
6 -----	73	58
12 -----	107	63

Holding capacity of screws inserted into board faces was somewhat greater in boards made from wood of low specific gravity (avg. 344 pounds) than in those made from wood of high specific gravity (avg. 303 pounds). It was unaffected by flake thickness and adhesive content.

Linear expansion (percent change in dimension between equilibrium moisture content at 0- and 90-percent relative humidity) averaged 0.47

percent. Between 0- and 60-percent relative humidity, the average value was 0.19 percent.

Effects of specific surface⁹.—Although in McMillin's experiment the length-to-thickness ratio differed with the thickness of flakes, the average length of particle overlap was unaffected because both length and width of flakes were held constant. It can be shown that the nominal surface area per unit weight of flakes (specific surface) is a function of particle geometry and specific gravity. Flakes of high specific surface form boards having a greater number of adhesive bonds per unit of volume and hence, are stronger.

Consider a particle of width W , length L , and thickness T . If smooth plane surfaces are assumed, its surface area (a) will be:

$$a = 2(TL + WL + TW) \quad (23-3)$$

Its weight (w) will be:

$$w = WTL(\text{weight per unit volume}) \quad (23-4)$$

The specific surface (S) will be:

$$S = \frac{a}{w} = \frac{2(TL + WL + TW)}{WTL(\text{weight per unit volume})} \quad (23-5)$$

If all dimensions are in centimeters and the weight is in grams, the weight per unit volume is equal to specific gravity (G) and

$$S = \frac{2}{G} \left[\frac{TL + WL + TW}{WTL} \right] = \frac{2}{G} \left[\frac{1}{W} + \frac{1}{T} + \frac{1}{L} \right] \quad (23-6)$$

In McMillin's study, particle length and width were held constant at $1\frac{1}{2}$ inches and $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch respectively, and specific surface in square meters per kilogram was therefore:

$$S = \frac{0.2}{G} \left[3.3325 + \frac{1}{T} \right] \quad (23-7)$$

where T is in inches.

From equation 23-7 and from McMillin's measurements of log specific gravity and flake thickness, specific surface increased with decreasing flake thickness. For a given thickness, specific surface was greater for wood of low specific gravity than it was for wood of high gravity, as follows:

Flake thickness	Wood specific gravity	
	Low (avg. 0.45)	High (avg. 0.53)
Inches	--- m. ² /kg. ---	
0.015	12.6	11.1
.025	7.4	6.3
.035	5.4	4.5

Specific surface (computed from equation 23-7) was positively correlated with modulus of rupture and modulus of elasticity. Since there were small between-board variations in density, density (D) in pounds per cubic foot was considered first to account for its effect before that of specific surface (S). The equations are applicable only to boards of 45 pounds/cu. ft. density having resin spreads of 6 to 12 g./m.² and flakes having specific surfaces ranging from 4 to 13 m.²/kg.

$$MOR = 31,045.1 - 1,562.2(D) + 19.0(D)^2 + 853.2(S) - 30.6(S)^2 \quad (23-8)$$

$$MOE = 8,265,217.7 - 403,272.2(D) + 4,928.4(D)^2 + 101,347.5(S) - 3,562.7(S)^2 \quad (23-9)$$

Equation 23-8 accounted for 81 percent of the total variation in MOR; standard error of the estimate was 560 p.s.i. Corresponding values for MOE (equation 23-9) were 88 and 60,400. Linear regressions of specific surface alone accounted for 73 percent of the variation in MOR and 71 percent of the variation in MOE.

The assumption that a flake has a smooth plane surface is admittedly an oversimplification. Surface roughness can increase true areas substantially (equation 23-2). Moreover, within a group of flakes there is great variation in specific surface because of differences in wood specific gravity. For example, one flake may consist entirely of earlywood, while another flake may be totally latewood.

McMillin experimentally measured the specific surface and the distribution of specific surface by introducing flakes into a horizontal airstream of constant velocity (fig. 23-23). By this method, flakes blown a further distance down the airstream have higher specific surface than those blown only a short distance. The apparatus was divided into a series of six equally spaced compartments and calibrated with paper flakes having known specific surfaces. By fixing the weight of incoming flakes and measuring the weight of flakes in each compartment, it was possible to compute a weight average specific surface and the distribution of specific surface in percent by weight for each sample. The mean specific surface for each compartment was as follows:

Compartment number (fig. 23-23)	Specific surface <i>m.²/kg.</i>
1	2.96
2	6.54
3	10.53
4	14.92
5	18.72
6	21.61

The weight of flakes passing compartments 6 (normally small) was considered to fall in compartment 7, having a specific surface in excess of 21.61 m.²/kg.

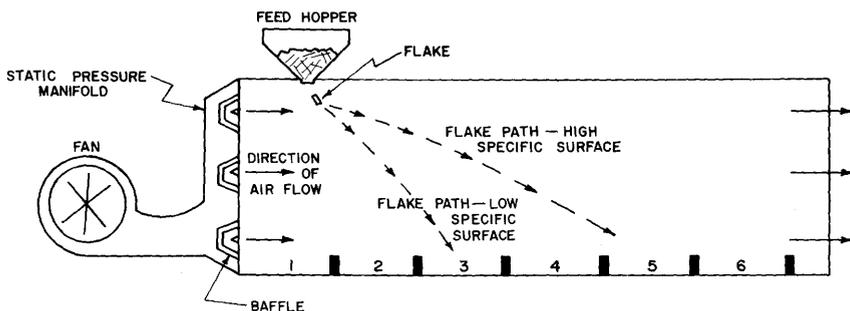


Figure 23-23.—Apparatus for measuring specific surface of flakes. (Drawing after McMillin.⁹)

The mean weight average specific surface from wind tunnel measurements are tabulated below for three flake thicknesses and two specific gravities. They are in good agreement with those calculated from equation 23-7.

Flake thickness	Wood specific gravity	
	Low (avg. 0.45)	High (avg. 0.53)
<i>Inches</i>	----- <i>m.²/kg.</i> -----	
0.015	11.9	10.6
.025	7.8	6.6
.035	5.5	4.3

The correlation between the wind-tunnel-determined weight average specific surface and strength in bending was good.

$$MOR = 24,832.7 - 1,329.8(D) + 16.5(D)^2 + 1,102.5(S) - 45.6(S)^2 \quad (23-10)$$

$$MOE = 8,551,625.5 - 417,754.1(D) + 5,102.9(D)^2 + 103,666.2(S) - 3,667.3(S)^2 \quad (23-11)$$

The equation for MOR accounted for 82 percent of the total variation with a standard error of the estimate of 554 p.s.i. Corresponding values for MOE were 88 percent and 59,978 p.s.i.

The distribution of specific surface in percent by weight differed with flake thickness as shown in figure 23-24. McMillin⁹ observed that the forms of these distribution patterns accounted for virtually all of the variation in bending properties of boards fabricated under his test conditions. In brief, flakes having distribution curves similar to that shown for 0.015-inch-thick flakes yielded boards of highest bending strength.

BOARD PROPERTIES VS. GLUE PROPERTIES¹⁰

Hse¹⁰ studied urea-formaldehyde resin synthesis to determine the relationships between southern pine particleboard properties and the physical and chemical properties of the resins. His results follow.

¹⁰ The text under this heading is condensed from Hse, C.-Y. Urea-formaldehyde resin formulation factors and their effect on properties of southern pine particleboard. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-2.33 dated May 1, 1972.

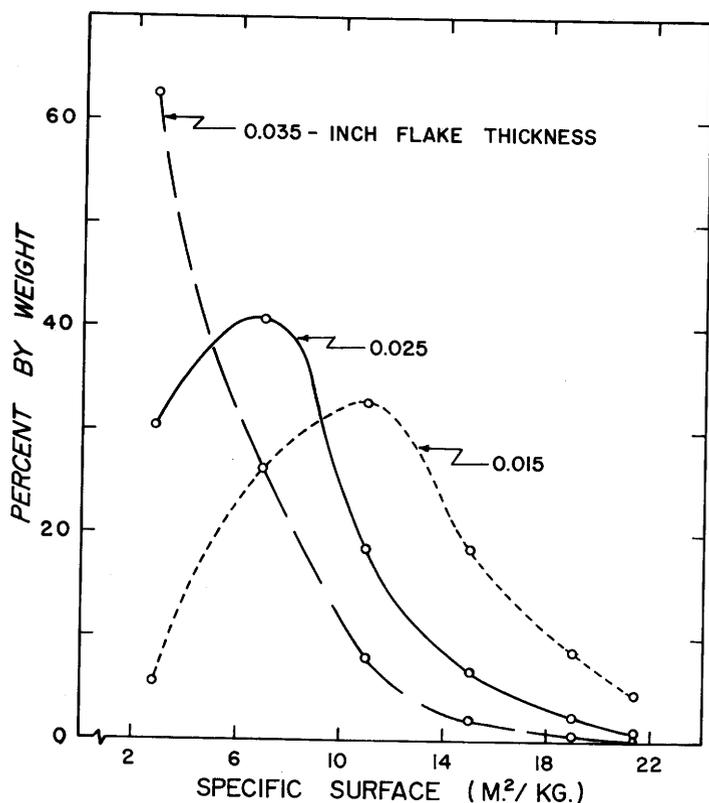


Figure 23-24.—Distribution of specific surface, in percent by weight, for flakes of three thicknesses. (Drawing after McMillin⁹.)

Resin formulation variables vs. board properties.—Forty-five urea resins were formulated and replicated by factorial arrangement of three formulation variables: molar ratio of formaldehyde to urea (1.5, 1.7, 1.9, 2.1 and 2.3), reactant concentration (35, 42.5, and 50 percent), and reaction temperature (75°, 85°, and 95° C.). Board quality was determined by measuring internal bond strength (IB), modulus of rupture (MOR), modulus of elasticity (MOE), and screw withdrawal forces (SW).

Board quality increased substantially with a change in molar ratio of formaldehyde to urea from 1.5 to 1.7; higher ratios yielded only minor improvements in properties. On average, all strength properties of the particleboard increased as the reactant concentration increased. Change in the reaction temperature affected only MOR and SW; i.e., resins formulated at the higher reaction temperatures yielded boards with the highest MOR and SW.

Resin shrinkage, surface tension, and formaldehyde and methylol content vs. board properties.—In the range of the 90 urea resins previ-

ously described (45 resins with replication), free formaldehyde content (1.3 to 6.7 percent) was linearly and positively correlated with IB and MOR. The methylol content (3.2 to 10.3 percent) was also positively correlated with IB but was not significantly related to MOR. Resin shrinkage (24 to 36 percent) during cure was, in general, negatively correlated with IB and MOR; i.e., resins with most shrinkage yielded the poorest bonds. No significant correlation was found between surface tension and bond strength.

pH during resin reaction vs. board properties.—The simplest reaction products of formaldehyde and urea are methylol compounds; they are produced under neutral or weakly alkaline conditions. The methylol ureas are not resinous materials; therefore, at an appropriate time after their formation, the reaction mixture is made weakly acid to promote a condensation reaction leading to resin formation. Results of an experiment designed to optimize board properties through control of pH follow.

Twelve resins were prepared with factorial combinations of alkaline and acidic reaction pH; i.e., the reaction mixture was adjusted to pH 7, 8, 9, or 10 for the first hour of reaction and then made weakly acid to pH 5.8, 4.8, or 3.8. Resin adhesion properties were determined by measuring internal bond and modulus of rupture of boards assembled with these resins.

On average, the resins formulated at pH 8 resulted in higher IB and MOR than those at pH 7, 9, or 10. Change in acidic pH had little effect on adhesion strength of the resins when the initial pH was 8 or 9. If initial pH was 7 or 10, the adhesion strength of the resins increased or decreased as the acidic pH increased. This pH effect was especially important in the weakly acid range of 5.8, i.e., pH 5.8 in combination with initial pH of 7 yielded the resin with the best adhesion strength.

Catalysts vs. board properties.—As has been shown, pH of the reaction mixture during resin formulation affects resin bonding properties. Catalysts used during resin formulation also affect resin bonding properties. In an effort to optimize catalyst selection, Hse¹⁰ formulated 12 urea resins with factorial combinations of three alkaline catalysts (i.e., sodium hydroxide, hexamethylenetetramine, and triethanolamine) and four acidic catalysts (i.e., acetic acid, hydrochloric acid, ammonium chloride, and phosphoric acid). The resins were replicated. Resin adhesion properties were determined by measuring internal bond and modulus of rupture of boards fabricated with the resins.

The resins catalyzed with sodium hydroxide in general had higher IB and MOR than resins prepared with hexamethylenetetramine or triethanolamine. All acidic catalysts in combination with sodium hydroxide as alkaline catalyst yielded IB and MOR values in excess of those called for by Commercial Standard CS 236-66 (U.S. Department of Commerce 1966a). Only two out of the four acidic catalysts (i.e., hydrochloric acid and phosphoric acid) in combination with hexamethylenetetramine as

alkaline catalyst yielded resins that met this standard. With triethanolamine as the alkaline catalyst, only acetic acid among the acidic catalysts yielded resin bond strengths comparable to those of resins catalyzed with sodium hydroxide. These results are summarized as follows:

<u>Alkaline and acidic catalysts</u>	<u>Internal bond</u>	<u>Modulus of rupture</u>
	----- <i>P.s.i.</i> -----	
Sodium hydroxide		
Ammonium chloride	119	2,056
Phosphoric acid	110	1,828
Acetic acid	109	1,818
Hydrochloric acid	108	1,721
Hexamethylenetetramine		
Hydrochloric acid	123	1,836
Phosphoric acid	97	1,659
Acetic acid	94	1,591
Ammonium chloride	47	1,323
Triethanolamine		
Acetic acid	121	1,931
Hydrochloric acid	66	1,413
Ammonium chloride	63	1,383
Phosphoric acid	51	1,207

23-7 MOLDED PRODUCTS

Mixtures of powdered resin glues termed **binders**, usually phenolic, and southern pine particles (usually milled to pass an 8-mesh-per-inch or finer screen) can be hot pressed or molded into simple shapes. Complexity of the shape is primarily limited by the poor flow characteristics of woody mixtures containing less than 20 percent binder (Patterson and Snodgrass 1959; Watson 1959). No data on the molding properties of southern pine particles are published, but information provided by Gatchell and Heebink (1964, 1965) on Douglas-fir should generally apply.

They found that Douglas-fir flakes (without binder) milled to pass a 20-mesh screen and be retained on a 40-mesh screen (20-40), when piled into a cone 8.5 inches in diameter and hot pressed at 1,000 p.s.i. specific pressure into disks of the same diameter, compressed to substantially different specific gravities depending on the press temperature and the initial moisture content of the particles, as follows:

<u>Press temperatures and moisture content (percent)</u>	<u>Specific gravity (ovendry weight and volume at test)</u>
75° F.	
5	0.64
13	.73
335° F.	
5	.85
13	1.07

With Douglas-fir blends (20–40 screen fraction at 5-percent moisture content) containing 12-percent phenolic resin and molded at 335° F., Gatchell and Heebink observed that the best flow was obtained in those containing the greatest percentage of cubical material, e.g., those from rip-cut sawdust. Poorest flow was in blends made from planer shavings. Linear stability during moisture cycling, and modulus of rupture of the molded disks were negatively correlated with flow index, i.e., the cube-cut particles made weaker disks with less linear stability than the particles derived from planer shavings.

Parent particle shape	Flow index	Modulus of rupture	Linear movement index
		<i>P.s.i.</i>	<i>Percent</i>
Shavings, flakes, and slivers -----	52	5,700	0.80
Rip-cut sawdust -----	66	3,600	1.67

Thickness swelling of humidified or soaked disks pressed from shaving-derived material, however, averaged about 17 percent—substantially more than the 11 percent observed in material derived from rip-cut sawdust.

Blends of Douglas-fir with 6-, 12-, and 18-percent resin content did not exhibit greatly different flow indices, nor was there substantial difference in flow index between 20–40 and 40–80 screen fractions. As would be expected, disks molded with the highest resin content had the greatest specific gravity, modulus of rupture, and stability. When resin content was sufficient to establish somewhat continuous gluelines between particles, however, addition of more resin did not proportionately improve strength.

23-8 FIBERBOARD

A discussion of the theory of fiber-to-fiber bonds in fiber networks is beyond the scope of this text. The reader may become introduced to the large, and rapidly expanding, body of literature on the subject through study of the following references: Bolam (1961, 1966), Simmonds and Chidester (1963), Fowkes (1967), Nissan (1967), Stannett (1967), McMillin (1969a), Van den Akker (1969), Page (1969, 1970, 1971), and Dillon (1970).

THE INDUSTRY¹¹

The first fiberboard plant in the South, Masonite Corp., began operations in 1926; it utilized residues from sawmills cutting southern pine.

¹¹ Text under this heading is condensed from Turner, H. D. Fiberboard, hardboard, and moulded fiber from southern pine wood—processes and products. Presentation at a symposium, "Utilization of the Southern Pines," Alexandria, La., November 6–8, 1968.

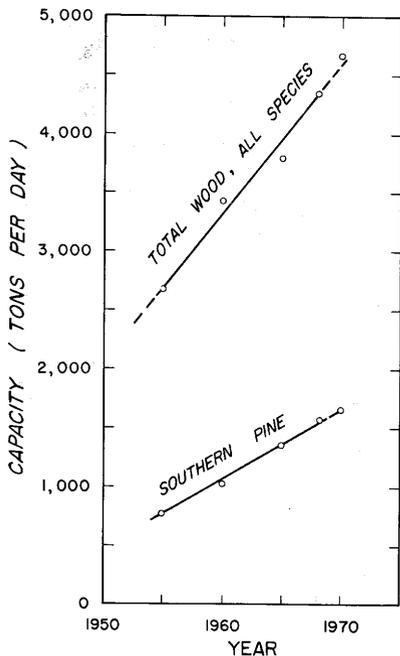


Figure 23-25.—Production capacity of fiberboard plants in the United States and the contribution of southern pine wood to the total requirement. (Drawing after Turner.¹¹)

Productive capacity of this plant, now the largest of its kind in the world, has been several times expanded, and roundwood of numerous species is used as well as residue from sawmills.

Industry capacity in the United States shows steady growth, and utilization of southern pine in fiberboard also increases steadily but not in direct proportion (fig. 23-25). In the decade from 1958 to 1968 plant capacity increased approximately 50 percent, i.e., from 3,000 tons per day to 4,400.

In 11 States of the southern pine region, there were 13 companies manufacturing fiberboard in 1968. By 1970, a 14th plant was in operation and several had expanded. The industry makes two general classes of product: insulation and low-density fiberboards, and hardboard.

Insulation and low-density fiberboards.—In the manufacture of low-density boards, high-yield mechanical pulp is made with stone grinders or disk refiners (see sec. 27-1); a water suspension of the pulp is formed into a continuous thick mat on a moving wire screen. The formed mat is cut to length and dried in multideck tunnel dryers (see sec. 20-4 and figs. 20-35 and 20-36). A broad range of board properties can be obtained through adjustment of forming operations, incorporation of additives in the pulp, and by post-forming operations and addition of coatings. Readers desiring an introduction to the manufacturing technology are referred to Rydholm (1965, ch. 7, pp. 368-400).

The process is highly mechanized, automatically controlled, and requires a multi-million-dollar plant investment and large volume production to achieve low unit costs. Although yields are high compared to the

pulp industry—generally 75 percent or more—wood costs are vitally important. In 1968 commodity grades of fiberboard sold for about \$100 per ton.

Hardboard.—In contrast to insulation board, which is formed in low-density mats and dried in tunnel dryers, hardboard is hot-pressed to much higher density. Fibers for hardboard may be produced by the steam gun explosion technique developed by W. H. Mason in 1924, or by revolving-disk mills. Brief descriptions of these processes can be found in Koch (1964c, pp. 510–518).

The fibers may be wet-formed in mats and then consolidated and dried in the hot press. When pressed in this manner, one side of the board rests on a screen so that steam can escape from the heated mass of wet fiber; consequently the board as it comes from the press is smooth on one side only and has a screen pattern on the other.

Alternatively, the fibers can be dried first and then air-formed into a mat. Refined fiber treated with resins can be dried extremely rapidly without thermal damage to the fiber or appreciable polymerization of the resin. Mats of dry fibers can be pressed without screens; hence they emerge from the hot press smooth on both sides.

Board properties are affected by complex interactions among many factors including degree of fiber refining, content of resin glues, waxes, and other additives mixed with the fibers, mat-forming procedure, hot press conditions, and board density. In general, strength properties are positively correlated with resin content and board specific gravity. Resin content of hardboard is usually less than 3 percent based on dry weight of wood fiber, and in some boards no resin is added.

EFFECTS OF GROSS WOOD CHARACTERISTICS ON FIBERBOARD PROPERTIES

In a large study of wet-formed fiberboard from disk-refined loblolly pine chips, McMillin (1968) found that most strength properties of the fiberboards were increased when the fiber was refined from wood of high specific gravity but containing relatively little latewood.

McMillin concluded that dense veneer cores should be a desirable raw material for fiberboards; fiber refined from slabs and edgings of low density should yield boards of lesser strength.

EFFECTS OF FIBER MORPHOLOGY ON FIBERBOARD PROPERTIES

From data obtained in the experiment mentioned under the foregoing heading, McMillin (1969b) also was able to relate strength properties of loblolly pine fiberboards to dimensions of the fibers from which the boards were formed.

Most board properties were improved by using fiber refined from wood having short, slender tracheids with thin walls. A theoretical analysis

suggested that the fibers fail in bending while under stress induced by the pressing operation. Such bending failures, because they promote intimate fiber-to-fiber contact, improve conditions for hydrogen bonding—thus improving board properties. Tracheids having narrow diameters and thin walls flex easily and collapse readily, further promoting good fiber-to-fiber contact. Short, flexible tracheids are more desirable than long, because short tracheids result in a greater number of fiber crossings per unit weight in the pulp mat; most strength properties increase with increased numbers of crossings.

STANDARDS AND TEST PROCEDURES

Major standards and test procedures for the various classes of fiber-board include the following (published by the American Society for Testing and Materials, Philadelphia, Pa.) :

<u>Product and subject</u>	<u>Reference</u>
Insulation board and sheathing	ASTM C-208-60 (1966)
Interior hardboard	ASTM D1037-64A and B
Definition of terms	ASTM D1554-67

23-9 LITERATURE CITED

<p>Anonymous. 1962. How to upgrade lumber for today's markets. <i>Wood & Wood Prod.</i> 67(8): 30-31, 70, 73.</p> <p>Anonymous. 1963. Big plywood from little logs. <i>Bus. Week</i>, Sept. 14, pp. 92, 94.</p> <p>Anonymous. 1968. Southern pine residuals converted into panels. <i>Forest Ind.</i> 95(2): 83-85.</p> <p>Anonymous. 1970. Board producers 1970. <i>Forest Ind.</i> 97(8): 86-97.</p> <p>American Institute of Timber Construction. 1967. Tension laminations in structural glued laminated timber members in bending. <i>Amer. Inst. Timber Constr. AITC</i> 301-67, 1 p.</p> <p>American Institute of Timber Construction. 1969. Structural glued laminated timber. U.S. Commercial Stand. CS 253-63, 22 pp. <i>Amer. Inst. Timber Constr.</i> Englewood, Colo.</p>	<p>American Institute of Timber Construction. 1970. Standard specifications for structural glued laminated timber of Douglas-fir, western larch, southern pine, and California redwood. <i>Amer. Inst. Timber Constr.</i> 203-70, 16 pp. Englewood, Colo.</p> <p>American Society for Testing and Materials. 1964. Evaluating the properties of wood-base fiber and particle panel materials. <i>ASTM Des. D1037-64</i>, 31 pp. <i>Amer. Soc. Testing and Mater.</i>, Philadelphia.</p> <p>Barnes, D. 1970. Glue spreading efficiency of roll spreaders. <i>Forest Prod. J.</i> 20(1): 24-29.</p> <p>Bassett, K. H. 1960. Effect of certain variables on strength of glued end joints. <i>Forest Prod. J.</i> 10: 579-585.</p> <p>Batey, T. E. 1955. Minimizing face checking of plywood. <i>Forest Prod. J.</i> 5: 277-285.</p>
--	--

- Bikerman, J. J.
1961. The science of adhesive joints. 258 pp. N.Y.: Academic Press.
- Billmeyer, F. W.
1957. Textbook of polymer science. 518 pp. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Blomquist, R. F.
1969. Gluing of southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(4): 36-44.
- Blomquist, R. F., and Olson, W. Z.
1957. Durability of urea-resin glues at elevated temperatures. *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 266-272.
- Blomquist, R. F., and Olson, W. Z.
1964. Experiments in gluing southern pine veneer. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-032, 33 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Bloomquist, P. R.
1966. Southern pine plywood adhesives technology. *Forest Ind.* 93(2): 39-41.
- Bohannan, B., and Kanvik, K.
1969. Fatigue strength of finger joints. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-114, 8 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Bohannan, B., and Moody, R. C.
1969. Large glued-laminated timber beams with two grades of tension laminations. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-113, 44 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Bohannan, B., and Selbo, M. L.
1965. Evaluation of commercially made end joints in lumber by three test methods. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-41, 40 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Bolam, F. (Ed.)
1961. Fundamentals of paper-making fibres. 497 pp. London: Tech. Sect. of the Brit. Pap. and Board Makers' Assoc.
- Bolam, F. (Ed.)
1966. Consolidation of the paper web. Vol. 1 & 2, 1115 pp. London: Tech. Sect. of the Brit. Pap. and Board Makers' Assoc.
- Bolger, R. J., and Rasmussen, C. A.
1962. A rapid, continuous method of testing glued end joints. *Forest Prod. J.* 12: 422-425.
- Brouse, D.
1939. Contribution of synthetic resins to improvement of plywood properties. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. R1212, 16 pp.
- Brouse, D.
1956. Serviceability of glue joints. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. R1172, 7 pp. Also in *Mechanical Engineering* 60: 306-308. 1938.
- Brouse, D.
1957. The ideal glue—how close are we? *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 163-167.
- Browne, F. L., and Brouse, D.
1939. Casein glues. In *Casein and its industrial applications*, pp. 233-292. Ed. 2, E. Sutermeister and F. L. Browne, eds. N.Y.: Reinhold Publishing Corp.
- Brunauer, E., Emmett, P. H., and Teller, E.
1938. Adsorption of gases in multimolecular layers. *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.* 60: 309-319.
- Bryan, R. W.
1968. In the South economic factors begin to mitigate pine plywood boom. *Forest Ind.* 95(1): 46-47.
- Bryan, R. W.
1970. Giant board plant uses pine, hardwood. *Forest Ind.* 97(8): 46-48.
- Burnett, G. M.
1954. Mechanism of polymer reactions. High polymers, vol. III, 493 pp. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Canada Department of Fisheries and Forestry.
1970. Weather resistance of wood adhesives. *Res. News* 13(5): 9. *Can. Dep. Fish. and Forest.*
- Carruthers, J. F. S.
1963. A new method for selecting glues for RF heating. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 190-194.
- Carruthers, J. F. S.
1965. The Risborough continuous laminating machine. *Wood* 30(10): 51-54.
- Carswell, T. S.
1947. Phenoplasts, their structure, properties and chemical technology. High polymers, vol. VII, 267 pp. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.

- Choong, E. T., and Attarzadeh, H.
1970. Gluability of non-pressure treated southern pine veneer. La. State Univ. LSU Wood Util. Note 18, 4 pp.
- Cone, C. N.
1969. Foam extrusion—a new way of applying glue. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(11): 14–16.
- Clark, L. E.
1959. Urea resins for RF and heated-platen edge gluing. *Forest Prod. J.* 9(6): 15A–16A.
- Clark, F., Rutzler, J. E., and Savage, R. L., editors.
1954. Adhesion and adhesives—fundamentals and practice. 229 pp. N.Y.: John Wiley and Sons.
- Dawe, P. S.
1964. Standard tests for finger joints. *Wood* 29(12): 45–47.
- Delmonte, J.
1947. The technology of adhesives. 516 pp. N.Y.: Reinhold Publ. Corp.
- Deppe, H. J.
1969. Developments in the production of multi-layer foamed wood particle-boards. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(7): 27–33.
- Deppe, H. J., and Ernst, K.
1966. [Durability of urea and phenolic resins in particle boards.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 24: 285–290.
- Dillon, J. H.
1970. The physics of fiber contact. Third Edward R. Schwarz Memorial Lect., Amer. Soc. Mech. Eng. Textile Conf. 1969, 37 pp. Raleigh, N.C.
- Dorn, H., and Egner, K.
1961. Investigations on finger joints in bearing wooden structural parts after long years in use. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 19(3): 100–112.
- Dougherty, R. E.
1968. Particle-board industry forges ahead toward new production record. *South. Lumberman* 217(2704): 145.
- Egner, K., and Jagfeld, P.
1964. Investigations on finger-jointed planks after many years of use—behavior under pulsating tensile stress. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 22(3): 107–113.
- Eickner, H. W.
1942. The gluing characteristics of 15 species of wood with cold-setting, urea-resin glues. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1342, 10 pp.
- Fassnacht, D. L.
1964. The story behind the new southern pine plywood industry. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 21–22.
- Federal Housing Administration.
1969. Structural end-jointed lumber. Dep. Housing and Urban Develop., Fed. Housing Admin., Use of Mater. Bull. UM-51, 4 pp.
- Fengel, D., and Kumar, R. N.
1970. Electron microscopic studies of glued wood joints. *Holzforschung* 24: 177–181.
- Fischer, C., and Benseid, D. W.
1969. Gluing of southern pine veneer with blood modified phenolic resin glues. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(5): 32–37.
- Fleischer, H. O., and Lutz, J. F.
1963. Technical considerations for manufacturing southern pine plywood. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 39–42.
- Fowkes, F. M.
1967. Molecular forces at interfaces. In *Surfaces and coating related to paper and wood*, pp. 99–125. (R. H. Marchessault and C. Skaar, eds.) N.Y.: Syracuse Univ. Press.
- Freas, A. D.
1953. Laminated southern pine. *South. Lumberman* 187(2345): 168–169.
- Freas, A. D., and Selbo, M. L.
1954. Fabrication and design of glued laminated wood structural members. US DA Tech Bull. 1069, 220 pp.
- Freeman, H. G.
1970. Influence of production variables on quality of southern pine plywood. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(12): 28–31.

- Gatchell, C. J., and Heebink, B. G.
1964. Effect of particle geometry on properties of molded wood-resin blends. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 501-506.
- Gatchell, C. J., and Heebink, B. G.
1965. Free-close molding versus molding to stops in wood-resin blend processing. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0103, 15 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Gatchell, C. J., Heebink, B. G., and Hefty, F. V.
1966. Influence of component variables on properties of particleboard for exterior use. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(4): 45-59.
- Greten, E.
1966. Bison-verfahren. In *Holzspanwerkstoffe*, pp. 441-445. (F. Kollmann, ed.) N.Y.: Springer-Verlag.
- Guttenberg, S.
1970. Prospects for the southern pine plywood industry. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(10): 12-14.
- Hair, D., and Ulrich, A. H.
1969. The demand and price situation for forest products 1968-69. USDA Misc. Pub. 1086, 74 pp.
- Halligan, A. F.
1969. Recent glues and gluing research applied to particleboard. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(1): 44-51.
- Hann, R. A., Oviatt, A. E., Markstrom, D. M., and Duff, J. E.
1970. Moisture content of laminated timbers. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-149, 6 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Hanna, O. A.
1955. Laminated crossarms. *Forest Prod. J.* 5: 127-130.
- Haskell, H. H., Bair, W. M., and Donaldson, W.
1966. Progress and problems in the southern pine plywood industry. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(4): 19-24.
- Heebink, B. G.
1960. A new technology for evaluating show-through of particle board cores. *Forest Prod. J.* 10: 379-388.
- Heebink, B. G.
1967a. A look at degradation in particleboards for exterior use. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(1): 59-66.
- Heebink, B. G.
1967b. A procedure for quickly evaluating dimensional stability of particleboard. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(9): 77-80.
- Henry, W. T., and Gardner, R. E.
1954. Gluing pressure treated wood with resorcinol type adhesives. *Forest Prod. J.* 4: 300-303.
- Holley, D. L.
1969. Potential growth of the southern pine plywood industry. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SO-41, 22 pp. South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Hse, C. Y.
1968. Gluability of southern pine earlywood and latewood. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(12): 32-36.
- Hse, C. Y.
1971. Properties of phenolic adhesives as related to bond quality in southern pine plywood. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(1): 44-52.
- Hursey, P. B., and Fogg, P. J.
1970. Bond strength in southern pine plywood with hardwood inner plies as affected by preservative treatment. La. State Univ. LSU Wood Util. Note 19, 2 pp.
- Keylwerth, R.
1959. [Actual and possible reduction of anisotropy in wood-based boards.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 17: 234-238.
- Klauditz, W., and Stegmann, G.
1958. Über die Eignung von Pappelholz zur Herstellung von Holzspanplatten. *Holzforschung* 11: 174-179.
- Koch, P.
1964a. Beams from boltwood: a feasibility study. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 497-500.
- Koch, P.
1964b. Strength of beams with laminae located according to stiffness. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 456-460.
- Koch, P.
1964c. Wood machining processes. 530 pp. N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.
- Koch, P.
1965g. Effects of seven variables on properties of southern pine plywood. I. Maximizing wood failure. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 355-361.

- Koch, P.
1965b. Effects of seven variables on properties of southern pine plywood. II. Maximizing wet shear strength. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 463-465.
- Koch, P.
1965c. Effects of seven variables on properties of southern pine plywood. IV. Minimizing face checking. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 495-499.
- Koch, P.
1967a. Location of laminae by elastic modulus may permit manufacture of very strong beams from rotary-cut southern pine veneers. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SO-30, 12 pp. South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Koch, P.
1967b. Minimizing and predicting delamination of southern plywood in exterior exposure. *Forest Prod. J.* 17 (2): 41-47.
- Koch, P.
1967c. Super-strength beams laminated from rotary-cut southern pine veneer. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(6): 42-48.
- Koch, P.
1970. Delamination of southern pine plywood during three years of exterior exposure. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(11): 28-31.
- Koch, P.
1971. Process of making laminated wood product utilizing modulus of elasticity measurement. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,580,760) U.S. Pat. Off., Wash., D.C.
- Koch, P., and Bohannon, B.
1965. Beam strength as affected by placement of laminae. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 289-295.
- Koch, P., and Jenkinson, P.
1965. Effects of seven variables on properties of southern pine plywood. III. Maximizing dry strength. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 488-494.
- Koch, P., and Woodson, G. E.
1968. Laminating butt-jointed, log-run, southern pine veneers into long beams of uniform high strength. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(10): 45-51.
- Lambuth, A. L.
1970. Progress report on soft spreader rolls. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(1): 42.
- Louisiana Forestry Association.
1971. \$7 million particleboard plant announced by Wilamette, La. Forest Assoc. Newsletter 13(1): 3.
- McMillin, C. W.
1968. Fiberboards from loblolly pine refiner groundwood: effects of gross wood characteristics and board density. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(8): 51-59.
- McMillin, C. W.
1969a. Aspects of fiber morphology affecting properties of handsheets made from loblolly pine refiner groundwood. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 3: 139-149.
- McMillin, C. W.
1969b. Fiberboards from loblolly pine refiner groundwood: aspects of fiber morphology. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(7): 56-61.
- Malarkey, N.
1963. Continuous lamination of lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 68-69.
- Mann, J. W.
1954. Some fundamentals of high frequency gluing. *Forest Prod. J.* 4(6): 16A-18A.
- Mark, H. F., and Tobolsky, A. V.
1950. Physical chemistry of high polymeric systems. Ed. 2, 506 pp. High Polymers, vol. II. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Markwardt, L. J., and Youngquist, W. G.
1956. Tension test methods for wood, wood-based materials, and sandwich constructions. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 2055, 25 pp.
- Marian, J. E.
1968. Wood finger jointing. I. A new procedure for wood finger-jointing and its principles. *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 26(2): 41-45.
- Marian, J. E.
1969. Method of forming finger joints. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,480,054.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.

- Marian, J. E., Stumbo, D. A., and Maxey, C. W.
1958. Surface texture of wood as related to glue-joint strength. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 345-351.
- Marra, G. G.
1956. Development of a method for rapid laminating of lumber without the use of high-frequency heat. *Forest Prod. J.* 6: 97-104.
- Meyer, K. H.
1950. Natural and synthetic high polymers. Ed. 2, 912 pp. High Polymers, vol. IV. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Miller, D. G., and Cole, T. J. S.
1957. The dielectric properties of resin glues for wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 345-352.
- Miller, D. G., and George P.
1965. Causes of radio frequency burns in edge glued joints. *Forest Prod. J.* 15(1): 33-36.
- Mitlin, L., (Ed.).
1968. Particleboard manufacture and application. 222 pp. Great Britain: Pressmedia Ltd.
- Moody, R. C.
1970. Tensile strength of finger joints in pith-associated and non-pith-associated southern pine 2x6's. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-138, 20 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Moody, R. C., and Bohannon, B.
1970. Flexural properties of glued-laminated southern pine beams with laminations positioned by visual-stiffness criteria. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-127, 20 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Musselwhite, R. C., Jr.
1953. Laminating small timbers and dimension lumber from southern yellow pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 3(2): 20-21, 86.
- Nissan, A. H.
1967. The significance of hydrogen bonding at the surfaces of cellulose network structure. In Surfaces and coating related to paper and wood, pp. 221-265. (R. H. Marchessault and C. Skaar, eds.) N.Y.: Syracuse Univ. Press.
- Norman, W. C.
1964a. A look at the future of the southern pine plywood industry. *Wood & Wood Prod.* 69(1): 39-40, 42.
- Norman, W. C.
1964b. The future of the new southern pine plywood industry. *Forest Prod. J.* 14: 23-24.
- Oberg, J. C.
1961. The new vs. the old in finger joints. *Wood & Wood Prod.* 66(5): 35-36, 74.
- Orth, T. M.
1968. Southern pine plywood—five years old and still growing! *Wood & Wood Prod.* 73(5): 28-29, 40, 42.
- Page, D. H.
1969. The structure and properties of paper. Part I. The structure of paper. *Trend* 15: 7-12.
- Page, D. H. (Ed.)
1970. The physics and chemistry of wood pulp fibers. *Spec. Tech. Assoc. Pub.* 8, TAPPI. 348 pp.
- Page, D. H.
1971. The structure and properties of paper. Part II. Shrinkage, dimensional stability and stretch. *Trend* 18: 6-11.
- Patterson, T. J., and Snodgrass, J. D.
1959. Effect of formation variables on properties of wood particle moldings. *Forest Prod. J.* 9: 330-336.
- Pincus, G., Cottrell, E. F., and Richards, D. B.
1966. Rigid roof trusses with glued-finger corners. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(2): 37-42.
- Plath, E.
1963. [Effect of wood density on the properties of wood-based materials.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 21: 104-108.
- Post, P. W.
1958. Effect of particle geometry and resin content on bending strength of oak flake board. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 317-322.

- Post, P. W.
1961. Relationship of flake size and resin content to mechanical and dimensional properties of flake board. *Forest Prod. J.* 11: 34-37.
- Quirk, J. T., Blomquist, R. F., and Kozlowski, T. T.
1967a. Transverse bonding of slash pine joints. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(12): 40-42.
- Quirk, J. T., Kozlowski, T. T., and Blomquist, R. F.
1967b. Effects of adhesive formulation and age on strength of bonded butt joints. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0178*, 16 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Quirk, J. T., Kozlowski, T. T., and Blomquist, R. F.
1967c. Location of failure in adhesive-bonded butt joints. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0177*, 16 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Quirk, J. T., Kozlowski, T. T., and Blomquist, R. F.
1968. Contributions of end-wall and lumen bonding to strength of butt joints. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0179*, 12 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Rackwitz, G.
1963. [The effect of chip dimensions on some properties of wood particle boards.] *Holz als Roh- und Werkstoff* 21: 200-209.
- Redfarn, C. A., and Bedford, J.
1960. *Experimental plastics; a practical course for students.* Ed. 2, 140 pp. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Reinhart, F. W.
1954. Nature of adhesion. *J. Chem. Educ.* 31: 128-132.
- Richards, D. B.
1958a. End gluing lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 99-104.
- Richards, D. B.
1958b. Simplified tension test for wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 14-17.
- Richards, D. B.
1962. High-strength corner joints for wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 12: 413-418.
- Richards, D. B.
1963. Improved tips for finger joints. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 250-251.
- Richards, D. B.
1968. Glue durability in finger-jointed southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(10): 54-56.
- Richards, D. B., and Cool, B. M.
1953. End joints for southern pine. *Ala. Polytech. Inst. Agr. Exp. Sta. Leaf.* 39, 4 pp.
- Richards, D. B., and Goodrick, F. E.
1959. Tensile strength of scarf joints in southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 9: 177-179.
- Rydholm, S.
1965. *Pulping processes.* 1269 pp. N.Y.: John Wiley and Sons.
- Sampson, G. R.
1970. Market outlook for the southern pine glue-laminating industry. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(11): 7-10.
- Schaeffer, R. E.
1966. Preliminary study of the gluing of ammonium salt-treated wood with resorcinol-resin glues. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0112*, 9 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Schaeffer, R. E.
1967. Gluing ammonium-salt-treated southern pine with resorcinol-resin adhesives. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0151*, 16 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Schaeffer, R. E.
1970. Gap-filling adhesives in finger joints. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-140*, 7 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Schaeffer, R. E., and Gillespie, R. H.
1970. Improving end-to-end grain butt joint gluing of white pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(6): 39-43.
- Schildknecht, C. E., (Ed.).
1955. *Polymer processes; chemical technology of plastics, resins, rubbers, adhesives and fibers.* High Polymers, vol. X. 934 pp. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.

- Selbo, M. L.
1961. Effect of solvent on gluing preservative-treated red oak, Douglas-fir and southern pine. *Amer. Wood Preserv. Assoc. Proc.* 57: 152-163.
- Selbo, M. L.
1962. Test for quality of glue bonds in end-jointed lumber. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 2258, 18 pp.
- Selbo, M. L.
1963. Effect of joint geometry on tensile strength of finger joints. *Forest Prod. J.* 13: 390-400.
- Selbo, M. L.
1965. Summary of information on gluing of treated wood. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 1789, 21 pp.
- Selbo, M. L.
1967. Long term effect of preservatives on gluelines in laminated beams. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(5): 23-32.
- Selbo, M. L.
1969. Performance of southern pine plywood during five years exposure to weather. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(8): 56-60.
- Selbo, M. L., and Knauss, A. C.
1954. Wood laminating comes of age. *Forest Prod. J.* 4: 69-76.
- Selbo, M. L., Knauss, A. C., and Worth, H. E.
1965. After two decades of service . . . Glulam timbers show good performance. *Forest Prod. J.* 11: 466-472.
- Shelton, F. J.
1969. Plywood adhesives—developments and trends. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(1): 9-12.
- Shen, K. C.
1970. Correlation between internal bond and the shear strength measured by twisting thin plates of particleboard. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(11): 16-20.
- Sherman, D. F.
1967. Plywood weathers rough '66, yet scores notable gains. *Forest Ind.* 94(1): 42-45.
- Simmonds, F. A., and Chidester, G. H.
1963. Elements of wood fiber structure and fiber bonding. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-5*, 9 pp. *Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.*
- Sorenson, W. R., and Campbell, T. W.
1961. Preparative methods of polymer chemistry. 337 pp. *N.Y.: Interscience Publ. Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.*
1965. Glued-lumber standards. *South. Pine Insp. Bur.*, 16 pp. *New Orleans, La.*
- Stamm, A. J.
1964. Wood and cellulose science. 549 pp. *N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.*
- Stannett, V. T.
1967. Mechanisms of wet-strength development in paper. *In Surfaces and coating related to paper and wood*, pp. 269-299. (R. H. Marchessault and C. Skaar, eds.) *N.Y.: Syracuse Univ. Press.*
- Stille, J. K.
1962. Introduction to polymer chemistry. 248 pp. *N.Y.: John Wiley and Sons.*
- Strickler, M. D.
1962. Impression finger jointing of lumber. *Wash. State Univ. Res. Rep.* 62, pp. 15-104. *Also in Forest Prod. J.* 17(10): 23-28. 1967.
- Strickler, M. D.
1966. Finger jointing of lumber. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,262,723.) *U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.*
- Strickler, M. D.
1967. Impression finger jointing of lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(10): 23-28.
- Strickler, M. D.
1970. End gluing of green lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(9): 47-51.
- Strickler, M. D., Pellerin, R. F., and Talbott, J. W.
1970. Experiments in proof loading structural end-jointed lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(2): 29-35.
- Suchsland, O.
1959. An analysis of the particle board process. *Mich. Agr. Exp. Sta. Quar. Bull.* 42: 350-372.
- Suchsland, O.
1960. An analysis of a two-species three-layer wood flake-board. *Mich. Agr. Exp. Sta. Quar. Bull.* 43: 375-393.

- Suchsland, O.
1968. Particle-board from southern pine. *South. Lumberman* 217(2704): 139-144.
- Suchsland, O., and Stevens, R. R.
1968. Gluability of southern pine veneer dried at high temperatures. *Forest Prod. J.* 18(1): 38-42.
- Syme, J. H.
1960. Factors for efficiency in lumber end and edge-gluing operations. *Forest Prod. J.* 10: 228-233.
- Syska, A. D.
1969. Exploratory investigation of fire-retardant treatments for particleboard. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0201, 20 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Truax, T. R.
1929. The gluing of wood. USDA Bull. 1500, 78 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1948. Synthetic-resin glues. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1336 (rev.), 21 pp. Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1955. Wood handbook. USDA Agr. Handbook 72, 528 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1939. Casein glues: their manufacture, preparation, and application. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 280, 11 pp. Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1956. Durability of water-resistant woodworking glues. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1530 (rev.), 40 pp.
- U.S. Department of Commerce.
1963. Structural glued laminated timber. Commercial Standard CS 253-63. U.S. Dep. Comm., Wash., D.C.
- U.S. Department of commerce.
1966a. Mat-formed wood particle board. Commercial Standard CS 236-66. U.S. Dep. Comm., Wash., D.C.
- U.S. Department of Commerce.
1966b. Softwood plywood—construction and industrial. U.S. Product Standard PS 1-66. U.S. Dep. Comm., Wash., D.C.
- Van den Akker, J. A.
1969. An analysis of the Nordman "bonding strength." *TAPPI* 52: 2386-2389.
- Voiutskii S. S.
1963. Autohesion and adhesion of high polymers. 272 pp. N.Y.: John Wiley and Sons.
- Watson, D. A.
1959. Low cost wood-particle moldings. *Mater. in Design Eng.* 49(5): 103-105.
- Weakley, F. B., and Mehlretter, C. L.
1965. Low cost protein glue for southern pine plywood. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 8-12.
- Webb, D. A.
1970. Wood laminating adhesive system for ribbon spreading. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(4): 19-23.
- Weiss, P., editor.
1962. Adhesion and cohesion. 272 pp. N.Y.: Elsevier Publ. Co.
- West Coast Adhesive Manufacturers Association.
1966. A proposed new test for accelerated aging of phenolic resin-bonded particleboard. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(6): 19-23.
- West Coast Adhesive Manufacturers Association.
1970. Accelerated aging of phenolic resin bonded particleboard. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(10): 26-27.
- Western Wood Products Association.
1969. WWPA certification and quality control program for end jointed light framing, joists and planks and decking. *Western Wood Products*, 4 pp. Portland, Oreg.

11

24

Mechanical fastening

CONTENTS

	Page
24-1 DURATION OF LOAD	1225
24-2 NAILS AND SPIKES	1225
EFFECT OF WOOD FACTORS ON WITH-	
DRAWAL RESISTANCE	1226
<i>Specific gravity</i>	1227
<i>Grain direction</i>	1227
<i>Moisture content and time elapsed after driving</i> ..	1227
<i>Impregnants in wood</i>	1230
EFFECT OF MANNER OF DRIVING ON WITH-	
DRAWAL RESISTANCE	1232
<i>Slant driving</i>	1232
<i>Clinching</i>	1234
<i>Preboring</i>	1237
EFFECT OF NAIL DIMENSIONS ON WITH-	
DRAWAL RESISTANCE	1237
<i>Diameter</i>	1237
<i>Penetration</i>	1237
<i>Point</i>	1238
EFFECT OF SHANK CHARACTERISTICS ON	
WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE	1240
<i>Plain-shank nails</i>	1240
<i>Cement-coated nails</i>	1240
<i>Etched nails</i>	1240
<i>Zinc-coated (galvanized) nails</i>	1241
<i>Plastic-coated nails</i>	1242
<i>Diagonally barbed square-wire nails</i>	1245
<i>Twisted square-wire nails</i>	1245
<i>Helically fluted nails</i>	1246
<i>Helically fluted auto nails</i>	1246
<i>Threaded nails</i>	1248
<i>Cut nails and toothed nails</i>	1250

	Page
ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOADS	1252
LATERAL LOAD-CARRYING CAPACITY OF	
NAILS	1254
<i>Plain-shank nails</i>	1255
<i>Coated nails</i>	1256
<i>Twisted square-wire nails</i>	1256
<i>Helically fluted auto nails</i>	1256
<i>Threaded nails</i>	1256
<i>Slant-driven nails</i>	1257
<i>Clinched nails</i>	1259
<i>Multi-nail joints</i>	1259
ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOADS	1259
DEFECTS IN NAILED JOINTS	1261
<i>Splits</i>	1261
<i>Nail popping</i>	1262
<i>Stains and corrosion</i>	1262
NAILHEAD DESIGN	1263
NAILING OF PARTICULAR PRODUCTS	1263
24-3 STAPLES	1263
EXPERIMENTAL DATA	1265
<i>Static withdrawal resistance</i>	1265
<i>Static lateral resistance</i>	1267
<i>Impact lateral resistance</i>	1268
STAPLE SIZE AND SPACING FOR CONSTRUCTION APPLICATIONS	1269
24-4 WOOD SCREWS	1270
ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOADS	1270
ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOADS	1273
SCREW SIZE AND SPACING FOR ATTACHMENT OF PLYWOOD	1274
SCREW WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE IN PARTICLEBOARD	1275
24-5 LAG SCREWS	1276
ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOADS	1278
ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOAD	1279
HEAD EMBEDMENT	1281
24-6 BOLTS	1281
ALLOWABLE LOADS PARALLEL TO GRAIN	1283
ALLOWABLE LOADS PERPENDICULAR TO GRAIN	1287
ALLOWABLE LOAD AT AN ANGLE TO THE GRAIN	1287

	Page
EFFECT OF CONDITION OF LUMBER AND SERVICE	1290
HOLE SIZE AND QUALITY	1290
BOLT SPACING AND NET SECTION	1291
LOAD DISTRIBUTION IN MULTIPLE-BOLT TENSION JOINTS	1291
BOLTED JOINTS IN PLYWOOD	1292
24-7 DRIFT BOLTS	1292
ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOAD	1293
ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOAD	1293
24-8 TIMBER CONNECTORS	1293
SPLIT RINGS	1294
TOOTHED RINGS	1294
SHEAR PLATES	1294
SPIKE GRIDS	1295
ALLOWABLE LONG-CONTINUED LOAD	1296
<i>Conditions of use and direction of load application</i>	1296
<i>Member width</i>	1297
<i>Spacing</i>	1297
<i>Side members on shear plate connectors</i>	1302
<i>Wind and earthquake loads</i>	1303
<i>Impact loads</i>	1303
ALLOWABLE NORMAL-DURATION LOAD	1303
ALLOWABLE LOAD FOR SQUARE SPIKE GRIDS	1311
24-9 PLATE CONNECTORS	1312
24-10 SHEET METAL AND ANGLE IRON ANCHORS	1313
TRIP-L-GRIP FRAMING ANCHORS	1314
DU-AL-CLIP	1315
U-GRIP JOIST AND BEAM ANCHORS	1315
TY-DOWN RAFTER ANCHORS	1316
ANGLE CLIPS	1316
TEN-CON CONNECTORS	1317
24-11 EXPLOSIVE-DRIVEN PINS AND STUDS	1318
24-12 LITERATURE CITED	1319

Mechanical fastening¹

Southern hurricanes have shown conclusively that the strength and storm resistance of structures built from southern pine depend on good anchorage (Stern 1970a) and strong fastenings at all crucial points. Stated simply, good fasteners develop the full strength of the materials which they join. Observations of damage have resulted in general recommendations on structural fastenings in buildings (Smith 1961; Anderson and Smith 1965; McDonald 1967; Patterson 1969; Southern Pine Association 1969; Stern 1969a; Zornig and Sherwood 1969; American Plywood Association 1967; Dikkers and Thom 1970).

The text in this chapter does not treat structures in their entirety, but instead discusses a few of the most important devices used for fastening timbers, poles, lumber, plywood, particleboard, and fiberboard to each other and to other materials. Included are nails of numerous designs, spikes, drift bolts, screws, bolts, connector rings and plates, sheet-metal hangers, and explosive-driven pins and studs.

Values for the allowable loads tabulated in this chapter have come from three sources: USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955), Southern Pine Association (1964), and the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968). Because the standards for lumber dimensions and specific gravity change occasionally, designers of mechanically fastened joints for southern pine should maintain a current version of the National Design Specification.

Two measures of fastener efficiency are in common use. **Withdrawal resistance** is a measure of the force, applied parallel to the fastener axis, required to pull a fastened member away from the member holding the fastener's point; if a nail, screw, or bolt is improperly designed, joint failure may result from head pullthrough, in which case the head is drawn through the member adjacent to the head before the shank can be withdrawn from the member holding the point. **Lateral resistance** is a measure of the load required to cause failure when a joint is loaded so that adjacent faces of mating members define a shear plane (fig. 24-17).

The strength of certain mechanically fastened joints is a function of fractional powers of specific gravity (G) of the wood. As shown in chapter 7, specific gravity varies greatly between species, within species, and within trees. The tabulation following should be useful when calculat-

¹ Chapter 24 has been condensed from Stern (1969c) by permission of E. George Stern and Virginia Polytechnic Institute.

ing allowable loads for southern pine throughout a range of specific gravities.

G	$G^{3/2}$	G^2	$G^{5/2}$
0.40	0.253	0.160	0.101
.45	.302	.203	.136
.50	.354	.250	.177
.55	.408	.303	.224
.59	.453	.348	.267
.60	.465	.360	.279
.65	.524	.423	.341
.70	.586	.490	.410
.75	.649	.563	.487

24-1 DURATION OF LOAD

Since wood can sustain higher stresses for short periods of time than for long periods, allowable loads transmitted by mechanical fasteners into wood are influenced by the duration of load application. In recognition of this, duration-of-load adjustment factors have been incorporated in the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) for seasoned lumber used in dry locations. The tabulated allowable design values are **normal** loads, for application continuously or cumulatively for a duration of approximately 10 years.

If the design load is applied **continuously** throughout the remaining life of the structure, the allowable load values are reduced 10 percent. If the design load is applied for only a **2-month duration**, as in the case of snow loads, the allowable load values can be increased 15 percent. If the design load is applied for **1-week duration**, the allowable load values can be increased 25 percent. For **wind** and **earthquake** loads, the allowable load values can be increased 33-1/3 percent; and for **impact** loads, the allowable loads can be increased 100 percent. These decreases and increases, not to be applied cumulatively, are applicable to loads transmitted by mechanical fasteners into wood, provided the wood surrounding the fastener, and not the strength of the fastener, determines the load-transmission capability.

24-2 NAILS AND SPIKES

According to Percival (1965), there are about 75,000 fasteners—mostly nails—in a 1,500-square-foot rectangular frame house. The effectiveness of these nailed joints depends on the properties of the wood, the dimensions and shape of the nail, the manner in which the nail is driven, and the conditions of use.

The term "penny (d)", originally the price per hundred, is used to specify sizes of nails and spikes; twopenny, tenpenny, etc. nails have approximately the dimensions shown in table 24-1. American Society for Testing and Materials Standard D2478-69 contains a glossary of terms

TABLE 24-1.—*Sizes of common wire nails and spikes*

Size	Gage (W&M) ¹	Length	Diameter	
			D	D ^{3/2}
----- Inches -----				
NAILS				
2d.....	15	1	0.072	0.0193
4d.....	12½	1½	.098	.0307
6d.....	11½	2	.113	.0380
8d.....	10¼	2½	.131	.0474
10d.....	9	3	.148	.0570
12d.....	9	3¼	.148	.0570
16d.....	8	3½	.162	.0652
20d.....	6	4	.192	.0841
30d.....	5	4½	.207	.0942
40d.....	4	5	.225	.1067
50d.....	3	5½	.244	.1205
60d.....	2	6	.263	.1349
SPIKES				
10d.....	6	3	.192	.0841
12d.....	6	3¼	.192	.0841
16d.....	5	3½	.207	.0942
20d.....	4	4	.225	.1067
30d.....	3	4½	.244	.1205
40d.....	2	5	.263	.1349
50d.....	1	5½	.283	.1505
60d.....	1	6	.283	.1505
5/16-inch.....		7	.312	.1743
		8	.312	.1743
3/8-inch.....		8	.375	.2296
		9	.375	.2296
		10	.375	.2296
		12	.375	.2296

¹ Washburn and Moen wire gage.

descriptive of types of nails, together with illustrations of various nail heads and points. Federal Specification FF-N-105a (General Services Administration 1963) specifies sizes, finishes, shank design, and metals for nails and staples. Stern (1967a) has published a handbook that contains definitions of nail types and sizes.

EFFECT OF WOOD FACTORS ON WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE

The principal variables in wood that affect withdrawal resistance of nails are specific gravity, penetration into the wood, grain direction, moisture content at time the nail is driven, change in moisture content with

time in use, and content of preservatives or other impregnants in the wood.

Specific gravity.—According to the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968), withdrawal resistance from side grain is proportional to $G^{5/2}$, where G equals the specific gravity based on oven-dry volume and weight; i.e., withdrawal resistance of a nail driven in wood of 0.7 specific gravity is approximately four times that of the same nail in wood of 0.4 specific gravity. Compared with most other softwoods in common use, southern pine has a high specific gravity and its strength at nailed joints is exceptionally high.

Grain direction.—Nails driven perpendicular to the grain have 25 to 50 percent greater withdrawal resistance than those driven parallel to the wood fibers into the end of the piece; the difference is less pronounced in dense woods than in lighter woods. After a time interval, or after moisture content changes, the ratio between end-grain and side-grain withdrawal resistance is generally higher than that observed immediately after driving (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 171).

Stern (1950c) has provided some data specific to southern pine for nails pulled immediately after driving. His results were stated as a ratio between withdrawal resistance in end-grain southern pine at about 12-percent moisture content and side-grain southern pine at about 20-percent moisture content.

Type of nail shank	Ratio of end- to side-grain withdrawal resistance
Plain	0.93
Helically threaded	.84
Annularly threaded	.54

When data from Stern (1950c) for side-grain southern pine at 10- to 11-percent moisture content were compared with those for end-grain southern pine at 12-percent moisture content, the ratios were 0.75 for helically threaded shanks and 0.48 for annularly threaded shanks.

Stern (1969c, p. 40) published additional data comparing withdrawal resistance of five types of 3-1/4- and 3-1/2-inch-long nails driven into side and end grain of green southern pine; these data showed that the ratio between end-grain and side-grain withdrawal resistance was a function of time and manner of withdrawal, as well as nail type (table 24-2). A delay of several weeks prior to pulling resulted in an increased ratio of withdrawal resistance between end-grain and side-grain southern pine; coated nails had higher ratios than uncoated nails. The ratios were lower for impact withdrawal than for withdrawal at 0.1 inch per minute.

Moisture content and time elapsed after driving.—In general, nails driven into green wood and pulled before any seasoning takes place offer about the same withdrawal resistance as nails driven into seasoned wood and pulled soon after driving. If, however, smooth-shank common wire nails are driven into green wood that is allowed to season, or into seasoned

wood that is subjected to cycles of wetting and drying before the nails are pulled, approximately 75 percent of the initial withdrawal resistance may be lost (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 169).

When nails of the types shown in figure 24-1 were driven into green southern pine and then pulled at intervals during 26 weeks of air-drying, common wire nails lost about three-fourths of their withdrawal resistance;

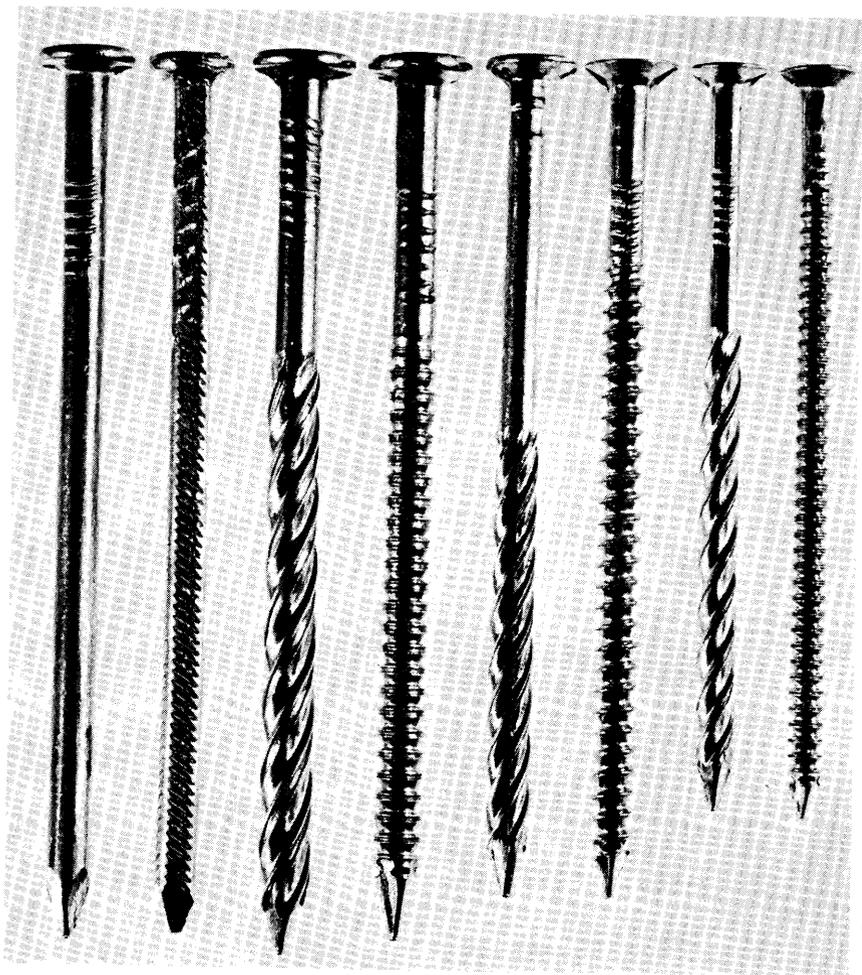


Figure 24-1.—Steel nails used to fasten floor underlayment. From left to right:

$2\frac{1}{2}$ - x 0.129-inch, plain-shank, common wire nail; 101 per pound.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ - x 0.132-inch, diagonally barbed square-wire nail; 115 per pound.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ - x 0.130-inch, helically threaded nail; 95 per pound.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ - x 0.135-inch, annularly threaded nail; 96 per pound.

$2\frac{3}{8}$ - x 0.113-inch, helically threaded sinker; 140 per pound.

$2\frac{3}{8}$ - x 0.118-inch, annularly threaded sinker; 140 per pound.

$2\frac{1}{4}$ - x 0.099-inch, helically threaded sinker; 213 per pound.

$2\frac{1}{4}$ - x 0.101-inch, annularly threaded sinker; 210 per pound.

(Photo from Stern 1957c.)

TABLE 24-2.—*Withdrawal resistance ratios for coated and uncoated smooth nails driven into end grain and side grain of green southern pine*
(adapted from Stern 1969c, p. 40)

Nail description	Ratio of end-grain to side-grain withdrawal resistance			
	Static ¹ immediate	Static ¹ delayed ²	Impact immediate	Impact delayed ²
3½- by 0.162-inch common wire -----	0.49	0.99	0.49	0.66
3½- by 0.136-inch smooth box -----	.53	1.23	.44	.45
3¼- by 0.150-inch cement coated -----	.65	1.53	.46	.70
3½- by 0.127-inch plastic coated -----	.74	1.65	.24	.86
Average -----	.60	1.35	.41	.67

¹ Withdrawn at 0.1 inch per minute.

² Several weeks.

helically and annularly threaded nails, however, gained substantially in withdrawal resistance. Diagonally barbed, square-wire nails were intermediate with a slight loss in withdrawal resistance (fig. 24-2).

Elapsed time causes little loss in withdrawal resistance of smooth nails driven into dry southern pine; this holds true for coated and uncoated nails (table 24-3). Smooth nails—whether uncoated or coated—driven into green southern pine lose considerably more than half of their initial withdrawal resistance if pulled after a delay of 6 weeks (table 24-3).

TABLE 24-3.—*Effect of time since driving on withdrawal resistance of smooth, uncoated and coated nails driven into edge-grain dry and green southern pine*
(adapted from Stern 1969c, pp. 16-17)

Type nail	Diameter	Penetration	Withdrawal resistance	
			Immediate	After delay ¹
----- Inches ----- Pounds -----				
DRY				
Common wire.....	0.162	1.75	453	431
Smooth box.....	.136	1.75	352	308
Cement coated.....	.150	1.50	411	387
Uncoated plain shank.....	.127	1.75	384	331
Plastic coated.....	.127	1.75	589	536
GREEN				
Common wire.....	.162	2.50	700	273
Smooth box.....	.136	2.50	519	206
Cement coated.....	.150	2.25	550	162
Uncoated plain shank.....	.127	2.50	409	112
Plastic coated.....	.127	2.50	596	210

¹ Pulled 3 weeks after driving into dry wood and 6 weeks after driving into green wood.

Impregnants in wood.—Since nails are lubricated by oilborne preservatives, driving forces and withdrawal resistance of smooth nails may be less in treated than in untreated southern pine. As in untreated wood, withdrawal resistance of smooth nails diminishes with time after driving in freshly creosoted wood. Helically threaded and annularly threaded nails of hardened, medium-carbon steel, however, not only have high initial withdrawal resistance in pressure creosoted southern pine, but withdrawal

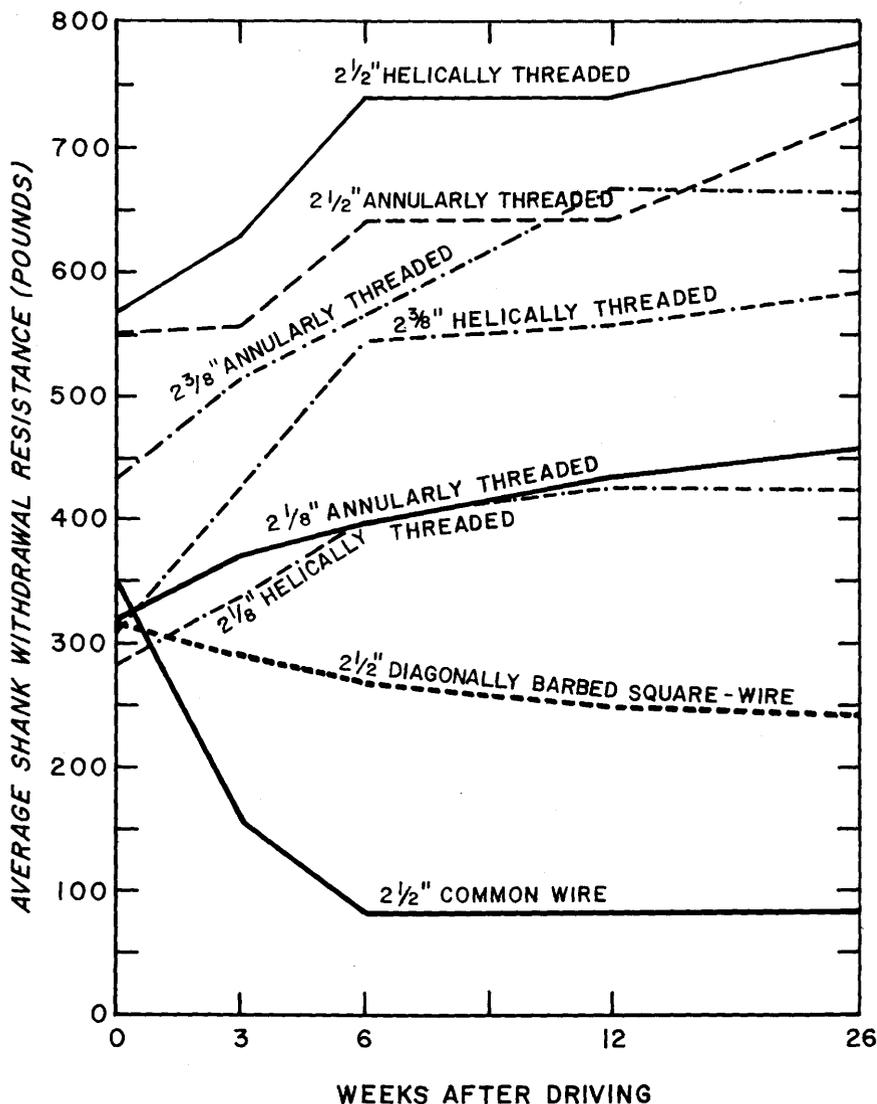


Figure 24-2.—Relationship between elapsed time after driving and withdrawal resistance of variously shaped nails 0.099 to .135 inch in diameter driven through green, 7/8-inch subflooring into green (119-percent moisture content) southern pine of 0.54 oven-dry specific gravity. See figure 24-1 for description of nails. (Drawing after Stern 1957c.)

resistance has been shown by Stern (1956c) to increase over a 6-1/2-week period (fig. 24-3).

The effects of 18 different preservative treatments (salts and pentachlorophenol) on withdrawal resistance were studied by Scholten (1965a). He used ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa* Laws.) boxes exposed outdoors for 5 years in Madison, Wis., and then equilibrated to about 12-percent moisture content; specific gravity was 0.42 based on volume at test and oven-dry weight (approximately equivalent to 0.44 oven-dry specific gravity). Sixpenny, cement-coated box nails, 1-7/8 inches long, 0.0865 inch in diameter, were driven to a penetration of about 1.1 inches into side grain. The average withdrawal resistance after exposure did not vary appreciably for different types of treatments except that those preservatives containing a water repellent gave substantially lower values; for the 13 treatments without a water repellent it was 133 pounds, whereas the four treatments with water repellent averaged 73 pounds. Exposed

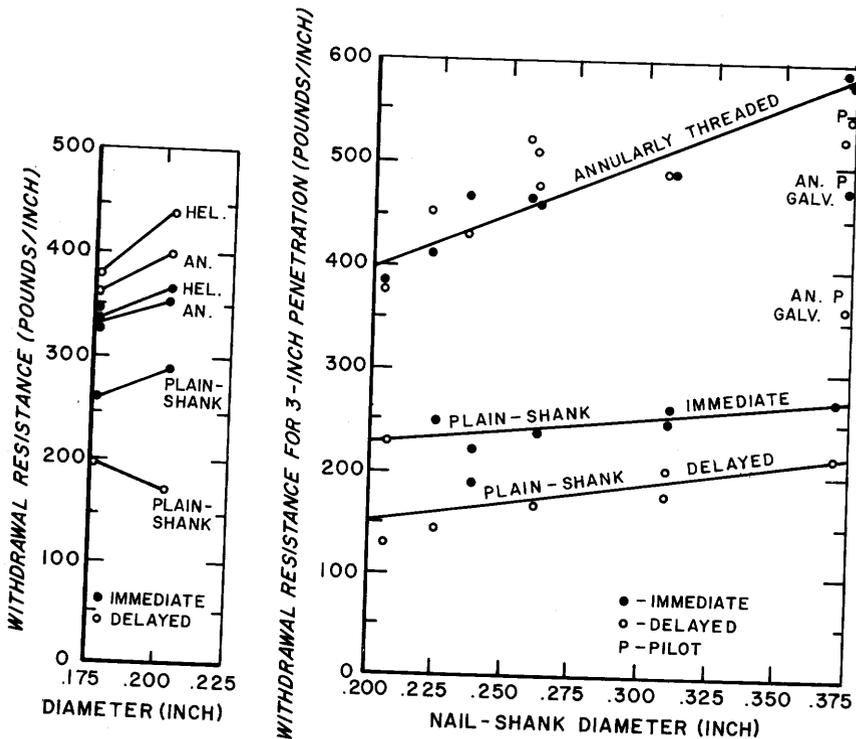


Figure 24-3.—Withdrawal resistance of nails driven radially into a pressure-cresoted southern pine pole (0.66 oven-dry specific gravity) at 30-percent moisture content; moisture content at time of delayed withdrawal (6½ weeks after driving) was 22 percent. (Left) Hardened, medium-carbon-steel nails with plain, annularly threaded, and helically threaded shanks. (Right) Plain-shank and annularly threaded, bright, low-carbon-steel nails; also galvanized, annularly threaded nails driven into pilot holes. (Drawing after Stern 1956a.)

treated boxes had higher withdrawal resistance (40 pounds) than untreated boxes stored inside for the same period. The higher value in the treated wood was attributed to roughening of the nails from corrosion.

While no data on the withdrawal resistance of nails in southern pine treated with fire retardants have been published, such treatments, which slightly diminish strength properties of wood, probably diminish withdrawal resistance of nails also. Variations in degree of fire-retardant-caused corrosion make generalization difficult.

EFFECT OF MANNER OF DRIVING ON WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE

Nails are usually driven at right angles to wood surfaces without pre-bored pilot holes and without clinching nail points. Preboring and clinching increase withdrawal resistance of nails driven into southern pine. The effect of slant driving is not entirely clear, but withdrawal resistance (normal to mating surfaces) appears to be diminished by slant driving.

Slant driving.—According to Scholten (1965b), the withdrawal load per nail in toenailed stud joints (fig. 24-4A), for all conditions of seasoning, is about two-thirds that for nails straight driven through the sill into the end grain of the stud (fig. 24-4B).

Scholten and Molander (1950) measured the maximum tensile force required to pull Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) studs away from a sill when studs were toenailed to the sill with four common wire nails; this force was compared to that required when two nails of the same size were driven straight through the sill into the end grain of the stud (fig. 24-4). In this experiment, nails slant driven in toenailed joints probably had greater penetration into the side grain of the sill than the straight-driven nails had into the end grain of the stud. For this reason it is not surprising that the four-nail toenailed joints were more than twice as strong as the two-nail joints; see data following on maximum tensile force to separate the joints shown in figure 24-4.

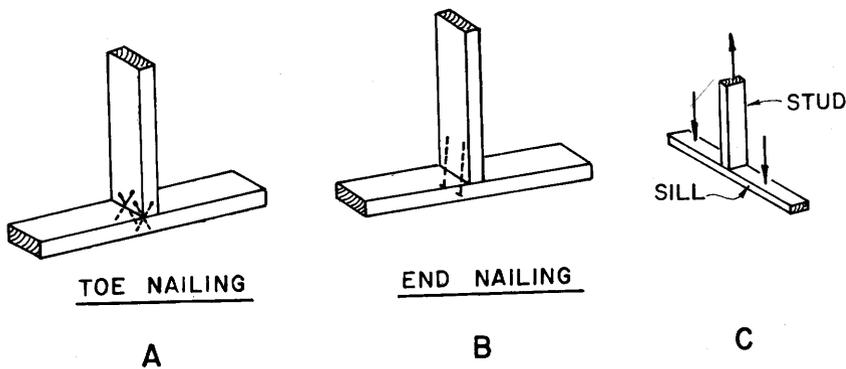


Figure 24-4.—Nailed joints between studs and sills. (A) Stud toenailed onto sill; four nails. (B) Sill straight nailed onto stud; two nails. (C) Mode of tension test.

Moisture content at fabrication and at test; nail size	Studs toenailed to sill with four nails	Two nails driven straight through sills into end grain of studs
	----- Pounds -----	
Fabricated dry and tested dry		
10d.....	816	310
16d.....	871	211
Fabricated green and tested green		
10d.....	795	224
16d.....	1,032	346
Fabricated green and tested dry		
10d.....	865	128
16d.....	1,028	163

Stern (1951b) compared the effectiveness of 3-inch nails straight driven and cross-slant driven into side grain of southern pine (fig. 24-5). He found that in no case did the pair of cross-slant-driven nails have twice the

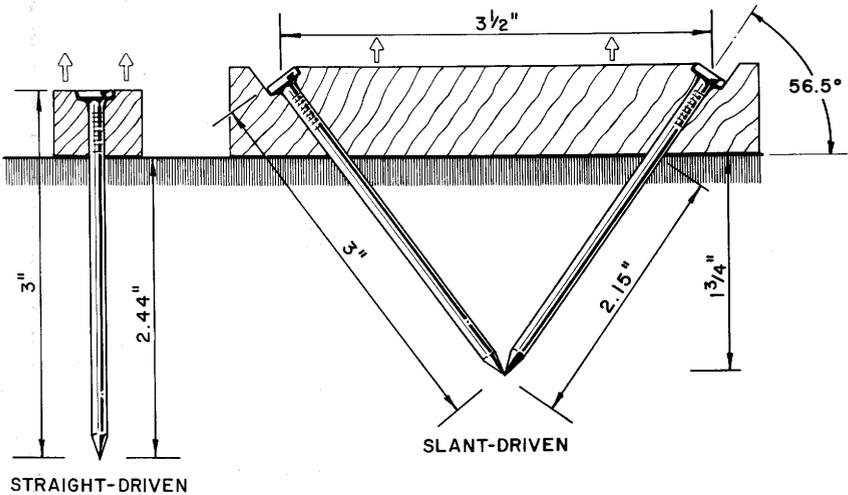
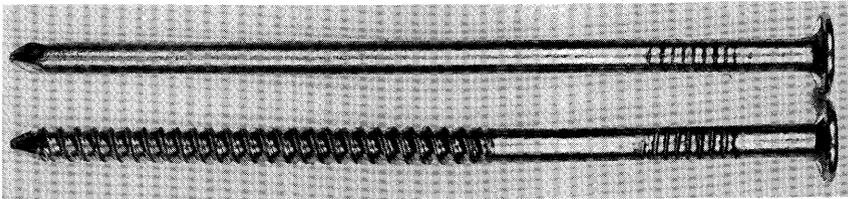


Figure 24-5.—Comparison of nails slant driven and straight driven into side grain of southern pine. (Top) Low-carbon-steel, plain-shank and helically threaded nails both 3 inches long and 0.124 inch in diameter. (Bottom) Test setup for single straight nail and two slant-driven nails. Withdrawal resistance was measured perpendicular to the joint interface (arrows) at a withdrawal rate of 0.06 inch per minute. Lateral resistance of slant nails was measured perpendicular to the plane formed by the two nails. (Drawings and photo from Stern 1951b.)

withdrawal resistance of a single straight-driven nail (table 24-4); contributing to this result is the lesser penetration of the slant-driven nails. Results were generally similar for both smooth and helically threaded nails. Stern did not compare slant nailing with nails driven through a sill into end grain of a stud as shown in figure 24-4B. The results of Stern's test were somewhat confounded by the fact that the specific gravity of the wood into which the slant-driven nails were set was 6 percent less than the wood into which the straight-driven nails were set.

Clinching.—A nail driven through the southern pine lumber and then **clinched** by bending the emergent point along or across the grain has greater withdrawal resistance than an unclinched nail of the same size and type. The percentage gain in withdrawal resistance depends on nail type, size, and penetration. Data from Stern (1950a, 1967b, 1968c) indicate that if nails 0.135 inch in diameter are driven through dry (11-percent moisture content) southern pine 7/8-inch thick, clinched about 1/4-inch, and pulled immediately, the ratio between clinched and unclinched withdrawal strength is approximately as follows:

Nail type	Direction of clinch	
	Along grain	Across grain
Annularly threaded.....	1.24	1.35
Cement coated.....	1.48	1.45
Plain shank.....	1.45	1.65
Helically threaded.....	1.90	2.00
Average.....	1.52	1.61

TABLE 24-4.—*Withdrawal resistance¹ of a pair of nails cross-slant-driven into side grain of southern pine, expressed as a percentage of the value for a single nail of the same size and type straight driven into side-grain southern pine (adapted from Stern 1951b)*

Moisture content at fabrication and at test	Nail type	
	Plain shank	Helically threaded
	<i>Percent</i>	
Fabricated and tested green.....	96	96
Fabricated green, tested at 12 to 14 percent.....	126	112
Fabricated green, tested at 10 to 11 percent.....	-----	119
Fabricated and tested at 19 percent ..	80	121
Fabricated at 19 percent, tested at 11 to 12 percent.....	146	142
Fabricated and tested at 11 percent ..	90	148

¹ See figure 24-5 for test mode.

Stern's (1950a) data indicate that a plain-shank nail given a 3/4-inch length of clinch across the grain did not have greater withdrawal resistance than one given a 1/4-inch clinch across the grain.

Clinching nails is most advantageous when plain-shank nails are driven into moist wood and pulling is delayed until the lumber has dried. When nails 0.120 inch in diameter were driven through 3/4-inch southern pine at 21-percent moisture content, clinched 1/4-inch across the grain, and pulled after the lumber had dried to 12 percent, the ratio of clinched to unclinched withdrawal resistance was as follows (Stern 1967b):

Type nail	Ratio, clinched to unclinched
Plain shank.....	5.45
Helically threaded.....	2.03

Low-carbon-steel nails can be automatically clinched by driving them at a slight angle against a steel back-up plate (fig. 24-6). Automatically clinched nails driven at 15° (or slightly more) from perpendicular to the lumber surface offer highest withdrawal resistance values (Stern 1968c). The following tabulation shows withdrawal resistance (perpendicular to board surface) of 0.120-inch nails driven through 3/4-inch southern pine of 0.62 oven-dry specific gravity and about 19-percent moisture content so that 1/4-inch extended beyond the board and was clinched; for the nails driven perpendicularly, however, projection was only 1/8-inch.

Time tested and nail type	Angle from perpendicular					
	0°	10°	15°	20°	25°	30°
	----- Pounds -----					
Immediate withdrawal						
Plain shank.....	116	138	148	131	179	168
Helically threaded.....	256	275	284	298	---	---
Delayed (4 weeks) withdrawal						
Plain shank.....	54	100	186	156	159	172
Helically threaded.....	240	341	324	372	---	---

A soft nail can be **bradded**, that is, blunted on the end, by driving it through a board against a steel back-up plate. Tests with 0.120-inch-diameter, low- and medium-carbon-steel nails driven through 3/4-inch southern pine of 0.56 oven-dry specific gravity and 20-percent moisture content, showed that withdrawal resistance of bradded nails was a few percent less than unclinched and unbradded nails (Stern 1967b).

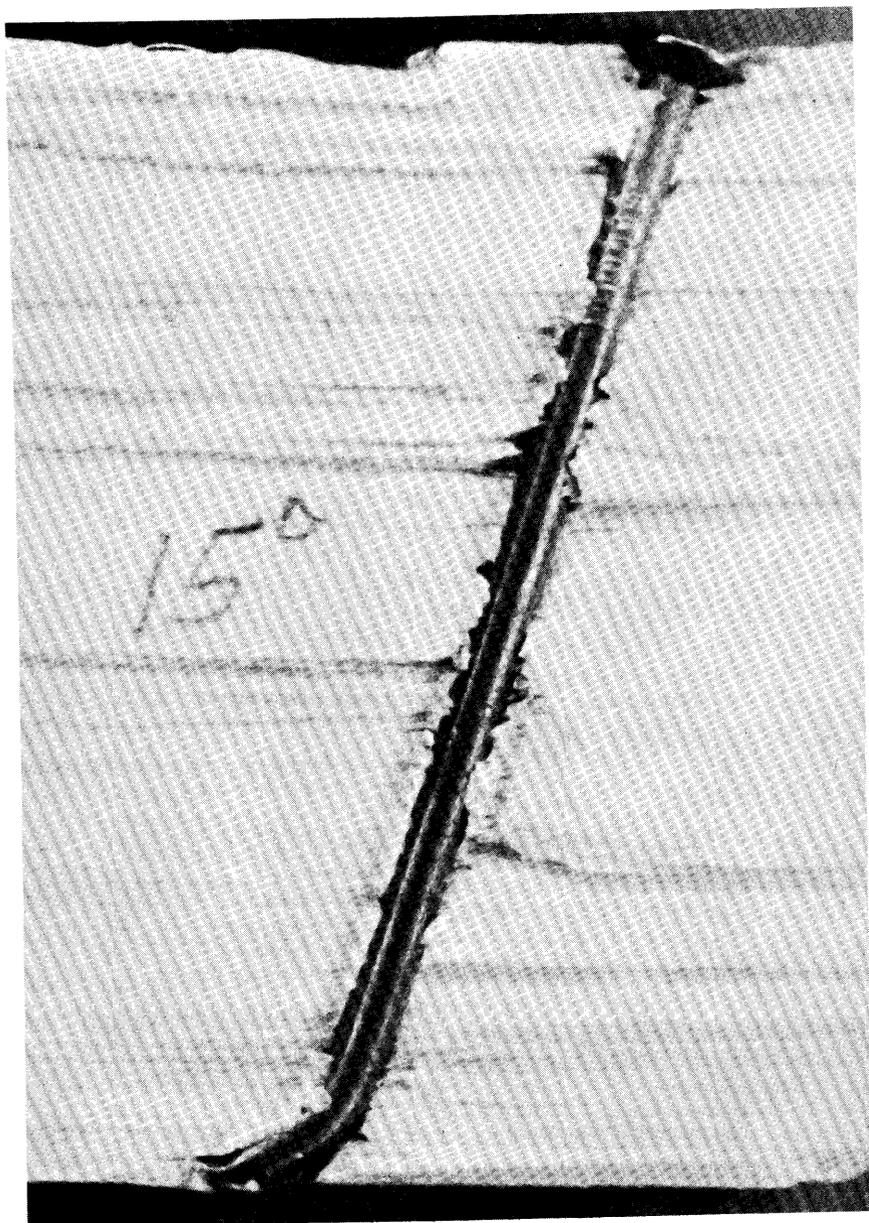


Figure 24-6.—Plain-shank, low-carbon-steel, 2 $\frac{7}{8}$ - by 0.120-inch sinker nail driven at 15° angle into southern pine, with its diamond point automatically clinched by driving it against a steel plate. (Photo from Stern 1968c.)

<u>Time tested and nail type</u>	<u>Ratio of bradded to unclinched with- drawal resistance</u>
Immediate withdrawal	
Plain shank -----	1.00
Helically threaded -----	.97
Delayed 4 weeks	
Plain shank -----	.93
Helically threaded -----	.93

Preboring.—Nails driven into lead holes with a diameter slightly smaller than that of the nail are less prone to cause splits, and have somewhat higher withdrawal resistance than nails driven without lead holes (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955).

Withdrawal tests by Stern (1957b) indicate that pilot holes in dry southern pine should be prebored with a drill about two-thirds the diameter of the nail shank (fig. 24-7).

EFFECT OF NAIL DIMENSIONS ON WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE

Withdrawal resistance of a nail is determined not only by wood factors and manner of driving, but also by its diameter, length, and penetration and the shape of its point.

Diameter.—The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955) has published a formula, generally applicable to all wood species, for allowable withdrawal load of common wire nails driven into the side grain of seasoned wood that remains seasoned, or unseasoned wood that will remain wet; this allowable load is calculated to be one-sixth of the ultimate load.

$$p = 1,150 G^{5/2} D \quad (24-1)$$

where:

p = allowable withdrawal load, pounds per inch of penetration into the piece retaining the point.

G = wood specific gravity, based on oven-dry volume and weight.

D = nail diameter, inches.

Values of $G^{5/2}$ for selected specific gravities are listed in the introduction to this chapter.

Tests specific to southern pine (Stern 1957b) indicated that equation 24-1, when multiplied by 6 to give ultimate load, accurately predicts withdrawal loads of plain-shank wire nails in diameters from 0.20 to 0.24 (most nails used in framing measure less than 0.24 inch in diameter); for larger diameters, however, it overestimated immediate withdrawal resistance of plain-shank spikes driven into side grain of southern pine of 0.50 specific gravity (oven-dry volume and weight) and 10-percent moisture content (fig. 24-8).

Penetration.—In general, withdrawal resistance has a positive linear correlation with depth of shank penetration into the piece retaining the point;

as indicated by the definition of p in equation 24-1, a nail with penetration of 4 inches is generally considered to have twice the withdrawal resistance of the same nail given only 2 inches of penetration. Figure 24-9 confirms this straight-line relationship in southern pine for penetrations of 1 to 3 inches.

Point.—The common wire nail usually has a diamond point (fig. 24-1,

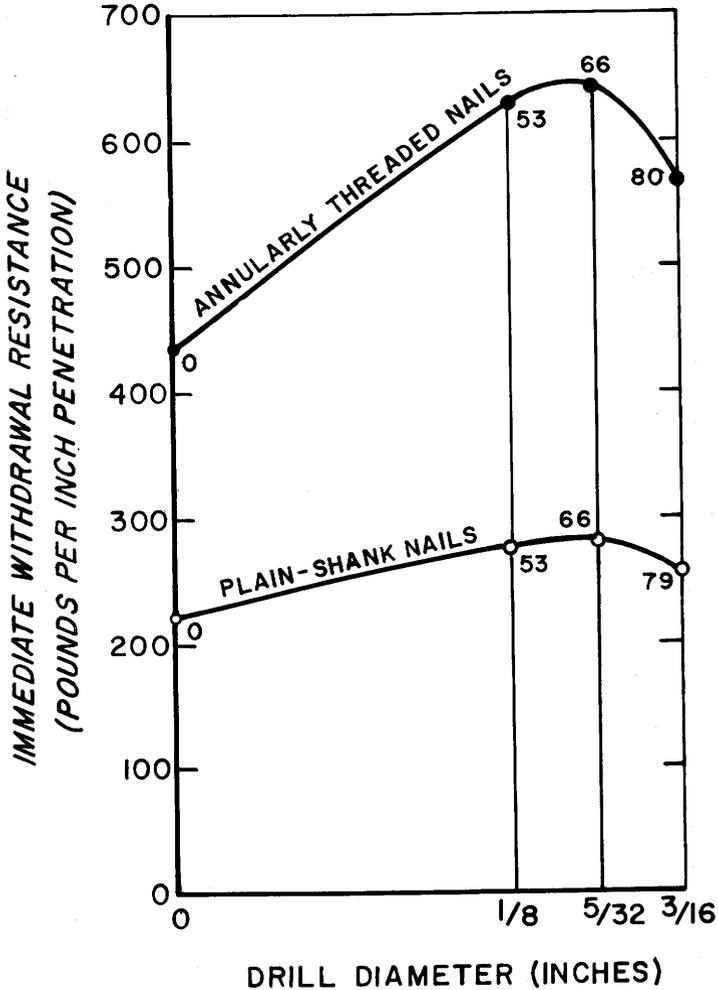


Figure 24-7.—Influence of pilot hole diameter on immediate withdrawal resistance of annularly threaded nails 0.235 inch in diameter and plain-shank nails 0.238 inch in diameter when driven 3 inches into side grain of southern pine of 0.50 oven-dry specific gravity and 10-percent moisture content. The pilot holes were drilled 2 3/4 inches deep. Numbers adjacent to each point indicate the size of the drill diameter as a percent of shank diameter. (Drawing after Stern 1957b.)

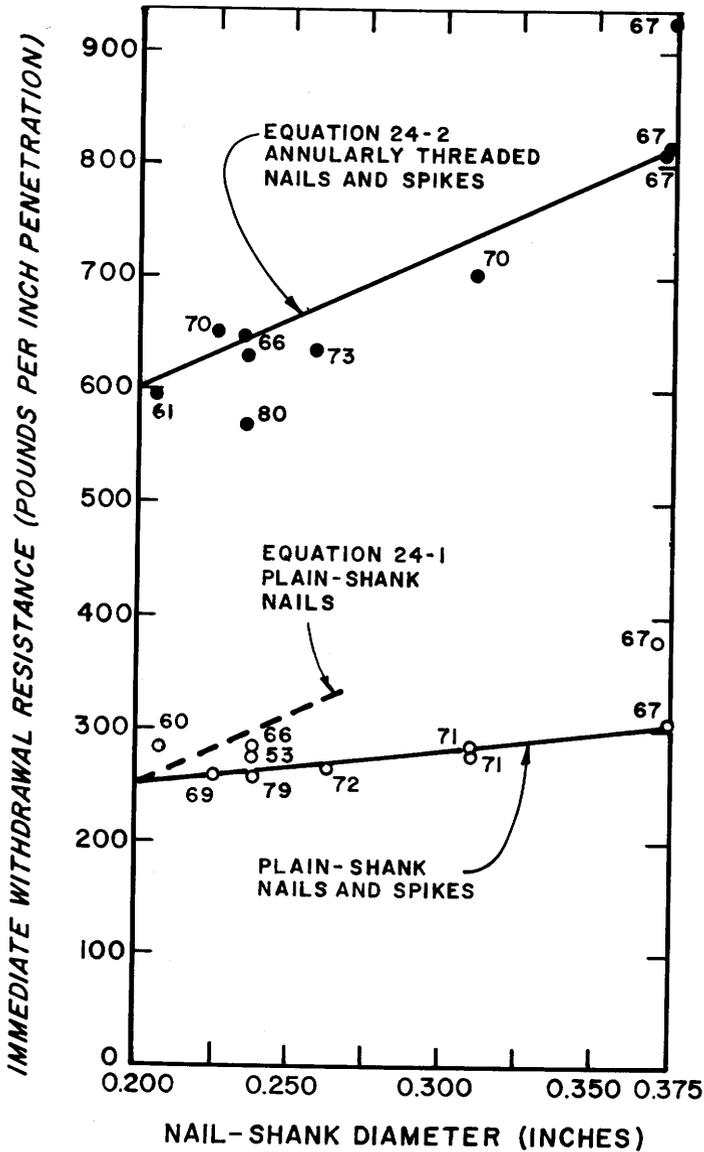


Figure 24-8.—Influence of nail shank diameter on immediate withdrawal resistance of plain-shank and annularly threaded nails driven into side grain of southern pine of 0.50 oven-dry specific gravity and 10-percent moisture content. Nails were driven to 3-inch penetration in pilot holes $2\frac{3}{4}$ inches deep and about 0.7 the shank diameter. Numbers beside each point indicate pilot hole diameter as a percentage of nail diameter. Equations 24-1 and 24-2 (both multiplied by 6 to show ultimate withdrawal resistance) are plotted for comparison. (Drawing after Stern 1957b.)

left). Scholten (1962) reported the effect of point geometry on immediate withdrawal resistance of plain-shank nails 0.098 inch in diameter driven in side grain of southern pine of 0.51 specific gravity (based on volume at the test moisture content of about 11 percent and on oven-dry weight).

Description and length of point (inch)	Penetration	Withdrawal resistance
	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
Sharp conical, $\frac{3}{8}$ -----	$1\frac{7}{16}$	158
Truncated conical, $\frac{3}{8}$ -----	$1\frac{5}{16}$	150
Diamond, $\frac{1}{8}$ -----	$1\frac{3}{8}$	116
Completely blunt, 0-----	$1\frac{3}{16}$	68

Long points decrease driving resistance and increase withdrawal resistance, but tend to split southern pine. Short or blunt points increase driving resistance, decrease withdrawal resistance, and decrease the tendency to split. Where lumber splitting should be minimized, truncated blunt points are preferable. Completely blunt points cause considerable distortion of fibers as they penetrate (fig. 24-10).

EFFECT OF SHANK CHARACTERISTICS ON WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE

Withdrawal resistance of nails is affected by the roughness, coating, and shape of the shank.

Plain-shank nails.—Allowable withdrawal resistance of plain-shank nails is stated for all species by equation 24-1 in terms of wood specific gravity and nail diameter and penetration. For southern pine, some modification of the general formula is indicated by figures 24-8 and 24-9, i.e., the equation may overestimate the allowable withdrawal resistance of large nails with low penetrations, and it may overestimate the allowable immediate withdrawal resistances of plain-shank nails with diameters larger than 0.24 inch. Withdrawal resistances for 16d common wire nails driven into southern pine are compared with those for other smooth-shank nails in table 24-5.

Cement-coated nails.—If properly applied, a cement coating on nails may double immediate withdrawal resistance in the softer woods; in harder woods the coating may be scraped off during driving and therefore be ineffective. Any increase in withdrawal resistance of cement-coated nails is not permanent, but diminishes after a month or so (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 169). Table 24-5 shows data specific to southern pine.

Etched nails.—Nails, chemically etched with a 2-percent solution of ferric chloride in water in the presence of mercuric chloride or salts or other metals, give somewhat higher withdrawal resistance than cement-coated nails and retain much of their superiority under varying moisture conditions (Martin and Van Kleeck 1941; Gahagan and Beglinger 1956). Under impact loading, however, the withdrawal resistance of the etched nails is little different from that of plain or cement-coated nails. Sand-blasted

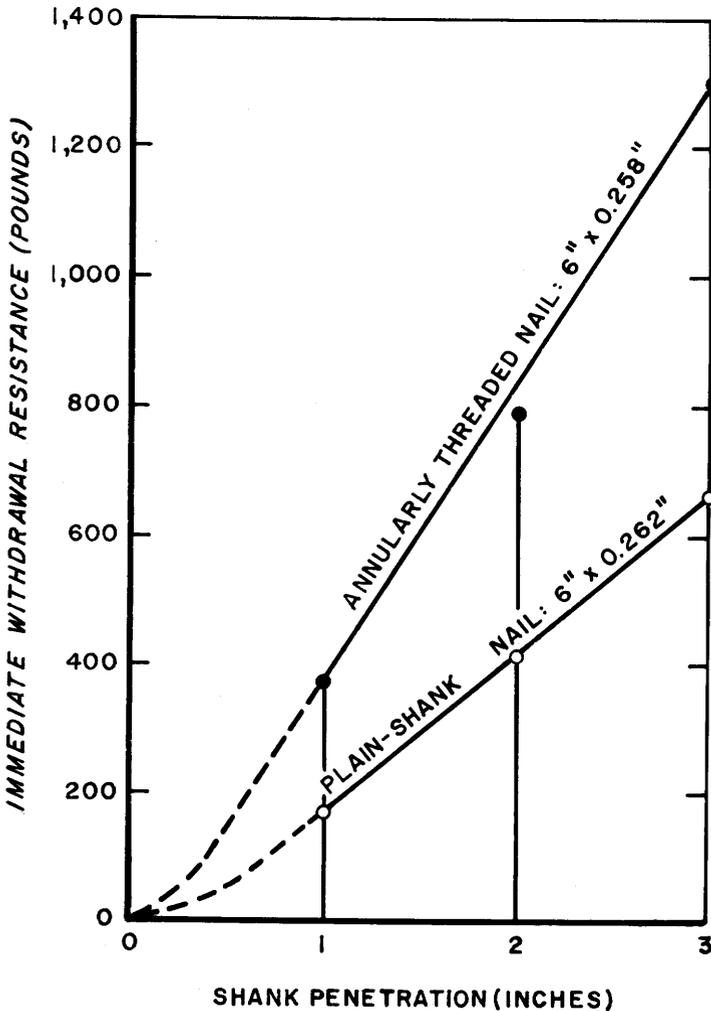
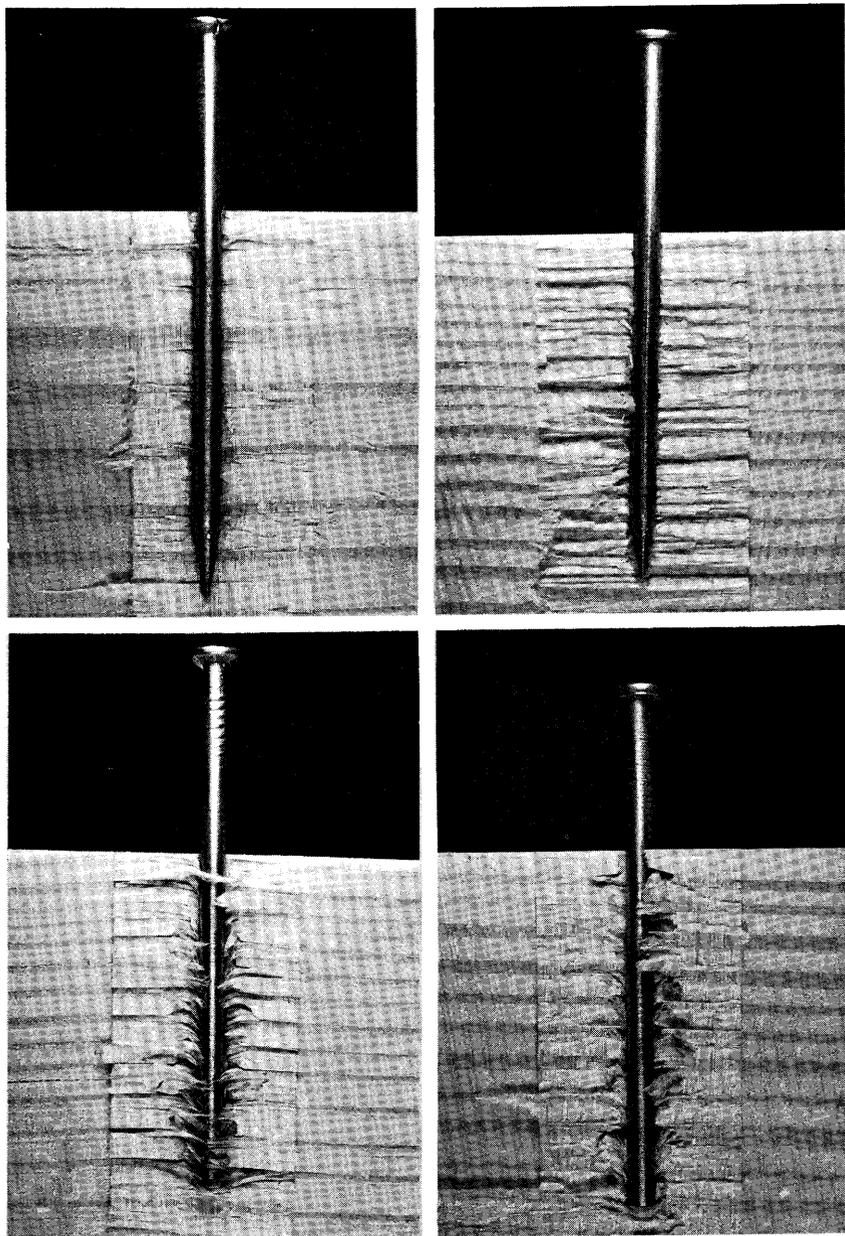


Figure 24-9.—Influence of shank penetration on withdrawal resistance of plain-shank and annularly threaded nails driven into side grain of southern pine of 0.50 oven-dry specific gravity and 10-percent moisture content. (Drawing after Stern 1957b.)

nails have approximately the same withdrawal resistance as chemically etched nails (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 169).

Zinc-coated (galvanized) nails.—These nails are intended primarily for applications where corrosion and staining need to be reduced. If the coating is evenly applied, withdrawal resistance may be increased; extreme irregularities in the coating, however, may reduce withdrawal resistance. Repeated cycles of wetting and drying of wood penetrated by nails uniformly coated with zinc cause their withdrawal resistance to approximate that of uncoated nails with plain shanks (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 169).

Plastic-coated nails.—Plastic coated nails are a relatively recent development. Stern (1968b) observed that the type of plastic applied strongly affected ease of driving, immediate and delayed withdrawal resistance, and corrosion resistance of plain-shank and helically threaded nails (2-1/2



F-521002

Figure 24-10.—Fiber distortion in medium-density southern pine caused by nails with sharp (top) and blunt (bottom) points, driven into green (left) and dry (right) wood. Before the blocks of wood were split, they were equilibrated to 10-percent moisture content.

TABLE 24-5.—*Withdrawal resistance of 0.127- to 0.162-inch-diameter nails driven into side and end grain of green and dry southern pine*¹ (adapted from Stern 1969c, pp. 16-17)

Nail type ¹ and grain direction	Driven 2 inches into green wood ²				Driven 2½ inches into green wood ³ ; static separation ⁴		Driven 2 inches into dry wood ² ; static separation ⁴	
	Static separation ⁴		Impact separation		Immediate	Delayed 6 weeks	Immediate	Delayed 3 weeks
	Immediate	Delayed 6 weeks	Immediate	Delayed 6 weeks				
	-- Pounds --		-- Inch-pounds --		----- Pounds -----			
Common wire								
Side.....	557	163	540	242	700	273	453	431
End.....	273	162	264	159				
Smooth box								
Side.....	438	125	455	268	519	206	352	308
End.....	230	154	199	120				
Cement-coated sinker								
Side.....	392	97	300	125	550	162	411	387
End.....	253	148	139	88				
Uncoated step-head								
Side.....	328	74	510+	115	409	112	384	331
End.....	232	116	144	81				
Plastic-coated step-head								
Side.....	443	212	670	130	596	210	589	536
End.....	326	349	158	112				

¹ See figure 24-11 for description of nails.

² Except that the cement-coated sinker nails penetrated only 1¾ inches.

³ Except that the cement-coated sinker nails penetrated only 2¼ inches.

⁴ Withdrawn at 0.1 inch per minute.

by 0.120 inches) driven into southern pine of 0.56 oven-dry specific gravity and 19- and 26-percent moisture content. In general, driving resistance was reduced 38 percent. Immediate withdrawal resistance of plain-shank nails increased as much as 125 percent, and that of helically threaded nails as much as 67 percent. The delayed withdrawal resistance of plain-shank steel and aluminum nails was increased as much as 312 and 725 percent respectively, and that of helically threaded steel nails as much as 103 percent.

In a factorial experiment, Stern (1969c, p. 15) compared plastic-polymer-coated nails (two-step head, coating unidentified), 16d common wire nails, smooth box nails, cement-coated sinker nails, and smooth un-

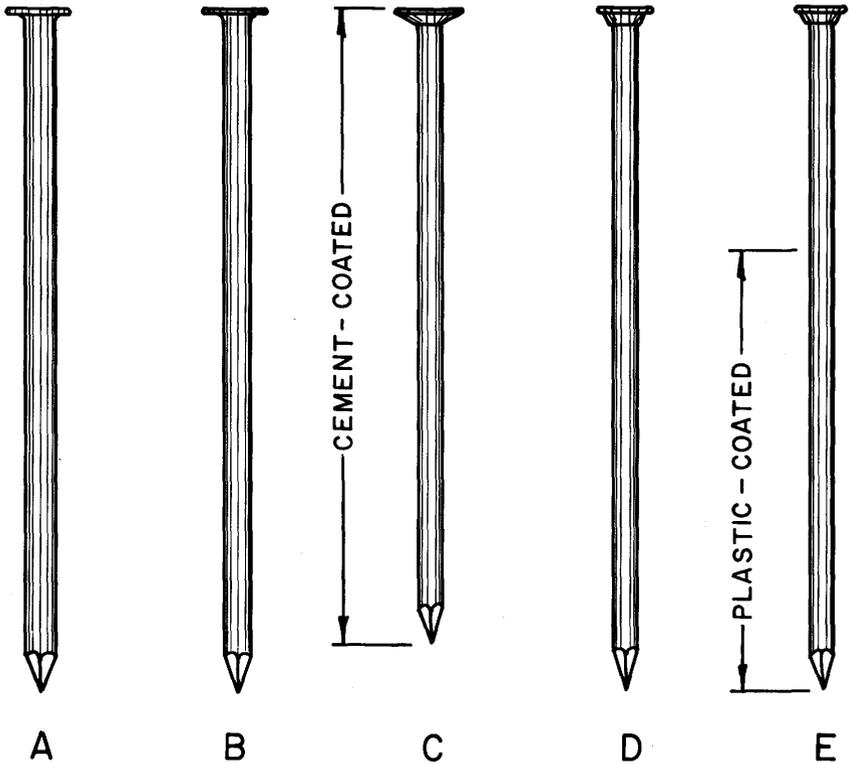


Figure 24-11.—Five types of uncoated and coated steel nails evaluated for withdrawal resistance in southern pine.

	Shank diameter Nails per pound	
	Inch	Number
(A) Common wire nail	0.162	45
(B) Smooth box nail	.136	64
(C) Cement-coated sinker nail	.150	61
(D) Uncoated step-head nail	.127	75
(E) Plastic-coated, step-head nail	.127	74

Nails were $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches long except for (C), which was $3\frac{1}{4}$ inches in length. Nails (A, B, C) had heads $11/32$ -inch in diameter; diameter of nail heads (D, E) was $9/32$ -inch. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, p. 15.)

coated nails with a two-step head found useful in collating nails for power drivers (fig. 24-11).

These nails were driven into green and dry side grain and end grain of southern pine lumber of 0.43 to 0.61 oven-dry specific gravity; immediate and delayed withdrawal resistance was measured at a withdrawal rate of 0.1 inch per minute and under impact load (table 24-5).

The plastic-coated, step-head nails had substantially higher static and impact withdrawal resistance in both side grain and end grain at all moisture contents than uncoated step-head nails or the cement-coated nails; the latter were 11 percent larger in diameter than the step-head nails but had 11 to 13 percent less penetration.

Static withdrawal resistances of common wire and box nails driven into green wood were comparable to the 12-percent smaller (in diameter) plastic-coated, step-head nails; under impact load or when driven into dry wood, however, the plastic-coated nails had the highest withdrawal resistance.

Withdrawal resistance of all nails driven into side grain of green wood was diminished by more than half if the wood was allowed to dry before the nails were pulled. Withdrawal resistance of nails driven into green end-grain wood was not so greatly diminished after the wood dried.

In Stern (1970g, pp. 18 and 19) the interested reader can find additional information on withdrawal resistance of four sizes of common and step-head nails (coated and uncoated) driven through 3/4-inch dry southern pine lumber or 3/4-inch Douglas-fir plywood into seasoned southern pine 2 by 4s.

Diagonally barbed square-wire nails.—Figure 24-2 shows that 2½-inch-long, barbed, square-wire nails driven into side grain of green southern pine had about the same immediate withdrawal resistance as common wire nails and helically threaded nails of roughly comparable size (fig. 24-1); if pulled after a delay of several weeks, the barbed nails had withdrawal resistance higher than that of common wire nails but substantially below that of threaded nails (Stern 1957c).

Twisted square-wire nails.—Stern (1964a) compared the withdrawal resistance of cement-coated, twisted square-wire nails with that of cement-coated plain-shank nails and helically threaded nails. The nails were driven through a 31/32-inch-thick longleaf pine board into side grain of longleaf pine having 0.60 oven-dry specific gravity and 10-percent moisture content. Penetration in the member holding the point equalled nail length less 31/32-inch. Half the nails were pulled immediately at 0.1 inch per minute, and the remainder after 2 days' exposure to 100-percent relative humidity followed by 19-day exposure to 50-percent relative humidity.

The 18-percent heavier square wire nails offered 5 percent lower immediate withdrawal resistance but 502 percent higher delayed withdrawal resistance than the plain-shank nails tested. The helically threaded nails (uncoated) had the greatest withdrawal resistance regardless of time of pulling.

Nail type and size (inches)	Weight per nail	Withdrawal resistance	
		Immediate	Delayed 3 weeks
		Grams	Pounds
Cement-coated, twisted square-wire 2½ by 0.107 (measured over the diagonal).....	3.915	307	239
Cement-coated, plain-shank cooler 2¾ by 0.113.....	3.305	324	48
Hardened helically threaded 2½ by 0.120.....	3.881	424	448

Helically fluted nails.—Data from Stern (1956d) indicate that helically fluted nails made of medium-carbon-steel wire, when driven into southern pine, have about the same immediate withdrawal resistance as plain-shank nails of the same weight and length; delayed withdrawal resistance of helically fluted nails is higher than that of plain-shank nails but lower than that of helically or annularly threaded nails of the same weight and length.

Data from Stern (1964a) and Dove (1955) permit comparison of the withdrawal resistance of helically fluted nails with that of plain-shank and threaded types (fig. 24-12); test data on nails driven to a depth of 1-1/8 inches in green southern pine of 0.51 oven-dry specific gravity and 27-percent moisture content follow:

Nail type and size (inches)	Weight per nail	Withdrawal resistance per inch of penetration	
		Immediate	Delayed
		Grams	Pounds
Helically fluted 1½ by 0.086.....	1.118	57.5	58.1
Plain shank 1½ by 0.091.....	1.383	69.3	23.7
Helically threaded 1½ by 0.076.....	.953	90.7	157.3
1½ by 0.078.....	.986	109.3	118.7
Annularly threaded 1½ by 0.085.....	1.072	112.7	108.7

Helically fluted auto nails.—These nails are ¼ to 5¼ inches in length and are sheared with a bevel or straight across from helically fluted, medium-carbon-steel wire 0.032 to 0.162 inch in diameter. The nails are sheared to length and driven at rates up to one per second by a machine that forms a brad or rivet head on each nail and, if driven against a steel back-up plate, clinches the point into brad or rivet form (fig. 24-13). General applications and performance of these nails have been described by Johnston (1964), Stern (1962b, 1965a), Wilkerson et al. (1968)

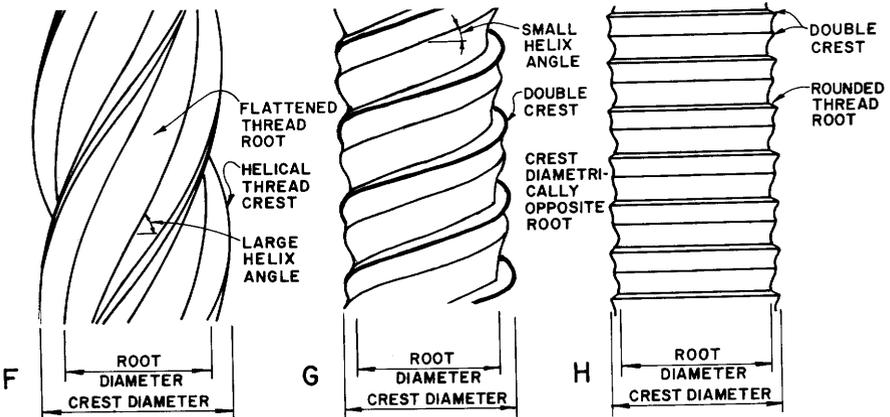
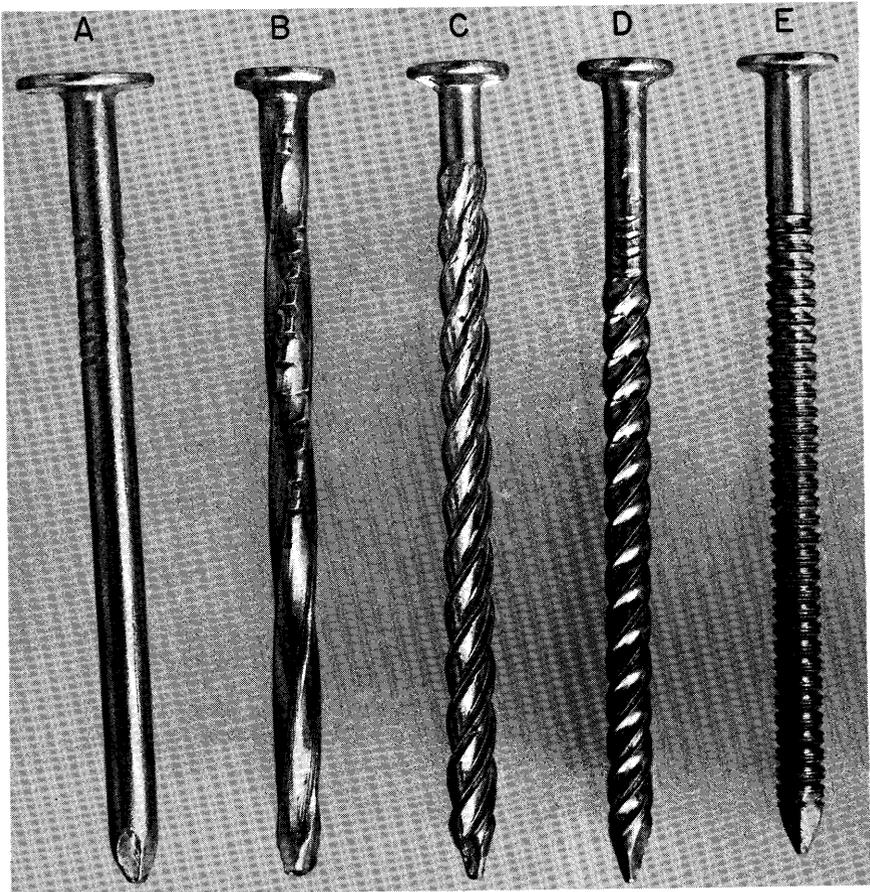


Figure 24-12.—Helically fluted nail compared to plain-shank and threaded nails; all are 1½ inches long and of low-carbon steel except for the fluted nail, which is of medium-carbon steel or stiff stock. Diameter of a threaded nail is measured on the plain portion of the shank between head and threads. (A) Plain-shank nail; 0.091 inch. (B) Helically fluted nail; 0.086 inch. (C,D) Helically threaded nails; 0.076 and 0.078 inch. (E) Annularly threaded nail; 0.083 inch. (F) Standard (60°)-lead helical thread. (G) Short-lead helical thread. (H) Annular thread. (Photo from Stern 1964a; drawings after Stern 1951c, p. 7.)

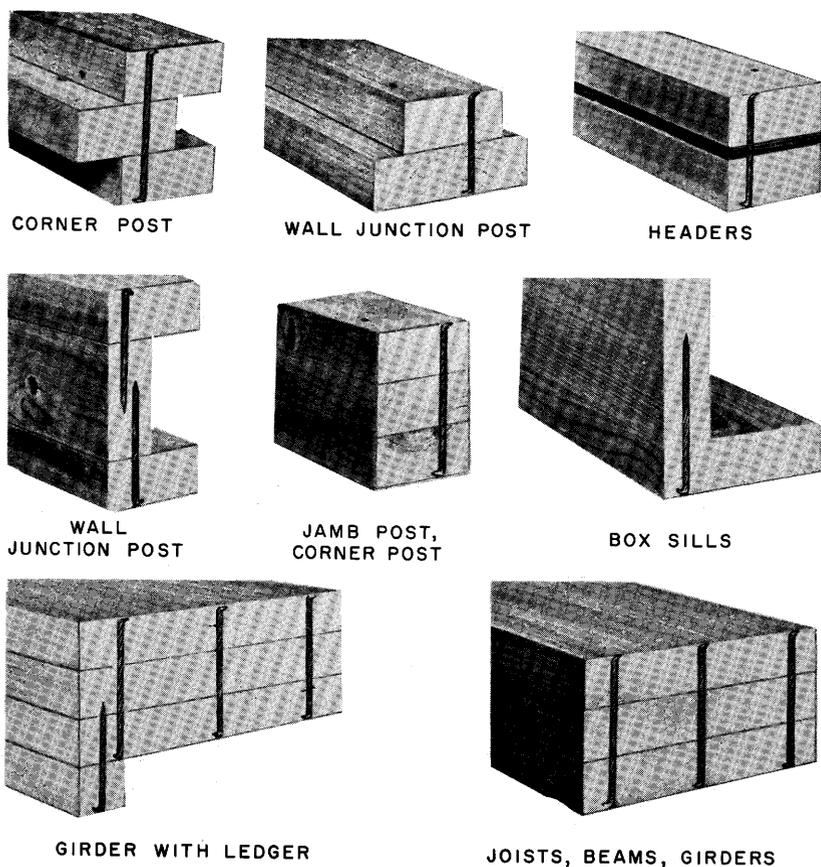


Figure 24-13.—Built-up framing members fastened with helically fluted auto nails. (Photos from Stern 1969c, p. 27.)

and Wilkerson (1969, 1970). Superior performance of auto-nailed southern pine pallets was reported by Stern (1968b, 1970c).

Stern (1970f) found that for attaching Douglas-fir plywood to southern pine cleats, average energy to failure for clinched 15-gauge auto nails was 77 percent of that for clinched cement-coated sinker nails. He confirmed the recommendation of the USDA Forest Products Laboratory that three auto nails can be substituted for two conventional nails in attaching plywood.

Threaded nails.—Threaded nails (fig. 24-12CDE) have helical or annular, symmetrical or non-symmetrical, flat-bottom or round-bottom deformations; they may have single- or double-crest shoulders with rounded or flat flanks. The shank is formed by roll-threading dies after the nail is headed. Threaded nails can be made from copper and aluminum as well as ferrous metals; most are of low-carbon steel or medium-carbon steel (stiff stock). They may or may not be hardened after forming (Stern 1967a).

Diameter of a threaded nail is measured on the plain portion of the shank between head and threads.

Since withdrawal resistance is dependent on thread angle and depth, low-density southern pine fastened with well-threaded nails can have greater joint strength than high-density pine fastened with poorly threaded nails. According to Stern (1950b, 1951cd, 1952, 1956abcd, 1957abc, 1959abc, 1966, 1968a, 1969bc), properly threaded nails have greater withdrawal resistance than any other type of nail of comparable size. In general, optimum threads for nails to be driven into southern pine have four, helical, non-symmetrical, buttress-type, flat-bottom threads with double-crest shoulders and a distinct leading flank on the point side of the crest and a following flank on the head side of the crest; there should be a plain-shanked section between the head of the nail and the start of the threads. Figure 24-12F, G, H shows details of three types of threaded nails.

Allowable withdrawal resistance of annularly threaded, large-diameter (0.2 inch and over), bright nails and spikes of low-carbon steel driven into predrilled dry southern pine can be approximated by the following equation proposed by Stern (1957b).

$$p = 350 + 1,150G^{5/2}D \quad (24-2)$$

where:

p = allowable withdrawal load, pounds per inch of penetration into the piece retaining the point.

G = wood specific gravity, based on oven-dry volume and weight.

D = nail diameter, inches.

Values of $G^{5/2}$ for selected specific gravities are listed in the introduction to this chapter.

Slender, hardened-steel, threaded nails, because of their great withdrawal resistance, can replace common wire nails of larger diameter. Driving resistance of the two nails may be similar, but because the buckling resistance of the hardened nail is greater, it can be driven with fewer, more powerful, hammer blows. The immediate static withdrawal resistance of the more slender helically threaded nail may be twice that of the common wire nail; delayed withdrawal resistance in seasoned southern pine is generally several times as high. Also, slender, threaded nails are less likely to split southern pine than the thicker, common wire nails required for equivalent withdrawal resistance. On the basis of many tests, Stern (1969c, p. 28) has proposed the nail sizes shown in table 24-6 as equivalent and appropriate for fastening 1-1/2-inch-thick southern pine framing lumber.

Selected data on nails 0.120 to 0.203 inch in diameter are illustrative of immediate and delayed withdrawal resistance of plain-shank, and threaded nails of low-carbon steel and hardened, medium-carbon steel. Nails 2, 2-1/2, 3, 3-1/2, and 4 inches long were driven to two-thirds of their length

TABLE 24-6.—Common wire nails, and hardened, helically-threaded nails of equivalent withdrawal resistance in southern pine¹ (adapted from Stern 1969c, p. 28)

Length (inches)	Common wire nails			Equivalent, hardened threaded nails	
	Diameter	Size	Nails per pound	Diameter ²	Nails per pound
	<i>Inch</i>			<i>Inch</i>	
3.....	0.148	101	68	0.135	78
3¼.....	.148	12d	63	.135	73
3½.....	.162	16d	49	.148	57
4.....	.192	20d	31	.177	36

¹ As threaded nails nominally 30d through 60d are all manufactured from wire 0.177 inch in diameter, they have the same allowable withdrawal load per inch of penetration as the values shown in table 24-7 (and the same allowable lateral load as shown in table 24-9) for 20d common wire nails (Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968).

² Wire diameter of the plain-shanked portion of the nail.

in partially seasoned side grain of southern pine and withdrawn at 0.060 inch per minute (Stern 1951c). Average withdrawal resistance (fig. 24-14) expressed as a percentage of values for plain-shank nails is summarized as follows:

Nail type	Immediate	Delayed
	----- Percent -----	
Plain shank.....	100	100
Annularly threaded.....	199	617
Helically threaded.....	139	494

Small-diameter, plain-shank nails (e.g., 7d) also have substantially less immediate and delayed static withdrawal resistance in side grain of southern pine than threaded nails of the same wire size; in general, impact withdrawal resistance is also improved if nails of this size have shanks helically threaded with standard lead angle (fig. 24-15).

Cut nails and toothed nails.—Figure 24-16 illustrates nails used to attach finish flooring to underlayment boards. Cut nails, once widely used, have diminished in importance in recent years (Stern 1964a). Toothed nails of L-shape, with the short arm serving as the head, are known as cleats; they are machine driven with ease and speed.

Stern (1964a) compared immediate and delayed static withdrawal resistance (perpendicular to joined surfaces) of these nails driven at a 45° angle up to 11/16 inch from the top of the head through dry white oak (*Quercus alba* L.) into side grain of southern pine at 25-percent moisture content (0.65 oven-dry specific gravity); delayed measurements were taken after 2 weeks, by which time the pine was at 16-percent moisture content.

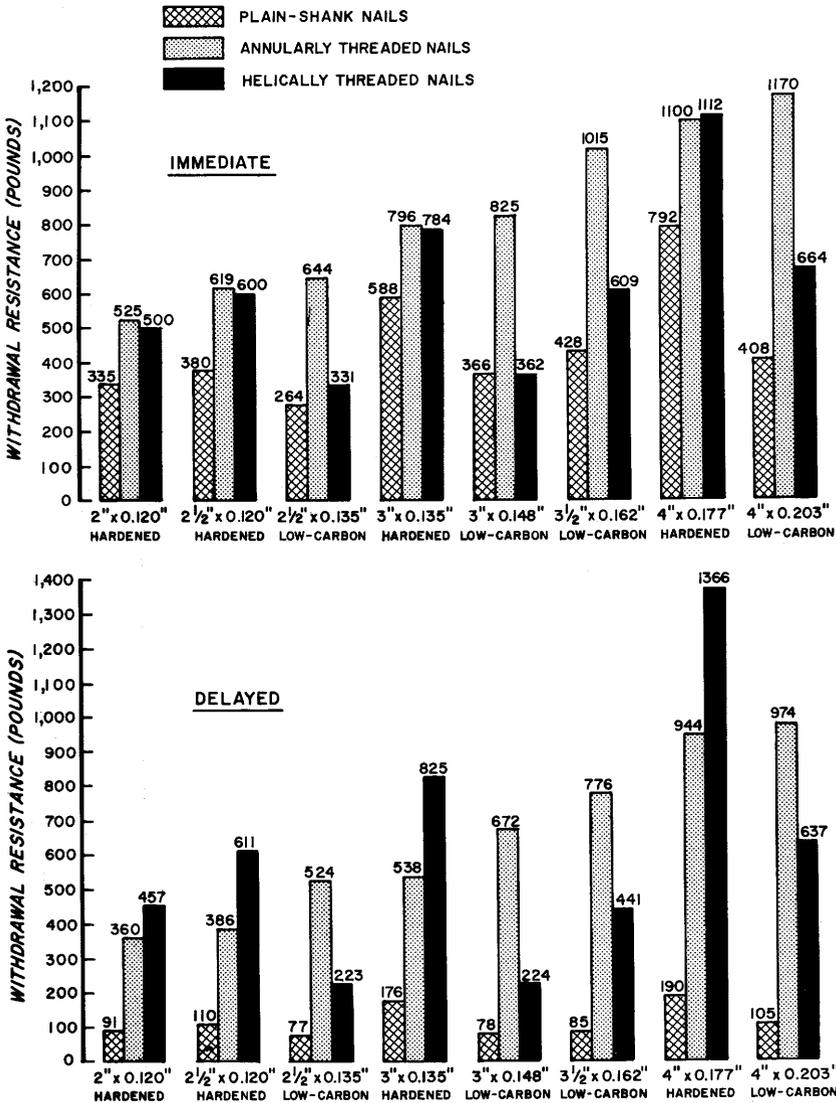


Figure 24-14.—Average static withdrawal resistance of plain-shank and threaded steel nails of various lengths, diameters, alloys, and treatments driven to two-thirds shank penetration into side grain of southern pine at 20-percent moisture content. Delayed withdrawal was made at 10- to 11-percent moisture content 5 to 7 months after the nails were driven. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, p. 30.)

Also, nails driven into southern pine at 9-percent moisture content and 0.52 oven-dry specific gravity were evaluated; here, delayed measurements were made after 2 days of water soaking the nailed assembly followed by 12 days of drying at 12-percent moisture content.

The 1-11/16-inch toothed cleat averaged about half the withdrawal

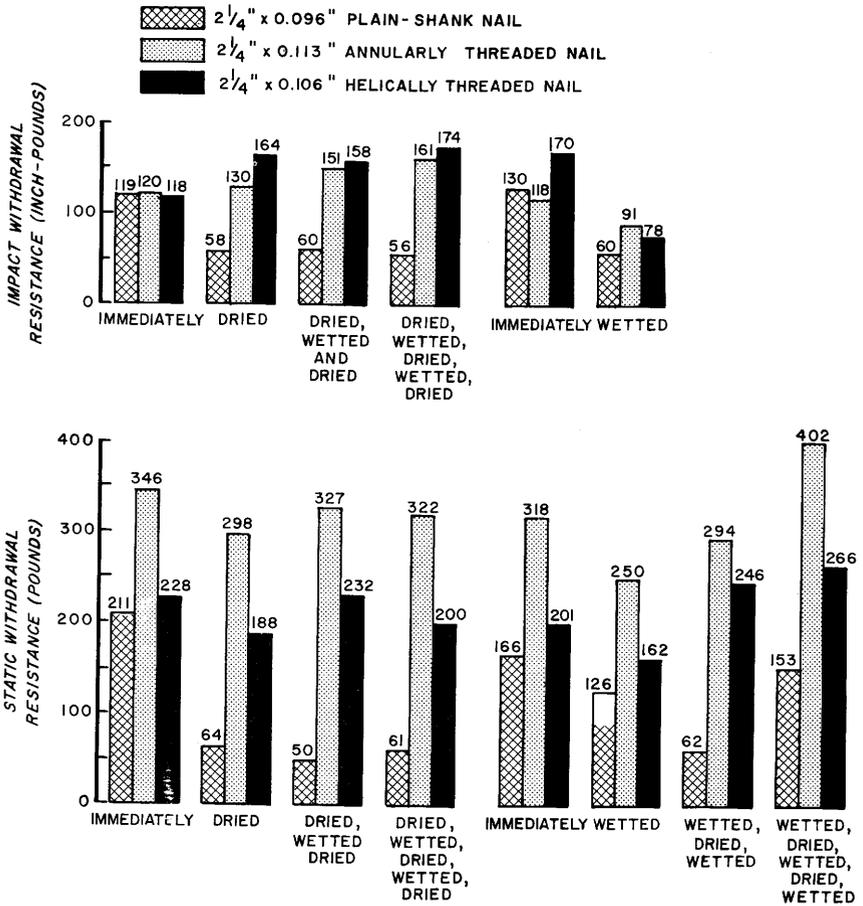
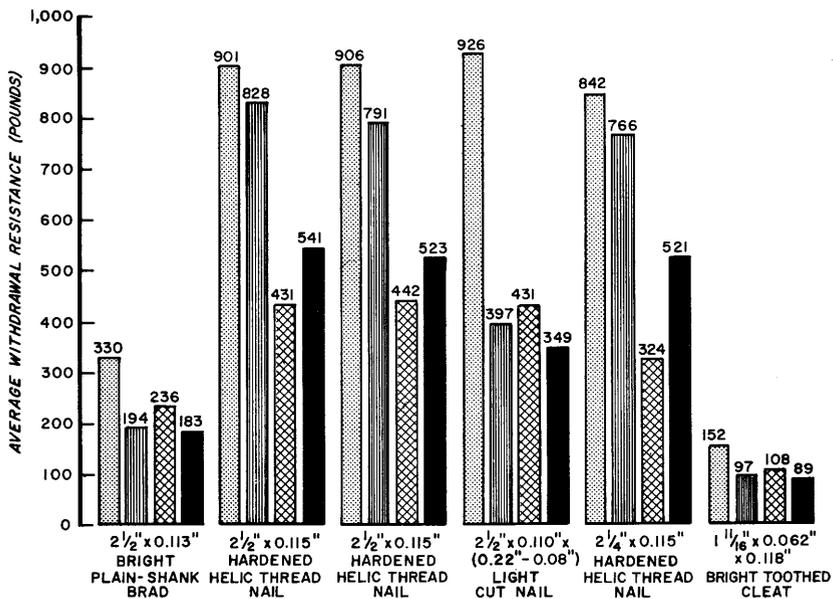
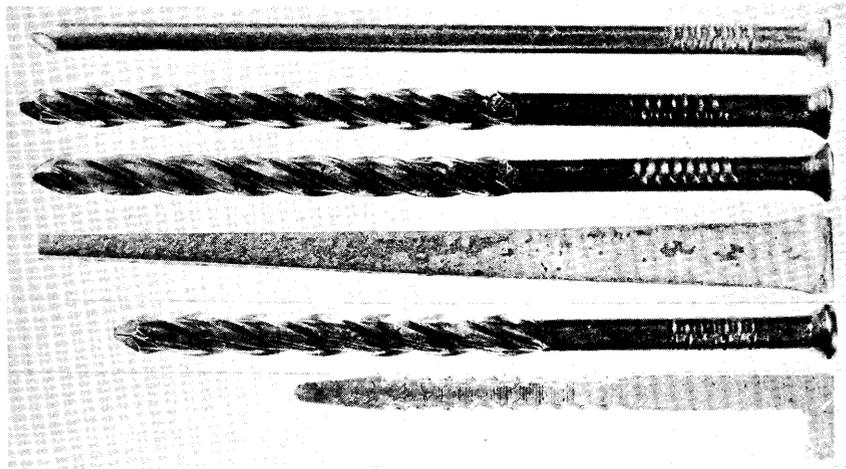


Figure 24-15.—Withdrawal resistance of plain-shank and threaded, 2 1/4-inch-long, low-carbon-steel nails driven 1 1/2 inches into side grain of southern pine and pulled under the conditions noted. (Left) Driven into wood above fiber saturation point. (Right) Driven into wood of about 12-percent moisture content. Static withdrawal was at 0.07 inch per minute. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, p. 29, based on unpublished data of 1950 from E. H. Borkenhagen and O. C. Heyer.)

resistance of the 2-1/2-inch, plain-shank brad, about one-fourth that of the cut nail, and about one-fifth that of the 2-1/4- and 2-1/2-inch threaded nails (fig. 24-16).

ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOADS

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968, table 16) and Southern Pine Architects' Bulletin No. 7 (Southern Pine Association 1964) contain tables of allowable withdrawal resistance for plain-shank nails and spikes; both tables are based on equation 24-1. The National Design Specification uses an oven-dry specific gravity



DRIVEN AT 25-PERCENT MOISTURE CONTENT AND TESTED IMMEDIATELY [diagonal lines] AND TESTED DELAYED [horizontal lines]
 DRIVEN AT 9-PERCENT MOISTURE CONTENT AND TESTED IMMEDIATELY [cross-hatch] AND TESTED DELAYED [solid black]

Figure 24-16.—Fasteners used in the laying of tongue-and-groove flooring. (Top) From top to bottom: bright, low-carbon-steel, plain-shank flooring brad; two hardened medium-carbon-steel, helically threaded flooring nails; light, New York Pattern, cut flooring nail; hardened, medium-carbon-steel, helically threaded flooring nail; toothed cleat. (Bottom) Immediate and delayed static (0.1 inch per minute) withdrawal resistance. Nails were driven at 45° angle to penetrate southern pine 2 by 4's by to 11/16-inch from top of head. (Photo and drawing after Stern 1964a.)

of 0.55 for southern pine; the Southern Pine Association, however, bases its tables on an oven-dry specific gravity of 0.59. Obviously, use of the 0.55 value results in lower allowable withdrawal loads (table 24-7)

The allowable withdrawal load in toenailed joints is two-thirds that given in table 24-7 for 0.55 specific gravity (National Forest Products Association 1968, para. 800-H).

Section 24-1 outlines duration-of-load adjustment factors applicable to values given for normal loading in table 24-7.

LATERAL LOAD-CARRYING CAPACITY OF NAILS

The lateral resistance provided by nailed joints (fig. 24-17) is less affected by wood and nail variables than withdrawal resistance. In general, lateral resistance of nails driven into side grain varies approximately as the 5/4 power of oven-dry specific gravity; on this basis, an increase in specific gravity of 25 percent (e.g., from 0.48 to 0.60) is accompanied by an increase of somewhat more than 30 percent in lateral resistance (Scholten 1965b).

TABLE 24-7.—Allowable withdrawal loads per inch of penetration of common wire nails and spikes driven into the side grain of southern pine^{1 2} (adapted from Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)

Assumed specific gravity ²	Size										Diameter	
	6d	8d	10d	12d	16d	20d	30d	40d	50d	60d	5/16-inch	3/8-inch
----- Pounds -----												
NAILS												
0.55.....	35	41	46	46	50	59	64	70	76	81		
.59.....	42	48	55	55	60	71	76	83	90	97		
SPIKES												
.55.....			59	59	64	70	76	81	88	88	97	116
.59.....			71	71	76	83	90	97	104	104	115	138

¹ Applicable to nails driven into seasoned wood or unseasoned wood that will remain wet. If common wire nails or spikes are driven into unseasoned wood which will subsequently season under load, the allowable load is one-fourth the tabular value; for hardened, threaded nails (see table 24-6 for equivalent sizes), however, use full allowable loads. For wood pressure-impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals, use one-fourth the tabular values; if kiln-dried after treatment, use 90 percent of the tabular values. For hardened, threaded nails, use full allowable load even if treated with fire retardants.

² Nails and spikes should not be loaded in withdrawal from end grain.

³ Based on oven-dry volume and weight. The values corresponding to 0.55 specific gravity are from the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968); those for 0.59 specific gravity are from the Southern Pine Association (1964).



Figure 24-17.—Lateral load applied to nailed joint.

Depth of penetration of plain-shank nails into structural species such as southern pine should be about 11 times nail diameter to develop maximum lateral resistance; since maximum lateral resistance is associated with nail withdrawal, depth of penetration required for maximum lateral resistance varies inversely with withdrawal resistance of nails (Scholten 1965b).

There is also an optimum member thickness for the nailhead side of the joint; the relationship $T = 50D^2$ has been suggested by Brock (1954) where:

T = thickness of member on nailhead side of joint, inches

D = nail diameter in inches

Plain-shank nails.—According to the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 173), the lateral load-carrying capacity of a common wire nail driven into side grain of seasoned southern pine to a depth of at least 10 (for dense wood) to 14 (for lightweight woods) times the diameter of the nail is approximately as follows:

$$\text{Allowable load} = 1375D^{3/2} \quad (24-3)$$

$$\text{Proportional limit} = (1.6)(1375)D^{3/2} \quad (24-4)$$

$$\text{Ultimate load} = (6)(1375)D^{3/2} \quad (24-5)$$

where D = nail diameter, inches. Table 24-1 lists values of diameters raised to the $3/2$ power. These equations apply to lateral loads either parallel or perpendicular to the grain of the joined pieces.

For a common wire nail driven into end grain (parallel to fibers) of seasoned southern pine, the following approximate relationships apply (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 174):

$$\text{Allowable load} = (2/3)(1375)D^{3/2} \quad (24-6)$$

$$\text{Proportional limit} = (1.6)(1375)D^{3/2} \quad (24-7)$$

$$\text{Ultimate load} = (4)(1375)D^{3/2} \quad (24-8)$$

Ultimate lateral resistance of nails driven into side grain of unseasoned wood is approximately equal to that in seasoned wood, but the proportional limit is somewhat less in green than in dry wood. Nails have lower proportional limits for lateral resistance when driven into green wood that subsequently dries than in seasoned wood. Therefore, allowable lateral loads for nails and spikes driven into unseasoned southern pine should be about 25 percent lower than those for nails and spikes driven into seasoned wood (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 174).

Lateral loads for aluminum alloy nails are slightly lower at small distortions in the joint than they are for common wire nails, but are somewhat higher at greater distortions; an aluminum nail with shank diameter 3 to

10 percent larger than that of a steel nail, however, sustains lateral loads at small distortions that are comparable to those for a steel nail. In general, nails helically threaded with standard lead angle have higher ultimate lateral resistance than common wire nails, but both types sustain similar lateral loads at small distortions in the joint (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 174).

Coated nails.—In tests of lateral load resistance of 3½-inch nails in green southern pine, Stern (1970d) found plastic-coated step-head nails to be 23 percent less effective than the 28-percent stouter common wire nails.

Twisted square-wire nails.—Stern (1964a) compared the ultimate lateral resistance of cement-coated, twisted-square-wire nails with that of cement-coated, plain-shanked nails and hardened, helically threaded nails all driven through a 31/32-inch-thick longleaf pine board of 0.60 oven-dry specific gravity and 10-percent moisture content into a similar dry substrate with depth of penetration in excess of 11 times nail diameter.

Nail type and size (inches)	Weight per nail	Delayed lateral resistance
	<i>Grams</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
Cement coated, twisted square wire 2½ by 0.107-----	3.915	634
Cement coated, plain-shank cooler 2¾ by 0.113-----	3.305	408
Hardened, helically threaded 2½ by 0.120-----	3.881	767

The twisted square-wire nail was 18 percent heavier than the plain-shanked nail and provided 55 percent greater lateral resistance; the threaded nail had 88 percent more lateral resistance. A smaller helically threaded nail (2.25 inches by 0.110 inch) in the same test series had 55 percent more lateral resistance than the plain-shanked cooler nail.

Helically fluted auto nails.—Properly applied helically fluted auto nails transmit shear loads effectively in built-up building components (fig. 24-13); they also make joints in southern pine pallets that are more rigid and have more lateral load-carrying capacity than plain-shank nails of the same diameter and length (Stern 1953, 1965b, 1968d, 1969c, pp. 46-50).

Threaded nails.—Annularly threaded nails are not recommended for lateral transmission of loads because they are weakened by reduced cross section at thread roots (Stern 1969c, p. 46). Helically threaded nails; however, have more shock resistance than annularly threaded nails, and greater lateral resistance to static loading than plain-shank nails. There are numerous publications to support this conclusion; data from a single test by Stern (1951c) are illustrative (fig. 24-18). In this test, nails 0.120 to 0.203 inch in diameter were driven into partially seasoned side grain of

southern pine. Average lateral resistance expressed as a percentage of values for plain-shank nails were summarized as follows:

<u>Nail type</u>	<u>Immediate</u>	<u>Delayed</u>
	----- Percent -----	
Plain shank -----	100	100
Annularly threaded -----	127	128
Helically threaded -----	141	170

Static lateral resistance of threaded nails in pressure creosoted southern pine poles at 30-percent moisture content has been evaluated immediately after driving the nails to one-half their length (Stern 1956c).

<u>Nail type and size (inches)</u>	<u>Lateral resistance</u>
	<i>Pounds</i>
Plain shank	
5 by 0.177-----	1,189
7 by 0.203-----	1,716
Annularly threaded	
5 by 0.177-----	1,224
7 by 0.203-----	1,446
Helically threaded	
5 by 0.177-----	1,376
7 by 0.203-----	2,009

Values for annularly threaded nails were little different from those for plain-shank nails; however, the helically threaded nails had values about 16 percent higher than those for plain-shank nails.

Joints fastened with hardened steel nails deform less under impact load than joints secured with unhardened nails. After drop tests of southern pine pallets assembled with seasoned deck boards and green stringers, pallet distortion was about 63 percent less if assembled with 2-1/2- by 0.120-inch, hardened, medium-carbon-steel, helically threaded nails than if fastened with unhardened, medium-carbon-steel (stiff stock), helically threaded nails of the same dimension (Stern 1969b).

Short, stout (1-1/2 by 0.135 inch), helically threaded nails effectively transmit shear loads between plywood roof sheathing and rafters (Stern 1965c). Such nails also are effective in transmitting shear loads between gusset plates and joined members (Stern 1958, 1961bc, 1964bc).

Selection of nails for use in double shear in three-member joints (similar to fig. 24-24) is described by Stern (1964c), Stern and Stoneburner (1952), and Stern and Pletta (1967).

Slant-driven nails.—Figure 24-5 illustrates nails driven into side grain of southern pine to test the effect of cross-slant-driving on lateral resistance to a load applied perpendicular to the plane formed between the two nails. Only in one case, that of plain-shank nails driven into wood at 19-percent moisture content and pulled at 11 percent, did the pair of cross-slant-driven nails have twice the lateral resistance of a single nail

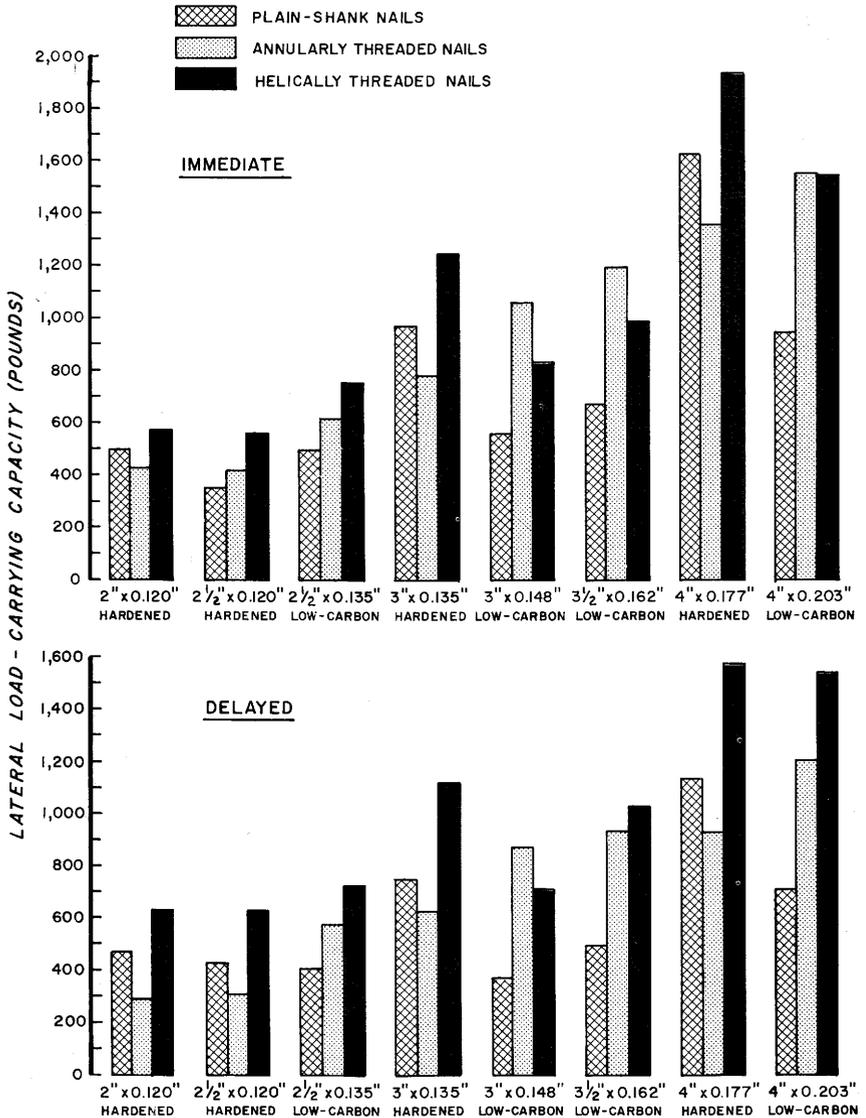


Figure 24-18.—Average static lateral load-carrying capacity of plain-shank and threaded steel nails driven through a removable gage block to two-thirds shank penetration into side grain of southern pine at 20-percent moisture content. Delayed tests were made at 10- to 11-percent moisture content 5 to 7 weeks after the nails were driven. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, pp. 51, 52.)

driven perpendicular to the grain (table 24-8). Stern (1951b) concluded that in comparison with straight driving, slant driving at an angle of 56.5° to the joint plane decreases lateral resistance to a load applied perpendicular to the plane of the cross-slant-driven nails.

According to Scholten and Molander (1950), maximum strength of toenailed joints (fig. 24-4A) under lateral and uplift loads is obtained by: (1) using the largest nail that will not cause excessive splitting; (2) starting the nail one-third the length of the nail from the end of the member entered; (3) driving the nail at an angle of 30° to the member first entered by the nail; and (4) burying the full shank of the nail but avoiding excessive mutilation of the wood by hammer blows.

Clinched nails.—In a review of the literature, Leach (1964) concluded that increased lateral resistance in nailed joints probably cannot be safely attained by clinching nails randomly parallel and perpendicular to the grain; data from Brock (1956) indicate that nails clinched perpendicular to the grain have about 50 percent greater ultimate lateral resistance than unclinched nails.

Multi-nail joints.—The literature indicates that if wood is not split during the driving process, and if the number of nails in a line is 10 or less, there is an approximately linear relationship between the number of nails used in a joint and the lateral resistance of the joint (Leach 1964).

Some nail sizes and spacings to minimize splitting are suggested in a later paragraph of this section.

ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOADS

Lateral load resistance in nailed joints is linearly proportional to deformation or slip in the joint only at small deformations; as lateral loads approach the ultimate, deformations increase more than proportionately.

TABLE 24-8.—*Lateral resistance¹ of a pair of nails cross-slant-driven into side grain of southern pine, expressed as a percentage of the value for a straight-driven, single nail of the same size and type (Stern 1951b)*

Moisture content at fabrication and at test	Nail type	
	Plain shank	Helically threaded
	----- Percent -----	
Fabricated and tested green.....	139	141
Fabricated green and tested at 12 to 14 percent.....	153	161
Fabricated green and tested at 10 to 11 percent.....	---	158
Fabricated and tested at 19 percent.....	153	166
Fabricated at 19 percent and tested at 11 percent.....	233	148
Fabricated and tested at 10 percent.....	186	182

¹ See figure 24-5 for details of nails. Load applied perpendicular to the plane formed by the two cross-slant-driven nails.

The allowable lateral load applied to a nailed joint, therefore, is a function not only of the ultimate lateral resistance but also of the amount of deformation. Allowable values, as now established, are based primarily on a limiting amount of slip; for nailed joints used in construction, a load sufficient to cause a slip of 0.015 inch is not accompanied by a sizeable amount of "creep" in service. In many joints, the ultimate lateral load is three to four times the load required to cause this amount of slip. Selection of a specific limit of slip as a design criterion is not entirely satisfactory, however, because slip in a joint varies with size and type of nail, nail composition and hardness, and specific gravity, moisture content and size of members joined (Scholten 1965b).

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968, table 17) and Southern Pine Architects' Bulletin No. 7 (Southern Pine Association 1964) contain tables of allowable lateral loads for plain-shank nails and spikes; both are based on the following equation and are applicable where penetration into the member receiving the point is not less than 11 times the nail diameter.

$$p = KD^{3/2} \quad (24-9)$$

where:

p = allowable lateral load per nail, pounds.

K = a constant = 1,650 for southern pine.

D = nail diameter, inches (see table 24-1).

Values of p for a range of nail and spike sizes are shown in table 24-9.

For nails and spikes driven into side grain of unseasoned wood which will remain wet or will be loaded before seasoning, or in wood pressure impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals, the allowable lateral load is three-fourths that given in table 24-9, except that for threaded, hardened-steel nails the full load may be used (National Forest Products Association 1968). Table 24-6 gives the sizes of helically threaded nails equivalent to common wire nail sizes.

For nails and spikes in double shear and fully penetrating all members in a three-member joint, the allowable load may be increased one-third when each side member is not less than one-third the thickness of the center member, and may be increased two-thirds when each side member is equal in thickness to the center member. For intermediate thicknesses of side members, the increase in allowable load is determined by straight-line interpolation (Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968).

For nails or spikes in double shear with side members at least 3/8-inch thick, the allowable load given in table 24-9 may be doubled for nails not exceeding 12d in size when the nail extends at least three diameters beyond the side member and is clinched (National Forest Products Association 1968).

Where properly designed metal side plates are used, the allowable loads in table 24-9 can be increased 25 percent. The allowable lateral load for a nail or spike driven into end grain (parallel to fibers) is two-thirds

TABLE 24-9.—Allowable lateral loads (normal duration) for common wire nails and spikes, driven into the side grain of seasoned southern pine¹ (adapted from Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)

Size										Diameter	
6d	8d	10d	12d	16d	20d	30d	40d	50d	60d	5/16- inch	3/8- inch
----- Pounds -----											
COMMON WIRE NAILS											
63	78	94	94	107	139	154	176	202	223	--	--
SPIKES											
--	--	139	139	155	176	202	223	248	248	289	380

¹ Load applied in any lateral direction (fig. 24-17) if penetration is not less than 11 diameters; for penetration from 11/3-diameters to 11 diameters, the allowable value is linear between 0 load at 0 penetration and the tabulated value.

that given in table 24-9. The allowable lateral load in a toenailed joint (fig. 24-4A) is five-sixths that shown in table 24-9 (Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968).

Section 24-1 outlines duration-of-load adjustment factors applicable to values given in table 24-9.

DEFECTS IN NAILED JOINTS

Common defects in nailed joints include splits in the wood, nails that back out of the joint, and wood stains caused by nails reacting with wood and air.

Splits.—Southern pine, especially when dry, splits fairly readily even when carefully nailed. Drilled pilot holes are probably the most effective deterrent to splits. Slim, helically threaded, hardened steel nails can equal the holding power of larger plain-shank nails, with less splitting. Nails with flattened or bradded points reduce splitting, but have less withdrawal resistance than nails with sharp points. Splitting is reduced by driving nails as far from board ends as possible and by placing warped boards to obtain maximum bearing where a nail is driven.

In multinail joints, proper nail spacing and nail selection can reduce splitting. While no recommendations specific to southern pine have been published, Scholten (1965b) has suggested some guidelines for Douglas-fir. He proposed that nail diameter should be about one-sixth or one-seventh the thickness of the attached member (nailhead side); for example, an 8d common nail with diameter of 0.131 inch could be used with an 0.8-inch-thick board.

Ramos (1960) suggested the following minimum lateral spacings applicable to 6d and 8d common wire nails in Douglas-fir multi-nail joints.

Dimension	Approximate	
	Multiple of nail diameter	spacing for 8d nail
	--- Inches ---	
Parallel to grain.....	17	2.3
Perpendicular to grain.....	7	.9
Unstressed end distance.....	12	1.6
Edge distance.....	10	1.3
Stressed end distance.....	15	2.0

According to German Government Specifications, the spacings can be 50 to 75 percent of these values when nails in a row are staggered by 1D, i.e., by one nail diameter.

The Southern Pine Association (1964) suggests a minimum distance from the loaded end of 13 to 20D, and a minimum spacing of 12 to 15D in the direction of load and 5D perpendicular to load.

Nail popping.—Nailheads driven flush with the surface of gypsum board attached to green studs may lift from the surface as time goes by; this phenomenon, called **pop**, is generally associated with drying of the wood into which the nails are driven. Two extreme cases illustrate the problem and suggest a partial solution.

Consider the behavior of a long, plain-shank nail driven through the 3-5/8-inch dimension of a green southern pine 2 by 4 so that the head is flush; assume that the emergent point is welded to a metal plate glued securely to the back side of the 2 by 4. Under these conditions, when the 2 by 4 is dried and shrinks, the head of the nail must lift (or pop) from the 2 by 4 because the nail length remains unchanged while the wood shrinks.

Now consider the behavior of a nail driven in the same manner, but with the head welded to a metal plate securely glued to the side entered by the nail. Under this condition, the nailhead cannot lift from the surface, and the point must further emerge from the back side as the stud dries and shrinks.

From these illustrations, it is concluded that nail pop will be diminished if the nail is fixed in the wood as closely as possible to the stud surface adjacent to the gypsum board; obviously the shortest possible nail that has the necessary withdrawal resistance is required. Uncoated, threaded nails have greater withdrawal resistance per inch of length than cement-coated, plain-shank nails; therefore, a short, threaded nail would appear to be a reasonable choice to minimize nail popping. Stern (1956a) has published data specific to southern pine that support this conclusion.

Stains and corrosion.—Where corrosion of the nail or staining of the wood must be minimized, nails of stainless steel or alloys of copper or aluminum are used. Galvanized nails, while less corrosion resistant than

the alloyed nails, are frequently used where corrosion is a factor. Cadmium-plated nails have very limited corrosion resistance, are used for indoor exposure, and should not be used outdoors or exposed to chemicals fostering corrosion.

NAILHEAD DESIGN

Most nailheads are designed with sufficient strength for withdrawal with a claw hammer. Except for certain finish nails and brads designed to be countersunk, nailheads are large enough to prevent them from pulling through boards attached to thicker substrates.

Figure 24-11 illustrates five 16d nails, three of which have heads 11/32-inch in diameter; two have smaller heads measuring 9/32-inch. Stern (1969c, p. 18) showed that when these nails were driven through the 1-1/2-inch dimension of southern pine 2 by 4's into side grain and end grain of southern pine lumber of 0.43 to 0.61 oven-dry specific gravity, the head pull-through resistance in the nailed member was in all cases greater than the withdrawal resistance from the member retaining the point (fig. 24-19).

NAILING OF PARTICULAR PRODUCTS

Additional information on the nailing of specific southern pine products can be found in the following references. Most are by E. G. Stern, who has done much research on nailed joints in southern pine; few other researchers have studied these species.

<u>Product</u>	<u>Reference</u>
Subflooring to joists -----	Stern (1954a, 1957c, 1961c)
Finish flooring to subflooring -----	Stern (1951a, 1954b)
Plywood sheathing -----	Stern (1958, 1961c); Anderson (1965)
Lumber sheathing -----	Anderson (1965)
Pallets and skids -----	Stern (1953, 1965ab, 1966, 1968d, 1969b, 1970c, 1971)
Sheet metal to rafters and studs -----	Stern (1961a)
Trusses -----	Stern (1957a, 1961c, 1965d); Stern and Pletta (1967)
Building components -----	Stern (1956e, 1964a)
Gypsum board to studs -----	Stern (1956ab)
Creosoted wood -----	Stern (1956c)
Containers -----	USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1953a)
Hardboard -----	Stern (1959d); Anderson (1965)
Fiberboard sheathing -----	Stern (1955); Anderson (1965); Merrill and French (1966)

24-3 STAPLES

Although U. S. Government specifications listing steel staples for given applications are available (Federal Housing Administration 1961; General Services Administration 1963), there are no published design criteria for allowable loads on staples fastening southern pine components.

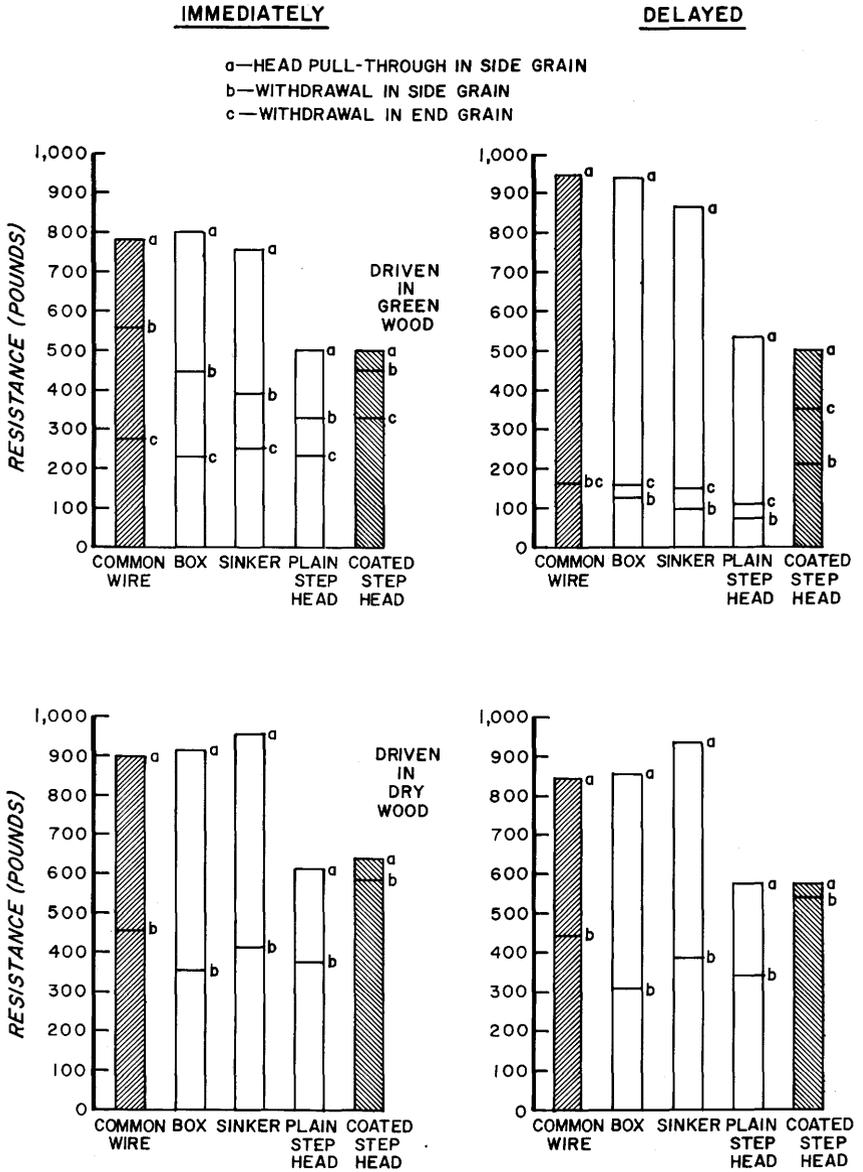


Figure 24-19.—Head pull-through and static withdrawal resistance of 16d nails (described by fig. 24-11) driven through the 1½-inch dimension of southern pine 2 by 4's into side and end grain of southern pine wood. (Top) Driven through green pine into green pine. (Bottom) Driven through dry pine into dry pine. (Left) Immediate withdrawal. (Right) Withdrawal after delay of 6 weeks in green wood and 3 weeks in dry wood. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, pp. 18, 19.)

EXPERIMENTAL DATA

Equipment to rapidly power drive staples has been developed relatively recently; since wide use of staples did not occur until this equipment became available, experimental data on the holding power of staples in southern pine is scarce.

Tests with other species suggest the following conclusions, which are probably applicable to southern pine as well: (1) withdrawal resistance of staples varies almost directly with the diameter and depth of penetration of the legs; (2) lateral resistance varies as the $3/2$ power of the wire diameter; (3) seasoned lumber joints assembled with coated galvanized steel fasteners are stronger than green lumber joints similarly fastened; (4) nylon-coated staples have shown exceptional resistance to withdrawal for at least a year after driving; (5) strength of dry-lumber joints, particularly, are increased by use of some coatings on staples; (6) pull-through withdrawal resistance is proportional to width of staple crown; (7) staples with divergent points probably offer less withdrawal resistance than staples with symmetrical points (Countryman and Colbenson 1955; Stern 1962a; Kurtenacker 1965, p. 18; Scholten 1965b; Albert and Johnson 1967).

Since static loads are of most importance in building construction, while impact stresses are more critical to containers and pallets, available data on resistance of staples in southern pine to these two types of loading are presented separately.

Static withdrawal resistance.—Stern (1970b) compared the withdrawal resistance of uncoated, 2-1/2-inch-long, galvanized steel staples with identical staples coated with an unidentified plastic polymer. They had symmetrical points, a 7/16-inch crown, and were made from 15-gage wire² (0.067 by 0.072 inch); they were power driven through 3/4-inch southern pine boards (0.47 oven-dry specific gravity and 21-percent moisture content) into side grain of southern pine 2 by 4's (0.52 oven-dry specific gravity and 22-percent moisture content). Withdrawal resistance was tested at intervals during 24 weeks of exposure to 70° F. at 50-percent relative humidity. Moisture content of the wood after 3, 6, 12, and 24 weeks of exposure was 12.2, 10.9, 10.3, and 11.5 percent respectively. Staples were withdrawn at 0.1 inch per minute.

The withdrawal resistance of the coated staples was substantially higher than that of the uncoated staples at all times during the 24-week test period; the curvilinear form of the graph in the 3- to 24-week interval is evidently a response to the varying wood moisture content (fig. 24-20).

Effects of penetration and time of pulling on withdrawal resistance and crown pull-through resistance were also evaluated by Stern (1969b, p. 63). Plastic-coated, galvanized-steel, 16-gage staples with 3/8-inch crown and symmetrical points were driven through 1/2-inch Douglas-fir ply-

² Many, if not all, staples are rectangular in cross section, although formed from round wire; gage given is Washburr and Moen.

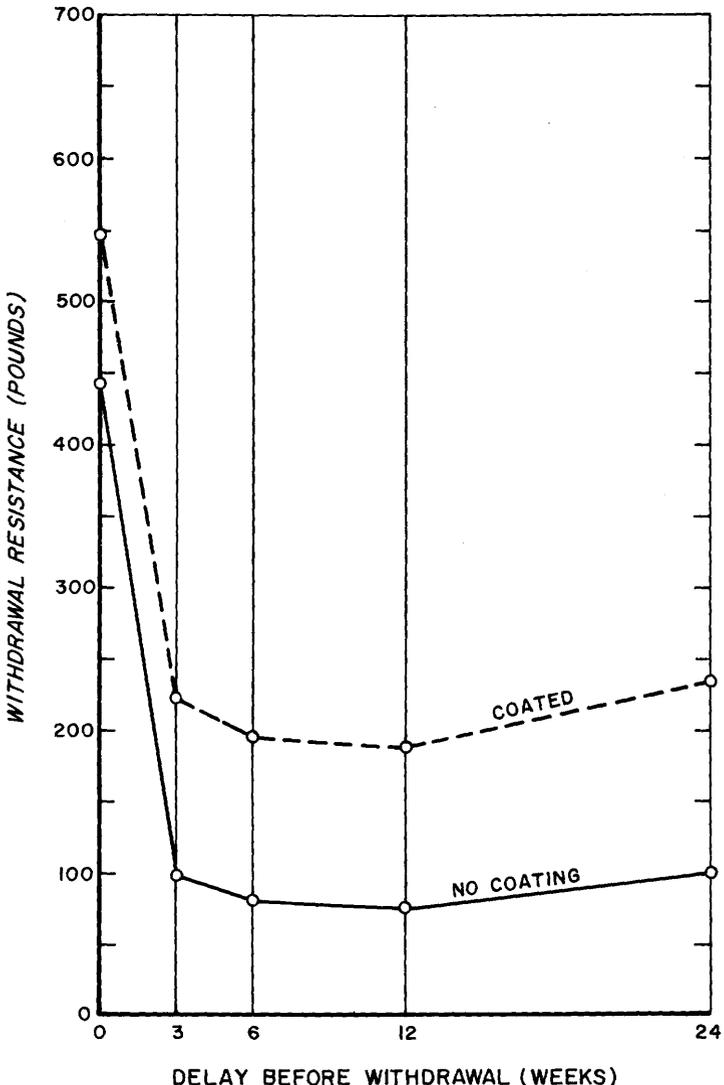


Figure 24-20.—Immediate and delayed static withdrawal resistance of coated and uncoated, 15-gage staples driven $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches into the side grain of partly dried southern pine. Test details are in text. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, p. 64.)

wood (0.46 oven-dry specific gravity and 6.8-percent moisture content) into side grain of southern pine (0.53 oven-dry specific gravity and 27.8-percent moisture content); staples were pulled at 0.1 inch per minute immediately after driving and after a 2-week delay, which was sufficient to reduce moisture content of the lumber to 14.4 percent.

Immediate withdrawal resistance appeared to be linearly related to penetration; delayed withdrawal resistance, however, was approximately the same at all penetrations from $15/16$ -inch to $1-5/16$ -inches (fig. 24-21

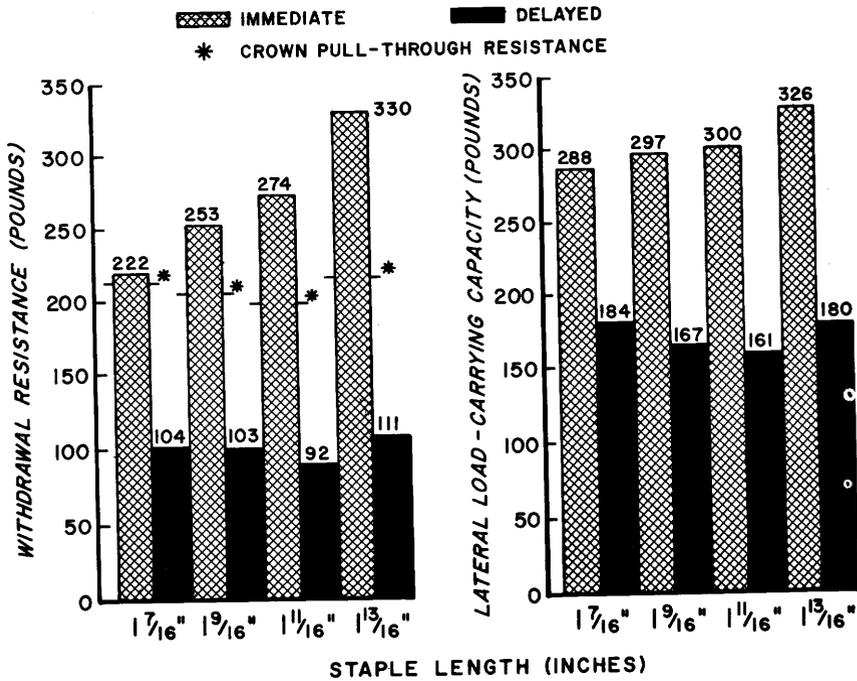


Figure 24-21.—Immediate and delayed static withdrawal and lateral resistance of various lengths of 16-gauge, plastic-coated staples driven through 1/2-inch-thick plywood into side grain of partly dry southern pine. See text for test details. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, p. 63.)

left). Crown pull-through resistance in the Douglas-fir plywood was less than the shank withdrawal resistance offered by the southern pine.

Stern (1969c, p. 63) observed results very similar to those shown in figure 24-21 when the assembly just described was cycled through a series of exposures to dry and humid air.

Static lateral resistance.—Stern (1970e) tested lateral load resistance of the 15 gage staples and configuration described in connection with figure 24-20. He found that at 0.015- and 0.030-inch joint deformation, immediate lateral load resistances of joints formed by coated staples exceed that of joints with uncoated staples by 21 and 12 percent; delayed (6 weeks) lateral load resistance, however, was only 10 and 8 percent higher than for uncoated staples. The same joint described in connection with figure 24-21 (left) was also used for static lateral resistance by Stern (1969c, p. 63); immediate lateral resistance increased somewhat with increased staple length, but delayed lateral resistance showed no relationship to staple length (fig. 24-21, right).

Kurtenacker (1962) determined the static lateral resistance of two sizes of staples driven through 1/4-inch Douglas-fir plywood and 25/32-inch white pine (*Pinus strobus* L.) into southern pine at 12-percent

moisture content and loaded at 0.25 inch per minute. These values (each the average of five replications) were compared to lateral resistance of clinched common wire nails (table 24-10); in no case did lateral resistance of the staples exceed that for the clinched common wire nails. Static lateral resistance of the staples in southern pine varied greatly with staple orientation. If the plane through the legs of the staple was perpendicular to the annual rings of the southern pine, the crown of the staple pulled through the plywood or white pine; if parallel to the rings, however, the legs tended to pull from the southern pine.

Impact lateral resistance.—The impact lateral resistance of clinched common wire nails was compared with that of unclinched 16-gage staples driven into the side grain of southern pine at 12-percent moisture content (table 24-11). The staple wire was only 0.065 inch in diameter compared to 0.113 and 0.131 inch for the nails, and the penetration of the staples into the southern pine was always at least 1/4-inch less than that of the nails. In general, the impact lateral resistance of the staples was less than that of the nails (Kurtenacker 1962).

In another test, 2-inch-long, clinched, 14-gage, uncoated staples with 7/16-inch crown width, however, gave about the same impact lateral resistance as 11-1/2-gage, clinched, uncoated, common wire nails when used to fasten 1/4-inch plywood to southern pine.

Results not shown in table 24-11 caused Kurtenacker (1962) to conclude

TABLE 24-10.—*Static lateral resistance of single, 16-gage staples with 7/16-inch crown width and divergent chisel points compared to that of hammer-clinched, common wire nails driven into dry southern pine (Kurtenacker 1962)*

Fastener	Length of shank	Coating	Clinch ¹	Maximum load ²	Work to maximum load ³
	<i>Inches</i>			<i>Pounds</i>	<i>In.-lbs.</i>
DRIVEN THROUGH 1/4-INCH GROUP III ³ CONTAINER- GRADE PLYWOOD INTO 1 5/8-INCH SOUTHERN PINE					
Nail (11 1/2 gage)-----	2	Plain	H	485	197.0
Staple-----	1 5/8	Cement or rosin	N	391	99.5*
Staple-----	2	Galvanized	P	341*	78.8*
DRIVEN THROUGH 25/32-INCH WHITE PINE INTO 1 5/8-INCH SOUTHERN PINE					
Nail (10 1/4 gage)-----	2 1/2	Plain	H	392	117.4
Staple-----	2	Galvanized	N	261	77.5

¹ N—no clinch; H—clinched by hand with a hammer; P—clinched by driving through specimen against a steel backup plate.

² Values followed by an asterisk are significantly lower than values for common nails.

³ Lower in specific gravity than southern pine.

TABLE 24-11.—*Impact lateral resistance of unclinched, single, 16-gage staples with $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch crown width and divergent chisel points compared with that of hammer-clinched, plain wire nails driven into dry southern pine (Kurtenacker 1962)*

Fastener, coating, and length (inches)	Maximum load ¹		Energy expended ¹
	Pounds	In.-lbs.	
DRIVEN THROUGH $\frac{1}{4}$ -INCH GROUP III ² CONTAINER-GRADE PLYWOOD INTO $1\frac{5}{8}$ -INCH SOUTHERN PINE			
11½-gage nail, uncoated			
2-----	432		228
Uncoated staple			
1⅝-----	338*		201
Galvanized staple			
1-----	273*		101*
1¼-----	342*		154*
1½-----	379*		216
Cement- or rosin-coated staple			
1-----	293*		108*
1¼-----	324*		145*
1½-----	351*		202
1⅝-----	393*		211
DRIVEN THROUGH $2\frac{5}{32}$ -INCH WHITE PINE INTO $1\frac{5}{8}$ -INCH SOUTHERN PINE			
10¼-gage nail, uncoated			
2½-----	397		190
Uncoated staple			
2-----	351*		241*
Cement- or rosin-coated staple			(higher)
2-----	324*		244* (higher)

¹ Values followed by an asterisk are significantly lower (unless indicated higher) than values for common nails.

² Lower in specific gravity than southern pine.

that clinched staples generally outperformed unclinched staples and that the optimum length of clinch was somewhat over $3/32$ -inch but less than $7/32$ -inch.

STAPLE SIZE AND SPACING FOR CONSTRUCTION APPLICATIONS

Because of the large variety of staple designs made by numerous suppliers, broadly accepted tables of recommended staple sizes and spacings have not been published. Some guidelines for stapling a variety of wall sheathing, roof sheathing, gypsum board, and underlayment materials were, however, reproduced by Stern (1969c, p. 62) from a report of the

Southern Building Code Congress (1968); the information is applicable only to staples coated with an unidentified plastic polymer (tables 24-12 and 24-13).

24-4 WOOD SCREWS

Figure 24-22 illustrates common types of wood screws. Dimensional data for these and similar screws with recessed heads have been published by American Society of Mechanical Engineers (1962); nominal size, threads per inch, diameters, and lengths are listed in table 24-14.

ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOADS

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 176) gives the allowable withdrawal load (one-sixth of the ultimate withdrawal load) of wood screws inserted in side grain of seasoned wood as follows.

$$p = 2,370G^2D \quad (24-10)$$

where:

p = allowable withdrawal load per inch of penetration of the threaded portion, pounds.

G = specific gravity based on oven-dry weight and volume.

D = shank diameter of screw, inches.

The equation is applicable to the size ranges indicated below if screws are inserted in softwoods predrilled with pilot holes of a diameter equal to seven-tenths the root diameter of the threads; the root diameter for most

TABLE 24-12.—*Sizes and spacings for 16-gage, galvanized, plastic-coated staples for wall sheathing (after Southern Building Code Congress 1968)*

Type and thickness of sheathing (inches)	Minimum crown of staple	With diagonal bracing		Without diagonal bracing	
		Spacing at edges of sheet ¹	Minimum leg length of staple	Spacing at edges of sheet ¹	Minimum leg length of staple
----- Inches -----					
Fiberboard					
1/2-----	7/16	4	1 1/8	3	1 1/2
2 5/8 2-----	7/16	4	1 1/2	3	1 1/2
Plywood					
5/16-----	3/8	4	1 1/8	3	1 1/4
3/8-----	3/8	4	1 1/4	3	1 3/8
1/2-----	3/8	4	1 3/8	3	1 1/2
5/8-----	7/16	3	1 5/8	3	1 5/8
3/4-----	7/16	3	1 3/4	3	1 3/4
Gypsum board					
1/2-----	7/16	6	1 1/2		

¹ In intermediate members, staples can be spaced 6 inches apart.

TABLE 24-13.—*Sizes and spacings for 16-gage¹, galvanized, plastic-polymer-coated staples for roof sheathing, subflooring, lath, and underlayment (after Southern Building Code Congress 1968)*

Type and thickness of material (inches)	Minimum crown of staple	Spacing of staples in intermediate members	Spacing at edges of sheet	Minimum leg length of staples
----- Inches -----				
Plywood roof sheathing				
5/16 -----	3/8	6	3	1 1/4
3/8 -----	3/8	6	3	1 3/8
1/2 -----	3/8	6	3	1 1/2
5/8 -----	3/8	6	3	1 5/8
3/4 -----	3/8	6	3	1 3/4
Plywood subflooring				
1/2 -----	3/8	6	3	1 1/2
5/8 -----	3/8	6	3	1 5/8
3/4 -----	3/8	6	3	1 3/4
Gypsum lath				
3/8 -----	7/16	5	5	7/8
1/2 -----	7/16	5	5	1
Plywood, hardboard, particleboard floor underlayment				
3/16 ² -----	3/16	6	3	7/8
1/4 ² -----	3/16	6	3	7/8
5/16 ² -----	3/16	6	3	1
3/8 -----	3/8	6	3	1 1/8
1/2 -----	3/8	6	3	1 5/8
5/8 -----	3/8	6	3	1 5/8

¹ Except as noted.

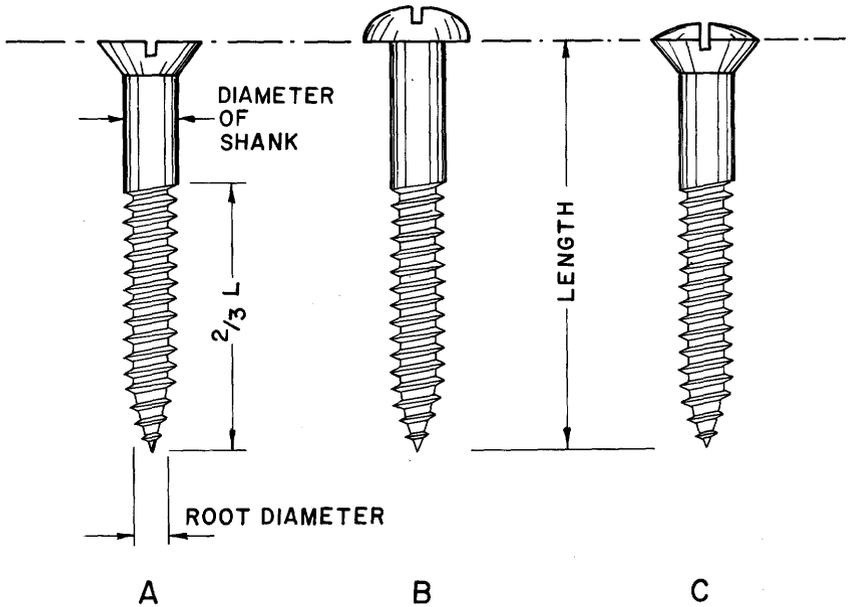
² For these thicknesses, staples may be 18 gage.

screws is about two-thirds the shank diameter. Values of G² for selected specific gravities are listed in the introduction to this chapter.

Screw length	Limits of screw number or gage
<i>Inches</i>	
1/2	1-6
3/4	2-11
1	3-12
1 1/2	5-14
2	7-16
2 1/2	9-18
3	12-20

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968, table 18) and the Southern Pine Association (1964) give allowable withdrawal loads for wood screws based on the equation:

$$p = 2,850G^2D \tag{24-11}$$



ZM-86795F

Figure 24-22.—Types of slotted-head wood screws. (A) Flathead. (B) Roundhead. (C) Ovalhead. Recessed-head screws with these three head shapes are also commonly available, as are screws with shanks fully threaded.

TABLE 24-14.—Dimensions of common wood screws

Nominal size (number)	Threads per inch	Diameter (D) of screw shank	D ²	Root diameter ($\frac{2}{3}$ D)		Lengths (L) ¹
				Inch	Inch	
0.....	32	.060	.0036	.040	— — —	$\frac{1}{4}$ – $\frac{3}{8}$
1.....	28	.073	.0053	.049	— — —	$\frac{1}{4}$ – $\frac{1}{2}$
2.....	26	.086	.0074	.057	— — —	$\frac{1}{4}$ – $\frac{3}{4}$
3.....	24	.099	.0098	.066	— — —	$\frac{1}{4}$ –1
4.....	22	.112	.0125	.075	— — —	$\frac{1}{4}$ – $1\frac{1}{2}$
5.....	20	.125	.0156	.083	— — —	$\frac{3}{8}$ – $1\frac{1}{2}$
6.....	18	.138	.0190	.092	— — —	$\frac{3}{8}$ – $2\frac{1}{2}$
7.....	16	.151	.0228	.101	— — —	$\frac{3}{8}$ – $2\frac{1}{2}$
8.....	15	.164	.0269	.109	— — —	$\frac{3}{8}$ –3
9.....	14	.177	.0313	.118	— — —	$\frac{1}{2}$ –3
10.....	13	.190	.0361	.127	— — —	$\frac{1}{2}$ – $3\frac{1}{2}$
12.....	11	.216	.0467	.144	— — —	$\frac{5}{8}$ –4
14.....	10	.242	.0586	.161	— — —	$\frac{3}{4}$ –5
16.....	9	.268	.0718	.179	— — —	1–5
18.....	8	.294	.0864	.196	— — —	$1\frac{1}{4}$ –5
20.....	8	.320	.1024	.213	— — —	$1\frac{1}{2}$ –5
24.....	7	.372	.1384	.248	— — —	3–5

¹ Screw lengths are available in $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch intervals up to 1 inch, $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch intervals from $1\frac{1}{4}$ to 3 inches, and $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch intervals from $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 5 inches.

Values of G^2 for selected specific gravities are listed in the introduction of this chapter.

The National Design Specification assumes 0.55 as the oven-dry specific gravity of southern pine, whereas the Southern Pine Association values are based on 0.59. Table 24-15 lists allowable withdrawal values for equation 24-11 appropriate for each of these specific gravities. Adjustments for duration of load are given in text section 24-1.

ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOADS

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 177) gives the allowable lateral load of wood screws inserted in side grain of southern pine wood at 15-percent moisture content as follows:

$$p = 3,300D^2 \quad (24-12)$$

where:

p = allowable lateral load, pounds.

D = diameter of screw shank, inches.

The equation yields loads reduced by a factor of 1.6 from the proportional limit and by a factor of 6 from the ultimate load; at the computed load, slip in the joint will be 0.007 to 0.01 inch. The equation applies when the depth of penetration of the screw into the piece receiving the point is not less than seven times the shank diameter. For penetration less than seven times shank diameter, ultimate load is reduced about in proportion to the reduction in penetration; load at proportional limit is reduced somewhat less rapidly. In tests of southern pine leading to development of equation 24-12, the lead hole receiving the shank was about seven-eighths of the root diameter of the shank and that for the threaded portion was about seven-eighths of the root diameter of the screw. To develop maximum withdrawal and lateral resistance, screws should always be turned in, i.e., not started with a hammer (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, pp. 177, 178).

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) and the Southern Pine Association (1964) give allowable lateral loads for wood screws based on the equation:

$$p = 3,960D^2 \quad (24-13)$$

Values for various screw sizes as computed from equation 24-13 are given in table 24-16.

In addition to conditions stated in the footnotes of table 24-16, the Southern Pine Association (1964) specifies that for lumber pressure impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals, tabular values should be reduced by 25 percent; if kiln-dried after treatment, however, the reduction need be only 10 percent.

Adjustments for duration of load are given in text section 24-1.

TABLE 24-15.—Allowable withdrawal loads per inch of penetration of threaded portion of wood screw in side grain of seasoned southern pine—normal duration^{1 2} (adapted from Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)

Screw number or gage	0.55 ³ specific gravity	0.59 ³ specific gravity
	----- Pounds -----	
6.....	119	137
7.....	130	150
8.....	141	163
9.....	153	176
10.....	164	189
12.....	186	214
14.....	209	240
16.....	231	266
18.....	253	292
20.....	276	317
24.....	321	369

¹ Applicable if lead hole diameter is 70 percent of the root diameter of the wood screw and the allowable tensile load of the net (root) section of the screw is not exceeded.

² Wood screws should not be loaded in withdrawal from end grain of wood.

³ Based on oven-dry volume and weight. The values corresponding to 0.55 specific gravity are from the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968); those for 0.59 specific gravity are from the Southern Pine Association (1964).

SCREW SIZE AND SPACING FOR ATTACHMENT OF PLYWOOD

Data specific to southern pine plywood have not been published. Based on spacings applicable to other species (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1953b) the following is suggested as a guideline for attachment of 3/8-inch southern pine plywood panels to frames of structural softwoods.

- Gage of screws ----- 11 or 12
- Screw length, inches ----- 1¼ to 1½
- Minimum edge distance, inch ----- ¾
- Optimum spacing between screws
in a single row, inch ----- ¾ to 7/8

These gages and lengths are the smallest that can be used if the screws are not to break or pull out when the full strength of the plywood is developed. Flathead screws without washers give results about equal to roundhead screws with washers; roundhead screws without washers are inferior in holding power. Staggering of screws is preferable to linear arrangement (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1953b). Based on tests of Douglas-fir plywood, withdrawal resistance is linearly correlated with

TABLE 24-16.—*Allowable lateral loads for wood screws in side grain of seasoned southern pine—normal duration*^{1 2 3 4} (after Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)

Screw number or gage	Allowable lateral load
	<i>Pounds</i>
6 -----	75
7 -----	90
8 -----	106
9 -----	124
10 -----	143
12 -----	185
14 -----	232
16 -----	284
18 -----	342
20 -----	406
24 -----	548

¹ Tabulated values are for loads applied in any direction.

² For screws inserted in end grain (parallel to fibers), reduce tabulated values by one-third.

³ For screws securing metal side plates to wood, tabulated values may be increased 25 percent.

⁴ The tabulated values are for screws embedded at least seven times the shank diameter into the member holding the point; for less penetration, reduce values in proportion. Penetration should not be less than four times the shank diameter.

penetration and is not affected by veneer thickness (Douglas-fir Plywood Association 1964). According to Johnson (1967), screw withdrawal resistance in Douglas-fir plywood is less than that in Douglas-fir lumber.

SCREW WITHDRAWAL RESISTANCE IN PARTICLEBOARD

Data specific to southern pine particleboard have not been published; since particleboard is pressed to certain densities regardless of species, however, data from other species provides guidelines probably applicable to southern pine particleboard.

In studies of Douglas-fir particleboard, Johnson (1967) concluded that maximum withdrawal resistance usually, but not always, was proportional to screw diameter. Little difference in withdrawal resistance was observed between wood screws and sheet-metal screws inserted in lead holes and self-drilling screws that required no lead holes. Withdrawal resistances of wood screws in particleboard were not significantly different with lead-hole diameters 50, 70 and 90 percent of the root diameter of the screw. Among particleboards, greatest resistance to withdrawal was observed in flakeboards, and least resistance in boards made of planer shavings. Among particleboards made of hammer-milled veneer, withdrawal resistance was

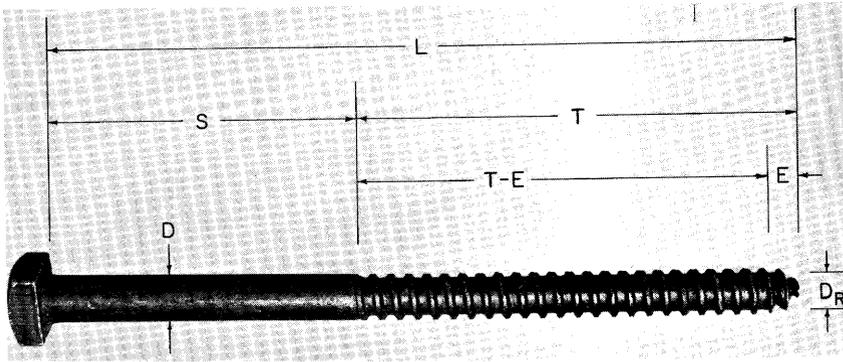
greatest in boards with a density of 48 pounds per cubic foot, but little difference was observed between boards of 40- and 44-pound densities. Screws in Douglas-fir lumber generally had greater withdrawal resistance than in Douglas-fir particleboard.

Overdriving of screws tends to reduce their withdrawal resistance in particleboard. To achieve maximum withdrawal force from screws inserted in the face of particleboard they should be turned one turn or less beyond flush; screws inserted in the edge of particleboard should be turned less than three-eighths of a turn past flush. Power driving of screws in particleboard requires care because threads strip out with only a little more torque than is needed for flush setting (Carroll 1970).

24-5 LAG SCREWS

Lag screws (lag bolts) have bolt heads; their threads are similar to those of wood screws but larger; (fig. 24-23). They are used in applications where fastening with a bolt is not practical because of inaccessibility of one side of the joint, or where the presence of a nut on the surface is objectionable. Diameters of lag screws range from 3/16-inch to 1-1/4-inches and lengths from 1 to 16 inches (table 24-17). Lag screw lengths increase by 1/2-inch increments to 8 inches and by 1-inch increments in lengths over 8 inches. Thread length (T in fig. 24-23) depends on nominal length (L) as follows:

<u>Length of lag screw (L)</u>	<u>Length of thread (T)</u>
----- Inches -----	
1	3/4
1 1/2	1 1/8
2	1 1/2
2 1/2	For 1/4-inch lag screws, T = 1 1/2 inches; for 5/16- and 3/8-inch, T = 1 3/8 inches; for 1/2-, and 5/8-inch, T = 1 3/4 inches.
3	2
4	2 1/2
5	3
6	3 1/2
7	4
8	4 1/2
9	5
10	5 1/4
11	5 1/2
12	6
13	6 1/2
14	7
15	7 1/2
16	8



F-521003

Figure 24-23.—Nomenclature for standard lag screws.

- L = nominal length of lag screw
- D = nominal diameter
- S = length of shank
- T = length of thread
- E = length of tapered tip
- T-E = effective length of thread to be used in calculating penetration of threaded portion
- D_R = diameter of root section.

For intermediate lengths, length of thread is that of the next shorter length listed (Southern Pine Association 1964).

The allowable withdrawal and lateral loads given in following paragraphs and tables should be adjusted for duration of loading as specified in section 24-1. The listed allowable loads apply to common lag screws inserted in lead holes in dry lumber to be continually dry in service. The lead hole for the shank must be bored the same diameter and length as the shank, and the lead hole for the threaded portion must have a diameter of 60 percent of the shank diameter for the smallest screws and

TABLE 24-17.—Dimensions of standard lag screws
(Southern Pine Association 1964)

Nominal size (inches)	Shank diameter (D)	Diameter of root of threads (D _R)	Length (L)	Length of tapered tip (E)
Inches				
1/4	0.250	0.354	0.173	1-10
5/16	.313	.418	.227	1-10
3/8	.375	.479	.265	1-12
7/16	.438	.538	.328	1-12
1/2	.500	.595	.371	1-12
5/8	.625	.703	.471	2-16
3/4	.750	.806	.579	2-16
7/8	.875	.905	.683	3-16
1	1.000	1.000	.780	3-16
1 1/8	1.125	1.092	.887	4-16
1 1/4	1.250	1.182	1.010	4-16

75 percent for the largest. Slightly larger lead holes should be used for very long lag screws. Lag screws should be lubricated (soap is commonly used) and inserted by turning with a wrench, not by driving with a hammer. The threaded portion of the screw should penetrate the piece retaining the point to about 7 times the shank diameter; allowable withdrawal resistance should not, however, exceed the allowable tensile strength of the lag screw at its net or root section (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955; Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968).

Essentially comparable adjustments in allowable loads have been published by the Southern Pine Association (1964) and the National Forest Products Association (1968). For lumber which is installed unseasoned and becomes seasoned in place, the full allowable loads may be used for a joint having a single lag screw loaded parallel or perpendicular to the grain, or for a joint having a single row of lag screws loaded parallel to the grain, or for a joint with multiple rows of lag screws loaded parallel to the grain with separate splice plates for each row. For other types of joints in unseasoned lumber, the allowable lag screw loads are 40 percent of the tabulated loads; for lumber partially seasoned when fabricated, proportional intermediate loads may be used. Where joints are to be exposed to the weather, allowable loads are 75 percent of tabulated values; where always wet, allowable loads are 67 percent of the tabulated values. For lumber pressure impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals and kiln-dried after treatment, 90 percent of the tabulated values shall apply; for lumber so treated but not kiln-dried after treatment, the 90-percent value shall be further reduced as described in the third sentence of this paragraph.

ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOADS

Based on one-fifth the ultimate loads observed by Newlin and Gahagan (1938), the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 178) gives allowable withdrawal loads for lag screws as follows:

$$p = 1,500G^{3/2}D^{3/4} \quad (24-14)$$

where:

p = allowable withdrawal load from side grain, pounds.

G = specific gravity, basis of oven-dry volume and weight.

D = diameter of shank, inches.

Values of $G^{3/2}$ for selected specific gravities are listed in the introduction to this chapter.

The Southern Pine Association (1964) and the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968, table 14) employ the same relationship given in equation 24-14 to calculate allowable withdrawal loads from side grain, except that the constant used is 1,800 instead of 1,500 (table 24-18).

TABLE 24-18.—*Allowable withdrawal loads¹ for single lag screws in side grain of southern pine—normal load duration*

Size	Specific gravity 0.55 ^{2 3}	Specific gravity 0.59 ^{2 4}
<i>Inch</i>	— — — <i>Pounds</i> — — —	
¼-----	260	290
⅜-----	305	340
½-----	350	390
⅝-----	395	440
¾-----	435	485
⅞-----	515	575
1-----	590	655
1 ⅛-----	665	740
1 ¼-----	735	815
1 ½-----	800	890
1 ¾-----	870	965

¹ Per inch of penetration of the threaded portion into the member holding the point; axis of the lag screw perpendicular to the fibers.

² Basis of oven-dry volume and weight.

³ Values from National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968); rounded to nearest 5 pounds.

⁴ Values from Southern Pine Association (1964); rounded to nearest 5 pounds.

Lag screws should not be loaded in withdrawal from end grain, but when this condition cannot be avoided, the allowable load is three-fourths that given in table 24-18.

ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOAD

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 179) gives the allowable lateral load for lag screws inserted in side grain of seasoned southern pine (0.59 oven-dry specific gravity) and loaded parallel to the grain:

$$p = 1,900D^2 \quad (24-15)$$

where:

p = allowable lateral load parallel to grain, pounds.

D = shank diameter of lag screw, inches.

The values calculated from this formula are applicable when the thickness of the attached member is 3.5 times the shank diameter of the lag screw and the depth of penetration in the member holding the point is seven times shank diameter. For other thicknesses of side members, values

calculated from equation 24-15 should be adjusted by an appropriate factor, e.g., 0.62 for side members twice shank diameter and 1.22 for side members six times shank diameter.

Values for allowable lateral load applied perpendicular to the grain can be calculated from equation 24-15 by further multiplying by a suitable reduction factor as follows:

Shank diameter	Factor
<i>Inch</i>	
1/4	0.97
1/2	.65
3/4	.55
1	.50

For other angles of lateral loading intermediate between parallel and perpendicular to the grain, allowable loads may be calculated from the Hankinson formula:

$$N = \frac{pQ}{p \sin^2\theta + Q \cos^2\theta} \quad (24-16)$$

where:

p = allowable load parallel to the grain, pounds.

Q = allowable load perpendicular to the grain, pounds.

N = allowable load applied at angle θ to the grain, pounds.

θ = angle between grain direction and direction of load application, degrees.

A nomograph that provides a readily solved approximation of equation 24-16 is available (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 181; 1956; National Forest Products Association 1968, p. A-4).

If the shank of the lag screw penetrates through the side member and into the member holding the point, values calculated from equation 24-15 can be increased substantially as follows (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 180):

Ratio of shank penetration (into member holding the point) to shank diameter	Increase in allowable load
	<i>Percent</i>
1	8
3	26
5	36
7	39

When lag screws are used to attach metal side plates, allowable loads parallel to the grain may be increased 25 percent, but allowable lateral loads applied perpendicular to the grain should not be increased (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 182).

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) and the Southern Pine Association (1964) provide identical tables for allowable loads applied laterally to lag bolts inserted in side grain of dry southern pine; in contrast to equation 24-15, these values are arranged to show the effect of depth of penetration as well as shank diameter (table 24-19).

The allowable lateral load for a lag screw inserted parallel to the fibers (i.e., in the end grain of the member holding the point) is two-thirds the tabulated value for a lag screw inserted into side grain and loaded perpendicular to the grain.

The spacings, end distances, edge distances, and net section for lag screw joints should be the same as for joints with bolts of a diameter equal to the shank diameter of the lag screw used (National Forest Products Association 1968). See section 24-6.

HEAD EMBEDMENT

Based on unpublished information from J. A. Scholten, Stern (1969c, p. 75) has observed that steel lag screws with square heads and washers may pull through southern pine framing members at loads below those required to withdraw the screws; the data presented indicate, however, that allowable withdrawal loads (table 24-18) should cause bolt heads (with or without washers) to be embedded less than 0.1 inch in side grain of southern pine.

24-6 BOLTS

Allowable lateral loads for bolted joints in southern pine are calculated from basic stress values of 1,450 p.s.i. parallel to the grain and 320 p.s.i. perpendicular to the grain (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 168). These values are for seasoned lumber used in an inside dry location. For loads applied parallel to the grain, the basic stress of 1,450 p.s.i. is reduced as the ratio of bolt length (L) to bolt diameter (D) increases. For the situation depicted in figure 24-24, the allowable lateral load parallel to the grain is given as:

$$p = (1,450)(k)(r)(L)(D) \quad (24-17)$$

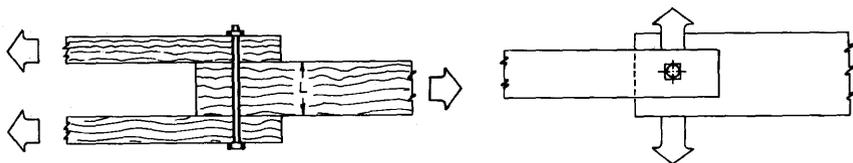


Figure 24-24.—Three-member bolted joint with wood side plates each half the thickness (L) of the middle member. Arrows show direction of forces in lateral loading, parallel to grain (left) and perpendicular to grain (right).

where:

- p = allowable lateral load parallel to grain (per bolt), pounds
 k = 0.8 for three-member joints with wood splice plates, each of which is half the thickness of the middle member.
 r = a multiplier dependent on the ratio L/D ; representative values for various L/D ratios follow:

L/D	r
1	1.00
3	.99
6	.67
9	.45
12	.34

L = length of bolt in bearing, inches. (See fig. 24-24.)

D = bolt diameter, inches.

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 184) gives the allowable lateral load acting in a three-member joint perpendicular to the grain of the wood and through metal side plates or wood side plates, each of which is half the thickness of the middle member.

$$p = (320) (r) (v) (L) (D) \quad (24-18)$$

where:

p = allowable lateral load perpendicular to grain (per bolt), pounds
 r , L and D are the same as for equation 24-17.

v = a multiplier dependent on bolt diameter; representative values follow:

D	v
<i>Inches</i>	
$\frac{1}{4}$	2.50
$\frac{1}{2}$	1.68
$\frac{3}{4}$	1.41
1	1.27
$1\frac{1}{2}$	1.14
2	1.07
3 or more	1

Allowable lateral loads applied at intermediate angles to the grain may be calculated from the Hankinson formula (equation 24-16). Kojis and Postweiler (1953) published information on deformations of bolted joints in southern pine as a function of the angle between direction of lateral load application and grain direction (fig. 24-25). In these tests, 1-inch common steel bolts inserted in side grain of 4-inch-thick, dry southern pine were assembled into a three-member joint in which the side plates were 1-inch-thick steel with hardened bushings to accommodate the bolt; deformations were observed by recording the movement of the side plates in relation to the central wood member. Kojis and Postweiler (1953) concluded that, for 1-inch bolts loaded at angles to the grain of

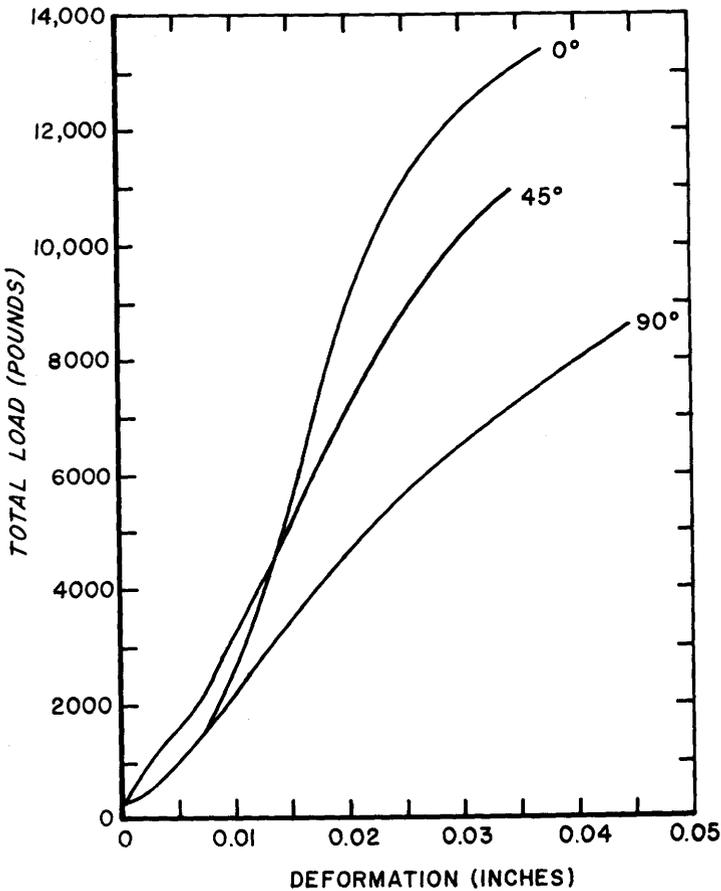


Figure 24-25.—Relationship between load and deformation of 1-inch steel bolt in central member of 3-member joint as affected by angle between load and grain direction. Central member was 4-inch-thick southern pine of higher than average specific gravity and 12.5-percent moisture content; bolts were inserted through bushed holes in 1-inch-thick steel side plates, and the central member was predrilled with a 1-inch bit. Load was applied at 0.006 inch per minute. (Drawing after Kojis and Postweiller 1953.)

20 to 60°, the values computed from the Hankinson formula should be reduced about 10 percent.

The National Forest Products Association (1968) and the Southern Pine Association (1964) have published virtually identical design data for bolted joints in southern pine. In the following four subsections, the text of the Southern Pine Association (1964) is followed almost verbatim.

ALLOWABLE LOADS PARALLEL TO GRAIN

The allowable loads for bolts in southern pine are shown in table 24-20. The values are based on one bolt in double shear when the thickness of wood side members is equal to or greater than one-half the thick-

TABLE 24-19.—*Allowable lateral loads for single lag screws in side grain of seasoned southern pine—normal load duration*
(Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)

Side member, load direction in wood, and lag screw length (inches)	Diameter of lag screw shank, inches										
	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	1	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$
----- Pounds -----											
1$\frac{5}{8}$-inch-thick wood											
Parallel to grain											
4-----	170	210	240	270	300	360					
5-----	190	280	360	400	450	540					
6-----	220	320	410	520	610	710					
7-----	240	350	450	560	670	810					
Perpendicular to grain											
4-----	170	170	180	190	190	210					
5-----	180	240	270	280	290	320					
6-----	210	270	320	360	390	430					
7-----	230	300	340	390	440	490					
2$\frac{5}{8}$-inch-thick wood											
Parallel to grain											
6-----			370	430	480	560	630	730	800		
7-----			410	550	650	750	860	970	1,080		
8-----			460	610	770	970	1,110	1,220	1,380		
9-----			500	670	830	1,120	1,350	1,480	1,670		
Perpendicular to grain											
6-----			280	300	310	340	350	380	400		
7-----			310	390	420	450	470	500	540		
8-----			360	430	500	580	610	630	690		
9-----			380	470	540	670	740	770	830		

TABLE 24-19.—Allowable lateral loads for single lag screws in side grain of seasoned southern pine—normal load duration
(Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Side member, load direction in wood, and lag screw length (inches)	Diameter of lag screw shank, inches											
	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{7}{8}$	1	$1\frac{1}{8}$	$1\frac{1}{4}$	
	----- Pounds -----											
$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick metal												
Parallel to grain												
3	210	265	320	370	415	490						
4	235 ¹	355	480	575	625	740						
5		375	535	710	850	1,005	1,190					
6		400 ¹	545	735	945	1,250	1,480					
7			555 ¹	750	970	1,460	2,030					
8				760 ¹	985	1,500	2,130	2,720				
9					990 ¹	1,510	2,160	2,880				
10						1,540 ¹	2,190	2,960	3,710			
11							2,220 ¹	2,990	3,880			
12								3,000	3,900	4,900		
13								3,030 ¹	3,930	4,920		
14									3,950	4,950	6,060	
15									3,960	4,980	6,110	
16									3,960 ¹	5,000 ¹	6,150 ¹	

TABLE 24-19.—*Allowable lateral loads for single lag screws in side grain of seasoned southern pine—normal load duration*
(Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Side member, load direction in wood, and lag screw length (inches)	Diameter of lag screw shank, inches											
	¼	⅕	⅜	⅞	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1	1⅛	1¼	
½-inch-thick metal												
Perpendicular to grain												
3.....	160	180	245	210	215	235						
4.....	185 ¹	240	290	320	325	355						
5.....		255	325	405	440	480	525					
6.....		270 ¹	330	415	490	600	650					
7.....			340 ¹	425	505	700	890					
8.....				430 ¹	510	720	935	1,130				
9.....					515 ¹	725	950	1,200				
10.....						740 ¹	965	1,230	1,485			
11.....							970 ¹	1,240	1,550			
12.....								1,250	1,560	1,960		
13.....								1,260 ¹	1,570	1,970		
14.....									1,570	1,980	2,420	
15.....									1,580	1,990	2,450	
16.....									1,580 ¹	2,000 ¹	2,460 ¹	

¹ Greater lengths do not permit higher allowable loads.

ness of the middle member, and with the load parallel to the grain (fig. 24-24). When the side members are thinner than one-half the thickness of the middle member, a value is selected by using an L equal to twice the thickness of the thinner member (fig. 24-26A). Adjustments for duration of load are given in text section 24-1.

When the joint consists of two members (bolt in single shear), use one-half the value obtained by using an L equal to twice the thickness of the thinner member (fig. 24-26B).

For joints of more than three members, whose pieces are of equal thickness (fig. 24-26C), the allowable load is equal to the summation of the loads for the individual shear planes involved; the allowable load for each shear plane shall be equal to one-half the tabulated load for a piece the thickness of the member involved. Thus, when a joint consists of four members of equal thickness, $1\frac{1}{2}$ times the load obtained by using an L equal to the thickness of one of the members shall apply. When metal side plates are used, the parallel to grain values may be increased 25 percent, but perpendicular to grain values discussed below shall not be increased. The metal plates shall be of ample strength to support the load.

ALLOWABLE LOADS PERPENDICULAR TO GRAIN

When the load on the bolt acts perpendicular to the grain of the middle member and is applied through wood or steel side plates, use an L equal to the thickness of the main member in obtaining a value from table 24-20. Adjustments of tabulated values for duration of load are stated in text section 24-1. Where wood side plates are used, the joint capacity should not exceed the capacity of the side plates loaded parallel to the grain.

ALLOWABLE LOAD AT AN ANGLE TO THE GRAIN

When the bolt load acts at an angle between 0 and 90° to the grain of the middle member, use a value for L equal to the thickness of the middle member for determining parallel and perpendicular loads from table 24-20; the allowable load is then determined from the Hankinson formula (equation 24-16).

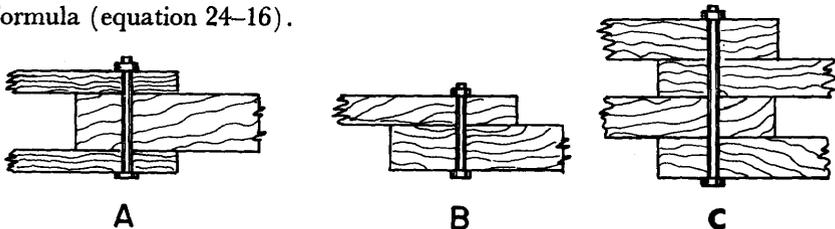


Figure 24-26.—Bolted joints. (A) Three-member joints with side pieces thinner than middle member. (B) Single shear with one member thinner than the other. (C) Four members of equal thickness assembled to provide three shear planes.

TABLE 24-20.—Allowable load on three-member bolted joint in southern pine with wood side plates each half the thickness of the middle member—normal duration^{1,2} (Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)

Length of bolt in middle member L (inches)	Diameter of bolt D	L/D	Projected area of bolt A=L×D	Load parallel to grain P	Load perpendicular to grain Q
	<i>Inches</i>		<i>Sq. In.</i>	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
1 5/8-----	1/2	3.3	0.8125	1,010	480
	5/8	2.6	1.0156	1,290	540
	3/4	2.2	1.2188	1,550	600
	7/8	1.9	1.4219	1,810	670
	1	1.6	1.6250	2,070	730
2-----	1/2	4.0	1.0000	1,180	590
	5/8	3.2	1.2500	1,560	670
	3/4	2.7	1.5000	1,910	740
	7/8	2.3	1.7500	2,230	820
	1	2.0	2.0000	2,550	890
2 5/8-----	1/2	5.3	1.3125	1,280	780
	5/8	4.2	1.6406	1,890	880
	3/4	3.5	1.9688	2,430	980
	7/8	3.0	2.2969	2,900	1,080
	1	2.6	2.6250	3,340	1,170
3-----	1/2	6.0	1.5000	1,290	890
	5/8	4.8	1.8750	1,980	1,000
	3/4	4.0	2.2500	2,660	1,120
	7/8	3.4	2.6250	3,250	1,230
	1	3.0	3.0000	3,790	1,340
3 5/8-----	1/2	7.3	1.8125	1,290	1,020
	5/8	5.8	2.2656	2,010	1,210
	3/4	4.8	2.7188	2,860	1,350
	7/8	4.1	3.1719	3,680	1,490
	1	3.6	3.6250	4,430	1,620
4-----	1/2	8.0	2.0000	1,290	1,040
	5/8	6.4	2.5000	2,010	1,330
	3/4	5.3	3.0000	2,890	1,490
	7/8	4.6	3.5000	3,830	1,640
	1	4.0	4.0000	4,720	1,790

If wood side plates are used, the allowable load should not exceed the capacity of the side plates loaded parallel to the grain.

Values in table 24-20 are for loads acting perpendicular to the axis of

TABLE 24-20.—Allowable load on three-member bolted joint in southern pine with wood side plates each half the thickness of the middle member—normal duration^{1,2} (Southern Pine Association 1964; National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Length of bolt in middle member L (inches)	Diameter of bolt D	L/D	Projected area of bolt A = L × D	Load parallel to grain P	Load perpendicular to grain Q
	<i>Inches</i>		<i>Sq. In.</i>	<i>Pounds</i>	<i>Pounds</i>
4½-----	½	9.0	2.2500	1,290	1,020
	⅝	7.2	2.8125	2,010	1,440
	¾	6.0	3.3750	2,890	1,680
	⅞	5.1	3.9375	3,920	1,840
	1	4.5	4.5000	4,980	2,010
	1⅛	4.0	5.0625	5,980	2,190
5½-----	⅝	8.8	3.4375	2,010	1,450
	¾	7.3	4.1250	2,890	1,940
	⅞	6.3	4.8125	3,940	2,250
	1	5.5	5.5000	5,120	2,460
	1⅛	4.9	6.1875	6,440	2,680
6½-----	⅝	10.4	4.0625	2,010	1,390
	¾	8.7	4.8750	2,890	1,940
	⅞	7.4	5.6875	3,940	2,510
	1	6.5	6.5000	5,140	2,880
	1⅛	5.8	7.3125	6,500	3,170
7½-----	⅝	12.0	4.6875	2,010	1,300
	¾	10.0	5.6250	2,890	1,880
	⅞	8.6	6.5625	3,940	2,500
	1	7.5	7.5000	5,140	3,130
	1⅛	6.7	8.4375	6,500	3,610
9½-----	¾	12.7	7.1250	2,890	1,690
	⅞	10.9	8.3125	3,940	2,350
	1	9.5	9.5000	5,140	3,050
	1⅛	8.4	10.6875	6,500	3,830
	1¼	7.6	11.8750	8,040	4,590
11½-----	1	11.5	11.5000	5,140	2,850
	1⅛	10.2	12.9375	6,500	3,660
	1¼	9.2	14.3750	8,040	4,490

¹ See figure 24-24.

² Tabulated loads are for one bolt. For more than one bolt, use the sum of the loads permitted for each. Loosening of nuts, due to shrinkage, has been allowed for in the table. Bolt holes should be drilled ⅛₂- to ⅛₁₆-inch larger than the bolt, and well aligned. Tight fits requiring driving are not recommended. A standard cut washer or steel strap or plate should be used under both bolt head and nut.

the bolt. If the load in a two-member joint acts at an angle with the axis of the bolt (fig. 24-27), the allowable load component acting at 90° with the bolt axis shall be equal to one-half the tabulated load for an L twice the length of the bolt in the thinner piece. Ample bearing area under washers or plates shall be provided to resist the load component acting parallel to the axis of the bolt.

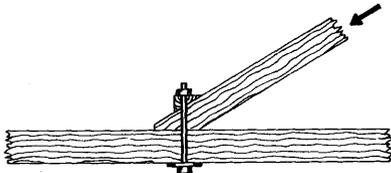


Figure 24-27.—Load applied at angle to axis of bolt.

EFFECT OF CONDITION OF LUMBER AND SERVICE

The values given in table 24-20 are for bolts in lumber seasoned to a moisture content approximately equal to that to which it will eventually come in service. For lumber installed at or above the fiber saturation point and which becomes seasoned in place, the full allowable bolt loads may be used for a bolted joint with wood side members having a single bolt and loaded parallel or perpendicular to the grain, or a single row of bolts loaded parallel to the grain, or multiple rows of bolts loaded parallel to the grain with a separate splice plate for each row. The last recommendations make provision for shrinkage stresses across the grain.

The full allowable bolt loads may also be used for a bolted joint with metal gusset plates having a single row of bolts parallel to the grain in each member at the joint and loaded parallel or perpendicular to the grain. For other arrangements of bolted joints, the allowable bolt loads shall be 40 percent of the tabulated load values.

The values given in table 24-20, adjusted for the condition of the lumber, apply to bolted joints used in a continuously dry location as in most covered structures. For lumber which is occasionally wet but quickly dried, use 75 percent of the tabulated values; if continuously wet, use 67 percent. For lumber pressure impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals and kiln-dried after treatment, use 90 percent of the tabulated values.

HOLE SIZE AND QUALITY

Bolts should fit neatly so that they can be inserted by tapping lightly with a wood mallet. An oversize hole causes nonuniform bearing of the bolt; an undersize hole causes a member to split when the bolt is driven.

In general, smooth holes have higher bearing strengths than rough holes. Section 19-12 describes procedures required to bore smooth holes in green and dry southern pine. (See figure 19-111.)

BOLT SPACING AND NET SECTION

Minimum spacing, end distance, and edge distance are shown in figure 24-28. The spacing between rows for parallel to grain loading is generally determined by dividing the width of the member by the number of rows of bolts; however, this should be reduced if edge distance requirements are not met. If this spacing exceeds 5 inches, separate splice plates must be used. The number of bolts and number of rows are usually limited by the net area of the critical section which in seasoned lumber must equal at least 80 percent of the total area in bearing under all the bolts in the member. For unseasoned wood that will season in place, the net area of the critical section should be at least 33 percent. Staggered bolts should be avoided wherever possible. Where they are used, the net area is determined by considering the adjacent staggered bolts as being at the critical section unless spaced at a minimum of $8D$. For loads at an angle to the grain, the axis of the members shall pass through the center of the bolt group.

LOAD DISTRIBUTION IN MULTIPLE-BOLT TENSION JOINTS

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) and the Southern Pine Association (1964) stipulate that multiple-bolt joints have an allowable load equal to the sum of the allowable loads for each bolt as determined from table 24-20. Cramer (1968) has shown by analysis and by tests on Douglas-fir that joints containing six or more bolts in a row have an uneven distribution of bolt loads. His conclusions were as follows.

The two end bolts together usually carry over 50 percent of the load. The addition of more than six bolts in a row does not substantially

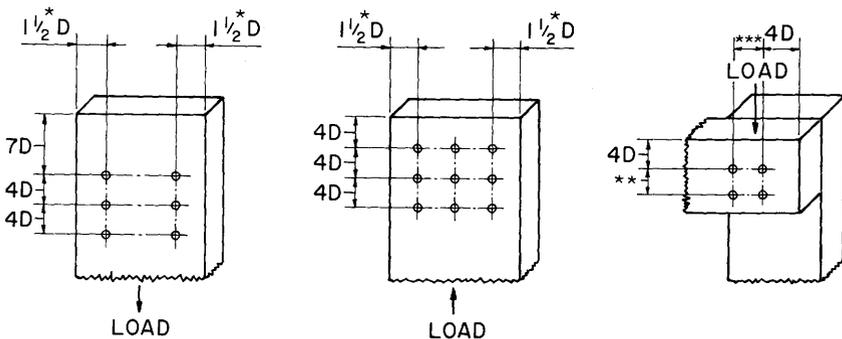


Figure 24-28.—Minimum bolt spacing. L is thickness of middle member (fig. 24-24). *, for L/D more than 6 use one-half of the distance between rows of bolts; a row is a number of bolts placed in a line parallel to the direction of load; **, $4D$ when design load is equal to bolt-bearing capacity of side members; if not, the spacing may be reduced proportionately; ***, $2.5D$ for L/D of 2; $5D$ for L/D of 6 or more. Use straight line interpolation for values between 2 and 6. (Drawing after Southern Pine Association 1964, p. 8.)

increase the elastic strength of the joint, in that the additional bolts tend to reduce only the load on the less heavily loaded interior bolts.

A small misalignment of bolt holes may cause large shifts in bolt loads. Therefore, in field-fabricated joints, the distribution of bolt loads is difficult to predict. The most even distribution of bolt loads occurs in a butt joint in which the tensile stiffness of the main member is equal to that of both splice plates.

Ultimate strength tests show some slight redistribution of load from the more heavily loaded end bolts to the less heavily loaded interior bolts when bolt bearing is the mode of failure. A partial specimen failure occurs before substantial redistribution takes place if final failure is in shear.

BOLTED JOINTS IN PLYWOOD

No data specific to southern pine are published; however, two reports applicable to Douglas-fir—while not summarized here—are available for the guidance of the interested reader (Douglas-fir Plywood Association 1951; American Plywood Association 1968, p. 67).

24-7 DRIFT BOLTS

Plain, round drift bolts (or drift pins), usually driven into predrilled holes $1/8$ -inch smaller in diameter than the drift-bolt diameter, offer relatively small withdrawal resistance but high lateral resistance in southern pine. Hammer-driven, twisted, square-wire rods offer greater withdrawal resistance than plain, round drift bolts and are often used in their place.

Beams and girders with pin-connected joints between steel-pipe diagonals with flattened ends and slotted lumber chords provide a good example of successfully applied drift bolts (fig. 24-29).

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955, p. 175) gives the ulti-

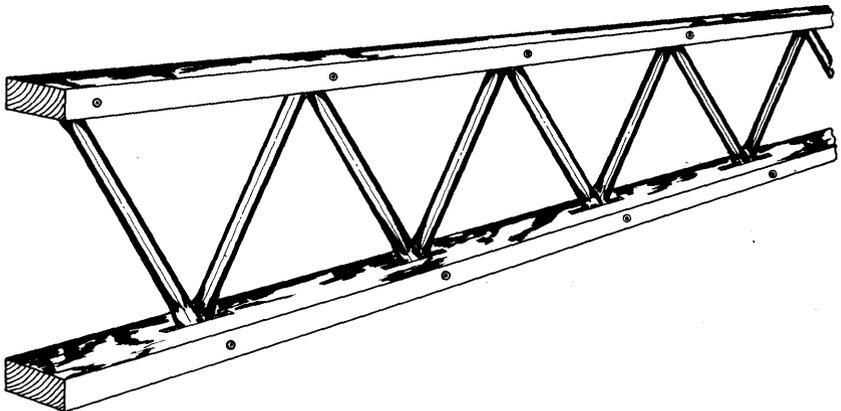


Figure 24-29.—Drift bolts transmit forces from steel-pipe diagonals to lumber chords of beams and girders spanning up to 60 feet.

mate withdrawal load of a round drift bolt in the side of seasoned wood as follows:

$$p = 6,000 G^2D \tag{24-19}$$

where:

p = ultimate withdrawal load per inch of penetration into the member holding the point, pounds

G = wood specific gravity based on oven-dry volume and weight

D = diameter of the drift bolts, inches

Values of G^2 for selected specific gravities are listed in the introduction to this chapter.

ALLOWABLE WITHDRAWAL LOAD

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) and the Southern Pine Association (1964) have published allowable loads for drift bolts in southern pine based on one-fifth the ultimate load computed from equation 24-19, they assume oven-dry specific gravities of 0.55 and 0.59 respectively. Following are allowable withdrawal loads per inch of penetration based on normal load duration:

<u>Diameter</u>	<u>Specific gravity 0.55</u>	<u>Specific gravity 0.59</u>
<i>Inch</i>	----- <i>Pounds</i> -----	
1/4 -----	91	104
3/8 -----	136	157
1/2 -----	182	209
5/8 -----	227	261
3/4 -----	272	313
7/8 -----	318	365
1 -----	363	418

Adjustments for duration of loading are specified in section 24-1.

ALLOWABLE LATERAL LOAD

The allowable lateral load for a drift bolt driven in the side grain of southern pine does not exceed, and ordinarily is considered less than, that for a common bolt of the same diameter; when possible, additional penetration of a drift bolt into members is desirable to compensate for its lack of head, nut, and washers (National Forest Products Association 1968).

24-8 TIMBER CONNECTORS

Timber connectors are made in a variety of designs and sizes but may be categorized as split rings, toothed rings, shear plates, and spike grids (fig. 24-30).

Design information on timber connectors is based on work done by the Timber Engineering Company, Stern (1941), Scholten (1944), the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955), Longworth (1967), Powell (1968), and others.

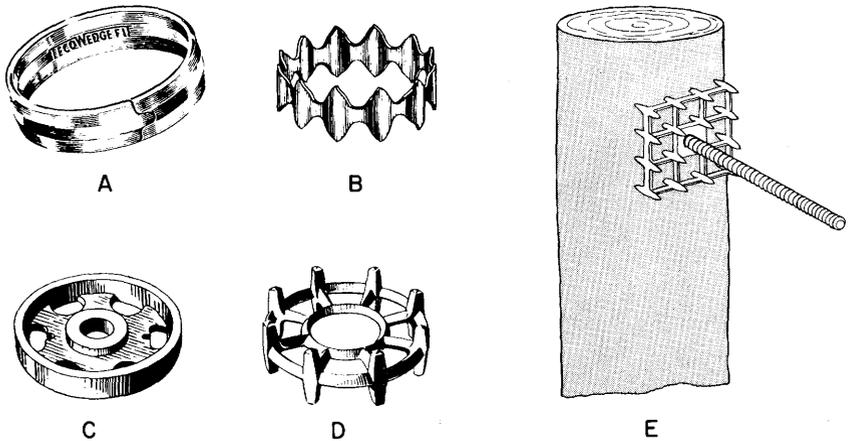


Figure 24-30.—Timber connectors. (A) Beveled split ring. (B) Toothed ring. (C) Shear plate; the reverse side has a flush surface. (D) Circular spike grid. (E) Square spike grid with single curvature.

SPLIT RINGS

Early split rings were of flat steel with uniform cross section (fig. 24-31); current designs are beveled (fig. 24-30A) and provide very efficient transmission of loads in timber joints. The effectiveness of a splitting connector can be attributed to friction between mating surfaces, the bearing resistance of the bolt, the shear resistance of the core within the ring, and the bearing resistance of the wood surrounding the ring (fig. 24-32).

Available in 2-1/2- and 4-inch diameters, they are inserted in grooves pre-cut into mating surfaces of joined timbers, with half the depth of the ring embedded in each member; a bolt holds them in place (fig. 24-31). The 2-1/2-inch rings are widely used in trussed rafters and in 2-inch wood framing. The 4-inch rings are used in heavier beam and girder construction, towers, bridges, and moderate- to long-span trusses.

TOOTHED RINGS

Available in diameters of 2, 2-5/8, or 3-3/8 inches, toothed rings are commonly applied to transfer lateral forces between timbers used in light construction. The toothed rings are embedded with pressure, and no grooves need to be cut (fig. 24-33).

SHEAR PLATES

These connectors are designed primarily for wood-to-steel connections, or—when used in pairs—for wood-to-wood connections in demountable structures (fig. 24-34). Examples of use cited by the Southern Pine Association (1964, p. 10) include attachment of columns to footings with steel

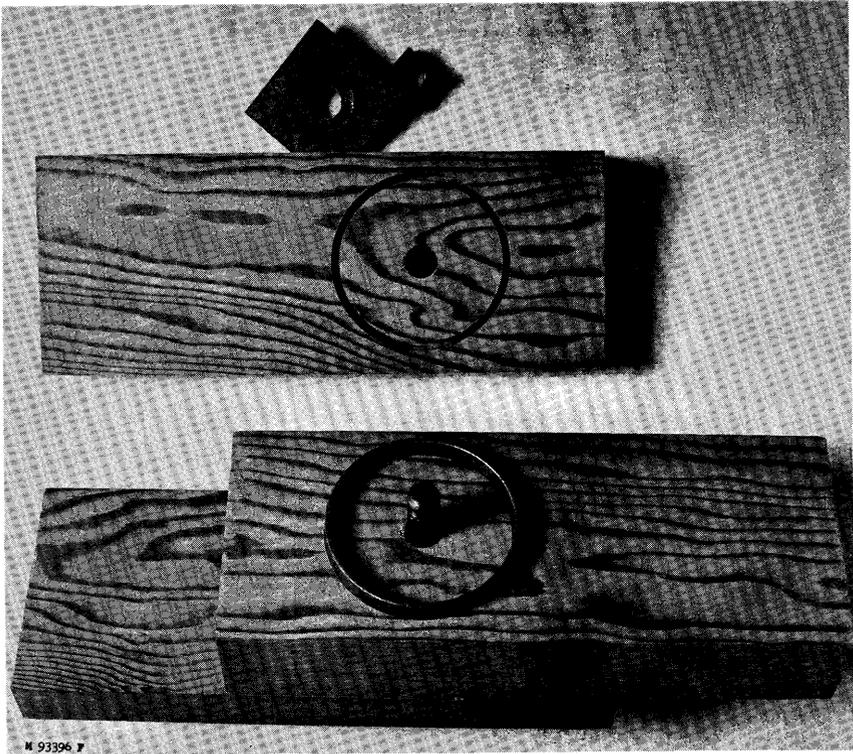


Figure 24-31.—Split-ring connector assembly—connector, precut groove, bolt, washer, and nut. Ring illustrated is an early design; beveled ring shown in fig. 24-30A is currently used. (Photo from USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955.)

straps, connection of timber members to steel gusset plates, attachment of steel heel straps in bowstring trusses, and other steel-to-wood connections in timber structures. In demountable structures, shear plates can be installed directly after fabrication and held in place with nails; the lack of projecting surfaces allows the members to slide by one another without interference. Shear plates are available in diameters of 2-5/8 and 4 inches.

SPIKE GRIDS

Spike grids are available as 3-3/16-inch-diameter round connectors (fig. 24-30D), or as 4-1/8-inch squares with two flat faces, with one curved face (fig. 24-30E), or with two curved faces. They are designed for use with piles and poles in trestle construction, wharves, transmission lines, and other heavy construction. They are installed by application of pressure.

In southern pine, the load-carrying capacity of 4-1/8-inch-square spike grids (with two flat faces) considerably exceeds that of the smaller round spike grids (fig. 24-35).

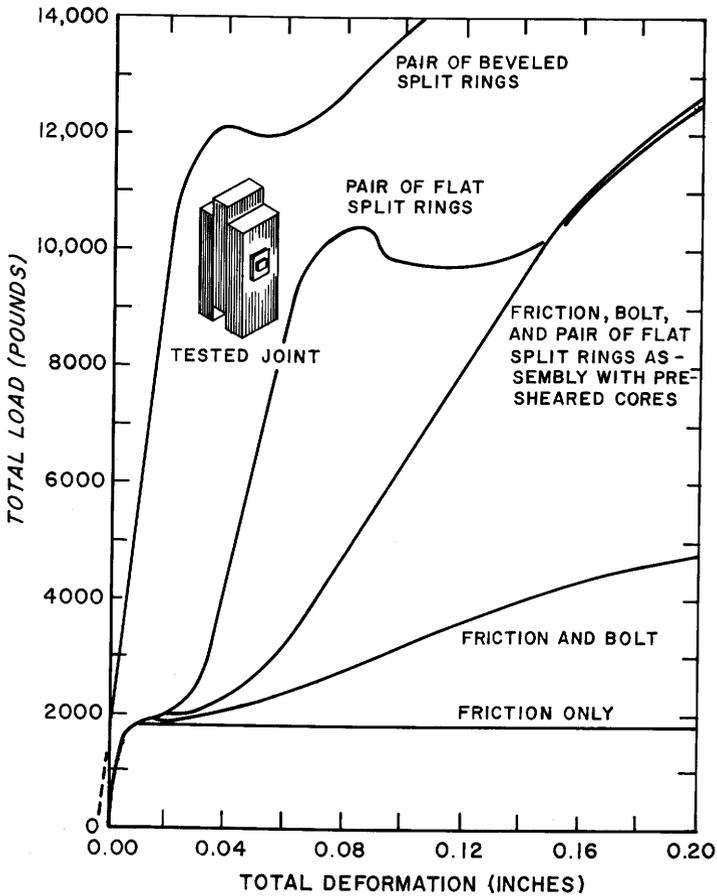
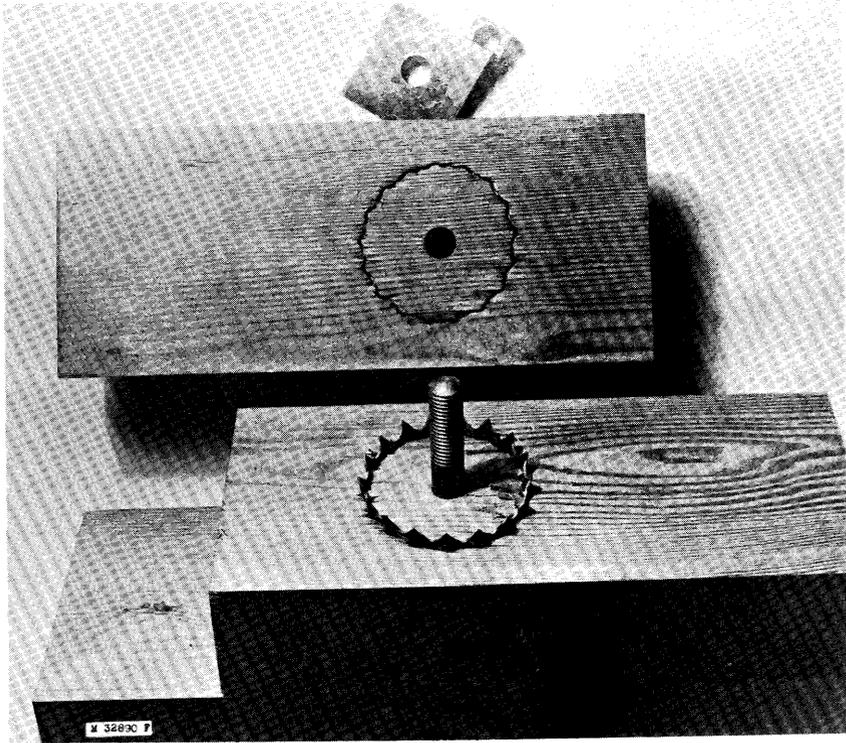


Figure 24-32.—Contribution of friction, bolt bearing, and split-ring (2½-inch) bearing to the load-carrying capacity of a southern pine joint loaded in compression parallel to the grain. (Drawing after Stern 1941.)

ALLOWABLE LONG-CONTINUED LOAD

Allowable long-continued loads for southern pine, as advanced by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1955), are shown in table 24-21. For split rings and shear plates, these values are one-fourth the ultimate loads parallel to the grain of seasoned wood and do not exceed five-eighths the proportional limit. For toothed rings, allowable loads were calculated by dividing ultimate loads by 4.5.

Conditions of use and direction of load application.—Since the tabulated allowable loads apply to seasoned southern pine which will remain dry, they should be reduced 33 percent if the wood is green during fabrication or will be wet or damp in use. If the load is applied at an angle to the grain, the Hankinson formula (equation 24-16) is applicable,



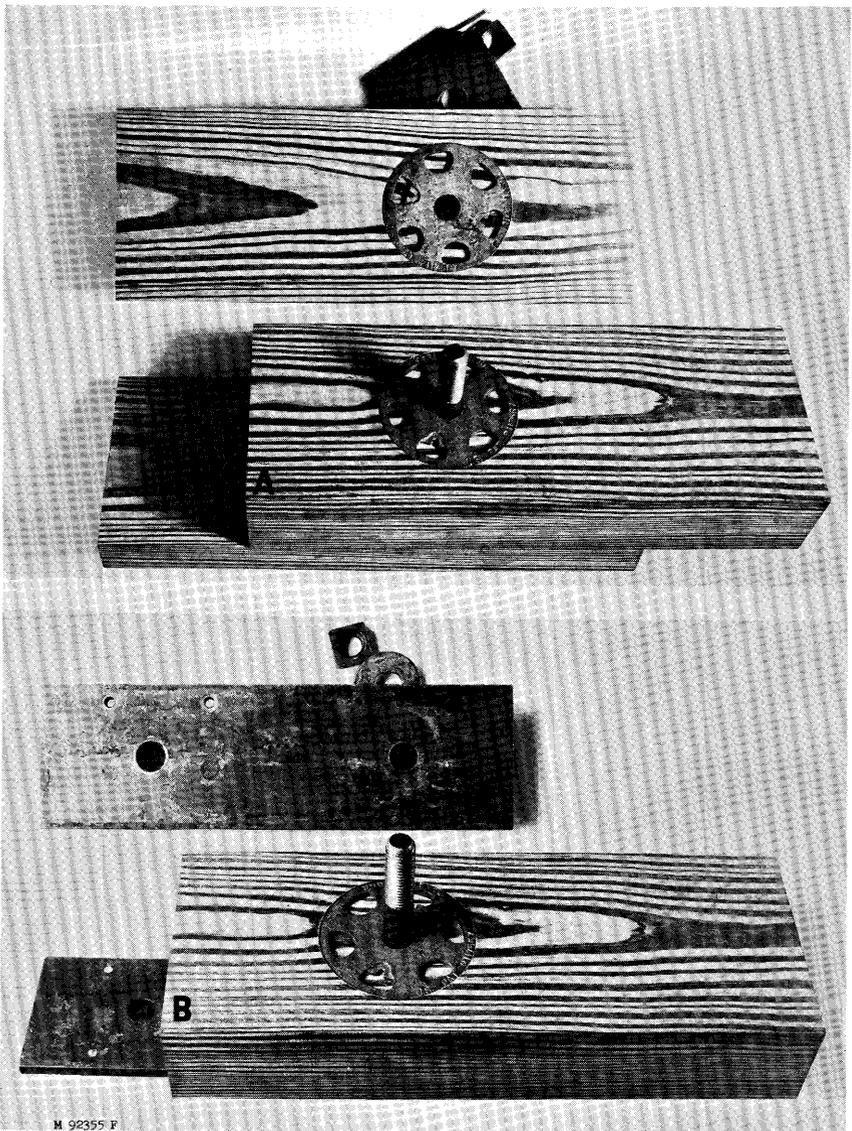
M-32890F

Figure 24-33.—Assembly of toothed-ring connector. (Photo from USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955.)

except in the instance of the toothed rings where the allowable load perpendicular to the grain is applicable for loads in the direction from 45 to 90° to the grain.

Member width.—If the minimum member width given in table 24-21 is increased, the allowable perpendicular-to-grain load may be increased one-tenth for each 1-inch increase in width up to a board width twice the connector diameter. When the connector is placed off center and the load applied perpendicular to the grain in one direction only, the proper allowable load can be determined by considering the width of member as equal to twice the edge distance (the distance between the center of the connector and the edge of the member toward which the load is acting), but the distance between the center of the connector and the opposite edge should not be less than one-half the permissible minimum width of the member.

Spacing.—Since the allowable loads are influenced by the parallel-to-grain end distance and the center-to-center spacing between connectors, the strength ratios given in table 24-22 are to be given consideration when arriving at design load values for given joints. A straight-line interpolation for intermediate end distances and spacings is appropriate.



M-92355F
 Figure 24-34.—Shear-plate connector assemblies. (A) Installed back to wood with wood side members. (B) Assembled with steel side members. (Photo from USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955.)

The clear distance in the direction perpendicular to the grain between connectors loaded parallel to the grain shall not be less than 1/2-inch. The clear distance in the direction parallel to the grain between connectors loaded perpendicular to the grain shall be at least equal to the clear distance from the loaded edge of the member. In the latter instance, the connectors shall be staggered along the grain if feasible.

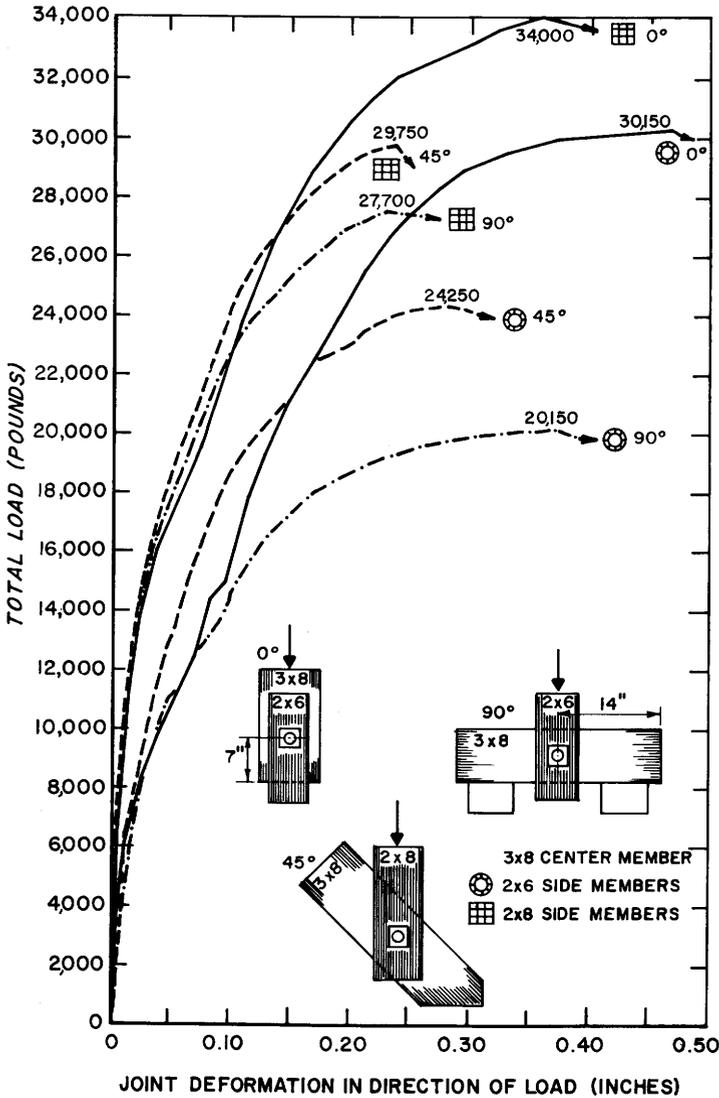


Figure 24-35.—Effectiveness of one pair of 3-3/16-inch round and one pair of 4/8-inch-square spike grids with single 1-inch bolt in three-member compression joint assembled from southern pine of 0.57 to 0.97 oven-dry specific gravity and 14- to 19-percent moisture content. Bolts were inserted in holes drilled 1-1/16 inches in diameter. Joints were loaded at 0.03 inch per minute. (Drawing after Stern 1969c, p. 86.)

The use of cross-bolts at the ends of tension members or at intermediate panel points can be advantageous in reinforcing the members. They may also be used to reinforce members that have, through change of moisture content in service, developed checks to an undesirable degree.

TABLE 24-21.—Allowable long-continued loads for a single split ring, toothed ring, or shear plates in seasoned southern pine members^{1 2} (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, pp. 190, 191, 192)

Timber connector size (inches)	Diameter of bolt	Minimum member thickness		Minimum member width	Loading parallel to grain		Loading perpendicular to grain	
		One connector	Two connectors ³		Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Dense southern pine	Southern pine
		----- Inches -----			----- Pounds -----			
SPLIT RING								
2½-----	½	1	1½	3⅝	2,395	2,065	1,435	1,230
		1⅛	2	3⅝	2,875	2,480	1,725	1,475
4-----	¾	1⅛	1½	5½	3,915	3,355	2,270	1,945
		1¼	2	5½	4,500	3,860	2,610	2,240
		1½	2⅝	5½	5,480	4,695	3,175	2,725
		1⅝	3	5½	5,580	4,780	3,235	2,775
TOOTHED RING								
2-----	½	1	1½	2⅝	1,100	1,000	735	665
		1⅝	2	2⅝	1,210	1,100	805	735
2⅝-----	⅝	1	1⅝	3⅝	1,650	1,500	1,100	1,000
		1⅛	2	3⅝	1,825	1,660	1,220	1,105
		1⅜	2½	3⅝	2,060	1,875	1,375	1,250
3⅝-----	¾	1	1½	4⅝	2,145	1,950	1,430	1,300
		1⅛	2	4⅝	2,350	2,135	1,565	1,425
		1½	2⅝	4⅝	2,690	2,445	1,795	1,630
		1⅝	3	4⅝	2,895	2,630	1,930	1,755
4-----	¾	1	1½	5½	2,585	2,350	1,725	1,565
		1⅛	2	5½	2,795	2,540	1,865	1,695
		1½	2⅝	5½	3,150	2,865	2,100	1,910
		1⅝	3	5½	3,360	3,055	2,240	2,035

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE 24-21.—Allowable long-continued loads for a single split ring, toothed ring, or shear plates in seasoned southern pine members^{1 2} (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, pp. 190, 191, 192)—Continued

Timber connector size (inches)	Diameter of bolt	Minimum member thickness		Minimum member width	Loading parallel to grain		Loading perpendicular to grain	
		One connector	Two connectors ³		Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Dense southern pine	Southern pine
		----- Inches -----			----- Pounds -----			
SHEAR PLATE								
2½	¾	-----	1⅝	3½	2,386	2,045	1,384	1,186
		-----	2	3½	2,667	2,483	1,680	1,440
		1⅝	2⅝	3½	2,667	2,629	1,779	1,525
4	¾	-----	1¾	5½	3,086	2,645	1,789	1,533
		-----	2	5½	3,442	2,950	1,996	1,711
		-----	2⅝	5½	4,035	3,458	2,340	2,006
		1⅝	-----	5½	4,320	3,700	2,510	2,150
		-----	3	5½	4,391	3,763	2,547	2,182
		1¾	3⅝	5½	4,625	3,967	2,684	2,301
	⅞	-----	1¾	5½	3,086	2,645	1,787	1,533
		-----	2	5½	3,442	2,950	1,996	1,711
		-----	2⅝	5½	4,035	3,458	2,340	2,006
		-----	2¾	5½	4,320	3,700	2,510	2,150
		-----	3	5½	4,391	3,763	2,547	2,182
		1¾	3⅝	5½	4,625	3,967	2,684	2,301

¹ Connector with one bolt, two washers, and a tight nut.

² Use twice the tabulated load value for three-member joint with one connector in each of opposite faces of center member.

³ One connector in each of opposite faces of center member.

In no instance (tension or compression) is it permissible to exceed the safe stress of clear wood in compression parallel to the grain at the critical cross section, which is the area remaining after deducting the combined projected areas of connectors and bolt from the actual cross-sectional area of the member.

Side members on shear-plate connectors.—The tabulated allowable loads for shear plate connectors apply for metal and wood side members except that, for 4-inch shear plates with metal side members, the parallel-to-grain loads may be increased 11 percent for southern pine and 18 percent for dense southern pine. The allowable loads for all loading conditions, except wind, shall not exceed 2,900 pounds for 2-5/8-inch shear plates or 4,970 pounds and 6,760 pounds for 4-inch shear plates with 3/4- and 7/8-inch bolts, respectively. For wind loads, the corresponding allowable loads shall not exceed 3,870 pounds, 6,630 pounds, and 9,020 pounds.

TABLE 24-22.—*Strength ratios related to parallel-to-grain spacings and end distances for split rings, toothed rings, and shear plates*¹ (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1955, p. 198)

Connector and diameter (inches)	Spacing ²	Strength ratio	End distance ³		Strength ratio
			Tension member	Compression member	
Split-ring	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Percent</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Percent</i>
2½	6¾+	100	5½+	4+	100
2½	3¾	50	2¾	2½	62
4	9+	100	7+	5½+	100
4	4¾	50	3½	3¼	62
Shear-plate					
2⅝	6¾+	100	5½+	4+	100
2⅝	3¾	50	2¾	2½	62
4	9+	100	7+	5½+	100
4	4½	50	3½	3¼	62
Toothed-ring					
2	4+	100	3½+	2+	100
2	2	50	2		67
2⅝	5¼+	100	4⅝+	2⅝+	100
2⅝	2⅝	50	2⅝		67
3⅝	6¾+	100	5⅞+	3⅝+	100
3⅝	3⅝	50	3⅝		67
4	8+	100	7+	4+	100
4	4	50	4		67

¹ Strength ratios for spacing and end distances intermediate to those listed may be obtained by interpolation; design loads are then obtained by multiplying the ratio times the appropriate allowable load in table 24-21. Spacings and end distances should not be less than the minimum shown.

² Spacing is measured from center to center of connectors.

³ End distance is measured from center of connector to end of member.

Wind and earthquake loads.—When designing for wind and earthquake forces, the allowable loads may be increased 25 to 50 percent.

<u>Connector</u>	<u>Increase</u> <i>Percent</i>
Split-ring connector, any size, bearing in any direction -----	50
Shear-plate connector, any size, bearing parallel to grain -----	33 $\frac{1}{3}$
Shear-plate connector, any size, bearing perpendicular to grain -----	50
Toothed-ring connector, 2-inch, bearing in any direction -----	50
Toothed-ring connector, 4-inch, bearing in any direction -----	25

Percentages for shear-plate connectors bearing at intermediate angles and for toothed-ring connectors of other sizes can be obtained by interpolation.

Impact loads.—Impact loads may be disregarded up to the following percentage of the static effect of the live load producing the impact:

<u>Connector</u>	<u>Impact allowance</u> <i>Percent</i>
Split-ring connector, any size, bearing in any direction -----	100
Shear-plate connector, any size, bearing parallel to grain -----	66 $\frac{2}{3}$
Shear-plate connector, any size, bearing perpendicular to grain -----	100
Toothed-ring connector, 2-inch, bearing in any direction -----	100
Toothed-ring connector, 4-inch, bearing in any direction -----	50

Percentages for shear-plate connectors bearing at intermediate angles and for toothed-ring connectors of other sizes may be obtained by interpolation.

One-half of any impact load that remains after disregarding the percentages indicated should be included with the other dead and live loads in obtaining the total force to be considered in designing the joint.

ALLOWABLE NORMAL-DURATION LOAD

The National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) presents allowable loads for **normal** loading conditions for split rings, toothed rings, and shear plates in southern pine seasoned to approximately 15-percent moisture content to a depth of 3/4-inch from the surface prior to fabrication. These loads, as given in table 24-23, are subject to adjustments for duration of load (see section 24-1) except in the case of the toothed rings, for which an increase of only 20 percent is permitted for wind, earthquake, or impact loads. If the lumber is fabricated prior to having reached the above specified seasoning and later will season further, the adjusted load values shall be reduced 20 percent. If the lumber is fabricated in seasoned or unseasoned condition and will be wet while in service, the adjusted load values shall be reduced 33 percent.

Edge and end distances as well as spacings between connectors govern the allowable loads as is indicated in tables 24-23, 24-24, and 24-25; straight-line interpolation is applicable for intermediate distances except in certain special instances (National Forest Products Association 1968).

The total allowable load shall be the sum of the allowable loads for

TABLE 24-23.—Allowable load for one split ring, toothed ring, or shear-plate unit (single shear) in seasoned southern pine members under normal loading^{1 2} (National Forest Products Association 1968)

Minimum member thickness		Loading parallel to grain			Loading perpendicular to grain			
One connector (inches)	Two connectors ³ (inches)	Minimum edge distance	Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Minimum edge distance		Dense southern pine	Southern pine
					Unloaded	Loaded ⁴		
		Inches	----- Pounds -----	-----	----- Inches -----	-----	----- Pounds -----	-----
SPLIT RING (2½-INCH SIZE WITH ½-INCH BOLT)								
1-----	1⅝	1¾	2,630	2,270	1¾	1¾ 2¾	1,580 1,900	1,350 1,620
1⅝-----	2	1¾	3,160	2,730	1¾	1¾ 2¾	1,900 2,280	1,620 1,940
SPLIT RING (4-INCH SIZE WITH ¾-INCH BOLT)								
1-----	-----	2¾	4,090	3,510	2¾	2¾ 3¾	2,370 2,840	2,030 2,440
1⅝-----	3	2¾	6,140	5,260	2¾	2¾ 3¾	3,560 4,270	3,050 3,660
	1⅝	2¾	4,310	3,690	2¾	2¾ 3¾	2,490 3,000	2,140 2,570
	2	2¾	4,950	4,250	2¾	2¾ 3¾	2,870 3,440	2,470 2,960
	2⅝	2¾	6,030	5,160	2¾	2¾ 3¾	3,490 4,180	3,000 3,600
TOOTHED RING (2-INCH SIZE WITH ½-INCH BOLT)								
1-----	1⅝	1¼	1,210	1,100	1¼	1¼ 2	810 930	730 840
1⅝-----	2	1¼	1,330	1,210	1¼	1¼ 2	890 1,020	810 930

TABLE 24-23.—Allowable load for one split ring, toothed ring, or shear-plate unit (single shear) in seasoned southern pine members under normal loading^{1 2} (National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Minimum member thickness		Loading parallel to grain			Loading perpendicular to grain				
		Minimum edge distance	Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Minimum edge distance		Dense southern pine	Southern pine	
One connector (inches)	Two connectors ³ (inches)				Unloaded	Loaded ⁴			
		Inches	Pounds		Inches	Pounds			
TOOTHED RING (2 $\frac{5}{8}$ -INCH SIZE WITH $\frac{5}{8}$ -INCH BOLT)									
1-----	1 $\frac{5}{8}$	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,820	1,650	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,210	1,100	
						2 $\frac{1}{2}$	1,390	1,260	
1 $\frac{5}{8}$ -----	2 $\frac{5}{8}$	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	2,270	2,030	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,510	1,370	
						2 $\frac{1}{2}$	1,730	1,570	
	2	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	2,010	1,830	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,340	1,220	
						2 $\frac{1}{2}$	1,540	1,400	
TOOTHED RING (3 $\frac{3}{8}$ -INCH SIZE WITH $\frac{3}{4}$ -INCH BOLT)									
1-----	1 $\frac{5}{8}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,360	2,150	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	1,570	1,430	
						3 $\frac{1}{4}$	1,880	1,720	
1 $\frac{5}{8}$ -----	3	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	3,180	2,890	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,120	1,930	
						3 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,540	2,320	
	2	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,590	2,350	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	1,720	1,570	
						3 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,060	1,880	
	2 $\frac{5}{8}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,960	2,690	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{1}{4}$	1,970	1,790	
						3 $\frac{1}{4}$	2,370	2,150	

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE 24-23.—Allowable load for one split ring, toothed ring, or shear-plate unit (single shear) in seasoned southern pine members under normal loading^{1 2} (National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Minimum member thickness		Loading parallel to grain			Loading perpendicular to grain			
One connector (inches)	Two connectors ³ (inches)	Minimum edge distance	Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Minimum edge distance		Dense southern pine	Southern pine
					Unloaded	Loaded ⁴		
		<i>Inches</i>	<i>Pounds</i>		<i>Inches</i>		<i>Pounds</i>	
TOOTHED RING (4-INCH SIZE WITH 3/4-INCH BOLT)								
1-----	1 5/8	2 3/4	2,840	2,590	2 3/4	2 3/4	1,900	1,720
1 5/8-----	3	2 3/4	3,700	3,360	2 3/4	3 3/4	2,280	2,060
						2 3/4	2,460	2,240
	2	2 3/4	3,070	2,790	2 3/4	3 3/4	2,960	2,690
						2 3/4	2,050	1,860
2 5/8	2 3/4	3,470	3,150	2 3/4	3 3/4	2,460	2,240	
					2 3/4	2,310	2,100	
						3 3/4	2,770	2,520
SHEAR PLATES (2 5/8-INCH SIZE WITH 3/4-INCH BOLT) ⁵								
1 5/8-----	2 5/8	1 3/4	3,370 ⁵	2,890	1 3/4	1 3/4	1,960	1,680
	1 5/8	1 3/4	2,620	2,250	1 3/4	2 3/4	2,350	2,020
						1 3/4	1,520	1,300
2	1 3/4	3,190 ⁵	2,730	1 3/4	2 3/4	1,820	1,560	
					1 3/4	1,850	1,590	
						2 3/4	2,220	1,910

TABLE 24-23.—Allowable load for one split ring, toothed ring, or shear-plate unit (single shear) in seasoned southern pine members under normal loading^{1 2} (National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Minimum member thickness		Loading parallel to grain			Loading perpendicular to grain				
One connector (inches)	Two connectors ³ (inches)	Minimum edge distance	Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Minimum edge distance		Dense southern pine	Southern pine	
					Unloaded	Loaded ⁴			
		<i>Inches</i>	<i>Pounds</i>		<i>Inches</i>		<i>Pounds</i>		
SHEAR PLATES (4-INCH SIZE WITH 3/4-INCH BOLT) ⁵									
1 5/8-----	-----	2 3/4	4,750	4,070	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,760	2,360	
1 3/4-----	3 5/8	2 3/4	5,090 ⁵	4,360	2 3/4	3 3/4	3,310	2,830	
	1 3/4	2 3/4	3,390	2,910	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,950	2,530	
	2	2 3/4	3,790	3,240	2 3/4	3 3/4	3,540	3,040	
	2 5/8	2 3/4	4,440	3,800	2 3/4	2 3/4	1,970	1,680	
	3		2 3/4	4,830	4,140	2 3/4	3 3/4	2,360	2,020
						2 3/4	2 3/4	2,200	1,880
						3 3/4	2,640	2,260	
						2 3/4	2,580	2,210	
						3 3/4	3,100	2,650	
						2 3/4	2,800	2,400	
						3 3/4	3,360	2,880	

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE 24-23.—Allowable load for one split ring, toothed ring, or shear-plate unit (single shear) in seasoned southern pine members under normal loading^{1 2} (National Forest Products Association 1968)—Continued

Minimum member thickness		Loading parallel to grain			Loading perpendicular to grain			
One connector (inches)	Two connectors ³ (inches)	Minimum edge distance	Dense southern pine	Southern pine	Minimum edge distance		Dense southern pine	Southern pine
					Unloaded	Loaded ⁴		
		Inches	----- Pounds -----	-----	Inches	-----	----- Pounds -----	-----
SHEAR PLATES (4-INCH SIZE WITH 7/8-INCH BOLT) ⁵								
1 5/8-----	-----	2 3/4	4,750	4,070	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,760	2,360
						3 3/4	3,310	2,830
1 3/4-----	3 5/8	2 3/4	5,090	4,360	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,950	2,530
						3 3/4	3,540	3,040
	1 3/4	2 3/4	3,390	2,910	2 3/4	2 3/4	1,970	1,680
						3 3/4	2,360	2,020
	2	2 3/4	3,780	3,240	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,200	1,880
						3 3/4	2,640	2,260
	2 5/8	2 3/4	4,440	3,800	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,580	2,210
						3 3/4	3,100	2,650
	3	2 3/4	4,830	4,140	2 3/4	2 3/4	2,800	2,400
						3 3/4	3,360	2,880

¹ Assembled with one bolt, two washers, and tight nut.
² For three-member joint with one connector in each of opposite faces of center member, use twice the tabulated load value.
³ One connector in each of opposite faces of center member.
⁴ The **loaded edge** is the edge toward which the load is acting.

⁵ The allowable loads for shear plates apply for metal and wood side plates except that, for 4-inch shear plates with metal side plates, the parallel-to-grain loads may be increased 11 percent for southern pine and 18 percent for dense southern pine. The allowable loads for all loading conditions, except wind, shall not exceed 2,900 pounds for 2 5/8-inch shear plates or 4,970 pounds and 6,760 pounds for 4-inch shear plates with 3/4-inch and 7/8-inch bolts, respectively. For wind loads, the corresponding allowable loads shall not exceed 3,870 pounds, 6,630 pounds, and 9,020 pounds. If bolt threads are in bearing on the shear plate (in the case of unavailability of larger bolt which would prevent the bolt threads from bearing on the shear plate as a result of the inclusion of a washer or of several washers), the preceding values shall be reduced by one ninth.

TABLE 24-24.—Connector spacings and end distances for parallel-to-grain loading with corresponding percentages of tabulated loads (National Forest Products Association 1968)

Connector and diameter (inches)	Spacing parallel to grain		Spacing perpendicular to grain		End distance		
	Spacing	Percentage of tabulated load	Minimum	Percentage of tabulated load ¹	Tension member	Compression member	Percentage of tabulated load ¹
					----- Inches -----		
	Inches	Percent	Inches	Percent	-----	Inches -----	Percent
Split ring							
2½-----	6¾	100	3½	100	5½	4	100
2½-----	3½	75	3½	100	2¾	2½	62.5
4-----	9	100	5	100	7	5½	100
4-----	5	75	5	100	3½	3¼	62.5
Toothed ring							
2-----	4	100	2½	100	3½	2 ²	100
2-----	2½	75	2½	100	2	-----	66.7
2½-----	5¼	100	3¼	100	4⅝	2⅝ ²	100
2½-----	3⅞	75	3⅞	100	2⅝	-----	66.7
3⅞-----	6¾	100	3⅞	100	5⅞	3⅜ ²	100
3⅞-----	3⅞	75	3⅞	100	3⅞	-----	66.7
4-----	8	100	4½	100	7	4 ²	100
4-----	4½	75	4½	100	4	-----	66.7
Shear plate							
2⅝-----	6¾	100	3½	100	5½	4	100
2⅝-----	3½	75	3½	100	2¾	2½	62.5
4-----	9	100	5	100	7	5½	100
4-----	5	75	5	100	3½	3¼	62.5

¹ To obtain loads, multiply these percentages by allowable loads from table 24-23.

² No reduction in end distance permitted for compression members loaded parallel to grain.

TABLE 24-25.—Connector spacings and end distances for perpendicular-to-grain loading with corresponding percentages of tabulated loads (National Forest Products Association 1968)

Connector and diameter (inches)	Spacing parallel to grain		Spacing perpendicular to grain		End distance	
	Minimum	Percentage of tabulated load ¹	Spacing	Percentage of tabulated load ¹	Distance ²	Percentage of tabulated load ¹
	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Percent</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Percent</i>	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Percent</i>
Split ring						
2½-----	3½	100	4¼	100	5½	100
2½-----	3½	100	3½	75	2¾	62.5
4-----	5	100	6	100	7	100
4-----	5	100	5	75	3½	62.5
Toothed ring						
2-----	2½	100	3	100	3½	100
2-----	2½	100	2½	75	2	66.7
2⅝-----	3⅜	100	3¾	100	4⅝	100
2⅝-----	3⅜	100	3⅝	75	2⅝	66.7
3⅜-----	3⅞	100	5	100	5⅞	100
3⅜-----	3⅞	100	3⅞	75	3⅜	66.7
4-----	4½	100	5¾	100	7	100
4-----	4½	100	4½	75	4	66.7
Shear plate						
2⅝-----	3½	100	4¼	100	5½	100
2⅝-----	3½	100	3½	75	2¾	62.5
4-----	5	100	6	100	7	100
4-----	5	100	5	75	3½	62.5

¹ To obtain design loads, multiply these percentages times allowable loads from table 24-23.

² Tension or compression members.

each of the connectors in a joint, except in the following instances. If grooves for two sizes of split rings are cut concentrically in the same timber surfaces, rings shall be installed in both grooves and the total allowable load shall be only the allowable load for the larger ring. In contrast, if two toothed rings (2- and 3-3/8-inch, 2- and 4-inch, or 2-5/8- and 4-inch) are placed concentrically in the same timber surfaces, the total allowable load shall be the allowable load for the larger ring plus 25 percent of the allowable load for the smaller ring.

Considerable additional design information and assistance can be found in the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968) and TECO Design Manual (Timber Engineering Company 1962).

The allowable connector loads advanced by the Southern Pine Association (1964) are the same as those recommended by the National Forest Products Association (1968).

ALLOWABLE LOAD FOR SQUARE SPIKE GRIDS

The TECO Design Manual (Timber Engineering Company 1962, p. 25) presents allowable normal loads for 4-1/8-inch-square flat and curved spike grids; these loads are subject to adjustment for duration of load as indicated in section 24-1. These loads—tabulated below—are in pounds for one spike grid with one bolt, two washers, and a tight nut in southern pine.

Connector type and bolt diameter (inches)	Edge distance	End distance	Dense	Southern
			southern pine	pine
			----- Pounds -----	
----- Inches -----				
Flat				
3/4	3 3/4	7	3,900	3,500
	2 3/4	5	3,315	2,975
1	3 3/4	7	4,200	3,800
	2 3/4	5	3,570	3,230
Single curve				
3/4	3 3/4	7	4,200	3,800
	2 3/4	5	3,570	3,230
1	3 3/4	7	4,500	4,100
	2 3/4	5	3,825	3,485

For intermediate edge and end distances, straight-line interpolation is appropriate. The allowable loads apply if the width of the lumber is at least 5-1/2 inches and its thickness is at least 1-5/8 inches with the flat connector in a single face or 2-5/8 inches if flat connectors are in both opposite faces. The minimum diameter of a pole or pile with curved grids

shall be 10 inches. The minimum center-to-center spacing of all spike grids parallel to the grain with the load applied at an angle to the grain of 0 to 30° shall be 7 inches and in all other instances 5-1/2 inches. The allowable loads can be increased 30 percent for wind and/or earthquake loads in combination with dead and/or live loads. The allowable loads for combined static and impact loads can be increased 15 percent.

24-9 PLATE CONNECTORS

Light-gage, punched, galvanized plate connectors are used primarily in the fabrication of trusses (fig. 24-36). They may be flat and attached with nails or with deformed short prongs (barbs) or longer teeth (plugs) integral with the plate (fig. 24-37). Stern (1969c, pp. 82, 83) has illustrated a variety of available plates and shown performance curves for eight of them. These curves indicate that in general, when applied to butt joints of seasoned 1-5/8-inch-thick southern pine, a pair of 18- to 20-gage, 3- to 3-1/2-inch-wide connectors measuring 3 to 9 inches long will carry an ultimate tensile load of 6,000 to 10,000 pounds; at a joint deformation of 0.03 inch, tensile load may be in the range from 4,000 to 6,000 pounds. Trusses assembled with plate connectors have been built to span as much as 100 feet (Anonymous 1966).

Design information for assemblies involving metal plate connectors with barbs and plugs can be found in Design Specification for Light Metal-Plate Connected Wood Trusses (Truss Plate Institute 1970). According to the National Design Specification (National Forest Products Association 1968), the allowable design load for normal loading shall be determined by dividing the test load value at wood-to-wood slip of 0.03 inch by 1.6, or by dividing the ultimate load by 3.0; the smaller of these two values shall be the design load. Adjustment for duration of load should be made according to text section 24-1. Load evaluation tests must be made on seasoned lumber according to ASTM Designation D 1761-68 (American Society for Testing and Materials 1968).

For metal plate connectors installed in unseasoned lumber, the allowable loads should be reduced 20 percent. If installed in lumber pressure impregnated with fire-retardant chemicals and kiln-dried after treatment, the allowable loads should be reduced 10 percent; if not kiln-dried after treatment, the allowable loads should be reduced 20 percent.

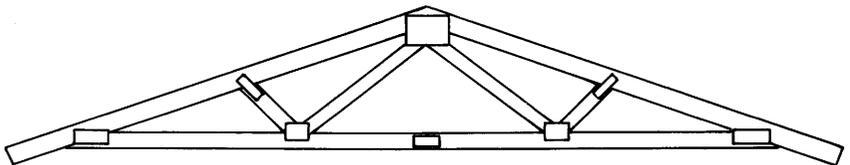


Figure 24-36.—Roof truss assembled with plate connectors.

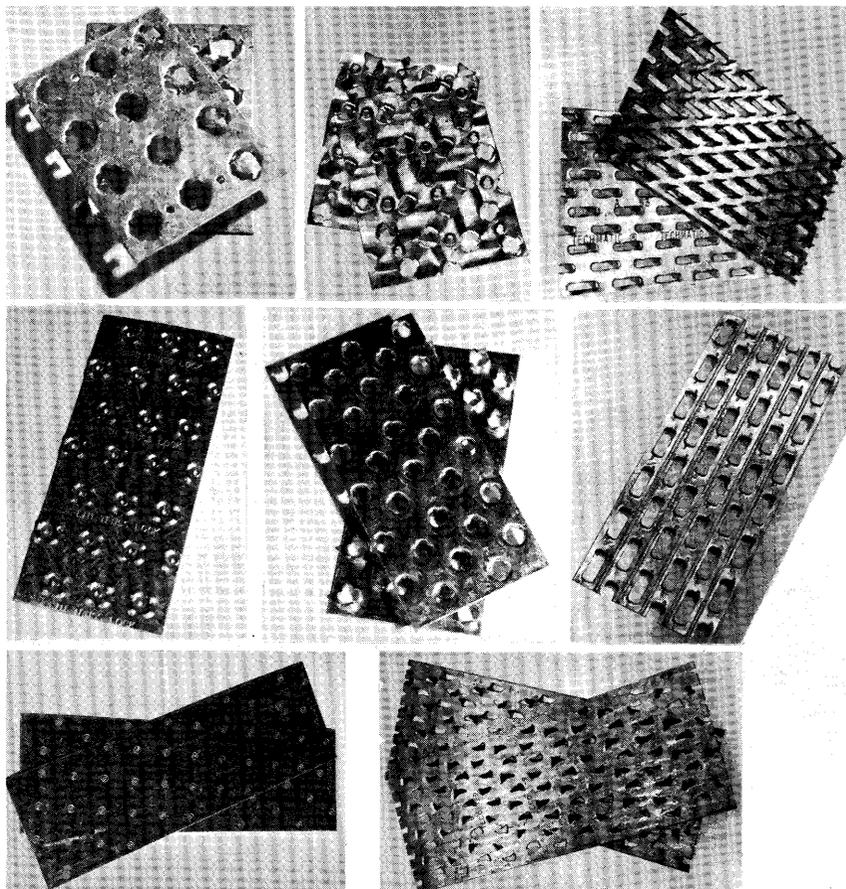


Figure 24-37.—Preformed plate connectors for use in assembling trusses. The plates are of galvanized 18- to 20-gage (W&M) steel and measure 3 to 3½ inches in width and 4 to 9 inches in length. Only the plates shown at middle left and lower left rely on nails for load transmission. None of the others require nails for attachment; integral barbs, prongs, and teeth are impressed into truss members by hydraulic or roll presses. (Photo from Stern 1969c, p. 82.)

Because of connection flexibility, mechanically fastened wood trusses are difficult to analyze for stresses and displacements. Efforts to devise suitable analytical methods have been reviewed by Suddarth (1969).

Sliker (1969), in an analysis of factors affecting creep in plate-connected tension joints, concluded that creep was reduced if nails were of high-strength steel, if plates were relatively thick, and if nail shanks were bonded to the wood they penetrated.

24-10 SHEET METAL AND ANGLE IRON ANCHORS

Anchorage of lightweight buildings at all important joints from roof to foundation is an important aspect of good construction.

Sheet metal anchors include a variety of steel straps, framing anchors, clips, and grips; they have sufficient cross-sectional area for the metal-to-wood fasteners—usually nails—to govern their effectiveness. The allowable lateral loads of the fasteners, therefore, are the limiting factors in load transmittal. Timber Engineering Company, while not the only manufacturer of sheet metal anchors, makes a variety of anchors for which allowable loads are published. Brief descriptions of these anchors, plus one made by Panel Clip Company, follow.

TRIP-L-GRIP FRAMING ANCHORS

Figure 24-38 shows TECO anchors made from 18-gage,³ galvanized-steel sheet. They measure 4-7/8 inches high; the rectangular flange is 1-5/8 inches wide, the triangular flange is 2-3/8 inches wide, and the bent portion on the A and B types is 1-5/8 inches long. The allowable short- and long-duration loads transmitted by one of these anchors applied to southern pine is as follows (Southern Pine Association 1964).

Condition	Direction of load (see fig. 24-38)					
	A	B	C	D	E	F
	----- Pounds -----					
Short-term loading— wind or earthquake...	450	825	420	300	450	675
Long-term loading— live loads and dead loads.....	300	530	290	200	300	450

Special short nails, approximately equal in strength to 8d common nails are used with these anchors.

³ Thickness of sheet metal anchors specified by Washburn and Moen gage.

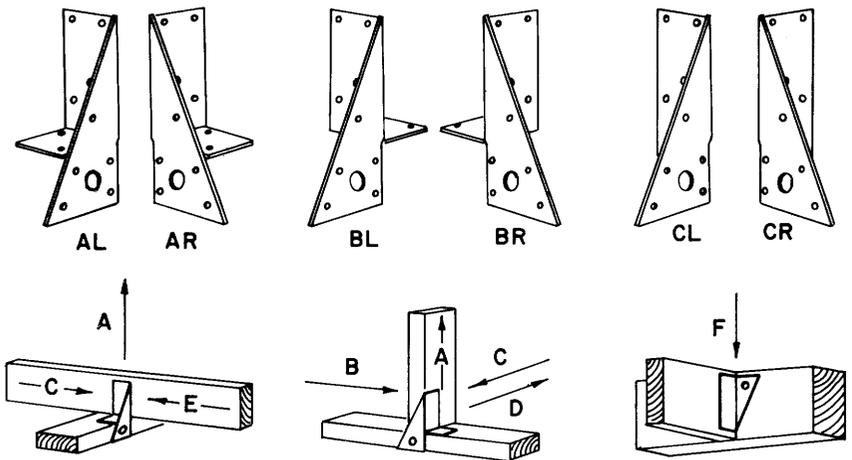


Figure 24-38.—Three types of Trip-L-Grip framing anchors; arrows indicate principal directions of applied loads.

DU-AL-CLIP

Figure 24-39 shows another type of anchor formed of 18-gage galvanized-steel sheet. These are 5-1/2 inches high with flanges 1-5/8 inches wide. They are secured by special 1-1/2- by 0.120-inch nails. Timber Engineering Company (1970) gives allowable long-duration live and dead loads per anchor as follows:

Direction (see fig. 24-39)	Load <i>Pounds</i>
A -----	400
B -----	300
C -----	120
D -----	400

Allowable short-duration loads imposed by wind or earthquake may be one-third to one-half higher.

U-GRIP JOIST AND BEAM ANCHORS

Figure 24-40 illustrates joist and beam anchors of 16- and 18-gage galvanized-steel sheet for fastening southern pine members ranging in size from 2 by 6 to 4 by 14 inches. Barbed nails 1-1/2 inches by 0.148 inch

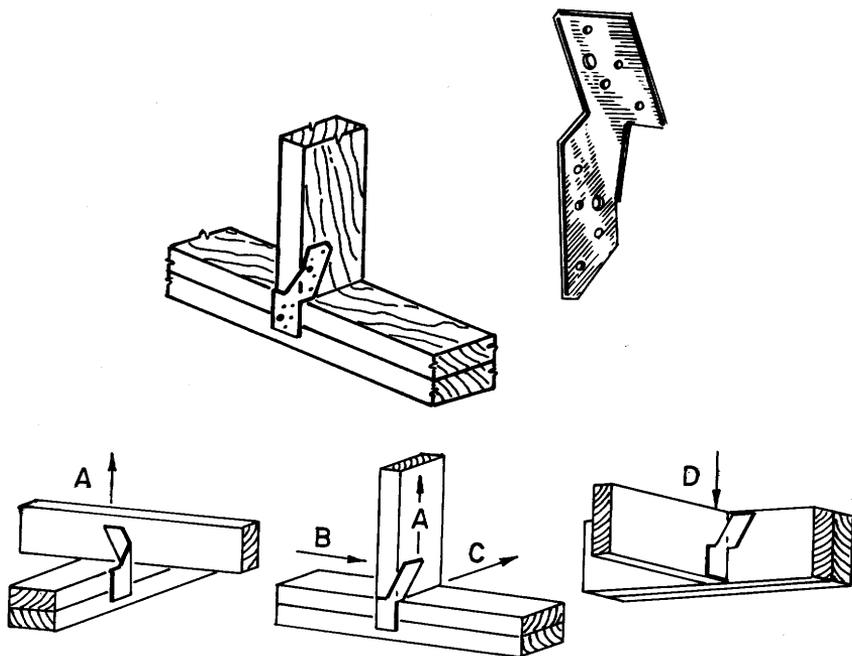


Figure 24-39.—Du-Al-Clip framing anchors; arrows indicate principal directions of applied loads.

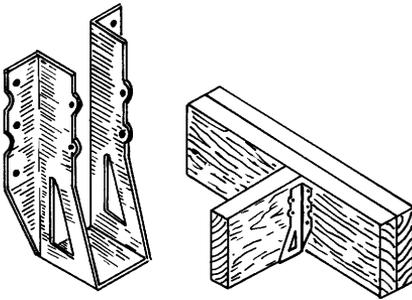


Figure 24-40.—U-Grip joist and beam anchor.

are used for the 2-inch member; the 4-inch members call for barbed nails 2-1/8 inches by 0.192 inch. According to Timber Engineering Company (1970), the allowable long-duration load—equal to one-fourth the ultimate load—for a single anchor applied to southern pine is as follows:

Beam thickness and depth (inches)	Steel gage	Anchor height	Seat width	Seat depth	Load
	<i>W & M</i>	-----	<i>Inches</i> -----	-----	<i>Pounds</i>
2 inches					
6 to 10-----	18	5	1 $\frac{5}{8}$	2	900
10 to 14-----	18	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{5}{8}$	2	1,200
3 inches					
6 to 10-----	16	5 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{5}{8}$	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,700
10 to 14-----	16	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{5}{8}$	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	2,800
4 inches					
6 to 10-----	16	5 $\frac{1}{4}$	3 $\frac{5}{8}$	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,700
10 to 14-----	16	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{5}{8}$	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	2,800
4 inches (a pair of 2-inch joists)					
6 to 10-----	16	5 $\frac{1}{4}$	3 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	1,700
10 to 14-----	16	8 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{4}$	2 $\frac{3}{4}$	2,800

TY-DOWN RAFTER ANCHORS

These 18-gage, galvanized, 1-9/16-inch-wide, steel anchors are designed to fasten rafters to plates or to studs below the plates (fig. 24-41A, B). In the former case they are 5-1/4 inches long with an allowable uplift load of 312 pounds per anchor; in the latter case the allowable uplift load is 780 pounds per anchor (Timber Engineering Company 1970). In both cases, 1-1/2- by 0.135-inch threaded nails are used to secure the anchors to the wood.

ANGLE CLIPS

The Panel Clip Company manufactures an angle clip formed of 20-gage, galvanized-steel sheet; it is designed to fasten framing members at right angles to each other. The punched-out teeth are hammer-driven into the wood members and take the place of nails (fig. 24-42). According to the manufacturer, a pair of clips at the end of a 2- by 10-inch or smaller southern pine joist transmits an allowable load of 514 pounds.

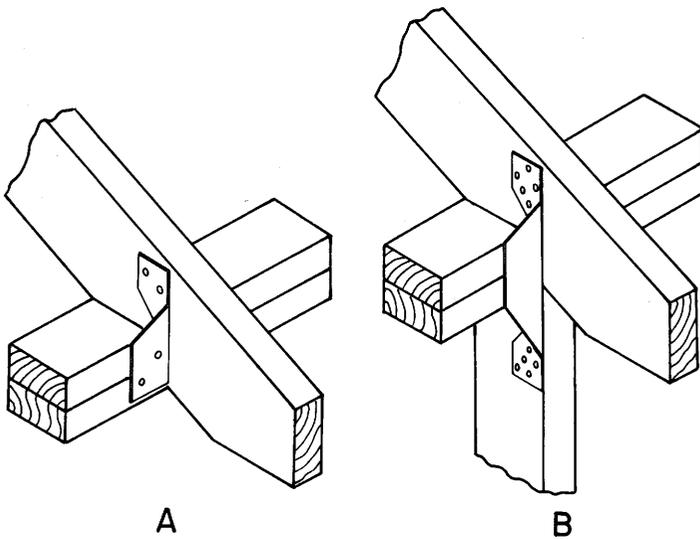


Figure 24-41.—Ty-Down rafter anchors. (A) To secure rafter to plate. (B) To secure rafter to stud.

TEN-CON CONNECTORS

The anchor shown in figure 24-43 is designed to secure concrete pile caps to foundation piles. It is fabricated in 15-inch lengths from 1/4-inch-thick, 4- by 7-1/2-inch, hot-rolled steel angles. Tapered circular holes are punched in the 7-1/2-inch leg; special 3-1/2- by 0.126- by 0.250-inch,

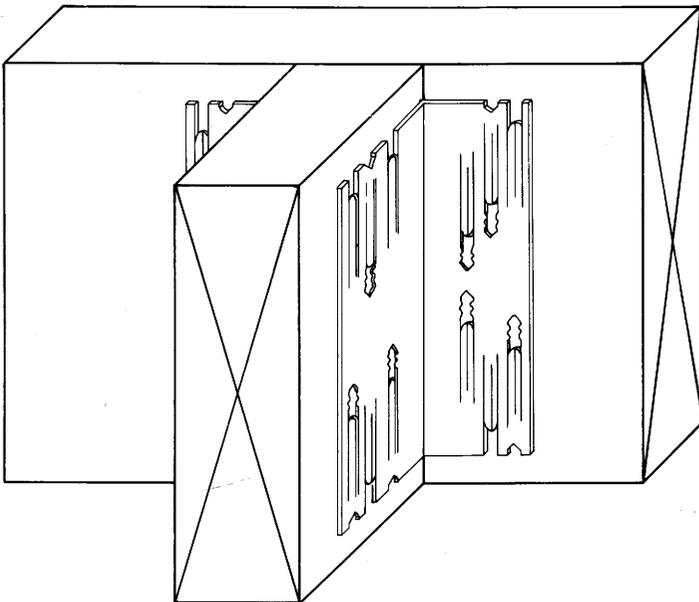


Figure 24-42.—Joist attached to header with a pair of Angle Clips secured by punched-out, hammer-driven prongs.

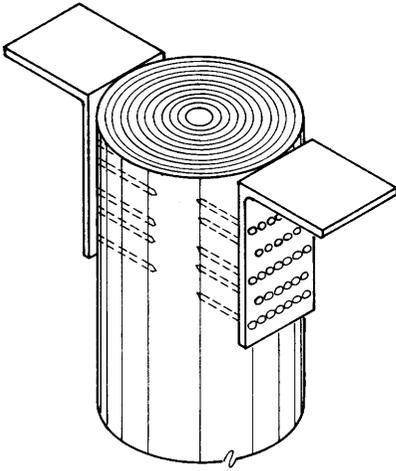


Figure 24-43.—Ten-Con connector designed to fasten concrete pile caps to foundation piles (Drawing after Timber Engineering Co. 1970.)

hardened-steel rivets are hammer driven through these holes to form a wedge fit and thus provide a nail rigidly cantilevered from the connector and piercing the wood. According to McGowan (1966), the allowable wind uplift load for a minimum of two connectors fastened to a southern pine pile is 20,000 pounds, and that of each additional connector is 10,000 pounds.

24-11 EXPLOSIVE-DRIVEN PINS AND STUDS

Explosive-driven steel pins and studs (fig. 24-44) can be used to fasten southern pine in thicknesses up to 3-5/8 inches to concrete and steel. This type of fastener is especially useful if the side away from the wood is inaccessible as is the case when framing members and components are secured to walls and foundations.

Stern (1969c, p. 96) observed that withdrawal resistance of pins driven into concrete or steel can be higher than the pull-through resistance of the washer (1-7/16-inch and smaller) sometimes used between wood and head. For this reason, the number of explosive-driven pins required may depend on the size and type of washers through which the pins can be effectively driven. If no washer is used, depth of penetration may be uncertain.

Explosive-driven studs, however, can be provided with the standard washers normally used for anchor bolts (fig. 24-44). Standard washers are listed below:

<u>Washer type</u>	<u>Diameter</u>
	<i>Inches</i>
Round cast iron and round malleable iron	2, 2½, 3, 3½
Round wrought iron	1¾, 2, 2¼
Square steel	2, 2½, 3, 3½

These larger washers provide adequate resistance against pullthrough.

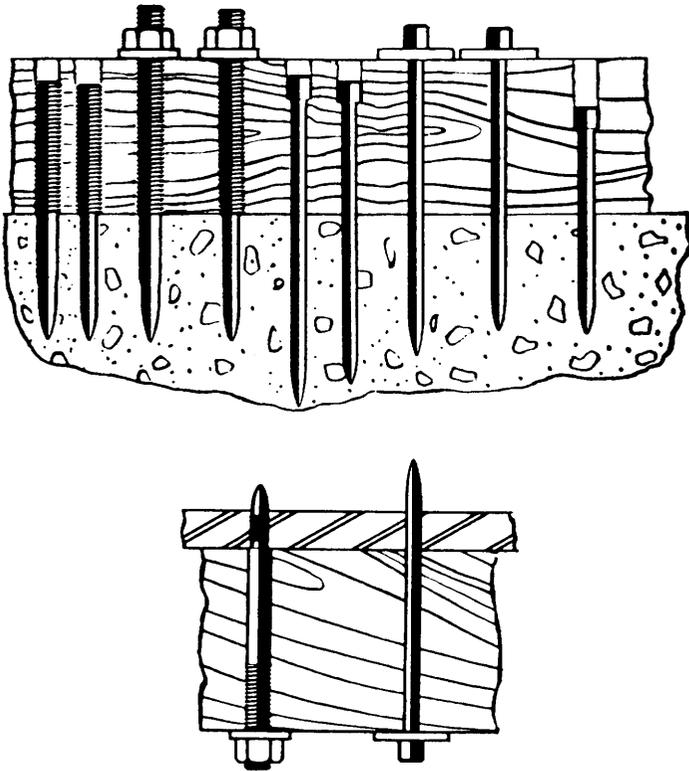


Figure 24-44.—Explosive-driven pins (right) and studs (left), with and without washers between fastener head and wood. (Top) Anchoring wood to concrete. (Bottom) Anchoring wood to steel. (Drawing from Remington Arms Co.)

24-12 LITERATURE CITED

- Anonymous.
1966. Would you believe—a 100 ft. wooden truss? *Pract. Builder* 31(11): 53, 55.
- Albert, T. J., and Johnson, J. W.
1967. Lateral holding capacity of power-driven fasteners. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(9): 59-67.
- American Plywood Association.
1967. When the wind blows. *Amer. Plywood Assoc.*, 15 pp. Tacoma, Wash.
- American Plywood Association.
1968. Design data on plywood for transportation equipment. *Amer. Plywood Assoc. Lab. Rep.* 114, 86 pp. Tacoma, Wash.
- American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
1962. Slotted and recessed head wood screws. *ASA B18.6.1-1961*, 15 pp.
- American Society for Testing and Materials.
1968. Standard methods of testing metal fasteners in wood. *ASTM Des. D 1761-68*. Amer. Soc. for Testing and Mater., Philadelphia, Pa.
- Anderson, L. O.
1965. Guides to improved framed walls for houses. *USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-31*, 28 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.

- Anderson, L. O., and Smith, W. R.
1965. Houses can resist hurricanes. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-33, 48 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Brock, G. R.
1954. The strength of nailed timber joints. *Timber Technol.* 62: 283-286, 333-335, 407-408.
- Brock, G. R.
1956. The strength of nailed timber joints. *Timber Technol.* 64: 19-21, 74-77.
- Carroll, M. N.
1970. Relationship between driving torque and screw-holding strength in particleboard and plywood. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(3): 24-29.
- Countryman, D., and Colbenson, P.
1955. Strength of stapled plywood-lumber joints. Douglas Fir Plywood Assoc. Lab. Rep. 68, 12 pp.
- Cramer, C. O.
1968. Load distribution in multiple-bolt tension joints. *J. Struct. Div. Amer. Soc. Civil Eng.* 94(ST5): 1101-1117.
- Dijkers, R. D., Thom, H. C. S., and Marshall, R. D.
1969. Hurricane Camille—August 1969. U.S. Nat. Bur. Stand. Rep. 10393, 67 pp.
- Douglas Fir Plywood Association.
1951. Tentative summary of tests on bolted plywood joints. Douglas Fir Plywood Assoc., 2 pp. Tacoma, Wash.
- Douglas Fir Plywood Association.
1964. The screw-pulling strength of plywood. Douglas Fir Plywood Assoc. Lab. Bull. 47-B, 3 pp. Tacoma, Wash.
- Dove, A. B.
1955. The influence of nail design and manufacturing practices on joint strength. *Wire and Wire Prod.* 30: 657-666, 724-725.
- Federal Housing Administration.
1961. Power-driven wire staples. Use Mater. Bull. UM-25a, 7 pp.
- Gahagan, J. M., and Beglinger, E.
1956. New nail treating process increases holding power. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. R970, 3 pp.
- General Services Administration.
1963. Federal specification: Nails, wire, brads, and staples. Fed. Specif. FF-N-105a and Interim Amend.-2. Gen. Serv. Admin.
- Johnson, J. W.
1967. Screw-holding ability of particle board and plywood. *Oreg. State Univ. Sch. Forest., Forest Res. Lab. Rep.* T-22, 23 pp.
- Johnston, E. A.
1964. The fluted auto nail. *Wire and Wire Prod.* 39: 727, 730-731, 767-769.
- Kojis, D. D., and Postweiler, R. H.
1953. Allowable loads for common bolts at various angles to the grain for southern yellow pine. *J. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.* 3(3): 21-26.
- Kurtenacker, R. W.
1962. Lateral loading evaluation of staples and T-nails. *In Mechanical fasteners for wood*, pp. 54-72. Building Res. Inst. Pub. 1003.
- Kurtenacker, R. S.
1965. Performance of container fasteners subjected to static and dynamic withdrawal. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-29, 20 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Leach, K. E.
1964. A survey of literature on the lateral resistance of nails. *Can. Dep. Forest. Pub.* 1085, 12 pp.
- Longworth, J.
1967. Behavior of shear plate connections in sloping grain surfaces. *Forest Prod. J.* 17(7): 49-53.
- McDonald, J. K.
1967. Homes for hurricane country. *Forests and People* 17(3): 22-23, 29, 31.
- McGowan, W. M.
1966. A nailed plate connector for glue-laminated timbers. *J. Mater.* 1: 509-535.
- Martin, T. J., and Van Kleeck, A.
1941. Fastening. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,268,323.) U.S. Pat. Office, *Offic. Gaz.* 533: 1226.
- Merrill, W., and French, D. W.
1966. Wood fiberboard studies. IV. Effects of decay on lateral nail resistance and correlation of lateral nail resistance with nailhead pull-through resistance. *TAPPI* 49: 33-34.

- National Forest Products Association.
1968. National design specification for stress-grade lumber and its fastenings. A.I.A. File 19-B-1, 63 pp. Nat. Forest Prod. Assoc.
- Newlin, J. A., and Gahagan, J. M.
1938. Lag-screw joints: their behavior and design. USDA Tech. Bull. 597, 27 pp.
- Patterson, D.
1969. Pole building design. Amer. Wood Preserv. Inst., 48 pp. Wash., D.C.
- Percival, D. H.
1965. Present status of mechanical fasteners. Forest Prod. J. 15: 42-45.
- Powell, A. E.
1968. Notching and timber connection combination in joints between wood members. Amer. Soc. Agr. Eng. Trans. 11: 146-148.
- Ramos, A. N.
1960. Spacing of sixpenny and eightpenny wire nails in Douglas-fir multi-nail joints. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 2155, 13 pp.
- Scholten, J. A.
1944. Timber-connector joints: their strength and design. USDA Forest Serv. Tech. Bull. 865, 106 pp.
- Scholten, J. A.
1962. Effect of nail points on the withdrawal resistance of plain nails. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1226, 3 pp.
- Scholten, J. A.
1965a. Effects of various preservative treatments of field boxes on nail holding. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-42, 8 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Scholten, J. A.
1965b. Strength of wood joints made with nails, staples, or screws. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0100, 16 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Scholten, J. A., and Molander, E. G.
1950. Strength of nailed joints in frame walls. Agr. Eng. 31: 551-555.
- Sliker, A.
1969. Creep in nailed wood-metal tension joints. Wood Sci. 3: 23-30.
- Smith, W. R.
1961. Building homes to withstand hurricane damage. Forest Prod. J. 11: 176-177.
- Southern Building Code Congress.
1968. Senco staples and sen-nails. Comm. Compliance Approval Rep. 6853, 2 pp. Senco Prod., Inc., Cincinnati, Ohio.
- Southern Pine Association.
1964. Fastenings for lumber—technical data on southern pine. South. Pine Assoc. Architects Bull. 7, 11 pp.
- Southern Pine Association.
1969. How to build storm resistant structures. South. Pine Assoc., 23 pp. New Orleans, La.
- Stern, E. G.
1941. Tests on wood joints with metal connectors. Civil Eng. 11: 298-301.
- Stern, E. G.
1950a. Holding power of clinched nails. Contract. Dig. (November), 5 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1950b. Improved nails, their driving resistance, withdrawal resistance, and lateral load-carrying capacity. Amer. Soc. Mech. Eng. Pap. 49-A-115, 14 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1950c. Nails in end-grain lumber. Timber News 58(2138): 490-492.
- Stern, E. G.
1951a. Efficiency of flooring nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Bull. 44(4), Part B, 8 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1951b. Nail tests show effectiveness of straight over slant driving. Wooden Box and Crate 13(4): 14-17, 29-30.
- Stern, E. G.
1951c. Nails and screws in wood assembly and construction. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 3, 30 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1951d. The nail, an indispensable fastener. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 4, 16 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1952. Immediate vs. delayed holding power of nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 8, 12 pp.

- Stern, E. G.
1953. Strength of auto-nailer assembled skids of green and dry lumber. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 12, 23 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1954a. Effectiveness of flooring nails versus toothed fastener. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 16, 8 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1954b. Effectiveness of nails versus staples for fastening underlayment. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 13, 5 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1955. Effectiveness of nails versus staples for fastening insulating sheathing. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 19, 6 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1956a. Nail popping, its causes and prevention. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 24, 12 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1956b. Better construction with threaded nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 25, 16 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1956c. Nails and spikes in creosote-pressure-treated southern pine poles and timbers. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 26, 19 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1956d. Plain-shank vs. fluted vs. threaded nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 27, 23 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1965b. Nailing of jamb assemblies of wood window frames: casing, blind stop, and jamb. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 28, 19 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1957a. Wood, plywood or steel gusset plates for nailed trussed rafters. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 29, 11 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1957b. Holding power of large nails and spikes in dry southern pine. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 30, 11 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1957c. Nailing of subflooring with supplement on effectiveness of square barbed versus threaded bronze nails in redwood. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 31, 11 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1958. Nailing of plywood sheathing with "Hi-load" nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 35, 15 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1959a. Fasteners for better buildings and storm-proofing methods that save lives. 67 pp. Chicago: Practical Builder.
- Stern, E. G.
1959b. What's new in pallet fasteners. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 37, 3 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1959c. Better utilization of wood through assembly with improved fasteners. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 38 rev., 41 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1959d. Nailed trussed rafters with hardboard gusset plates. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 40, 15 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1961a. Nailing of sheet metal roofing and siding with washered roofing nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 42, 36 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1961b. Fastening of truss plates with "screw-tite hi-load" nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 43, 12 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1961c. Fastening of plywood with "Screw-tite hi-load" nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 44, 23 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1962a. Effectiveness of 16-gauge staples vs. helically threaded pallet nails in the fastening of pallet deckboard to pallet stringer. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 47, 7 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1962b. Building component assembly with 5/4" helically fluted auto nails. Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull. 48, 16 pp.

- Stern, E. G.
1964a. Significance of the special nail in residential frame construction. *Wire and Wire Prod.* 39: 384-399, 429-431.
- Stern, E. G.
1964b. Fastening of steel truss plates with threaded nails. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 54, 16 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1964c. Load transmission by nails in double shear. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 55, 11 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1965a. Pallets assembled with 10-gauge automatic nails. *Forest Prod. J.* 15: 242-246.
- Stern, E. G.
1965b. The new concept of furniture skids. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 56, 11 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1965c. Effectiveness of T-beams. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 57, 15 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1966. Pallet nails in 1965. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 58, 7 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1967a. Nails—definitions and sizes, a handbook for nail users. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 61, 51 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1967b. Effects of bradding and clinching of points of plain-shank and helically threaded nails. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 64, 6 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1968a. Slender nails are the answer. *Automation in Housing* 5(2): 32.
- Stern, E. G.
1968b. Plastic-coated nails, a study of their effectiveness. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 65, 20 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1968c. Effects of angular driving of nails on automatic clinching of diamond points. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 66, 15 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1968d. Auto-nailed southern-pine pallets. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 77, 23 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1969a. Hurricane Camille—a furious monitor to builders and rebuilders. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(12): 18-20.
- Stern, E. G.
1969b. Up-grading of pallets by assembly with hardened-steel nails. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 83, 31 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1969c. Mechanical fastening of southern pine—a review. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 87, 98 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1970a. Importance of light-building anchorage. *The Constr. Specifier* 23(2): 29-33.
- Stern, E. G.
1970b. Quality control for 2½" 15-gage Senco staples. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. and Wood Constr. Lab. Bull.* 86, 26 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1970c. Low-profile versus conventional single-face pallets. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 88, 15 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1970d. Effectiveness of Senco nails. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 91, 43 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1970e. Lateral load transmission by 4½" 15-gage Senco nails. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 92, 10 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1970f. Effectiveness of certain auto-nailed cleated-plywood container panels. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 95, 10 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1970g. Effectiveness of 2½", 3", 3¼", and 3½" Senco nails. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 96, 19 pp.
- Stern, E. G.
1971. Effectiveness of 2½" fasteners in deckboard-stringer joints for permanent warehouse pallets. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 99, 11 pp.
- Stern, E. G., and Pletta, D. H.
1967. All-nailed lumber truss of 60 to 80-ft. span. *Va. Polytech. Inst. Wood Res. Lab. Bull.* 63, 43 pp.

- Stern, E. G., and Stoneburner, P. W.
 1952. Design of nailed structures. Va. Polytech. Inst. Eng. Exp. Sta. Ser. 81, 67 pp.
- Suddarth, S. K.
 1969. The engineering design of mechanically fastened trusses—a review. Wood Sci. 1: 193-199.
- Timber Engineering Company.
 1962. TECO design manual for TECO timber connector construction. TECO Pub. 109, 27 pp. Timber Eng. Co., Wash., D.C.
- Timber Engineering Company.
 1970. Structural wood fasteners. TECO Pub. 101, 15 pp. Timber Eng. Co., Wash., D.C.
- Truss Plate Institute.
 1970. Design specifications for light metal plate connected wood trusses. TPI-70, 44 pp. Wash., D.C.: Truss Plate Inst.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
 1953a. The nailing of wood boxes. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Tech. Note B-10 rev., 4 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
 1953b. Strength of screw fastenings in plywood. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Tech. Note 149, 2 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
 1955. Wood handbook. USDA Agr. Handbook 72, 528 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
 1956. Bearing strength of wood at angle to the grain. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1203 rev., 2 pp.
- Wilkerson, W. H.
 1969. Low-profile pallets. Paper presented at 22nd Annu. Meeting Nat. Wooden Pallet and Container Assoc. 9 pp.
- Wilkerson, W. H.
 1970. The world is ready for low-profile pallets. Auto-Nailer Co., 29 pp. Atlanta, Ga.
- Wilkerson, W. H., Sheppard, D. W., and Stern, E. G.
 1968. Auto-nailed pallets. Paper presented at Meeting of Fasteners Comm. Nat. Wooden Pallet and Container Assoc. 25 pp.
- Zornig, H. F., and Sherwood, G. E.
 1969. Wood structures survive hurricane Camille's winds. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-123, 16 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.

25

Finishing

CONTENTS

	Page
25-1 NATURALLY WEATHERED SURFACES	1327
25-2 STAINS	1332
USDA FOREST PRODUCTS LABORATORY	
STAIN	1332
<i>Ingredients</i>	1332
<i>Tinting colors</i>	1333
<i>Mixing</i>	1333
<i>Application</i>	1333
<i>Refinishing</i>	1334
<i>Limitations</i>	1334
<i>Availability</i>	1334
DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR STAINED	
SIDING	1334
<i>Patterns</i>	1334
<i>Moisture content</i>	1335
<i>Application of heavily pigmented stains</i>	1336
<i>Fastening</i>	1337
25-3 PAINTS	1337
TOPOGRAPHY OF WOOD SURFACES	1338
BASIC COATING TECHNOLOGY	1338
SELECTION, PREPARATION, AND INSTALLA-	
TION OF WOOD	1345
<i>Wood selection and preparation</i>	1345
<i>Moisture content</i>	1345
PAINT SYSTEMS	1346
REPAINTING	1348
25-4 CLEAR FINISHES	1348

	Page
25-5 PAINTABLE OVERLAYS FOR LUMBER	1349
OVERLAY MATERIAL	1349
BOND BETWEEN OVERLAY AND WOOD	1350
PERFORMANCE OF OVERLAID LUMBER	1351
DESIGN OF OVERLAID SIDING	1351
PRECAST COLORED FILMS	1352
25-6 PRODUCTS OTHER THAN LUMBER	1352
PLYWOOD	1352
<i>Face checking</i>	1353
<i>Natural and seminatural finishes</i>	1353
<i>Paint finish on nonoverlaid plywood</i>	1354
<i>Paint finish for plywood overlaid with resin-</i> <i>treated paper</i>	1355
<i>Other coatings for plywood</i>	1355
HARDBOARD	1356
<i>Substrate</i>	1356
<i>Methods of applying prime coat</i>	1356
<i>Primers</i>	1357
<i>Topcoats for factory-primed siding</i>	1358
<i>Prefinished siding</i>	1358
PARTICLEBOARD	1359
SIGNS	1359
LAMINATED BEAMS	1360
25-7 INTERIOR FINISHES	1360
SEMITRANSSPARENT FINISH FOR WALL	
PANELING	1360
CLEAR FLOOR FINISH	1361
<i>Sanding</i>	1361
<i>Shellac</i>	1361
<i>Varnish</i>	1362
<i>Floor seals</i>	1362
<i>Floor maintenance</i>	1363
25-8 LITERATURE CITED	1363

25

Finishing

Southern pine wood readily accepts a wide variety of finishes designed for interior use. A few of them are briefly described in the concluding section of this chapter (sec. 25-7).

If unprotected by coatings, southern pine wood, like other woods, is degraded by exposure to light—particularly the ultraviolet component of sunlight (sec. 15-3); and it is susceptible to decay, stain, mildew, and warp. Southern pine wood has unique characteristics, also, which make durable exterior finishes difficult to achieve.

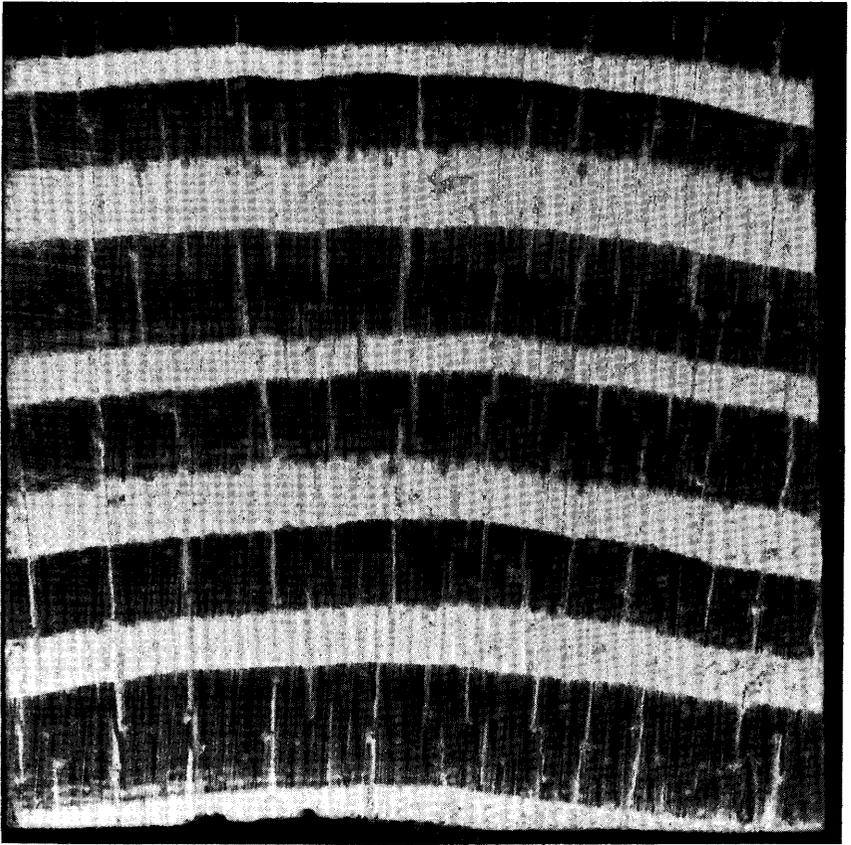
In contrast with the soft pines (e.g., *Pinus strobus* L.) and those western species most favored for exterior siding—notably redwood (*Sequoia sempervirens* (D. Don) Endl.) and western redcedar (*Thuja plicata* Donn)—southern pine has broad bands of dense latewood (fig. 25-1). Coatings tend to adhere poorly to these latewood bands. In addition, since latewood and earlywood shrink at different rates with moisture content changes, checks (fig. 25-2) and raised grain (figs. 19-34, 25-3) may develop.

Also, because southern pine has a higher resin content than many woods, and contains some pitch pockets (fig. 11-7), an occasional piece of lumber may exude sufficient pitch to locally discolor finishes. Because of these problems, this chapter emphasizes exterior finishes.

25-1 NATURALLY WEATHERED SURFACES

It is possible, with appropriate precautions, to circumvent the difficulty of durably coating exposed southern pine by leaving it uncoated to weather naturally. Uncoated southern pine exposed outdoors changes first to a brownish-orange color and ultimately to rather dark gray with little or no sheen, as described in section 15-3.

Checking, which may be severe in flat-grain wood (fig. 25-2), can be minimized by using vertical-grain boards—preferably slow grown and of low density. Because weathered boards cup, warp, and pull at their fastenings, secure nailing is required on unpainted wood (see sec. 24-2). Butt joints in vertical siding should be avoided.



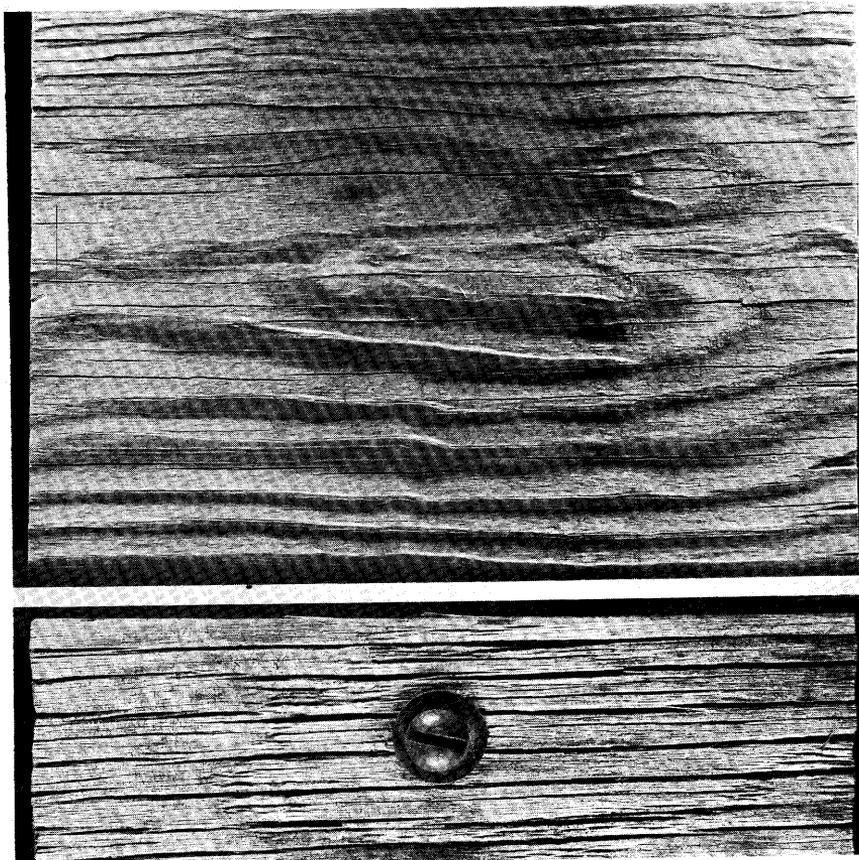
F-521004

Figure 25-1.—One-inch-square transverse section of loblolly pine wood showing broad bands of dense latewood characteristic of much southern pine lumber.

Chemical changes in the gray layers add to the surface roughness and make it soft and erodable; board thickness may be reduced by as much as 1/4-inch over a period of 100 years. Other problems with naturally weathered southern pine exteriors are concerned with uniformity of color.

To avoid stains from fasteners, nails should be of stainless steel or aluminum. Resin exudation presents a problem in some southern pine. Kiln-drying probably reduces exudation, but occasionally some pieces (perhaps 1 percent) will exude resin in service; objectionable exudation can be minimized by avoiding use of pitchy boards in critical positions.

In the South, and in other warm, humid climates, the color and appearance of weathered southern pine is frequently made blotchy and unsightly by dark-colored spores and mycelia of fungi growing on the surface. In very dry climates and in coastal regions with salt atmospheres, the growth of micro-organisms is inhibited, and wood is more likely to develop an attractive, clean, silvery-gray appearance.



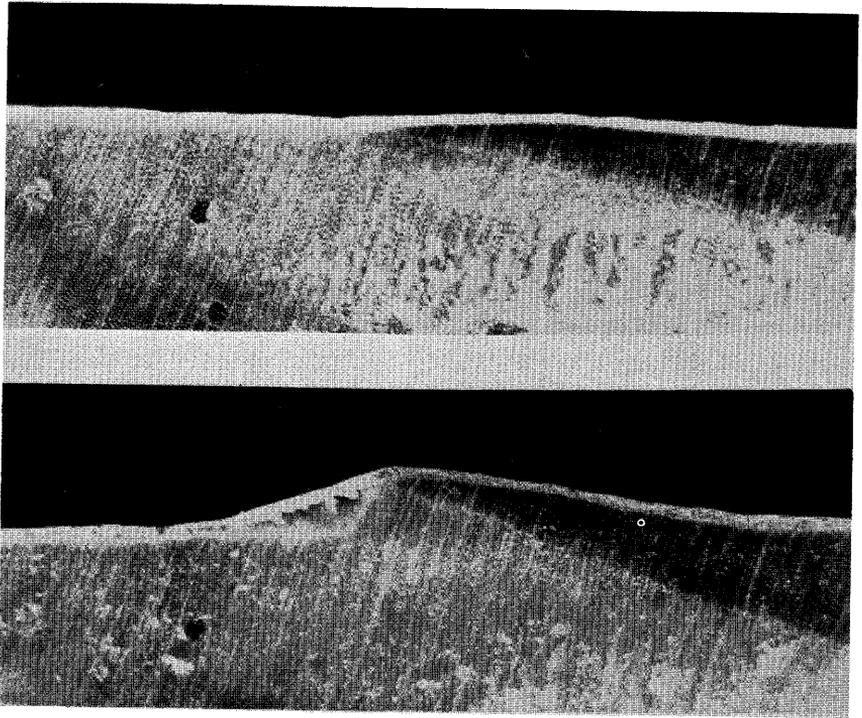
F-521005

Figure 25-2.—Checks in uncoated southern pine wood after extreme exposure in central Louisiana; if coated and given less severe exposure, checks will be less prominent. (Top) Flat-grain, 2- by 6-inch board after 3 months of exterior exposure. (Bottom) Three-ply, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch southern pine plywood of rotary-peeled veneer after 6½ years on a 45°, south-facing exposure fence. Specimen is 1 inch wide and 3¼ inches long.

Mold and mildew fungi can be killed and cleaned temporarily from large wood surfaces with the following solution¹ (National Paint, Varnish, and Lacquer Association 1960) :

- 3 ounces trisodium phosphate (e.g., Soilax)
- 1 ounce detergent (e.g., Tide)
- 1 quart 5 percent sodium hypochlorite (e.g., Chlorox)
- 3 quarts warm water

¹ Mention of a chemical in this chapter or elsewhere in this text does not constitute a recommendation; only those chemicals registered by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency may be recommended, and then only for uses as prescribed in the registration—and in the manner and at the concentration prescribed. The list of registered chemicals varies from time to time; prospective users, therefore, should get current information on registration status from Pesticides Regulation Division, Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C.



M-121550

Figure 25-3.—(Top) End grain near the pith side of a dry, flat-grain board of southern pine machined with dull planer knives and then coated with one thick coat of TT-P-25 primer, an oil-base paint. (Bottom) Board after wetting; paint film is separated from substrate; surface discontinuity was caused by swelling of crushed earlywood cells underlying the latewood. (Photos from Miniutti 1964.)

The solution should be applied undiluted, and the surface scrubbed with a soft brush. When the surface is clean, it should be rinsed thoroughly with fresh water. Smaller surfaces can be cleaned with a powdered abrasive household cleanser. Subsequent growth of fungi can be controlled by periodic application of a fungicide.

As with other woods, much time is required for new southern pine lumber to achieve the silvery appearance of weathered wood, and the change seldom takes place evenly over an entire wall; boards receiving most exposure to rain and sun weather first. Usually the lowest courses of siding on a south wall become fully grayed sooner than the top courses under eaves or overhangs.

To avoid delay in attaining a weathered appearance, Browne (1952) suggested using rough-sawn rather than planed lumber and initially applying a gray stain—for example, one made from raw umber in oil, white lead in oil, boiled linseed oil, and mineral spirits. The stain need only be applied once; by the time it deteriorates, the wood will have developed its natural gray color.

Alternatively, planed lumber can be used and a bleaching oil applied, i.e., a natural finish of the sealer type containing some pigments to give a gray color. This finish may be renewed occasionally or allowed to wear away, leaving the wood in its natural weathered condition.

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1968) suggests that an application of water-repellent preservative (WRP) to otherwise unfinished wood will promote even coloration and will reduce warping, cracking, and water staining. The first application of WRP is usually short lived. A second liberal brush application—made after removal of fungal and mold stains—should last much longer. The treatment is more durable on rough surfaces than on smooth.

WRP solutions are available in most paint and lumber stores; for readers who wish to make their own formulation, however, the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1968) provided the following formula that will serve effectively as a natural exterior finish for wood or as a pretreatment before painting.

Ingredients	Quantity to make approximately 1 gallon
Penta concentrate 10:1 ¹ -----	1¾ cups
Boiled linseed oil -----	1½ cups
Paraffin wax -----	¼ ₁₆ -pound
Solvent (turpentine, mineral spirits, or paint thinner) ----	3 quarts

The paraffin wax, melted in the top unit of a double boiler, should be slowly poured into vigorously stirred, room-temperature (60° to 80° F.) solvent. After the paraffin wax and solvent are mixed, add—in order—the linseed oil and penta concentrate and stir until the mixture is uniform. At low or freezing temperatures ingredients in the mixture will separate but can be redissolved if reheated and stirred.

Also, workers at the USDA Forest Products Laboratory found that substantial protection against degradation was provided by certain chromate salts, especially copper and lead chromate, and chromate compounds combined with pentachlorophenate and potassium ferricyanide.¹ These inorganic treatments not only provided excellent resistance to photodegradation but also were effective fungicides. The chromate finishes are still in the experimental stage.

Initial field tests in Wisconsin of two chromate-type formulations indicate that they are not only cheap, but may provide a natural-looking finish that could last 4 years or more (Anonymous 1969). Formulation details have been provided by Black (1969):

Ingredients	Formula A	Formula B
Chromic acid (chromium trioxide), pounds -----	2.5	2.5
Concentrated ammonium hydroxide (30 percent ammonia), pounds -----	5.0	5.0
Copper hydroxide or copper oxide, pounds -----	.25	None
Water, gallons -----	5.0	5.0

The copper hydroxide in Formula A enhances the fungicidal properties

of the treatment. Sodium chromate (approximately 6 pounds) can be substituted for the chromic acid and 1/2 to 1 pound of copper sulfate can be used instead of copper hydroxide.

Mixing may be done in plastic containers or in metal containers with heavy polyethylene bag liners. Covers on the containers will prevent excessive loss of ammonia from the solution and unnecessary exposure to ammonia vapors. To mix the solution, dissolve the chromic acid in the water; then add the ammonium hydroxide slowly while stirring. Add the copper hydroxide and continue periodic stirring for several hours until complete solution is achieved. Skin contact with the chromic acid or mixed solution should be avoided; if contact occurs, wash promptly with soap and water.

A gallon of solution should be applied (by dipping, brushing, or spraying) to each 200 sq. ft. of surface. Since its effectiveness depends on penetration, the solution should not be applied to previously painted or sealed surfaces. Rough-sawn and weathered surfaces, which are highly absorptive, are ideal for treating. Wetting the wood surface with water 1/2 to 2 hours before application will improve penetration of the chemicals (Black 1969).

25-2 STAINS

A properly formulated stain for southern pine has low cost of initial application, good color retention, and good durability on both rough and smooth exterior surfaces. Applied to smooth surfaces, service life should be about 3 years, and on rough surfaces up to 8 or 10 years. A stain finish, when eroded away with time, is easily renewed.

Because stain penetrates and does not form a coating that can fail by cracking and peeling, it is effective on surfaces where moisture problems cause early paint failures. Generally, stain finishes have less hiding power than paints, i.e., less pigment content, so that some of the wood grain shows through—an effect particularly pleasing to the eye on rough-sawn and stained southern pine.

USDA FOREST PRODUCTS LABORATORY STAIN

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1970a) has developed a modified semitransparent oil-base penetrating stain formulated particularly for use on southern pine used in climates where protection against discoloration by mildew is an important requirement.

Ingredients.—The ingredients to make approximately 5 gallons of this stain are as follows:

Material (and usual source)	Quantity
Paraffin wax (grocery store)	1/2-pound
Zinc stearate (drug store)	2 ounces
Turpentine, mineral spirits or paint thinner (paint store)	2 1/2 to 3 gallons
Boiled linseed oil (paint store)	1 gallon
Penta concentrate 10:1 (mail order houses)	1 gallon
Tinting colors (paint store)	1 to 2 quarts

Zinc stearate, which helps keep pigments in suspension during use and prevents them from caking during storage, can be deleted if the stain is stirred frequently and used soon after mixing. "Penta," an abbreviation for pentachlorophenol, is added to protect from mildew; when used in the amount specified, a 5-gallon batch of finish contains about 3.8 pounds of pentachlorophenol.¹

Tinting colors.—By varying ratios of tinting colors in the above formulation, various hues can be obtained. Colors of high-quality, iron-oxide pigments are known to possess good durability; other colors may prove less durable. Color durability is also related to the amount of pigment applied to the surface; doubling the amount of pigment in the formula will improve the durability but will make the finish less transparent and the color more intense. Tinting colors (also termed colors-in-oil at artist supply stores), obtainable at paint stores, will give stain colorations as follows:

<u>Stain color</u>	<u>Tinting colors required</u>
Cedar -----	1 pint burnt sienna, 1 pint raw umber
Light redwood -----	2 pints burnt sienna
Green gold -----	1 pint chromium oxide, 1 pint raw sienna
Tan (burnished gold) -----	1 quart raw sienna, 3 fluid ounces burnt umber
Chocolate brown -----	1 quart burnt umber
Forest green -----	1 quart medium chrome green
Fruit wood brown -----	1 pint raw sienna, 1 pint raw umber, 0.5 pint burnt sienna
Smoky gray -----	1 quart white oil-base house paint, 6 fluid ounces raw umber, 3 fluid ounces lampblack

Mixing.—To mix the stain, the paraffin wax is first melted in a container heated by hot water, i.e., a double boiler. The melted paraffin is then slowly poured into the paint thinner (or other solvent) while the mixture is stirred vigorously to insure complete solution. Because the mixture is volatile and flammable, it is safest to prepare it outdoors where the solution or its vapors will not be exposed to flame or sparks.

After the paraffin and paint thinner are mixed, the zinc stearate, boiled linseed oil, penta concentrate, and tinting colors are added and the mixture stirred until uniform. Preferred temperature for mixing is 70° to 80° F.; at lower temperatures, the ingredients are less soluble.

Application.—This finish may be applied by brush or spray. In brush applications, lap marks can be avoided if the stain is brushed with the grain for the full length of each board or course without stopping. Uneven penetration of the stain can be minimized if stain is applied to walls while they are shaded rather than sunlit; best success results from following the sun around the structure to be painted. The stain should not come into excessive contact with the skin or be inhaled while spraying. It may also injure shrubbery and other vegetation.

Smoothly planed surfaces will absorb only one coat.

Absorptive rough-sawn or weathered surfaces can be finished with a two-coat system. The second coat must be applied soon after the first and

before the first has dried. Stain which has not penetrated after 1 hour should be wiped from the surface with a rough cloth. Failure to do so will result in a shiny or glossy area which will be unsightly. To reduce fire hazard, the wiping rags should be disposed of promptly.

Refinishing.—After a previous application of the USDA Forest Products Laboratory stain has eroded away, it is advisable, before refinishing, to remove dirt by sanding the surface lightly with abrasive paper or steel wool. When refinishing, the stain may penetrate better if thinned with not more than 1 quart of mineral spirits per gallon of stain.

Limitations.—The USDA Forest Products Laboratory stain finish dries rather slowly; a day of good drying weather is generally required. The wax in the finish may interfere with subsequent painting, although tests have demonstrated that it can be painted over with house paints after as little exposure to the weather as 1 year. Where the stain finish has been protected from the weather, as under an overhang, it should be wiped well with a paint thinner or some other wax solvent before painting.

Availability.—For the convenience of those users not desiring to formulate their own stain, the USDA Forest Products Laboratory in Madison, Wis., maintains a list of manufacturers who make and sell this stain.

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR STAINED SIDING

Southern pine with stained finish is rather widely used as siding for dwellings and other buildings. While sometimes used dressed, as horizontal siding, or as vertical boards and battens, in its most common applications rough-sawn surfaces are exposed. Its success in all such outdoor exposures requires suitable design and attachment of the siding.

Patterns.—Arrangement of board and batten, and board on board vertical siding, usually installed with rough surface exposed, is shown in figure 25-4AB. Vertical siding, if applied over wood sheathing backed up by horizontal nailing girts on 24-inch centers, will have good anchorage for nails. Adequate overlap and secure nailing of battens or outside boards are essential.

Siding patterns suitable for either vertical or horizontal installation (25-4CD) may be dressed on all sides or the exposed face may be left rough.

For vertical arrangements, tongue and groove patterns can also be employed if suitably designed. McMillin (1969) obtained good results with southern pine vertical siding manufactured in lengths from 10 to 24 feet for application without butt joints and specified as follows (fig. 25-5) :

“One- by 6-inch, bandsawn, B and better, kiln-dried southern pine with rough face and edge-V on bark side and 3/8-inch center match tongue and groove. Face width 5-1/8 inches; thickened on back only (hit and miss) to 7/8-inch. Back side with two grooves 1/4-inch deep by 1/4-inch wide on third points.”

These specifications differ slightly from those for standard tongue and

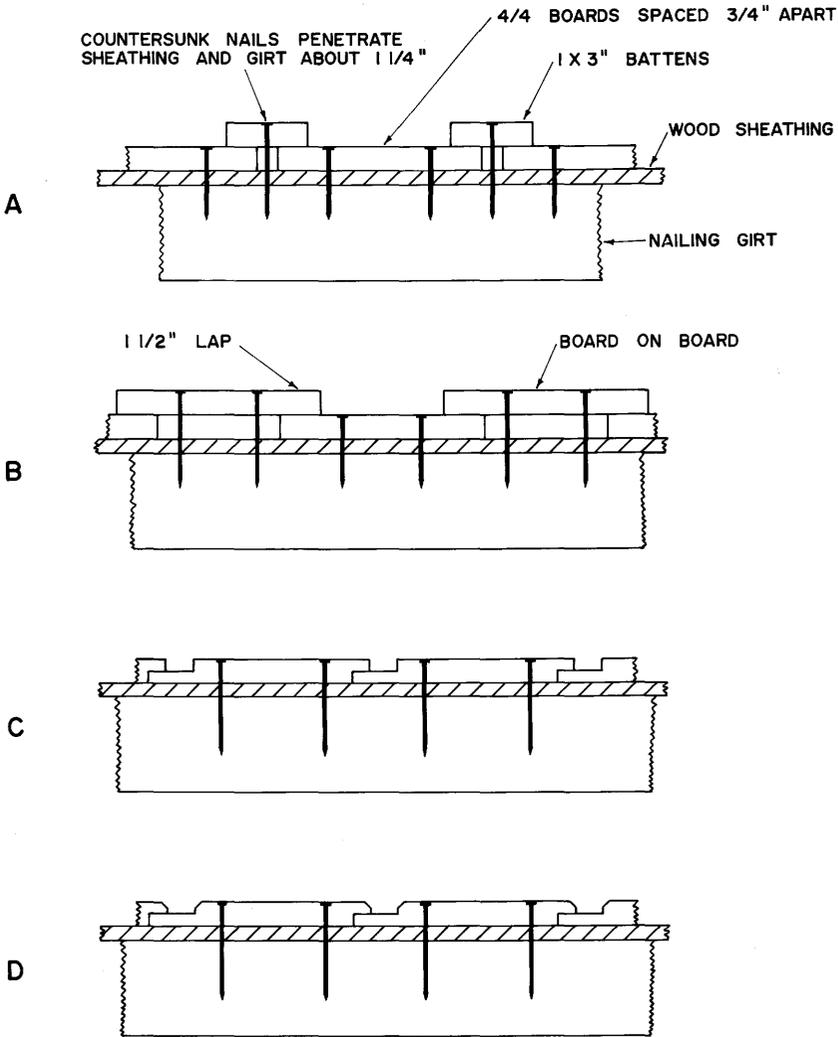


Figure 25-4.—Patterns for stained southern pine siding. (A) Board and batten vertical siding. (B) Board on board vertical siding. (C,D) Lap patterns, usually installed horizontally.

groove siding. Of particular importance is the longer tongue and groove, the 7/8-inch thickness, and the grooves in the back to minimize cupping. The 6-inch width is sufficiently narrow to reduce width shrinkage to acceptable limits. Boards should be milled so that the rough surface for exposure is that which was nearest the bark in the tree; the pith side should carry the anti-cupping grooves.

Moisture content.—Tongue and groove or lap-jointed siding should be applied at a moisture content equal to that which it will attain in service; this will insure that the joint will not be overly exposed through shrinkage.



F-521006

Figure 25-5.—Application system and pattern found suitable for stained, tongue-and-groove, vertical southern pine siding. Boards are $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch thick, rough sawn on exposed surface, and 6 inches in nominal width with $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-long, center-match tongue. Grooves machined in back minimize cupping. Color-matched, stainless steel, helically threaded nails are $2\frac{1}{8}$ inches long. (Photo after description by McMillin 1969.)

Experience in central Louisiana indicates that moisture content at application should be close to 10 percent. The stained, rough-sawn southern pine cut to the tongue and groove pattern described by McMillin (1969) was equilibrated to 9-percent moisture content before application. The average gap between boards never exceeded 0.04 inch during the driest months (widest gaps were nearly 0.2 inch), nor did buckling occur during humid periods.

Application of heavily pigmented stains.—Formulations and application methods other than those developed by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory, as previously described, may also give acceptable service. McMillin (1969) observed good performance of a stain system applied as follows. Boards milled to the pattern previously described and equilibrated to 9-

percent moisture content were first dipped for 3 minutes in a water-repellent solution containing pentachlorophenol¹ (Woodlife) and allowed to dry for about 24 hours. They were then dipped in a dark russet-colored, oil-base stain that was heavily pigmented and contained a fungicide. (The stain was manufactured by Olympic Stained Products Company.) After dipping, the boards were placed on edge and allowed to dry for 24 hours. They were then placed on stickers and again equilibrated to 9-percent moisture content before installation. A second coat was brushed on after installation.

After 5 years of severe exposure in central Louisiana, these rough-sawn, stained boards suffered some loss in color but were still attractive in appearance. Surface checking was moderate, but not objectionable. There was no evidence of mold, stain, or decay. Where rain-splashed, the lower couple of feet of the 22-foot-high walls were faded somewhat more than the upper portions. Occasional resin exudation was evident, but not unsightly.

Fastening.—To be successful, stained, rough-sawn, southern pine siding must not only be of the proper pattern, at the right moisture content when applied, and finished with a durable stain correctly applied—it must also be securely fastened.

In the successful system described by McMillin (1969), the siding was applied vertically over 3/8-inch southern pine plywood sheathing. It was used full length, i.e., without butt joints. It was fastened (fig. 25-5) to horizontal girts placed on 2-foot centers, each board being fixed to each girt with three nails. Nails were of stainless steel, 2-1/8-inches long, annularly grooved, and with blunt points. With this attachment system there was no evidence of nail withdrawal after 5 years, no unsightly distortion of boards, no open joints, and no stains caused by fastener corrosion.

Other nailing patterns are shown in figure 25-4. For use in the South, nails should be extremely corrosion resistant; stainless steel and aluminum nails serve well. If first coated to match the siding color, nails will be inconspicuous when flush-driven. Stainless steel nails, if not coated, can be countersunk and filled with matching pigmented putty.

25-3 PAINTS

Southern pine, notable for its many excellent properties as a building material, has notoriously poor exterior performance when painted. New systems developed by the paint industry, which are better suited to wood of the southern pines, combined with good design and some care in lumber selection, can go far toward solution of painting problems with these species. Durability of paint depends on a complex interaction involving wood surface, paint formulation, application technique, and service conditions. Some of these interactions are briefly discussed in the following text.

TOPOGRAPHY OF WOOD SURFACES

Surfaced southern pine, even if knot free, displays considerable variation in surface topography. The variations, which are mostly attributable to method of surfacing, cell type, and duration of exposure, have been illustrated by Zicherman.² Microtomed surfaces proved to be smoother than planed surfaces (fig. 25-6); pine sanded after planing had a smooth but cluttered surface (fig. 25-7). Transwall (i.e., across-wall) severance in earlywood and intrawall (i.e., within-wall) failure in latewood is evident in figures 25-6 and 25-7, and is further apparent from the pits shown in figure 25-8.

Earlywood topography promotes formation of a deep wood-coating interface; in earlywood, lumens are typically open, and U-shaped surfaces are usually exposed. In latewood, however, smooth surfaces resulting from intrawall failures are typical; on such topography a deep wood-coating interface is not readily attainable.

Surface topography is also modified by exposure to the weather (see sec. 15-3). Data specific to southern pine has been provided by Zicherman,² who illustrated surface degradation of uncoated loblolly pine exposed to ultraviolet radiation. Such degradation probably diminishes the likelihood of obtaining a good paint-to-wood bond. In Zicherman's experiment, he cycled specimens under an ultraviolet source for 20 hours at 170° F., followed by a 4-hour soak at room temperature in tap water. Some specimens were also exposed continuously to the ultraviolet source without cyclic wetting.

After 58 hours of ultraviolet treatment, diagonal checks developed in the cell walls of soaked specimens. In unsoaked specimens, however, about 500 hours of exposure to ultraviolet treatment were required to develop visible checks in earlywood cell walls, and little deterioration was visible in latewood at that time. After 1,250 hours of dry ultraviolet exposure, pit structures were deteriorated (fig. 25-9 Top); 1,500 hours of ultraviolet exposure combined with water soaking caused substantial degradation and wall checks became clearly visible (fig. 29-9 Bottom). Zicherman concluded that changes in surface topography caused by exposure to ultraviolet radiation are accelerated if wood is wetted at intervals.

BASIC COATING TECHNOLOGY³

Paints for application on wood consist of pigment particles in a binder. The binder may itself serve as a carrier for the pigment, or it may be dissolved or dispersed in a separate volatile carrier. Paint coatings should

² Zicherman, J. B. The localization of coating components within the ultrastructure of wood by use of a micro-incineration technique. Final Report FS-SO-3201-2.22. USDA Forest Serv. Southern Forest Exp. Sta., dated March 3, 1971.

³ The text under this heading is condensed, with some revisions, from Zicherman (1969) by permission of J. B. Zicherman and the Forest Products Research Society.

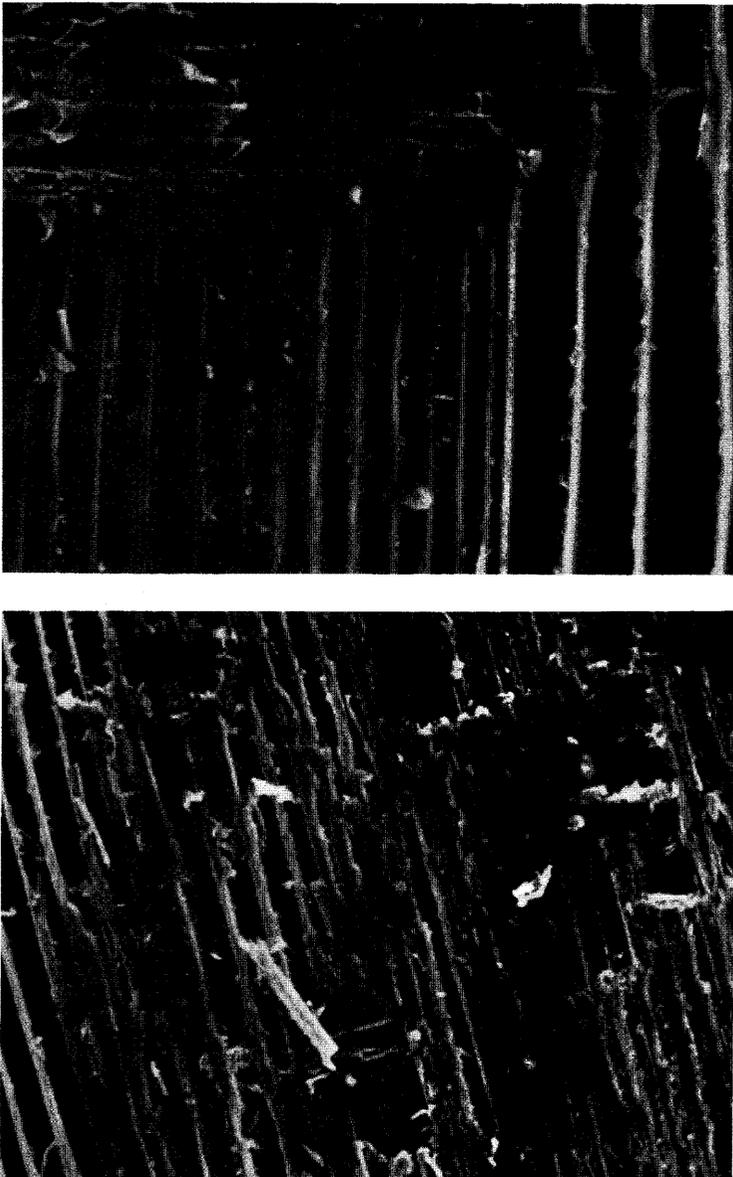


Figure 25-6.—Radial sections cut on loblolly pine. (Top) Microtomed surface. At right is earlywood with transwall failures. Latewood, mostly with intrawall failures, is evident at left. Ray cells are seen in upper portion of figure. 160X. (Bottom) Planed surface. Latewood at right shows intrawall failures and occasional fractures at right angles to grain. Earlywood at left shows transwall failures. 100X. (Photos from Zicherman².)

limit passage of water in and out of wood, thus avoiding the high moisture gradients which cause rapid dimensional changes. Pigments provide color and opacity to painted surfaces and a measure of protection from both

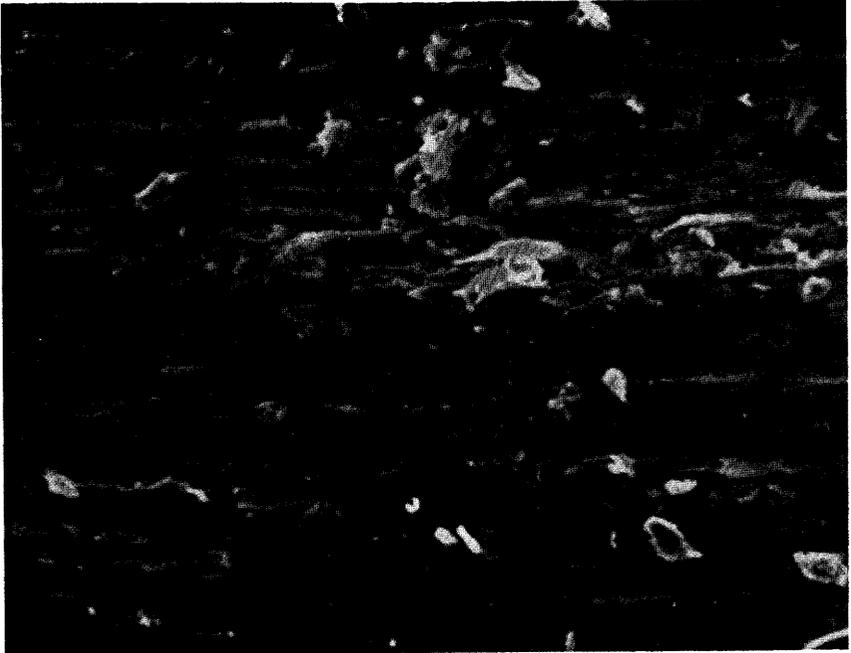


Figure 25-7.—Sanded tangential surface of loblolly pine. In upper portion of figure, earlywood with transwall failures is evident. Lower half shows smoother latewood surface. 120X. (Photo from Zicherman².)

mechanical and chemical deterioration. They also absorb ultraviolet radiation, which, if unimpeded, deteriorates wood surfaces. Pigments for coatings may be classified into three types: reactive, extending, and inactive.

Reactive pigments such as leaded zinc oxide and zinc oxide are effective ultraviolet absorbers and offer good mildew protection. Zinc oxide, however, yields a hard surface which may become brittle, resulting in flaking, and/or cracking, of the coating. Leaded pigments form softer films, which are subject to chalking, cracking, and checking. Reactive pigments also may combine with hydrogen sulfide in the air, causing the coating to yellow or darken. Both leaded zinc and zinc oxides will react with organic acids that may be present in the binder or that may develop in curing or film aging. In oil-based paints containing reactive pigments, excess acid groups may form and cause rapid breakdown of the paint film (Nylén and Sunderland 1965). The compatibility of these pigment types with modern emulsion formulations is not yet fully proven. Zinc pigment types are especially important in the South because of their good tint retention and mildew resistance (Werthan 1963).

The **extending pigments** are typified by magnesium silicate and the calcium carbonates. These pigments have a different size distribution than



Figure 25-8.—Planed radial surfaces of loblolly pine. (Top) Earlywood showing cut tangential wall of tracheid, at left, and open lumen with pit exposed and border intact. 1,000X. (Bottom) Latewood with intrawall failure evident in upper portion of photo; the pits, with membrane and one border removed, lead through the remaining border into the lumen beyond. 1,000X. (Photos from Zicherman².)

the reactive pigments, which may lead to better pigment packing and lower resin requirements.

The inactive, hiding pigments come from a variety of materials. Tita-

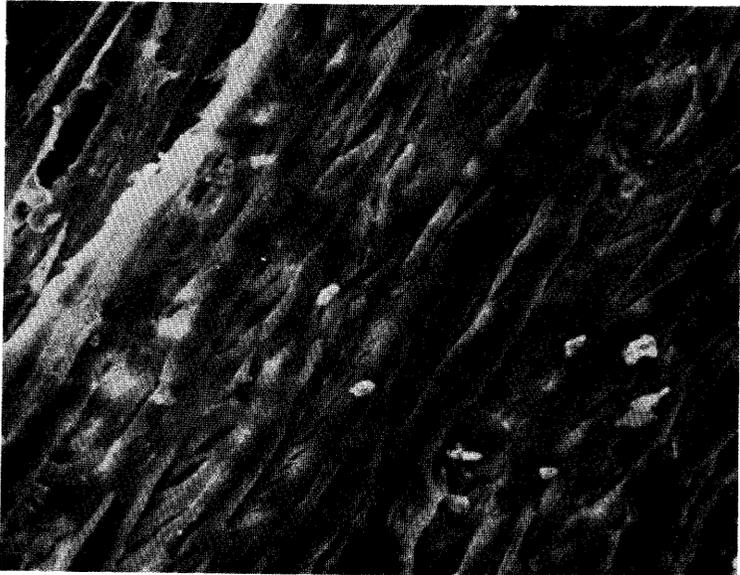
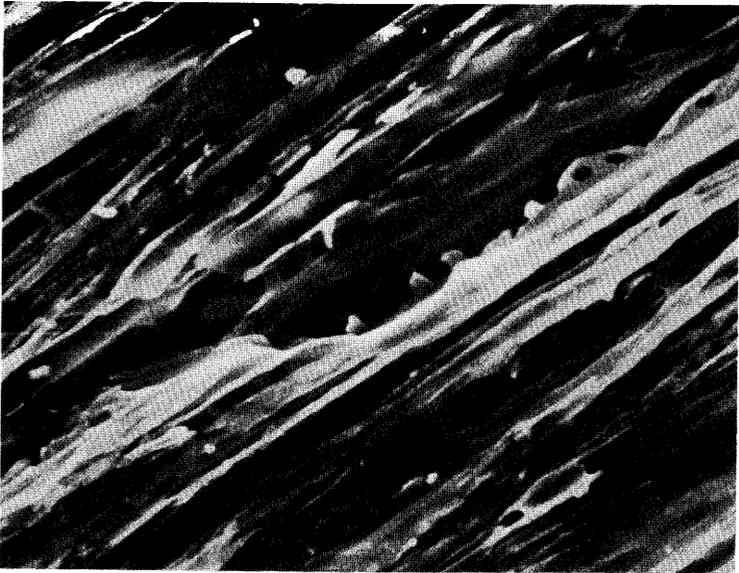


Figure 25-9.—Sanded loblolly pine surfaces after exposure to ultraviolet radiation. (Top) Pit structures deteriorated after 1,250 hours of exposure without water soak. 250X. (Bottom) After 1,500 hours of exposure with intermittent water soak, cell wall checks were clearly visible. 200X. (Photos from Zicherman².)

niium dioxide is a member of this group, and is in common use as the prime, white, hiding pigment. Rutile titanium dioxide (nonchalking) and anatase (chalking) can be mixed to give a controlled pigment breakdown, and to yield a good surface for repainting (Nylén and Sunderland 1965).

In a study of southern pine paints in which Rutile titanium dioxide was extended with a variety of extender pigments, Bohlen (1963) concluded that the type of extender pigment is of minor importance in preventing paint problems on southern pine.

With the exception of pigments, the components of the older types of coatings (drying-oil-based solutions and dispersions) and the new types (latex systems, also termed emulsion systems) are quite different. The older paints utilize drying oils (usually modified with alkyd resins) as the binder into which pigment particles are dispersed and most other components are dissolved. Latex paints are emulsions of pigments and polymer resins, usually in water; also alkyd-oil emulsion systems are used.

One of the fundamental problems encountered in the use of **drying-oil-based formulations** is embrittlement of the film. Drying-oil binders are subject to an oxidative embrittlement on aging, yielding limited durability on substrates subject to dimensional change. The drying reaction proceeds with solvent evaporation to a cross-linking stage, which continues and eventually creates an inelastic and brittle film, which may be unable to tolerate the shrinking and swelling typical of southern pine. Aging of drying-oil binders is a photochemical process, variously affected by inclusion of different pigments.

A **latex paint** consists basically of a dispersing medium and nonaqueous droplets, composed of resin. The pigments, thickeners, and wetting agents are found in both phases. Wetting agents or emulsifiers are of great importance because, although present in small concentration, they create a balanced system in which the droplets are evenly and readily dispersed. They also allow the resin to adequately wet the pigment particles, so that they will be tightly held in the film upon drying. To these ingredients, others such as preservatives, antifoamers, and viscosity controlling agents are added (Martens 1964).

In addition to the original **styrene butadiene latex**, the **polyvinyl acetate** and **acrylic** based resins form the bulk of the emulsions presently used in coating applications. **Alkyd-oil** resins are also widely used.

Being prepolymerized, the water-based latexes do not undergo extensive chemical reactions on aging, eliminating this source of deterioration. New formulations of the latexes retain more plasticity than drying-oil-based coatings, making them more compatible with southern pine. In addition, they dry rapidly and eliminate the dangers of flammability and air pollution which result from the use of organic solvents (important factors in their factory use), and are clean and easy to apply (Martens 1966).

Figure 25-10 shows surface and cross section views of a water-based acrylic emulsion applied in a single coat to sanded loblolly pine. In the surface view, pigment particles can be seen. In cross section, the porous nature of the film is evident. Zicherman² reported that 1,500 hours of exposure to ultraviolet radiation with intermittent water soak did not cause macroscopic film failures. When coating failures did occur, they

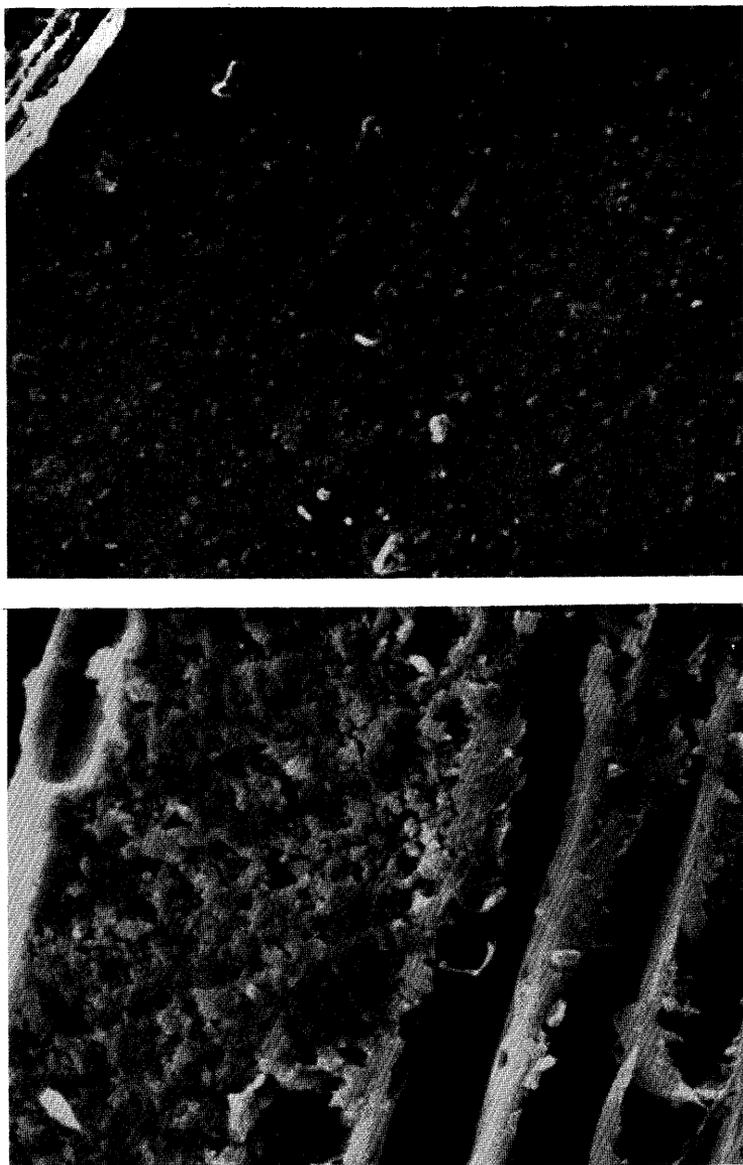


Figure 25-10.—Water-based acrylic emulsion (latex) paint on sanded surface of loblolly pine. (Top) Surface; pigment particles are visible, as is a pinhole, near lower edge. 140X. (Bottom) Latex coating in cross section photographed after 118 hours of exposure to ultraviolet-soak cycle. Porosity of coating is evident. 340X. (Photos from Zicherman².)

appeared near the junction of earlywood and latewood. Bonds with latewood failed before bonds with earlywood.

Disadvantages of latex paints include a generally lower solids content than oil-based systems (meaning more coats must be applied to yield a

given film thickness), poor adhesion to weathered or chalky surfaces, and poorer penetration of the coating into wood due to the comparatively large size of the emulsion particles (Browne 1959; Allyn 1961; Werthan 1961).

Primers strongly affect paint durability. Certain systems perform poorly when self-primed but satisfactorily when used with a proper primer (Bohlen 1967). Older opinions held that an oil-type primer should be heavily absorbed by the substrate in order to reinforce the surface. This implied the use of a low viscosity system consisting of 60 to 70 percent oil. Newer primers are nonpenetrating and apparently perform best when formulated like the topcoat but with lower solids content (Nylén and Sunderland 1965).

Because water-based primers do not adhere tightly to weathered or chalky painted surfaces, however, penetrating oil-based primers still find wide use. They seem to stabilize a deteriorated surface and create a good base for topcoating (Werthan 1961). Readers desiring additional information on oil- and water-based primers will find the reviews of Pierce and Holsworth (1966) and Bilek et al. (1967) useful.

SELECTION, PREPARATION, AND INSTALLATION OF WOOD

Builders can preclude many—perhaps most—early paint failures by first properly selecting the southern pine wood to be painted and then installing it in such a manner that its moisture content does not vary excessively.

Wood selection and preparation.—Paint failures on southern pine normally begin sooner and proceed more rapidly on flat-sawn than on quarter-sawn (vertical-grain) lumber (Thompson 1968, p. 26). If flat-sawn boards cannot be avoided, loosened grain (fig. 19-34) and resulting paint failures can be reduced if the side that, in the tree, was nearest the bark is exposed to the weather. Most paint technologists agree that slow-grown wood of low specific gravity holds paint better than fast-grown wood of high density. Best results are obtained if the lumber is well manufactured so that machining defects of raised, chipped, and fuzzy grain are absent (fig. 19-34).

Prior to application, siding should be kept clean, and bundled face to face to avoid unnecessary exposure of surfaces to air and sunlight. Bonds between wood and the initial coat of a paint system are strongest if the coat is applied soon after wood is machined.

Moisture content.—Since latewood of southern pine shrinks and swells more than earlywood, the paint-wood bond and the film may be overstressed if moisture content of the wood changes after the paint is applied. Therefore, siding should be installed and painted at a moisture content near that which it will attain in service—generally close to 10 percent. When paint is applied to wood at a moisture content slightly higher than that which it will attain in service, it has been suggested that shrinkage of the wood in service will induce compression stresses in the coating that will reduce subsequent cracking failures should the wood temporarily re-swell.

Following is a highly condensed discussion of the complex moisture-caused problems of blistering, peeling, and cracking; readers desiring additional details are referred to the source publication (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1970b).

If, subsequent to painting, moisture enters and excessively wets wood behind paint films, water-filled blisters may occur that later dry out and collapse; in this type of paint failure, the film separates at the wood-paint interface.

Peeling is also a moisture-related type of paint failure. It is particularly prevalent with porous paint systems so installed that water is held on the surface for a sufficient time to penetrate into the layers of paint to cause separation at the wood interface or in a plane of weakness between layers of paint. Some peeling failures—such as those observed in gable ends of heated buildings—may be caused by moisture coming from within the building.

Cracking failure, followed by peeling at the ends of boards and on the lower courses of horizontal siding indicates that rain and dew may be penetrating through the paint.

To combat moisture-related paint failures, it is desirable to minimize the amount of water coming into contact with the paint film from the outside. Wide roof overhangs limit rain splash against outside walls—and equally important—limit the amount of sunlight impinging on walls. If leaks in the roof, gutters, flashings, or casements allow outside water to enter walls, early paint failure will result.

Water from inside the building is equally damaging. It may come from leaks in plumbing, overflow of sinks and bathtubs, or shower spray on improperly sealed bathroom walls. Frequently it comes from high humidity within buildings. If construction is such that humid air condenses on the interior surface of siding boards, the boards become wet and the paint may blister. In addition to moisture admitted to the air by respiration of occupants, common sources of humidity in houses include water vapor from cooking, dishwashing, laundering, and bathing. Other sources are humidifiers and unvented gas heaters and clothes dryers. Crawl spaces also contribute moisture that moves in through floors and out through walls.

Assuming that siding temperatures are generally lower than interior temperatures and that humidity in the interior is high, then condensation problems can be reduced by placing a vapor barrier in the warm interior walls, by increasing insulation and ventilation in the attic, and by reducing interior humidity by shutting off humidifiers, and venting gas heaters, clothes dryers, and kitchen and bath exhaust fans to the outside. A vapor-proof ground cover applied in crawl spaces will also cut down on moisture moving to the interior.

PAINT SYSTEMS

While it would be convenient to recommend a specific formulation as best, knowledge is insufficient at this time; moreover, paint technology

is changing rapidly. The paragraphs that follow, therefore, are in the nature of general observations, with findings of a few responsible sources given some emphasis. Readers desiring a more complete review of paint technology for southern pine will find the citations in this chapter and in Zicherman (1969) useful in obtaining an introduction to the subject.

The first step in painting southern pine for exterior exposure should be application of a water-repellent preservative to the bare wood as a protection against entrance of rain and heavy dew (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1966c, 1968). The solutions are available from most paint and building supply dealers. (See sec. 25-1 for a formulation.¹) For new construction, pretreated lumber can be purchased from the manufacturer; cut ends should be re-treated by brush application of the solution. It is especially important that window and sash trim be treated. If not factory treated, the lumber can be brush treated on the job. The solution should be brushed thoroughly into butt and lap joints. At least two warm, sunny days are required for adequate drying of the water repellent before application of a prime coat of paint.

Paint technologists agree that a three-coat system (prime coat of paint followed by two additional coats of paint) is substantially superior to a prime coat followed by a single topcoat (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1966c; Thompson 1968, p. 20).

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966c) recommends that the prime coat be a linseed oil-base paint with pigments that do not contain zinc oxide; Federal Specification TTP-25a describes such a primer. The prime coat should not permit capillary flow of dew and rain through the film. The Laboratory recommends that primer coat thickness be 1.5 to 2 mils; a gallon of primer, if at least 85 percent solids by weight, should cover 400 to 450 sq. ft. per gallon.

For finish coats over primer, the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966c) recommends use of high-quality paint; the paint can contain zinc oxide pigment and can be of the linseed oil, alkyd, or latex type. A total of three coats (primer and two topcoats) should result in a thickness of 4-1/2 to 5 mils. Topcoats should be applied within 2 weeks after the primer. Wood should not be primed in the fall with topcoats delayed until spring; it is better to treat with water-repellent preservative and delay all painting until spring. Incidence of temperature blisters in oil-base paint films can be reduced if paint is never applied to a cool surface that will be heated by the sun in a few hours. Wrinkling and flatting of oil-base paint and watermarks on latex paints can be reduced if paint is not applied in the evenings of cool spring and fall days when heavy dews frequently form. Best procedure calls for following the sun around the house.

Thompson (1968) evaluated several paint systems for southern pine and observed that reasonably good appearance after 2 years of exposure was obtained with a few of them. His publication gives details on each system.

Readers interested in paint formulation details will find publications by

Bohlen (1963, 1967) useful. He concluded from more than 5 years of exterior exposure testing that latex paints, either self-primed or applied over a primer, can be formulated to perform better on southern pine than conventional oil-based systems. Primers significantly affected coating durability; acrylic, polyvinyl acetate, and oil types were satisfactory. In general, however, latex systems without an oil-base primer gave best results and showed greatest mildew resistance. The final report includes a sample formulation, based on an acrylic latex, which should perform well (Bohlen 1967).

Another self-priming latex system (all acrylic) has been extensively tested on southern pine in the South and has demonstrated superior adhesion, crack and blister resistance, and film flexibility (Allyn 1966). The Southern Wood Products Association has also reported good results with a self-primed latex (acrylic) system.

Additional systems evaluated on southern pine have been reported by Antfinger (1967), who provided formulations and test data on vinyl-chloride-acrylic polymers, and Beardsley and Kennedy (1967) who gave formulations and performance data on exterior paints based on a vinyl-acetate-ethylene emulsion vehicle.

REPAINTING

A repaint job is only as good as the old paint beneath it. Glossy and unweathered surfaces should be washed or roughened well with steel wool to remove contaminants. Failure to do this is a common cause of intercoat peeling. Repainting should be delayed until the old paint has weathered so that it no longer protects the wood. Excessive chalk and old paint should be removed with steel wool. Where paint is peeling and wood surfaces are exposed, loose paint should be removed from adjacent areas and the exposed spot treated with water-repellent preservative and primed. On chalky surfaces, certain latex paints reportedly give best durability when applied over an oil-base primer (Bohlen 1963, 1967).

25-4 CLEAR FINISHES

In spite of substantial research efforts to improve performance, clear film-forming exterior finishes are not recommended for southern pine. The deleterious effect of sunlight, water, and atmosphere causes their early failure.

Readers desiring information pertinent to clear exterior finishes will find the following references useful: Browne and Simonson (1957); Browne (1960); California Redwood Association (1962); Miniutti (1964, 1967, 1969); Kalnins et al. (1966); Tarkow et al. (1966); USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966ab); Ashton (1967); Golden Gate Society for Coatings Technology (1967); Philadelphia Society for Paint Technology (1967); Rothstein (1967); Schneider and Côté (1967); Côté and Robinson (1968); Heebink (1970); Zicherman.²

Clear finishes for interior exposure are discussed in section 25-7.

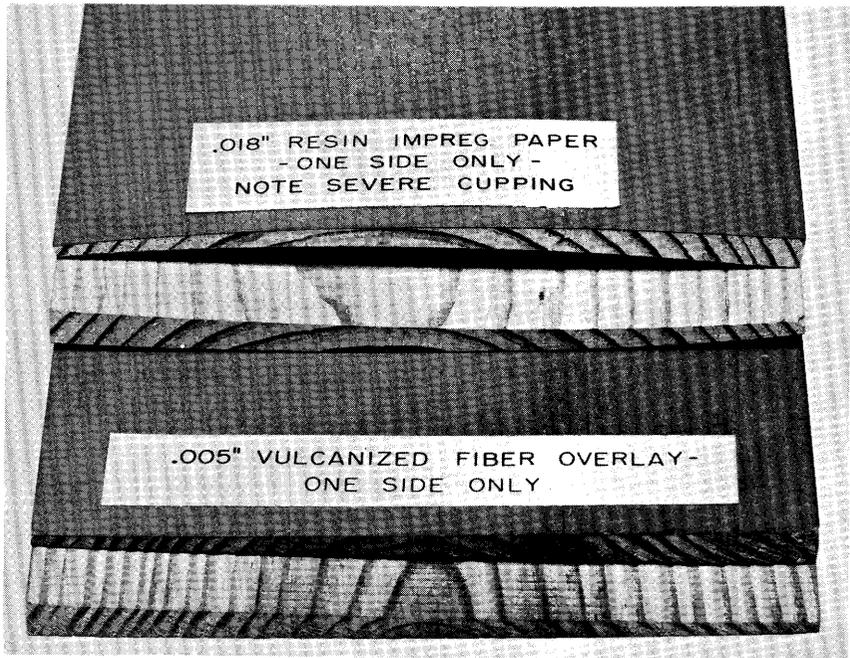
25-5 PAINTABLE OVERLAYS FOR LUMBER

Because many of the difficulties in painting southern pine stem from differential shrinkage in earlywood and latewood and from poor paint adhesion to latewood, it seems a reasonable approach to overlay boards with a sheet designed to provide a uniform, stable substrate for paint. Heebink (1961) and Fleischer and Heebink (1964) summarized the results of many years of research at the USDA Forest Products Laboratory to determine which overlays are best adapted for use on lumber, how best to attach the overlays, and paintability of overlaid lumber.

OVERLAY MATERIAL

They found that southern pine overlaid on one side would cup as the wood changed moisture content unless the overlay material closely matched the shrinkage properties of wood (fig. 25-11). Among many sheet materials studied, two appeared to satisfy this requirement.

One was **vulcanized fiber**, an unsized, unloaded paper that has been run through a solution of zinc chloride and then washed. They found that a 0.005-inch-thick sheet of this material made from rag furnish had a dimensional movement across the machine direction (i.e., direction the



M-118180

Figure 25-11.—Cupping in southern pine bevel siding overlaid on one side only with resin-impregnated paper compared to similar siding overlaid with vulcanized fiber. (Photo from Heebink 1961.)

paper flowed through the paper forming machine) of about 10 percent when moistened from ovendry to soaked.

Another suitable material was **parchmentized paper**, i.e., paper treated in a sulfuric acid bath to give it toughness and water, weather, and abrasion resistance. Parchmentized paper shrinks even more than vulcanized fiber in the cross machine direction. Both materials made successful overlays if applied so that the machine direction of the overlay sheet paralleled grain direction of the board.

Neither vulcanized fiber nor parchmentized paper has proven entirely satisfactory as a paintable overlay for southern pine lumber, however. Another overlay material—a **resin-impregnated cellulose-fiber sheet**—continues to show promise. Cooper and Barham (1971) have reported favorably on use of such a kraft paper sheet 0.015 to 0.020 inch thick; the sheet contained about 20 percent of water-dispersible phenolic resin added at the beater and fully cured before bonding to the lumber.

From accelerated weathering tests of various resin-impregnated paper overlays applied to Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) plywood, Fahey and Pierce (1971) concluded that phenolic-impregnated paper overlays resist weathering better than overlays impregnated with urea or melamine. Treatments of 30 percent phenolic resin were noticeably more effective than treatments of 20 and 10 percent. Phenolic paper overlays tended to crumble gradually during accelerated weathering. Urea and melamine paper overlays developed fractures and checks which ultimately resulted in delamination or peeling of the paper. Performance was comparable for overlay papers made from spruce (*Picea* sp.) kraft and spruce sulfite pulps. Ammonium chromate, an ultraviolet absorber, applied to the surface of the paper overlays greatly improved resistance to accelerated weathering (Fahey and Pierce 1971).

BOND BETWEEN OVERLAY AND WOOD

In Heebink's (1961) work with overlaid southern pine siding, he bonded vulcanized fiber to boards by cold pressing them for a minimum period of 4 hours at 200 p.s.i., after first spreading the wood surface only with an acid-catalyzed phenol-resin adhesive. He described the spread as "normal." Advantages of this adhesive include exterior durability, attractive light amber color, relatively low cost, and ability to cure at room temperature in a simple press. Cooper and Barham (1971) used a similar cold-setting adhesive to glue vulcanized fiber and resin-impregnated paper overlays to solid wood siding; they used about 33 pounds of glue per thousand square feet of single glueline and a press time of at least 7 hours at 150 p.s.i.

The several-hour press time required is a major deterrent to commercial application of the process. Since 4/4 southern pine lumber frequently exudes pitch—particularly in the vicinity of resin-soaked knots—when pressed into contact with a hot plate, it has not been possible to use hot-press equipment and the cheap, fast-setting glues generally in use in the

southern pine plywood industry. If resin or pitch moves to the interface between board and overlay, the resulting stain mars the appearance of the overlay. It is likely that wide-scale commercial application of paintable overlays to southern pine lumber will be delayed until a rapid and continuous roll laminating process can be developed that transmits no significant amount of heat to board surfaces; the system must be designed, of course, for adhesives with exterior durability. Many of the problems inherent in making and selling overlaid lumber are discussed by Mueller et al. (1970) based on pilot plant experience with ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa* Laws.).

PERFORMANCE OF OVERLAID LUMBER

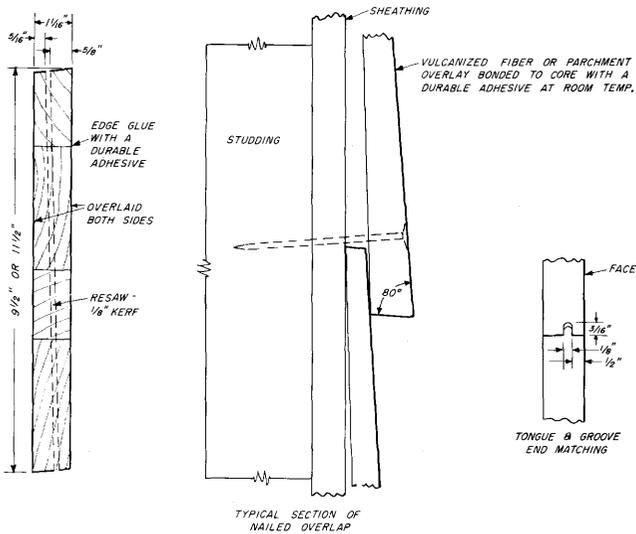
Heebink (1961) reported on No. 2 Common southern pine siding overlaid with 0.005-inch-thick vulcanized fiber and installed on a building in Alabama. Before installation the siding was dipped in a clear, paintable, water-repellant preservative with the intention of inhibiting decay and mold growth. The dip resulted in a waxy and oily deposit on the overlay that made it appear unpaintable, and the siding was washed with turpentine before commercial white lead and oil house paint was applied. Three and one-half years after installation, the paint was in excellent condition, although in some locations mildew growth was heavy.

Cooper and Barham (1971) reported that a resin-impregnated paper overlay outperformed a vulcanized fiber overlay in a 6-year exposure test of eastern cottonwood (*Populus deltoides* Bartr.) siding painted with titanized pure white lead house paint. They noted that almost all the paint flaked from the vulcanized fiber surface, whereas the paint on the kraft overlay remained in a continuous, though eroded, film. In this test, the lumber was dipped for 10 seconds in a 5-percent solution of water-repellent pentachlorophenol¹, stored for two weeks, primed, and given two additional coats of paint.

On the basis of these and other related studies, it is concluded that the paint retention characteristics of flat-grain southern pine siding are improved remarkably by the use of certain paper overlays. In the South, mildewcides should be incorporated in paints designed for application to overlays.

DESIGN OF OVERLAID SIDING

To avoid breaks in the sheet, overlays on lumber siding should be applied to flat, rather than sharply contoured surfaces. For successful application of overlays, lumber must be sound and have virtually no openings in the surface; rough spots will show through, and large knots that check in service will crack the overlay. Economics usually dictate that the overlay be applied on one side only. Figure 25-12 illustrates one system for manufacturing an overlaid, bevel, horizontal siding. The tongue and groove pattern on board ends is designed to reduce distortion at end joints.



M-123454

Figure 25-12.—Details of manufacture and installation of overlaid resawn bevel siding. For a paintable overlay, resin impregnated paper has tested superior to both vulcanized fiber and parchmented paper. (Drawing after Fleischer and Heebink 1964.)

PRECAST COLORED FILMS

The application of colored, precast, flexible, plastic films to lumber and millwork items is a rapidly developing technology, but beyond the scope of this text. Most of the films, which require no painting, are for interior application—but a few have exterior durability.

25-6 PRODUCTS OTHER THAN LUMBER

Various reconstituted or laminated products such as plywood, hardboard, particleboard, signs, and laminated beams present special problems and require special finishes.

PLYWOOD

Successful finishing systems for southern pine plywood begin with protection of the uncoated surface. Plywood should be kept clean and stored prior to use in a cool, dry place protected from windblown rain, exposure to heaters, and direct sunlight. If tarps or plastic covers are used to protect stacked plywood, they should be open at the bottom to permit air circulation and prevent condensation or mold growth.

Finishes are most successful if applied to clean, freshly manufactured plywood; for this reason panel exposure time after erection and before finishing should be minimized. Extended exposure of unfinished panels not only ages surfaces and reduces likelihood of obtaining a successful coating-wood bond, but it also promotes checking; even in dry climates, variation

between day and night humidities can cause sufficient shrinking and swelling to initiate surface checks in plywood.

Veneer for virtually all southern pine plywood is rotary peeled and therefore has flat-grain surfaces with broad bands of latewood. These surfaces do not hold paint as well as edge-grain wood. Moreover, exterior exposure causes more checks in plywood than in lumber because of the lathe checks present on the loose side of face veneers (fig. 19-14); the checks (fig. 25-2) frequently cause paint coatings applied directly on southern pine plywood to deteriorate fairly rapidly when exposed outside.

Face Checking.—Koch (1965) rated face checking in southern pine by Batey's (1955) index, which expresses severity as the product of check frequency per inch and the average check width in inches multiplied by 1,000.

Three-ply, 3/8-inch-thick exterior plywood was hot-press-bonded from veneer cut from eight loblolly pine trees selected to exhibit a range of specific gravity and growth rate. As is customary, the panels were assembled so that the tight side of each face veneer was outermost. Panels were quantitatively evaluated for severity of face checking after several cycles of wetting and drying.

Face checking was minimized by: (1) Reducing the hygroscopicity of the plywood by dipping the panels for 10 seconds in a water repellent. Checking index was 4.4 for treated panels and 12.8 for untreated. (2) Peeling veneer hot and tight rather than cold and loose. Checking index was 5.5 for tight-peeled face veneers and 11.7 for loose-peeled. (3) Using veneer of low specific gravity rather than high. Checking index was 6.9 for low-density faces and 10.4 for high-density faces.

With all the above factors favorable, the average checking index was minimum at 2.4; if all were unfavorable, the checking index was 20.4.

Factors that did not significantly affect severity of face checking were: rate of growth (rings per inch in the veneer); moisture content of the veneer before glue spreading; and proximity of plywood face to hot platen when pressing two panels per opening.

Checking severity in southern pine plywood can be reduced if any changes in panel moisture content are made slowly rather than abruptly. Application of certain **latex emulsion sealers** under conventional paint systems are reported by the American Plywood Association to substantially reduce checking in southern pine plywood.

Because of face checking, southern pine plywood to be painted for exterior exposure serves best if it is first overlaid with stabilized resin-treated paper. Southern pine plywood can also be left to weather naturally, or be stained. Some paint coatings applied directly to the plywood have a short, but perhaps acceptable service life. No clear film-forming finishes are available that perform satisfactorily in exterior exposure on southern pine plywood.

Natural and semiannual finishes.—The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966b) suggests three methods for finishing exterior southern pine

plywood to show the grain. The first method is a dip (30 seconds or longer) or liberal brush treatment with a water-repellent preservative; plywood treated in this manner may require a second application within a year, but need for subsequent applications should be less frequent.

In a second method, color is added to the finish by inclusion of 1 to 2 ounces of pigment (colors-in-oil) per gallon of water-repellant preservative. The third method calls for finishing the plywood with the stain described in the opening paragraphs of section 25-2.

These finishes, applied in one-coat treatments, penetrate the wood and do not form a continuous film that may crack, peel, or blister. As with lumber, plywood given a natural or seminatural finish should be fastened with aluminum or stainless steel nails. With these finishing systems, visible checks will develop in southern pine plywood exposed outside.

In the three foregoing finishing systems, the first step should be liberal application of a water-repellent preservative to panel edges; if panels are to be stained, the repellent should be allowed to dry 72 hours before stain application.

Paint finish on nonoverlaid plywood.—The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966b) suggests the following procedure for painting southern pine plywood.

Before painting, all edges and joints of plywood siding should be brushed with a solution of paintable water-repellent preservative. The treated areas should dry for about 72 hours with good air circulation before painting.

The plywood surface and all edges should then be primed with a non-porous linseed-oil-base paint pigmented with only titanium and lead. This prime coat should not contain zinc oxide pigment, and the film should be thick enough to totally obscure the wood grain pattern. The moisture-repelling properties of aluminum paint also make this an excellent primer for plywood. It is important that the aluminum paint be specifically formulated for use on wood and not for general purposes or metals.

Two additional coats of high-quality house paint should then be applied over the prime coat; they may be of oil, alkyd, or a latex type, but must be compatible with the prime coat. Two days to 2 weeks of drying should be allowed between coats of paint.

Low-luster and porous-type paint systems which permit the capillary flow of water through the film are not recommended for plywood. Frequent wetting and drying of the plywood surface leads to abnormally early checking of the plywood and paint flaking from latewood.

The American Plywood Association recommends application of acrylic latex topcoats (over a compatible nonstaining primer) in preference to oil or alkyd topcoats. Their experience indicates that brush application of paint—particularly the prime coat—yields substantially better results than spray application.

The American Plywood Association employs a 7-month test series to evaluate very-high-performance coatings that can be certified on southern

pine plywood. Since the evaluation program began in 1960, only one brush-applied paint for bare plywood has been certified for exterior use. Best suited for factory application, it is a highly modified urethane system composed of a vinyl-chloride vinyl-acetate vinyl-alcohol copolymer, a castor oil-derived polyol, and a castor oil-derived urethane prepolymer (Legue 1966). The certification specifies a film thickness of 8 mils.

Paint finish for plywood overlaid with resin-treated paper.—Southern pine plywood can be purchased with a resin-impregnated cellulose-fiber sheet overlaid on the surface. The **medium-density overlay** of this type is defined by U. S. Product Standard PS 1-66 (paragraph 3.5.2) as containing not less than 17 percent resin solids for a beater loaded sheet or 22 percent for an impregnated sheet; the resin must be a thermo-setting phenol or melamine type. After application, the sheet must measure not less than 0.012 inch thick. Additional adhesive is required to bond these overlay sheets to plywood. Some manufacturers precoat one side of the overlay sheet with phenolic adhesive; for other overlays, however, it is necessary to spread glue on the plywood prior to hot-pressing the assembly for 5 or 6 minutes.

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966b) suggests that paper-overlaid plywood be painted in the same manner as nonoverlaid plywood, but notes that it can be self-primed successfully in a three-coat system with latex paint without using an oil-base primer. It is not uncommon for a good three-coat paint system to last 10 years on overlaid plywood; this is at least twice the durability of paint applied to nonoverlaid southern pine plywood. For application in the South, a mildewcide should be incorporated in the paint.

Selbo (1969) reported on the durability of southern pine plywood overlaid with a medium-density paper, edge treated with water-repellent preservative, and given a total of two coats of acrylic emulsion paint (self-primed). During 5 years of exposure at Madison, Wis. and Gulfport, Miss., the paint held up well; no face checking or paint flaking occurred. Mold growth, however, darkened the panels somewhat—particularly at the southern site.

Additional information on recommended finishes for overlaid southern pine plywood is available from the American Plywood Association, Tacoma, Wash.

Other coatings for plywood.—There are a variety of dense overlays, precast films, and thick coatings that can be applied to southern pine plywood and that do not require additional painting. The **high-density cellulose fiber sheet** defined by U. S. Product Standard PS 1-66 (paragraph 3.5.1) contains at least 45 percent resin solids; it is the same thickness, and is bonded to plywood in the same manner as the medium-density overlay previously described. It is translucent to opaque and on Douglas-fir plywood is generally used unpainted on industrial panels or concrete forms. As yet, it has been little used on southern pine.

Further information on precast films and thick coatings for plywood may be obtained from the American Plywood Association, Tacoma, Wash.

HARDBOARD⁴

Horizontal lap siding is the major hardboard product designed for exterior exposure. Most is sold factory primed for field application of topcoats, but some is completely prefinished in the factory. Because coatings are applied before shipment from the factory, hardboard finishes are judged not only by their durability in exterior exposure, but also by their scuff resistance and resistance to self adherence (**blocking**) when packed face to face in bundles.

Since finishes for hardboard develop failures of a somewhat different nature than those of lumber or plywood on exterior exposure, special test procedures may be used for evaluation. The drip-edge of hardboard siding—that is, the lower edge of horizontally applied siding—is evaluated for water resistance by a water soak and air-dry cycle. **Chalking, color change, fiber popping** (caused by fibers that on exposure rise sufficiently above the board surface to show through the paint film), and **edge cracking** may be evaluated by a 4-hour boil in water followed by 20 hours in a weatherometer; thirty 24-hour cycles are usually sufficient to produce a high degree of the foregoing failures; data from this severe test, while useful, have given only fair correlation with exterior weathering data.

Forty-five-degree, south-facing exterior exposure tests in south Florida can provide a fairly quick (6 to 12 months) estimate of comparative performance of prime coats, even though failure of the paint film by cracking normally takes 12 to 24 months. **Holdout** of the prime coat is measured by observing the degree to which a semigloss linseed oil house paint penetrates the primer; areas of low gloss visible 4 to 8 hours after topcoat application indicate poor holdout.

Substrate.—Hardboards to be coated for exterior exposure should be dimensionally stable, with good internal bond, and with a smooth exterior surface. Boards composed of fine fibers are generally less porous, easier to coat, and less subject to fiber popping than boards of coarse fibers. Good coatings will not protect poor boards from failure on exposure.

Typically, the remanufacture of hardboard lap siding begins by ripping large sheets into strips 1 foot wide and 16 feet long. The strips are then brush cleaned of surface dust and loose fibers. If the cut edges are rough, they may be burnished by heat or mechanical action in preparation for the prime coat. Hardboards prone to edge failure may receive one or more edge coats of sealer applied by spray, flowcoater, brush, or roller before they are primed.

Methods of applying prime coat.—Factory-applied prime coats are

⁴ The information under this heading is condensed from Gluck (1971) by permission of D. G. Gluck and the Forest Products Research Society.

usually 1-1/4 to 1-1/2 mils thick. If two coats of house paint are field applied, the resultant dry film thickness will be close to 4 mils—the minimum requirement of Federal Housing Authority standards.

Two methods of applying prime coats to board surfaces are widely used. **Roll coaters** are simple to operate, and do a good job of smoothing excess sealer from a prior edge-priming step, but cannot lay down thick films. They also tend to impart an undesirable texture to the film. To build up the required film thickness and minimize texturing, roll coaters may be used in series. For rough, porous boards, a roll turning in opposition to board flow forces paint into irregularities and produces a smooth surface; such a reverse coater must be followed by additional coaters to build up required film thickness.

Curtain coaters, in which boards pass through a continuous curtain of primer that falls from a narrow slot, are used to apply a thick, smooth film. Because film thickness is controlled primarily by the speed with which the board passes through the curtain, speed-up and slow-down conveyors are needed upstream and downstream of the coater—a disadvantage because of the space required. Also, curtain coaters cannot apply paint films much thinner than about 3 mils.

Spray and brush applications are possible, but coating stations tend to be untidy and film thickness is difficult to control.

Following application of the prime coat, boards pass into an oven. Typically the oven has an initial section in which hot air circulates to evaporate most of the solvents; a second section with infrared heaters dries or cures the coating. The siding is then cooled and packaged—sometimes with a protective sheet between boards to minimize board-to-board adherence, pressure marking, scuffing, and burnishing during shipment.

Primers.—**Oil-modified alkyd resins** are the principal primers used because they adhere well to hardboard and are reasonably durable in exterior exposure. They are also cheap and easily handled in coating equipment. Moreover, most common house paints adhere well to alkyd primers, and holdout is usually good.

Oil-modified alkyds do not thermoset to any significant degree during an oven bake, but are only freed of solvent; oven temperature is therefore not critical. Since chemical cross-linking takes place in the days and weeks following application, however, the coating film may be somewhat thermoplastic when the siding is packaged—a condition favorable to self adhesion, i.e., blocking.

Formulations with low oil content and alkyd resins of high molecular weight (i.e., harder resins) and high pigmentation levels aid in reducing tendency to block. Some primers contain small amounts of heat-reactive urea or melamine resins to increase initial hardness. Unfortunately, these formulation changes aggravate a basic deficiency of alkyd primers—mediocre performance in tests of drip-edge durability. Moreover, formulations modified to make primers harder result in a coating with diminished

flexibility to accommodate board expansion and contraction with change in moisture content.

Not in wide use, but under evaluation, are **acrylic** and **polyvinyl acetate emulsions**; these coatings have good film integrity during exterior exposure and also give excellent protection to the drip edge. In contrast to oil-modified alkyd resin primers, which require low-molecular-weight polymers for ease of solubility, water-based primers can use tough, high-molecular-weight polymers in the form of emulsions. The latex paints are flexible and do not crack at the drip edge. Except for rapid chalking, they equal or better the exterior performance of alkyds.

These water-based primers are simple to handle in the factory due to elimination of solvents. Once partially dried on equipment, however, the high-molecular-weight polymers are difficult to remove. Moreover, emulsion primers are usually not roll coated because of texturing, so that application is largely limited to curtain coaters.

In contrast to the alkyds, water-based primers are fully cross-linked in the oven and no further reaction takes place after packaging. If not fully cured in the oven, emulsion paints tend to block severely; oven temperatures are therefore critical and must be monitored constantly.

Topcoats for factory-primed siding.—Hardboard siding that has been prime coated in the factory should be topcoated soon after the siding is erected. Two coats of topcoat are preferable to one. Paints used can be the same as those for lumber or plywood. Because of buckling caused by longitudinal swelling, it is important that hardboard siding be equilibrated at service humidity and temperature before attachment to walls.

Prefinished siding.—Factory-prefinished hardboard siding is being manufactured with 5- to 10-year guarantees against certain types of paint and substrate failures. Dry film thicknesses on these factory-finished boards are less than those customary with ordinary house paints; they range from 1-½ to 3 mils. The formulator of field-applied house paints has relatively few resins or oils with which to work because the coating must dry by water evaporation or oxidation under ambient conditions. In the factory, where finishes can be oven-dried, and film thickness and drying conditions controlled, resins can be used which have inherently better durability. The relatively slow acceptance of prefinished hardboard siding can be partially attributed to difficulty in developing a satisfactory total system including substrate, coating, installation technique, and the accessory coated nails, corners, joint covers, touchup paint, and caulking compound.

Prefinishes under test for hardboard siding include alkyds, acrylics, polyvinyl chlorides, polyesters, and silicone copolymers. **Alkyd** prefinishes are similar to the primers previously described, with minor formulation changes to gain better durability. They are easy to handle in the factory and cheap, but tend to pick up dirt and change color. At this time the alkyd coatings appear the best candidates for economical prefinishes.

Most thermoset **acrylic emulsion** prefinishes have given exceptionally

good performance; some formulations, however, have shown significant chalking or edge cracking after limited tests (1½ years) on an exposure fence. **Polyvinyl chloride** solvent coatings offer easy application and low-temperature drying, but have shown substantial chalking and color changes on exposure panels. A **polyester** coating, after 2 years of exposure, has shown no sign of chalking, edge cracking, or color change; in other tests, however, some formulations have chalked badly. In short, test data are still too limited to reach definitive conclusions.

Silicone copolymers have been proposed as 20-year finishes; their test-fence performance has been outstanding in every respect except that edge cracking appears worse than that of other prefinishes. This weakness, unless rectified, would appear to preclude their further consideration.

The diversity of prefinishes under test is an indication of the unsettled state of the art. Development of new precast films, hot melt coatings, and extruded coatings, plus new methods of radiation, microwave, and ultra-violet curing will likely alter present finishing techniques.

Readers desiring additional information can write the American Hardboard Association, Chicago, Ill., who, in cooperation with the National Paint, Varnish, and Lacquer Association, are working to improve the performance of exterior finishes for hardboard.

PARTICLEBOARD

While particleboards can be fabricated with phenol formaldehyde resin, allowing more severe exterior exposure, most southern pine particleboard is designed for interior use and is assembled with urea-formaldehyde glues. (See sec. 23-6.)

Published data on finishes for particleboards designed for some degree of exterior exposure are meager. Since the technology for such coatings is developing rapidly, readers should consult the National Particleboard Association, Washington, D. C. for current recommendations.

For those readers interested in interior coatings, Rundle and Cheo (1969) point out that hot melt coatings on particleboard have the advantages of low fire hazard during application, rapid setting, excellent moisture barrier properties, ability to fill large defects, and low cost. Coker (1968) described systems for painting and lacquering particleboard, and Enzenberger (1968) discussed the problem of overlaying particleboard with resin-impregnated paper. Additional information on particleboard finishes for interior exposure can be obtained from the National Particleboard Association, Washington, D.C.

SIGNS

Southern pine exterior plywood provided with a medium-density overlay is satisfactory for signs for exterior exposure. Signs should be primed and given one—preferably two—coats of topcoat

paint as described under the heading PLYWOOD in this section. (A brown background paint reported to give good results with a single coat applied to medium-density overlay is Rustoleum No. 792 brown enamel.) For rustic appearance and durability, letters can be routed into the coated plywood and letters smoothed by light sanding. The letters can then be painted with a high-gloss alkyd enamel. (A yellow alkyd enamel reported to give good results is that manufactured by Cosden Chemical Coatings Corp. of Berkeley, N.J.; for use, it was thinned 10 percent with synthetic enamel thinner. Edges of signs should be liberally brushed with a paintable water-repellent preservative, dried for 72 hours, primed, and given two coats of topcoat paint.

LAMINATED BEAMS

Southern pine laminated beams, if made from lumber pressure treated with appropriate preservatives (see sec. 22-1), can be safely exposed outdoors in all climates.

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1966c) has recommended procedures for painting outside wood surfaces, including laminated southern pine beams; an abstract of these recommendations can be found in section 25-3 under the subhead PAINT SYSTEMS.

25-7 INTERIOR FINISHES

Southern pine lumber and millwork readily accept a wide variety of finishes designed for interior use. Information on opaque paints for interior walls, ceilings, and floors is available from numerous paint manufacturers. Readers desiring knowledge of characteristics and properties necessary for good durability and low maintenance of interior finishes should find Leary's (1970) review useful. The discussion following is limited to semitransparent finishes for pine wall paneling and clear finishes for southern pine floors.

SEMITRANSSPARENT FINISH FOR WALL PANELING

Southern pine has an attractive, warm, natural golden color. Because it tends to darken on exposure to light, however, a finish lighter than natural is frequently desired for interior wall paneling. Such a finish can be obtained by first applying a white or light-colored paint of very thin consistency made by mixing enamel undercoater, flat wall paint, or even ordinary house paint with about twice its volume of a mixture of equal parts of boiled linseed oil and turpentine or mineral spirits. Another suitable mixture is wood sealer with enough added color-in-oil or color-in-japan to give the required color and opacity. For a fast-drying material, lacquer enamel may be mixed with twice its volume of a clear lacquer. The paint-based coloring materials should be spread on the wood surface with

a mop, brush, or spray gun, allowed to stand 5 to 10 minutes, and then wiped with clean rags, burlap, or cotton waste to remove excess material and leave only what sinks into the grain of the wood. Lacquer must be wiped immediately after applying, before it has time to harden. In wiping, the first strokes should be across the grain of the wood and the last strokes parallel to the grain. After the coloring material has had time to dry, further protective finish, such as clear wood sealer, varnish, or lacquer, may be applied according to the type of finish desired (USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1967, p. 7).

CLEAR FLOOR FINISH

Many years ago interior wood floors were commonly finished with repeated applications of hot linseed oil; each application was buffed by hand. The finish is durable, does not show scratches, and is readily patched at places of maximum wear without refinishing the floor. In time, the finish darkens; since the finish penetrates a substantial layer of wood, the darkening effect is less readily remedied than darkening of a superficial finish. For this reason, and because of the labor of application, the old oil finish has largely been replaced by shellac, varnish, and floor-seal finishes (Browne 1953).

Regardless of the finish selected for a new structure, floors should be protected by heavy paper from the time they are laid until all other interior work has been completed. Vertical grain southern pine flooring accepts and holds finish better—and also wears longer and more evenly—than flat-grain. Finishing of southern pine floors commences with preparation of the floor by sanding.

Sanding.—The sanding of a floor prior to its finishing is best performed by a skilled specialist operating a well-maintained power sander of rugged design. In sanding, the floor should be gone over several times—first across the grain and then in the direction of the grain. On the first traverse, No. 2 sandpaper is generally used, with No. 1/2 paper used on the second pass; on southern pine floors it may or may not be practical to use No. 0 paper on a third pass. After the last sanding, the floor may be buffed with No. 3 steel wool. After the floor has been sanded, it should be swept clean and carefully inspected by looking across the floor toward light from a window; any blemishes will appear greatly accentuated when the finish is applied (Browne 1953).

Shellac.—Shellac is used chiefly because it dries so rapidly that a floor may be finished or refinished and put back in service within 24 hours. Shellac has less resistance to wear and water than varnish, and should be cleaned and renewed before traffic has worn through to bare wood. Where wax is used over shellac to improve durability and cleanability, the shellac is often limited to one or two coats, which are sanded or buffed so that the shellac acts more as a seal to support the wax than as a coating (Browne 1953).

Shellac for floors should be purchased in the form of 5-pound cut shellac and should be pure shellac unadulterated with cheaper resins. It should either be freshly manufactured or put up in glass containers. Shellac that has stood long in contact with metal may contain iron or salts that discolor southern pine by reacting with its tannins. The correct thinner for shellac is 188-proof No. 1 denatured alcohol. For application, 5-pound cut shellac should be thinned with 1 quart of thinner per gallon. It should be applied with a wide brush that will cover three boards of strip flooring at one stroke and should be put on with long, even strokes, taking care to join the laps smoothly. The first coat on bare wood requires 15 to 20 minutes to dry. It should then be rubbed lightly with steel wool or sandpaper and the floor swept clean. A second coat should be applied, allowed to dry 2 or 3 hours, then gone over with steel wool or sandpaper, swept, and a third coat applied. The floor should not be put back in service until next morning if possible but may be walked upon in about 3 hours after finishing, if necessary. If wax is to be used, it should not be applied less than 8 hours after the last coat of shellac and should be a paste wax, not a water-emulsion wax, since water may turn the shellac white (Browne 1953).

Varnish.—Varnish, which may be based on phenolic, alkyd, epoxy, or polyurethane resins, gives a highly lustrous floor finish that is more resistant to water spotting than shellac. Like shellac, it is easily kept clean by sweeping and dry mopping.

Methods of applying floor varnish are usually described on the labels of the containers. Only floor varnishes should be used for floor finishing; varnishes made for other purposes and the so-called all-purpose varnishes are not as durable. At least two coats are needed over paste filler or over a first coat of shellac, and at least three coats where the varnish is applied directly to the bare wood. The floor should be clean when varnish is applied, and the brush must be clean to avoid leaving grains and lumps in the coating. The room should be kept at 70° F. or warmer, and plenty of fresh air should be provided, since oxygen is taken from the air when varnish dries. Low temperature and high relative humidity greatly retard the drying of varnish.

Varnish, even the quick-drying kind, requires longer intervals between coats than shellac and remains tender for some time; floors newly coated should be kept out of service for several days. As with shellac, varnish floor finishes should be renewed before they wear through to bare wood. Failure to do so will necessitate complete removal before refinishing if uniform color is to be achieved (Browne 1953).

Floor seals.—Specially compounded floor seals, the most widely used finish for residential wood floors, are being used to achieve—with less labor—finishes somewhat comparable to the old linseed oil finish. They may be regarded as thin varnishes or bodied drying oils prepared so that they penetrate less deeply into the wood than unbodied drying oils. Floor-seal finishes require more maintenance, but are more readily refinished, than varnish finishes.

Manufacturers' directions for applying floor seals vary widely and in some cases are very inadequate. In general, floor seals may be brushed on with a wide brush or mopped on with a squeegee or lamb's wool applicator, working first across the grain of the wood and then smoothing out in the direction of the grain. After an interval of 15 minutes to 2 hours, depending upon the characteristics of the seal, the excess is wiped off with clean rags or a rubber squeegee. For best results the floor should then be buffed with No. 2 steel wool; those willing to sacrifice something in appearance and service to save labor omit the buffing. If possible, the buffing should be done by a rugged power-driven machine designed specifically for buffing with steel wool. The next best procedure is buffing with steel wool pads attached to the bottom of a sanding machine. The buffing may be done by hand if a machine is not available. One application of seal may be sufficient, but a second application is recommended for new floors or floors that have just been sanded. The floor should be swept clean before making the second application. A coat of wax completes the finishing system (Browne 1953).

Floor maintenance.—Wood floors with fine finishes should never be scrubbed with water or unnecessarily brought in contact with water. Sweeping or dry mopping should be all that is necessary for routine cleaning. A soft cotton floor mop kept barely dampened with a mixture of 3 parts of kerosene and 1 part of paraffin oil is excellent for dry mopping. When the mop becomes dirty, it should be washed in hot soapy water, dried, and again dampened with the mixture of kerosene and paraffin oil. Exceptional patches of dirt that cannot be removed in this way may be removed by rubbing lightly with fine steel wool moistened with turpentine. Where the finish is a floor seal, badly soiled spots, such as gray spots where water has been allowed to stand on the floor for a time, can be sanded by hand, patched with seal, and buffed with a pad of steel wool (Browne 1953).

For the interested reader, the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1961) has published a Handbook further describing wood floors for dwellings.

25-8 LITERATURE CITED

- | | |
|--|--|
| Anonymous.
1969. New finish for rough sawn lumber tested. <i>Forest Prod. J.</i> 19(11): 8B. | Antlfinger, G. J.
1967. Vinyl chloride-acrylic polymers as exterior coatings. <i>J. Paint Technol.</i> 39: 300-309. |
| Allyn, G.
1961. Acrylic emulsion house paint. <i>Off. Dig.</i> 33: 1615-1617. | Ashton, H. E.
1967. Clear finishes for exterior wood. <i>J. Paint Technol.</i> 39(507): 212-224. |
| Allyn, G.
1966. Acrylic primer for yellow southern pine. <i>Paint and Varn. Prod.</i> 56(7): 35-37, 39. | Batey, T. E.
1955. Minimizing face checking of plywood. <i>Forest Prod. J.</i> 5: 277-285. |

- Beardsley, H. P., and Kennedy, R. J.
1967. Performance of exterior paints based on a vinyl acetate-ethylene emulsion vehicle. *J. Paint Technol.* 39: 88-98.
- Bilek, G., Hughes, H. J., and Stephenson, H. B.
1967. Study of lead pigments in water thinned prime coats for wood. *J. Paint Technol.* 39: 329-333.
- Black, J. M.
1969. Wood finishing: experimental chromate finish. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0134, 2 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Bohlen, J. A.
1963. Latex paints on southern yellow pine. *Off. Dig.* 35(466): 1176-1187.
- Bohlen, J. A.
1967. Latex paints on southern yellow pine. *J. Paint Technol.* 39: 693-699.
- Browne, F. L.
1952. Wood siding left to weather naturally. *Architect. Rec.* pp. 197-199. (November)
- Browne, F. L.
1953. Finishing of wood floors. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1962, 8 pp.
- Browne, F. L.
1959. Understanding the mechanisms of deterioration of house paint. *Forest Prod. J.* 9: 417-426.
- Browne, F. L.
1960. Wood siding left to weather naturally. *South. Lumberman* 201(2513): 141-143.
- Browne, F. L., and Simonson, H. C.
1957. The penetration of light into wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 7: 308-314.
- California Redwood Association.
1962. Wood and wood finishes in exterior use: an annotated bibliography of significant studies of coatings, treatments, and substrate modification. Calif. Redwood Assoc., 90 pp. San Francisco.
- Coker, E. E.
1968. Painting and lacquering of particleboard. *In* Particleboard manufacture and application, pp. 148-155. (Leo Mitlin, ed.) Ivy Hatch, Sevenoaks, Kent, U.K.: Pressmedia Books Ltd.
- Cooper, G. A., and Barham, S. H.
1971. The performance of a house paint on two overlays on cottonwood siding. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(3): 53-56.
- Côté, W. A., and Robinson, R. G.
1968. A comparative study of wood. Wood coating interaction using incident fluorescence and transmitted fluorescence microscopy. *J. Paint Technol.* 40(525): 427-432.
- Enzensberger, W.
1968. Finishing chipboard with resin impregnated paper. *In* Particleboard manufacture and application, pp. 138-145. (Leo Mitlin, ed.) Ivy Hatch, Sevenoaks, Kent, U.K.: Pressmedia Books Ltd.
- Fahey, D. J., and Pierce, D. S.
1971. Resistance of resin-impregnated paper overlays to accelerated weathering. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(11): 30-38.
- Fleischer, H. O., and Heebink, B. G.
1964. Overlays for lumber—an old product in a new dress. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-035, 11 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Gluck, D. G.
1971. Selection and field testing of coatings for exterior hardboard products. *Forest Prod. J.* 21(11): 24-29.
- Golden Gate Society for Coatings Technology.
1967. Exterior durability of catalyzed clear coatings on redwood. *J. Paint Technol.* 39(514): 655-662.
- Heebink, B. G.
1961. Paper overlaid lumber. *Forest Prod. J.* 11(4): 167-175.

- Heebink, T. B.
1970. Performance of exterior natural wood finishes in the Pacific Northwest. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(3): 31-34.
- Kalnins, M. A., Stellink, C., and Tarkow, H.
1966. Light-induced free radicals in wood. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-58, 8 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Koch, P.
1965. Minimizing face checking. *Forest Prod. J.* 15(12): 495-499.
- Leary, P. E.
1970. Interior coatings—maintainability and durability. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(12): 36-39.
- Legue, N.
1966. Thermosetting vinyl reaction product for use on exterior wood products. *J. Paint Technol.* 38(501): 620-626.
- McMillin, C. W.
1969. Performance evaluation of stained, rough-sawn southern pine siding. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(2): 51-52.
- Martens, C. R.
1964. Emulsion and water-soluble paints and coatings. 160 pp. N.Y.: Reinhold Publ. Corp.
- Martens, C. R.
1966. Review of latex and water-soluble coatings. *J. Paint Technol.* 38: 46A-49A.
- Miniutti, V. P.
1964. Preliminary observations—microscale changes in cell structure at softwood surfaces during weathering. *Forest Prod. J.* 14(12): 571-576.
- Miniutti, V. P.
1967. Microscopic observations of ultraviolet irradiated and weathered softwood surfaces and clear coatings. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-74, 32 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Miniutti, V. P.
1969. Reflected-light and scanning electron microscopy of ultraviolet irradiated redwood surfaces. *In Proc. Engis Stereoscan Colloquium*, pp. 135-147.
- Mueller, L. A., Barger, R. L., and Bourke, A.
1970. Roll laminating fiber overlays on low-grade ponderosa pine: a progress report. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(9): 75-80.
- National Paint, Varnish, and Lacquer Association.
1960. *Mildew. Nat. Paint, Varn., and Lacquer Assoc., Inc., Circ. 786*, 6 pp. Wash., D.C.
- Nylén, P., and Sunderland, E.
1965. *Modern surface coatings*. 750 pp. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Philadelphia Society for Paint Technology.
1967. Ultraviolet light absorbers in clear coatings for wood. *J. Paint Technol.* 39(515): 736-751.
- Pierce, P. E., and Holsworth, R. M.
1966. The mechanical properties and performance of wood primers. *J. Paint Technol.* 38: 584-590.
- Rothstein, E. C.
1967. Compatibility and reactivity of UV absorbers in clear wood coatings. *J. Paint Technol.* 39(513): 621-628.
- Rundle, V. A., and Cheo, Y. C.
1969. Hot melt coatings for wood products. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(9): 73-79.
- Schneider, M. H., and Côté, W. A.
1967. Studies of wood and coating interactions using fluorescence microscopy and pyrolysis gas-liquid chromatography. *J. Paint Technol.* 39(511): 465-471.
- Selbo, M. L.
1969. Performance of southern pine plywood during five years exposure to weather. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(8): 56-60.
- Tarkow, H., Feist, W. C., and Sunderland, C. F.
1966. Interaction of wood with polymeric materials, penetration versus molecular size. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(10): 61-65.
- Thompson, W. S.
1968. Permeability and weathering properties of film-forming materials used in wood finishing. *Forest Prod. Util. Lab. Res. Rep. 4*, 32 pp. Miss. State Univ., State College.

- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1961. Wood floors for dwellings. USDA Agr. Handbook 204, 44 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1966a. Surface characteristics of wood as they affect durability of finishes. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-57, 60 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1966b. Wood finishing: finishing exterior plywood. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0133, 3 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1966c. Wood finishing: painting outside wood surfaces. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0123, 3 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1967. Bleaching wood. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0165, 9 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1968. Wood finishing: water-repellent preservatives. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0124, 7 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1970a. Forest Products Laboratory natural finish. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-046 rev., 7 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1970b. Wood finishing: blistering, peeling, and cracking of house paints from moisture. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0125, 7 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Werthan, S.
1961. Exterior latex paints for wood substrates. Off. Dig. 33: 1053-1072.
- Werthan, S.
1963. A current look at exterior house paints. Off. Dig. 35: 671-690.
- Zicherman, J. B.
1969. Painting of southern pine—a review. Forest Prod. J. 19(4): 44-51.

26

Burning

CONTENTS

	Page
26-1 IGNITION OF WOOD	1370
26-2 COMBUSTION REACTIONS	1377
COMBUSTION EQUATIONS	1378
FUEL ANALYSIS	1378
AIR REQUIREMENT	1380
STAGES IN THE COMBUSTION OF BARK AND WOOD	1381
26-3 HEATING VALUE	1382
USABLE HEAT CONTENT	1382
26-4 STEAM GENERATORS	1383
EFFICIENCY	1383
ECONOMICS OF BARK-FIRED POWER PLANTS	1385
BARK SUPPLY AND TRANSPORT	1386
EQUIPMENT	1387
CONTROL OF EMISSIONS OF CHAR	1394
<i>Flue gas-cleaning equipment</i>	1397
WOOD BASED FUELS OTHER THAN BARK ...	1398
<i>Hog fuel, sawdust, and shavings</i>	1398
<i>Sander dust</i>	1400
<i>Lignin</i>	1402
26-5 BYPRODUCTS FROM BARK COMBUSTION	1403
26-6 WASTE INCINERATORS	1405
26-7 DOMESTIC FIREPLACES, STOVES, AND FURNACES	1406
26-8 LITERATURE CITED	1406

26

Burning¹

The United States is on the threshold of the most rapid growth of electrical energy consumption in its history. One authority (Gambis 1970b) predicts that during the next 30 years it must build more than 10 times the generating capacity acquired since the first commercial electrical power became available in 1903. By 1990, according to this prediction, the country will have about five times the generating capacity in existence in 1970. Total consumption of fuels for power generation will therefore also rise sharply (fig. 26-1), and the industry probably will vigorously seek additional sources of fuel.

Both wood and bark from southern pine trees are good fuels and have been much used to generate heat, steam, and electrical power in the pine mills of the South. In the years 1950-1970, however, most waste wood became more valuable for pulp and other products than for fuel. Chipped wood could be sold for more than \$6/ton at the mill, chipping headrigs (see sec. 19-6) reduced sawdust production, and the use of sawdust for fiber products increased. It became economical for mills requiring moderate power (up to about 1,500 hp.) to sell their wood residue, shut down their steam boilers, and purchase electrical power from larger and more efficient oil-, gas-, or coal-fired utility plants; steam required for dry kilns was then either produced in small, gas-fired boilers or eliminated in favor of direct-gas-fired kilns.

Bark from southern pine trees, however, has less economic value; in the years prior to 1970 huge quantities were burned in waste incinerators without thought of energy recovery. As noted in section 2-1, annual consumption of southern pine wood is expected to rise to about 7 billion cu. ft. by the year 2000; accompanying this quantity of wood will be about 0.7 billion cu. ft. of bark, i.e., at least 20 million tons if the bark is half water by weight (10 million tons oven-dry). Because of national concern over air pollution, it is likely that the practice of incinerating bark in waste burners will be curtailed or discontinued.

Bark finds its way into a number of industrial products. These uses will increase, but probably not very fast. By present lights, the most promising way of disposing of large volumes of bark is to make fuel of it. Some wood-using plants currently burn bark in order to generate their

¹ Secs. 26-2, 26-3, 26-4, and 26-5 are taken with some modification from Koch and Mullen (1971) and from: Mullen, J. F. Controlled burning of southern pine wood and bark for steam generation. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-5.143 dated October 9, 1970.

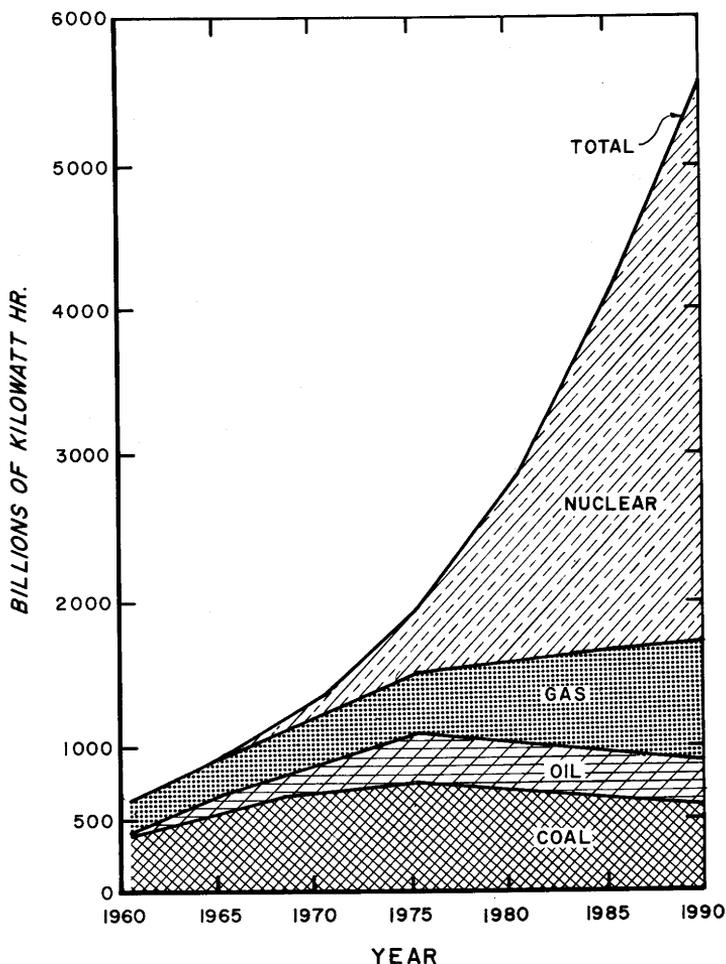


Figure 26-1.—The top or total line of this chart represents the forecasted generation of electricity in thermal plants of the United States; the total is based on preliminary data of the 1970 National Power Survey by the Federal Power Commission. The shaded portions represent Gambs' forecast of electrical power generation according to type of fuel. Some authorities do not envision such early and massive development of nuclear plants. (Drawing after Gambs 1970b.)

own electricity, but the investment in equipment is so heavy that all but the biggest firms find it cheaper to purchase power. Large electrical generating plants, with their huge and reasonably constant demands for fuel, may be able to burn bark economically.

Other fuels derived from woody materials include charcoal, producer gas, and methyl and ethyl alcohol; they are discussed briefly in chapter 28. Lignin, a byproduct of the kraft pulping industry, is also a fuel of industrial importance, and its combustion is briefly described in section 26-4.

26-1 IGNITION OF WOOD

The voluminous literature on thermal degradation of wood and its components has been reviewed by Beall and Eickner (1970); literature on the mechanism of thermal degradation of cellulose has been reviewed by MacKay (1967). Only a few citations pertinent to the ignition of southern pine wood will be mentioned here as an introduction to a discussion of combustion.

In brief, the literature contains three distinct definitions of ignition temperature:

- The exothermic reaction point—the temperature at which the rate of heat dissipation exceeds the rate of heat absorption—resulting in eventual flaming or glowing if in an atmosphere that will support combustion; when wood is analyzed on a differential scanning calorimeter, this point is observable as an endothermic peak.
- The temperature at which a glowing wire or pilot light will cause flaming ignition of the combustible gases evolving from heated wood.
- The auto-ignition point, at which the test specimen ignites and burns. Auto-ignition takes place at temperatures above either the flame point or the exothermic reaction point.

General texts, such as Stamm (1964, p. 291) report the exothermic reaction point for spruce (green or oven-dried) as $273^{\circ} \pm 2.5^{\circ}$ C. Kollmann and Côté (1968, p. 151) report flaming ignition of evolved gases at 225° to 260° C. and a burning point for wood at 260° to 290° C. Much wider ranges in the temperatures of these thermal transitions have been reported by other researchers.

Browne (1958) defined the general course of thermal degradation and described four reaction zones that develop parallel to the heated surface when wood is heated in air.

Zone A, to 200° C.: water vapor, formic acid, acetic acid, and possibly carbon dioxide are evolved. Charring may eventually occur at temperatures as low as 95° C.

Zone B, 200° to 280° C.: the reaction becomes exothermic between 150° and 260° C. With sufficient time—and under favorable conditions—ignition is possible.

Zone C, 280° to 500° C.: ignitable gases are evolved and block oxygen from the wood surface, thereby preventing ignition. The forming charcoal has lower thermal conductivity than wood; thus heat conduction to the center of the wood—and therefore attainment of the exothermic reaction point—is delayed. Surface temperatures high enough for spontaneous combustion have been reported over the entire range of Zone C.

Zone D, above 500° C.: charcoal glows.

Beall (1968) observed weight losses when 50-mg. samples of ground southern pine wood were heated at 5.5° C. per minute in oxygen flowing at 500 ml./min. In contrast with other softwoods tested, extraction of southern pine changed degradation behavior very little; the following data show the temperatures by which weight losses of 10, 50, and 90 percent had occurred in southern pine.

<u>Weight loss</u>	<u>Unextracted</u>	<u>Extracted</u>
<i>Percent</i>	----- °C. -----	
10 -----	277	276
50 -----	313	314
90 -----	430	430

Beall observed that unextracted southern pine reached a maximum decomposition rate of 5.2 mg./min. at 300° C.; maximum rate for extracted wood was 4.9 mg./min. at 290° C.

Fons (1950) analyzed the effects of initial temperature, moisture content, and size of wood on time to ignition. He heated small cylinders (5-1/8 inches in length and of various diameters less than 1/2-inch) of ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa* Laws.) at constant temperatures in the range 443° to 704° C. According to Fons, flame may appear in a mass of material at a furnace temperature of 427° C. (800° F.) or higher. Differences in the initial temperature of the sample (from 10° to 66° C.) did not affect results, but moisture content significantly increased time to ignition. At ignition, the surface temperature was 343° C. (650° F.) for a 3/8-inch-diameter specimen heated at 621° C. (1,150° F.).

Matson et al. (1959) surveyed information on ignition temperatures below 300° C. They observed that solid wood itself does not burn directly; thermal decomposition products and flammable vapors react with the oxygen in air to burn. After these volatiles are driven off, the residual charcoal reacts with the air to produce heat by glowing combustion; little flame is generated. They reviewed a study in which oven-dry specimens of wood (1-1/4 by 1-1/4 by 4 inches) were heated at a constant temperature in a furnace; the time delay until a pilot light 1/2-inch above the specimens ignited the evolving gases was measured. For longleaf pine, the results were as follows.

<u>Temperature</u>	<u>Time delay to ignition</u>
°C.	<i>Min.</i>
157 -----	No ignition within 40 min.
180 -----	14.3
200 -----	11.8
300 -----	2.3
400 -----	.5

As reported by Matson et al. (1959), the National Bureau of Standards observed ignition temperatures of shortleaf and longleaf pine to be

228° to 230° C. respectively; in their test, shavings were heated in a glass test tube in the presence of a measured flow of heated air.

Graf (1949) heated both hardwoods and softwoods (not including southern pine) in the form of 2-1/4-inch matchsticks bundled together to a total weight of 7 to 13 g. Specimens were at 7-percent moisture content or less. In an electric oven with air flowing at 0.05 or 0.2 cu. ft./min., they were heated at a rate between 4° and 30° F./hour; ignition temperatures between 423° and 570° F. (217° and 299° C.) were observed. The interdependence of sample weight, air flow, and heating rate on ignition temperature was discussed on page 42: “. . . samples of smaller mass, tested at slow heating rates and high air flow rates, permitted an excessive amount of combustible material to escape into the air with the result that instead of ignition, a slow gasification and carbonization took place. The faster heating rate gave less time for combustible vapors and gases to escape while lower air flow rates carried less away. When the larger samples were used, there was enough material present to cause ignition even at low heating rates and high air flow rates”.

Using ponderosa pine sapwood (0.16 by 46 by 77 mm.) in thermogravimetric analysis (TGA), and 5 g. of 0.25-mm. ground particles for differential thermal analysis (DTA), Browne and Tang (1962) studied pyrolysis, i.e., chemical decomposition by heat in the absence of air. Cellulose was completely pyrolyzed at 400° C., while at the same temperature, lignin was 70 percent unvaporized. This they explained as due in part to the less complex polymeric structure of cellulose. From DTA, lignin showed an exotherm at 415° C.; cellulose had a sharp endotherm at 350° C. and a large exotherm at 470° C. For wood, there was a valley between exotherms at 340° and 440° C. due to the cellulose endotherm at 350° C. Most of the weight loss in wood occurred in the exothermic region between the two peaks (β_1 and β_2 of fig. 26-2).

In tests of loblolly pine (saturated and at 10-percent moisture content), Johnson and Koch (1972) placed cubes of extracted and unextracted earlywood and latewood measuring 1, 2, and 3 mm.—end grain down—on the sample pan of a differential scanning calorimeter (DSC)², and then heated the pan at constant rates (10° and 20° C./min.) from 150° to 513° C.; the cubes were confined under a glass cover with room-temperature atmospheric air circulated at 40 ml./min. to purge decomposition products and maintain a uniform atmosphere. By this means, only one face of the cube was heated directly. Recorded temperatures were those of the sample holder; these temperatures were not necessarily equal to average cube temperature. Endothermic and exothermic reaction points, temperatures at which glowing ignition occurred, and duration of glow were observed. Time to glow and duration of glow were also measured

² Descriptions of the manner in which the DSC functions can be found in O'Neil (1964), Watson et al. (1964), and Koch (1969).

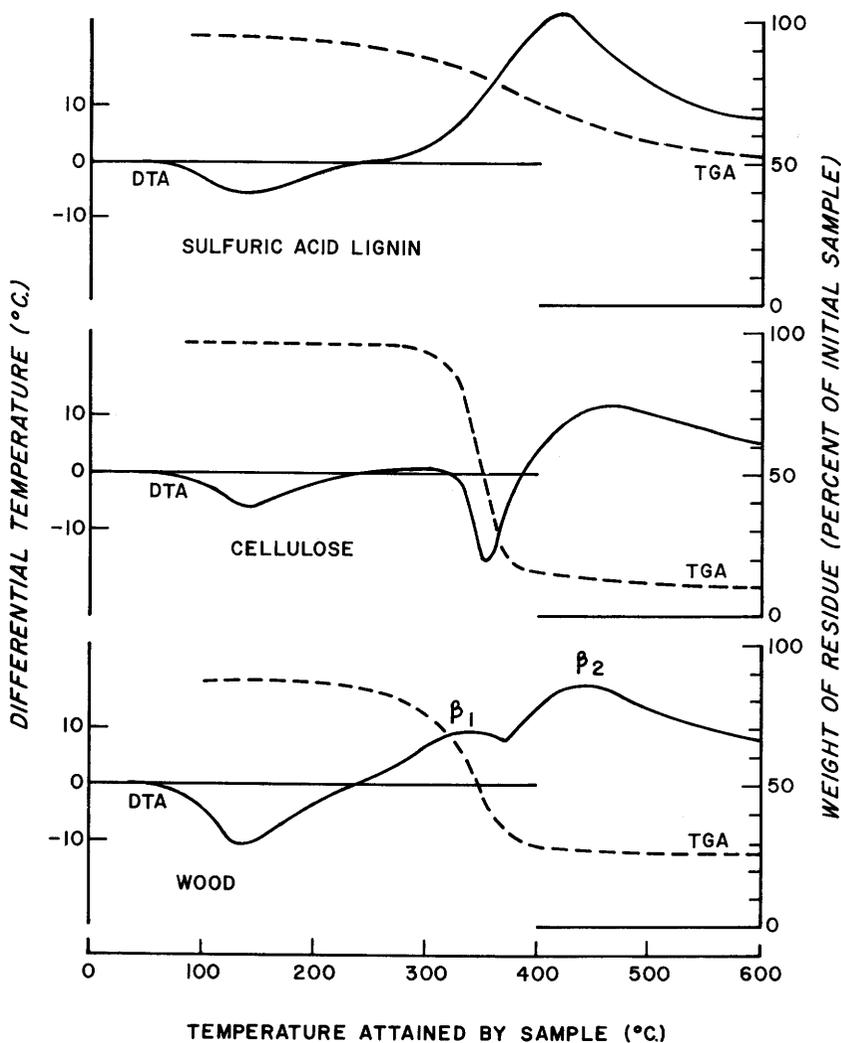


Figure 26-2.—Solid lines (scale at left) show curves for differential thermal analysis (DTA) of the pyrolysis of sulfuric acid lignin, cellulose, and wood; the reference material was aluminum oxide. The broken lines (scale at right) show weight of residue determined by thermogravimetric analysis (TGA). (Drawing after Browne and Tang 1962.)

in static tests with the cubes placed on a calorimeter pan maintained at 513° C. The results, specific to loblolly pine, follow. They are of interest because they quantitatively show that elapsed time to ignition is shortest during static heating if particles are small, initially dry, and of low specific gravity. Also, the length of time the particles glow before they are consumed is shortest if they are small.

No particles showed visible flame at ignition; instead, they either exhibited **glowing ignition** or decomposed without igniting. After the first

endothermic peak (all-specimen average 345°C .), an exothermic trend continued in 54 of the 72 latewood specimens until glowing ignition started (fig. 26-3BC); in all of the earlywood and the remaining latewood specimens, however, the trend reversed (fig. 26-3A) and led to a second endothermic peak (480°C . for earlywood). The literature indicates that the temporary interruption of the exotherm might be caused by absorption of gases by the charcoal or because evolving gases block oxygen from the charcoal surface. Table 26-1 compares the thermal transition temperatures of earlywood and latewood cubes and shows the proportion of specimens exhibiting second endothermic peaks and glowing ignition.

Gases first became visible at the first endothermic peak (345°C .), and the cubes began to char; the gases did not ignite. Evolution of visible gases ceased when the exothermic reaction yielded to the second endotherm (average temperature 434°C . for earlywood—see fig. 26-3A for typical plot). In these cases, the ensuing endotherm progressed until sufficient heat was absorbed to initiate a second and final exotherm.

The fact that 48 of the 144 specimens heated dynamically degraded to ash without glowing combustion supports Graf's (1949) finding that a minimum sample mass is required for ignition of wood subjected to slow heating. However, because even the small earlywood specimens did display two endothermic peaks and one exothermic peak, a minimum mass was evidently not required for thermal transitions below glowing ignition.

A $20^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{min}$. rate of temperature rise (compared to a 10° rate)

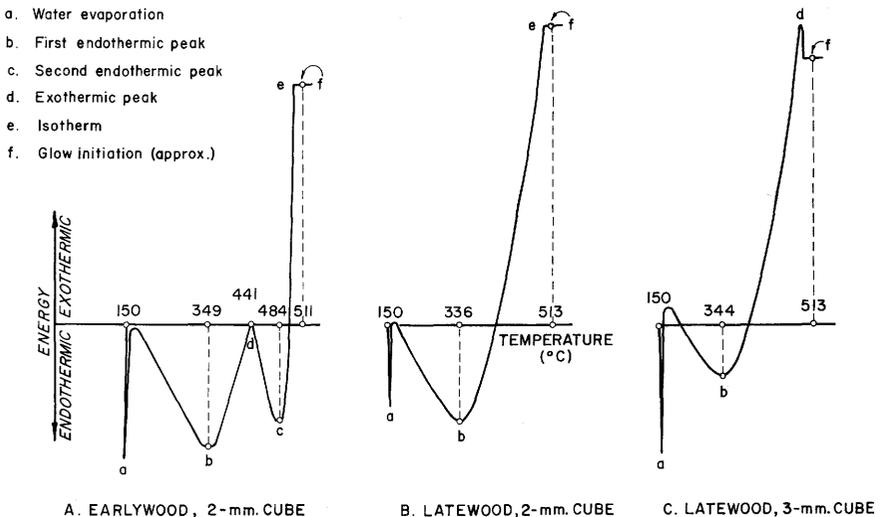


Figure 26-3.—Typical differential scanning calorimeter plots of loblolly pine wood heated from 150° to 513°C . at $20^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{min}$. in a dynamic air flow of $40\text{ ml}/\text{min}$. Cubes were heated on one face only. Full-scale chart deflection on ordinate: 16 millicalories for A and B, and 32 millicalories for C. (Drawing after Johnson and Koch 1972.)

TABLE 26-1.—Range of thermal transition temperatures and frequency of occurrence for loblolly pine earlywood and latewood cubes heated in air¹ (Johnson and Koch 1972)

Transition	Earlywood		Latewood	
	Frequency	Range	Frequency	Range
		°C.		°C.
First endothermic peak	72/72	313-380	72/72	320-382
Exotherm change to second endotherm	72/72	391-486	39/72	394-512
Second endothermic peak	72/72	436-513	18/72	460-511
Glowing ignition				
1-mm. cube	1/24	506	17/24	507-513 ²
2-mm. cube	9/24	508-513 ²	24/24	501-513 ²
3-mm. cube	21/24	490-513	24/24	498-513 ²

¹ Includes values for extracted and unextracted specimens at both rates of temperature increase.

² Ignition of some cubes took place only after a time delay at 513° C.

delayed endothermic and exothermic peaks from 14° to 19° C.; saturation of cubes further delayed these peak temperatures 5° to 15° C. Since specimens lost all residual moisture during testing and became oven-dried before reaching 200° C., the increase in peak temperatures may mean that saturation removed some water-soluble substances that contribute to early thermal degradation.

Extraction was not a significant factor in all cases. It did increase the temperature of the first endotherm (by 4° C.) and the temperature of the second endotherm for earlywood (by 6° C.). This result corresponds to Beall's (1968) finding that extraction of southern pine did not significantly change thermal degradation reaction.

The average temperature at the first endothermic peak was not a strong function of cube size (range 342° to 349° C., see table 26-2) or of cell type. It seems, therefore, that the temperature at which gases started to evolve was not clearly related to sample size or density.

The first exothermic peak temperature for earlywood, however, was strongly correlated with cube size. (See table 26-2.) Therefore, it appeared that the temperature at which gas evolution ceased in earlywood was a function of sample mass.

Temperatures reported for glowing ignition (490° to 513° C.) were higher than many reported in the literature (260° to 300° C.). Others have heated wood specimens in a furnace, thus bringing heated air into contact with all surfaces. The scanning calorimeter, employed in the Johnson and Koch study, applied heat to a single cube face; the surrounding air remained near room temperature. Internal temperature of

TABLE 26-2.—*Effect of primary variables on transition temperatures of earlywood when heated dynamically*¹ (Johnson and Koch 1972)

Factor	First endothermic peak ²	First exothermic peak	Second endothermic peak
	----- °C. -----		
Cube size, mm.	*	*	*
1-----	344	408	475
2-----	349	435	482
3-----	340	458	481
Moisture content	*	*	*
10 percent-----	337	431	475
Saturated-----	351	436	484
Extractive content	*	*	*
Unextracted-----	342	433	476
Extractive-free-----	346	434	483
Rate of temperature increase, °C./min.	*	*	*
10-----	335	424	470
20-----	353	443	489

¹ Values tabulated below an asterisk differ significantly (0.05 level). Refer to figure 26-3A for plot of typical data.

² For latewood the first endothermic peak occurred at 346° C., a value not significantly different from the 344° C. temperature observed for earlywood; other values in this column were similar to those observed for latewood.

the cube was thus partially determined by the thermal conductivity of the wood and rate of dissipation into the cooler air. All 72 specimens heated statically ignited and glowed; in contrast, only 96 out of 144 cubes subjected to dynamic heating ignited and glowed. This would support the belief that slow heating causes gradual dissipation of heat and mass.

Because many specimens decomposed without glowing, valid conclusions about glow initiation temperatures and glow duration during dynamic tests are hard to frame. Some comments, however, seem in order. Ignition temperature was lowest in 3-mm., initially dry earlywood cubes (e.g., 494° C. for extracted and unextracted specimens heated at 10° C./min.). In dynamic tests, glow duration was shortest in 1-mm cubes (e.g., 6 sec.); generally speaking, small earlywood cubes failed to ignite at all. Glow duration was longest for 3-mm. latewood cubes (e.g., 106 sec.).

In static tests at 513° C. (table 26-3), elapsed time before glow initiation was shortest with 1-mm., initially dry, extractive-free earlywood cubes (average 6 sec.); elapsed time was longest with 3-mm., initially saturated, unextracted latewood cubes (average 189 sec.). Glow time was maximum for 3-mm., initially dry, extractive-free latewood cubes (average 112 sec.);

TABLE 26-3.—*Effect of primary variables on time lapse before ignition and duration of glow for cubes of loblolly pine earlywood and latewood heated statically at 513°C. in air*¹ (Johnson and Koch 1972)

Factor	Time to glow	Glow duration
	----- Sec. -----	
Cell type	*	*
Earlywood.....	30	20
Latewood.....	80	54
Cube size, mm.	*	*
1.....	15	7
2.....	37	36
3.....	113	68
Moisture content	*	*
10-percent.....	44	40
Saturated.....	66	34
Extractive content	*	*
Unextracted.....	57	35
Extractive-free.....	53	39

¹ Values tabulated below an asterisk differ significantly (0.05 level).

it was minimum for 1-mm., initially saturated earlywood cubes (average 3.5 sec.). The interaction of cube size and type of wood on time to ignition and length of glow when statically heated at 513° C. was as follows:

Cube size	Earlywood		Latewood	
	Time lapse	Length of glow	Time lapse	Length of glow
<i>Mm.</i>	----- Sec. -----			
1	5-15	2-5	11-44	7-13
2	12-39	12-24	32-64	47-62
3	20-110	31-52	146-196	77-128

Effects of primary variables can be seen from table 26-3.

Charring occurred first at the cube face in contact with the heat source, then progressed to the opposite face. Glowing followed the opposite direction, starting at the face exposed to the air, then progressing to the center of the cube, and finally burning very brightly at the center just before ceasing. Cubes either burned completely or left a minute amount of ash in the sample pan.

26-2 COMBUSTION REACTIONS

From section 26-1 it is evident that combustion of wood is a complex phenomenon; it can be described simply, however, as the rapid oxidation of wood accompanied by release of energy and increase in temperature.

COMBUSTION EQUATIONS

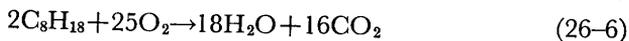
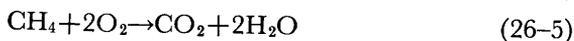
Only three elements of common fuels have heat value—carbon, hydrogen, and sulfur. Wood and bark, in contrast with the more common industrial fuels (gas, oil, coal), have little or no sulfur content.

Although the chemical reactions are often complex, the combustion process can be represented as a simple combination of oxygen and the combustible element. The combustion of hydrogen in oxygen is shown by the following reaction.



The atomic weight of oxygen is 16 and that of hydrogen approximately 1; it may therefore be calculated from equation 26-1 that 8 lb. of oxygen are required to completely burn 1 lb. of hydrogen and that this reaction results in the formation of 9 lb. of water.

Other common combustion equations are as follows:



As noted previously, equation 26-4 is not usually applicable to ordinary solid wood or bark fuels because they have little or no sulfur content.

FUEL ANALYSIS

The amount of each constituent in a fuel, expressed as a percentage of the total weight, is determined by **ultimate analysis**. The elements normally reported are carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur. In addition, the water and ash content are usually given along with the heating value of 1 lb. of the fuel.

The amount of water, volatile material, and ash present in a fuel are determined through a **proximate analysis** according to procedures defined in American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Designation D-271-58. The residue that remains after extraction of the water, volatile material, and ash is defined as **fixed carbon**, a term not synonymous with **carbon** as determined by ultimate analysis.

Ultimate and proximate analyses of a limited sample of southern pine bark are given in table 26-4. No analysis has been published for southern pine wood. Data from other pines indicate, however, that by ultimate analysis the ash content of southern pine wood is probably closer to 0.4 percent than 0.6 percent. Also, the carbon content of southern pine wood (about 52 percent) may be a few percent lower, and the oxygen content (about 41 percent) a few percent higher than that of bark. Informa-

TABLE 26-4.—*Ultimate and proximate analyses of southern pine bark from single trees of four species; composition expressed as percentage by weight*¹ (data from Mullen, see text footnote 1)

Type of analysis and components	Loblolly		Longleaf		Shortleaf		Slash		Average	
	Partly dry	Ovendry	Partly dry	Ovendry	Partly dry	Ovendry	Partly dry	Ovendry	Partly dry	Ovendry
----- Percent -----										
Ultimate										
Hydrogen.....	3.8	5.6	3.8	5.5	4.1	5.6	3.8	5.4	3.9	5.5
Carbon.....	38.1	56.3	39.0	56.4	41.5	57.2	39.4	56.2	39.5	56.5
Sulfur.....	nil	nil	nil	nil	nil	nil	nil	nil	nil	nil
Nitrogen.....	Included	with O ₂	Included	with O ₂	.3	.4	.3	.4	.3	.4
Oxygen.....	25.4	37.7	25.8	37.4	26.2	36.1	26.2	37.3	25.8	37.0
Ash.....	.3	.4	.5	.7	.5	.7	.5	.7	.5	.6
Total ²	67.6	100.0	69.1	100.0	72.6	100.0	70.2	100.0	70.0	100.0
Proximate										
Water.....	32.4	.0	30.9	.0	27.4	.0	29.8	.0	30.0	.0
Volatile matter.....	44.4	65.7	46.3	67.0	47.5	65.5	46.3	65.9	46.2	66.0
Fixed carbon.....	22.9	33.9	22.3	32.3	24.6	33.8	23.4	33.4	23.3	33.4
Ash.....	.3	.4	.5	.7	.5	.7	.5	.7	.5	.6
Total.....	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0
Heat of combustion, B.t.u./lb.....	6,363	9,400	6,300	9,130	6,940	9,550	6,600	9,380	6,551	9,365

¹ At moisture content received and ovdry; analyses performed according to American Society for Testing and Materials Designation D-271-58. Trees were 30 to 45 years old.

² Equal to 100 percent when totalled with percentage of water content noted immediately below.

tion derived from proximate analysis of wood of other pine species indicates that volatile matter content may be higher (75 to 79 percent of oven-dry weight) and fixed carbon content lower (near 20 percent) in southern pine wood than in southern pine bark. Some modification of ASTM procedures, and results obtained on eight western woods, are advanced by Mingle and Boubel (1968).

Obviously the moisture content of either wood or bark reflects treatment of the fuel prior to combustion. The natural moisture content of wood in standing pine trees is close to 100 percent of the oven-dry weight (see sec. 8-1). Weldon (1967) found that moisture content of southern pine sawdust in east Texas averaged about 108 percent of oven-dry weight. A pound of green sawdust therefore contains about half a pound of water and half a pound of dry wood.

As noted in section 12-3, inner bark of living southern pines has a much higher moisture content than outer bark, and whole bark from upper stem portions contains more moisture than that at breast height. In living southern pines of 6-inch d.b.h. and larger, it is likely that whole stem bark (breast height to 4-inch top) averages somewhat less than half water by weight. (See sec. 12-3.)

Weldon (1966), in his study of southern pine bark in east Texas, found that stored bark residues contained 53 to 76 percent moisture content (dry basis). Southern pine logs and pulpwood are commonly stored under water sprays, however, and pulpwood is frequently conveyed by flume to drum barkers; furthermore, bark storage piles in the South are frequently wetted by heavy downpours of rain. Because of these factors, bark fuel frequently has 100 percent moisture content, i.e., a pound of wet bark may be comprised of half a pound of water and half a pound of dry matter.

AIR REQUIREMENT

In power plants, oxygen for the combustion reactions described by equations 26-1 through 26-6 normally comes from the atmosphere, which also contains a large amount of nitrogen plus traces of water vapor, carbon dioxide, and other gases. For the purpose of calculating the amount of air required for combustion, it is sufficiently accurate to describe air as comprised only of oxygen and nitrogen.

Element	Approximate composition of air	
	By volume	By weight
Oxygen.....	20.9	23.1
Nitrogen.....	79.1	76.9

Thus, in air there are 3.78 cu. ft. of nitrogen for each cubic foot of oxygen and 3.32 lb. of nitrogen for each pound of oxygen.

As carbon has an atomic weight of 12, it is seen from equation 26-2 that 2.66 lb. of oxygen are required to burn 1 lb. of carbon; to supply this amount of oxygen, (4.32)(2.66) or 11.49 lb. of air are required. By similar calculation it can be shown from equation 26-1 that 34.56 lb. of air are required to burn 1 lb. of hydrogen.

The amount of air required to completely burn a fuel is determined from its ultimate analysis. Southern pine bark of 30-percent moisture content (green basis) contains about 39.5 percent carbon, 3.9 percent hydrogen, and 25.8 percent oxygen (table 26-4, second column from right). The amount of oxygen required from the air to burn a fuel is diminished by the amount of oxygen in the fuel. The air required to burn a pound of southern pine bark containing 30-percent moisture content (green basis) is therefore calculated as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{Pounds of air to burn the carbon} = (0.395)(11.49) = 4.54 \\
 \text{Pounds of air to burn the hydrogen} = (0.039)(34.56) = +1.35 \\
 \text{Less the pounds of air equivalent} \\
 \text{to the oxygen in the bark} = (0.258)(4.32) = -1.11 \\
 \hline
 \text{Pounds of air required per pound of fuel} \qquad \qquad \qquad 4.78
 \end{array}$$

This is the amount of air theoretically required. To insure sufficient oxygen for the burning process, it is common practice to supply additional or **excess air**, in an amount dependent on the fuel and the burning equipment, but usually equalling about one-quarter the theoretical amount. In industry terminology, 25 percent excess air, or 125 percent total air, means that air totalling 1.25 times the theoretical requirement is supplied. Too great an excess of air reduces the amount of heat recoverable from a fuel because heat is lost in raising the temperature of the excess air to flue temperature.

STAGES IN THE COMBUSTION OF WOOD AND BARK

Because of the high water and volatile contents of hogged (coarsely pulverized) southern pine wood and bark, the process of combustion takes place in three consecutive overlapping stages. In the first stage heat is absorbed by the fuel, and its water content is evaporated as steam; the fuel temperature does not much exceed 212° F. until its moisture content approaches zero. The duration of the first stage depends on the rate of heat supply and transfer into the fuel particles.

To accelerate evaporation of moisture, particles of wood and bark fuels should be reduced to the smallest size practical and economical. Reduction of particle size increases surface area and reduces the distance heat must penetrate to drive out moisture and other volatiles.

The second stage is one of liberation and burning of the volatile matter other than water. After the moisture evaporates, the temperature rises as heat is added until the volatile matter is removed. The rate of liberation of volatiles depends on the rate at which heat is supplied. At about 1,000°

to 1,100° F. (538° to 593° C.) the volatiles ignite, burn, and give off heat.

The third stage in the combustion process occurs when most of the volatile matter has been removed and the surface of the remaining residue reaches a glowing temperature and burns as oxygen from the air is brought in contact with it. This combustion exposes additional surface until the entire mass is consumed. Temperature of the burning gases above the fuel bed may exceed the temperature within the fuel bed.

Burning of the volatile matter and much of the fixed carbon takes place above and on top of the fuel bed. Since volatiles comprise 65 to 80 percent of the combustible material in southern pine bark and wood, a large proportion of the air required for combustion should be applied above the surface of the fuel bed rather than through it. As carbon reacts with oxygen, carbon dioxide is formed (equation 26-2) and forms a barrier to the admittance of more oxygen to the fuel surface. To speed combustion by rapid diffusion of oxygen through this layer of carbon dioxide, overfire air is supplied in a manner that causes turbulence above the fuel bed.

26-3 HEATING VALUE

Section 9-4 contains data on the heat of combustion of fuels derived from various portions of southern pine trees. (See subsection headed HEAT OF COMBUSTION and table 9-8.)

From these data it appears likely that southern pine wood has an average heat of combustion of about 8,600 B.t.u. per oven-dry pound. The average value for southern pine bark is somewhat higher, probably 8,900 B.t.u. per oven-dry pound or higher.

USABLE HEAT CONTENT

Reineke (1947) described the calculation of usable heat content in wood fuel as follows. Moisture in the fuel does not reduce the total heat produced during combustion, but its presence in the flue gases together with the water formed during burning of the hydrogen in the fuel reduces recoverable heat by carrying heat up the stack. Since flue gas temperature may be approximately 400° F., any water present is in the form of steam. Because vaporization of water to steam requires about 970 B.t.u./lb., and additional heat is required to raise the water temperature from ambient (65° F., for example) to 212° F. and to raise the steam temperature from 212° F. to a flue temperature of about 400° F., each pound of steam carries with it up the flue 1,210 B.t.u. Typically, green sapwood of the southern pines contains 1 lb. of water for each pound of wood. Since there is 1/2-lb. of dry wood and 1/2-lb. of water in each pound of freshly cut sapwood, to calculate its useable heat one must reduce the dry-wood heat of combustion by half, and also deduct about 600 B.t.u.

Approximately 0.55 lb. of water is formed in burning the hydrogen in 1 lb. of dry wood, causing a loss of about 660 B.t.u. A further small loss is attributable to the water (approximately 0.1 lb.) contained in the combustion air required to burn 1 lb. of dry wood. An additional 690 B.t.u. may be lost up the stack in other hot flue gases (carbon dioxide, nitrogen, and excess air); if excess air is limited to 30 percent, this loss may be reduced by one-third.

Therefore, the net usable heat from 2 lb. of green southern pine sapwood (assuming that this fuel contains equal weights of wood and water) is approximately as follows (ignoring humidity in the combustion air):

Heat of combustion of 1 lb. of dry wood	8,600 B.t.u.
Less	
Heat loss associated with water content	-1,210
Heat loss associated with hydrogen combustion	- 660
Heat loss in other flue gases	- 690
	<hr/>
Net usable heat	6,040 B.t.u.

The usable heat from 1 lb. of this wet fuel is therefore only 6,040/2 or 3,020 B.t.u., i.e., about 70 percent of the 4,300-B.t.u. input.

26-4 STEAM GENERATORS

Steam is generated by passing hot combustion gas through water-carrying heat exchangers. Industrial boilers fed with fuel derived from southern pine trees are designed to produce a predicted steam flow (50,000 to 1 million lb./hr.), at a specified gage pressure and temperature (150 p.s.i.g. at 520° F. for the smaller units, to 1,335 p.s.i.g. at 958° F. or higher for the biggest units), with a specified rate of fuel consumption (as high as 200 tons of wet bark per hour for the largest units). If properly designed, these steam generators require little manpower for operation and do not contaminate atmosphere, land, or water.

The discussion that follows applies particularly to the burning of southern pine bark, but combustion principles and basic equipment are the same for hogged wood, sawdust, or other pulverized cellulosic fuels.

EFFICIENCY

Efficiency of a steam generator is expressed as the percentage of input heat that is utilized.

$$\text{Percent efficiency} = \left(\frac{Q_1 - Q_2}{Q_1} \right) 100 \quad (26-7)$$

where Q_1 = total heat input

Q_2 = sum of heat losses

The major factor affecting heat loss is the temperature of the flue gas when it is discharged into the atmosphere. As the gas flows from the

combustion chamber through the heat exchangers, it continually drops in temperature as heat is transferred. The rate at which heat is transferred is dependent on the temperature difference between the gas and the fluid in the heat exchanger. For a steam temperature of 750° F., obviously the gas temperature must be somewhat higher. The smaller the temperature differential, the greater the amount of heat transfer surface required; it follows that an extremely efficient unit is more costly than a less efficient one, since it contains a large amount of heat transfer surface to reduce the major loss—that due to energy lost in hot exhaust gas.

To salvage heat from the exhaust gas after it has passed through heat exchangers designed to produce steam, additional heat exchangers are employed. These include **economizers** to preheat the intake water, and air heaters to preheat air before it is introduced to the combustion chamber. It is possible to utilize some of the heat still remaining in flue gas to predry the incoming fuel; for example, finely divided wet bark or sawdust can be partially dried—and therefore improved as a fuel—in a **fuel suspension dryer**. Corder (1958) calculated that a wood-fueled boiler with a capacity of 50,000 lb. of steam per hour would hourly emit about 95,000 lb. of exhaust gas at 600° F.; potential heat of the gas above 200° F. would be about 10 million B.t.u./hour—sufficient to evaporate about 3 tons of water per hour from wet sawdust or bark. (Sec. 26-5 contains an example illustrating calculation of weight of exhaust gas emitted for any level of fuel consumption.)

Steam at 165 p.s.i. absolute (150.3 p.s.i.g.) and 550° F. contains heat energy of 1,118 B.t.u./lb. more than feedwater at 212° F. To convert 50,000 lb. of this water per hour to such steam in a boiler fired with wet bark (half water) at an efficiency of 66.5 percent, therefore requires $(50,000)(1,118) \div (8,900/2)(0.665)$, or 18,890 lb. of wet bark per hour. If 3 tons of water were driven out of this 9.4 tons of wet bark before it was fired, efficiency would be increased to over 75 percent; because moisture content of the bark would be reduced from 100 percent to 36.5 percent (dry basis) each pound of fuel would contain $8,900/1.365$ B.t.u. To produce 50,000 lb. of steam per hour, therefore, only $(50,000)(1,118) \div (8,900/1.365)(0.75)$, or 11,431 lb. of the drier fuel would be required.

While these potential gains appear attractive, use of flue gas to dry fuel is not generally practiced because of the expense of additional fuel handling, the practical necessity of maintaining flue gas temperature substantially higher than fuel temperature in heat-exchanger-type dryers, and the limited ability of the flue gas to carry off evaporated water; in short, it is apparently more economical to dry southern pine fuels in the combustion chamber than in external dryers.

Efficiency of a boiler to burn black liquor from a kraft pulpmill (half water and half solids) is typically less—about 60 percent—and a pound of liquor containing $6,000/2$, or 3,000 B.t.u. might usefully give up $(0.60)(3,000)$, or 1,800 B.t.u. to generate steam.

ECONOMICS OF BARK-FIRED POWER PLANTS

In most mills using southern pine, bark is an expensive nuisance that does not have uses sufficient to provide income equal to the costs of its growth, harvest, transport, remanufacture, or even removal from the site. Although these same plants are also major consumers of electrical energy and heat, only the very largest mills—primarily pulpmills—have been able to justify operation of bark-fed boilers. The reasons for this limited use of bark as fuel are largely economic; i.e., only mills with very great demands for power and steam can afford to amortize and operate the large boilers required to produce energy competitive with public utility plants. Also, because mill power demands are fairly constant, while bark supplies are variable, most bark-burning boilers must be designed for alternative firing of one or more fossil fuels.

The larger mills and also public utility plants can, however, consider bark as an economically practical fuel if it is priced competitively, supplied continuously, and produced in sufficient quantities. Fossil fuels, with which bark must compete, can be burned more efficiently than bark and have higher heats of combustion, but cost more per ton (table 26-5). To determine the delivered price at which bark is competitive with the fossil fuels, the fuel cost to generate 1,000 lb. of steam can be calculated from the data in table 26-5 by assuming that 1,100 B.t.u. (usable) are required to generate 1 lb. of steam and that water is converted to steam with 66.5-percent efficiency. A delivered price of about \$2 per green ton of bark (half water) appears to be competitive. To be directly equivalent in price to coal, green bark would have to sell for \$1.96 per green ton. The equivalent to oil would be \$2.18, and to gas \$2.45.

TABLE 26-5.—Comparison of fuel values of fossil fuels and southern pine bark

Fuel	Efficiency	Heat of combustion as fired		Delivered cost ¹		Input to generate 1,000 lb. of steam	
				Per ton ²	Per million B.t.u.	Heat	Fuel cost
	Percent	B.t.u./lb.	Million B.t.u./ton	- Dollars -	- Dollars -	Million B.t.u.	Dollars
Bituminous coal..	85.0	13,500	27.0	7.56	0.28	1.29	0.36
No. 6 oil.....	82.5	18,000	36.0	10.80	.30	1.33	.40
Natural gas.....	77.8	18,550	37.1	11.87	.32	1.41	.45
Wet bark (half water)....	66.5	4,450	8.9	1.96	.22	1.65	.36

¹ As of spring 1970; subject to variation according to location.

² Values for oil and gas converted from price per barrel and price per cubic foot.

Because amortization and interest costs are a substantial portion (one-third to one-half) of total cost to produce 1,000 lb. of steam, fuel cost alone does not provide a complete index to economic feasibility. Since bark-burning furnaces are larger than oil- or gas-fired units, they are more expensive; because of material-handling equipment, coal-fired boilers cost more than oil-fired units. The approximate relative costs (installed) that follow are subject to considerable variation according to steam generating capacity and manner of assembly, i.e., whether shop-assembled or field-erected.

<u>Primary fuels</u>	<u>Relative cost of steam generator</u>
Gas only -----	1.0
Oil only -----	1.2
Coal only -----	1.8
Coal and oil -----	2.0
Bark only -----	2.2
Oil and bark -----	2.4

In a study of Montana sawmills and plywood plants, Host and Lowry (1970) concluded that shifting from natural gas to bark-burning boilers would result in annual savings of about \$44,000 for a 25,000-lb./hour boiler and about \$95,000 for a 50,000-lb./hour boiler. Comparable savings should be achievable in large mills processing southern pine. Elimination of air pollution caused by the present practice of disposing of bark in waste burners or inefficient **Dutch ovens** (a type of furnace that burns woody fuels in a deep pile rather than in suspension; see fig. 26-4) is a further incentive to use efficient bark-fired boilers.

BARK SUPPLY AND TRANSPORT

As noted earlier, the harvest of green southern pine bark will likely exceed 20 million tons annually by the year 2000. This is sufficient to fuel 12 generating plants, each with a capacity of 1 million lb. of steam per hour (1,000° F.). In total, these 12 plants could supply the present electrical demands of the cities of Savannah, Mobile, and Pensacola.

A bark price of \$2 per green ton (delivered into the fuel pile) permits only minimal transportation charges. Therefore, potential users of bark require knowledge of its location. The immediate sources are the sawmills, plywood plants, pulpmills, and other pine conversion plants that have bark in excess of their requirements. These sources are widely distributed throughout the Southern States. There have been few regional studies of residue location; notable are the Texas surveys of bark and sawdust volume (Weldon 1966, 1967). A basic approach to source identification can be made through analysis of the location of standing pine trees in the South; for this purpose the maps prepared by Sternitzke and Nelson (1970) are an excellent reference. (See ch. 3 and figs. 3-1, 3-3, 3-5, 3-7, 3-9, 3-11, 3-13, 3-15, 3-17, and 3-19).

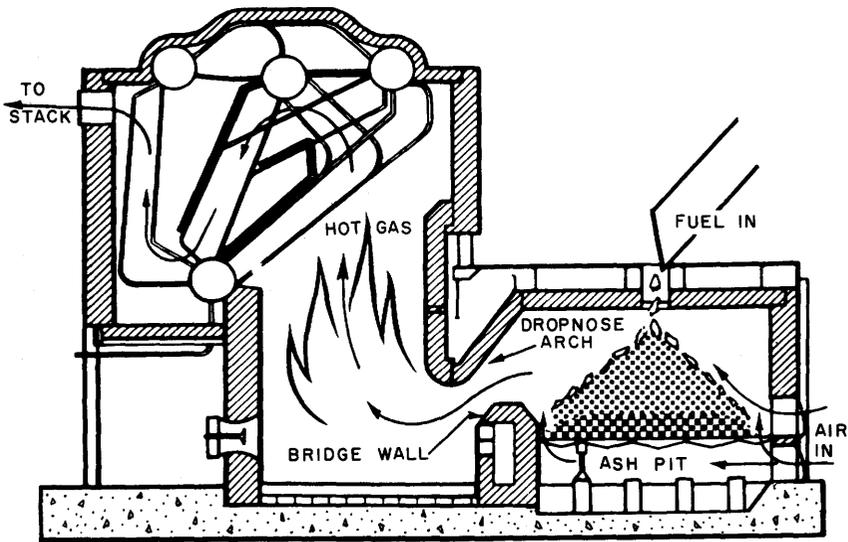


Figure 26-4.—Dutch oven boiler. Most of the fuel is destructively distilled. Combustible gas emerging from the fuel pile mixes with air entering through overfire ports and the fuel-charging chute. The air-gas mixture burns in the combustion chamber; hot flue gases, on route to the stack, pass through water-carrying heat exchangers and generate steam. (Drawing after McKenzie 1968.)

To minimize transportation costs, bark from pine-using mills would probably be conveyed into open-top freight cars or motor vans and delivered to power generating plants for bulk discharge into outdoor fuel piles; the delivery system would be closely comparable to that now used to convey pulpchips from sawmills to pulpmills. Haul distances would necessarily be short.

EQUIPMENT

Infeeding equipment for bark- or wood-burning boilers should include surge bins from which fuel can be metered in response to demand. The fuel should be homogeneous in moisture content if possible; for suspension burning, particles should be of uniform small size ($\frac{1}{4}$ - to $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch maximum dimension and preferably smaller). Bark is generally admitted to a furnace in several streams, each carrying the correct proportion to obtain good fuel distribution in the furnace (Roberson 1967).

In new construction, the traditional Dutch oven furnace (fig. 26-4) has been almost completely supplanted; the concept of water-cooled furnaces and **suspension burning** of bark and wood (Ellwanger 1952) has resulted in more efficient steam generators fired with bark alone and also with bark (or wood) in combination with coal, oil, and gas.

Suspension firing of bark is analogous to the firing of pulverized coal; a large percentage of the fuel is burned before it reaches a small grate

at the bottom of the furnace where the larger bark particles are burned.

Examples of steam-generating units, consecutively numbered according to capacity, are shown in figures 26-5 through 26-12. In boilers depicted by figure 26-5 and 26-9, fuel is distributed mechanically; in the other furnaces bark is injected and spread pneumatically.

Steam generators are normally guaranteed to produce a specified amount of steam on one fuel only—usually coal, gas, or oil. For woody fuels—which may vary in moisture and heat content—steaming rates are predicted but not usually guaranteed. Figures 26-5 through 26-12 show bark-

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. Coal Feeder | 5. Ash Pit | 9. Steam Out | 13. Air Heater |
| 2. Bark Feeder | 6. Ash Hopper | 10. Water Inlet | 14. Char Hopper |
| 3. Fuel Spreader | 7. Water Tubes | 11. Cold Air In | 15. Gas Outlet |
| 4. Ash Pit Door | 8. Superheater | 12. Hot Air | 16. Safety Valve |
| | | | 17. Dump Grate |

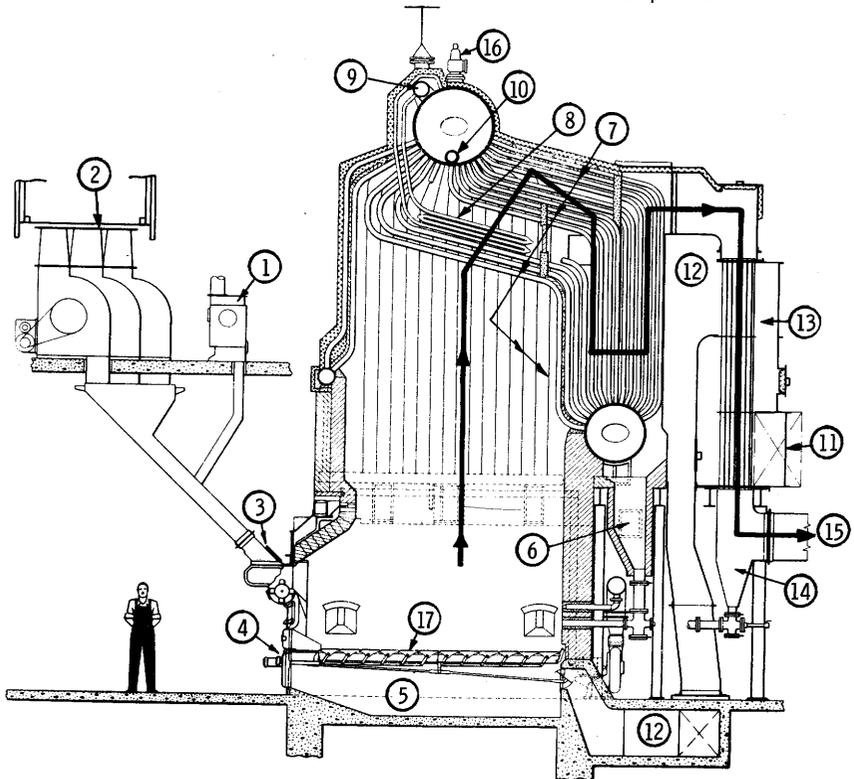


Figure 26-5.—Steam generator with capacity of 55,000 lb. of steam per hour.

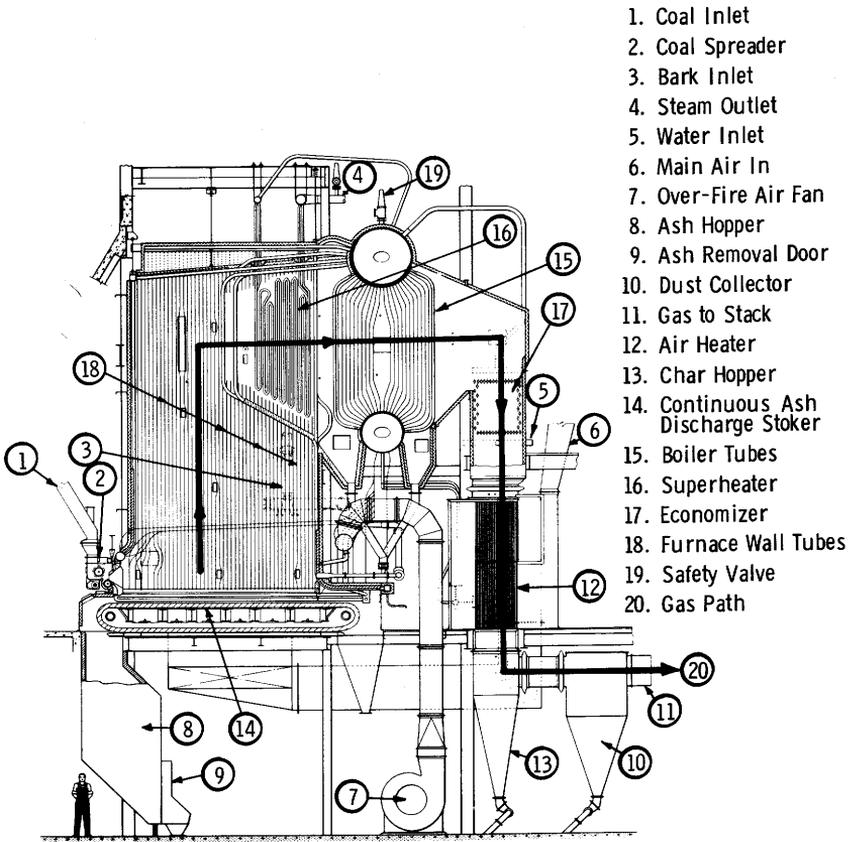
Fuel: 10,000 lb. of bark per hour if bark is only fuel; also burns bark at lesser rates in combination with coal, or burns coal alone.

Steam pressure: 150 p.s.i.g. (pounds per square inch gage).

Steam temperature: 520° F.

Firing equipment: Mechanical distributors with dump grate.

(Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)



1. Coal Inlet
2. Coal Spreader
3. Bark Inlet
4. Steam Outlet
5. Water Inlet
6. Main Air In
7. Over-Fire Air Fan
8. Ash Hopper
9. Ash Removal Door
10. Dust Collector
11. Gas to Stack
12. Air Heater
13. Char Hopper
14. Continuous Ash Discharge Stoker
15. Boiler Tubes
16. Superheater
17. Economizer
18. Furnace Wall Tubes
19. Safety Valve
20. Gas Path

Figure 26-6.—Steam generator with capacity of 120,000 lb. of steam per hour.

Fuel: 20,000 lb./hour of bark if fired alone, also burns bark at lesser rates in combination with coal, or burns coal alone.

Steam pressure: 615 p.s.i.g.

Steam temperature: 750° F.

Firing equipment: Barked fired pneumatically through side wall; coal spread mechanically. Travelling grate discharges ash continuously.

(Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)

fueled furnaces; some, however, are designed primarily for gas or oil (e.g., fig. 26-8) or coal (fig. 26-6). The boiler shown in figure 26-7 is designed for bark alone, and its fuel consumption is typical.

If moist bark (half water by weight) has a heat of combustion of $8,900/2 = 4,450$ B.t.u./lb., and if the boiler is designed to add 1,200 B.t.u./lb. to the water and convert it to high-pressure, high-temperature steam, then the efficiency should be about 70 percent. Under these conditions, about 2.60 lb. of steam can be generated from each pound of moist bark, i.e., $(4,450)(0.70) \div 1,200$. About 10,000 kw. of electrical power can be generated from 100,000 lb./hr. of such steam. From these data bark consumption and power output can be tabulated.

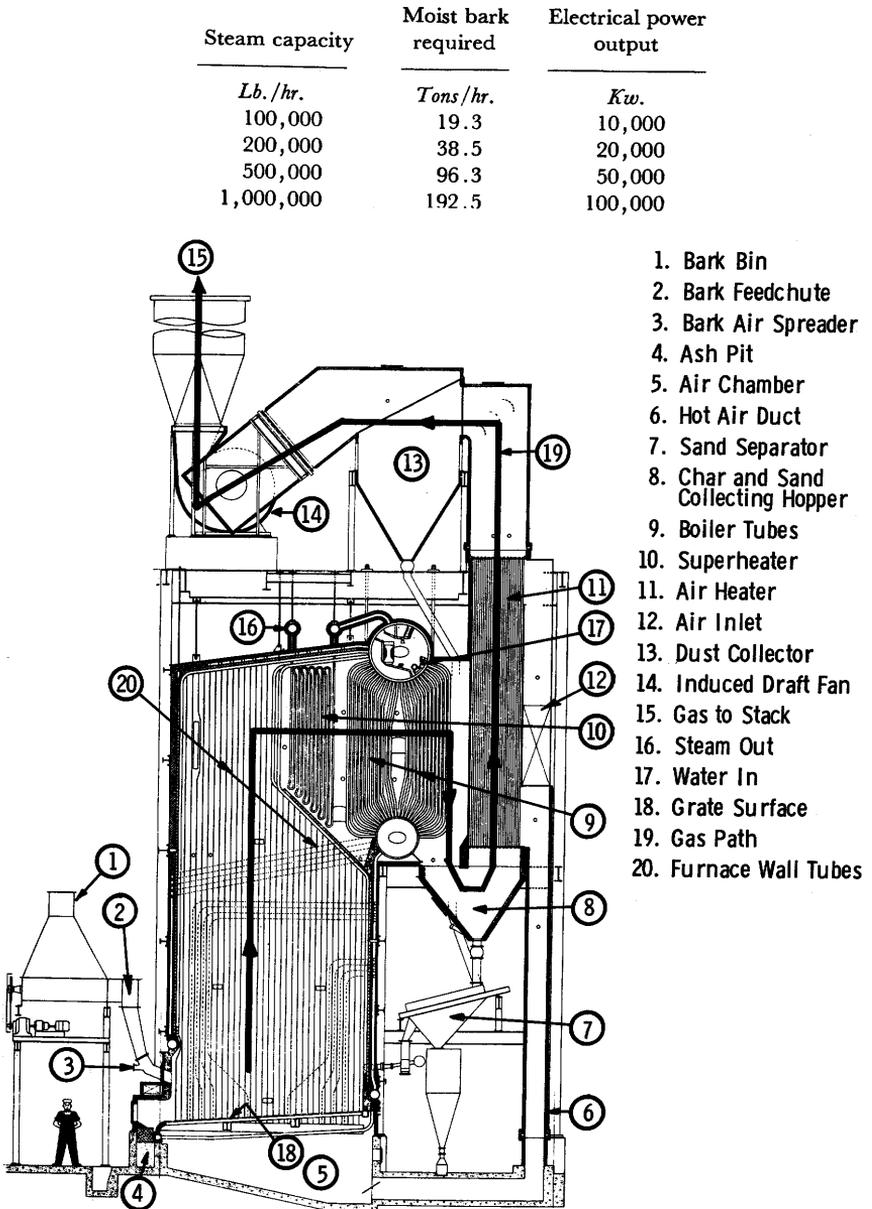


Figure 26-7.—Steam generator with capacity of 150,000 lb. of steam per hour.

Fuel: 50,000 to 60,000 lb. of bark per hour.

Steam pressure: 475 p.s.i.g.

Steam temperature: .. 725° F.

Firing equipment: Bark fired and spread pneumatically at controllable rate; travelling grate discharges ash continuously.

(Drawing from Erie City.)

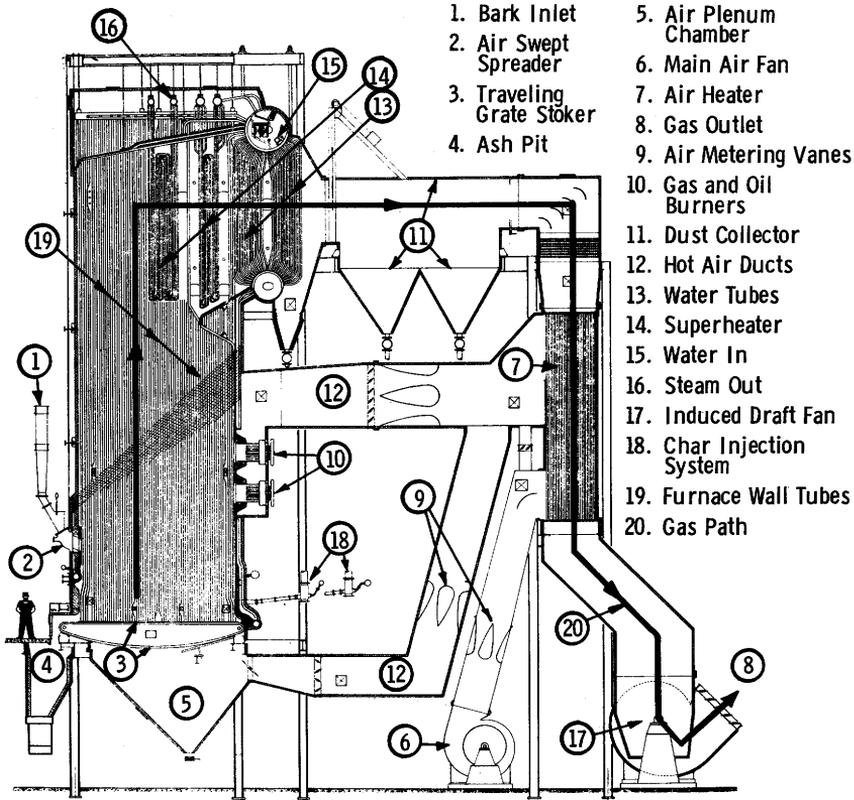


Figure 26-8.—Steam generator with capacity of 350,000 lb. of steam per hour.

Fuel: 50,000 lb./hour of bark in combination with either gas or oil.

Steam pressure: 990 p.s.i.g.

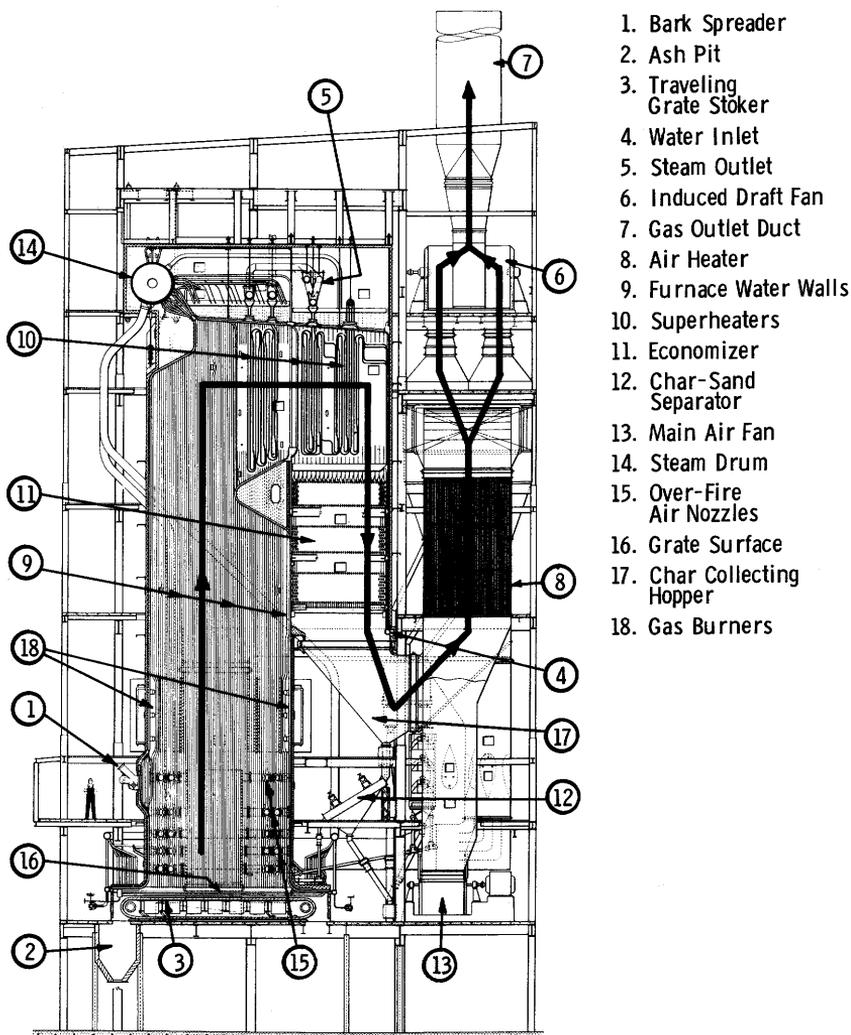
Steam temperature: ... 900° F.

Firing equipment: Bark fired and spread pneumatically at controlled rate for use simultaneously with burners for gas or oil. Travelling grate discharges ash continuously.

(Drawing from Erie City.)

It is practical to transport bark by pneumatic conveyor to combustion chambers from surge piles up to 5,000 feet distant from the furnace. The air/fuel ratio (by weight) in the transport pipe should be about 0.25 at rated capacity.

There are a number of alternative ways to meter bark into a furnace. In one arrangement (fig. 26-12), bark is fed at a controlled rate into a cyclone and then discharged to a vibrating distributor which diverts it to each burner nozzle via pneumatic conveyor. Another system has been described by Mullen (1968). In this arrangement the bark is introduced by a metering feeder to each pneumatic system leading to a burner; excess bark is conveyed back to the storage area (fig. 26-13). Details of the bark-



1. Bark Spreader
2. Ash Pit
3. Traveling Grate Stoker
4. Water Inlet
5. Steam Outlet
6. Induced Draft Fan
7. Gas Outlet Duct
8. Air Heater
9. Furnace Water Walls
10. Superheaters
11. Economizer
12. Char-Sand Separator
13. Main Air Fan
14. Steam Drum
15. Over-Fire Air Nozzles
16. Grate Surface
17. Char Collecting Hopper
18. Gas Burners

Figure 26-9.—Steam generator with capacity of 600,000 lb. of steam per hour.

Fuel: Designed for 140,000 lb. of bark per hour if fired with bark alone, but actually will burn 202,000 lb./hour of bark as fired; bark can be burned in combination with gas, or unit can be fired with gas alone.

Steam pressure: 1,335 p.s.i.g.

Steam temperature: .. 958° F.

Firing equipment: High-set mechanical bark spreaders; travelling grate discharges ash continuously.

(Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)

metering device are shown in figure 26-14. Fuel is usually fed into the furnace through four injection nozzles (fig. 26-15), located one at each furnace corner. The major portion of the bark is burned in suspension,

- | | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------|
| 1. Steam Outlet | 3. Superheater | 5. Boiler Tubes | 7. Dust Collector | 8. Hot Air |
| 2. Water Inlet | 4. Air Heater | 6. Furnace | 9. Gas Path | |

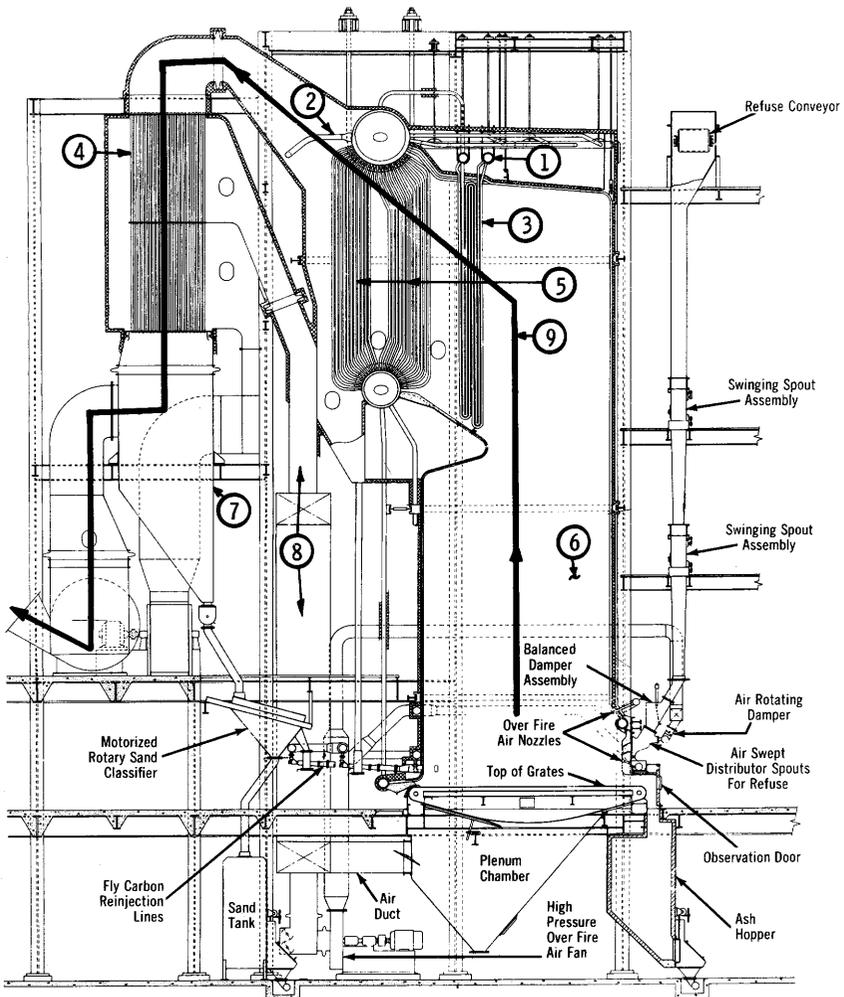


Figure 26-10.—Components of bark-burning steam generator; shown in side section. (Drawing from Detroit Stoker Company.)

combustion patterns being controlled by vertically tilting the fuel injection nozzles.

Preferably, a bark-burning furnace should be designed with bark injection nozzles about 16 feet above the grate; the **high set** promotes more complete burning of bark particles before they fall to the grate (fig. 26-9). Furnaces with **low set** fuel injectors (8 feet or less above the grate) are more economical to construct but less efficient.

Residual material not burned in suspension is retained on a small grate,

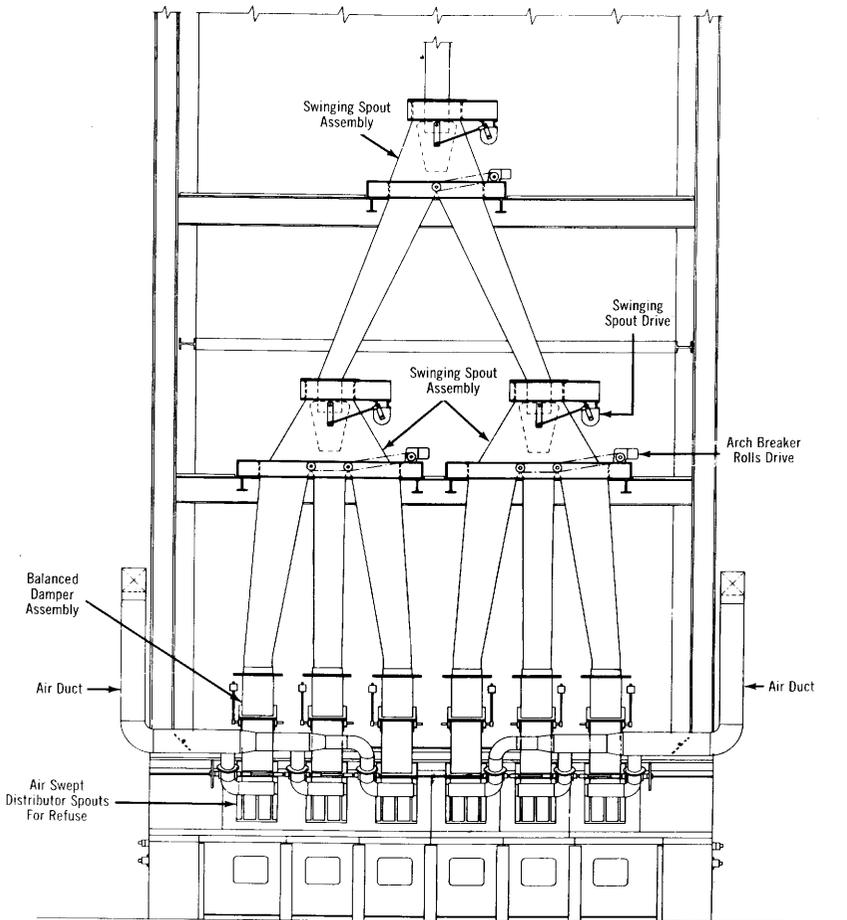


Figure 26-11.—Detail of bark-distributing system (front view of unit shown in fig. 26-10) that insures equal distribution of fuel to each injection nozzle. (Drawing from Detroit Stoker Company.)

where hot air from above and below completes combustion. **Dump grates** deposit ash at intervals directly into ash pits (figs. 26-5, 26-12, 26-13); **traveling grates** continuously discharge ash to collection pits (figs. 26-6, 26-7, 26-8, 26-9, 26-10).

CONTROL OF EMISSIONS OF CHAR

Fly ash, the fine particles of ash carried out of the stack by flue gases, may contain highly visible particulate charcoal or **char** in addition to less visible mineral ash. This char contaminates not only residential properties adjacent to the boiler (swimming pools and laundry areas, for example), but also pulp chips, paper, planed lumber, and plywood in transit to and

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Bark Distributor | 11. Rectangular Furnace | 13. Air Blowers (4) |
| 2. Bark Nozzle
(1) Each Corner | 12. Ash Pit | 14. Air Lock Feeders (4) |
| 3. Grate Surface | | |
| 4. Main Air Fan | | |
| 5. Ljungstrom
Air Heater | | |
| 6. Dust Collector | | |
| 7. Gas Outlet | | |
| 8. Superheater | | |
| 9. Water In | | |
| 10. Steam Out | | |

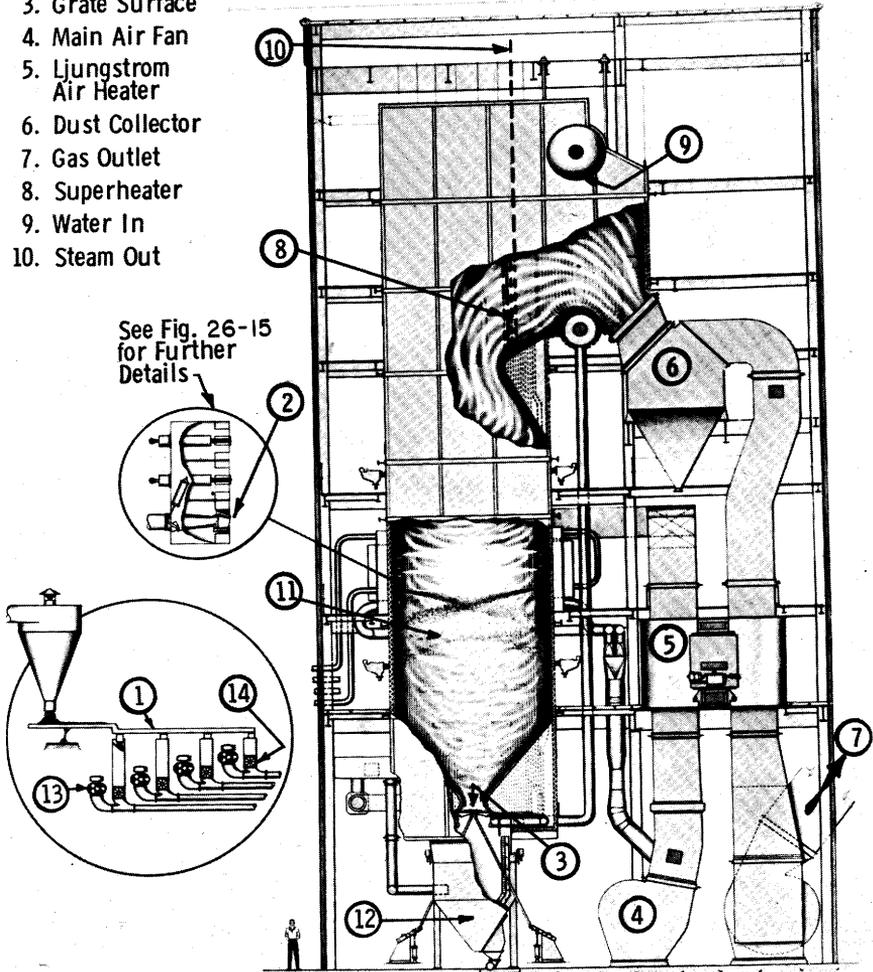


Figure 26-12.—Steam generator showing method of pneumatically transporting, feeding, and burning hogged cellulosic fuels alone or in combination with other fuels. Bark is fed at a controlled rate to the cyclone, then drops to a vibrating distributor, and finally proceeds to each burner nozzle via pneumatic conveyor. Four sets of fuel nozzles (one in each corner) may be manually or automatically tilted up or down to distribute the fuel. This boiler can be designed to produce up to 1 million lb. of steam per hour with a maximum consumption of 70 tons per hour of wet bark (half water by weight) alone or in combination with coal, oil, or gas. (Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)

from the mill serviced by the steam generator. This charcoal results from incomplete combustion. Because southern pine bark has about 10 to 13 percent less volatile matter by proximate analysis than wood, it also tends

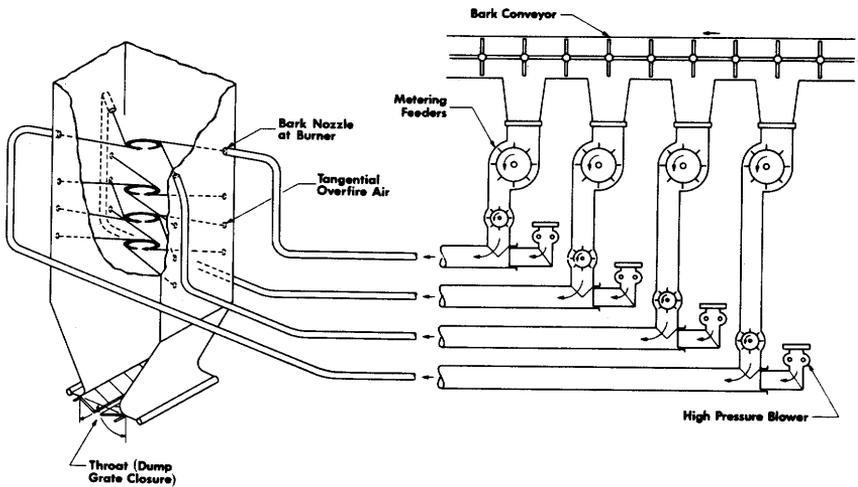


Figure 26-13.—Metering device, pneumatic feeders, overfire air nozzles, and dump grates for steam generator. In this system, the bark is metered to each nozzle individually; excess fuel is returned to storage. (Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)

to have a correspondingly greater fixed carbon content; the term “fixed carbon” is not synonymous with char, but fuels with a high fixed carbon content tend to produce more char than those lower in fixed carbon.

Emissions of char are controlled by burning all of the charcoal in the combustion chamber; long fuel retention time in the furnace promotes this complete combustion. Time required to consume all of the charcoal is short if furnace temperatures are high, fuel particles are small, oxygen supply is ample, and the combustion atmosphere is turbulent.

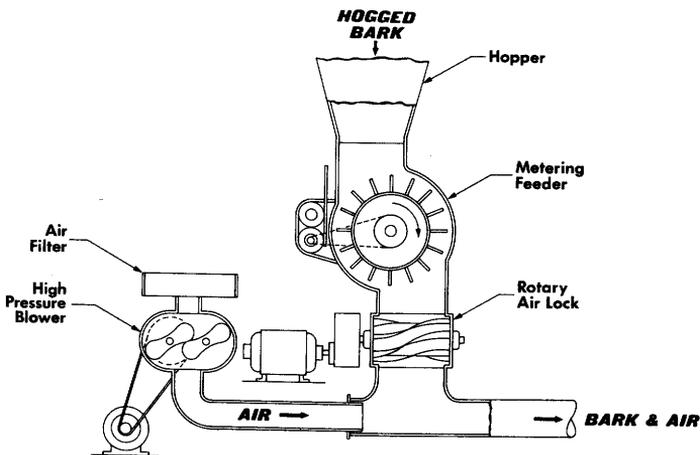


Figure 26-14.—Device to meter bark into pneumatic fuel injection nozzle. (Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)

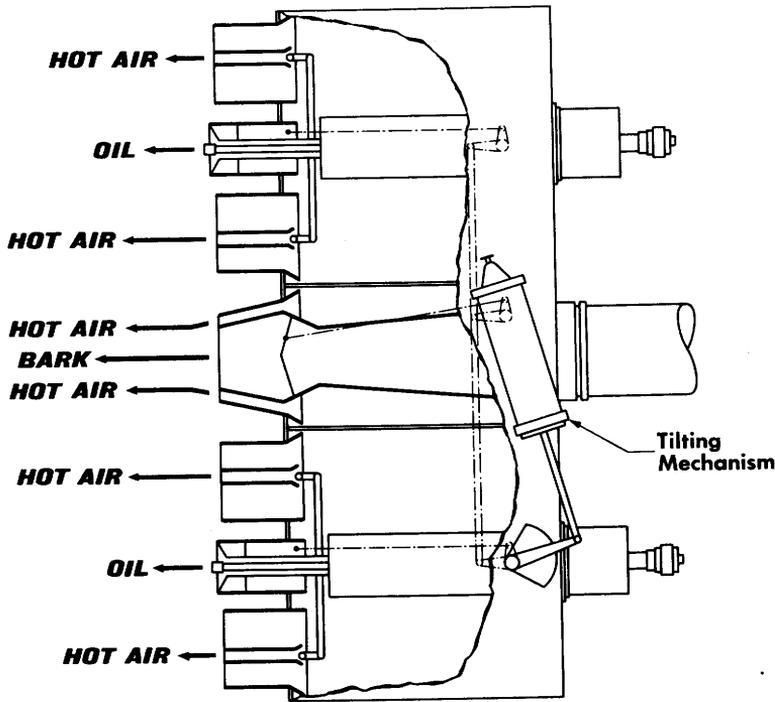


Figure 26-15.—Burner assembly for simultaneous or solo injection of bark and oil (or gas). Hot air is introduced in a jet around each fuel jet. Fuel nozzles (with accompanying air jets) can be tilted vertically to alter trajectory for desired distribution of fuel in the furnace. Normally, one burner assembly is located at each of four corners of rectangular furnace. (Drawing from Combustion Engineering, Inc.)

Furnaces designed to burn wood or bark supply oxygen in overfire air to combine with methane, carbon monoxide, hydrogen, and formaldehyde from wood pyrolysis to form carbon dioxide and water vapor. The overfire air system not only supplies oxygen above the fuel bed to burn the volatile matter, but also increases turbulence and extends retention time of char in the furnace, thus promoting more complete consumption and reducing char carryover to the gas-cleaning equipment.

A typical sieve analysis of char entering the dust collector from a bark-fired boiler is listed in table 26-6.

Flue gas-cleaning equipment.—Flue gas from bark-burning boilers can be cleaned by cyclone mechanical collectors in single or multiple arrangements. The **multicyclone mechanical dust collector** (fig. 26-16) is assembled from many units, each comprised of a pair of tubes mounted together. The clean-gas outlet is partially inserted into the larger dirty-gas inlet tube; curved vanes at the top of the inlet tubes impart a swirling action to the incoming dirty gas, and the dirt is separated by centrifugal force

TABLE 26-6.—*Typical sieve analysis of char carried by flue gas entering the dust collector of a bark-fired boiler (Booth 1966)*

Size of mesh in sieve (openings per lineal inch)	Retention on sieve	Cumulative retention
	----- Percent -----	
20.....	43.8	43.8
30.....	6.2	50.0
40.....	3.9	53.9
80.....	11.3	65.2
100.....	2.8	68.0
200.....	7.7	75.7
325.....	9.3	85.0
325.....	15.0 (through)	100.0

(fig. 26-17). Mechanical cyclone collectors are usually guaranteed on the basis of the percentage of solids above 10 μm (a micrometer is 10^{-6} m.) in size that will be separated from the gas stream at a given pressure drop through the cyclone; a large pressure drop will yield a cleaner gas than a small drop.

As air pollution regulations become enforced more stringently, **electrostatic precipitators** are likely to be more frequently used in bark-fired boilers to clean flue gases. In these devices, dust particles in the gas flow to electrically charged collecting plates (fig. 20-18, point 6) and are then vibrated off the plates into a hopper below.

If properly installed and maintained, either the mechanical or electrostatic devices will do a good job of cleaning flue gas; a combination of the two types is most effective—though most costly.

According to Mullen (1964) and Barron (1970), char accumulated in the dust collector should not be reinjected into the furnace for further burning; the practice lowers the efficiency of the dust collector, increases air pollution, and causes added erosion of boiler parts exposed to the flue gas.

WOOD BASED FUELS OTHER THAN BARK

All wood-based fuels can be burned in suspension if they are finely divided and are not more than half water by weight. While combustion systems other than suspension burners are in use, newer installations burn woody fuels in suspension because the method is efficient and, if properly controlled, causes little air pollution.

Hog fuel, sawdust, and shavings.—Because most southern pine veneer bolts, saw logs, and pulpwood are stored under water sprinklers—and in the case of pulpwood, may be flume conveyed to a drum barker—the bark

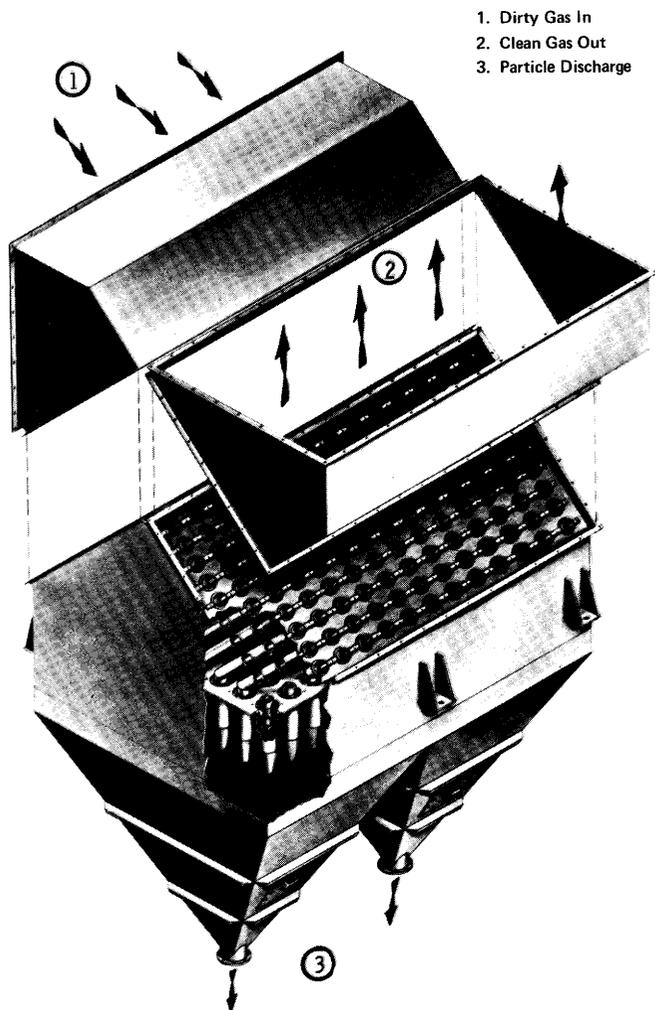


Figure 26-16.—Multicyclone mechanical cleaner for flue gas from steam generators burning southern pine bark. Each small cyclone measures about 10 inches in outside diameter. (Drawing from Research Cottrell, Inc.)

is likely to be uniformly wet. Wood waste, however, is variable in moisture content because a portion of it comes from sawdust, trimmings, and shavings cut from kiln-dried or air-dried lumber. Variations in moisture content—which call for variations in fuel/air ratios and cause fluctuations in burning rates and temperatures—can be reduced if the fuel is first distributed into large storage bins or piles prior to admission to the fuel-metering mechanism. Southern pine wood has a slightly lower heat of combustion than southern pine bark (see sec. 9-4, HEAT OF COMBUSTION, and

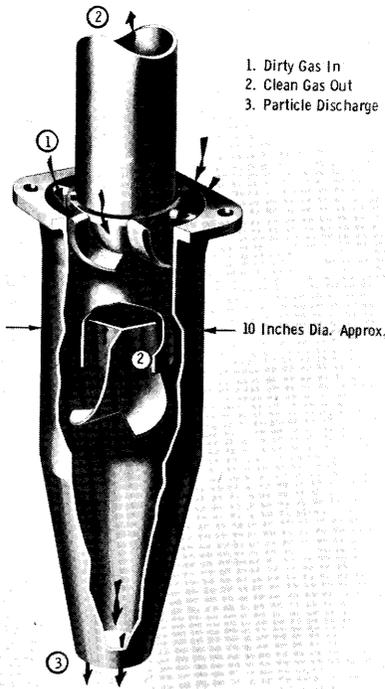


Figure 26-17.—Detail of individual cyclone from multicyclone mechanical cleaner shown in figure 26-16. (Drawing from Research Cottrell, Inc.)

table 9-8) and can seldom compete with fossil fuels on a price basis because of its high value as furnish for pulp and board products.

Sander dust.—Reineke (1947) has described the hazards entailed in burning sander dust. A combustible dust will burn with explosive force if the particles are surrounded by sufficient air for combustion and are spaced sufficiently close to permit propagation of flame from one particle to the next so that all particles are simultaneously heated to the ignition point. Greater or lesser concentrations are not explosive.

Explosion hazards can be eliminated in closed pneumatic systems by using any inert atmosphere (nitrogen, carbon dioxide, flue gas) in which the oxygen content is relatively low (under 12 percent). If the fine sander dust is mixed with bark, sawdust, or shavings, and fed to the fire so that the dust does not separate, explosion risks will be eliminated. Another alternative is concentration of the dust, in suspension, to a density above the explodable concentration before it is introduced into the furnace. In one Wisconsin installation, sander dust is accumulated in a separate cyclone where it is stored in suspension. An electronic "eye" measures the dust concentration, and when the desired concentration is reached, it actuates a valve permitting the dust to pass to a special dust burner opening into the combustion chamber of the main furnace. As the fuel is used up and the concentration of dust diminishes to a value somewhat above the explodable level, the control stops the flow of dust to the burners (Rieneke 1947).

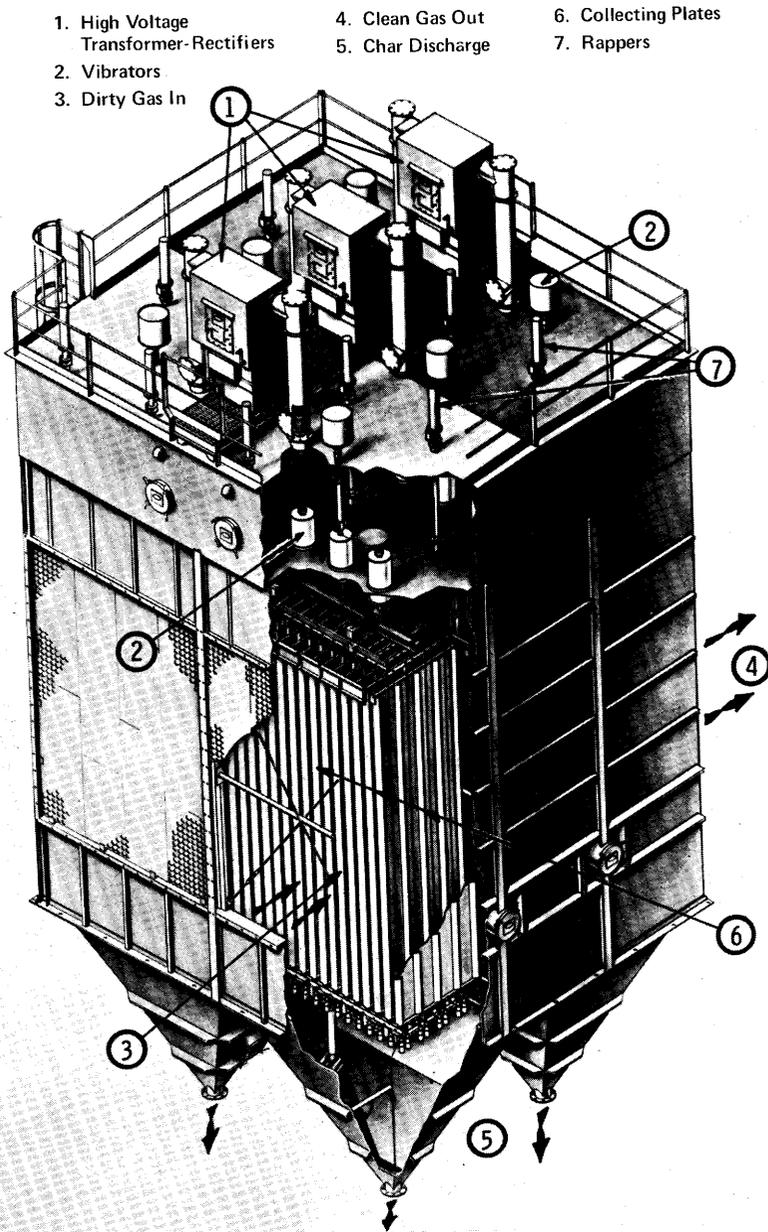


Figure 26-18.—Electrostatic precipitator for flue gas from bark-fired steam generators.
(Drawing from Research Cottrell, Inc.)

In more recent designs, dust concentration is not measured, and the sander dust is blown directly into the furnace. In this system the sander dust is treated as though it were a combustible gas, and necessary precautions are taken to insure flame stability; this entails close control of

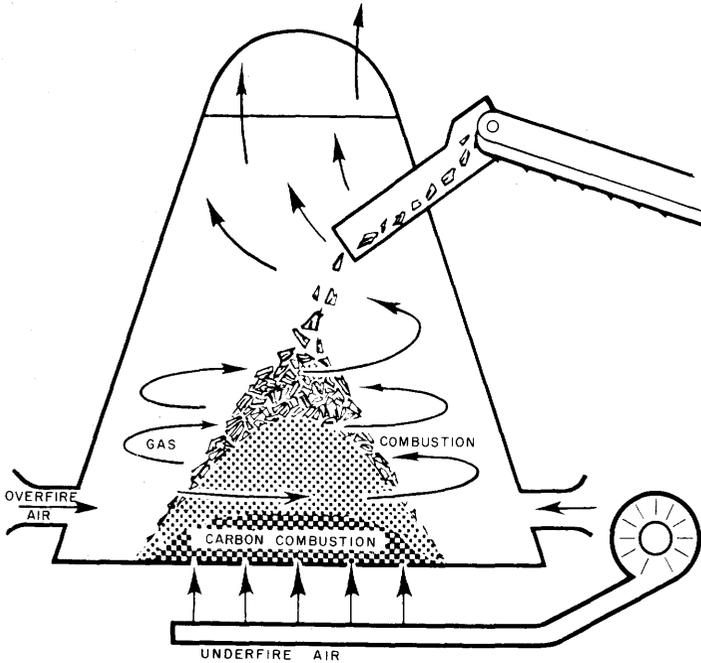


Figure 26-19.—Wigwam waste burner. (Drawing from McKenzie 1968.)

furnace temperature and use of flame monitors to cut off fuel if the burner is extinguished.

Lignin.—Kennedy (1954) has reviewed the combustion of **black liquor**, the lignin and chemical residue from the kraft pulping process. Chemical recovery is part of the technique; in the process, makeup chemicals are added to the black liquor after it is discharged from the digesters and tall oil has been recovered from it, but before it is burned in the furnace. Because of these complicating aspects, the burning of black liquor will not be discussed at length in this text.

Canovali and Suda (1970) have described techniques to incinerate malodorous gaseous compounds from the kraft process.

When black liquor is evaporated to a concentration of one-half water (by weight), it can be suspension fired with an efficiency of about 60 percent. As 1,000 lb. of steam contains about 1,100,000 B.t.u., it follows that $1,100,000/0.60$, or 1,835,000 B.t.u. of black liquor must be supplied to produce 1,000 lb. of steam. Owendry residue of black liquor (after tall oil extraction but before makeup chemicals are added) has a heat of combustion of about 6,000 B.t.u./lb. From these data and the data in table 26-5, it can be calculated that black liquor (concentrated to half water by weight) must be delivered to the steam generator at the following prices to be competitive in heating value with fossil fuels:

Fuel and cost (dollars/ton)	Equivalent cost of black liquor
<hr/> Dollars per ton <hr/>	
Coal 7.56	1.18
Oil 10.80	1.31
Gas 11.87	1.47

26-5 BYPRODUCTS FROM BARK COMBUSTION

Since the average heat of combustion of oven-dry southern pine bark is about 8,900 B.t.u./lb. (sec. 9-4), then the total heat input for each pound of moist bark (half water by weight) fired is $8,900/2$, or 4,450 B.t.u. It follows that about 225 lb. of moist bark are required for an input of 1 million B.t.u. of heat energy.

Southern pine bark—moistened until half water by weight—contains about 2.8 percent hydrogen, 28.3 percent carbon, 18.5 percent oxygen, and 0.3 percent ash (derived from table 26-4, right-hand column). From these data it can be calculated that theoretically about 770 lb. of air are required to burn 225 lb. of moist bark; i.e., $[(0.283)(11.49) + (0.028)(34.56) - (0.185)(4.32)] 225 = 769.7$ lb. The resulting flue gas will be comprised of nitrogen, carbon dioxide, and water vapor as shown by the following calculations.

Product	Source	Computation	Weight <i>Lb.</i>
Dry products			
Nitrogen.....	In 730 lb. of air.....	(770)(0.769)	= 592.1
Carbon.....	In 225 lb. of fuel.....	(225)(0.283) = 63.7	
Oxygen.....	To burn 63.7 lb. of carbon	(63.7)(2.66) = 169.4	
Carbon dioxide.....	Carbon plus oxygen.....	63.7 + 169.4	= 233.1
Water vapor			
Water.....	From hydrogen in 225 lb. of fuel	(225)(0.028)(9)	= 56.7
Water.....	From moisture in 225 lb. of fuel	(225)(0.5)	= 112.5
Water.....	From humidity of 770 lb. of theoretical air	(770)(0.013)	= 10.0

In addition to the exhaust gas, about 0.7 lb. of ash will be formed, i.e., 0.3 percent of 225 lb. of fuel.

In summary, if the input (no excess air) comprises 225 lb. of fuel, 770 lb. of dry air, and 9.5 lb. of water vapor in the combustion air for a total of about 1,005 lb. the output should be heat plus 592 lb. of nitrogen, 233 lb. of carbon dioxide, 179 lb. of water vapor, and 0.7 lb. of ash for a total of about 1,005 lb. of byproducts. Excess air is heated as it passes through the system but is discharged into the atmosphere without taking part in the combustion reactions.

With very few exceptions, the nitrogen and carbon dioxide in flue gases are not utilized, although it is technically possible to salvage and purify them for industrial use.

Similarly, ash from southern pine bark burned in steam generators is little utilized. When analyzed according to Designation D271-58 of the American Society for Testing and Materials, a limited sample of southern pine bark ash was found to contain about 27 percent CaO, 21 percent Al_2O_3 , 19 percent sand (SiO_2), 9 percent K_2O , 6 percent SO_3 , 5 percent MgO , 4 percent P_2O_5 , 3 percent Na_2O , 1 percent Fe_2O_3 , and 5 percent other material. (See table 26-7.)

No comparable data on ash from southern pine wood are published, but tests of several western woods indicate that the content of Al_2O_3 (6 percent or less) may be lower and CaO content (50 to 60 percent) higher in wood than in bark (Mingle and Boubel 1968). SiO_2 content in bark can be considerably higher than that of wood because of sand imbedded in the bark during logging operations.

If wood (or bark) ash is treated with water, the potassium compounds present dissolve and can be separated from the remaining solids; on evaporation of the solution, potash is recovered.

Large steam-generating plants need to market the ash they create, not only for economic reasons, but because in many areas there are regulations against dumping it. Ash from coal-fired plants is increasingly utilized in mixes yielding high-strength concrete for highways and high-rise buildings; a light-weight fraction of the ash (floatable on water) has been shown suitable for the manufacture of high-grade refractories (Gambis 1970a). It is likely that ash from bark or wood can be similarly marketed.

TABLE 26-7.—Analysis of ash from southern pine bark taken from single trees of four species; composition expressed as percentage of dry weight¹

Compound	Loblolly	Longleaf	Shortleaf	Slash	Average

	Percent				
SiO_2	16.4	17.2	17.0	24.5	18.8
Al_2O_3	20.8	23.0	21.5	17.5	20.7
Fe_2O_3	1.3	1.2	1.3	1.6	1.3
CaO.....	25.4	21.6	33.0	26.3	26.6
MgO	6.0	4.9	4.6	5.0	5.1
Na_2O	1.8	4.5	1.0	4.5	2.9
K_2O	10.6	10.3	6.8	8.6	9.1
TiO_2.....	.3	.5	.2	.3	.3
P_2O_5	5.5	4.8	4.0	3.2	4.4
SO_3	7.6	7.1	4.5	4.6	6.0
Unaccounted.....	4.3	4.9	6.1	3.9	4.8
TOTAL.....	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0	100.0

¹ Data from same trees described by the proximate and ultimate analyses in table 26-4; analysis according to ASTM Designation D271-58.

26-6 WASTE INCINERATORS

For years, unutilized residues of wood and bark have been incinerated in **wigwam burners** that combine the features of a gas producer (retort to destructively distill wood and bark in the absence of oxygen) and a gas combustion chamber (fig. 26-19). These incinerators, if improperly operated, pollute the air with smoke; installation of new units has therefore been sharply regulated.

McKenzie (1968) has published recommendations for improving the performance of existing wigwam burners to reduce pollution; they are summarized as follows.

Fuel must be uniformly fed to the burner at a rate commensurate with the size of the burner; the diameter of the fuel pile should be about two-thirds the base diameter of the burner.

For efficient destructive distillation in the burner, fuel should be admitted in neither excessively large chunks nor extremely fine particles; these fuel sizes require special burning techniques.

Underfire air (figure 26-19) must be adjustable to provide the correct carbon combustion rate and must distribute air uniformly at the correct rate to all portions of the base of the fuel pile.

The supply of overfire air must also be readily adjustable and must introduce air in a way that assures thorough mixing with the combustible gases in an optimum air/fuel ratio; the overfire air should induce circumferential flow to cause turbulence and maximum fuel retention time in the burner. To properly control overfire air and to insure high ignition temperatures, the burner shell must be reasonably air tight. A pyrometer to measure the temperature of exit gases, which should exceed 640° F. to burn carbon particles and 1,000° F. to burn the gas produced by distillation, is helpful in attaining optimum adjustment of overfire air. If gas exit temperature is maintained in excess of 800° F., burner operation will tend to be smokeless. Automatic control of air improves combustion.

It is good practice to remove clinker ash from the underfire outlets daily and all ash and clinker from the burner weekly.

Even well-designed burners may smoke periodically, particularly during start-up operations or when extremely wet fuel is deposited on the burning pile. Stoddard (1970) found that under such conditions, operation of three natural gas torches spaced around the burner perimeter substantially lessened smoke emission; the torches were horizontally mounted in short sections of 18-inch pipe that penetrated the burner wall near ground level.

In a 1967 survey of sawmill waste burners on the West Coast, Boubel (1968) found that particulate emissions from wigwam burners varied from a low of 0.004 grain/cu. ft. of flue gas (corresponding to 0.17 lb./ton of fuel burned) to a high of 0.607 grain/cu. ft. of gas (26.94 lb./ton of fuel). Percent of ash in emissions was negatively correlated with gas

temperature at emission; in the range from 90 to 1,500° F., high emission temperatures corresponded with low particulate emissions.

Further information on wigwam burners and incinerators of various kinds can be found in the following publications (chronologically arranged); all but four report work done at Oregon State University; the design described by Lausmann (1970) has considerable acceptance on the West Coast.

Boubel et al. (1958, 1965)
 Boubel (1965, 1968)
 Kreichelt (1966)
 Boubel and Wise (1968)
 Corder et al. (1968)
 McKenzie (1968)

Atherton and Corder (1969)
 Cowan (1969)
 Franklin (1969)
 Corder et al. (1970)
 Lausmann (1970)
 Stoddard (1970)

26-7 DOMESTIC FIREPLACES, STOVES, AND FURNACES

Farms in the rural South have long used dry split pine to fire cooking stoves, and virtually all people in the southern pine region have used lightwood (resin-rich southern pine wood—usually stumpwood) to start fireplace fires. Because natural gas, oil, and coal have largely replaced wood as a domestic fuel in the South, discussion will be limited to listing a few pertinent references.

Subject and reference

- Fireplace wood
 Simmons 1951)
 Nagle and Manthy (1966)
- Stoves and furnaces
 Jenkins and Guernsey (1937)
 Winters (1939)
 Harris (1942)
 Reineke (1947, 1965)
 Northeastern Wood Utilization Council (1949abc)
- Frost protection in orchards and citrus groves
 Corder (1961)

26-8 LITERATURE CITED

- Atherton, G. H., and Corder, S. E.
 1969. A study of wood and bark residue disposal in the forest products industries. Oreg. State Univ. Forest Res. Lab., 60 pp.
- Barron, A., Jr.
 1970. Studies on the collection of bark char throughout the industry. TAPPI 53: 1441-1448.
- Beall, F. C.
 1968. Thermal degradation analysis of wood and wood components. Ph.D. Thesis. N.Y. State Coll. Forest. at Syracuse. 312 p.
- Beall, F. C., and Eickner, H. W.
 1970. Thermal degradation of wood components: a review of the literature. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. FPL-130, 26 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.

- Booth, J. B.
1966. Some guidelines to aid in the selection of collectors for hogged fuel applications. *Pulp and Pap.* 40(27): 32-33.
- Boubel, R. W.
1965. Wood residue incineration in tepee burners. *Oreg. State Univ. Eng. Exp. Sta. Circ.* 34, 30 pp.
- Boubel, R. W.
1968. Particulate emissions for sawmill waste burners. *Oreg. State Univ. Eng. Exp. Sta. Bull.* 42, 12 pp.
- Boubel, R. W., Northcraft, M., Van Vliet, A., and Popovich, M.
1958. Wood waste disposal and utilization. *Oreg. State Coll. Eng. Exp. Sta. Bull.* 39, 96 pp.
- Boubel, R. W., Thornburgh, G. E., and Pavelka, B. R.
1965. A study of wood waste disposal by combustion and its effect on air quality in the Medford area. *Oreg. State Univ. Eng. Exp. Sta. Proj.* 307, 60 pp.
- Boubel, R. W., and Wise, K. R.
1968. An emission sampling probe installed, operated, and retrieved from ground level. *J. Air Pollut. Contr. Assoc.* 18(2): 84-85.
- Browne, F. L.
1958. Theories of the combustion of wood and its control. A survey of the literature. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 2136, 59 pp.
- Browne, F. L., and Tang, W. K.
1962. Thermogravimetric and differential thermal analysis of wood and of wood treated with inorganic salts during pyrolysis. *Fire Res. Abstr. and Rev.* 4(1&2): 76-91.
- Canovali, L. L., and Suda, S.
1970. Case history of selection and installation of a kraft recovery odor-reduction system. *TAPPI* 53: 1488-1493.
- Corder, S. E.
1958. Suspension drying of sawdust. *Forest Prod. J.* 8: 5-10.
- Corder, S. E.
1961. Wood fuel for protecting crops from frost. *Oreg. Forest Res. Center, Forest Prod. Res. Inform. Circ.* 16, 28 pp.
- Corder, S. E., Atherton, G. H., Hyde, P. E., and Bonlie, R. W.
1970. Wood and bark residue disposal in wigwam burners. *Ore. State Univ. Forest Res. Lab. Bull.* 11, 68 pp.
- Corder, S. E., Atherton, G. H., and Murray, M. L.
1968. A bibliography of selected references from the study "Disposal of wood and bark wastes by incineration or alternative means." *Oreg. State Univ. Sch. Forest. and Public Health Serv.* 48 pp.
- Cowan, W. C.
1969. Conical refuse burners—principles of efficiency. *In Wood utilization*, pp. 21-26. *Proc. Annu. Meeting Mid-South Sect. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.*
- Ellwanger, R.
1952. Suspension burning of bark refuse. *TAPPI* 35: 108-111.
- Fons, W. L.
1950. Heating and ignition of small wood cylinders. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 42: 2130-2133.
- Franklin, D. M.
1969. Waste disposal by burning. *In Wood utilization*, pp. 9-12. *Proc. Annu. Meeting Mid-South Sect. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.*
- Gambs, G. C.
1970a. Expanding the market for fly ash. *Mech. Eng.* 92(1): 26-28.
- Gambs, G. C.
1970b. The electric utility industry: future fuel requirements 1970-1990. *Mech. Eng.* 92(4): 42-48.
- Graf, S. H.
1949. Ignition temperatures of various papers, woods, and fabrics. *Oreg. State Coll. Eng. Exp. Sta. Bull.* 26, 69 pp.
- Harris, P.
1942. Burning sawdust. *Wood* 7(3): 70-72.
- Host, J. R., and Lowery, D. P.
1970. Potentialities for using bark to generate steam power in western Montana. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(2): 35-36.

- Jenkins, J. H., and Guernsey, F. W.
1937. The utilization of sawmill waste and sawdust for fuel. Can. Dep. Mines and Resources Vancouver Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Circ. 48, 15 pp.
- Johnson, E. J., and Koch, P.
1972. Thermal reactions of small loblolly pine cubes heated on one face in an air atmosphere. Wood Sci. 4: 154-162.
- Kennedy, E. H.
1954. The burning of sulfate, soda and sulfite waste liquors. Combustion 26(5): 52-59.
- Koch, P.
1969. Specific heat of oven-dry spruce pine wood and bark. Wood Sci. 1: 203-214.
- Koch, P., and Mullen, J. F.
1971. Bark from southern pine may find use as fuel. Forest Ind. 98(4): 36-37.
- Kollmann, F. F. P., and Côté, W. A., Jr.
1968. Principles of wood science and technology. I. Solid wood. 592 pp. N.Y.: Springer-Verlag New York, Inc.
- Kreichelt, T. E.
1966. Air pollution aspects of teepee burners. U.S. Dep. Health, Educ., and Welfare, Div. Air Pollut. Public Health Serv. Pub. 999-AP-28, 35 pp.
- Lausmann, J.
1970. Lausmann modification to teepee burners. Twenty-fifth Northwest Wood Prod. Clin. Proc., pp. 51-55.
- MacKay, G. D. M.
1967. Mechanism of thermal degradation of cellulose: a review of the literature. Can. Dep. Forest. Dep. Pub. 1201, 20 pp.
- McKenzie, H. W.
1968. Wigwam waste burner guide and data book. Oreg. State Sanit. Authority, 24 pp. Portland.
- Matson, A. F., Dufour, R. E., and Breen, J. F.
1959. Survey of available information on ignition of wood exposed to moderately elevated temperatures. In Performance of type B gas events for gas-fired appliances, p. 269-279. Underwrit. Lab., Inc. Bull. Res. 51
- Mingle, J. G., and Boubel, R. W.
1968. Proximate fuel analysis of some western wood and bark. Wood Sci. 1: 29-36.
- Mullen, J. F.
1964. A method for determining combustible loss, dust emission, and recirculated refuse for a solid fuel burning system. Amer. Soc. Mech. Eng. Pap. 64-WA-FU-4, 13 pp. Windsor, Conn.
- Mullen, J. F.
1968. System for pneumatically transporting high-moisture fuels such as bagasse and bark and an included furnace for drying and burning those fuels in suspension under high turbulence. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,387,574.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Nagle, G. S., and Manthy, R. S.
1966. The market for fireplace wood in an urban area of Connecticut. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. NE-51, 16 pp. Northeast Forest Exp. Sta., Upper Darby, Penn.
- Northeastern Wood Utilization Council.
1949a. A home made wood burning furnace. Northeast. Wood Util. Council. Bull. 26, 11 pp. New Haven.
- Northeastern Wood Utilization Council.
1949b. How to burn wood. Northeast. Wood Util. Council. Bull. 28, 18 pp. New Haven.
- Northeastern Wood Utilization Council.
1949c. The woodomat furnace. Northeast. Wood Util. Council. Bull. 27, 15 pp. New Haven.
- O'Neill, M. J.
1964. An analysis of a temperature-controlled scanning calorimeter. Anal. Chem. 36: 1238-1245.

- Reineke, L. H.
1947. Wood fuel combustion practice. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 1666-18, 11 p.
- Reineke, L. H.
1965. Wood fuel preparation. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-090, 14 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Roberson, J. E.
1967. Selecting bark burning equipment. Pulp and Pap. 41(40): 33-34.
- Simmons, F. C.
1951. Harvesting fuelwood in stick form. *In* Wood fuel, pp. 21-34. Northeast. Wood Util. Council. Bull. 35. New Haven.
- Stamm, A. J.
1964. Wood and cellulose science. 549 pp. N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.
- Sternitzke, H. S., and Nelson, T. C.
1970. The southern pines of the United States. *Econ. Bot.* 24: 142-150.
- Stoddard, C. L.
1970. Small plants efforts to meet air pollution regulations. Twenty-fifth Northwest Wood Prod. Clin. Proc., pp. 57-70.
- Watson, E. S., O'Neill, M. J., Justin, J., and Brenner, N.
1964. A differential scanning calorimeter for quantitative differential thermal analysis. *Anal. Chem.* 36: 1233-1238.
- Weldon, D.
1966. The volume and location of southern yellow pine bark in east Texas. *Tex. Forest Serv. Circ.* 101, 7 pp.
- Weldon, D.
1967. Volume and location of southern yellow pine sawdust in east Texas. *Tex. Forest Serv. Circ.* 106, 10 pp.
- Winters, R. K.
1939. Fuelwood consumption in the lower South. *J. Forest.* 37: 445-448.



27

Pulping

CONTENTS

	Page
27-1 MECHANICAL PULPING	1414
MANUFACTURE OF STONE GROUNDWOOD ..	1416
<i>Effects of gross wood properties and fiber morphology</i>	1416
<i>Resin content</i>	1421
<i>Fungus attack</i>	1422
<i>Grinding practices</i>	1423
MANUFACTURE OF REFINER GROUNDWOOD	1427
<i>Strength and printability</i>	1427
<i>Energy required</i>	1431
GENERAL	1431
 27-2 KRAFT PULPING	 1431
THE PROCESS	1434
FACTORS AFFECTING PULP YIELD	1436
<i>Kappa number</i>	1436
<i>Alkali charge</i>	1437
<i>Sulfidity</i>	1438
<i>Chip size</i>	1438
<i>Carbohydrate stabilization</i>	1438
<i>Wood quality</i>	1439
EFFECT OF WOOD QUALITY ON PAPER PROPERTIES	1439
<i>Sheet density</i>	1441
<i>Breaking length</i>	1442
<i>Burst factor</i>	1442
<i>Tear factor</i>	1442
EFFECT OF SPECIES AND PULPING CONDITIONS ON PAPER PROPERTIES	1443
PRACTICAL ASPECTS	1445

	Page
27-3 SULFITE PULPING	1446
ACID SULFITE PULPING	1447
BISULFITE PULPING	1449
MULTISTAGE SULFITE PULPING	1451
NEUTRAL SULFITE PULPING (SINGLE STAGE)	1452
FUTURE POSSIBILITIES FOR SULFITE PULPING OF THE SOUTHERN PINES	1453
27-4 DISSOLVING PULP	1454
PROCESSES	1457
<i>Soda (linters)</i>	1457
<i>Sulfite (general)</i>	1457
<i>Sulfite (southern pine)</i>	1459
<i>Sulfate (southern pine)</i>	1459
<i>Sulfite-sulfate comparisons</i>	1460
SPECIES	1462
27-5 LITERATURE CITED	1463

Pulping

Southern pines grown in the United States supply 45 percent of the kraft pulp manufactured in the world (Kleppe 1970). They also supply 41 percent of the mechanical pulp (Trevelyan 1969) and almost 40 percent of the market dissolving pulp (Durso 1969) produced in the United States.

In 1962, annual harvest from the 105 million acres of southern pine commercial forest totalled 2.5 billion cu. ft. Of this total pine volume, more than 50 percent (1.3 billion cu. ft.) was converted into pulp products (USDA Forest Service 1965, pp. 195-197, 205). It is evident that the pulp industry is a major factor in southern pine utilization. Readers interested in industry statistics will find Welch's (1970) summary of southern pulpwood production useful.

One of the objectives of wood scientists everywhere is complete utilization of all the substance in every tree. Research on pulping processes has made particularly significant progress toward this objective. The southern pulp industry has taken giant strides in recovery of pulpable chips from sawmill and plywood mill residues. Even sawdust is being increasingly utilized by the industry (Cumbie 1969). Extensive reclamation of waste paper, currently under intensive study (Anonymous 1970), shows promise of further stretching the wood resource. These programs will continue to significantly improve utilization of wood harvested throughout the South.

Continuous research is conducted by numerous private and public laboratories to improve the efficiency of equipment and pulping processes. Of the three major methods by which pine is pulped, the kraft and sulfite processes are chemical and separate cellulose from the other wood constituents. Since southern pine wood is less than half alpha-cellulose (see ch. 6), these processes inherently give pulp yields from 40 to 55 percent of the oven-dry weight of wood pulped.

The chemical processes (kraft or sulfite) can be stopped short of a full chemical cook so that chips discharged from the digester are only softened for subsequent conversion into fibers by mechanical means. By such a **semichemical** process, pulp yields for some purposes can be increased substantially (range 60 to over 80 percent).

Fully mechanical processes, which produce pulp for newsprint, coated papers, and insulating board, by physically separating wood fibers without greatly changing their chemistry—and hence have nearly 100-percent yield—offer the greatest possibilities for improvement. One approach has been suggested by McMillin's (1968, 1969abc) work with experimental refiner pulps from loblolly pine. His findings point to the possibility that

further research may make a larger fraction of wood usable through a mechanical process whereby thick-walled, stiff, tubular southern pine cells can be unwound into flat, fibrillated, relatively conformable, ribbon-like elements. Strong, versatile pulps from improved high-yield mechanical processes—if they could be developed—would likely find expanded markets in competition with lower yield chemical pulps, thus meeting increased demands with less raw material.

27-1 MECHANICAL PULPING¹

Growing demand for newsprint after 1920 directed the industry's attention toward the large reserves of pine in the United States, Canada, Western Europe, and Russia. Before 1940, experimental work was done in all these countries or regions. Commercial production of pine groundwood for newsprint seems to have been achieved during this period in Canada from jack pine, *Pinus banksiana* Lamb., (Paterson 1937); in France from maritime pine, *Pinus pinaster* Ait., (Porphyre 1929); and in Russia (Martynoff and Weiss 1937). Large-scale commercial production of groundwood in the South began in January 1940 when the Southland Paper Mills, Inc. went into the production of newsprint at Lufkin, Tex. (McHale 1948). Succeeding years saw steady, if not spectacular growth of groundwood production for newsprint in locations widely distributed throughout the South.

Substantial demands also developed for pine groundwood in coated publication papers, insulating board, and asphalt-impregnated sheathing. It is interesting to note that Bedford Pulp and Paper Co. produced pine groundwood for wrapping paper in the early 1930's, well before commercial production of newsprint began at the Southland mill (Foster 1932.)

Figure 27-1 shows the location of the current producers of southern pine newsprint and those projected to be producing by the end of 1970. Forty-one percent of the U.S. groundwood capacity is now in the South (table 27-1). Nearly three-quarters of the 1966-1969 expansion in the newsprint industry of the United States took place in this region.

The establishment of a newsprint industry in the South owes much to the enthusiastic research of Dr. C. H. Herty and his co-workers at the laboratory he helped found in Savannah, Ga. (Herty 1933). Concurrent with Herty's work were studies by many others in industrial laboratories and institutions. Schafer, of the USDA Forest Products Laboratory, Madison, Wis., and Brecht in Germany were particularly active in publishing research results on pine species. Despite the size of the pine groundwood industry in the South today, however, the literature on it is not extensive and contains few descriptions of modern operating practices.

¹ With minor editorial changes, sec. 27-1 is taken from Trevelyan (1969) by permission of Benjamin J. Trevelyan and the Forest Products Research Society.

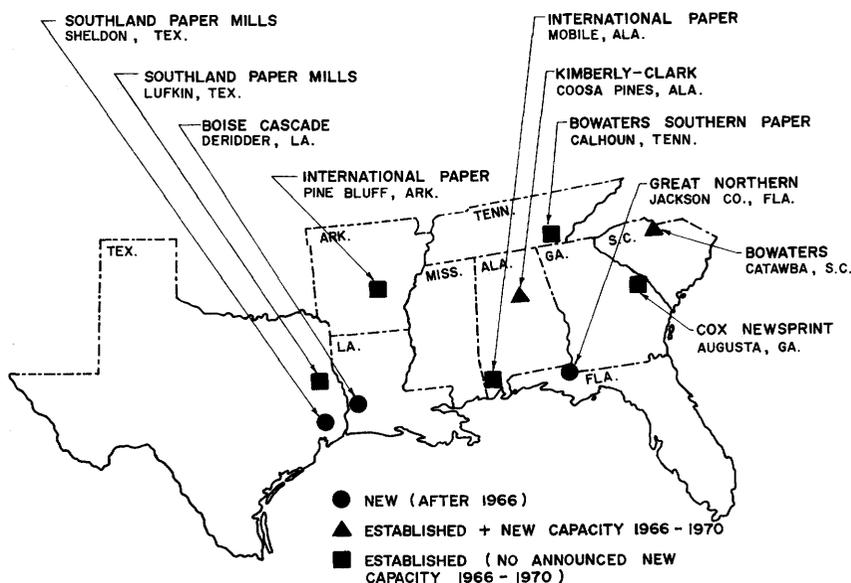


Figure 27-1.—Location of current producers of newsprint in the South and those projected to be producing by the end of 1970. (Drawing after Trevelyan 1969.)

A number of textbooks (Klemm 1958; Johnson 1960; Gavelin 1966) and numerous papers are available on the general subjects of groundwood manufacture and groundwood properties. The following discussion is concentrated on the factors and problems associated with, and peculiar to, the production of mechanical pulp from pines.

TABLE 27-1.—Groundwood pulp capacity in the United States (American Paper Institute 1968)

	1966		1969	
	Number of mills	Capacity <i>Tons/year</i>	Number of mills	Capacity <i>Tons/year</i>
South Atlantic ¹ -----	3	271,000	4	411,000
East south central ² -----	6	814,000	6	936,000
West south central ³ -----	3	444,000	4	658,000
Total United States (exclusive of above three regions)	----	2,701,000	----	2,882,000

¹ South Atlantic—Delaware, Maryland, District of Columbia, Virginia, West Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia, and Florida.

² East south central—Kentucky, Tennessee, Alabama, and Mississippi.

³ West south central—Arkansas, Louisiana, Oklahoma, and Texas.

Currently all mills producing mechanical pulp in the South rely on **stone grinders** to effect the reduction of boltwood to fibers. **Disk refiners** (in which chips or fiber bundles are further reduced between counter-rotating plates fixed in close proximity) are used only in the processing of rejects from the screening and cleaning operations.

Most of the experimental work reported in the literature was done with loblolly pine; references were also made to shortleaf, longleaf, slash, and occasionally other pines.

MANUFACTURE OF STONE GROUNDWOOD

The characteristics of southern pines which gave rise to major problems in the manufacture of groundwood are:

- The presence of thick-walled, stiff, latewood fibers, and the high ratio of these latewood fibers to earlywood fibers.
- The high resin content of pines compared with northern species such as the spruces (*Picea* spp.) and balsam fir (*Abies balsamea* (L.) Mill.).
- The susceptibility of the pines to attack by blue-stain and other fungi under the hot, humid climatic conditions of the South.

Eventually, methods were developed to cope with the problems arising from all three characteristics.

Effects of gross wood properties and fiber morphology.—The predominance of latewood in southern pine proved the most difficult problem in groundwood production. The subject has been much discussed in the literature, most recently by Chidester (1966). Figure 27-2 illustrates the fact that shortleaf, in common with the other pines, has more latewood than northern black spruce (*Picea mariana* (Mill.) B.S.P.). Table 27-2 illustrates other important differences between southern pine and the northern pulp species. The earlywood fibers of southern pine are thin walled, flexible (see ch. 5), and quite comparable to northern spruce in papermaking properties. The latewood fibers, however, are thick walled, inflexible, and tend to be nonconforming when incorporated into a paper sheet. Because of the high proportion of latewood fibers, groundwood pulp from southern pine tends to yield rough, porous, low-density paper. To overcome this problem and to obtain the proper balance of fines and larger fractions for papermaking, the latewood fibers must therefore be thoroughly disintegrated (Bishop 1959). The many fewer fibers per unit weight of pulp from latewood of southern pines support these observations (table 27-2).

An important consequence of the presence of latewood is its influence on wood density (see ch. 7 and fig. 27-11). One of the few benefits of high latewood content is its influence on wood cost (Chidester 1966). The thick-walled fibers yield wood of high density at a relatively rapid rate of growth. Klemm (1950) noted that wood purchased on a volume basis

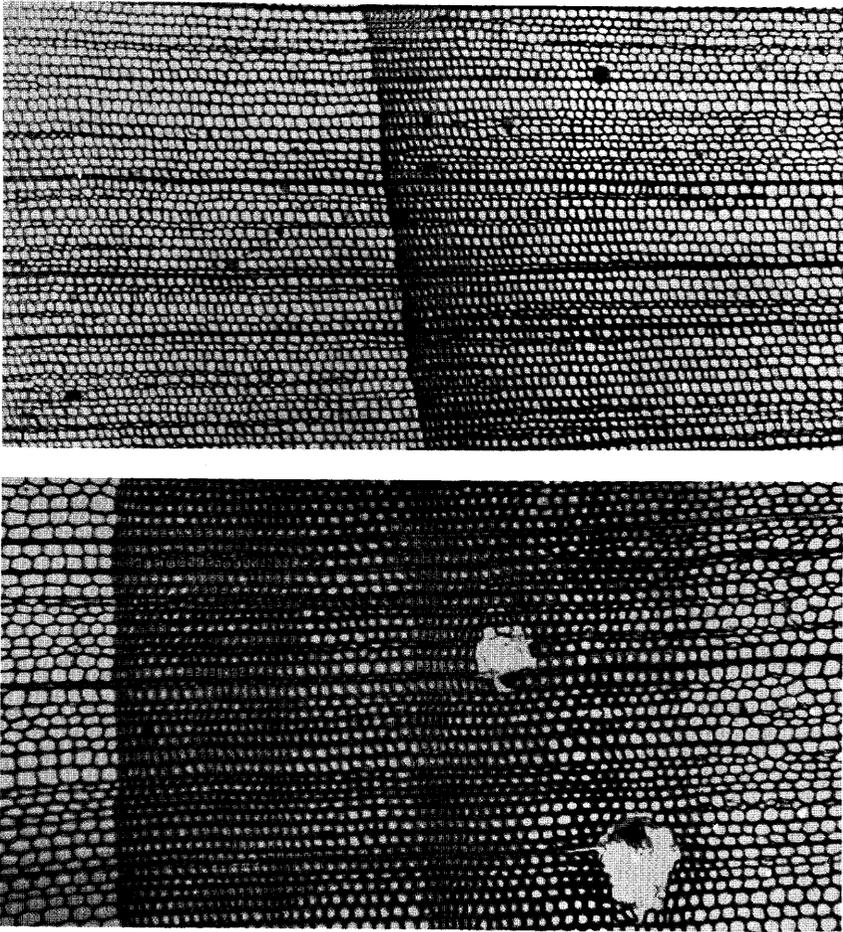


Figure 27-2.—Photomicrographs of northern black spruce (top) and shortleaf pine (bottom), showing the distinct differences in percentages of latewood between these species. (Photo from Trevelyan 1969.)

costs least per ton if it has a high latewood content; he further observed, however, that the best quality paper is made from wood with a high earlywood content.

The amount of latewood—and hence the density—of southern pine is influenced by a variety of factors including age, location of the wood in the stem, growth rate, and geographical location (see secs. 4-3, 7-5, and 7-6). Loblolly pine wood formed during the fifth year of growth has been reported as 75 percent earlywood, that formed in the 10th year as 66 percent, and during the 15th year as 60 percent². Chidester (1966)

² Ciriacks, J. A., and Knight, V. J. Juvenile and mature wood trials in newsprint. Kimberly-Clark Corp., Neenah, Wis. Unpublished. 1968.

TABLE 27-2.—Measurements of latewood tracheids in kraft fiber from several northern and southern softwood species¹

	Fiber length	Fiber diameter	3 mm. fibers ² per gram
	Mm.	μm.	Number × 10 ⁻⁶
Spruce	3.26	30	2.84
Balsam fir	3.15	32	2.82
Jack pine	3.10	29	2.84
Loblolly pine	3.67	36	1.87
Longleaf pine	3.59	34	1.77
Shortleaf pine	4.23	36	1.71
Virginia pine	3.56	30	2.32

¹ Braun, R. V. 1961. Unpublished data.

² A Kimberly-Clark test used to express fiber coarseness. Note that the numbers bear an inverse relation to those determined by TAPPI Suggested Method T234 Su67.

found that wall thickness of latewood cells and percentage of latewood increase considerably up to the 10th year and beyond; the progressively less mature wood up the tree stem shows a progressively decreasing density. Since rapid growth may reduce density (Bray and Curran 1938; see also text p. 244), the use of young and rapidly grown wood was recommended over 30 years ago by Schafer et al. (1938) for production of high-quality groundwood. These factors, together with environmental effects (sec. 4-3), cause variability in the wood supply, which is reflected in pulp quality. Variability in the specific gravity of southern pine wood is discussed in chapter 7; chapter 5 has quantitative information on variability of tracheid dimensions.

The presence of latewood in varying proportions presented very real operating problems to the groundwood manufacturer. High quality groundwood contains a rather delicate balance of fiber size distribution and of fiber characteristics within each fraction. The surface and composition of a stone are carefully chosen to yield the quality of groundwood demanded. For southern pine, the choice of stone is not easy since the high-density latewood fibers present an entirely different wood surface to the grinding stone than do the earlywood fibers. Unfortunately, they have to be ground together. Compared to southern pine, the northern softwoods present a relatively uniform raw material.

The steps finally taken to resolve the problems caused by latewood and wood density variations are only sketchily reported in the literature. In discussing the effect of wood density, Fuller and Carpenter (1938) noted that at the same **mullen strength** dense wood gave consistently lower **freeness** pulp than less dense wood. (Mullen strength is defined as the

hydrostatic pressure required to rupture a 1.2-inch-diameter circular paper sheet. Freeness is the quality of pulp related to the rate at which it parts with water when formed into a sheet or mat on a wire screen; the index number is positively correlated with this rate.) After much research by the Herty Foundation and others, Carpenter (1939) agreed essentially with Walker (1937) that coarse stones were best for southern pine and recommended that they be dull.

In a report written many years after the startup of the Southland mill, McHale and Porter (1954) discussed rather candidly the problems encountered with pulp quality. Reading between the lines, one can only guess at the many technical crises this mill must have faced in its early days. As suggested by Walker, Southland initially used relatively coarse stones of high hardness. This approach was abandoned, however, because heat release from the high power input necessary on pine caused breakage of segments and spalling of stone faces. There followed 18 to 24 months of development in cooperation with stone manufacturers. The solution was to use stones which produced a pulp much lower in freeness with considerably more fines fraction than that typical of spruce. The high specific surface of these fibers and the high specific filtration resistance gave the sheet properties necessary to make southern newsprint competitive with Canadian.

This solution is being pursued by all other manufacturers of newsprint in the South. An effort is made to maximize the energy input (as usually expressed by horsepower-days per ton) at lower freeness levels in accordance with the well-known positive relationship between energy consumption and pulp quality; as in other machining processes, more specific machining energy is required to produce small pieces than large (e.g., see fig. 19-75). Thoroughly defibrated southern pine yields strong pulp of low freeness. Grinder conditions are therefore chosen with this intention, and experimental work is still continuing to effect further improvements. Table 27-3 compares typical southern pine groundwood with northern black spruce groundwood. Differences in freeness, strength levels, and other properties are apparent. The differences in fractionation are concentrated mostly in the +28 and -200 fractions. While some of the differences noted in table 27-3 may be partly due to the systems involved and not due to wood species alone, it is felt these data tend to be typical for the two woods.

The literature contains few comparisons of groundwood made from the different southern pine species, although some unreported studies may have been made. Density variations within a species may be more significant in determining groundwood quality than differences between species (Fuller and Carpenter 1938). Currently a number of companies exclude longleaf and slash pine wood because of the coarseness of their fibers and their high resin content. Virginia pine, with its finer fiber structure, seems to be a particularly favorable species. It has more 3-mm.

TABLE 27-3.—*Comparison of northern and southern stone groundwoods for newsprint¹*

Factor ²	Northern black spruce	Southern pine
Freeness.....	72.0	48.0
Burst factor.....	17.6	11.6
Tear factor.....	36.0	25.0
Tensile.....	4009	2712
Percent stretch.....	1.6	1.3
Brightness.....	64.0	61.9
Opacity.....	94.2	92.9
Fractionation (percent re- tained on each screen in sequence) ³		
28.....	11.0	3.3
48.....	18.7	12.2
100.....	20.3	21.1
200.....	13.4	14.7
-200.....	36.6	48.7
Drainage time.....	27.6	51.8

¹ Kimberly-Clark unpublished data.

² TAPPI standards.

³ According to the USDA Forest Products Laboratory (correspondence), some southern pine newsprint mills make fewer coarse fibers and more fines than tabulated here.

fibers per gram than the other southern pines (table 27-2). The immediate effect on the pulp in changing from a wood mix which is predominantly loblolly to pure longleaf or pure Virginia pine is a rise or drop in pulp freeness, respectively. This suggests a reason for variations in freeness and pulp quality when using a wood supply uncontrolled in proportion of wood species. Where one or two species predominate, such as loblolly or shortleaf, this factor would be minor.

Currently, commercial mills put little emphasis on selecting by species. What selection is being practiced is somewhat dependent on geography. Groundwood mills that have predominantly loblolly and shortleaf pines in their mix can tolerate small quantities of less desirable species. Mills in Alabama that occasionally receive sizable quantities of longleaf are quite conscious of the coarse fiber and high pitch problems to which this species gives rise. They try to keep longleaf separate and prefer to consign it to the kraft mills. Slash pine in large quantities is similarly avoided, largely because of its resin content.

A number of mills are aware of the potential advantage of Virginia pine, but each has also had some problems due to the limbiness of this tree. Knots give rise to many fines in the groundwood, absorb much energy, and can damage the stones. No mill at present is purposely select-

ing Virginia pine for groundwood, but a number of mills are attempting to grow Virginia pine of better form.

Resin content.—The problems that could arise from the high resin content of southern pines were well recognized in the early experimental work on groundwood. Early researchers were hopeful they could be avoided by using only wood from young stems, free of heartwood (Herty 1933; Schafer et al. 1938; Brecht et al. 1940). Brecht et al. (1938) showed that high water temperatures in the pit (see fig. 27-3g) increased the proportion of the resin entering the water phase. Kirmreuther (1938) recommended 65° to 70° C.; Wetmore and Dunphy (1949) recommended 93° C.

More effective were chemical approaches to the problem. Martynoff and Weiss (1937) recommended grinding at 80° C. with the addition of 2 percent Na_2CO_3 . Paterson (1937) found that control of pH with alum allowed the use of a good proportion of jack pine fed to grinders; he recommended an acid condition. Freeman (1947) recommended the use of phosphates at the grinder. However, the judicious use of alum and sodium hydroxide proved finally to be more effective.

McHale and Porter (1954) described the solution to the pitch problem at Southland. As recommended by Herty, the mill was initially supplied with young wood having a minimum of heartwood. Hot water soaking of the pulpwood was also thought to be of some benefit. Alum was not used at the grinders, but was applied at later stages; much of the wash water was not recycled. Nevertheless, pitch caused serious problems that

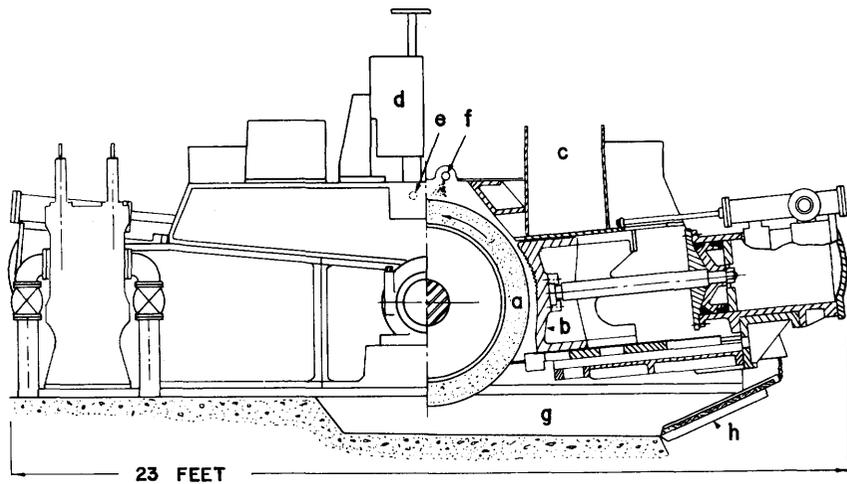


Figure 27-3.—Sectional view of two-pocket Great Northern-Waterous grinder. a, pulp stone; b, hydraulically operated pressure foot retracts automatically to admit a new charge of wood as required; c, hopper for incoming bolts of wood; d, hydraulically operated dressing and truing lathe; e, position of burr; f, top shower; g, pit; h, adjustable dam. (Drawing from Montague Machine Company.)

were eventually remedied by adding alum at controlled rates to the fresh water of the grinder showers (fig. 27-3f). This not only controlled the pitch problem, but permitted recycling wash water for additional dilution, and obviated the need for hot soaking and careful selection of the wood. A Canadian patent was granted to Carpenter et al. (1949) on alum addition in this manner.

A modification of the Southland process was patented by Craig and Hackbert (1958) who generated an unstable, nascent hydrosol of aluminum hydroxide by the addition of caustic to alum in the shower water at a controlled pH in the range 4 to 6. The hydrosol considerably increases stability of the pitch.

According to Jenkins (1966), pitch problems with groundwood for publication grade papers were not fully solved at Bowaters' Carolina plant by regulation of pH, temperature, and age of the wood supply, nor by avoidance of shocks to the system.

In current practice, all southern newsprint manufacturers are adding alum to the showers on the stone at a pH sufficient (4.8 to 6.0) to precipitate colloidal aluminum hydroxide. All mills except one add caustic to the shower water to control pH. All mills except the same one keep their **white water** (waters of a pulp or paper mill which have been separated from the pulp suspension at the grinder, accessory equipment, or paper machine) systems as closed as possible and therefore use mainly white water at the showers. The one exception uses fresh water only at the showers. This water is received at such high pH that caustic is not required. The quantity of alum added at the showers varies from 25 to 40 lb. per ton of finished product. Additional alum is used at the paper machine.

Fungus attack.—In the warm climate of the South, stain fungi seriously attack stored pulpwood, the most common being those causing blue stain (ch. 16); badly infected wood produces a gray, unattractive groundwood. Decay fungi develop and cause deterioration with further storage. Herty (1933), who sometimes peeled and ground experimental bolts the same day they were cut, recommended a low inventory of wood at the mill, a common practice at the then existing kraft mills in the South.

Later, studies determined the limits of damage to pulp by the blue-stain fungus. Brecht et al. (1940) concluded that loss of **brightness** was the sole effect (brightness, measured under standardized conditions, is an index of pulp or paper reflectivity of a specified light); strength properties and power consumption were unaffected. Schafer et al. (1938) came to a similar conclusion in experiments with *Ceratostomella pilifera*, one of the most common blue-stain organisms. He found that up to 10 percent stained wood caused a masking of the natural orange without loss of **whiteness**; an excess of 20 percent stained wood, however, caused a distinct loss of whiteness. (Whiteness is an index of the degree to which pulp or paper approaches ideal white.)

Storage of wood in ponds (Moon 1954) or under water sprays prevents blue stain and decay by keeping wood moisture too high for the fungi to flourish (sec. 16-5). In an unpublished study³, wood fresh cut, peeled, and ground, was compared with similar wood stored 25 days under water sprays and with wood stored dry. The wood aged wet discolored only on the surface with a slimy growth. Upon grinding, the brightness dropped only 0.5 point compared to the control. The wood aged dry was markedly blue stained, yielding groundwood with brightness 7.5 points lower than the control. Aging the wood either wet or dry substantially increased freeness, especially in the wood aged wet. Mason et al. (1963) studied wood similarly stored for 6 months at Bowaters. Pulp from the wet-aged wood dropped significantly in brightness but not nearly so much as the pulp from dry-aged wood.

Most mills make every effort to keep the time period between cutting and grinding the wood as short as possible; therefore all mills maintain very small inventories of wood for groundwood. Where it is necessary to store wood, every effort is made to turn it over as rapidly as possible. The general reaction of mill personnel is, "The fresher the wood, the better." Such wood not only yields maximum-brightness pulp but also is more responsive to bleach chemicals such as zinc hydrosulfite.

Grinding practices.—There are few published descriptions of modern operating practices and equipment used in groundwood operations in the South. Groundwood used at paper machines is a product of a total system and not just of the grinders. Much attention has been given to screening, cleaning, and rejects handling to meet requirements for such properties as the optical characteristics, strength, formation properties, and freedom from shivy material (bundles of fibers).

In order to more clearly define current practices, a survey was made of all the major newsprint and publication grade producers consuming pine groundwood in the South.

All mills except one use Great-Northern-type grinders (fig. 27-3) exclusively. The one exception was originally equipped with ring-type grinders which are still in use. However, this mill also has installed Great Northerns in its expansion since 1958. The southern newsprint industry, since its beginning in 1940, has tended to use increasingly larger grinders with larger stones, higher connected horsepower, higher grinding pressures, and increased rotational speed. The most recent stones are 67 inches in diameter with a 69-inch face. The original mills did not have over 2,500 attached hp. per grinder. Much of the current expansion has been made with 6,000 and 8,000 hp. per grinder, and grinders with 10,000 hp. are in sight. Grinding pressures are increasing; line pressures of 400 to 500 p.s.i. are common now, with considerable interest being shown in pressures up to 850 or more. In past practice, grinding pressures have

³ Cottle, B. J. Groundwood physical qualities of fresh-cut, aged-dry, and aged-wet pine. Kimberly-Clark Corp., Neenah, Wis. Unpublished. 1956.

been in the range from 15 to 35 lb./sq. in. of wood in contact with the stone; currently, grinding pressures on the wood may be as high as 100 p.s.i. Rotational speeds and peripheral velocities are increasing. Some of the original stones operated at 200 r.p.m. The most recent are geared as high as 360 r.p.m.

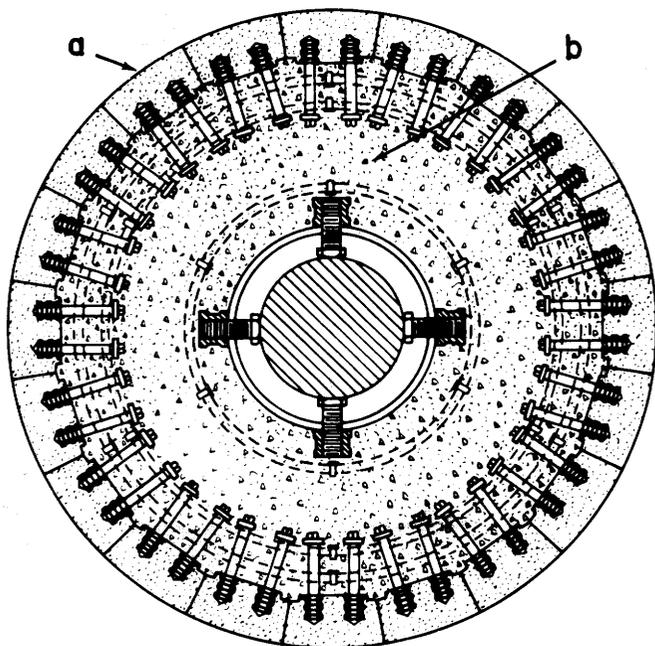
A two-pocket machine with 8,000 hp. driving a 67-inch stone with 69-inch face at 360 r.p.m. might turn out 100 tons of air-dry southern pine pulp for newsprint per 24-hour day.

Stone composition (fig. 27-4) and conditioning are much debated. All mills, with one exception, are presently using both alumina and silicon carbide stones. The consensus seems to be that the silicon carbide stones preferred by the majority, produce a high quality pulp at a higher freeness with increased energy consumption per ton and somewhat lower production rate. The fused alumina stones give a lower +28 fraction and a much higher 100-200 fraction. The lowest energy consumption per ton occurs at the mill using predominantly fused alumina stones, that is, 65 to 70 hp.-days versus 80 to 85 hp.-days/ton for a mill using nearly all silicon carbide stones (at roughly the same freeness level). However, it is cautioned again that other subtle differences may also account for this difference in energy consumption. Where both types of stones are being used, generally the best properties of each are desired. Most stones have 60 grit and 0 hardness.

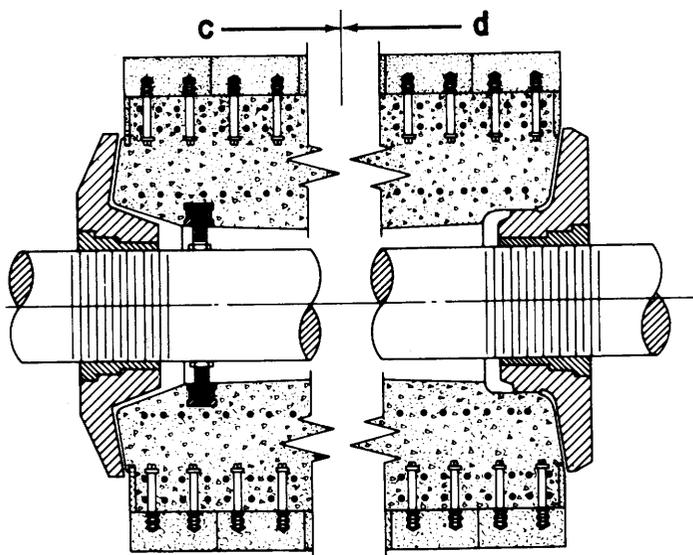
All grinders are equipped with a lathe-type device that permits a dressing tool or **burr** (fig. 27-3e) to be traversed across the face of the rotating stone. It is the purpose of the burr to maintain concentricity of the stone, to expose new abrasive, and to establish a pattern on the face of the stone that will assist in separating the fiber from the workpiece. The quality of pulp produced is related to this pattern. Stone conditioning practices vary considerably from mill to mill; most run their stones slightly dull.

Process conditions at grinders in five southern mills are described in table 27-4. Some mills are attempting to achieve lower freenesses in order to improve strength and sheet characteristics; this practice, however, leads to drainage problems on the paper machine. Several mills have tried **pitless grinding** (i.e., without reservoir shown in fig. 27-3g) and in general the reactions are favorable, although no mill is currently practicing this production method. Most mills attempt to keep their stones fully loaded. All mills except one are cooling white water for the showers on the stones.

Nearly all groundwood mills have given much attention to screening, cleaning, and rejects handling systems in recent years. The major trends are toward a double fine screening of the groundwood after coarse screening, and toward high consistency refining of screen rejects (see footnote to table 27-4 for definition of **consistency**). All mills are currently using rotary screens, although one mill is planning to install pressurized screens.



CROSS SECTION



LONGITUDINAL SECTION

Figure 27-4.—Pulp stone. a, abrasive sections (replaceable); b, reinforced concrete center; c, older style flange and centering screws; d, inverted flange with centering hub. (Drawing from Norton Company.)

TABLE 27-4.—Summary of process conditions and pulp brightness at five groundwood mills processing southern pine¹

Mill number	Pit temperature	Pit consistency ²	pH in pit	Shower temperature	Shower pressure	Alum added at showers	Canadian Standard Freeness at decker	Energy, grinders only	Brightness
	°F.	Percent		°F.	P.s.i.	Lb./ton finished product		Hp.-days/ton	
1	155 ³	-----	5.5	100	25	30	45-50	70	60
	165	-----	-----	108	80	-----	-----	-----	-----
2	175	2-4	5.2	125	80-125	40	50	80-85	-----
3	170	2.5-3	6.0	100	80	24	70→52 ⁴	80	-----
			(shower water)	(or below)					
4	175-180	1.5-2	6.0	135	80	30	40→30 ⁴	70-75 →90-95 ⁴	61-64
5	175-180	3.5-4	4.6	94	90	20	50-55	84	56
				(fresh water only)					

¹ Each mill represents a different company.

² Percent consistency = $\frac{\text{moisture-free weight of pulp sample}}{\text{weight of water and pulp}} (100)$.

³ Equipped with ring-type grinder; all other data are for Great-Northern-type grinders.

⁴ First number is freeness at time of survey; second number represents future objective.

The coarse-screen rejects are processed with the fine-screen rejects after first being reduced in size with disk refiners. The refined rejects are then commonly passed through rotary or pressure-type screens and centrifugal cleaners. In some cases the only pulp sewerer from the system is from the third stage of the centrifugal cleaners. The pulp obtained from the rejects system is claimed to be the best of the groundwood fibers. With high consistency refining, the rejects pulp is long fibered and has considerably more strength than the bulk of the groundwood. One mill using two stages of high consistency refining (20 percent or above) experiences a mullen increase of 1.5 points in the pulp. While screening and cleaning equipment vary considerably, common patterns are emerging as groundwood quality is improved to achieve paper machine speeds of 3,000 f.p.m. without sacrificing paper quality.

A number of mills are bleaching groundwood with zinc hydrosulfite. Southern pine responds well to this treatment; a 10-point increase in brightness can be expected from use of normal quantities of the chemical.

Pulp testing procedures are of considerable interest to each mill. Most mills are dissatisfied with the present tests, and in particular the freeness test. Below 70 Canadian Standard Freeness, the freeness test is of doubtful significance. A drainage test that could be rapidly performed would be much preferred. Fractionation tests and the usual strength tests are commonly used. At least one mill uses microscopic projection of pulp samples to observe fiber characteristics.

MANUFACTURE OF REFINER GROUNDWOOD

Equipment used to reduce chips to fiber consists of at least two stages of single- or double-disk refiners (fig. 27-5) in series. High consistencies (18 percent and above) promote reduction of chips to individual fibers with less production of fines, and are required to achieve the strength characteristics expected of this type groundwood. Various mechanical or chemical pretreatments have been tried to improve the fiber characteristics and reduce power costs. The system is completed with facilities for screening, cleaning, and reject handling.

Strength and printability.—Morkved and Larson (1969) have reported superior tear, burst, tensile, and folding strengths, and excellent runnability on paper machines and printing presses for refiner pulp manufactured in Oregon and Washington. These advantages of refiner groundwood over stone groundwood can perhaps be realized with southern pine wood.

A number of studies have been made to produce refiner groundwood from southern pine; some results have been published. Swartz (1963) summarized the work done at Bowaters Southern Corp. Results of work at Kimberly-Clark by Braun and Davis (1969) are summarized in table 27-5. All strength data were similarly affected. The strength levels attained were, in fact, very close to those of the mixtures of standard stone groundwood with semibleached pine kraft pulp currently used in southern pine newsprint.

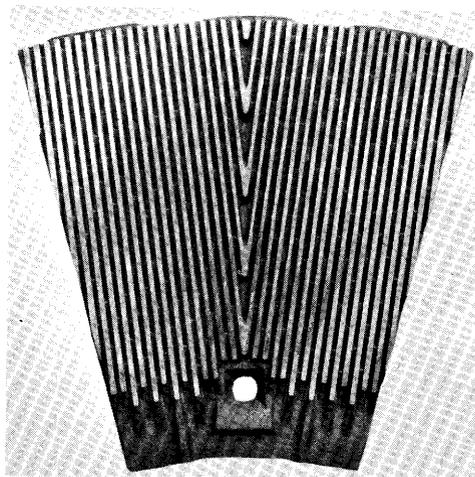
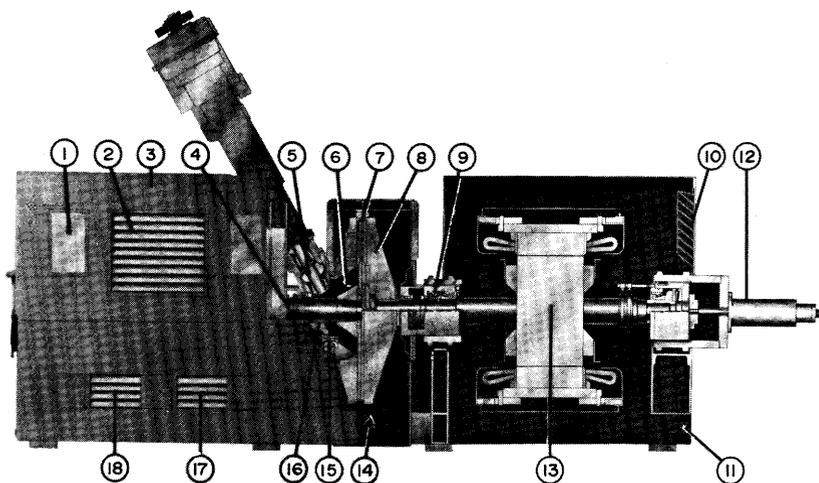


Figure 27-5.—(Top) Cross section through double-disk refiner. 1, inspection port in motor enclosure; 2, 17, 18, air outlets; 3, removable motor enclosure; 4, shafts supported near their centerlines; 5, twin-screw feeder gives positive displacement at variable rates; 6, area from which chips enter the refining zone between plates; 7, refiner plates furnished in balanced sets; 8, one of the two counter-rotating stainless steel disks; 9, tapered roller bearings for radial and thrust loads; 10 and 11, air inlets; 12, housing for hydraulic motors; 13, one of the two induction or synchronous motors; 14, discharge outlet for refined stock; 15, dilution connection for entry of liquids to control consistency of stock in infeed and refining zones; 16, alloy steel shaft protected from refining chamber by renewable stainless steel sleeves. (Bottom) Segment of removable plate typical of disk refiners for direct fiberization of southern pine chips for mechanical pulp. Six segments are required for each disk. (Drawing and photo from the Bauer Bros. Co.)

Results from a laboratory study at the USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station (McMillin, 1968, 1969abc) indicated that additional research is needed to develop a better mechanical process whereby the thick-walled, tubular latewood tracheids of southern pine can be unwrapped into more nearly ribbon-like shapes.

The major problem with refiner groundwood is its poor printability. Braun and Davis (1969) compared the printing characteristic of refiner groundwood with stone groundwood for a number of species by the Kimberly-Clark printability tests, in which larger numbers indicate poorer printing quality. Stone groundwood was more printable than refiner groundwood even at comparable freeness levels (table 27-5). These results were confirmed by mill trial ⁴ using 100 percent refiner groundwood in place of stone groundwood. Blends of refiner groundwood with standard stone groundwood and pine kraft, however, possess printability equivalent to the standard sheet with somewhat superior strength.

There is considerable evidence that the printability problems with groundwood can be related to the quantity of +28 fraction of the pulp (Braun and Davis 1969). The exact nature of this relation is not known; whether it is a symptom or the disease is open to speculation. In refiner groundwood this +28 fraction is generally much larger than in stone groundwood unless special attention is paid to reducing it. In southern pine the portion of the +28 fraction derived from latewood is large and difficult to reduce by high consistency refining. Some supplementary mechanical action is necessary, such as appropriate low consistency refining or some combination of screening and refining.

Pretreatments effect negligible improvement in pulp quality (Swartz 1963). Experience in the Kimberly-Clark experiments confirm this observation. Of the many chemical and mechanical pretreatments tried at this company, the most effective was a crushing action in a screw press, although other types of crushing action, as in the nip of two press rolls, have a similar effect. Whether the improved strength quality observed (1.5 to 2.0 points in burst factor) is due to the removal of wood resins or to some unique mechanical action on the fiber is not known. The effect of chip crushing on printing properties was negligible. Pretreatments with chemicals such as soluble sulfite salts at various pH's had little effect, nor did heat pretreatments within the time limits imposed by the equipment. Obviously, extended chemical and heat treatment must ultimately have some effect, perhaps not always desirable.

Descriptions of groundwood production for products other than newsprint are rare in the literature. One of the more thorough describes grinders for insulating board manufacture (Fields 1960), and another (Belova and Konovalova 1967) discusses the applicability of refiner groundwood to the manufacture of boxboard. In such products and others where

⁴Hurston, M. S. Evaluation of mechanical pulp from pine chips in the mill furnish. Kimberly-Clark Corp., Neenah, Wis. Unpublished. 1964.

TABLE 27-5.—*Comparison of stone and refiner groundwood¹ from southern pine (Braun and Davis 1969)*

Pulp type ²	Canadian Standard Freeness	Burst ³ factor	Tear ³ factor	Letterpress printability		Bauer McNett fractionation				
				Half tones	Solids	+28	+48	+100	+200	-200
Refiner groundwood---	102	14.0	71	9.0-10.0	9.0-10.0	32.0	18.0	13.0	5.0	32.0
Refiner groundwood---	56	20.0	70	7.5-8.5	7.5-8.5	23.0	18.0	12.0	7.0	40.0
Stone groundwood----	48	11.6	25	6.4-7.5	6.9-7.7	3.3	12.2	21.1	14.7	48.7

¹ 100 percent groundwood handsheets.

² Listed according to freeness.

³ TAPPI standard.

strength is of primary concern, the printing properties can be ignored; it would therefore seem that refiner groundwood offers opportunities to improve these products.

Energy required.—The energy consumed in producing the high-strength groundwood described by Braun and Davis (1969) was in excess of 100 hp.-days/ton. A refiner pulp of strength comparable to stone groundwood would be expected to require far less energy. The positive correlation between energy consumption and pulp quality—particularly strength—seems to hold for refiner groundwood as well as stone groundwood (McMillin 1968). For reasons not entirely clear, specific refining energy is inversely related to connected horsepower, i.e., refiners with the most horsepower yield pulp requiring the least horsepower-days per ton.

GENERAL

The wood of southern pines still presents a real challenge to the maker of groundwood. Better means of mechanically working the latewood fibers would seem to be basic to further improving the mechanical pulp processes. Forgacs (1963), in his microscope studies of groundwood fractions, has pointed out the difficulty in unraveling the thick-walled tracheids of southern pine, an effect which, if accomplished, could considerably enhance the strength properties of the pulp. The grinder stone presents somewhat limited possibilities in dealing with the problem; disk refining, however, would seem to offer some opportunities (McMillin 1969a). An extensive study of alternative means of reducing the latewood to useful fiber would be well warranted. Evaluation of the results could include the Forgacs L and S factors (McMillin 1969b), which originally were intended to predict strength properties but could be extended also to printability.

An alternative to mechanical processing of the latewood fibers may be the elimination or reduction of these fibers through tree breeding. Virginia pine offers opportunities, provided the limbiness of this tree can be overcome. Virginia pine, however, is not adaptable to all soils and other species must also be considered.

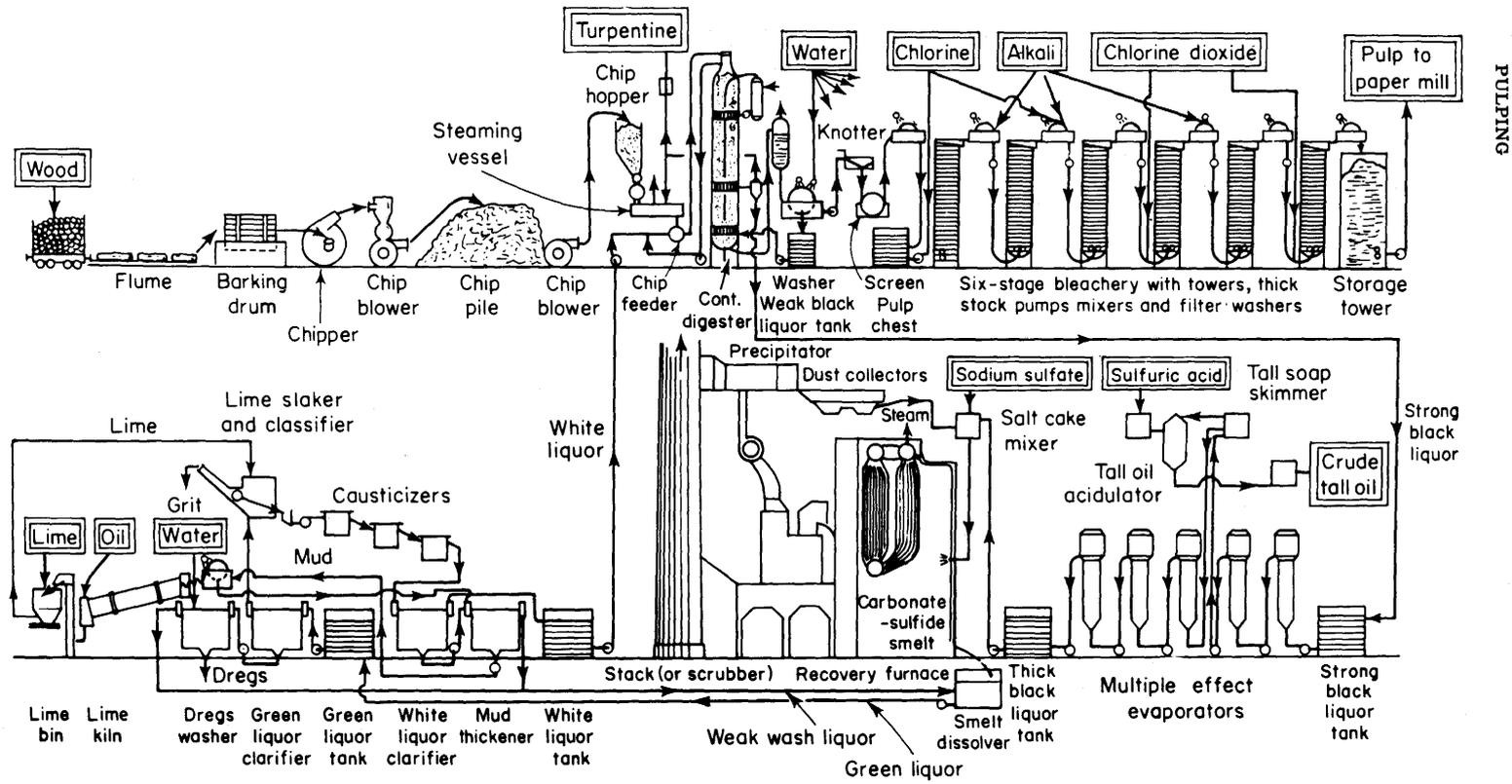
27-2 KRAFT PULPING ⁵

Since 1940, the southern section of the United States has become the kraft pulping center of the world. By the end of 1968 the kraft mills of the South produced approximately 25 percent of the total pulps and approximately 45 percent of the kraft pulps required in the world. The basic reasons for the tremendous growth of kraft pulping in the South are the vast renewable supply of southern pine trees and an abundance of

⁵ With minor editorial changes, section 27-2 is taken from Kleppe (1970) by permission of Peder J. Kleppe and the Forest Products Research Society.

TABLE 27-6.—*Kraft pulping capacity and pine species used in the South* (Kleppe 1970; Welch 1970)

State	Estimated total production capacity of kraft pulp at the end of 1970	No. of pulp mills	Size of the mills	Species of southern pines used for pulpwood (ranked according to frequency)
	<i>Tons per 24 hours</i>		<i>Tons per 24 hours</i>	
Alabama.....	9,580	13	400-1,400	Loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, slash, Virginia, spruce pines
Arkansas.....	3,785	6	150-1,300	Shortleaf, loblolly pines
Florida.....	8,675	9	625-1,700	Slash, longleaf, loblolly, pond, sand, shortleaf, spruce pines
Georgia.....	12,190	11	500-2,600	Slash, loblolly, longleaf, shortleaf, pond, Virginia, spruce pines
Kentucky.....	800	2	200-600	Shortleaf, Virginia pines
Louisiana.....	8,750	10	240-1,630	Loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, slash, spruce pines
Maryland.....	800	1	800	Virginia, loblolly, pitch pine, Table-Mountain pines
Mississippi.....	4,500	4	725-1,700	Loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, slash, spruce pines
North Carolina.....	5,080	5	600-1,290	Loblolly, shortleaf, pond, Virginia, longleaf, pitch pines
Oklahoma.....	0	4	0	Shortleaf, loblolly pines
South Carolina.....	4,850	4	600-2,000	Loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, slash, pond, Virginia, spruce pines
Tennessee.....	1,200	2	500-700	Shortleaf, Virginia, loblolly, pitch pine, Table-Mountain pines
Texas.....	3,950	5	400-1,200	Loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, slash pines
Virginia.....	3,850	4	850-1,060	Loblolly, Virginia, shortleaf, pond, pitch, Table-Mountain pines
TOTAL South..	67,960	76	150-2,600	Loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, slash, pond, Virginia, spruce, sand, pitch, Table-Mountain pines



PULPING

Figure 27-6.—The kraft process. (Top) Conversion of wood to pulp. (Bottom) Cooking liquor cycle and tall oil recovery. (Drawing from Rydholm © 1961, by permission of John Wiley and Sons.)

fresh water. Technological developments in kraft pulping, in chemical recovery, and in bleaching have also been important contributing factors.

In 1970 Georgia, Alabama, Florida, and Louisiana led the Southern States in kraft pulping capacity (table 27-6); the entire South had a capacity of about 68,000 short tons per day in 76 pulpmills (Kleppe 1970). Softwood yielded approximately 77 percent of the output (Christopher and Nelson 1963; Slatin 1967). Since about 1.6 cords of wood are required for each ton of pulp (Hair 1967), approximately 84,000 cords of southern pine pulpwood were required daily in 1970. During the period 1962-1968, the kraft pulping capacity (per 24 hours) in the South increased 20,000 tons (Thuemmes 1962; Sanford 1968); of this increase at least 17,400 tons were in 31 units of continuous digesters (Kamyr Incorporated 1970).

Of the 10 southern pines, loblolly ranks first in kraft production and is likely to continue to do so. Shortleaf, longleaf, and slash pines, followed by pond, Virginia, and spruce pines are also important raw materials for kraft pulp, whereas sand, pitch, and Table-Mountain pines are used only to a small extent. The range and volume of the 10 species are reported in chapter 3.

THE PROCESS

Of the South's pulpwood requirements in 1967, 45 percent was delivered to mill sites as rail roundwood, 33 percent as truck roundwood, 13 percent as rail chips, and 9 percent as truck chips (Bromley 1968). Chips delivered to the mills were primarily residue from sawmills. The roundwood came mostly in the form of 5- or 5¼-foot bolts with bark in place. Some mills received a minor part of their wood in whole-tree lengths. The pulpwood is debarked by tumbling in huge rotating horizontal cylinders (fig. 19-50) provided with coarse slots to allow bark to pass out. Long logs—up to tree length—are usually debarked individually by advancing them through mechanical ring barkers (fig. 19-51). The loss of good pulpwood fibers during debarking is about 0.5 to 2.0 percent. Bark content of southern pine logs is approximately 10 to 24 percent of stem volume. (See sec. 12-2 and table 29-55.)

The debarked logs are converted into chips 15 to 25 mm. long and 2 to 4 mm. thick by multiple-knife chippers having capacities of 50 to 250 tons/hour (figs. 19-104 through 19-107). During the chipping operation 1 to 3 percent of the wood is turned into fine sawdust, which is partially or completely removed through screening. The chips are temporarily stored (figs. 18-3 and 18-4) or directly transported pneumatically or by belt conveyors to the digesters. Batch digesters in southern mills usually have a loading capacity from 20 to 40 tons of pine chips (ovendry basis). The corresponding pulping capacity is approximately 60 to 140 tons of air-dried pulp per day. Continuous digesters have pulping capacities of 150 to 1,000 tons/day.

The chips are cooked with a kraft liquor initially containing sodium

hydroxide and sodium sulfide in a molar ratio of approximately 4:1 to 2.5:1, both expressed as equivalent Na_2O . The liquors-to-wood ratio can be from approximately 3.3:1 to 5.0:1. The chemical charge (expressed as a percentage of the oven-dry weight of wood) may be from about 15 to about 23 percent NaOH as effective alkali ($\text{NaOH} + \frac{1}{2} \text{Na}_2\text{S}$); the exact percentage depends on whether the pulp will be used for linerboard, unbleached paper, or bleached grades. The batch digesters are usually heated indirectly with steam in 30 to 60 minutes and attain a maximum temperature of 170° to 175° C. Forced circulation of the cooking liquor is practiced in some of the mills. The cooking time at maximum temperature varies from 50 to 100 minutes. The batch digesters are then emptied, or blown, from full pressure into a **blow tank**.

Figure 27-6 diagrams a kraft pulpmill built around a continuous, rather than batch, digester. Cooking is less severe in continuous digesters. After steaming, chips are heated in cooking liquor to approximately 170° C. in 90 to 100 minutes, and held at maximum temperature about the same time. The cooking is usually interrupted by dilute black liquor (spent liquor) which is forced countercurrent to the downflowing "delignified" chips. Prewashing for a period of 90 to 120 minutes (or longer) is often practiced in continuous digesters before the wood residues (i.e., the cooked mass of chips) is discharged to a blow tank at a low temperature (100° to 110° C.).

The force of blowing is usually sufficient to fiberize the cooked chips to a reject level of 1 to 3 percent, if the **kappa number** of the pulp is below approximately 30 to 45. Kappa number is a rapid, empirical measure of lignin content of pulp, estimated by observing the consumption of potassium permanganate by the pulp during a standard time interval. According to TAPPI Standard Method T 236 m-60, it is the number of milliliters of 0.1N KMnO_4 solution reduced by 1 g. of pulp at standard conditions. Tasman and Berzins (1957) and Kleppe (1970) state the following relationship is valid for kraft pulps:

$$\text{Percent of lignin in pulps} = (0.15) (\text{kappa number}) \quad (27-1)$$

Digested wood with a kappa number above 55 (lignin content of 8.5 percent or higher) is generally further fiberized by passing it through mechanical defibrators. The pulp is then screened and washed. Rejects are often returned to the digesters if the pulp is to be bleached; for unbleached grades, rejects are usually fiberized in disk or conical refiners and then mixed with the screened pulp. Pulp from batch digesters is washed in stages on a three- or four-drum rotary washer. Prewashed pulps from continuous digesters are washed in one or two stages. Figure 27-7 illustrates a high-yield (high-kappa-number) pulping system with a continuous digester; figure 27-8 diagrams the elements of a continuous digester.

Pulps for products requiring moderate to high brightness are bleached in three to seven sequences. The bleaching chemicals are chlorine (C), sodium hydroxide (E), sodium or calcium hypochlorite (H), chlorine dioxide (D), and in some cases hydrogen peroxide (P). For production of

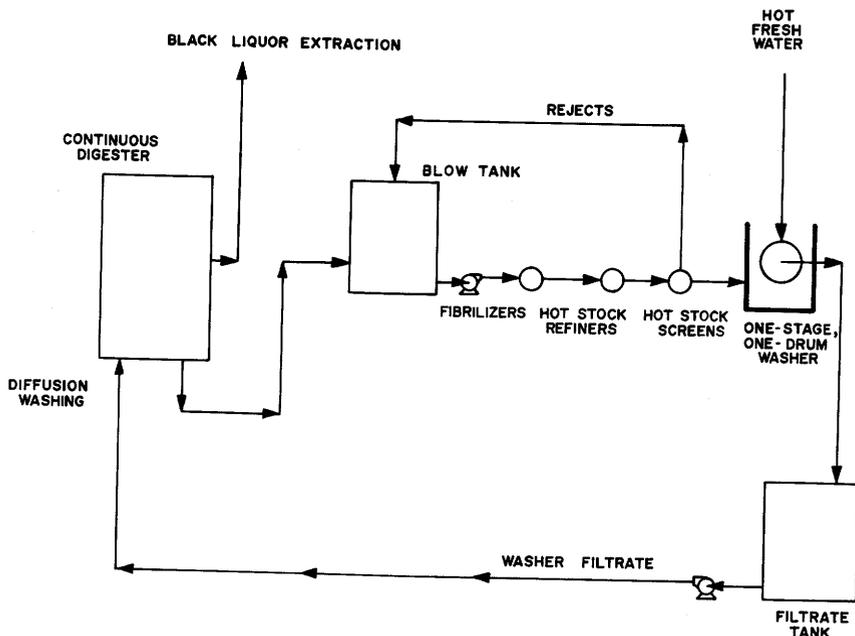


Figure 27-7.—Continuous-digester, high-yield, kraft pulping system at the Union-Camp mill in Savannah, Ga. (Drawing after Bristow et al. 1967.)

semibleached pulps, a CEH schedule is most frequent. High brightness pulps are commonly processed through a CEHD, CEDED, or CEHDED sequence. The yield loss from bleaching is generally 5 to 8 percent of dry pulp weight (Valeur 1951; Virkola and Vartiainen 1964).

FACTORS INFLUENCING PULP YIELD

Yield of pulp per ton of wood is generally the major economic factor in the kraft process. Wood quality and preparation, as well as variables in the pulping processes, strongly affect yield.

Kappa number.—The literature indicates that a 10-unit increase in kappa number generally causes pulp yield from softwoods to increase about 1.4 percent (of the weight of oven-dry wood) in the kappa number range 30 to 90, and by 1.8 percent in the kappa number range 90 to 140. This relationship is valid only at constant sulfidity and alkali charge. Pulping experiments by Kleppe⁶ confirmed this relationship between kappa number and total pulp yield (percent of oven-dry wood) for southern pine wood as follows (see fig. 27-9):

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{in kappa number range 30-90} \\ &\quad \text{total pulp yield} = A + 0.14 \text{ kappa number} \end{aligned} \quad (27-2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{in kappa number range 90-140} \\ &\quad \text{total pulp yield} = A - 3.5 + 0.18 \text{ kappa number} \end{aligned} \quad (27-3)$$

⁶ Kleppe, P. J. Unpublished work. 1968.

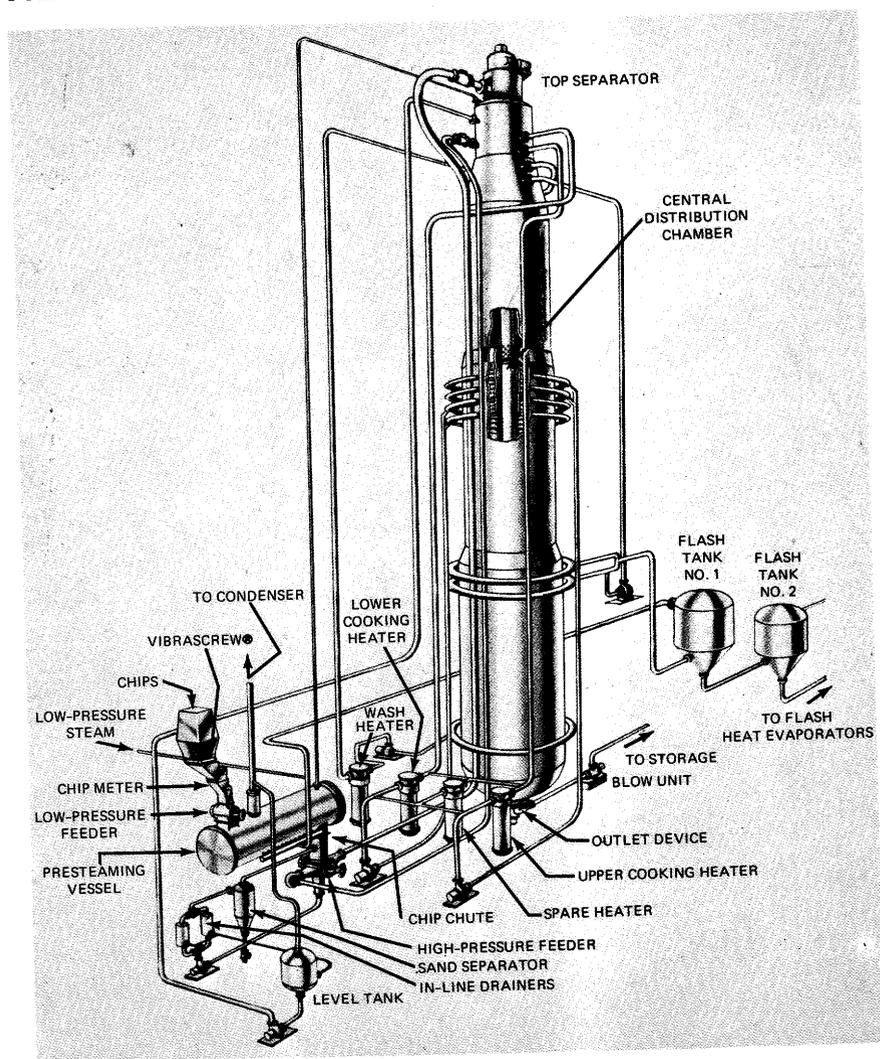


Figure 27-8.—Continuous-digester system for kraft pulp. Units capable of producing 1,000 tons of pulp per day measure about 20 feet in diameter and nearly 300 feet above the ground. (Drawing from Kamy, Inc.)

The constant A , which can be used to characterize a chip source for estimation of yield, is mainly dependent on wood specific gravity (fig. 27-10) but is also somewhat influenced by effective alkali charge, sulfidity of the cooking liquor, and chip size.

Reduction in kappa number below 26 to 28 decreases the total pulp yield by more than 0.14 percent (based on oven-dry weight of wood, i.e., "on wood") per kappa number unit.

Alkali charge.—Effective alkali ($\text{NaOH} + \frac{1}{2} \text{Na}_2\text{S}$) varies from about 15 to about 23 percent of the oven-dry weight of the chips charged. Data from Legg and Hart (1960) and Aurell and Hartler (1965) indicate that

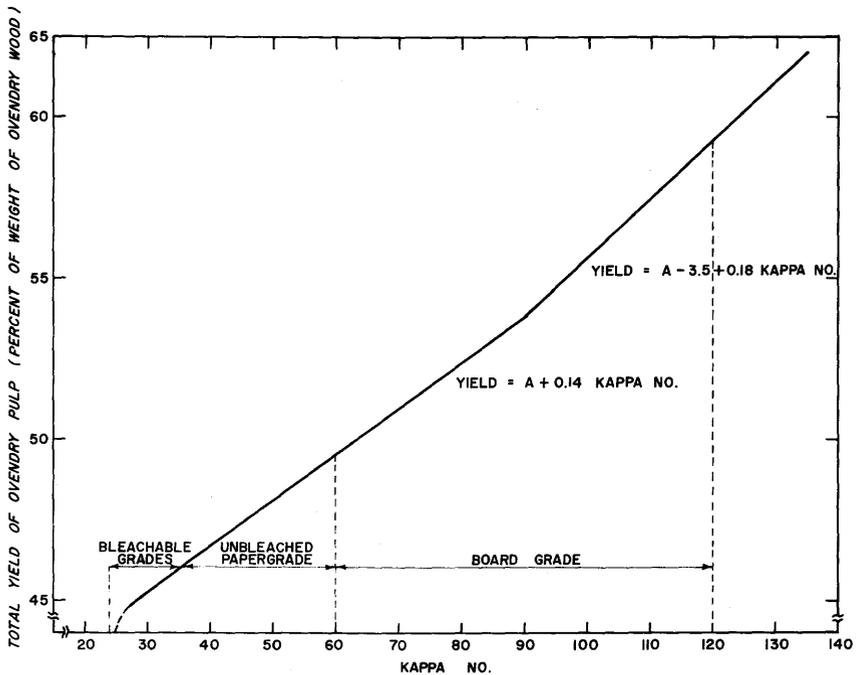


Figure 27-9.—Relationship between kappa number and kraft pulp yield from southern pine wood. See figure 27-10 for definition of constant A. (Drawing after Kleppe 1970.)

an increase in the effective alkali charge of 1 percent NaOH (on wood) will decrease A by 0.1 to 0.15 percent (on wood). The effective alkali charge in industrial pulping is usually kept at a level which will give an excess of 5 to 10 g. of sodium hydroxide per liter of liquor at the end of the cooking period.

Sulfidity.—Percent sulfidity, i.e., $[\text{Na}_2\text{S} \div (\text{Na}_2\text{S} + \text{NaOH, as Na}_2\text{O})] (100)$, influences pulp yield. The scant data available in the literature (Hägglund 1945; Legg and Hart 1960; Aurell 1963) indicate that an absolute sulfidity increase of 10 percent in the sulfidity range of 15 to 50 percent will give 0.3 to 0.5 percent higher yield (on wood). The influence of sulfidity seems to be greatest at low effective alkali charges (Legg and Hart 1960).

Chip size.—Reduction in chip size improves the uniformity of pulping and increases the screened pulp yield at a given kappa number (Nolan 1957; Hartler and Onisko (1962). There are also strong indications that reduction in chip size by shredding (Nolan 1967) can lead to 0.5 to 1 percent (on wood) higher total yield at a given number (Vethe 1967).

Carbohydrate stabilization.—It has been demonstrated (Sanyer and Laundrie 1964) that addition of elementary sulfur to the cooking liquor can improve the total pulp yield up to 12 percent (on wood). Practical gains are, however, of the magnitude of 1.5 to 4 percent (on wood); they are obtained by addition of 1 to 2 percent (on wood) of elementary sulfur (Kleppe 1964; Venemark 1964; Landmark et al. 1965).

Wood quality.—The most practical and common way of characterizing wood quality is by specific gravity. An increase in specific gravity from 0.37 to 0.57 is accompanied by an increase in pulp yield of 10 percentage points (fig. 27–10). The positive correlation between pulp yield and specific gravity is probably caused by the higher yield (2 to 7 percent of wood weight) from latewood compared to earlywood (Watson and Dadswell 1962; Gladstone et al. 1970). Because of the wide variation in lignin and extractive contents of southern pine wood (see secs. 6–2 and 6–3), the good correlation shown in figure 27–10 may not always be observable.

EFFECT OF WOOD QUALITY ON PAPER PROPERTIES

Kraft pulps from earlywood generally give much denser papers with higher bursting and tensile strengths than papers made from latewood (Cross and Bevan 1920; Nilson 1926; Holzer and Lewis 1950; Watson and Hodder 1954; Watson and Dadswell 1962). The differences in properties have been attributed to the thicker walls of the latewood fibers. Bray and Curran (1937) concluded from tests made on handsheets from longleaf, shortleaf, slash, and loblolly pine pulps that the most important factor influencing the papermaking properties is the ratio of latewood to earlywood fibers, and that greater differences in papermaking properties can be noticed in pulps from different parts of the same tree than in pulps from wood of different species and growth rates.

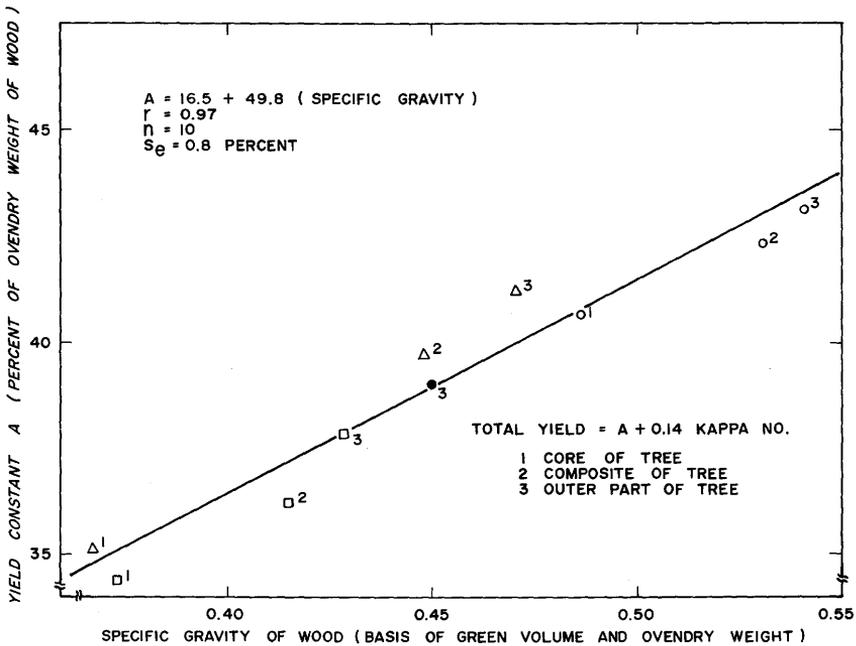


Figure 27–10.—Pulp yield of different parts of four 35- to 37-year-old loblolly pine trees as a function of specific gravity. (Drawing after Kleppe 1970 based on data from Barefoot et al. 1964.)

Barefoot et al. (1964, 1966) concluded that in general those fiber characteristics associated with wood density are predominant in determining papermaking properties of kraft pulps. Similar results were reported by Wangaard et al. (1966, 1967). These results are in good agreement with earlier findings that wood density is highly correlated with the latewood/earlywood ratio. Theoretically, the specific gravity of a wood sample can be expressed by the formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{specific gravity} = & \\ & (\text{specific gravity of latewood}) (\text{fraction of latewood} \\ & \text{by volume}) + (\text{specific gravity of earlywood}) \\ & (1 - \text{fraction of latewood}) \end{aligned} \quad (27-4)$$

Figure 27-11 relates percentage of earlywood to specific gravity of longleaf, shortleaf, slash, and loblolly pines (Bray and Curran 1937). The observed variation in density at a given earlywood content is caused by variation in latewood and earlywood densities (Wangaard et al. 1966). See chapter 7 for a discussion of the variability of specific gravity between species, within species, and within trees.

The work of Mühlsteph (1941) and Runkel (1949) initiated a quantitative approach for establishing the relationship between fiber morphology and kraft paper properties; and work by Barefoot et al. (1964, 1966, 1970) on loblolly pine and by Wangaard et al. (1966) on slash pine have strongly indicated that multiple regression analyses can be used to predict

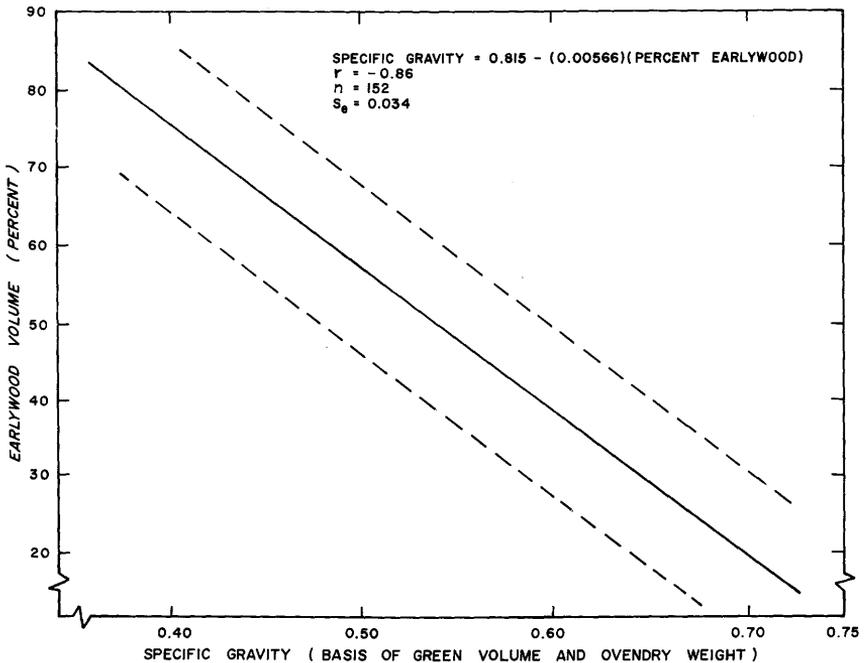


Figure 27-11.—Relationship between specific gravity and percentage of earlywood volume in loblolly, longleaf, shortleaf, and slash pines. Dashed lines show 95-percent confidence limits. (Drawing after Kleppe 1970 based on data from Bray and Curran 1937.)

paper properties from the morphological and physical characteristics of the wood.

In a test of the effects of wood selection on kraft paper properties, Fahey and Laundrie (1968) found that pulps from slash pine and loblolly pine thinnings and core wood (pith to 8- or 10-year growth ring) had burst and tensile strengths equal to pulps from mature pulpwood logs, but their tear resistance and pulp yield were lower. Pulps from the thinnings and the core wood had comparable strength characteristics. The outer wood of both pines gave pulps that were comparable in burst and tensile strengths to pulps from mature pulpwood logs, but their tear resistance was greater. Paper and linerboard made with the pulp from the loblolly pine thinnings generally were better formed, had higher tensile and burst strengths, but had lower tear resistance than papers made with pulp from the mature wood. The thinnings pulp gave softer and more absorbent tissue paper, smoother and more closed printing papers, and linerboard with greater compressive resistance.

Properties of southern pine pulpwood are summarized in table 27-7. A more detailed discussion of the morphological variations in southern pine wood can be found in chapter 5.

In the following four paragraphs, established correlations are listed for individual paper properties; they are indicated as either positive (+) or negative (-). Figures 27-12 and 27-13 illustrate the relationships.

Sheet density.—Specific gravity of the wood (-) and especially that of the latewood (-) seems to be the most influential factor affecting sheet density (Dadswell and Watson 1962; Barefoot et al. 1964; Wangaard et al. 1966, 1967). Other factors making significant contributions are fiber length (-) (Dadswell and Watson 1962; Dinwoodie 1966; Wangaard et al. 1966) and amount of compression wood (+) (Barefoot et al. 1964). Figure 27-12A shows sheet density as a function of wood specific gravity for pulps from slash pine.

TABLE 27-7.—*Properties of southern pine pulpwood*¹

	Range	Most frequent
Whole wood specific gravity ²	0.38-0.75	0.42-0.55
Latewood specific gravity ².....	.40- .85	.60- .75
Earlywood specific gravity ².....	.26- .40	.28- .32
Lignin content, percent.....	24-30	26-29
Extractive content (benzene alcohol), percent..	2-10	2.5-4.5
Fiber length, mm.....	2.0 -5.5	2.5 -4.5

¹ Estimated from literature given in table 27-8 and Isenberg (1951, pp. 11-12, 16-31), Watson and Hodder (1954), Mitchell (1958, 1964), Perry and Wang (1958), Zobel and McElwee (1958), Goddard and Strickland (1962), and Watson and Dadswell (1962).

² Basis of green volume and oven-dry weight.

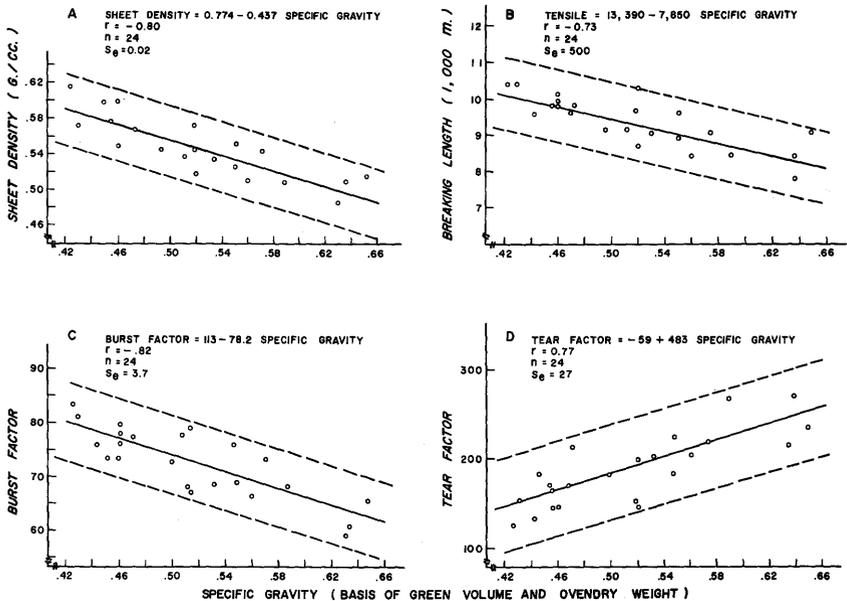


Figure 27-12.—Relationship of wood specific gravity to sheet density and strength properties of handsheets from slash pine kraft pulps at 500 Canadian Standard Freeness. (A) Sheet density. (B) Breaking length. (C) Burst strength. (D) Tear strength. Dashed lines show 95-percent confidence limits. S_e means standard error of the estimate; r is simple correlation coefficient. (Drawings after Kleppe 1970 based on data from Wangaard et al. 1966.)

Breaking length.—Fiber density expressed by wood specific gravity (—), wall thickness (—), or the ratio of wall thickness/fiber diameter (—) appears to account for the greatest amount of variance in breaking length—a measure of tensile strength of paper expressed in meters of paper supported before failure (fig. 27-12B). There are strong indications that fiber length is of secondary importance (+) (Barefoot et al. 1964, 1966, 1970; Einspahr 1964; Dinwoodie 1966; Wangaard et al. 1966, 1967). Dimensions of the latewood cells seem to exert a special influence (Barefoot et al. 1966).

Burst factor.—The relationships reported for burst (fig. 27-12C, 27-13 top) are quite similar to those for breaking length (Barefoot et al. 1964, 1966, 1970; Einspahr 1964; Dinwoodie 1966; Wangaard et al. 1966, 1967).

Tear factor.—The best property for predicting tear seems to be wood specific gravity (+), and especially specific gravity of the latewood (+) (Barefoot et al. 1964, 1966, 1970; Wangaard et al. 1966, 1967). Fiber length is also frequently reported to be positively correlated with tearing strength (Dadswell and Watson 1962; Wangaard et al. 1966). Figures 27-12D and 27-13 bottom show tear factor as a function of wood specific gravity.

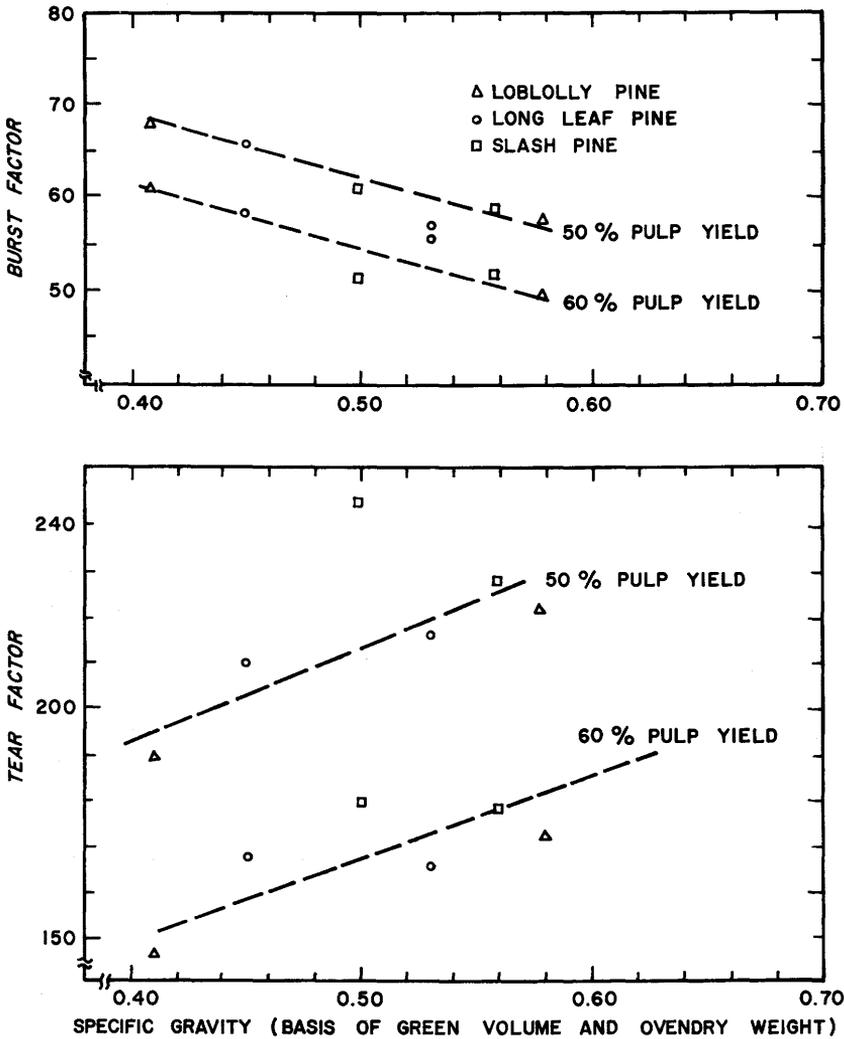


Figure 27-13.—Relationship of wood specific gravity to burst and tear strengths of handsheets from loblolly, longleaf, and slash pine kraft pulps at 600 Canadian Standard Freeness. (Drawing after Kleppe 1970 based on data from Cole et al. 1966.)

EFFECT OF SPECIES AND PULPING CONDITIONS ON PAPER PROPERTIES

Figure 27-13 shows burst and tear strengths of handsheets from kraft pulps of slash, loblolly, and longleaf pines grown in a mixed natural stand (Cole et al. 1966). There were no significant differences in the strength properties of the pulps from the different species, if compared at the same wood density. Increasing the yield from 50 to 60 percent (on wood) decreased strength of the pulp.

Pulping literature applicable to the various species is given in table 27-8.

Pulping conditions have some influence on the strength of pulps. Increasing the alkali charge gives pulps a slightly higher tear strength but reduces the breaking length and burst strength somewhat (Aurell and Hartler 1965). Higher sulfidity generally increases the strength properties of the pulp (Christiansen et al. 1957), and should be kept above approximately 15 percent in the kraft pulping of pine. In the South, continuous kraft pulping seems to give pulps with 10 to 15 percent higher strength properties than batch-cooked pulps (Bristow et al. 1967; Kleppe⁶).

TABLE 27-8.—*Literature on kraft pulping and papermaking properties of particular species of southern pine*

Pine species	Literature reference
Loblolly.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Curran and Bray (1931); Bray and Curran (1937); Chidester et al. (1938); Pillow et al. (1941); Holzer and Booth (1950); Browning and Baker (1950); Graff and Isenberg (1950); Lewis et al. (1950); Simmonds et al. (1956); Van Buijtenen et al. (1961a); Ahlm and Leopold (1963); McIntosh (1963); Sanyer and Laundrie (1964); McIntosh (1967); Gladstone et al. (1970); Barefoot et al. (1964, 1966, 1970).
Longleaf.....	Surface and Cooper (1914); Wells and Rue (1927); Bray and Curran (1933, 1937); Bray et al. (1937); USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1962).
Pitch.....	Wells and Rue (1927).
Pond.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Reis and Libby (1960).
Sand.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Bray and Martin (1942); USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1962).
Shortleaf.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Bray and Paul (1934); Bray and Curran (1937); Chidester et al. (1938); Martin and Brown (1952).
Slash.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Bray and Curran (1937); Schwartz and Bray (1941); Nolan et al. (1951); Nolan and Brown (1952); Nolan (1953); McKee (1960); Thornberg (1963); Van Buijtenen (1964); Wangaard et al. (1966, 1967).
Spruce.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Martin (1943); Koch et al. (1958).
Table Mountain.....	
Virginia.....	Wells and Rue (1927); Hill (1944).
Southern (<i>Pinus</i> spp.)	Curran (1938); Suttle (1944); Murto and Itkonen (1950); Dickerscheid (1958); Cann and Robertson (1960); Somsen (1962); Mason et al. (1963); Einspahr (1964); Cole et al. (1966); Leopold (1966); Van Buijtenen et al. (1961b); Kleppe (1970).

PRACTICAL ASPECTS

Properties of pine pulps from southern kraft mills are mainly dependent on the age of the wood, the climate where the wood has grown, the heritage of the wood, and the lignin content of the pulps. Wood species seem to have minor influence. But as the different pine species are limited to, or concentrated in, specific climatic zones, they appear to give pulps with definite papermaking characteristics.

The solid content of the wood is of great economic importance for the pulpmill which buys wood on a weight basis. Figure 27-14 shows the high positive correlation between specific gravity and the nonvolatile (i.e., oven-dry) solid content of green wood (Bray and Curran 1937).

The desired properties of a pulp vary according to the product to be made from it. For linerboard, where a burst factor of only 39 to 40 is required, high density wood can be used which will also be favorable for

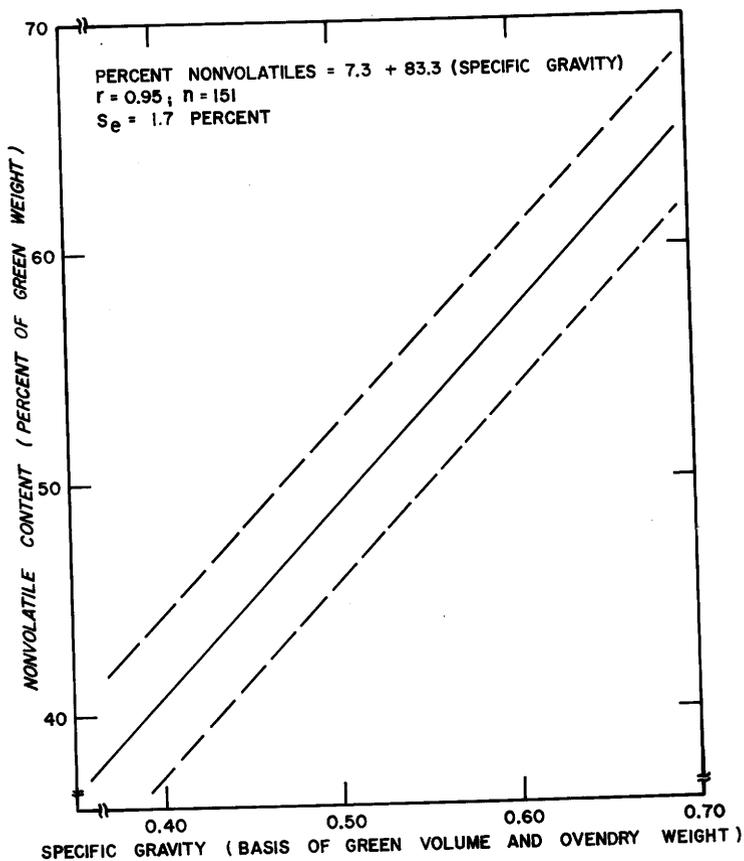


Figure 27-14.—Relationship between wood specific gravity and percentage of nonvolatile solid content (i.e., oven-dry weight as a percentage of green weight) in green loblolly, longleaf, shortleaf, and slash pine wood. Dashed lines show 95-percent confidence limits. (Drawing after Kleppe 1970 based on data from Bray and Curran 1937.)

producing high stiffness and good runnability on the paper machine (Jones et al. 1966). Wrapping, bag, and sack paper requires moderate to high tensile, tear, and bursting strengths (high toughness). Wood of moderate density (0.45 to 0.55) should therefore be best suited for these products. The same applies to bleached board, magazine, book, printing, writing, tissue, and sanitary paper, where the southern pine kraft pulps are added in an amount of approximately 20 to 60 percent in order to improve strength. For newsprint, where kraft pulp is added (15 to 30 percent) to improve tensile strength, low density wood is best.

It should be possible for mills producing pulps requiring different paper-making properties to select wood according to density. For example, purchased sawmill chips, which are predominantly from the outer parts of the tree (slabs), are best suited for linerboard pulps; wood of small diameter that has a high content of juvenile wood can be pulped for products requiring especially high tensile and burst strengths.

27-3 SULFITE PULPING⁷

There is only one sulfite mill in the South (Rayonier Corp. at Fernandina Beach, Fla.) pulping southern pine; it produces dissolving grades of pulp by the acid sulfite process. In the early 1960's, Hammermill Paper Co. pulped Virginia pine by the sodium bisulfite process at Erie, Pa.; the bisulfite pulp has been replaced by bleached sulfate (kraft) pulp from the company's Selma, Ala. mill.

In all sulfite processes sulfur is burned to form SO_2 gas, which is dissolved in an alkaline solution to form sulfurous acid in the cooking solution. The base ion used in combination with the acid, listed in ascending order of solubility of their salts, may be magnesium, sodium, or ammonia. Magnesium base may be used only at a pH lower than 6 because of its limited solubility.

The three sulfite processes differ primarily in the acidity (pH) of the cooking liquor charged to the digester. They are:

Acid sulfite. Initial pH range, 1 to 2; chemical agent, H_2SO_3 + bisulfite salt of Ca, Mg, Na, or NH_3 .

Bisulfite. Initial pH range, 3 to 6; final pH, 2 to 5; chemical agent $\text{Mg}(\text{HSO}_3)_2$, NaHSO_3 , or NH_4HSO_3 . Excess of either HSO_3 or base ion over the stoichiometric proportions for bisulfite determines the initial pH. Calcium base cannot be used because of limited solubility.

Neutral sulfite. Initial pH range, 6 to 10; final pH, 6 to 9; principal chemical agent Na_2SO_3 with or without Na_2CO_3 , $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_3$, or MgSO_3 . Magnesium base may be used only in the lower pH range because of limited solubility.

⁷ Condensed from Nolan (1969) by permission of W. J. Nolan and the Forest Products Research Society.

Any of these processes may be further defined as full chemical or **semichemical**, depending on whether the cooking agents convert the wood chips to individual fibers or only soften the chips before mechanical conversion to fiber. Combinations of any two of the above listed processes may be used successively in the digester.

In the 1920's and early 1930's, when the paper industry began moving into the South on a large scale, the only three chemical pulping processes in common use were calcium or magnesium base sulfite, kraft (pulping chemical, a mixture of NaOH and Na₂S) and soda (pulping agent, NaOH). It was known that acid sulfite agents would not satisfactorily delignify the heartwood of the southern pines. This was attributed to the high pitch (resin acids and fatty acids) content of the heartwood. The highly alkaline kraft and soda processes converted the pitch to soluble sodium soaps, and yielded a resin-free pulp. Since the kraft processes produced higher strength pulps at higher yield than the soda process, they became the predominant pulping methods. Efficient recovery of alkali—practical after 1930—made them competitive with northern sulfite processes, especially for linerboard, bag, wrapping, and other high-strength papers.

Since 1935, researchers have learned much about the reasons for incompatibility of pine heartwood with acid sulfite liquors, and processes for bisulfite and neutral sulfite pulping of conifers have been developed. These and other research developments have opened up possibilities for pulping the southern pines that are particularly attractive because these processes eliminate the sulfide ion, which is responsible for the objectionable odors of the kraft process. It is the opinion of one knowledgeable scientist that by 1980 the kraft pulping process will be seriously challenged in the South by some form of sulfite pulping in the neutral or slightly alkaline range.

ACID SULFITE PULPING

Prior to 1950, commercial sulfite pulping was carried out almost exclusively by the acid sulfite process, using calcium or magnesium as the base. As pressures began to build against air and water pollution, and markets expanded for high-yield linerboard pulps, much research was conducted on recovery of chemicals previously discharged into streams, and on sulfite systems to handle southern pines. By the early 1940's sulfite recovery systems, including the Mead, the Institute of Paper Chemistry, and the Western Precipitation systems (Shaffer 1958) enabled sulfite processes to be competitive with kraft from both the air and water pollution standpoints. Progress was also made toward pulping pine by the acid sulfite and other sulfite processes.

Early researchers felt that the poor response of pine heartwood to acid sulfite pulping was due to its high resin content. Hägglund (1951) credited C. G. Schwalbe with disproving this theory by showing that heartwood, which had been extracted with benzene and ether would still not respond

to acid sulfite pulping. Work at Hägglund's laboratory showed that if further extracted with alcohol or acetone, pine heartwood responded as readily to sulfite pulping as did pine sapwood or spruce. H. Erdtman, at the Hägglund laboratory, identified the alcohol and acetone extractives as 3, 5- dihydroxystilbine and its monomethyl ether, and called them pinosylvin and pinosylvin monomethyl ether. These phenolic compounds, in highly acid solution, react with lignin to form a condensation (polymerization) product that prevents delignification by acid sulfite liquor.

Hägglund had earlier observed, however, that pine heartwood could be readily pulped by sodium or magnesium bisulfite solutions at a pH of 4.5. As a consequence of these facts it was found that if pine heartwood is first pulped at moderate acidity, as with NaHSO_3 , the lignin becomes sulfonated but does not react with the phenols. After this sulfonation, pulping proceeds quite normally, even when highly acid sulfite cooking liquor is subsequently used.

Erdtman (1944) found inhibiting phenols in the heartwood of Scotch pine (*Pinus sylvestris* L.) and six additional pine species, among them longleaf pine. He later (Erdtman 1949b) reviewed their structural formulas and pointed out their highly beneficial properties as fungicides and insect repellents. He also (Erdtman 1949a) described a probable mechanism of the inhibiting action of these phenolic compounds with a schematic presentation in which he likened the condensation of lignin by phenols to the formation of phenolic plastics. In the lignin condensation, the phenol plays a part similar to formaldehyde in the phenolic plastic polymerization.

During the 1930's and early 1940's, most of the domestic research reported on pulping of southern and similar pine species by the acid sulfite process was carried out at the USDA Forest Products Laboratory in Madison, Wis. Curran (1936), recognizing that most pines were second growth and low in heartwood, considered them pulpable by the lime-base acid sulfite process. He found that fast-grown pines afforded a higher pulp yield, took less cooking time, and produced pulp with higher burst strength; tear strength, however, was lower in acid sulfite pulp made from fast-grown trees.

McGovern (1936) found that unusually high concentrations of SO_2 in the calcium-base cooking acid (15 percent total SO_2 , 1.1 percent combined SO_2) greatly improved the pulping of loblolly and three other resinous pines. Screenings were fewer in pulps from these high concentration cooks than in those from cooks of conventional concentration (5.0 percent total SO_2 , 0.9 percent combined SO_2); the pulps were equal or superior in strength properties. Chidester et al. (1938) cooked loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf, and slash pine wood successfully with lime-base acid sulfite liquors of conventional SO_2 concentrations. All four species cooked to good yield with low screenings and satisfactory strength properties; since all pulpwood tested had less than 0.4 percent heartwood, however, the condensation problems created by the phenols in heartwood were avoided,

rather than solved. (See figs. 5-4 and 5-5 for information on percentage heartwood commonly found in the southern pines 20 years of age and older.)

Chidester and McGovern (1940) pulped jack pine, Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Mirb.) Franco) and slash pine with lime-base acid bisulfite liquors. (Douglas-fir heartwood resists pulping much as southern pine heartwood does.) Results agreed with the previous work of McGovern (1936), in that high concentrations of SO₂ (7.3 percent) were necessary to pulp the heartwood of all three species to satisfactory yield with low screenings. For acid sulfite pulping of Douglas-fir containing 60 to 75 percent heartwood, Chidester and McGovern (1941) found sodium-base liquors superior to magnesium, and lime-base least satisfactory. They also found that sodium bisulfite liquors pulped the Douglas-fir to a high screened yield of 55 percent, but 160° C. had to be used instead of the normal 130° to 140° C. Sodium sulfite liquors required 181° C. for satisfactory pulping.

Subsequently, McGovern and Chidester (1941) cooked seasoned (6 months) loblolly pine heartwood with lime-, magnesium-, and sodium-base acid bisulfite liquors. Screenings amounted to 10 percent of lime-base pulps, 3.8 percent of those with magnesium base, and only 0.4 percent of those from sodium-base liquors. When wood was seasoned for 9½ months after it was chipped, screenings in pulps made with all three liquors were reduced to about one-third the above values.

BISULFITE PULPING

Early in the 1950's the Pulp and Paper Research Institute of Canada developed the Va-purge process for rapid impregnation of cooking liquor into chips before cooking (Hart 1954). In this technique, steaming the chips in the digester before liquor is admitted drives off air from the chips, and fills the fiber lumens with water vapor. When cooking liquor, at a somewhat lower temperature, is admitted, condensation sucks the liquor into the chips. After impregnation, excess liquor is drawn off before the cook is started by direct steaming. This procedure permits much more rapid cooking cycles than were previously realized.

During the 1950's much research was done on systems using Va-purge impregnation and mechanical fiberizing to produce high-yield pulps. Hart et al. (1954) using black spruce, produced yields of 53 to 62 percent after a short-period, vapor-phase cooking. At highest yield, tensile and burst strengths were good, but tear strength was somewhat reduced. Hart and Woods (1955), with somewhat different temperatures and pH, obtained 64.5 percent yield from western hemlock (*Tsuga heterophylla* (Raf.) Sarg.), spruce, and balsam fir. Despite a lignin content of 19.5 percent, tensile and bursting strength compared well with that of southern pine kraft. Bolviken and Giertz (1956) added SO₂ gas to Na₂SO₃ liquor in a 4- to 5-hour cook to produce from Scotch pine a good-quality pulp of 65-percent yield.

Tomlinson et al. (1958) and Tomlinson and Tomlinson (1958) described the Magnifite process for the pulping of conifers, and the Magnifite chemical recovery system (see also Darmstadt and Tomlinson 1960). By this process chips were impregnated before cooking with $\text{Mg}(\text{HSO}_3)_2$ liquors containing 2.0 percent combined SO_2 , with a weight ratio of liquor to wood of 4.2:1. Initial pH of liquor was 3.6. After 30 minutes to reach maximum temperature, 3 hours at 166°C . produced fully cooked pulps of 47- to 52-percent yield, while 1.5 hours at 166°C . resulted in 65.5-percent total yield (54.2-percent screened yield). It was claimed that pines whose heartwood contains minor quantities of objectionable phenols can be pulped successfully by this process.

Dorland et al. (1958) described and patented (Dorland and McKinney 1959) the Arbiso pulping process, which has 16 to 20 percent NaHSO_3 as the active pulping agent, and produced from spruce, pulp yields of 47 to 70 percent at maximum temperatures of 155° to 180°C . with liquor-wood ratios of 4 or 5:1. Although not in use in the South, the process is applicable to wood of the southern pines.

Stockman (1960) stated that increased pH of the cooking liquor requires increased temperatures for removal of sulfonated lignin by hydrolysis. Higher temperatures tend to reduce the viscosity (chain length of cellulose molecule) of the pulp with consequent loss in strength. He found that pulping in single stage at initial pH of 4.0 (bisulfite) and a temperature of 160°C . permits pulping of pines containing phenols, and results in a strong pulp with yields of 58 to 60 percent, without the need for mechanical fibrillation. Such pulps had strength characteristics approaching those produced by kraft pulping, except in tear strength, which was low. A single-stage cook at pH 6.0 required 180°C . for delignification, resulting in pulps of very low strength properties.

A U.S. patent granted to Rasch et al. (1962) disclosed a procedure for NaHSO_3 semichemical pulping that was used commercially for several years to pulp Virginia pine. Chips were pulped with bisulfite liquor with an initial pH between 3.0 and 5.0 (9 to 12 percent SO_2 , based on weight of dry wood) at a temperature in the range of 155° to 170°C . Yield, after knot removal, was 50 to 62 percent. Cooked chips were mechanically fiberized, and hemicellulose and wood resins were then removed from the pulp by alkali digestion. Final pulp yield was in the range of 40 to 50 percent.

Keller and Fahey (1968) pulped a loblolly-slash pine mixture by the Magnifite, $\text{Mg}(\text{HSO}_3)_2$, process. Pulp yield ranged from 49.2 to 70.9 percent; pulps were very light in color, i.e., 41 to 51 on the G.E. brightness scale. The very-high-yield pulps were fiberized in a disk refiner. All pulps, whether fully cooked or fiberized, were about 55 percent as strong in tear as fully cooked kraft of the same species. In tensile strength, fully cooked pulps were almost as strong as kraft, while the fiberized pulps were 75 percent as strong. Bursting strengths were low, the fully cooked

pulps being 70 percent as strong and the fiberized pulp about 50 percent as strong as kraft. Pulps presented no pitch (wood resin) problems, perhaps because the wood had been stored 6 months before chipping.

MULTISTAGE SULFITE PULPING

Because adjustment of pH of the liquors in the various stages permits control of hemicellulose content of the pulp and insures efficient removal of wood resins, multistage pulping of some conifers has increased recently. Most of these processes involve either sodium- or magnesium-base liquors for which chemical recovery systems have been developed to meet the increasingly stringent controls on stream pollution.

Long before multistage pulping became popular, however, Meunier (1931) described the Rosen process for manufacturing sulfite pulps from resinous woods; it consisted of a first-stage treatment in the digester with dilute alkali at temperatures up to 110° C. for 2 to 5 hours, followed by washing with salt solution. The chips were then treated with SO₂ gas and subjected to the usual low-temperature acid sulfite cook. Very pure pulps containing 92.4 percent alpha-cellulose were produced.

Sivola (1955) was granted a U. S. patent for multistage pulping. His method of cooking consists of a first stage involving sodium acid sulfite liquor in the pH range of 1 to 2. At the end of the first stage, SO₂ gas is relieved for recovery. In the second stage alkali is injected into the digester without draining or reductions in pressure. The composition of injection liquor may vary from Na₂CO₃ alone, to mixtures of carbonate, bicarbonate, and sulfide. In the third stage the cook is completed in the pH range of 7 to 10 at temperatures of 150° to 180° C. Sivola (1956) was granted another U.S. patent, in which a complex recovery system is described for the multistage processing covered in the earlier patent (see also Kennedy 1960). Pascoe et al. (1959) described a variant Sivola process (wherein the first stage calls for treatment with NaHSO₃ at a starting pH of 4.0, instead of the acid bisulfite stage described in the Sivola patent), by which jack pine pulps were produced that were as strong as those yielded by the kraft process. This process is said to have a much higher tolerance to thiosulfate than conventional acid sulfite pulping.

Lagergren and Lunden (1959) described the Stora Kopparburg process used for pine in a mill in Skutskar, Sweden. The first stage liquor is comprised of a mixture of Na₂SO₃ and NaHSO₃ at a starting pH of 5 to 7. This stage brings about penetration of the liquor into the chips and sulfonation of the lignin without lignin condensation. The second (delignification) stage uses acid sulfite liquor made by adding liquid SO₂ to part of the first stage liquor. The cook requires 10 hours pulping time. A wide variety of pulp grades is obtained, depending on variations in pH and time in each stage and variations in the five-stage bleaching cycle. Cederquist et al. (1960) and Scholander (1960) described the Stora liquor recovery process.

Dyer (1961) described the first American commercial installation of highly flexible, two-stage, magnesium-base pulping at the Weyerhaeuser mill at Cosmopolis, Wash. By modifying schedules and liquor composition, premium pulps are produced with a wide range of qualities, including dissolving grades.

Bryce and Tomlinson (1962) described the two-stage Magnifite process, in which $Mg(HSO_3)_2$ liquor was at a pH of about 4 in the first stage and about 6.0 to 6.5 in the second. Pulps from spruce of 51 to 54 percent yield were stronger than those from single-stage Magnifite and were much stronger than those from conventional acid sulfite pulping.

Sanyer et al. (1962) studied multistage, sodium-base sulfite pulping with two- and three-stage combinations of acid sulfite, bisulfite, and neutral sulfite. For jack pine, neutral sulfite followed by acid sulfite gave the highest yields, while bisulfite-neutral sulfite produced lowest yield for the same lignin content. In strength, however, the combination of bisulfite-neutral sulfite was most satisfactory, being slightly better in tensile strength, equal in tear, and not quite as strong in bursting strength as kraft pulp from the same species.

Croon (1963) found that a pretreatment of coniferous wood chips with dilute caustic (5.5 g. NaOH per liter) at 70° C., followed by acid sulfite pulping, resulted in pulp yields as high as 68 to 70 percent before mechanical fibrillation was necessary. For Norwegian spruce (*Picea abies* (L.) Karst) and Scotch pine, both containing extractive-rich heartwood, a 60-minute first stage treatment at pH 7, followed by 120-minute treatment with sodium-base acid sulfite improved yield over a pH 6 first stage (Croon 1965). Glucomannan, the principal hemicellulose component in the conifers, is deacetylated in the nearly neutral first stage and thereby stabilized against acid hydrolysis and dissolution in the second, highly acid stage of cooking.

NEUTRAL SULFITE PULPING (SINGLE STAGE)

In neutral sulfite pulping, Na_2SO_3 or $(NH_4)_2SO_3$, or a combination of Na_2SO_3 and Na_2CO_3 delignify wood slowly and require very long cooking cycles to produce fully cooked pulps. Commercially the process has been confined to the hardwoods.

Chidester and McGovern (1939) pulped shortleaf pine with concentrated Na_2SO_3 liquor (138 g. Na_2SO_3 per liter at a pH of 8.1). Weight ratio of liquor to wood was about 7:1. Cooking time of 9.5 hours (3.0 hours to the maximum temperature of 180° C.) produced a fully cooked pulp yield of 42.8 percent. Strength of the pulp was comparable to kraft. Additions of NaOH, Na_2CO_3 , and Na_2S to the Na_2SO_3 liquor had little effect on yield; the Na_2S addition improved strength characteristics and reduced bleach requirements.

Nolan (1970) presented the results of neutral sulfite (mixtures of Na_2SO_3 and Na_2CO_3) pulping of slash pine. Ratios of sulfite to carbonate

varied between 3:1 and 6:1. The higher ratios of sulfite resulted in higher yields for the same lignin content. Semichemical pulps of 53 percent yield were as strong in all categories as, and 10 points brighter on the G.E. scale than, fully cooked kraft from the same species. Total cooking time of 2.66 hours (1.0 hour to maximum temperature of 190° C.) was required. Fibration of pulp at 20 percent consistency (percent dry fiber) in an attrition mill equipped with toothed plates required less than 5.0 hp. day/ton of dry pulp. Tear strength of these pulps was as high as for fully cooked neutral sulfite pulp, indicating no fiber damage during fibration. The alkalinity of the cooking liquor, pH 8.5, saponified and dissolved the wood resins as satisfactorily as highly alkaline kraft liquors. Further increases in the ratio of sulfite to carbonate should result in higher yields of brighter pulps without loss in strength.

Shick (1970) found that southern pine pulped with an alkaline sulfite system, which combined sulfide or hydrosulfide-carbonate and sulfite, gave pulps with properties desirable for linerboard manufacture, at yields 6 to 10 percent higher than those obtained by conventional kraft pulping. Such an alkaline sulfite pulp, at a yield of 61.7 percent, had a burst of 105 p.s.i., a tear of 171 g., a ring crush of 62 lb., and a brightness of 22.1 percent. The corresponding kraft pulp at a yield of only 51.8 percent had a burst of 103 p. s. i., a tear of 186 g., a ring crush of 56 lb., and a brightness of 19.2 percent. A high concentration of active chemicals was found to be desirable in such alkaline sulfite cooks, and it was observed that total cooking time could be reduced to the commercial kraft range, without loss in strength, by increasing the cooking temperature.

Another process that may have application to southern pine is that patented by Ingruber and Allard (1970); it calls for pulping with Na_2SO_3 and controlled amounts of NaOH to maintain pH in the range of 8 to 11.

FUTURE POSSIBILITIES FOR SULFITE PULPING OF THE SOUTHERN PINES

The thick-walled, stiff fibers of the southern pines suit them to the production of rather coarse, high-strength grades such as linerboard, bag, and wrapping papers. These grades constitute the highest proportion of total U.S. paper production. Any successful sulfite or combinations of sulfite processes, therefore should yield pulp with high-strength properties.

It would seem, at the present state of the art, that neutral sulfite semichemical pulps show prospects of successful competition with kraft. It may be possible to produce pulps of 60 percent (ovendry basis) or higher yield, as strong as kraft and considerably brighter in color. Processes are available for chemical recovery, and elimination of the sulfide ion in the cooking liquor should simplify air pollution problems. Future research may prove the applicability of two-stage pulping, in which the first stage stabilizes glucomannans and the second stage delignifies the fibers. However, such multistage pulping must preserve the high-strength properties

of the southern pines to be commercially competitive with the huge southern kraft industry.

27-4 DISSOLVING PULP⁸

The art of converting native cellulose fibers into solutions from which other cellulose forms are regenerated has been known for about 100 years (Haynes 1953). Large scale use of wood cellulose for manufacture of manmade fibers began in 1916, 1919, and 1921 by application of the acetate, cuprammonium, and viscose processes respectively.

From these beginnings, uses for **dissolving pulp**, the dry, loosely matted sheets of refined fibers used for chemical processing (also termed chemical cellulose), have grown along with other uses for wood fiber. In 1966 world production of all types of pulp was 95,646,000 tons (Wilson 1967a). Approximately 20 percent, or 20 million tons, represents an item of commerce known as **market pulp**, that is, pulp manufactured by one organization and used by another. In 1966 market pulp shipments of dissolving plus special alpha pulps totalled 2,663,000 tons, all of which originated in North American and Scandinavia (Wilson 1967b).

Since 1951, mills for dissolving pulp have been built in five locations in North America—two in the far Northwest and three in the Southeast. These three southern mills plus an existing mill (1939 construction) in Florida—all operating on southern pine—produce almost 40 percent of North American market dissolving pulp.

Regenerated cellulose fiber made by the viscose process, cellophane (made by extruding viscose through a slit to produce a clear film), and cellulose acetate in the form of film, fiber, and tow (for cigarette filters) accounted for more than 80 percent of the 1966 dissolving pulp consump-

⁸ With minor editorial changes taken from Durso (1969) by permission of Donald F. Durso and the Forest Products Research Society.

TABLE 27-9.—North American consumption of dissolving pulp in 1966 (Vincent 1967)

Type	Quantity
	<i>Thousands of short tons</i>
Viscose fibers—filament, staple, tow	602
Cellophane	205
Acetate fibers—filament, staple, tow	267
All other ¹	188

¹ Other: Acetate plastics, acetate film, nitrate lacquers, cuprammonium fibers, ethers, sponges, caps and bands, and special papers.

tion in North America (table 27-9). The product showing greatest recent sales growth is viscose fiber with high modulus of elasticity and tensile strength when wet. In certain applications these fibers can replace cotton and be blended with other synthetic fibers. Use of regular viscose staple fiber in nonwoven fabrics for the medical-surgical and hygienic fields is growing (Anonymous 1968a). Charles (1963) and Wilson (1959) provide additional details on the many uses of dissolving pulps.

The high molecular weight of cellulose and its long chain molecules account for the desirable strength properties of derived fibers and films. The complex nature of cellulose solutions requires knowledge of sophisticated theoretical chemistry for understanding (Elmgren 1965), but with advanced technology allows the manufacture of products having a wide range of controllable hydrophilic properties, which provide the comfort factor so necessary in many fiber applications.

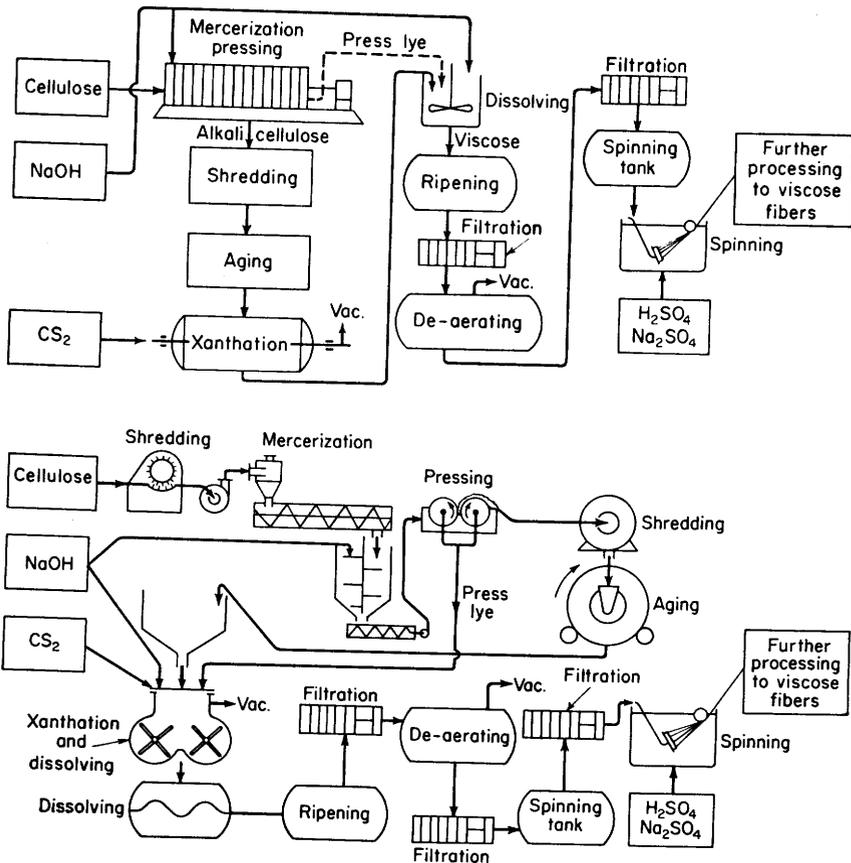


Figure 27-15.—Processes for regenerating cellulose from viscose solutions. (Top) Classical. (Bottom) Continuous or semicontinuous. (Drawing after Rydholm © 1965, reprinted by permission of John Wiley and Sons.)

ACETYLATION FLOW DIAGRAM

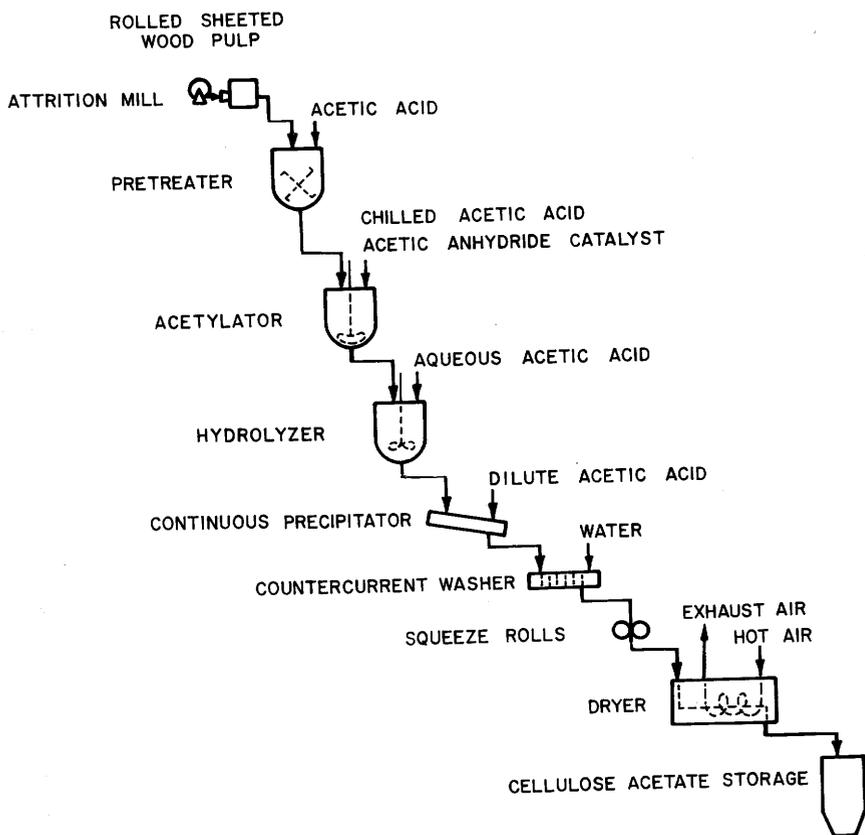


Figure 27-16.—Process for cellulose acetate, an ester of cellulose. (Drawing after Durso 1969.)

Figures 27-15 and 27-16 summarize the steps of the viscose and acetate processes, respectively (Rydholm 1965; Williams⁹). The fine details of the major dissolving pulp processes are the subject of frequent publications (e.g., Mitchell 1949; Treiber 1967); summaries of the conversion process are found in Gotze (1967) and Rydholm (1965). Durso et al. (1967) reported efforts to improve filtration to remove undissolved particles before spinning. Bartunek (1967) reviewed technology and described standard laboratory methods for analysis of pulp, viscose, and fibers made from viscose.

Publications related to dissolving pulp and specific to southern pine have described morphological properties of the native fibers (Jurbergs 1960ab) and detailed technical evaluation of how they react in the viscose process (Dean et al. 1960). The latter attempts to explain the difference in "reactivity" of sulfate pine pulp versus sulfite pine pulp in the viscose process. In recent years, research with statistical designs and computer analysis has been directed toward attaining process conditions designed

to extract all of the potential value from the pulp (Wyatt 1966). Williams⁹ showed that NaOH treatment, freeze-drying, and other structure-changing procedures have large effects on the rates of reaction and degradation during acetylation of pine sulfate pulp.

PROCESSES

Of the three major methods of preparing dissolving pulps, two, the sulfite and the sulfate processes, are applied to the southern pines. The soda process is applied primarily to make pulps from cotton linters, historically the chief alternate source of chemical cellulose.

Soda (linters).—Although the sulfite process for making woodpulp was developed in 1865, and the sulfate process in 1885, these pulps were not convertible to cellulose derivatives before World War I. Early dissolving pulps were made exclusively from cotton linters, the short fibers which are removed from cottonseed before it is crushed to extract the oil (Jurbergs 1960c; Jurbergs and Dowling 1964).

"Reactive" unbleached pulp from linters was used to prepare cellulose nitrate for gunpowder before 1905. This required only a mild cook, about 2 hours at 170° C. in 1 percent NaOH (solution basis), to remove dense foreign matter such as stems and seed hulls. Viscose and acetate required a more refined cellulose, obtained by a soda cook in the presence of additives which removed fats, waxes, and proteins. By 1930 special types of cotton pulps were designed for viscose, acetate, cuprammonium, and ether production, and were quoted at different prices related to their degree of purification (Anonymous 1955).

Despite increasing use of refined woodpulp in recent decades, linter pulps continued until about 1955 to be a major raw material for high-tenacity viscose fibers, and other cellulose derivatives. Recent increased costs of raw linters, due to declining cotton production, have restricted uses of linter pulps to those demanding high purity, heat stability, and high DP (degree of polymerization, i.e., number of glucose units per cellulose molecule).

Sulfite (general).—Dissolving woodpulp approach the chemical concept of pure cellulose and thus they must be substantially free of lignin, resin, minerals, and hemicelluloses. Figure 27-17 shows yield for dissolving pulps compared to that for other sulfite pulps. Dissolving pulp has the lowest yield, i.e., about 40 percent before bleaching. Great difficulty was encountered by an experienced sulfite paper pulp producer in his first efforts in 1924 to make a dissolving grade of pulp (Schur 1963). Digesting was no problem, but the later stages of purification, required for preparing a pulp with high alpha-cellulose content along with high brightness and appropriate DP, presented some very challenging problems. The most

⁹ Williams, J. C. 1968. The influence of pulp properties on acetylation reactivity. Presented at the 2nd TAPPI Dissolving Pulps Conference, New Orleans, La., June 4-6.

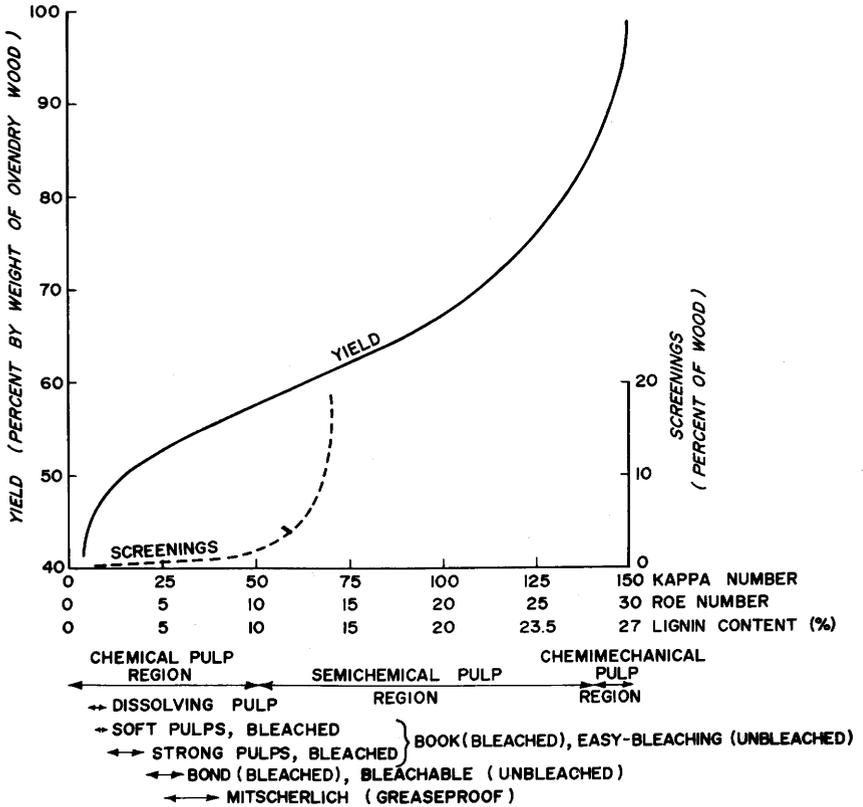


Figure 27-17.—Yield of spruce sulfite pulps of various grades. (Drawing after Rydholm © 1965 by permission of John Wiley and Sons.)

important step was a hot caustic extraction stage placed between acid chlorination and alkaline hypochlorite stages. This hot caustic stage used NaOH solution at about 1 percent concentration and a temperature up to about 96° to 98° C. It removed hemicellulose material and led to products having alpha-cellulose contents of about 90 to 94 percent, compared to 85 to 86 percent alpha in paper pulps from the same wood species.

Multistage sulfite processes for chemical cellulose are designed to yield dissolving pulps with alpha-cellulose contents as high as 96.0 percent. Some North American producers now offer sulfite pulps with alpha-cellulose contents up to 97.0 percent; the production processes for these pulps have not been revealed.

Cooking solutions used for dissolving pulp are much the same as those used for the manufacture of paper pulp, but cooking temperatures and times are carefully programmed (Rydholm 1965, p. 576). For dissolving pulp, maximum temperatures are usually about 145° C., with the major portion of the cooking cycle time required to obtain penetration of the wood chips without burning (Rydholm 1965, pp. 338 and 653). Very

little pulping action (lignin solution) occurs below 120° C. The total time from raw wood chips through digester unloading ranges from about 6 to about 12 hours, with the longer times required for the multistage processes.

Sulfite (southern pine).—The sulfite process was rather easily adapted to many species of softwoods and hardwoods, but as noted in section 27-3, it did not at first satisfactorily pulp southern pines because of their extractive content. In 1938 there appeared the first reference to successful preparation of a pine dissolving pulp which could replace the "standard" spruce pulp in the preparation of cellulose derivatives (Bunger et al. 1938). In 1939 Rayonier, Inc. constructed a pulpmill at Fernandina, Fla. to produce sulfite pine pulp, using a new (unidentified) principle of purification (Anonymous 1940) to increase alpha-cellulose content and decrease resin content. The Fernandina plant has been successful from the time of its dedication. In 1940 its capacity was given as 64,000/tons per year (Anonymous 1940); in 1953 it was over 300 tons/day, or about 100,000 tons/year of pulps for acetate, tire yarn, and viscose textile fibers (Anonymous 1953). Very recently additional capacity was installed for a premium grade acetate pulp (Anonymous 1967). The Fernandina plant is not only unique in its use of southern pine but also has the distinction of being upgraded while many other sulfite mills are being retired (Anonymous 1958).

Sulfate (southern pine).—Since the first demonstration in 1885 that wood could be delignified by the action of sodium hydroxide and sodium sulfide, use of the kraft process has grown until it is now the dominant pulping procedure. (See sec. 27-2.) Unlike the sulfite, the kraft process needs more than minor modification of cooking conditions to produce a dissolving grade of pulp. Impurities which become alkali stable during the kraft cook can be removed by a combination of acid and alkaline stages *after* the cook, but the pulp will not have the required reactivity even though desired chemical analyses can be achieved (Rydholm 1965, p. 657). In 1931 Richter discovered that an acid hydrolysis *prior* to the sulfate cook would provide the necessary purity and reactivity in the pulp (Ott et al. 1954, p. 616). This finding was used in Germany during World War II to make dissolving pulp from hardwoods (Ott et al. 1954, p. 546). The pulping procedure was further developed by Industrial Cellulose Research Ltd. in North America and became a considerable factor in the dissolving pulp industry by early 1951 (Anonymous 1950, 1968c).

Simmonds et al. (1956) detail the range of prehydrolysis conditions which must be used to break down and remove the hemicellulose from loblolly pine while leaving the lignin in a form which responds to pulping reactions. In another study of loblolly pine, Simmonds and Chidester (1960) reported on one of the rare systematic comparisons of sulfate pulp preparation with and without prehydrolysis.

It was learned rather early in the use of the prehydrolysis sulfate process that the usual purification procedures would not raise the alpha-cellulose level beyond about 95 percent. Based on previous broad experience with high-purity dissolving pulps from linters, the Buckeye-Cellulose Corp. in 1959 patented a process for purification of woodpulp to much higher alpha levels (Rogers et al. 1959). The process uses a cold, concentrated alkali extraction step which can be incorporated into a bleaching procedure as indicated by Rydholm (1965, p. 1074, Type 25, also pp. 996-997). This first high-alpha wood pulp, called "V-5" pulp, has been on the market since 1955 (Schenker and Heath 1959). Through suitable combinations of prehydrolysis-pulping-purification procedures, a wide range of sulfate pine dissolving pulps thus became available.

The construction of pulpmills by Rayonier in Jesup, Ga. (Anonymous 1954b) and by Buckeye at Foley, Fla. (Anonymous 1954a) marked the beginning of sulfate dissolving pulp manufacture from southern pine. Because of the range of pulp types which they could produce (table 27-10), demand rapidly exceeded initial capacity of these mills, and both carried out a series of expansions (Waters and Waters 1958; Anonymous 1959, 1960, 1962ab, 1964a). There are now two essentially independent pulpmills on each site, and current capacities are about 300 percent of the initial.

Sulfite-sulfate comparisons.—The success of the sulfate southern pine ventures in the face of well-entrenched and highly useful sulfite pulps is not due alone to lower wood and processing costs. Tippetts (1950) stated that even though the rayon manufacturer uses the same process for both

TABLE 27-10.—*Typical characteristics of dissolving pulps from southern pine*

	Sulfate	Sulfite
Alpha-cellulose, percent.....	93.6-98.3	91.8-97.0
Pentosans, percent.....	.4- 2.3	.5- 2.2
¹ Viscosity, 0.5 percent in CED, cp.....	3.9-11.8	5.5-21.3
² S-10, percent.....	1.9-11.3	4.3-11.3
S-18, percent.....	1.1- 4.7	1.7- 6.0
S-21.5, percent.....	.9- 4.0	1.4- 5.4
Brightness, GE.....	83.4-92.7	88.4-91.4

¹ Viscosity of a solution of cellulose (0.5 percent by weight) in cupri-ethylene diamine is directly proportional to the molecular weight of cellulose. See TAPPI Standard T 230-su-66. Cp. means centipoise.

² The percentage of a pulp that will dissolve in an NaOH solution is inversely correlated with pulp purity; different components dissolve in various concentrations. Values opposite S-10, for example, give the weight percentage that will dissolve in a 10-percent solution of NaOH. See TAPPI Standard T 235-m-60.

liners and woodpulp, some unknown intrinsic property of the liners cellulose carries through to the final product and significantly affects its functional behavior. Similarly, he observed that tire rayons made from prehydrolysis sulfate pulp have better properties than those obtainable from the best sulfite pulps; properties of the sulfate tire rayons closely approach those from cotton liners. Since the standard cellulose characterization tests do not detect the reasons for the improved performance, it appears that other—perhaps more sophisticated—analyses will be required to understand these differences so that better pulps can be developed.

Among other differences, it is known that sulfite chemicals attack the structure of cellulose fibers more severely, affecting their strength, porosity, and other gross properties (Rydholm 1965, p. 319; Stone and Scallan 1968). Parks (1959) has also shown by X-ray diffraction that sulfate southern pine pulp has a structure more closely approaching that of cotton liners than either sulfite southern pine or sulfate hardwood pulps. Furthermore, he found that the similarity persisted when the supermolecular structure was exposed to treatments with strong NaOH. Sulfate processing of southern pine leads to cellulose in which the molecules are arranged into ordered regions which in size and/or degree of perfection rival those found in liners. The combination of pine wood and prehydrolysis sulfate pulping produces a unique chemical cellulose.

Much research has been directed toward answering the question: Does the structural difference noted in woodpulp fibers carry over into the regenerated cellulose? Ranby et al. (1956), through electron microscopy, found that regenerated viscose cellulose contains fibrillar structures resembling those in the starting pulp. Comparing cotton liners with sulfite and sulfate wood pulps, they concluded that differences among the structures in the end products were dependent on the starting material. However, this work establishes neither the presence nor the absence of "original structures" in the end product.

A different avenue for speculation was opened through the discovery that order and crystallinity in manmade polymers arises from the phenomenon of chain folding. Tonnesen and Ellefsen (1960), Dolmetsch (1961), and Manley (1964) have proposed that similar chain folding leads to the ordered structure found in both native and regenerated cellulose. If this be true, then the findings of Hess et al (1951), Elmgren (1965), and Brown (1966) could provide a bridge for relating structure in the end product with structure in the original chemical cellulose. Hess et al. (1951) demonstrated that in viscose preparation both the alkali steeping and the CS₂ reaction take place through a permutoid reaction; that is, the basic structure is swollen to accommodate the reagents but the structure is not destroyed. The others have established that cellulose molecules approach the shape of random coils in solution, and that both derivative preparation and solution cause only slight changes in the degree of coil expansion while "structure" is maintained. Therefore, one can

visualize that during the dissolving process the ordered structure in the native fiber is "destroyed" by loosening a cellulose molecule from its neighbors without disturbing its intramolecular organization. When the molecule is regenerated, only its association with neighboring molecules is re-established.

This grossly oversimplified picture is postulated to rationalize observed results, but there is no body of data to prove it¹⁰; however, the concept of structure "memory" has been found useful for understanding the performance of sulfate pine pulps in either the viscose or the acetate process. A high degree of order is a hindrance during conversion, but once solution is achieved and the cellulose recovered as a new form, then inherent benefits are attainable from the same inherent higher degree of order.

The sulfate process has a 2 to 1 time advantage over the traditional sulfite process in terms of digester cycle (Rydholm 1965, p. 653), plus advantages in pollution control and chemical recovery. The result has been increased sulfate dissolving pulp capacity and pulp types (Anonymous 1962b, 1964b, 1968b), while sulfite mills are being phased out (Anonymous 1963). At the end of 1968, only 14 years after introduction, sulfate southern pine pulps represent one-third of the North American market dissolving pulp production. These pulps, selling at a higher price than many domestic sulfite pulps, also comprise a large percentage of North American pulp exports to Europe and Japan because they fulfill specialized technical demands of conversion processes.

SPECIES

The effect of species on the dissolving pulp process has not been clearly established. Of the 10 southern pine species, seven are probably used in the manufacture of dissolving pulp; this is primarily because the mills (at Fernandina, Fla.; Foley, Fla.; and Jesup, Ga.) are within—or close to—their natural ranges (See ch. 3.)

Both sulfite and sulfate pine dissolving pulps are now derived mainly from slash pine; appreciable quantities of longleaf pine are also used. Loblolly, shortleaf, pond, spruce, and Virginia pines are probably utilized as they may be encountered in natural stands; it is probable, however, that pitch and Table-Mountain pines rarely occur in furnish for dissolving pulp. Although the range of sand pine is not distant from the sulfite mill at Fernandina, Fla., sand pine is not accepted there—presumably because of its relatively high heartwood content (table 5-1) and consequent lack of response to acid bisulfite pulping liquors.

As shown in chapters 5, 6, and 7, the four major species plus spruce pine are characterized in a rather extensive body of literature. Data are less complete for the other five species. Studies have emphasized wood

¹⁰ Since this section was written, Manjunath and Peacock (1969) have obtained X-ray evidence for the transfer of native cellulose structure from pulp to viscose fibers.

specific gravity and dimensions of tracheids, especially their length. Critical and extensive studies within single species show rather remarkable ranges of properties from tree to tree and within a tree (Jurbergs 1963). There is a great deal of overlap in fiber properties among southern pines, resulting from both environmental and genetic factors. (See ch. 4.)

Section 27-2 described the effects of fiber dimensions on the strength of paper made from sulfate pulps. While variations in fiber dimensions and fiber structure would logically have rather gross effects during the dissolving of cellulose fibers, no studies comparable to those for paper have been published. If differences do exist, they cannot be established with data now in hand because of limitations in laboratory evaluation procedures. Until more sensitive evaluations are available, it must be concluded that any southern pine can be converted into useful dissolving pulp because the capabilities of the pulp-converting processes far overshadow the possible differences among the pulps made from the different species.

Faced with the practical problem of selecting a dominant species for their woodlands, the dissolving pulp manufacturers have concentrated their efforts on those species which grow best in their locality while providing acceptable performance during pulping and bleaching (Wyatt and Beers 1964).

27-5 LITERATURE CITED

- Anonymous.
1940. Rayonier Incorporated, Fernandina, Fla. Pap. Trade J. 110(12): 27-32.
- Anonymous.
1950. International Paper's new Natchez mill. Pap. Trade J. 131(14): 18-20, 22-24.
- Anonymous.
1953. Progress made at all divisions of Rayonier. Pap. Trade J. 136(20): 38-43.
- Anonymous.
1954a. New plants of Buckeye Cellulose Corporation, Foley, Ala. South. Pulp and Pap. J. 17(10-A): 20, 22, 24, 26, 30-32, 34, 36.
- Anonymous.
1954b. Rayonier's 5th plant opens at Jesup, Ga. Pap. Trade J. 138(28): 16-20.
- Anonymous.
1955. Buckeye. TAPPI 38(3): 121A-123A.
- Anonymous.
1958. More cellulose arrives. Chem. and Eng. News 36(4), Part 1, p. 24.
- Anonymous.
1959. New pulp mill of Buckeye at Foley has many unusual features. Pap. Trade J. 143(20): 38-49.
- Anonymous.
1960. New Buckeye cellulose expansion to increase Florida Mill capacity by 33,000 tons. South. Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer 23(7): 39-40.
- Anonymous.
1962a. New Rayonier pulp nears cellulose ultimate. South. Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer 25(5): 50.
- Anonymous.
1962b. The history of Buckeye. J. Amer. Oil Chem. Soc. 39(7): 4-5.
- Anonymous.
1963. Rayonier to dispose of Shelton Pulp Mill. Pap. Trade J. 147(15): 29.

- Anonymous.
1964a. Buckeye announces 20 per cent expansion for Foley Mill. *Pap. Trade J.* 148(5): 25.
- Anonymous.
1964b. Sulfite vs. sulfate pulping. *Pap. Ind.* 45: 657-659.
- Anonymous.
1967. Rayonier announces additions to Florida and Washington Mills. *Pap. Trade J.* 151(17): 39.
- Anonymous.
1968a. Cotton markets facing assault from rayon. *Chem. and Eng. News* 46(29): 18-20.
- Anonymous.
1968b. Kraft pulper takes on new challenge. *Chem. Week* 102(6): 62-63.
- Anonymous.
1968c. The new look at ICR: Pilot plant continuous digester simulates mill-scale conditions. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 69(8): 42-47.
- Anonymous.
1970. FPL recycles municipal trash for fiber products. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(8): 11.
- Ahlm, C. E., and Leopold, B.
1963. Chemical composition and physical properties of wood fibers. IV. Changes in chemical composition of loblolly pine fibers during the kraft cook. *TAPPI* 46: 102-104.
- American Paper Institute.
1968. Monthly statistical summary. *Amer. Pap. Inst.* 46(5): 1-22.
- Aurell, R.
1963. The effect of lowered pH at the end of birch kraft cooks. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 66: 437-442.
- Aurell, R., and Hartler, N.
1965. Kraft pulping of pine. II. The influence of the charge of alkali on the yield, carbohydrate composition, and properties of the pulp. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 68: 97-102.
- Barefoot, A. C., Hitchings, R. G., and Ellwood, E. L.
1964. Wood characteristics and kraft paper properties of four selected loblolly pines. I. Effect of fiber morphology under identical cooking conditions. *TAPPI* 47: 343-356.
- Barefoot, A. C., Hitchings, R. G., and Ellwood, E. L.
1966. Wood characteristics and kraft paper properties of four selected loblolly pines. III. Effect of fiber morphology in pulps examined at a constant permanganate number. *TAPPI* 49: 137-147.
- Barefoot, A. C., Hitchings, R. G., Ellwood, E. L., and Wilson, E. H.
1970. The relationship between loblolly pine fiber morphology and kraft paper properties. *N.C. Agr. Exp. Sta. Tech. Bull.* 202, 88 pp.
- Bartunek, R.
1967. Die Untersuchung der Zellstoffe. In *Chemiefasern nach dem Viskoseverfahren*. Vol. II, Part VI, ed. 3, pp. 992-1266. Berlin: Springer.
- Belova, S. I., and Konovalova, A. A.
1967. The use of refiner groundwood in the composition of boxboard. *Khim. Pererab. Drev., Ref. Inform.* 15: 8-9.
- Bishop, F. W.
1959. Newsprint quality groundwood from southern pines. *Pap. Trade J.* 143(24): 62-64.
- Bolviken, A., and Giertz, H. W.
1956. High yield sulfite pulping. *Norsk Skogindustri* 10: 344-348.
- Braun, R. V., and Davis, J. W.
1969. Printability and strength qualities of refiner groundwood as related to wood species. *TAPPI* 52: 282-288.
- Bray, M. W., and Curran, C. E.
1933. White papers from southern pines. III. Pulping longleaf pine for strong, easy-bleaching pulp. *Pap. Trade J.* 96(6): 30-34.
- Bray, M. W., and Curran, C. E.
1937. Sulphate pulping of southern yellow pines: Effect of growth variables on yield and pulp quality. *Pap. Trade J.* 105(20): 39-46.
- Bray, M. W., and Curran, E. C.
1938. Sulfate pulping of southern yellow pines. Effect of growth variables on yield and pulp quality. *Tech. Assoc. Pap. Ser.* 21, 458-465.

- Bray, M. W., Martin, J. S., and Schwartz, S. L.
1937. Sulphate pulping of long-leaf pine: Effect of chemical wood ratio on yield and quality of pulp. *Pap. Trade J.* 105(24): 39-44.
- Bray, M. W., and Martin, J. S.
1942. Pulping Florida sand pine (*Pinus clausa*) for kraft, high-grade papers, and newsprint. *Southern Pulp and Pap. J.* 5(1): 7-14.
- Bray, M. W., and Paul, B. H.
1934. Evaluation of southern pines for pulp production. III. Shortleaf pine (*Pinus echinata*). *Pap. Trade J.* 99(5): 38-41.
- Brecht, W., Schröter, H., and Süttinger, R.
1938. [Influence of grinding temperature on the resin content of waste waters in the grinding of white pine.] *Papier-Fabrikant* 36(41): 425-428.
- Brecht, W., Schröter, H., and Süttinger, R.
1940. [The influence of age on the wood on the mechanical pulping of Scots pine.] *Papierfabr.* 38(13/14): 77-94.
- Bristow, O. J., Kelly, R. J., and Smith, W. L.
1967. High-yield kraft for linerboard—batch vs. continuous pulping. *Pap. Trade J.* 151(44): 39-40.
- Bromley, W. S.
1968. Pulpwood pressures persist in South. *Pulpwood Prod. and Saw Mill Logging* 16(5): 14, 16, 18, 20.
- Brown, W. J.
1966. The configuration of cellulose and derivatives in solution. *TAPPI* 49: 367-373.
- Browning, B. L., and Baker, P. S.
1950. The characteristics of unbleached kraft pulps from western hemlock, Douglas fir, western red cedar, loblolly pine, and black spruce. *TAPPI* 33: 99-101.
- Bryce, J. G. R., and Tomlinson, G. H.
1962. Modified magnetite pulping: the two-stage neutral process. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 63(7): T355-T361.
- Bunger, H., Doud, E., and Sugarman, N.
1938. Studies in the viscose rayon process. I. The suitability of Georgia pine pulp for the production of viscose rayon. *Ga. State Eng. Exp. Sta. Bull.* 3, Vol. 1(4): 3-8.
- Cann, E. D., and Roberson, W. B.
1960. The effects of the active alkali charge upon unbleached pulp yields and quality in the kraft cooking of southern pinewood. *TAPPI* 43: 97-104.
- Carpenter, C.
1939. Experimental demonstration work of the Herty Foundation Laboratory. *Mon. Rev., Amer. Pap. and Pulp Assoc.* 6(5-6): 20-23.
- Carpenter, C., Porter, C. C., Fox, J. S., and others.
1949. Means and method of controlling pitch in groundwood and paper products. (Can. Pat. No. 454,036) *Can. Pat. Office, Ottawa, Can.*
- Cederquist, K. N., Ahlborg, N. K. G., Lunden, B., and Wentworth, T. O.
1960. Stora sodium-base chemical recovery process. *TAPPI* 43: 702-706.
- Charles, F. R.
1963. Dissolving pulp and its expanding use. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 62(6): 73-77.
- Chidester, G. H.
1966. Fiber characteristics and paper quality from southern pine. *Amer. Pulpwood Assoc. Tech. Pap.* 66-7: (5.613) 22-24.
- Chidester, G. H., McGovern, J. N., and McNaughton, G. C.
1938. Comparison of sulfite pulps from fast-growth loblolly, shortleaf, longleaf and slash pines. *Pap. Trade J.* 107(4): 36-39.
- Chidester, G. H., and McGovern, J. N.
1939. Effect of the addition of sodium salts in pulping shortleaf pine neutral sodium sulphite liquor. *Pap. Trade J.* 108(6): 31-32.
- Chidester, G. H., and McGovern, J. N.
1940. Effect of acid concentration and temperature schedule in pulping resinous woods. *Pap. Trade J.* 110(10): 39-42.

- Chidester, G. H., and McGovern, J. N.
1941. Sulphite pulp from Douglas fir. *Pap. Trade J.* 113(9): 34-38.
- Christiansen, C. B., Hart, J. S., and Ross, J. H.
1957. Sulphidity as a variable in the pulping of western red cedar: The effect of the Na_2S /wood ratio on pulp properties. *TAPPI* 40: 355-361.
- Christopher, J. F., and Nelson, M. E.
1963. Southern pulpwood production, 1962. USDA Forest Serv. Resource Bull. SO-1, 24 pp. Southern Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Cole, D. E., Zobel, B. J., and Roberds, J. H.
1966. Slash, loblolly, and longleaf pine in a mixed natural stand; a comparison of their wood properties, pulp yields, and paper properties. *TAPPI* 49: 161-166.
- Craig, K. A., and Hackbert, C. R.
1958. Preparation of groundwood pulp. (Can. Pat. No. 565,955) Can. Pat. Office, Ottawa, Can.
- Croon, I.
1963. Softwood sulfite pulps in increased yield by the alkali-sulphite (A-S) method. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 66(1): 1-5.
- Croon, I.
1965. The flexibility of sodium-base two-stage neutral-acid sulfite pulping. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 66(2): T71-T76.
- Cross, C. F., and Bevan, E. J.
1920. A text-book of paper-making. Ed. 5, 527 pp. N.Y.: Spon and Chamberlain.
- Cumbie, J.
1969. Sawdust utilization in the pulp and paper industry. *In* Wood residue utilization, pp. 2-8. Third Tex. Ind. Wood Seminar, Tex. Forest Prod. Lab. Lufkin.
- Curran, C. E.
1936. Some relations between growth conditions, wood structure and pulping quality. *Pap. Trade J.* 103(11): 36-40.
- Curran, C. E.
1938. Relation of growth characteristics of southern pine to its use in pulping. *Pap. Trade J.* 106(23): 40-43.
- Curran, C. E., and Bray, M. W.
1931. White papers from southern pines. I. Pulping loblolly pine for strong, easy-bleaching sulphate pulp. *Pap. Trade J.* 92(1): 47-52.
- Dadswell, H. E., and Watson, A. J.
1962. Influence of the morphology of woodpulp fibres on paper properties. *In* The formation and structure of paper, pp. 537-564. London: Tech. Sect. Brit. Pap. and Board Makers' Assoc.
- Darmstadt, W. J., and Tomlinson, G. H., II.
1960. Magnesia-base pulping and recovery. *TAPPI* 43: 674-676.
- Dean, W. L., Wyatt, W. R., and Parks, L. R.
1960. Nature and site of surfactant action in viscose preparation. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 63: 570-576.
- Dickerscheid, J. L.
1958. Varying sulphidity in southern pine sulphate pulping: A comparison of the active and effective alkali basis for applying alkali. *TAPPI* 41: 526-529.
- Dinwoodie, J. M.
1966. The influence of anatomical and chemical characteristics of softwood fibers on the properties of sulfate pulp. *TAPPI* 49: 57-67.
- Dolmetsch, H.
1961. [Existence of chain folding for cellulose.] *Kolloid-Z.* 176(1): 63-64.
- Dorland, R. M., Leask, R. A., and McKinney, J. W.
1958. Pulp production with sodium bisulfite. I. The cooking of spruce. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 59(C): 236-246.
- Dorland, R. M., and McKinney, J. W.
1959. High yields bisulphite pulping process. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,906,659.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Durso, D. F.
1969. Dissolving pulp from southern pine wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(8): 49-56.
- Durso, D. F., Benning, T. C., and Goode, J. R.
1967. The filterability problem. III. Development of a screen filter. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 70: 837-845.

- Dyer, H.
1961. The first two-stage premium sulfite pulps in North America. *Pap. Trade J.* 145(44): 20-25.
- Einspahr, D. W.
1964. Correlations between fiber dimensions and fiber and handsheet strength properties. *TAPPI* 47: 180-183.
- Elmgren, H.
1965. The macromolecular properties of sodium cellulose xanthate in dilute solution. *Arkiv för Kem.* 24: 237-282.
- Erdtman, H.
1944. [The phenolic constituents of pine heartwood. VII. The heartwood of *Pinus nigra* Arn., *Pinus montana* Mill., *Pinus banksiana* Lamb., and *Pinus palustris* Mill.] *Svensk Kem. Tidskr.* 56: 95-101.
- Erdtman, H.
1949a. Compounds inhibiting the sulphite cook. *TAPPI* 32: 303-305.
- Erdtman, H.
1949b. Heartwood extractives of conifers. *TAPPI* 32: 305-310.
- Fahey, D. J., and Laundrie, J. F.
1968. Kraft pulps, papers, and linerboard from southern pine thinnings. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note FPL-0182, 8 pp. Forest Prod. Lab., Madison, Wis.
- Fields, W. F.
1960. Recent improvements in pulpwood grinders for insulating fiberboard manufacture. *TAPPI* 43(4): 202A-205A.
- Forgacs, O. L.
1963. The characterization of mechanical pulps. Part II: A microscopic examination of mechanical pulps. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 64: T92-T100.
- Foster, S. C.
1932. Strong groundwood from pine. *Pap. Mill* 55(51): 10.
- Freeman, H.
1947. A new method of pitch control in newsprint manufacture. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 48(8): 73-75.
- Fuller, A. C., and Carpenter, C.
1938. Newsprint from pine mechanical and chemical pulps. Grinding experiments with a coarse grit synthetic stone. *Tech. Assoc. Pap. Ser.* 21, pp. 438-440.
- Gavelin, N. G.
1966. Science and technology of mechanical pulp manufacture. 250 pp. N.Y.: Lockwood Publishing Co., Inc.
- Gladstone, W. T., Barefoot, A. C., and Zobel, B. J.
1970. Kraft pulping of earlywood and latewood from loblolly pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(2): 17-24.
- Gaddard, R. E., and Strickland, R. K.
1962. Geographic variation in wood specific gravity of slash pine. *TAPPI* 45: 606-608.
- Götze, K.
1967. *Chemiefasern nach dem Viskoseverfahren*. Ed. 3, 2 vols., 1322 pp. Berlin: Springer-Verlag.
- Graff, J. H., and Isenberg, I. H.
1950. The characteristics of unbleached kraft pulps from western hemlock, Douglas fir, western red cedar, loblolly pine, and black spruce. II. The morphological characteristics of the pulp fibers. *TAPPI* 33: 94-95.
- Hägglund, A. E.
1945. *Undersökningar över sulfatkokningsprocessen*. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 48(8): 195-199.
- Hägglund, E.
1951. *Chemistry of wood*. 631 pp. N.Y.: Academic Press.
- Hair, D.
1967. Use of regression equations for projecting trends in demand for paper and board. *USDA Forest Resource Rep.* 18, 178 pp. Wash., D.C.
- Hart, J. S.
1954. The Va-Purge process in chemical pulping. *TAPPI* 37: 331-335.
- Hart, J. S., Strapp, R. K., and Ross, J. H.
1954. High-yield sulphite pulping. I. High-yield sulphite pulping with a soluble base. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 55(10): 114-123.

- Hart, J. S., and Woods, J. M.
1955. High-yield sulphite pulping. II-III. The influence of yield on pulp qualities; eastern spruce-balsam and western hemlock. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 56(9): 95-101.
- Hartler, N., and Onisko, W.
1962. The interdependence of chip thickness, cooking temperature and screenings in kraft cooking of pine. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 65: 905-910.
- Haynes, W.
1953. Cellulose—the chemical that grows. 386 pp. N.Y.: Doubleday.
- Herty, C. H.
1933. White paper from young southern pines. *Tech. Assoc. Papers* 16(1): 298-302.
- Hess, K., Kiessig, H., and Koblitz, W.
1951. The permutoid character of xanthation of fiber cellulose. *Z. Für Elektrochem.* 55: 697-708.
- Hill, E. H.
1944. Substitutes for round pine wood in making alkaline pulps. *Pap. Trade J.* 119(19): 27-29.
- Holzer, W. F., and Booth, K. G.
1950. The characteristics of unbleached kraft pulps from western hemlock, Douglas fir, western red cedar, loblolly pine, and black spruce. III. The comparative pulping of the woods. *TAPPI* 33: 95-98.
- Holzer, W. F., and Lewis, H. F.
1950. The characteristics of unbleached kraft pulps from western hemlock, Douglas fir, western red cedar, loblolly pine, and black spruce. VII. Comparison of springwood and summerwood fibers of Douglas fir. *TAPPI* 33: 110-112.
- Ingruber, O. V., and Allard, G. A.
1970. Alkaline sulfite pulping. (Can. Pat. No. 847,218) U.S. Pat. Off., Wash., D.C.
- Isenberg, I. H.
1951. Pulpwoods of United States and Canada. Ed. 2, 187 pp. Appleton, Wis.: Institute of Paper Chemistry.
- Jenkins, D. F.
1966. How Bowaters Carolina blade coats southern publication grades. *Amer. Pap. Ind.* 48(11): 54-57.
- Johnson, E. H., (Ed.).
1960. Mechanical pulping manual. *TAPPI Monogr. Ser.* 21, 183 pp.
- Jones, E. D., Campbell, R. T., and Nelson, G. G., Jr.
1966. Springwood - summerwood separation of southern pine pulp to improve paper qualities. *TAPPI* 49: 410-414.
- Jurbergs, K. A.
1960a. An electron microscope study: Slash pine and sweetgum fibers. *TAPPI* 43: 865-871.
- Jurbergs, K. A.
1960b. Morphological properties of cotton and wood fibers. I. Cotton linters. *TAPPI* 43: 554-560.
- Jurbergs, K. A.
1960c. Morphological properties of cotton and wood fibers. II. Slash pine. *TAPPI* 43: 561-568.
- Jurbergs, K. A.
1963. Determining fiber length, fibrillar angle, and springwood - summerwood ratio in slash pine. *Forest Sci.* 9: 181-187.
- Jurbergs, K. A., and Dowling, D. J., Jr.
1964. Determination of foreign materials of plant origin in cotton linters. *J. Amer. Oil Chem. Soc.* 41: 545-547.
- Kamyr Incorporated.
1970. Continuous cooking installations. *Kamyr Bull.* 200E, 28 pp. Glens Falls, N.Y.
- Keller, E. L., and Fahey, D. J.
1968. Magnesium bisulfite pulping and paper making with southern pine. *TAPPI* 51: 98-103.
- Kennedy, E. H.
1960. The Sivola sodium-base pulping and chemical recovery process. *TAPPI* 43: 683-687.
- Kirmreuther, Dr.
1938. [Pine groundwood pulp.] *Wochenbl. Papierfabr.* 69: 563-568.

- Klemm, K. H.
1950. [Recent ideas in the field of the manufacture of white groundwood pulp.] *Wochenbl. Papierfabr.* 78: 567-571, 595-598, 727-730.
- Klemm, K. H.
1958. Modern method of mechanical pulp manufacture. 241 pp. Chicago: Lockwood Trade Journal Co., Inc.
- Kleppe, P. J.
1964. Discussion. [Emil Venemark's "Some ideas on polysulfide pulping."] *Svensk Papperstidn.* 67(5): 165-166.
- Kleppe, P. J.
1970. The process of, and products from, kraft pulping of southern pine. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(5): 50-59.
- Koch, R. O., Sapp, J. E., and McCray, R. L.
1958. Kraft pulping of spruce pine. *TAPPI* 41: 349-353.
- Lagergren, S., and Lunden, B.
1959. Some recent developments in sulphite pulp making. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 60(11): T338-T341, T345.
- Landmark, P. A., Kleppe, P. J., and Johnsen, K.
1965. Cooking liquor oxidation and improved cooking techniques in polysulfide pulping. *TAPPI* 48(5): 56A-58A.
- Legg, G. W., and Hart, J. S.
1960. Alkaline pulping of jack-pine and Douglas fir. The influence of sulphide and effective alkali charge on pulping rate and pulp properties. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 61: T299-T304.
- Leopold, B.
1966. Effect of pulp processing on individual fiber strength. *TAPPI* 49: 315-318.
- Lewis, H. F., Wise, L. E., and Brown-ing, B. L.
1950. The characteristics of unbleached kraft pulps from western hemlock, Douglas-fir, western red cedar, loblolly pine, and black spruce. I. The chemical constituents of the unbleached kraft pulps. *TAPPI* 33: 92-94.
- McGovern, J. N.
1936. Effect of high sulphur dioxide concentrations and high pressures in sulphite pulping. *Pap. Trade J.* 103(20): 29-42.
- McGovern, J. N., and Chidester, G. H.
1941. Pulping loblolly pine heartwood with calcium-, magnesium-, and sodium-base sulphite liquors. *Pap. Trade J.* 113(16): 32-35.
- McHale, W. L.
1948. History and growth of newsprint industry in the South. *Pap. Trade J.* 127(27): 25-27.
- McHale, W. L., and Porter, C. C.
1954. The paper industry and the Southland mill. *Southern Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer* 17(7): 84, 86.
- McIntosh, D. C.
1963. Tensile and bonding strengths of loblolly pine kraft fibers cooked to different yields. *TAPPI* 46: 273-277.
- McIntosh, D. C.
1967. The effect of refining on the structure of the fiber wall. *TAPPI* 50: 482-488.
- McKee, J. C.
1960. The kraft pulping of small diameter slash pines. *TAPPI* 43(6): 202A-204A.
- McMillin, C. W.
1968. Gross wood characteristics affecting properties of handsheets made from loblolly pine refiner groundwood. *TAPPI* 51: 51-56.
- McMillin, C. W.
1969a. Aspects of fiber morphology affecting properties of handsheets made from loblolly pine refiner groundwood. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 3: 139-149.
- McMillin, C. W.
1969b. Quality of refiner groundwood pulp as related to handsheet properties and gross wood characteristics. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 3: 287-300.
- McMillin, C. W.
1969c. Wood chemical composition as related to properties of handsheets made from loblolly pine refiner groundwood. *Wood Sci. and Technol.* 3: 232-238.

- Manley, R. St. J.
1964. Chain folding in amylose crystals. *J. Polymer Sci.* 2A(10): 4503-4515.
- Manjunath, B. R., and Peacock, N.
1969. Recrystallization of the cellulose I lattice in mercerized and regenerated cellulose fibers. *Textile Res. J.* 39(1): 70-77.
- Martin, J. S.
1943. Sulfate pulping of mixtures of selected southern hardwoods, southern yellow pine. *Southern Pulp and Pap. J.* 6(7): 13-18.
- Martin, J. S., and Brown, K. J.
1952. Effect of bark on yield and quality of sulphate pulp from southern pine. *TAPPI* 35: 7-10.
- Martynoff, M., and Weiss, J. D.
1937. [Wood pulp from pine.] *Zellst und Pap.* 17: 102-103.
- Mason, R. R., Muhonen, J. M., and Swartz, J. N.
1963. Water sprayed storage of southern pine pulpwood. *TAPPI* 46: 233-240.
- Meunier, E.
1931. The Rosen method for the manufacture of sulphite pulp from resinous woods. *Papeterie* 53(4): 214, 217-218.
- Mitchell, R. L.
1949. Viscose processing of cellulose: Changes in basic properties. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 41: 2197-2201.
- Mitchell, H. L.
1958. Wood quality evaluation from increment cores. *TAPPI* 41: 150-156.
- Mitchell, H. L.
1964. Patterns of variation in specific gravity of southern pines and other coniferous species. *TAPPI* 47: 276-283.
- Moon, D. G., (Ed.).
1954. New Bowaters Southern mill in operation. *Pap. Mill News* 77(35): 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24-34.
- Morkved, L., and Larson, P.
1969. Refiner groundwood. *TAPPI* 53: 1465-1467.
- Mühlsteph, V. W.
1941. [Significance of fiber shapes for properties of pulp. IV. Anatomical consideration of pulp woods and fibers.] *Wochenbl. Papierfabr.* 72(14): 201-204, 219-224.
- Murto, J., and Itkonen, J.
1950. [Southern pine and its use as raw material in the sulphate pulp industry.] *Pap. ja Puu B* 32(4): 108-123.
- Nolan, W. J.
1953. Studies in continuous alkaline pulping. III. The pulping of slash pine. *TAPPI* 36: 406-417.
- Nolan, W. J.
1957. Studies in continuous alkaline pulping. V. The effects of chip size and preimpregnation on quality and yield. *TAPPI* 40: 170-190.
- Nolan, W. J.
1967. Chip shredding—why not investigate further? *Pulp and Pap.* 41(44): 57-58.
- Nolan, W. J.
1969. Sulfitte pulping of southern pines. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(9): 97-102.
- Nolan, W. J.
1970. Pulping of slash pine with sodium sulfitte and sulfitte-bisulfitte liquors. *TAPPI* 53: 1309-1315.
- Nolan, W. J., and Brown, W. G.
1952. Experimental development of high-speed continuous alkaline pulping. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 53(9): 98-110.
- Nolan, W. J., Harvin, R. L., Reeder, L. M., and Rothrock, C. W., Jr.
1951. Studies in continuous alkaline pulping. I. Evaluation of variables for rapid pulping. *TAPPI* 34: 529-538.
- Ott, E., Spurlin, H. M., and Grafflin, M. W., (Ed.).
1954. High polymers. Vol. V. Cellulose and cellulose derivatives. Ed. 2, 3 parts, 1601 pp. N.Y.: Interscience, Publ.
- Parks, L. R.
1959. Classification of pulps according to supermolecular structure of cellulose. *TAPPI* 42: 317-319.
- Pascoe, T. A., Buchanan, J. S., Kennedy, E. H., and Sivola, G.
1959. The Sivola sulphite cooking and recovery process. *TAPPI* 42: 265-281.
- Paterson, H. A.
1937. The grinding of jack pine for newsprint manufacture. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 38(2): 146-147.

- Perry, T. O., and Wang, C. W.
1958. Variation in the specific gravity of slash pinewood and its genetic and silvicultural implications. TAPPI 41: 178-180.
- Pillow, M. Y., Chidester, G. H., and Bray, M. W.
1941. Effect of wood structure on properties of sulphate and sulphite pulps from loblolly pine. Southern Pulp and Pap. J. 4(7): 6-12.
- Porphyre, J. A.
1929. Pine wood in the paper industry. Inst. du Pin Bull. 57, pp. 82-84.
- Ranby, B. G., Giertz, H. W., and Treiber, E.
1956. An electron microscopic investigation of the viscose process. Parts I and II. Svensk Papperstidn. 59: 117-127; 205-217.
- Rasch, R. H., Leemhuis, P. L., and Sutton, H.
1962. Semichemical pulping process for soft woods. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,069,310.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Reis, C. J., and Libby, C. E.
1960. An experimental study of the effect of *Fomes pini* (Thore) Loyd on the pulping qualities of pond pine *Pinus serotina* (Michx) cooked by the sulfate process. TAPPI 43: 489-499.
- Rogers, L. N., Heath, M. A., Gutliph, E. W., and Hiatt, L. A.
1959. Purified cellulose fiber and process for producing same. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,878,118). U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Runkel, R. O. H.
1949. Making of pulp from wood of the species *Eucalyptus* and experiments with two different *Eucalypt* species. Das Pap. 3: 476-490.
- Rydholm, S.
1965. Pulping processes. 1269 pp. N.Y.: John Wiley and Sons.
- Sanford, R., (Ed.).
1968. Lockwood's directory of the paper, and allied trades. Ed. 93, 1704 pp. N.Y.: Lockwood Publishing Co., Inc.
- Sanyer, N., Keller, E. L., and Chidester, G. H.
1962. Multistage sulfite pulping of jack pine, balsam fir, spruce, oak, and sweetgum. TAPPI 45: 90-104.
- Sanyer, N., and Laundrie, J. F.
1964. Factors affecting yield increase and fiber quality in polysulfide pulping of loblolly pine, other softwoods, and red oak. TAPPI 47: 640-652.
- Schafer, E. R., Pew, J. C., and Curran, C. E.
1938. Grinding of loblolly pine. Relation of wood properties and grinding conditions to pulp and paper quality. Tech. Assoc. Pap. Ser. 21, 449-456.
- Schenker, C., and Heath, M. A.
1959. Development of high purity dissolving wood pulp for tire cord production. TAPPI 42: 709-712.
- Scholander, A.
1960. The Stora Kopparberg recovery process in the Mo and Domsjö AB Domsjö sulfite mill. TAPPI 43: 706-708.
- Schur, M. O.
1963. Dissolving pulps—in retrospect. TAPPI 46(8): 16A-24A.
- Schwartz, S. L., and Bray, M. W.
1941. Suitability of high-density, high-summerwood slash pine for kraft and high-grade papers. Pap. Trade J. 113(10): 33-39.
- Shaffer, M. R.
1958. Three commercial processes for NSSC recovery. South. Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer 21(2): 40, 42, 44, 48, 50.
- Shick, P. E.
1970. High-yield pulping process for coniferous woods. TAPPI 53: 1451-1457.
- Simmonds, F. A., and Chidester, G. H.
1960. Sulfate and prehydrolysis-sulfate pulp for nitration relation of pulp characteristics to certain preparation variables. USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. 2189, 42 pp.
- Simmonds, F. A., Kingsbury, R. M., Martin, J. S., and Mitchell, R. L.
1956. Loblolly pine high alpha prehydrolysis-sulphate pulps. TAPPI 39: 641-647.

- Sivola, G.
1955. Process of manufacturing pulp from cellulosic fibrous materials. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,701,763.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Sivola, G.
1956. Integrated lignocellulose digestion and recovery process (U.S. Pat. No. 2,730,445). U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Slatin, B.
1967. The paper industry in the south: New directions in new mills. *Southern Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer* 30(10): 32-34, 36, 38, 40.
- Somsen, R. A.
1962. Outside storage of southern pine chips. *TAPPI* 45: 623-628.
- Stockman, L. G.
1960. Some developments in Swedish sulfite pulping research. *TAPPI* 43: 112-120.
- Stone, J. E., and Scallan, A. M.
1968. The effect of component removal upon the porous structure of the cell wall of wood. III. A comparison between the sulphite and kraft processes. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 69(12): 69-74.
- Surface, H. E., and Cooper, R. E.
1914. Longleaf pine. *Pap. Mill* 37(24): 16, 20; (25): 14, 44; (26): 14, 35, 36; (27): 14, 32, 34, 35; (28): 13, 14, 32, 35.
- Suttle, B.
1944. Length of chips in cooking southern pine. *Pap. Mill News* 67(9): 22.
- Swartz, J. N.
1963. [Contribution to Symposium on refiner groundwood.] *Can. Pulp and Pap. Assoc. Tech. Sect. Proc.* 49: D-12-D-14.
- Tasman, J. E., and Berzins, V.
1957. The permanganate consumption of pulp materials. III. The relationship of the KAPPA number to the lignin content of pulp materials. *TAPPI* 40: 699-704.
- Thornburg, W. L.
1963. Effect of roundwood or chip storage on tall oil and turpentine fractions of slash pine. *TAPPI* 46: 453-455.
- Thuemmes, R. E., (Ed.).
1962. Lockwood's directory of the paper, and allied trades. Ed. 87, 1572 pp. N.Y.: Lockwood Publishing Co., Inc.
- Tippetts, E. A.
1950. The position of cellulose as a chemical raw material. *TAPPI* 33(2): 32A-34A.
- Tomlinson, G. H., and Tomlinson, G. H., II.
1958. Method and apparatus for recovering heat and chemicals from the residual liquor resulting from the digestion of cellulosic fibrous material in an alkaline liquor. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,840,454.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Tomlinson, G. H., Tomlinson, G. H., II, Bryce, J. R. G., and Tuck, N. G. M.
1958. The magnetite process—a new pulping method. *Pulp and Pap. Mag. Can.* 59(C): 247-252.
- Tonnesen, B. A., and Ellefsen, O.
1960. Chain folding—a possibility to be considered in connection with the cellulose molecule? *Norsk Skogindustri* 14(7): 266-269.
- Treiber, E.
1967. Viscosereyon und viscosespinnfaser. In *Ullmanns encyklopädie der technischen chemie*, pp. 131-175. Ed. 3, vol. 18. Urban & Schwarzenberg, Munchen.
- Trevelyan, B. J.
1969. Mechanical pulping of southern pine wood. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(1): 29-38.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1962. Kraft pulping of west Florida and sand pine and longleaf pine. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 2248, 12 pp.
- USDA Forest Service.
1965. Timber trends in the United States. *USDA Forest Resource Rep.* 17, 235 pp.
- Valeur, C.
1951. Cooking of bleachable kraft pulp. *Svensk Papperstidn.* 54: 613-620.

- Van Buijtenen, J. P., Joranson, P. N., and MacLaurin, D. J.
1961a. Pulping southern pine increment cores by means of a small scale kraft procedure. TAPPI 44: 166-169.
- Van Buijtenen, J. P., Zobel, B. J., and Joranson, P. N.
1961b. Variation of some wood and pulp properties in an even-aged loblolly pine stand. TAPPI 44: 141-144.
- Van Buijtenen, J. P.
1964. Anatomical factors influencing wood specific gravity of slash pines and the implications for the development of a high-quality pulpwood. TAPPI 47: 401-404.
- Venemark, E.
1964. Some ideas on polysulfide pulping. Svensk Papperstidn. 67: 157-165.
- Vethe, A. A.
1967. Bruk av "shredded" flis ved cellulosekokning. Norsk Skogindustri 21: 180-187.
- Vincent, R.
1967. Chemical cellulose—big shifts in markets. Pulp and Pap. 41(29): 46, 48.
- Virkola, N., and Vartiainen, V.
1964. Criteria of successful bleaching. TAPPI 47: 765-773.
- Walker, W. J.
1937. Grinding southern pine under semi-commercial conditions. Pap. Trade J. 105(12): 44-54.
- Wangaard, F. F., Kellogg, R. M., and Brinkley, A. W.
1966. Variation of wood and fiber characteristics and pulp-sheet properties of slash pine. TAPPI 49: 263-277.
- Wangaard, F. F., Kellogg, R. M., and Djerf, A.
1967. Prediction of whole-tree pulp properties for slash pine. TAPPI 50: 109-114.
- Waters, J. W., and Waters, V. F.
1958. Rayonier's newest Georgia pulp mill in operation. South. Pulp and Pap. Manufacturer 21(7): 32, 34, 36, 66-68.
- Watson, A. J., and Dadswell, H. E.
1962. Influence of fibre morphology on paper properties. II. Early and late wood. APPITA 15(6): 116-128.
- Watson, A. J., and Hodder, I. G.
1954. Relationship between fibre structure and handsheet properties in *Pinus taeda*. APPITA 8: 290-310.
- Welch, R. L.
1970. Southern pulpwood production, 1969. USDA Forest Serv. Resour. Bull. SE-18, 20 pp. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.
- Wells, S. D., and Rue, J. D.
1927. The suitability of American woods for paper pulp. USDA Dep. Bull. 1485, 102 pp.
- Wetmore, R. T., and Dunphy, L. W.
1949. Groundwood for newsprint. TAPPI 32: 150-154.
- Wilson, A. W.
1967a. Paper and pulp again set world records. Pulp and Pap. 41(29): 8-13.
- Wilson, A. W.
1967b. World market pulp near 20 million tons; 26 nations export various grades. Pulp and Pap. 41(29): 31-33, 36-39, 42-45.
- Wilson, J. W.
1959. High alpha pulps and their utilization. Can. Pulp and Pap. Ind. 12(8): 25-26, 30, 32, 34, 36, 38.
- Wyatt, W. R.
1966. Optimum viscose process studies. I. Steeping and pressing. TAPPI 49: 464-468.
- Wyatt, W. R., and Beers, W. L., Jr.
1964. A growth chamber study of plus tree progeny. TAPPI 47: 305-309.
- Zobel, B. J., and McElwee, R. L.
1958. Natural variation in wood specific gravity of loblolly pine, and an analysis of contributing factors. TAPPI 41: 158-161.

28

Chemical processing

CONTENTS

	<i>Page</i>
28-1 NAVAL STORES	1476
GUM NAVAL STORES	1477
<i>Early production methods</i>	1477
<i>Development of modern methods</i>	1479
<i>Management practices</i>	1480
<i>Conversion process</i>	1482
<i>Future of the industry</i>	1483
DESTRUCTIVE DISTILLATION	1485
STEAM DISTILLATION	1485
BYPRODUCTS OF KRAFT PULPING PROCESS	1486
TURPENTINE AND TURPENTINE	
DERIVATIVES	1487
ROSIN	1488
<i>Paper size</i>	1490
<i>Soaps</i>	1490
<i>Softening agent in rubber</i>	1491
<i>Surface coatings</i>	1491
<i>Floor coverings</i>	1492
<i>Trends of price and demand for rosin</i>	1492
28-2 HYDROLYSIS	1493
DILUTE ACID PROCESS	1493
CONCENTRATED ACID PROCESS	1494
OTHER POSSIBILITIES	1494
PRODUCTS OF HYDROLYSIS	1495
<i>Crystalline sugar and wood molasses</i>	1496
<i>Biologically derived products</i>	1496
<i>Chemically derived products</i>	1496
WOOD RESIDUES AS ANIMAL FOODS	1497
28-3 KRAFT LIGNIN PRODUCTS	1498
28-4 CHARCOAL	1499
EQUIPMENT	1500
<i>Multiple-hearth furnace</i>	1500
<i>Briquetting equipment</i>	1502
CHARCOAL ANALYSIS	1503
ACTIVATED CARBON	1503
28-5 STEROIDS AND PROTEINS	1504
28-6 LITERATURE CITED	1504

28

Chemical processing

Southern pine wood is comprised of polysaccharides, lignin, extractives, and inorganic components (see ch. 6). From these constituents, most consumer products originating in the organic chemical industry could be produced, though only a few competitively (Harris et al. 1963). Except for cellulose (basis of the pulp and cellulose plastics industries; see ch. 27), extractives are the major southern pine constituent on which wood-using, chemical processing industries are based. Southern pine forests in the United States are the source of about one-half the naval stores and three-fourths the crude tall oil produced outside the Sino-Soviet bloc; nearly 100 percent of the U.S. requirement for turpentine and rosin comes from southern pine trees (King et al. 1962).

The polysaccharides in southern pine residues can be converted to sugars—a procedure that could possibly alleviate some of the food shortages in the world; at present, however, the process is economically viable only in certain circumstances, and at very few locations.

Sulfate lignin, a byproduct of the kraft pulping process, has limited, but increasing, uses other than for fuel. These uses, however, account for only a fraction of the tonnage produced; most is now burned.

At this time, virtually no economic use is made of the inorganic constituents of wood. Organic carbon in the form of charcoal, however, is commercially produced from southern pine residues in considerable quantity.

Soil amendments made from southern pine residues of wood and bark provide a kind of chemical processing of these materials; research results pertinent to southern pine are discussed in chapter 12.

28-1 NAVAL STORES¹

Pine gum products, pitch, tar, spirits of turpentine, and rosin—the naval stores of wooden sailing ships—have historically been a cash crop from southern pine trees. Oils, resins, and tars obtained from pine trees are still termed **naval stores**. If obtained from pine **oleoresin** (commonly referred to as pine **gum**) collected from wounded living trees, they are known as **gum naval stores**. Only two species of southern pine, longleaf and slash pine, have ever been important for gum production. The oleoresins of the other southern pines tend to crystallize rapidly upon exposure to air and moisture and do not flow freely following regular wounding.

¹The text in the subsection on producing oleoresin from living trees has been taken from Harrington (1969) by permission of T. A. Harrington and the Forest Products Research Society. The balance of sec. 28-1 is condensed from Lawrence (1969) by permission of R. V. Lawrence and the Forest Product Research Society.

Wood naval stores, as the term indicates, are from wood rather than gum; those extracted by solvents and steam from pitch-soaked stumps are termed **steam distilled**, while those obtained by heating pine wood in the absence of air are called **destructively distilled**. Naval stores collected as a byproduct of the kraft paper process are known as **tall oil rosin** and **sulfate turpentine**.

Further definitions of terms relating to naval stores can be found in ASTM (American Society for Testing and Materials) Standard Designation D 804-863.

GUM NAVAL STORES

Less than half a dozen plants in the South produce destructively distilled wood naval stores; these plants are a major source of pine tar in the United States. The other three processes provide practically all of the turpentine, pine oil, and rosin; also, a number of pine tar products, distinct from those obtained by destructive distillation of wood, are now made from tall oil pitch. The annual production of these raw materials from all sources in the United States has not varied greatly over the past 70 years, averaging close to 1 billion pounds of rosin and 30 million gallons of turpentine; pine oil production in 1969, part of which was derived from turpentine, was about 13.9 million gallons.

Initially, all of this production came from pine gum. Although steam distillation of longleaf and slash pine stumps began in 1910, and recovery of turpentine from sulfate pulping about 1928, gum naval stores still accounted for 85 percent of the total production in 1930. When tall oil rosin entered the picture after World War II, production shifted rapidly away from gum. In 1950, gum furnished 40 percent of the turpentine and rosin. Production dropped to 20 percent in 1960 and to 10 percent in 1967. At the present time, steam-distilled wood supplies 50 percent of the rosin and 20 percent of the turpentine. Tall oil rosin represents the final 40 percent of our rosin supply, and 70 percent of our turpentine comes from sulfate pulping (King et al. 1962; Hair and Ulrich 1967).

This shift of source is due mainly to economic factors. Under present conditions, more than 60 percent of gum production costs are for labor and supervision. Semiskilled labor cannot produce naval stores products as efficiently as highly mechanized operations and quality-controlled chemical processes. Consequently, gum rosin and gum turpentine are priced higher than similar materials from other sources.

Early production methods.—Gum farmers have been slow to seek or to accept changes in production methods. In fact, for the first 300 years, turpentine was carried out in the Southeast with no changes in techniques. Nearly all the timber worked was virgin longleaf pine. New crops were started during the winter months by cutting one or more cavities, called boxes, in the base of each tree. Varying with the size of the timber, boxes were from 10 to 14 inches wide, 5 to 7 inches deep, and

2½ to 3½ inches front to back. The gum flowed from the worked faces into these cavities.

Weekly from March through October, a fresh streak of 10 to 14 inches long was chipped across the upper edge of each face, penetrating into the wood above the face about 1 inch. Each weekly streak was more distant from the box; the 32 to 34 streaks chipped during a full season produced an annual face height of 20 to 30 inches.

Gum was gathered, or dipped, from the boxes every 3 to 4 weeks with a dip iron, and delivered in barrels to the distillery. By the end of each season, a large amount of oleoresin had hardened on the face. This "scrape" was also removed and collected in barrels for distillation (Pridgen 1921).

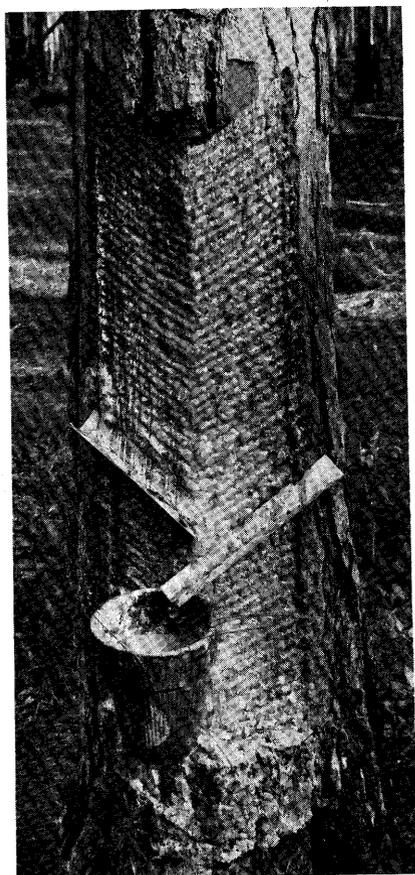
Although damaging to timber, wasteful of oleoresin, and inefficient in use of labor, the gum naval stores industry produced an excellent cash crop for 300 years (1600-1900) from trees that had little or no market value. Even though early research by Fernow (1892) proved that turpentine mature trees did not adversely affect the strength of the lumber, the butt cut was generally wasted or used as fuel wood. Frequently, the worked-out trees were not even harvested.

Herty (1903) revolutionized the industry when he introduced cups and gutters to replace the cut boxes. In Herty's system, two strips of 2-inch-wide galvanized iron (fig. 28-1) were placed in broadax incisions below the face to divert the gum flow into a clay pot. It caused less injury to the tree, and the cup and gutters could be moved up the face each year as the chipping surface advanced. An undesirable outgrowth of this technique was the working of small trees for gum, often as small as 6 inches in diameter.

Beginning in 1910, the staff of the National Forests in Florida had demonstrated that high gum yields, a longer working life, and less mortality resulted from shallow and low chipping (Ostrom 1945). Gerry (1922) of the USDA Forest Products Laboratory furnished the scientific proof of this fact by showing that wounding stimulated the production of resin ducts above the worked face, and chipping unnecessarily high streaks wasted this gum-producing tissue.

Further investigations by Dr. Gerry, Austin Cary, Lenthall Wyman, and other Forest Service researchers resulted in guidelines for the optimum size of streaks and chipping frequency, the tree sizes best suited to gum production, the optimum number of faces per tree, the effects of turpentine on tree growth, improved methods of cup and gutter installation, and other practical techniques for conservative gum production. This information, combined with forest management recommendations, was published as a Naval Stores Handbook (USDA Forest Service 1935).

Starting in 1936 the Forest Service's Naval Stores Conservation Program, in cooperation with the Agricultural Stabilization and Conservation Service, distributed small incentive payments to gum producers for the



F-521007
Figure 28-1.—The Herty system, developed in 1903, revolutionized the naval stores industry. Metal gutters were placed in incisions made with a mallet-driven broadax. Clay pots replaced the cut boxes. Although an improvement over the ancient practices, the deep chipping—about an inch into the xylem—and the broadax wounds reduced the tree's vigor. Because the heavy metal gutters were frequently left in the face, trees were generally jump-budded when harvested. (Photo from Harrington 1969.)

adoption of good management practices. N.S.C.P. foresters gave on-the-ground assistance to timberland owners and gum producers. The program played a major role in teaching producers to work only trees 9 inches d.b.h. and larger, to adopt other conservation practices, and to manage their timber stands for the production of both gum and wood.

Development of modern methods.—Research on chemical gum flow stimulants by Russian and German scientists precipitated similar investigations by the Forest Service at Olustee, Fla. in 1936. At that time rosin and turpentine were in surplus supply, and no one was interested in new techniques for increasing production. However, war demands for naval stores soon exceeded supply, and research on chemical stimulation was increased in 1942.

For longleaf and slash pine, a 50-percent water solution of sulfuric acid, applied to fresh wounds every 2 weeks, proved to be the most suitable treatment (Snow 1944, 1948ab). The acid did not increase the production of oleoresin, but facilitated its outflow by keeping the resin ducts open longer after wounding (Ostrom et al. 1958). Snow (1944) found,

too, that with sulfuric acid only a narrow strip of bark need be removed across the face. He devised a new hack that would cut only through the bark and phloem, an easier task than deep wood chipping. Faces were chipped only at 2-week intervals, and production per man-day of chipping was virtually doubled.

Many people worked on techniques for applying the acid to the fresh wound. At first, cloth swabs and insect sprayers of the "flit gun" type were used. Next, a glass or lead "lung-powered" spray gun was developed by Bourke and Dorman (1946). From this research, the presently used plastic squeeze bottle evolved (Schopmeyer 1947; Ryberg and Burney 1949).

Figure 28-2 shows the system used after World War II. Spiral gutters and curved aprons, attached to the round faces with double-headed nails, were easily removed from the worked-out trees, and had virtually no adverse influence on tree vigor (Ryberg et al. 1949). Larger turpentine cups reduced dipping expenses without affecting gum yield or grade (Clements and Collins 1950). To assist the producers, manuals were prepared that described currently accepted methods (Clements 1960; Dyer 1963). With bark chipping, acid treatment, and removable gutters, the face is not severely damaged by the wounding. The worked-out butt section can be readily freed of metal and used for pulpwood, poles, ties, or lumber (Snow 1948b; Anonymous 1950; Gruschow 1950; Schopmeyer 1955).

Management practices.—Although not seriously reducing tree vigor, current turpentine slows growth like the old technique (Cary 1928; Harper 1937; Schopmeyer 1955). As a rule, annual volume growth is reduced about 25 percent per face each year the tree is worked, but the value of gum produced more than compensates for this growth loss if the worked-out trees are cut promptly at the end of the naval stores cycle (table 28-1).

Production of gum and wood makes a more profitable operation than the production of either product alone (Bennett and Clutter 1968). Even-aged management is best because adequate numbers of trees of suitable size are available at several periods during the life of the stand, and a cycle of regular rough-reduction burning is possible (Clements and Harrington 1965.)

Because crown development and tree diameter greatly affect gum yield (table 28-2), stocking should be regulated during the life of the stand to keep the length of live crown at least 0.30 of tree height, and trees to be worked should be at least 9 inches in diameter. Trees to be worked should be selected a naval stores cycle in advance of projected thinnings or the final harvest and worked for gum, 4, 6, or 8 years, depending on whether they are worked 2, 3, or 4 years on front and back faces. A minimum of 20 faces per acre, capable of yielding 200 standard barrels of gum per crop (10,000 faces) per year is required for an operable naval stores chance.

In the absence of wildfire or bark beetle epidemics, mortality in naval

TABLE 28-1.—*Amount and value of gum yield and reduced growth, per tree, produced by working single faces on slash pine (Harrington 1969)*

Volume and value variables	D.b.h. of tree at start of gum production, inches		
	10	12	14
Total height, feet.....	66	72	74
Merchantable volume ¹ , cords.....	0.198	0.318	0.437
Expected annual volume increment of an unworked tree ¹ , cords.....	0.0132	0.0149	0.0185
Annual volume deficit of a turpented tree, ^{1 2} cords.....	0.0033	0.0037	0.0046
Annual gum yield per tree, ³ pounds....	9.9	13.1	16.3
Value of annual volume deficit, ⁴ dollars.....	0.04	0.04	0.06
Net value of annual gum yields per tree ⁴ , dollars.....	0.13	0.18	0.22

¹ Based on local volume tables for Olustee Experimental Forest, Baker County, Fla., using 90 as factor to convert cubic feet to cords.

² Deficit computed as 25 percent of expected annual volume increment.

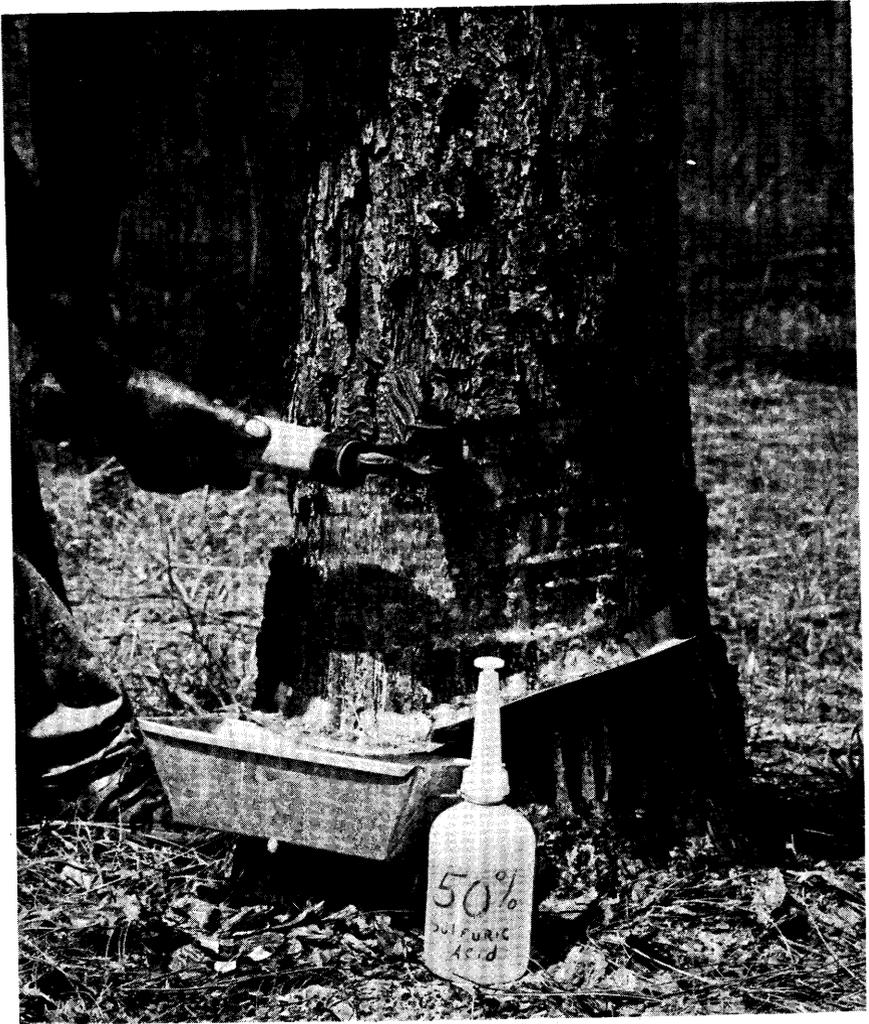
³ Data are from Bengtson and Schopmeyer (1959), and values are based on a 30-percent crown ratio.

⁴ Based on pulpwood at \$12 per cord, stumpage, and gum at \$30 per barrel (435 lb.). Trees are normally leased for gum production at a lease rate of 20 percent of the gross value of the gum produced.

TABLE 28-2.—*First-year gum yields from a crop of 10,000 faces on slash pines¹ (Bengtson and Schopmeyer 1959)*

D.b.h. (inches)	Gum yields by crown ratios of—		
	0.20	0.40	0.60
	----- Barrels -----		
9.....	172	208	244
10.....	209	245	281
11.....	246	282	318
12.....	283	319	355
13.....	320	356	392
14.....	357	393	429
15.....	394	430	466

¹ Trees were single faced and treated with 16 bi-weekly streaks. Gum yields are given in standard barrels of 435 lb. each.



F-521008

Figure 28-2.—Following World War II, spiral gutters, double-headed nails, bark chipping, and acid treatment replaced deep wood chipping and inserted gutters. (Photo from Harrington 1969.)

stores stands under current practices is not significantly different than in unworked timber. Logging in or near stands being worked should be restricted to avoid beetle buildup. Extra fire protection should be provided. A hot wildfire, defoliating the trees and causing severe stem burn, can put the gum producer out of business, since fire-injured trees yield little gum (Harper 1944).

Conversion process.—All of the pine gum produced in this country is converted into turpentine and rosin by the Olustee process (Smith et al.

1941; Lawrence 1942, 1946; Patton and Feagan 1943; McConnell 1963). The crude gum is diluted with about 20 percent by weight of turpentine, heated in a melter to about 180° to 190° F., and filtered to remove the chips and trash. To remove iron contamination, 2 to 4 ounces of oxalic acid per barrel of gum may be added in the melter, forming iron oxylate, which filters out. The filtered gum is washed with water to remove water-soluble impurities, including any excess oxalic acid, and allowed to settle for at least 4 hours and usually overnight.

The diluted, filtered, washed, and settled gum is pumped into a still and gradually heated by steam coils to 320°-340° F. to distill off the turpentine. When the turpentine has been stripped off, the rosin is discharged from the still and packaged in drums, paper bags, or tank cars. These products are known as **gum turpentine** and **gum rosin**.

Natural oleoresin exudate from the resin ducts of southern pine contains about 66 percent resin acids, 25 percent turpentine, 7 percent non-volatiles, and 2 percent water (Wise and Jahn 1952, p. 591). A barrel (435 lb.) of gum converted by the Olustee process will yield products as follows:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Yield per barrel of gum</u>
Turpentine, gallons -----	10 to 11
Rosin, pounds -----	300
Pine oil -----	nil

Future of the industry.—Although easily integrated into multiple product management and important to rural economy, the gum naval stores industry appears to be failing rapidly. Low-grade gum is being produced because of sloppy woods work and iron contamination from old cups. High costs and labor shortage make the business rather unattractive. Currently, 2 man-days of hard work and 10 miles of walking are required for each barrel of crude gum, and laborers are finding easier ways to make a living. A practical system of mechanization is badly needed if the industry is to survive (Harrington 1966a, 1968).

In 1966, sulfuric acid paste was introduced as a relatively safe chemical stimulant for prolonging gum flow up to 28 days (Clements 1967). Producing good gum yields with monthly chipping, the paste again doubles the man-day productiveness of chipping labor. Easier to apply correctly and more readily checked, the paste gives more uniform stimulation and is safer than the acid water spray (Harrington 1966b).

Because the acid paste stays in place on the face, ordinary materials can be used to collect the gum. At this time, 1-gallon disposable paper gum bags are being evaluated on commercial operations (fig. 28-3). The containers are larger than metal cups, more efficient to handle, and four collections during the season replace the usual eight or nine dippings.

The bags are stapled to the face, just below the fresh streak, eliminating cups and gutters and reducing low-grade scrape; they are torn from the face when collected. Light, compact, and inexpensive, they can be used



F-521009

Figure 28-3.—Acid paste is safer to use, and it stimulates gum flow for longer periods than does the acid-water solution. Chipping and streaking can be done on a monthly basis, rather than every 2 weeks. When paste is used, nonmetallic materials—such as this disposable paper bag—can be used to collect the gum. (Photo from Harrington 1969.)

with acid paste to produce high-grade gum at half present labor costs. The light, soft staples should be no hazard to saws or knives when trees are harvested.

Other possibilities for making the woods work easier and more attractive involve powered tools and a self-propelled power source. The USDA Forest Service is presently investigating the possibilities of using pneumatic tools, powered by a Scuba tank carried on the workman's back. Pneumatic bark hacks capable of cutting a chip 2 inches wide, and pneumatic staple guns for fastening the disposable gum bags to the trees are currently being evaluated. The ultimate objective is to design or modify a woods vehicle to carry the man and the powered tools from tree to tree (Taylor 1968).

Harrington (1969) concluded that the goal of marketing gum rosin and gum turpentine at a competitive price is achievable within 5 years; the current problem is to keep the gum naval stores industry alive long enough to get it mechanized.

DESTRUCTIVE DISTILLATION

When southern pine wood is heated in the absence of air, i.e., **destructively distilled**, the hydrogen, oxygen, and some of the carbon are converted into volatile compounds containing these elements. Pine tar—distinctive of the process—is possibly the most important product obtained; in the days of sailing ships, pine tar was used in large quantities for the manufacture of oakum and the preservation of cordage, fish nets, and tarpaulins; today it finds use in the manufacture of rubber and soaps.

While once of great economic importance in the manufacture of naval stores, destructive distillation of southern pine wood has declined since development of the more effective solvent-steam distillation process and the near depletion of highly resinous old-growth stumpwood; by 1969 less than half a dozen southern pine distillation plants were operating.

Yield of naval stores (designated **D.D.**) from destructively distilled pine varies considerably; one chemist knowledgeable in the subject estimated the yield from a cord (4,000 lb.) of resinous stumpwood as follows:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Yield per cord</u>
	<i>Gallons</i>
Turpentine -----	6 to 12
Pine oil -----	1 to 2
Tar oils -----	30 to 50
Tar -----	30 to 60

In addition, each cord should yield 750 to 900 lb. of charcoal.

Brief descriptions of the process can be found in Beglinger (1958), and Panshin et al. (1962, p. 415). Goos (1952, pp. 845-851) concluded a 26-page discussion on the thermal decomposition of wood with a lengthy tabulation of all the products in gaseous, solid, and liquid components resulting from destructive distillation of wood.

STEAM DISTILLATION

The term **steam distillation**, while appropriate for the older process of first steaming resinous pine wood to recover turpentine and other volatile oils before solvent extraction of rosin, is today something of a misnomer.

The procedure currently used, primarily a solvent extraction process, has been described by Palmer (1930) and more recently by Enos et al. (1968). In brief, old-growth longleaf pine stumps, after 25 years or more in the ground has rotted away their sapwood, are removed with power equipment and ground into particles about the size of a paper match. Resin is extracted from this ground wood in vertical cylindrical extractors with a hydrocarbon solvent. Extractors are arranged in series so that each charge of new chips is extracted by several portions of solvent in succession; extraction is counter-current, i.e., spent solvent is used for the initial extraction and fresh solvent is used for the final one.

After the wood is steamed to remove any remaining solvent, the extract containing resin and solvent is fractionally distilled to separate three primary products—terpenes (yielding refined turpentine and dipentene), pine oil, and rosin of rather dark color. The solvent must have a narrow boiling range and be completely distilled at a temperature low enough to permit easy separation from the terpenes. Benzene, V. M. and P. naphtha, lactol, toluene, methyl isobutyl ketone, and plant-prepared mixtures of these chemicals have all been used.

Yield of naval stores (designated **S.D.**) from a ton of steam-distilled stumpwood containing an average of 22 percent resin by weight is approximately as follows (Beglinger 1958); some smaller plants do not achieve this recovery:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Yield per ton of stumpwood</u>
Turpentine, gallons -----	6
Pine oil, gallons -----	4
Dipentene (a mixture of terpenes with a higher boiling point than turpentine), gallons -----	1¼
Rosin, pounds -----	385

The extracted wood chips (about 1,100 oven-dry pounds per ton of stumpwood) are primarily utilized as fuel, but it is likely that they will be increasingly needed for fiber products; one company has announced that spent chips will be used to manufacture linerboard. Because chips are mainly rootwood, fibers are longer, larger in diameter, and have thinner walls than those from stemwood near ground level (see sec. 13-3 and fig. 13-22).

As the source of old-growth longleaf pine stumps becomes depleted, volume of steam-distilled naval stores must diminish because stumps from young (less than 100 years of age) longleaf and slash pine trees contain insufficient resin for economical extraction.

BYPRODUCTS OF KRAFT PULPING PROCESS

When southern pine wood is digested to convert it into kraft pulp, turpentine is vaporized. The steam, turpentine vapor, and other gases from the pulping digester are passed through a condenser to collect the crude **sulfate turpentine**. The pulping liquors are alkaline, and the resin acids and fatty acids present in the wood are converted to their sodium salts in the digester. When the digester liquor (black liquor) is concentrated by evaporation, these sodium soaps (known as black liquor soaps) separate as a brown curdy mass; they are then skimmed off and acidified to yield crude **tall oil** (Weiner 1959; Sanderman 1960; Weiner and Byrne 1968; Zachary et al. (1965).

Crude tall oil contains about 40 to 60 percent fatty acids, 40 to 60 percent resin acids, and 12 to 15 percent non-acidic materials. This mixture can be fractionally distilled to give acids containing only a trace of resin acids, a center cut containing a mixture of fatty acids and resin acids,

and a tall oil rosin fraction that contains less than 4 percent fatty acids (Barnes and Taylor 1958; Agnello and Barnes 1960). In 1949, tall oil rosin became available on a commercial scale in this country. Although it differed somewhat from other rosins, its quality was improved during the next 20 years; it is now a very important source of rosin.

Yield of naval stores from southern pine pulped by the kraft process is approximately as follows:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Yield</u>
Crude sulfate turpentine, gallons per cord of wood -----	0.50 to 1.75
Crude tall oil, pounds per cord of wood -----	56 (range 31 to 62)

From these crude materials, 0.4 to 1.5 gallons of refined sulfate turpentine and 6 to 22 lb. of rosin can be recovered.

TURPENTINE AND TURPENTINE DERIVATIVES

Turpentine, once almost exclusively a paint thinner, is now used almost entirely as a chemical raw material (Goldblatt 1951). For the season 1967-1968, the reported consumption of all turpentine in this country was 571,350 barrels (U.S. Department of Agriculture 1969). Of this only 4,320 barrels were reported used in paint and varnish and 563,550 barrels were used in chemicals and rubber.

American gum turpentine contains about 60 to 65 percent alpha-pinene and 25 to 35 percent beta-pinene, with 1 or 2 percent each of limonene, camphene, beta-phellandrene, and myrcene (Goldblatt 1951; Mirov 1961).

Crude sulfate turpentine contains mercaptans and related bad-smelling materials, some of which are removed by oxidation and fractional distillation in the refining process (Drew and Pylant 1966). Recovery of refined sulfate turpentine is usually about 80 percent of the crude product. The major components of the refined sulfate turpentine are also alpha- and beta-pinene, but its composition varies depending on mill location and the species of pine used.

The terpene fraction from steam-distilled wood naval stores contains a variety of hydrocarbons (Stonecipher 1955). A turpentine fraction containing a high concentration of alpha-pinene with some limonene—but only 1 to 2 percent beta-pinene—can be separated by fractional distillation. These and other fractions are more suitable for most chemical uses when separately concentrated. In the past, turpentine was sold as a mixture of alpha- and beta-pinene; currently it is more profitable to separate them.

The beta-pinene will bring a higher price when polymerized to a high molecular weight polyterpene resin or when passed through a hot tube at about 400° to 600° C. to isomerize it to myrcene (Goldblatt and Palkin 1941, 1947). High molecular weight polyterpene resins prepared from alpha-pinene and limonene are less desirable than those from beta-pinene. Alpha-pinene can be isomerized to a mixture of limonene and allocimene by passing it through a hot tube. Alpha-pinene is also isomerized to camphene, which can be used as a starting material for camphor, or chlor-

inated to give a very important insecticide that is especially effective on the cotton boll weevil (Goldblatt 1951). A wide variety of perfumes, odorants, and flavors are prepared by further reaction of these terpenes (Derfer 1963, 1966).

Insufficient natural pine oil is steam distilled from pitch-soaked stumps to meet present demands. Synthetic pine oil is prepared by treating alpha-pinene or a mixture of alpha- and beta-pinene with 25 percent sulfuric acid or other strong acid, which converts it to a mixture of terpene alcohols, the major component of which is alpha-terpineol (Pickett and Schantz 1934; Sellers and Doyle 1968). Terpin hydrate (used as a pharmaceutical) can be separated from either natural or synthetic pine oil. Pine oil is used in cleaners, disinfectants, textile chemicals, and ore flotation processes.

The monocyclic hydrocarbons are hydrogenated to para-menthane, and alpha-pinene can be hydrogenated to pinane. Either of these products, when oxidized by blowing with air or oxygen, can be converted to the corresponding hydroperoxide. The para-menthane hydroperoxide is widely used in this country as a catalyst in the production of synthetic rubber. Pinane hydroperoxide has been used in this country and in Europe for the same purpose.

Several terpenes react with maleic anhydride to form the anhydride of a dibasic acid that can be used in alkyd and polyester resins.

ROSIN

Rosin makes up about 80 percent by weight of the products obtained by the gum and steam-distillation industries (Lawrence 1951; Enos et al. 1968). The pulp industry is now producing about twice as much tonnage of rosin as turpentine. American rosin production is approximately 1 billion pounds per year. This is about one-half of the world production. The United States exported 365 million pounds, or about 38 percent of domestic production in the 1967-1968 crop year. Other countries important in the production of naval stores are Russia, Portugal, Greece, Spain, France, India, China, and Mexico.

Rosin is graded and sold on the basis of color, the paler colors bringing the higher prices. Color grades range from pale yellow, graded X, to dark red (almost black), graded D. Three new rosin grades paler than X have been added—XA, XB, and XC. The colors between these extremes increase progressively through the grades—WW, WG, N, M, K, I, H, G, F, and E. Because of improved modern methods, about 80 percent of the gum rosin produced is Grade M or better, and a great deal of the tall oil rosin is paler than X. Unrefined wood rosin, as produced directly from the extracting solvent, is ruby red, color Grade FF. The high-colored material obtained in refining wood rosin is no longer classifiable as rosin. It is sold as B resin or under various trade names. (Resin is a general term that refers to a wide variety of natural and synthetic products. Rosin is a specific kind of resin that is obtained only from pine trees.)

Oleoresin as it comes from the tree yields practically colorless rosin; off colors in gum rosin come almost entirely from iron contamination and oxidation products (Lawrence 1942). Since good woods practices avoid most contaminants, gum rosins are rarely clarified.

Wood rosin is highly colored by oxidized resin acids and other organic compounds extracted from the wood with the resin. These are commonly removed by selective solvents such as furfural, or solid adsorbents such as fuller's earth.

When a 15-percent solution of dark rosin in a low-solvency hydrocarbon such as heptane or isooctane is thoroughly mixed with furfural, most of the color remains in the furfural layer.

A similar solution of dark rosin, when pumped through fuller's earth, is freed of most dark products (Lawrence 1951; Mirov 1961). The dark material recovered from the fuller's earth by working with alcohol, though not classified as rosin, is saleable as B resin.

Rosin consists of about 90 percent resin acids and 10 percent neutral matter. Of the resin acids, about 80 to 90 percent are isomeric with abietic acid, whose composition is $C_{20}H_{30}O_2$. The other 10 to 20 percent is dehydroabietic acid ($C_{20}H_{28}O_2$) and various oxygenated derivatives. The relative amounts of these depend on the type of rosin and processing conditions used to prepare it (Joye and Lawrence 1967). About half the total resin acids in rosin can be converted to abietic acid by acid or heat isomerization (Loeblich et al. 1955). Eight of these resin acids—pimaric, isopimaric, levopimaric, palustric, abietic, neoabietic, and dehydroabietic—make up about 85 percent of the acid portion (Joye and Lawrence 1967) of commercial pine gum and rosins. The relative amount of these acids present may vary from 5 percent to more than 50 percent for different rosins. Levopimaric acid makes up more than 25 percent of the acids in most commercial pine gum but is almost completely converted into palustric, abietic, and neoabietic acids on processing to rosin.

Elliotinoic, sandaracopimaric, and Δ^8 -isopimaric acids are present in quantities of less than 5 percent each, and there are also small amounts of hydroxy and other oxygenated acids present in some rosins. The difference in properties of commercial rosins depends to a great extent on the relative amounts of these acids as well as on the composition of the neutral fraction. Although not thoroughly investigated, gum rosin neutrals have been shown to contain methyl chavicol, stilbene derivatives, terpene dimers, aldehydes, alcohols, and a mixture of hydrophenanthrene hydrocarbons, which serve as plasticizers for the resin acids. The diterpene alcohol elliotinol is the major component of the neutral portion of gum rosin from slash pine.

Rosin for export is packaged in drums holding about 500 or 520 lb. each; for domestic consumption it is usually packaged in 520-lb. drums or 100-lb. paper bags. For many large consumers, however, rosin is shipped in the molten state in railroad tank cars.

Paper size.—The most important use for rosin is for sizing to reduce the penetrability of paper by liquids (Weiner and Byrne 1968). Rosin is the most important sizing agent for paper; practically all papers except those designed for high absorbency contain some rosin. It is the only internal size used to any appreciable extent; most of the other sizing agents, e.g., starch and casein, are surface sizes. There are some other internal sizes, but they are more expensive than rosin.

To make the size, rosin is usually cooked with a sodium carbonate or sodium hydroxide solution. The rosin may be completely neutralized and converted to its water-soluble salt (sodium resinate), or about a third of it may be converted to its sodium soap and this used to keep the other two-thirds emulsified. Some special paper sizes are made by neutralizing only 10 to 15 percent of the rosin and using a protective colloid such as casein to keep the finished size emulsified.

Fortified rosin size, a more effective product, is prepared from maleic or fumaric-modified rosin. About 4 percent by weight of maleic anhydride (or a mixture of maleic anhydride and fumaric acid) is added to the rosin at 200° to 220° C. After heating at this temperature for an hour or two, the product is converted to its sodium salt to give the fortified rosin size. Size made from rosin that has a high abietic acid content may crystallize. This is avoided by heating the rosin with a small amount of formaldehyde.

Rosin size is usually sold as a paste containing about 30 percent water and 70 percent solids. It is usually added to the paper pulp in the beater, where it is precipitated onto the paper fibers by adding 1 to 2 parts of alum (aluminum sulfate) for each part of rosin. The amount of rosin required for sizing varies from as little as 0.2 to 2 percent on regular grades of paper up to 8 percent on special types.

Soaps.—Rosin is used in a variety of soaps which are much more soluble in water than are the ordinary soaps from fatty acids. Rosin improves the sudsing, the detergency, and the wetting rate of the soap, as well as its germicidal activity. At one time, almost a third of all rosin produced went into soap, much of which was the old yellow-bar laundry soap. Currently, however, lower-cost, more effective, synthetic detergents have almost completely replaced rosin in household soaps.

Soaps composed entirely of sodium or potassium rosinate find specialized uses. A stabilized rosin soap, for example, serves in the manufacture of synthetic rubber as an emulsifying agent in the polymerization of butadiene and styrene and as a softener and tackifier. Because of its good solubility in water, this soap is especially effective in the preparation of low-temperature-rubber. Rosin used for this soap should contain less than 1 percent abietic-type acids and should be free of inhibitors that retard the rate of polymerization. Rosin soap serves a purpose in addition to emulsification, i.e., the polymer is coagulated by the addition of salt and acid, the acid decomposes the soap, and practically all of the rosin used remains in the rubber to act as a softener and tackifier.

Softening agent in rubber.—Rosin is used as a softening agent or plasticizer in both natural and synthetic rubber; it is added when the compounding ingredients, such as carbon black, sulfur, zinc oxide, and accelerators, are being mixed with the raw rubber on the mixing rolls. Frequently, a small amount of terpene solvent is added to rosin used for this purpose. Both the rosin and the terpenes impart tack to the finished product.

Surface coatings.—Numerous rosin derivatives are used in the preparation of paints, varnishes, lacquers, and printing inks.

Varnish is usually prepared by heating a drying oil and a resin together until the desired amount of polymerization, or combining of the molecules, of the drying oil has taken place. When the mixture has reached the proper consistency, it is thinned to a satisfactory viscosity with a volatile solvent. A wide variety of resins may be used, including numerous rosin derivatives. For use in varnish, rosin is usually converted to one of its derivatives to raise its melting point and lower its acidity. Most commonly used are the esters, including the maleic-modified esters, rosin phenol-formaldehyde resins, limed rosins, zinc resinates, and various combinations of these derivatives. Rosin may also be hydrogenated, dehydrogenated, disproportionated, or polymerized to obtain derivatives for use in varnish.

The rosin esters most commonly used in varnish are the glycerol and the pentaerythritol esters. The glycerol ester (Pohle and Smith 1942) has the better solubility characteristics; the pentaerythritol has the higher melting point. If maleic anhydride is reacted with the rosin before esterification, the modified rosin will have a higher melting point. While rosin will react with 25 percent of its weight of maleic anhydride, 10 to 15 percent is much more commonly used.

Rosin is combined with a heat-reactive, phenol-formaldehyde resin to give widely used varnish resins having much more desirable properties than either material alone. Their properties vary with the ratio of phenol and formaldehyde to rosin and with the type of phenol derivative used. They are usually esterified with glycerol to give varnish resins with a low pH and high melting point.

By combining rosin with a small amount of lime, a derivative suitable for use in varnish is produced whose melting point and pH can be controlled (within certain limits) by varying the amount of lime used. The rosin may be limed in the presence of drying oil, so that the varnish is prepared in a single step.

Zinc resinate resembles limed rosin in that the rosin has reacted with a metal oxide or salt to reduce the acidity and raise the melting point. Zinc resinates are more difficult to prepare, but they have several advantages, including greater resistance to water (Palmer and Edelstein 1944; St. Clair and Lawrence 1951, 1952).

Some rosin derivatives have uses in paints and varnishes other than serving as a resin. Certain metal resinates are used as dryers, which act as catalysts. For a drying-oil film to harden within a reasonable time, a small

amount of dryer has to be present. The most commonly used dryers are the oil-soluble salts of cobalt, lead, and manganese, generally the resinates, naphthenate, or tallate. "Fused" resinates are prepared by the addition of the metal oxide, hydroxide, or acetate to molten rosin, "precipitated" resinates by the precipitation of the metal resinate from an aqueous solution of sodium resinate with a water-soluble salt of the desired metal. The fused resinates contain less metal but are more soluble in the varnish solvents. The precipitated resinates, being in a fine state of subdivision, are more difficult to store since they are readily damaged by oxidation.

Unmodified rosin is preferred for other uses. Because of its excellent solubility, it may be mixed with less soluble resins to improve their solubility in formulations in which they would not otherwise be satisfactory.

Another use for rosin in varnish is to retard gelation of certain highly reactive drying oils. Thus rosin facilitates processing of tung oil varnish and improves its quality by greatly retarding the polymerization of the oil into an insoluble gel. If the tung oil has already gelled, rosin may also serve as a peptizing, or solubilizing, agent.

The use of rosin and many of its derivatives in printing ink closely parallels their use in ordinary varnish, since a printing ink is essentially a varnish having a high resin and a high pigment content with little or no thinner.

Present-day lacquers consist largely of cellulose derivatives, resins, plasticizers, and solvents. The cellulose derivatives, usually cellulose nitrate or acetate, are the film-forming materials, but they lack adhesion, gloss, and workable viscosity.

Various natural and synthetic resins, rosin esters, rosin-modified phenolics, and maleic-modified rosin esters improve viscosity characteristics. A 20-percent solution of ester gum has a very low viscosity in lacquer solvents and when mixed with a like concentration of nitrocellulose in similar solvents, it gives satisfactory viscosity. Because both the nitrocellulose and the resin are usually too brittle to form satisfactory films, a plasticizer is required. The methyl ester of rosin and other low-melting rosin esters are often used for that purpose.

Floor coverings.—Because of its peptizing or solubilizing action on gelled oils, rosin finds use in the preparation of linoleum or linoleum-type floor coverings. Since color is not usually critical, the darker grades of rosin are commonly used. A mixture consisting of about 20 percent rosin and 80 percent drying oils, with a small amount of oil-soluble salts of cobalt, manganese, and lead, is blown with air for about 15 hours. The mixture is thus converted into a rubbery plastic substance known as cement, and used as a binder for the linoleum sheet. Mixed with pigments and ground cork or wood flour, it is passed between heavy rolls to form a plastic surface on a woven or felted fabric base.

Trends of price and demand for rosin.—In 1938, the average price for all grades of gum rosin on the Savannah Market reached a low of approx-

imately 1 cent per pound. During 1968 prices of the paler grades of gum rosin were fairly steady at 10 to 11 cents per pound. Since 1938, many of the competing products have decreased in price. In spite of these changes, the demand for rosin as grown slowly over this period, though its markets have changed greatly through development of new uses and new derivatives. It should be possible to find new markets to replace those that are lost, so long as adequate research programs are maintained.

28-2 HYDROLYSIS ²

The polysaccharides or carbohydrates of wood, principally cellulose and hemicelluloses, may be converted into simple sugars by acid catalyzed hydrolytic cleavage of their glycosidic bonds. This conversion, known as wood **hydrolysis** or wood **saccharification**, is potentially one of the best methods of utilizing bark-free wood residues from mills processing southern pine. Difficulties in hydrolyzing the cellulose constituent of the woody cell wall and the decomposition of simple sugars concomitant with the hydrolysis reaction make present processes uneconomical, however.

Carbohydrates make up 65 to 70 percent of the southern pine cell wall. (See table 6-1.) Approximately 64 percent of this carbohydrate content is cellulose, and the remainder is comprised of hemicelluloses, predominantly hexosans. (See table 6-2.) The crystalline structure of cellulose makes it very resistant to acid hydrolysis. Hemicelluloses, on the other hand, are amorphous in structure and are more readily hydrolyzed to their constituent sugars by the action of dilute acids. Efficient production of simple sugars from wood must take into account this differential ease of hydrolysis.

Hydrolysis of wood and other ligno-cellulosic substances has been reviewed by Harris (1949, ch. 4), Hägglund (1951), Wise and Jahn (1952), FAO (1954), Pearl and Gregory (1959), Savard (1962), and Bubl³. The processes developed thus far use either concentrated or dilute acids as the hydrolyzing agent.

DILUTE ACID PROCESS

Hydrolysis with dilute acid uses either multiple step batch processes or continuous percolation. The batch processes react the wood chips in pressure cookers at high temperatures, after which the hydrolyzate is drained off and the sugar solution concentrated. The yield is low (20 to 30 percent) due to decomposition of the simple sugars. A report by Cederquist (1952), however, describes a multiple batch process, affording yields as high as 50 percent of the dry wood weight.

² Sec. 28-2 is adapted from an unpublished review of the subject by L. F. Burkart, Stephen F. Austin State College, Nacogdoches, Tex.

³ Bubl, J. L. The hydrolysis of cellulose and wood. Abstracts from Chemical Abstracts, 1918-1943. USDA Forest Service, Forest Products Laboratory, FPL DP-37. Unpublished.

Of the percolation processes, only that developed by Scholler and his associates in Germany prior to World War II has been used commercially (Schaal 1935; Scholler 1939; Locke et al. 1945). A metered quantity of preheated dilute acid is percolated through wood chips or sawdust and promptly pressed out through the bottom of the digester by steam pressure. The short time between the formation and withdrawal of the simple sugars allows less decomposition than in the batch processes. As many as 20 cycles are used before the hydrolysis is complete. Because the sugar solutions are dilute and would otherwise require costly concentration, these processes are particularly adapted to direct fermentation to alcohol.

The Madison Wood Sugar Process (Harris et al. 1945; Wise and Jahn, 1952, pp. 908-909; Stamm and Harris 1954, ch. 16), an adaptation of the Scholler process, continuously admits hot dilute acid under pressure at the top of the digester with simultaneous withdrawal of the hydrolyzate from the bottom. This process has been thoroughly tested in the pilot plant stage but is not in commercial use.

CONCENTRATED ACID PROCESS

A number of processes have been developed using concentrated hydrochloric or sulfuric acid (at about 70° F.) as the hydrolyzing agent. Hemicelluloses are first removed by a dilute acid prehydrolysis. The strong acid is then introduced to swell the crystalline structure of the cellulose with accompanying partial hydrolysis. This action is stopped by dilution with water, and the process is completed as a dilute acid hydrolysis. The concentrated acid processes provide higher yields and more concentrated sugar solutions than the dilute acid processes; installations for handling the concentrated acids are costly, however.

The only concentrated acid process which has had any degree of economic success is the Rheinau or Bergius method using fuming hydrochloric acid (Bergius 1937; Locke et al. 1945). More recently the Japanese have developed several advanced processes using concentrated sulfuric acid, concentrated hydrochloric acid, or gaseous hydrogen chloride as the hydrolyzing agent (Oshima et al. 1959; FAO 1960; Kobayashi et al. 1960; Locke and Garnum 1961). All of these processes have been developed to the pilot plant stage but not to large-scale commercial operations. Wood hydrolysis plants are known to be in commercial operation in the Soviet Union, but little information on their economics is available (Locke and Garnum 1961; Harris et al. 1963, ch. 11).

OTHER POSSIBILITIES

New ways of disrupting the crystalline structure of cellulose need to be found and adapted to our present hydrolysis technology. Irradiation with cathode rays has been found to increase the accessibility of cellulose and thus to increase the rate of hydrolysis; also amines and other organic re-

agents affect the crystal structure of the cellulose by disrupting the hydrogen bonds holding the molecules together (Harris et al. 1963, pp. 552-560).

A process currently in the research stage removes lignin and much of the hemicellulose fraction in an initial step using triethylene glycol with a suitable acid catalyst as the solvent (Burkart 1969, 1970). The lignin and hemicelluloses are easily precipitated from the liquor and separated in forms that are suitable for further processing. The residual cellulose is available for use as fiber, or by further treatment with triethelene glycol at higher temperatures may be dissolved for chemical uses. The glycol is reclaimed for reuse. The reactions take place at atmospheric pressures, so expensive high-pressure digesters are not required.

Utilization of lignin, which constitutes 20 to 30 percent of pine wood, will no doubt be the deciding factor in the possible establishment of a stable wood hydrolysis industry. The usefulness of this potentially valuable by-product may be greatly enhanced by a separation process in which it acquires different characteristics than those resulting from kraft or sulfite pulping.

In the production of dissolving pulp by the kraft process, if chips are first treated (prehydrolyzed) with hot dilute mineral acids or hot water, a substantial portion of the noncellulosic carbohydrate fraction (pectins, arabinans, arabinogalactans, glucomannans, etc.) can be removed before alkaline pulping.

In studying the mechanism of prehydrolysis, Casebier et al. (1969) found that room temperature and hot (100° C.) water extraction removed only small amounts of the arabinogalactan type carbohydrate; when temperature was increased to 170° C. or higher, all hemicelluloses of this type plus significant amounts containing mannose and xylose were removed. At the higher temperatures much of the arabinogalactan polymer is hydrolyzed to free sugars. If held more than 90 minutes at 170° C., these may be lost as volatile compounds such as furfural or as insoluble condensation products.

Prehydrolysis removes 4 to 13 percent of the weight (ovendry basis) of southern pine chips, depending on the time and temperature of the reaction. Technology is available to concentrate the dissolved carbohydrate material for livestock feed.

Masonite Corporation, in "exploding" pine and hardwood chips into fibers for hardboard production, uses a high-pressure steam treatment which is essentially a prehydrolysis (Leker 1969). Free sugars and soluble polysaccharides are removed in a wash water containing about 4 percent soluble material, which is concentrated in multiple evaporators and sold for livestock feed as wood hydrolyzate molasses or in powder form.

PRODUCTS OF HYDROLYSIS

End products of wood hydrolysis can be grouped into three categories: crystalline sugars and wood molasses, biologically derived products, and chemically derived products.

Crystalline sugar and wood molasses.—The concentrated acid processes produce hydrolyzates with high sugar concentration. These hydrolyzates can be further concentrated and refined to produce crystalline glucose and xylose suitable for human and animal consumption, and for the chemical sugar markets (Locke and Garnum 1961; Harris et al. 1963, ch. 11). Concentration to approximately 50 percent solids by weight produces a wood molasses which extensive tests have shown to be comparable in food value to blackstrap molasses as a livestock feed (Harris 1950; Lloyd and Harris 1955). Improved multiple evaporators available to industry now make it technically feasible to concentrate the dilute hydrolyzates produced by the dilute acid processes. The production of sugars and molasses is one of the most attractive possible uses for wood hydrolysis, especially in areas where other sources of sugar are limited.

Limited hydrolysis accomplished by exposure of southern pine wood to steam (Leker 1969) or hot water (Casebier et al. 1969), yields some simple sugars plus soluble polysaccharide precursors of simple sugars.

Low cost of sugars from other sources makes widespread production of wood sugars uneconomical in the United States under present conditions. More stringent antipollution legislation, however, should stimulate interest in recovery of polysaccharides and sugars from process effluents (Leker 1969).

Biologically derived products.—Early interest in wood hydrolysis was primarily focused on the production of industrial ethyl alcohol by fermentation; while hexosans are readily converted in this manner, pentosans were largely wasted in early processes. The first commercial plants in the United States were built about 1914 in Fullerton, La. and Georgetown, S. C.; these plants converted southern pine sawmill waste into more than 6 million gallons of ethyl alcohol during World War I (Harris 1945). During the 1920's however, both plants ceased operations. Today, industrial ethyl alcohol is synthesized from petroleum-derived products.

Fermentation processes have been developed, however, for large-scale production of products from both hexose and pentose sugars. The largest users of sugar for industrial purposes (and consequently the largest potential users of wood sugars) are the producers of yeast, citric acid, and vinegar (Harris et al. 1963). Other fermentation products are butanol, lactic acid, butyric acid, 2- and 3-butylene glycol, and glycerine (Harris et al. 1963). Since these products usually bring higher prices than ethyl alcohol and since both pentoses and hexoses can be used, they promise greater economic feasibility.

Chemically derived products.—Both pentose and hexose sugars can be readily converted into useful products by chemical processes. Locke and Garnum (1961), reporting on the chemical wood conversion industry in Japan, state, "Intensive research is done there on the utilization of chemicals derived from wood. This may lead to the further development of the new industry into relatively large units producing a variety of chemical

compounds and end products now mainly derived from the petro-chemical industry.”

Chemicals that possibly could be produced competitively from southern pine, and which have a large industrial demand, include: furfural, hydroxymethyl furfural, levulinic acid, lactic acid, acetic acid, formic acid, xylitol, and sorbitol (Harris 1949; Lloyd and Harris 1955; Harris et al. 1963).

WOOD RESIDUES AS ANIMAL FOOD

In addition to the animal food potential of molasses from mill effluents, there exists the possibility of hydrolysis of wood and cellulose by cellulotic enzymes present in the digestive system of ruminant animals. Wood residues of a number of hardwood, and a few softwood, species have been shown to have value both as a non-nutritive roughage and, with modification, as an energy-containing food (Durham 1969; Scott et al. 1969; Feist et al. 1970; Heaney and Bender 1970). While not extensively evaluated, it is probable that southern pine—in common with some other softwoods—will be more difficult for ruminants to utilize than most hardwoods because its terpenes and other volatile resinous compounds are likely toxic or inhibiting to micro-organisms of the ruminant.

In an unpublished paper⁴, Cody et al. reported results from feeding screened shortleaf pine sawdust to bulls and heifers; grain intake was controlled by a ration of grain mixed with sawdust (35 percent wood). A 15-percent level of wood was insufficient for maintaining normal rumen mucosa. Neither slaughtered carcass nor feeding habits of the live animal appeared to suffer harmful effects from the wood-containing rations.

In 1968, R. W. Scott of the USDA Forest Products Laboratory abstracted the world literature relating to the use of wood and other lignocellulosic materials as feed for livestock; several references described experiments with pine species. König (1919) reported on attempts to use sulfite pine pulping liquor as animal food. Nehring and Schramm (1949) fed pine sulfite cellulose to ruminant animals; Ellenberger and Waentig (1918) made similar experiments with nonruminant animals, i.e., horses.

Honcamp (1929) reported that pine needles were 39 percent digestible; the animals were unidentified, but it is likely he worked with sheep. Eichmeyer (1943) found that pine needles and pine wood were respectively 43 percent and 46 percent digestible by sheep.

Dahlberg and Guettinger (1956) discussed jack pine (*Pinus banksiana* Lamb.) as a food for deer. Fermentation of pine wood and pine pulps was described by Olson et al. (1937), Fontaine (1941), and Virtanen and Nikkilä (1946).

⁴ Cody, R. E., Morrill, J. L., and Hibbs, C. M. Evaluation of health and performance of dairy animals fed wood fiber as a roughage source or intake regulator. Presented at the 63rd Annual Meeting of the American Dairy Association, Columbus, Ohio. 1968.

28-3 KRAFT LIGNIN PRODUCTS⁵

As noted in section 6-2, dissolved lignin (fig. 6-4) produced in kraft pulp manufacture, constituting 20 to 30 percent of the oven-dry weight of wood pulped, is modified from native pine lignin by the aqueous alkaline cooking liquors.

In spite of the enormous tonnages produced daily in the kraft mills of the South, kraft lignin has proven difficult to utilize at a profit. The West Virginia Pulp and Paper Company, Charleston, S. C., first made available to other industries a reproducible and inexpensive kraft lignin. This phenolic polymer had a wide solubility range and was readily reactive with, and modified by, various other chemical compounds. A series of lignin-derived products formulated to the requirements of different users are described by technical bulletins published by the company.

Where lignin is used in combination with phenolic resins to bond together pine and hardwood fibers in the core of decorative laminates, it is necessary to properly tailor both the lignin and the phenolic resin to optimize processing characteristics, properties, and economics (Schulerud and Doughty 1961). Similarly, a properly formulated combination of lignin products, urea, and a minor portion of special phenolic resins is an economic and effective binder to spray on the forming fibers in rock wool insulation (Ball 1962; Sarjeant 1966).

In the manufacture of cement and concrete, various lignin products fulfill specific economic and technical needs. Proprietary grinding aids containing pine lignin derivatives are widely added to cement clinker at 0.01- to 0.05-percent level to speed up grinding by 15 to 25 percent. Other pine lignin products retard setting time of Portland cement and are water-reducing and plasticizing agents for masonry and block cement.

Pine lignin products with varying degrees of sulfonation are extensively used as versatile dispersants for wetttable pesticide and herbicide powders. Similar approaches have produced a dozen efficient and economical surface active agents for acetate, polyester, and vat dyes. Required dispersing characteristics can be obtained through changes in molecular weight, sulfonate content, and cation content.

Specific pine lignin amines are now quite effectively used as cationic asphalt stabilizers (Borgfeldt 1964), while other pine lignin derivatives foster plant growth through their ability to chelate with and maintain availability of plant micronutrients which are added with fertilizers to deficient soils (Schneider et al. 1968).

Despite these economic uses, however, the great preponderance of kraft lignin is still utilized as low-value fuel; heat of combustion of kraft liquor

⁵ With some editorial changes, sec. 28-3 is taken from Ball, F. G. Lignin in the cellular structure of southern pine wood and lignin products from southern pine. Presentation at a symposium, "Utilization of the Southern Pines", Alexandria, La., November 6-8, 1968.

is about 6,000 B.t.u. per ovdry pound (see table 9-8), which gives it a fuel value of less than \$1.50 per ton when concentrated to half water by weight.

28-4 CHARCOAL

Wood destructively distilled yields a solid carbonaceous residue termed charcoal, a product much used in the early 1900's in the iron and chemical industries as well as for cooking and heating, but now used primarily for charcoal briquets—a consumer fuel for outdoor grills. Charcoal production in 1961 was considerably above the levels prevailing in the 1950's, but substantially below output in the early 1900's (fig. 28-4). Virtually all charcoal consumed in the United States is from domestic production; net imports in 1961 were only 5,342 tons. Production is concentrated in the Eastern States; in both 1956 and 1961 this section accounted for 98 percent of all the charcoal manufactured. The Southern States produced 29 percent of the total. In 1961 thirteen large producers (out of about 2,000 total) accounted for 56 percent of total production. In the South and Southeast the selling price of bulk unscreened charcoal averaged \$32 per ton in 1961, lowest of any region in the country; the highest prices (average \$64 per ton) were obtained by producers in the Northeastern States. In 1961, 50 plants produced 235,640 tons of charcoal briquets; 44 of the plants (97 percent of the production) were in the East, with the greatest tonnage (94,600 tons) produced in Southern and Southeastern States. Only 21,000 tons of briquets were produced from nonwood sources (e.g., lignite and agricultural residues) in 1961. The foregoing data are all from USDA Forest Service (1963).

Since 1961, briquet manufacturing capacity has increased, but the number of briquetting plants has decreased; in 1968, plants numbered 32, with a combined capacity of 94 tons per hour (fig. 28-5). In 1970 it was esti-

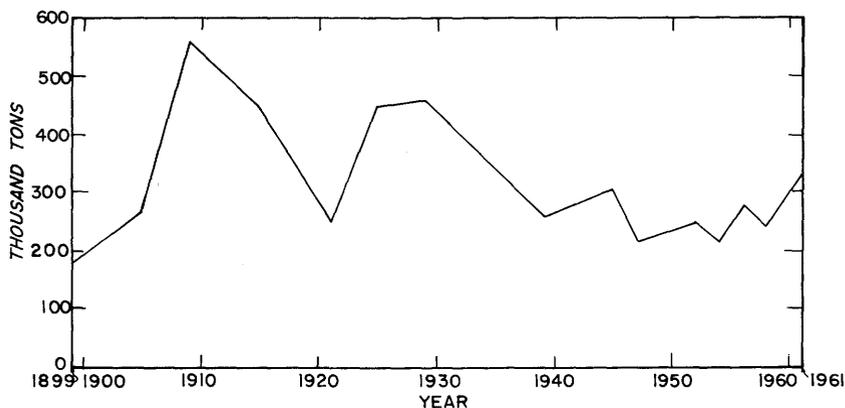


Figure 28-4.—Charcoal production in the United States from 1899 to 1961. (Drawing from USDA Forest Service 1963.)

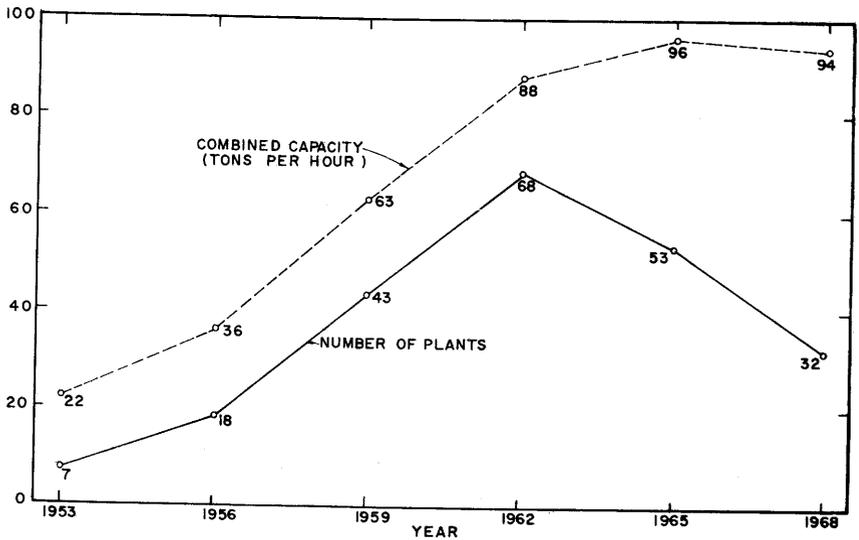


Figure 28-5.—Charcoal briquet production capacity in the United States. (Drawing from Aeroglide Corp.)

ated that 35 plants (owned by 25 firms) had a total capacity of 103 tons per hour.

For the guidance of charcoal purchasers and prospective manufacturers, a list of charcoal producers active in the South during 1961 was published by the Southern Forest Experiment Station (USDA Forest Service 1962). In 1970, there were about 22 briquetting plants in the Southern States.

Charcoal can be manufactured from any woody waste; yields are commonly about 1 ton of charcoal from 3 to 4 tons (ovendry basis) of wood. Southern pine roundwood and chips have a high value for fiber products, and dry residues are valuable for wood flour and particleboard; therefore, only a few types of southern pine residues are economical candidates as raw material for charcoal. Green southern pine sawdust and particularly southern pine bark, appear to offer possibilities for charcoal manufacture.

EQUIPMENT

There is a wide variety of equipment available to convert wood to charcoal. Descriptions of equipment and procedures for coaling roundwood, slabs, and edgings are widely available (e.g., USDA Forest Products Laboratory 1961). Because the few types of southern pine residues economically available as possible raw material for charcoal are in particulate form, only certain types of equipment like the multiple-hearth furnace are suitable.

Multiple-hearth furnace.—In June of 1969 seven Herreshoff multiple-

⁶ This description of the multiple-hearth furnace is adapted from Gallagher (1969).

hearth furnaces for the continuous production of charcoal were operating in the United States, with three more under construction. The furnaces are designed for three-shift production, preferably operating 7 days per week. Production rates are in the range from 1 to 2 tons of charcoal per hour. Four tons of oven-dry wood or bark will yield about 1 ton of charcoal. Gases produced during carbonization are substantial, and preferably are captured and burned to generate steam; alternatively the gases can be incinerated and scrubbed to comply with antipollution codes. The furnace can be operated by one man per shift and will accept bark, planer shavings, sawdust, pulverized wood, or a mixture of these fuels. Little external fuel is required, as part of the wood gases generated in the furnace are burned as needed to maintain carbonization.

The Herreshoff multiple-hearth furnace consists of several hearths or burning chambers stacked one on top of the other, the number depending on the capacity. The hearths are contained in a cylindrical, refractory-lined, steel shell and are constructed in arched form to serve simultaneously as the floor of one hearth and the roof of the hearth below.

Passing up through the center of the furnace is a shaft to which are attached two to four toothed arms for every hearth. As the shaft turns slowly (usually 1 to 2 r.p.m.), the teeth constantly plough through and turn over the fuel resting on the hearth floors, thus constantly exposing fresh material to the hot gases. The teeth also move material through the furnace; i.e., on every other hearth the teeth are canted to spiral the material from the shaft toward the outside wall of the furnace, and on alternate hearths the material is moved from the outside wall toward the center shaft. Around the center shaft is an annular space through which material drops on alternate hearths, while on the remaining hearths material drops through holes in the outer periphery of the hearth floor. In this way, material fed in at the top furnaces moves alternatively across the hearth floors until it is discharged from the floor of the bottom hearth.

The initial heat for startup is provided by gas- or oil-fired burners mounted in the sides of the hearths. When the proper furnace temperature has been attained, the auxiliary fuel can be turned off. Combustion air admitted through the cold burners is then used to ignite the evolving wood gases; air entry is regulated to maintain furnace temperatures at 900° to 1,200° F. The hot gases flow upward and across each hearth counter-current to the flow of solid material.

Where air pollution is not a problem, the effluent gases, or **off-gases**, can be burned in stacks and vented to the atmosphere. Adjustable doors in the base of the stacks admit the proper amount of air for burning. Under this condition the stacks emit a lick of flame and light smoke of intensity approximating a ringelmann number of 2. There is also a trace of fly ash emitted. Where pollution codes are strict, the gases are induced by a fan through a chamber for afterburning, water scrubbed to remove particulate matter, and vented to a stack.

Where there are requirements for steam, the pollution problem can be solved and requirements for other fuels reduced by means of a waste heat boiler. Approximately 20,000 to 25,000 lb. of steam per hour can be generated for every ton of charcoal produced. The boiler need not depend entirely on the off-gases. An automatic control system can be installed that will burn oil or gas to compensate for a diminishing or complete shut-off of the waste gas flow.

Charcoal exiting from the furnace at about 1,000° F. is cooled in a paddle cooler by water sprays and the water jacketing on the cooler. These sprays are controlled automatically by a temperature regulator set for a given charcoal temperature. Charcoal to be briqueted is usually hammer-milled. A charcoal storage tank with a holding capacity adequate for 2 or 3 days is usually provided.

Multiple-hearth furnaces are made in several standard sizes. Small units have four hearths about 21 feet in diameter and have a capacity of 1 ton of charcoal per hour. The larger units have six hearths about 26 feet in diameter and will produce 2 to 2½ tons of charcoal per hour. These capacities assume that the particulate fuel as fired has a moisture content of 45 percent of the green weight (82-percent moisture content on a dry weight basis). If the water content of the fuel is 60 percent of the green weight (150-percent moisture content on a dry weight basis), these productive capacities will be halved to about ½ and 1¼ tons of charcoal per hour respectively.

The furnace can operate on any wood waste or combination of wood waste if the material is hogged to uniform size to promote even carbonization. As the furnace must operate without interruption, fuel storage adequate for several days' operation should be maintained; fuel can be conveyed automatically from storage to furnace. About 100 tons (ovendry basis) of fuel per day is required for the smallest economical operation.

Schubert's (1969) description of studies leading to installation of a Herreshoff multiple-hearth furnace to manufacture charcoal (plus off-gases for boiler fuel) from southern pine particulate residues should be helpful to anyone considering such an installation.

Briquetting equipment.—Because charcoal from particulate southern pine residues is not in lump form, it is briqueted for sale on the consumer market. Briquetting equipment is available for production rates from about 1 to 10 tons per hour. According to one manufacturer, the investment required (1970) for a briquetting plant with a capacity of 1 ton per hour is \$500,000; such a plant requires eight men on the first shift, two on the second, and two on the third. Briquets are made 24 hours per day, but packaging, warehousing, and shipping are performed only during the day shift.

The charcoal is first hammermilled or crushed to pass a ¼-inch or smaller screen aperture, and then moved to a surge bin for metered flow to a

paddle mixer in which 9 to 10 percent (by weight) of corn-, milo-, or wheat-starch binder is added before transfer to the forming press.

The wet-formed briquets (30- to 35-percent moisture content) are then passed through a continuous tunnel dryer. Retention time in the dryer varies from 4.5 hours in a small unit to 2.5 hours in the larger plants; about 25 percent of this time is devoted to cooling the briquets. The dry (5-percent moisture content) briquets are then bagged and stored for shipment.

Assuming a charcoal cost of \$33 per ton, total costs per ton of bagged briquets has been computed by one equipment manufacturer to vary from \$80 per ton for a 1-ton-per-hour plant, to \$64 per ton for a 6-ton-per-hour operation.

CHARCOAL ANALYSIS

The USDA Forest Products Laboratory (1961, p. 116) has published a recommended procedure for analyzing charcoal from wood; typical results from unbriqueted charcoal (not from southern pine) by this method were as follows:

<u>Component</u>	<u>Portion by weight</u>
	<i>Percent</i>
Moisture -----	1.8— 2.8
Volatile -----	12.0—27.0
Ash -----	1.9— 4.5
Fixed Carbon -----	70.7—83.6

A limited sample of charcoal briquets manufactured from southern pine residues was found to have heat of combustion of about 12,335 B.t.u. per oven-dry pound when evaluated in an oxygen bomb calorimeter. (See table 9-8.)

ACTIVATED CARBON

Not all charcoal is sold on the consumer market. An industrial product of considerable importance is **activated carbon**, an amorphous form of carbon which is treated to give it a very large specific surface area (300 to 2,000 m.²/g.). To achieve this large surface area, the internal pore structure in the particles is highly developed; it is this structure that gives activated carbon the ability to adsorb gases, vapors from gases, and dissolved or dispersed substances from liquids. Two types of activated carbon are manufactured. Liquid phase (decolorizing) carbons are generally light, fluffy powders; gas phase (vapor adsorbent) carbons are hard, dense granules or pellets (Doying 1964, p. 149).

The details covering the manufacture and applications of activated carbon are beyond the scope of this text. For a review of the subject, see Doying (1964, pp. 149-158). To assist prospective manufacturers in locating technical information, a few additional citations are listed.

Manufacture of activated carbon from lignocellulosic materials	Applications of activated carbon
Hirota et al. (1944) Schumacher and Heise (1944) Adler (1945) Heller (1946) Hormats (1946) Stoneman (1946) Yoshimura and Murakami (1953) Kishimoto and Kono (1954) Puri et al. (1954) Tanaka and Tachi (1954) Hanzawa and Satonaka (1955, p. 439-463) Singh et al. (1958) Seth (1965) Ketov and Shenfel'd (1968) Moores (1969) Siedlewski and Majewski (1969)	Beebe and Stevens (1967) Koppe (1967) Lee (1964) Eliason and Tchobanoglous (1968) Kuzin (1968) Mattia and Weiss (1969) Slack (1969)

28-5 STEROIDS AND PROTEINS

It is possible that commercial systems may one day more fully utilize southern pine chemical and protein extracts (Stanley 1969). Prior to World War II the isolation of steroids from southern pine was merely of academic interest (Hall and Gisvold 1936); in 1968, however, Russia erected the first industrial plant producing steroids as a pulp byproduct (Nekrasova et al. 1968).

Proteins (enzymes) isolated from the living wood of slash pine have been applied to synthesize microlevels of cellulose and polyglucan-like polymers in a test tube (Stanley 1966; Stanley and Thomas 1968). While of academic interest today, the idea may be of wider interest in the future.

28-6 LITERATURE CITED

- Anonymous.
1950. Bark-chipped, acid-treated turpentine butts found suitable for pulpwood. *J. Forest.* 48: 99.
- Adler, R.
1945. Activated carbon and method of producing same. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,377,063.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Agnello, L. A., and Barnes, E. O.
1960. Tall oil. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 52: 726-732.
- Ball, F. J.
1962. Mineral fiber mat formation. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,056,708) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Barnes, E. O., and Taylor, M. L.
1958. The naval stores and tall oil industries. *TAPPI* 41(8): 16A, 18A, 20A, 22A.
- Beebe, R. L., and Stevens, J. I.
1967. Activated carbon system for wastewater renovation. *Water & Wastes Eng.* 4(1): 43-45.
- Beglinger, E.
1958. Distillation of resinous wood. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 496 rev., 8 pp.
- Bengtson, G. W., and Schopmeyer, C. S.
1959. A gum yield table for 3/4-inch, acid-treated streaks on slash pine. *USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Res. Note* 138, 2 pp.

- Bennett, F. A., and Clutter, J. L.
1968. Multiple-product yield estimates for unthinned slash pine plantations—pulpwood, sawtimber, and gum. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SE-35, 21 pp. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.
- Berguis, F.
1937. Conversion of wood to carbohydrates and problems in the industrial use of concentrated hydrochloric acid. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 29: 247-253.
- Borgfeldt, M. J.
1964. Cationic bituminous emulsions. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,126,350) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Bourke, N., and Dorman, K. W.
1946. Florida spray gun for pine tree gum flow stimulation. *Fla. Eng. and Ind. Exp. Sta. Bull.* 10, 36 pp.
- Burkart, L. F.
1969. Pulping of lignocellulosic material with a reaction product of triethyleneglycol and organic acid. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,442,753) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Burkart, L. F.
1970. Process for separating lignin from vegetable material using a mixture of triethyleneglycol and arylsulfonic acids. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,522,230) U.S. Pat. Off., Wash., D.C.
- Cary, A.
1928. How the growth of trees in height and diameter is affected by working for naval stores. *Nav. Stores Rev. and J. Trade* 38(27): A-G.
- Casebier, R. L., Hamilton, J. K., and Hergert, H. L.
1969. Chemistry and mechanism of water prehydrolysis on southern pine wood. *TAPPI* 52: 2369-2377.
- Cederquist, K. N.
1952. Some remarks on wood hydrolyzation. *In* The production and use of power alcohol in Asia and the Far East, pp. 193-198. Tech. Assistance Admin. and Econ. Comm. for Asia and the Far East. N.Y.: United Nations.
- Clements, R. W.
1960. Manual, modern gum naval stores methods. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., 29 pp.
- Clements, R. W.
1967. Composition and method for stimulating flow of pine gum. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,359,681.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Clements, R. W., and Collins, D. N.
1950. Larger turpentine cups prove more efficient without effect on product yields or grade. *Nav. Stores Rev.* 60(13): 16-18.
- Clements, R. W., and Harrington, T. A.
1965. Gum naval stores from plantations. *In* A guide to loblolly and slash pine plantation management in Southeastern USA, pp. 199-210. *Ga. Forest Res. Council. Rep.* 14.
- Dahlberg, B. L., and Guettinger, R. C.
1956. The white-tailed deer in Wisconsin. *Wis. Conserv. Dep. Tech. Wildlife Bull.* 14, 282 pp.
- Derfer, J. M.
1963. Flavor and perfume chemicals from sulfate turpentine. *TAPPI* 46: 513-517.
- Derfer, J. M.
1966. Flavor oils from turpentine. *TAPPI* 49(10): 117A-120A.
- Doying, E. G.
1964. Carbon (activated carbon). *In* Kirk-Othmer *Encycl. Chem. Technol.* Ed. 2, Vol. 4, 937 p.
- Drew, J., and Pylant, G. D.
1966. Turpentine from the pulpwoods of the United States and Canada. *TAPPI* 49: 430-438.
- Durham, R. M.
1969. Feeding mesquite wood as a maintenance ration for beef cattle. *In* Wood utilization, pp. 36-41. *Proc. Annu. Meeting Mid-South Sect. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.*
- Dyer, C. D.
1963. Naval stores production for extra forest income. *Univ. Ga. Agr. Ext. Serv. Bull.* 593 rev., 28 pp.

- Eichmeyer.
1943. [Experiences with the use of fir needles as fodder in Norway.] Mitt. Landwirt. 58: 382.
- Eliassen, R., and Tchobanoglous, G.
1968. Advanced treatment processes. Chem. Eng. 75(22): 95-99.
- Ellenberger, W., and Waentig, P.
1918. [The digestibility of the crude fiber of wood.] Dtsch. Landwirtsch. Presse 45(31): 195-196.
- Enos, H. I., Jr., Harris, G. C., and Hedrick, G. W.
1968. Rosin and rosin derivatives. In Kirk-Othmer Encyclopedia of chemical technology. Ed. 2, Vol. 17, pp. 475-508.
- FAO.
1954. Proceedings of the Sixth Meeting of the FAO Technical Panel on Wood Chemistry. 169 pp. Rome.
- FAO.
1960. Working party on wood hydrolysis. Final Rep. 2nd Meeting. FAO. Rome.
- Feist, W. C., Baker, A. J., and Tarkow, H.
1970. Alkali requirements for improving digestibility of hardwoods by rumen micro-organisms. J. Anim. Sci. 30: 832-835.
- Fernow, B. E.
1892. Strength of "boxed" or "turpentine" timber. USDA Forest. Div. Circ. 8, 3 pp.
- Fontaine, F. E.
1941. The fermentation of cellulose and glucose by thermophilic bacteria. PhD. Thesis. Univ. Wisconsin. Madison. 55 pp.
- Gallagher, F.
1969. Use of the multiple hearth furnace in the production of charcoal from wood waste. In Wood residue utilization, pp. 13-20. Third Tex. Ind. Wood Seminar.
- Gerry, E.
1922. Oleoresin production: a microscopic study of the effects produced on the woody tissues of southern pines by different methods of turpentine. USDA Bull. 1064, 46 pp.
- Goldblatt, L. A.
1951. Chemicals we get from turpentine. In Crops in peace and war, pp. 815-821. USDA Yearbook Agr. 1950-51.
- Goldblatt, L. A., and Palkin, S.
1941. Vapor phase thermal isopinene. J. Amer. Chem. Soc. 63: 3517-3522. merization of α - and β -
- Goldblatt, L. A., and Palkin, S.
1947. Process for converting nopinene to myrcene. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,420,131.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Goos, A. W.
1952. The thermal decomposition of wood. Wood Chem. 2: 826-851.
- Gruschow, G. F.
1950. Acid-treated turpentine butts yield quality saw timber. South. Lumber J. 54(7): 84-85.
- Hägglund, E.
1951. Chemistry of wood. 631 pp. N.Y.: Academic Press.
- Hair, D., and Ulrich, A. H.
1969. The demand and price situation for forest products, 1968-1969. USDA Misc. Pub. 1086, 74 pp.
- Hall, J. A., and Gisvold, O.
1936. Chemistry of slash-pine (*Pinus caribaea*, Morelet). II. Fats, waxes, and resins of the growing tips. J. Biol. Chem. 113: 487-496.
- Hanzawa, M., and Satonaka, S.
1955. Carbonization of wood by dehydrating agent. I. On the preparation and the decolorizing power of the hydrated active charcoal from wood. Hokkaido Univ. Res. Bull. 17, 997 pp.
- Harper, V. L.
1937. The effect of turpentine on the growth of longleaf and slash pine. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 64, 4 pp.
- Harper, V. L.
1944. Effects of fire on gum yields of longleaf and slash pines. USDA Circ. 710, 42 pp.
- Harrington, T. A.
1966a. The future of gum naval stores. Nav. Stores Rev. 25[75]11: 4-6, 18.

- Harrington, T. A.
1966b. Using acid paste—a new gum production technique. *AT-FA J.* 28(8): 9-11.
- Harrington, T. A.
1968. Mechanized gum naval stores. *Nav. Stores Rev.* 78(3): 6-7, 11.
- Harrington, T. A.
1969. Production of oleoresin from southern pine trees—a review. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(6): 31-36.
- Harris, E. E.
1945. Industrial alcohol from wood waste. *S. Lumberman* 171(2153): 244-247.
- Harris, E. E.
1949. Wood saccharification. *In* *Advances in carbohydrate chemistry*. Vol. 4, pp. 153-188. N.Y.: Academic Press.
- Harris, E. E.
1950. Hydrolysis of wood for stock feed. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep. R1731 rev.*, 6 pp.
- Harris, E. E., Beglinger, E., Hajny, G. J., and Sherrard, E. C.
1945. Hydrolysis of wood: treatment with sulfuric acid in a stationary digester. *Ind. Eng. Chem.* 37(1): 12-23.
- Harris, J. F., Saeman, J. F., and Locke, E. G.
1963. Wood as a chemical raw material. *In* *The chemistry of wood*, pp. 535-585. B. L. Browning, ed. N.Y.: Interscience Publ.
- Heaney, D. P., and Bender, F.
1970. The feeding value of steamed aspen for sheep. *Forest Prod. J.* 20(9): 98-102.
- Heller, O.
1946. Activated carbon. (Brit. Pat. No. 583,113.)
- Herty, C. H.
1903. A new method of turpentine orcharding. *USDA Bur. Forest. Bull.* 40, 43 pp.
- Hirota, K., Takano, T., Taniguichi, K., and Iguchi, K.
1944. [Utilization of the bark of Manchurian white birch.] *J. Soc. Chem. Ind.* 47: 922-929. Kokyo, Japan.
- Honcamp, F.
1929. Die naturalischen pflanzlichen Futtermittel. *In* *Handbuch der Ernährung und des Stoffwechsels der Landwirtschaftlichen Nutztiere*, pp. 266-347. Vol. 1, E. Mangold, ed. Verlag Von Julius Springer, Berlin.
- Hor mats, S.
1946. German process for manufacture activated charcoal. *Chem. and Met. Eng.* 53(6): 112-114.
- Joye, N. M., Jr., and Lawrence, R. V.
1967. Resin acid composition of pine oleoresins. *J. Chem. and Eng. Data* 12: 279-282.
- Ketov, A. N., and Shenfel'd, B. E.
1968. Electron paramagnetic resonance of birch activated charcoal. *Zh. Fiz. Khim.* 42: 2104-2105.
- King, D. B., Wagner, H. B., and Goldsborough, G. H.
1962. The outlook for naval stores. 89 pp. USDA.
- Kishimoto, S., and Kono, K.
1954. Studies on charcoal. VII. On charcoal materials for carbon. *J. Jap. Forest. Soc.* 36: 228-231.
- Kobayashi, T., Sakai, Y., and Iizuka, K.
1960. Hydrolysis of cellulose in a small amount of concentrated sulfuric acid. *Bull. Agr. Chem. Soc. Jap.* 24: 443-449.
- König, I.
1919. [Ingredients of wood and their economic utilization.] *Fühlings Landwirtschaftsch. Ztg.* 68(19/20): 361-369.
- Koppe, P.
1967. [Investigations concerning the competitive adsorption on activated charcoal in drinking water treatment.] *Gesundheits-Ingenieur* 88(10): 312-317.
- Kuzin, I. A.
1968. [Use of activated charcoals for purifying inorganic compounds.] *Zh. Vses Khim. Obshchest.* 13(5): 551-557.
- Lawrence, R. V.
1942. Removal of metallic contaminants from pine oleoresin. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 34: 984-987.

- Lawrence, R. V.
1946. Process for refining oleoresin. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,411,925.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Lawrence, R. V.
1951. The industrial utilization of rosin. *In* Crops in peace and war, p. 822-826. USDA Yearbook Agr. 1950-51.
- Lawrence, R. V.
1969. Naval stores products from southern pines. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(9): 87-92.
- Lee, D.
1964. Elimination of gaseous surface contamination. *Surface Contamination Symp. Proc.* 1964: 251-255. Gatlinburg, Tenn.
- Leker, J. E.
1969. Utilization of hardboard residues. *In* Wood utilization, pp. 50-54. *Proc. Annu. Meeting Mid-South Sect. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.*
- Lloyd, R. A., and Harris, J. F.
1955. Wood hydrolysis for sugar production. USDA Forest Serv. *Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* R2029, 13 pp.
- Locke, E. G., and Garnum, E.
1961. FAO technical panel on wood chemistry: working party on wood hydrolysis. *Forest Prod. J.* 11: 380-382.
- Locke, E. G., Saeman, J. F., and Dickerman, G. K.
1945. Production of wood sugar in Germany and its conversion to yeast and alcohol. U.S. Dep. Com. *Offic. Pub. Board Rep.* 7736. 119 pp.
- Loeblich, V. M., Baldwin, D. E., O'Connor, R. T., and Lawrence, R. V.
1955. Thermal isomerization of levopimaric acid. *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.* 77: 6311-6313.
- McConnell, N.C.
1963. Operating instructions for cleaning and distillation of pine gum. USDA Agr. Res. Serv. *Publ.* 687, 3 p. S. Util. Res. & Develop. Div. Nav. Stores Lab., Olustee, Fla.
- Mattia, M. M., and Weiss, B. M.
1969. Process for concentrating organic material from an aqueous stream. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,448,042.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Mirov, N. T.
1961. Composition of gum turpentine of pines. USDA *Tech. Bull.* 1239, 158 pp.
- Moores, G. T.
1969. Improvements in or relating to the manufacture of carbonised materials. (Brit. Pat. No. 1,162,141) The Pat. Off., London.
- Nehring, K., and Schramm, W.
1949. Digestibility of various kinds of cellulose by ruminants. *Tierzucht* 1: 11.
- Nekrasova, V. B., Agranat, A. L., and Solodkii, F. T.
1968. [Some results of the operation of an experimental-industrial arrangement for phytosterol collection.] *Les. Zh.* 11(2): 124-126.
- Olson, F. R., Peterson, W. H., and Sherrard, E. C.
1937. Effect of lignin on fermentation of cellulosic materials. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 29: 1026-1029.
- Oshima, M., Kusama, J., and Ishii, T.
1959. Process for saccharification of cellulose-containing material. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,900,284.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Ostrom, C. E.
1945. History of the gum naval stores industry. *Chemurg. Dig.* 4(13): 217, 219-223.
- Ostrom, C. E., True, R. P., and Schopmeyer, C. S.
1958. Role of chemical treatment in stimulating resin flow. *Forest Sci.* 4: 296-306.
- Palmer, R. C.
1930. Producing naval stores from waste wood. *Chem. and Met. Eng.* 37: 289-292.
- Palmer, R. C., and Edelstein, E.
1944. Resinlike product and method of preparing same. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,346,994.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Panshin, A. J., Harrar, E. S., Bethel, J. S., and Baker, W. J.
1962. *Forest products—their sources, production, and utilization.* Ed. 2, 538 pp. N.Y.: McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc.

- Patton, E. L., and Feagan, R. A., Jr.
1943. Operation of the Olustee Naval Stores Station process of gum refining. *Nav. Stores Rev.* 52(41): 12.
- Pearl, I. A., and Gregory, A. S.
1959. Review of chemical utilization. *Forest Prod. J.* 9: 85-99.
- Pickett, O. A., and Schantz, J. M.
1934. New uses for naval stores products. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 26: 707-710.
- Pohle, W. D., and Smith, W. C.
1942. Ester gums from rosin and modified rosins. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 34: 849-852.
- Pridgen, A.
1921. Turpentine in the south Atlantic country. *In* Naval stores: history, production, distribution and consumption, pp. 101, 103-104. (Thomas Gamble, ed.) Savannah, Ga.: Review Publishing & Printing Company.
- Puri, B. R., Laklanpal, M. L., and Gupta, P. C.
1954. Preparation of activated charcoal by phosphoric acid treatment. *J. Indian Chem. Soc., Ind. & News Ed.* 17(1): 35-38.
- Ryberg, M. E., and Burney, H. W.
1949. Research in equipment for the production of gum naval stores. *Fla. Eng. and Ind. Exp. Sta. Tech. Pap.* 32, 20 pp.
- Ryberg, M. E., Burney, H. W., and Clements, R.
1949. A new type of gutter for bark-chipped trees. *Nav. Stores Rev.* 58(52): 14, 27.
- St. Clair, W. E., and Lawrence, R. V.
1951. Metal resinates and method of preparation. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,572,071.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- St. Clair, W. E., and Lawrence, R. V.
1952. Fused zinc resinates from aldehyde-modified rosin. *Ind. and Eng. Chem.* 44: 349-351.
- Sanderman, W.
1960. *Naturharze - terpenintollalöl.* Chemie und technologie. 483 pp. Berlin: Springer Verlag.
- Sarjeant, P. T.
1966. Lignin-containing resin binder. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,285,801) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Savard, J.
1962. [Wood hydrolysis.] Drevarsky Vyskum 3: 205-222.
- Schaal, O.
1935. Present status of the Scholler-Tornesch procedure for saccharification of cellulose. *Cellulosechemie* 16: 7-10.
- Schneider, E. O., Chesnin, L., and Jones, R. M.
1968. Micronutrients—the "fertilizer shoe-nails." IV. The elusive nutrient-iron. *Fert. Solutions* 12(4): 18-20, 22, 24.
- Schöller, H.
1939. Saccharification of wood with dilute acid under pressure. *Chim. Ind. Agr. Biol.* 15: 195-202.
- Schopmeyer, C. S.
1947. New acid sprayer. *Nav. Stores Rev.* 57(29): 14, 28.
- Schopmeyer, C. S.
1955. Effects of turpentine on growth of slash pine: first-year results. *Forest Sci.* 1: 83-87.
- Schubert, S.
1969. From pipe dream to on stream. *In* Wood utilization, pp. 1-9. *Proc. Annu. Meeting Mid-South Sect. Forest Prod. Res. Soc.*
- Schulerud, C. F., and Doughty, J. B.
1961. Reactive lignin-derived products in phenolic, high-pressure laminates. *TAPPI* 44: 823-830.
- Schunacher, E. A., and Heise, G. W.
1944. Activated carbon catalyst bodies and their preparation and use. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,365,729.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Scott, R. W., Millett, M. A., and Hajny, G. J.
1969. Wood wastes for animal feeding. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(4): 14-18.
- Sellers, H. G., and Doyle, W. C.
1968. Production of synthetic pine oil. (U.S. Pat. No. 3,415,893.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Seth, G. K.
1965. Application of activated carbon in water treatment processes. *Environ. Health* 7(1): 44-48. India.

- Siedlewski, J., and Majewski, R.
1969. Studies on the preparation of activated carbons of various porous structure. *Przem. Chem.* 48: 360-363.
- Singh, D. D., Parkash, S., and Puri, B. R.
1958. Steam activation of charcoal in relation to its surface oxygen complexes and surface behavior. *Indian J. Appl. Chem.* 21: 187-192.
- Slack, J. G.
1969. Sewage effluent treatment for water recovery. *Effluent & Water Treat. J.* 9(5): 257-261.
- Smith, W. C., Reed, J. O., Vietch, F. P., and Shingler, G. P.
1941. Process for gum refining. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,254,785.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Snow, A. G., Jr.
1944. The use of chemical stimulants to increase gum yields in slash and longleaf pines. *USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap.* 106, 36 pp.
- Snow, A. G., Jr.
1948a. Effect of sulfuric acid on gum yields from slash and longleaf pines. *USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Tech. Note* 68, 35 pp.
- Snow, A. G., Jr.
1948b. Turpentine and poles. *South. Lumberman* 177 (2225): 276, 278-279.
- Stamm, A. J., and Harris, E. E.
1954. Chemical processing of wood. 595 pp. N.Y.: Chemical Publishing Company, Inc.
- Stanley, R. G.
1966. Biosynthesis of cellulose outside of living tree. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(11): 61-68.
- Stanley, R. G.
1969. Extractives of wood, bark and needles of the southern pines—a review. *Forest Prod. J.* 19(11): 50-56.
- Stanley, R. G., and Thomas, D. des S.
1968. Cellulose biosynthesis in a pine cambium extract. *Abstr. Amer. Chem. Soc.* A-92.
- Stonecipher, W. D.
1955. Turpentine. *Enycl. Chem. Technol.* 14: 381-397.
- Stoneman, A. C.
1946. Manufacture of activated carbon. (U.S. Pat. No. 2,402,304.) U.S. Pat. Office, Wash., D.C.
- Tanaka, K., and Tachi, I.
1954. Studies on active charcoal. II. Preparation of active carbon by steam process, and in a furnace with admission of air. *Wood Res.* 12: 1-8. Kyoto, Japan.
- Taylor, H. T., Jr.
1968. Engineered system for collecting gum naval stores. *Proc., Forest Eng. Conf. ASAE Pub. PROC-368*, pp. 52-53.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture
1969. Naval stores annual reports 1968-1969. *USDA Statistical Reporting Serv., Crop. Reporting Board, Washington, D.C.* 10 pp.
- USDA Forest Products Laboratory.
1961. Charcoal production, marketing, and use. *USDA Forest Serv. Forest Prod. Lab. Rep.* 2213, 137 pp.
- USDA Forest Service.
1935. A naval stores handbook dealing with the production of pine gum or oleoresin. *USDA Misc. Pub.* 209, 201 pp.
- USDA Forest Service.
1962. Wood charcoal and briquetting producers in the Midsouth. *USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. South. Forest Surv. Progr. Rep.* 8, 7 pp.
- USDA Forest Service.
1963. Charcoal and charcoal briquette production in the United States, 1961. *USDA Forest Serv. Div. Forest Econ. and Marketing Res.*, 33 pp.
- Virtanen, A. I., and Nikkilä, O. E.
1946. Cellulose fermentation in wood-dust. *Suomen Kemistil.* 19B(½): 3-4.
- Weiner, J.
1959. Tall oil. *Bibliogr. Ser.* 133-135. Ed. 3, 450 pp. Appleton, Wis.: Inst. Pap. Chem.
- Weiner, J., and Byrne, J.
1968. Sizing of paper. *Bibliogr. Ser.* 165. Ed. 2, Suppl. 2, 131 pp. Appleton, Wis.: Inst. Pap. Chem.
- Wise, L. E., and Jahn, E. C., (Ed.).
1952. *Wood chemistry.* Vol. 1, ed. 2, 688 pp. N.Y.: Reinhold Publishing Corporation.
- Yoshimura, F., and Murakami, M.
1953. Active charcoal. II. Carbonization of cellulose with certain chemicals. *J. Chem. Soc. Jap., Ind. Chem. Sect.* 56: 97-98.
- Zachary, L. G., (Ed.).
1965. Tall oil and its uses. 136 pp. N.Y.: Training Services Division, Dodge.

29

Measures and yields of products and residues

CONTENTS

	Page
29-1 UNIT OF MEASURE	1513
THE CORD	1513
<i>Volume of solid wood in a cord</i>	1514
<i>Number of pieces per cord</i>	1516
<i>Number of trees required per cord</i>	1516
<i>Cords of topwood per tree after removal of</i> <i>saw logs</i>	1517
<i>Cords per acre</i>	1517
THE BOARD FOOT—LUMBER SCALE	1518
THE BOARD FOOT—LOG SCALE	1519
<i>Doyle log scale</i>	1519
<i>Scribner Decimal C log scale</i>	1520
<i>International 1/4-inch log scale</i>	1521
<i>Gross volume in trees</i>	1521
THE CUBIC FOOT	1522
<i>Cubic feet in logs</i>	1522
<i>Cubic feet in individual trees</i>	1523
<i>Cubic feet in tops</i>	1524
THE POUND	1524
<i>Weight of a standard rough cord</i>	1524
<i>Weight of saw logs</i>	1525
<i>Weight of merchantable stems</i>	1526
<i>Weight of lumber</i>	1527
PRIMARY UNITS—A NEW MEASUREMENT	
CONCEPT	1527
CONVERSION TABLES	1528
<i>Cords to cubic feet</i>	1528
<i>Cords to board feet log scale</i>	1528
<i>Cords to board feet lumber scale</i>	1528
<i>Cords to weight</i>	1529
<i>Log volume in board feet by various log scales</i> ..	1529
<i>Tree volume in board feet by various log scales</i> ..	1529
<i>Board feet log scale to board feet lumber scale</i>	1530
<i>Board feet log scale to cubic feet</i>	1530
<i>Cubic feet to board feet lumber scale</i>	1530
<i>Cubic feet to log weight</i>	1531
<i>Log weight to board feet log scale</i>	1531
<i>Log weight to board feet lumber scale</i>	1533

	Page
29-2 PRODUCT YIELDS AND MEASURES -----	1534
POLES -----	1534
LUMBER -----	1534
VENEER AND PLYWOOD -----	1535
<i>Yield of veneer for 3/8-inch plywood per board</i>	
<i>foot log scale</i> -----	1536
<i>Yield of 3/8-inch plywood per bolt</i> -----	1537
<i>Lathe productivity</i> -----	1537
<i>Theoretical veneer yield per bolt</i> -----	1538
<i>Veneer yields by grade and width</i> -----	1538
<i>Volume in stacks of veneer</i> -----	1538
KRAFT PULP -----	1539
FIBERBOARD -----	1540
EXCELSIOR -----	1540
SQUARES -----	1540
29-3 RESIDUE YIELDS AND MEASURES -----	1540
NEEDLES -----	1542
TOPS AND BRANCHES -----	1542
STUMPS AND ROOTS -----	1543
BARK -----	1543
<i>Bark weight and volume per tree or log</i> -----	1544
<i>Bark weight and volume per standard rough cord</i> -----	1547
<i>Bark weight per M b.f. log scale</i> -----	1547
<i>Bark weight per M b.f. lumber scale</i> -----	1548
<i>Bark weight and volume in slabwood</i> -----	1549
<i>Density of bark in piles</i> -----	1550
SLABS AND EDGINGS -----	1550
<i>Slab yield per M b.f. log scale</i> -----	1550
<i>Slab yield per M b.f. lumber scale</i> -----	1550
<i>Solid wood content of slabs and edgings</i> -----	1551
PULP CHIPS -----	1551
<i>Chip yield per cord of wood</i> -----	1552
<i>Chippable residue per M b.f. (log scale) sawn</i> -----	1552
<i>Chip yield from plywood mills</i> -----	1552
<i>Weight and volume of chips in piles</i> -----	1553
SAWDUST -----	1553
<i>Sawdust residue per M b.f. (log scale) sawn</i> -----	1553
<i>Sawdust residue per M b.f. (lumber scale) sawn</i> -----	1554
<i>Sawdust weight per unit volume</i> -----	1555
TRIM -----	1555
SHAVINGS -----	1556
29-4 LITERATURE CITED -----	1614

Measures and yields of products and residues^{1 2}

29-1 UNIT OF MEASURE

Wood-using industries employ a variety of units to measure southern pine trees and logs. Pulpwood dealers have historically used stacked measure—the cord or related unit; lumber manufacturers have preferred the board foot. As the industry has moved toward whole-tree utilization, however, measures of total or bark-free volume (cubic feet) and of weight (pounds) have become increasingly popular; this trend is likely to continue

Since wood is a variable material, and much of it is produced in irregular shapes, all units provide more or less imperfect approximations of intrinsic value. Applicability of measuring systems to specific situations must often be determined by experience. Even more variable are estimates of wood yield, which are additionally affected by factors specific to individual sites, stands, and processes. The data on product and byproduct yields are presented as best available approximations—yields in specific situations can be determined accurately only by local studies.

THE CORD

A **standard rough cord** occupies 128 gross cubic feet and is ordinarily comprised of 4-foot-long **rough** (bark in place) roundwood stacked into a pile or rick 4 feet high, 4 feet wide, and 8 feet long; a rick of any dimension that contains 128 cu. ft. of wood, bark, and airspace, however, is considered a standard cord. The word cord, if it appears unmodified in this text, refers to the standard rough cord of 128 cu. ft.

Because southern pine pulpwood is commonly cut about 5 feet in length, numerous wood procurement programs in the South are based on non-standard units. The most prevalent of these are defined as follows:

¹ Acknowledgment is due David L. Williams and William C. Hopkins whose publication (Williams and Hopkins 1969) included most of the information contained in this chapter. For convenient reference, all tables are grouped at the end of the chapter.

² Some abbreviations are used throughout the chapter as follows:

M b.f.—Thousand board feet.

D.b.h.—Tree diameter at breast height, i.e., 4.5 feet above ground outside bark

D.o.b.—Diameter outside bark.

D.i.b.—Diameter inside bark.

Scaling diameter—Log diameter inside bark at small end.

1. The 160-cu. ft. **long cord** comprised of 5-foot rough bolts stacked in a rick 4 feet high and 8 feet long.
2. The 168-cu. ft. **unit** of 5-foot 3-inch rough bolts stacked in a rick 4 feet high and 8 feet long. According to Forest Farmers Association (1966), one of these units is equivalent in volume to 1.315 standard cords.
3. The 200-cu. ft. **unit** of straw-piled rough bolts 5 feet 3 inches long.

Volume of solid wood in a cord.—The volume of solid bark-free wood in a standard rough cord is most if the wood is compactly piled, thin barked, short, well trimmed, straight, and of large diameter (figs. 29-1, 29-2; tables 29-1, 29-2). Airspace in a cord of southern pine may range from 14 to 40 percent; 25 percent is about average. Bark may occupy 13 to 16 percent of the gross space. Solid wood content ranges from 56 to 94 cu. ft. per cord. The average for loblolly pine is about 76 cu. ft.; longleaf, which has less tendency to be crooked and rough, averages about 85. Measure-

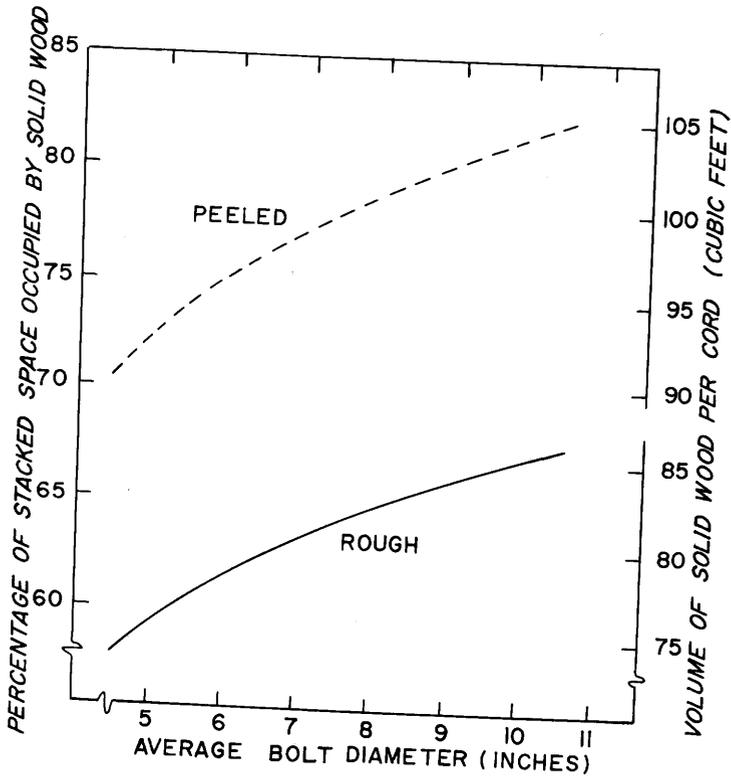


Figure 29-1.—Effect of average bolt diameter on solid wood content (exclusive of bark) of stacked, 4-foot, rough and peeled, loblolly pine pulpwood. The diameter indicated on the abscissa was measured inside bark on the peeled wood and outside bark on the rough wood. (Drawing after MacKinney and Chaiken 1946, p. 19.)

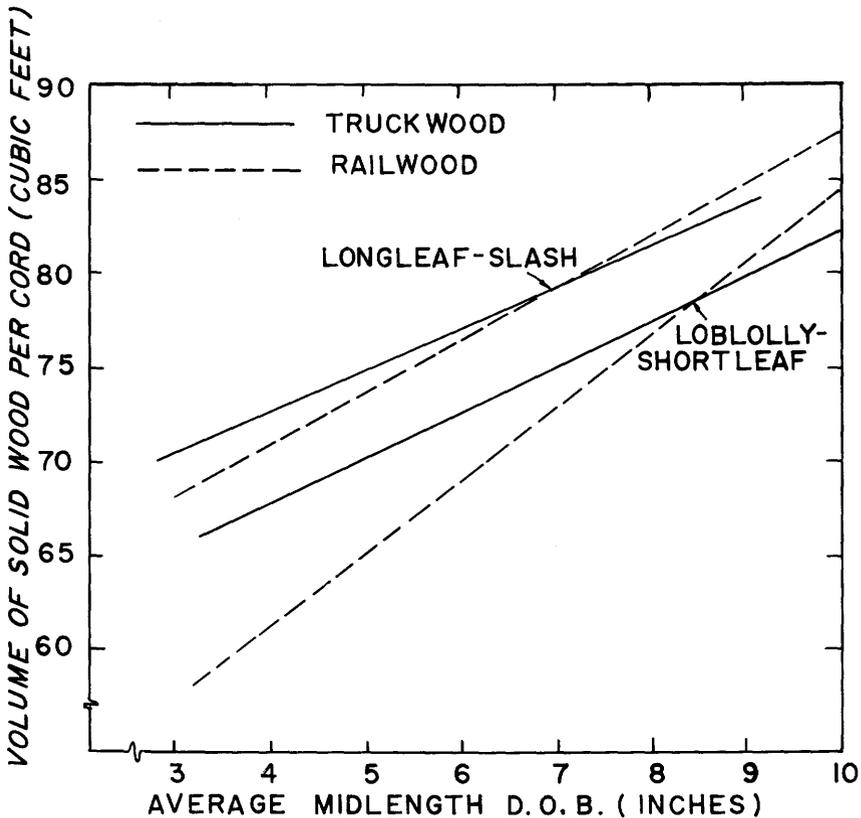


Figure 29-2.—Effect of transport method, species, and average bolt diameter on solid wood content of standard rough cords of southern pine pulpwood scaled at the receiving point. (Drawing after Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 10.)

ments of 50,000 cords of southern pine by one mill averaged 76.7 cu. ft. of wood, 16.2 cu. ft. of bark, and 35.1 cu. ft. of airspace.

In 1964-1965 larger timber went into southern pine pulpwood in the Midsouth than in 1950, resulting in increased wood content per cord (81 compared to 75 cu. ft.); the west Gulf region averaged 82 cu. ft. per cord in 1965 compared to 80 cu. ft. in the east Gulf region in 1964 (Van Sickle 1966).

The usual minimum diameter at the small end of pulpwood sticks is 3.5 inches inside bark; the average maximum diameter for southern pine pulpwood is about 22 inches, although some mills frequently process bolts up to 30 inches. Increasing demand for plywood bolts and widespread adoption of the chipping headrig are likely to divert material of these maximum diameters to other uses.

A cord of large bolts contains more solid wood than a cord of small bolts. Large bolts tend to come from lower bole positions and are straighter and more nearly free of trimmed branches and protruding knots than small bolts;

the smooth surface of bolts from butt logs more than offsets the thick bark associated with lower bole positions (fig. 29-1).

A cord of wood cut from open-grown, limby trees has less solid wood content than wood from well-pruned trees, and a cord of tops and branches has less solid content than one of stemwood; cords of loblolly pine from thinnings have been reported to contain 82 cu. ft. of solid wood, whereas cords from mixed tops and thinnings had only 74 (Forbes 1961).

Data from different tests on the relationship of diameter and form to solid wood content are difficult to reconcile. Table 29-1, while comparing reasonably well with figure 29-2 (both based on midlength d.o.b.), shows considerably more solid wood content in cords of longleaf pine pulpwood than does table 29-2 (based on midlength d.i.b.).

A stacked cord of long sticks has less solid wood than one of short sticks, e.g., piled 5-foot pulpwood contains about 1.5 percent less solid wood per cord than the same timber cut to 4-foot lengths and piled (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 7). Kraft mills in the Southeast generally specify 63-inch lengths, whereas Appalachian mills and mills west of the Mississippi call for 60-inch wood because of more limited railroad clearances. In general, groundwood mills request 48-inch lengths. As the move toward tree-length logging progresses, these patterns are likely to change.

Hand-stacked wood is compact and usually has a higher solid wood content than mechanically stacked wood. Cordwood in transit may settle to yield increased solid wood content when rescaled at the receiving point; railwood, especially in small sizes, reportedly settles more than wood shipped by truck (fig. 29-2).

Number of pieces per cord.—The number of pieces in a standard rough cord is obviously a function of bolt diameter and length, irregularities in the bolts, and compactness of the pile. Table 29-2 indicates that only 14 longleaf pine bolts 4 feet long and 16 inches in diameter (inside bark) are required to make a cord, whereas 128 pieces 5 inches in diameter are needed.

For pulpwood of better than average straightness and surface smoothness, table 29-3 shows the number of rough bolts required to make a standard cord, as a function of both bolt length and midlength d.i.b.; e.g., 152 4-foot-long, 5-inch bolts are required, whereas only twenty 6-foot-long, 12-inch bolts are needed.

Veneer cores approach the ultimate in straightness and surface smoothness; the number of 4-foot veneer cores required to make a cord is of interest because this number should represent the upper limit for extremely straight and smooth, bark-free pulpwood (table 29-4).

A cord of peeled southern pine wood contains 7 to 18 percent more solid wood than a rough cord (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 9). Information on bark volumes can be found in section 29-3 (see equation 29-27).

Number of trees required per cord.—The number of southern pine trees required to yield a standard rough cord depends on tree diameter,

height, and form. For rough approximations, the *Service Foresters Handbook* (USDA Forest Service 1970) gives the following tabulation.

D.b.h.	Trees per cord
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Number</i>
5 -----	46
6 -----	21
7 -----	15
8 -----	10
9 -----	8
10 -----	6
11 -----	5
12 -----	4

Table 29-5 relates the number of southern pine trees required per standard rough cord to the number of bolts per tree (a measure of tree height) and to tree diameter; table 29-6 provides an estimate of the number of merchantable bolts contained in loblolly pine trees of various diameters and total heights.

Table 29-7, in addition to tree height and diameter effects, includes the effect of stem taper, i.e., **form class**, on tree volume.

$$\text{Form class} = (100) \left[\frac{\text{D.i.b. at top of 16-foot butt log}}{\text{D.b.h.}} \right] \quad (29-1)$$

According to Mesavage and Girard (1956, p. 5), second-growth southern pines have an average form class of 78, ranging from about 65 for small, branchy, old-field pines to about 83 for older trees growing in dense stands.

Readers interested in the 168-cu. ft. unit rather than the standard cord will find table 29-8 useful.

Cords of topwood per tree after removal of saw logs.—Substantial volumes of pulpwood can be cut from the tops residual after southern pine saw logs are removed. The pulpwood yield per tree may be as little as 0.01 cord from large trees (whose tops are too rough for pulpwood) to as much as 0.06 cord from 9-inch trees on which several usable bolts are available above the point where diameter is too small for saw logs (table 29-9).

Cords per acre.—When entire stands are converted to pulpwood, the yield is proportional to basal area and total tree heights as follows (Minor 1943a):

Average tree height	Volume per square foot of basal area
<i>Feet</i>	<i>Cords</i>
30 -----	0.14
40 -----	.18
50 -----	.24
60 -----	.30
70 -----	.34
80 -----	.37

Alternately, cordwood volume per acre can be computed from knowledge of the number of trees per acre and the height of the tallest trees. An acre with but 400 trees of 25-foot maximum height contains only 0.3 cord, whereas an acre with 1,000 trees of 50-foot maximum height has about 34 standard rough cords (table 29-10).

THE BOARD FOOT—LUMBER SCALE

Traditionally, southern pine lumber was sawn to correspond to nominal thickness in inches and designated by thickness in quarter-inches, e.g., 4/4, 6/4, and 8/4 corresponded to 1-, 1.5- and 2-inch-thick rough green boards. Rough green boards were also sawn to even widths of 4, 6, 8, 10, and 12 inches. A **board foot (lumber scale)** is the volume of wood in a 1-foot length of a 12-inch, 4/4 board; alternatively, it could be defined as a 1-foot length of a 6-inch, 8/4 board or any other combination that would yield a similar volume.

Boards retain their green board foot measure, regardless of reductions in width and thickness during drying and planing. If resawn to yield two pieces of equal thickness, however, each resulting piece is tallied at half the board foot measure of the original piece.

In 1970, U.S. Department of Commerce Standard (PS 20-70) stipulated that manufacturers must produce green framing lumber to one schedule of sizes and dry lumber to another schedule of slightly smaller sizes. The two schedules are based on average shrinkage of commercial lumber as established by the USDA Forest Products Laboratory. The schedules follow:

Nominal thickness	Actual dressed thickness		Nominal width	Actual dressed width	
	Sold dry	Sold green		Sold dry	Sold green
	<i>Inches</i>			<i>Inches</i>	
4/4	3/4	25/32	2	1 1/2	1 9/16
5/4	1	1 1/32	3	2 1/2	2 9/16
6/4	1 1/4	1 9/32	4	3 1/2	3 9/16
8/4	1 1/2	1 9/16	5	4 1/2	4 5/8
10/4	2	2 1/16	6	5 1/2	5 5/8
12/4	2 1/2	2 9/16	8	7 3/4	7 1/2
14/4	3	3 1/16	10	9 1/4	9 1/2
16/4	3 1/2	3 9/16	12	11 1/4	11 1/2

As virtually all southern pine lumber 8/4 and thinner is sold dry, the new smaller sizes apply; as a result, 8/4 lumber is now sawn a scant 1 7/8 inches thick, and 4/4 lumber is sawn approximately 7/8-inch thick. Obviously, reductions in green board thickness increase the yield from each log. In this chapter, however, information on yield of sawn lumber (tables 29-39, 29-40, and 29-50), is all based on the original concept of the board foot, i.e., a 1-foot length of rough green board, 1 full inch thick, and a full 12 inches wide.

THE BOARD FOOT—LOG SCALE

Numerous scaling procedures, i.e., **log scales**, have been developed to estimate the board foot (lumber scale) yield of logs. Application of log scales can only approximate lumber yield from logs because individual scalers differ in precision of measurement and because sawmills vary widely in efficiency of lumber recovery. Schumacher and Jones (1940) discussed general development of empirical log rules applicable to particular mills; in the paragraphs that follow, specific formulae are presented.

Most widely used in the South are the Doyle, Scribner Decimal C, and International ¼-inch log scales. Log diameter, usually measured inside bark at the small end, and log length are the primary determinants of log content.

Doyle log scale.—The Doyle log scale is defined as follows:

$$V = \frac{L(D - 4)^2}{16} \quad (29-2)$$

To facilitate linear programming studies, Grosenbaugh (1952, p. 12) expressed the Doyle log scale as a regression equation:

$$V = 0.0625D^2L - 0.500DL + 1.000L \quad (29-3)$$

where:

- V = volume, board feet
- D = scaling diameter, inches
- L = scaling length, feet

Gross board foot volumes in logs as computed by the Doyle scale (equation 29-2) are shown in tables 29-11 and 29-12. For a given scaling diameter, volumes of 8-foot logs are half those shown in table 29-12.

Gross log scale may be reduced because of defects in logs. The reductions (board feet) are calculated by selecting the diameter-related factor tabulated below (Forbes 1961, p. 1.62), and multiplying it by the appropriate value from table 29-15.

<u>Scaling diameter</u>	<u>Factor</u>
<i>Inches</i>	
8 to 11 -----	0.6
12 to 13 -----	.8
14 to 20 -----	.9
21 to 31 -----	1.0
32 to 40 -----	1.1

Actual scaling practices differ widely from textbook scales. Some deviations occurring in the application of log rules are: giving logs 8 inches or less in diameter their length in feet as the board foot value; rounding scaling diameters to the nearest inch; and including various bark thicknesses in the diameter measurement. A modification of the Doyle rule,

to include one bark thickness in the diameter, gives upward bias of:

Scaling diameter		Upward bias	
Inches		Percent	
6	-----	20.0	
9	-----	10.7	
12	-----	9.2	
15	-----	8.4	
18	-----	1.8	

Errors may be introduced by scaling to even inches. If measurements are always rounded downward—i.e., logs 12.0 to 12.9 inches tallied as exactly 12 inches—the average downward bias for the Doyle rule is (Row and Guttenberg 1966):

Scaling diameter		Downward bias	
Inches		Percent	
6	-----	35.9	
9	-----	17.3	
12	-----	11.5	
15	-----	8.6	
18	-----	6.8	

Scribner Decimal C log scale.—Scribner did not base his log scale on a formula; instead he drew circles of different diameters and plotted the ends or cross sections of boards which might be sawn within each circle, computed the board cross sectional area in square inches, divided this value by 12 to get board feet per foot of log length, and finally, multiplied by the log length. As a result of this method of computation, values for successive inch classes increase in an irregular manner. In the Scribner Decimal C rule, the last figure in the scale of a log is rounded to the nearest 10 (e.g., a log scale of 114 bd. ft. is rounded to 110). Log contents according to the Scribner Decimal C log scale are shown in table 29-13.

Grosenbaugh (1952, p. 12) expressed the Scribner scale in a regression equation as follows:

$$V = 0.0494D^2L - 0.124DL + 0.269L \quad (29-4)$$

To compute the contents of 16-foot logs (table 29-14) according to the Scribner scale, the following equation is useful:

$$V = 0.79D^2 - 2D - 4 \quad (29-5)$$

In these equations,

V = volume, board feet

D = scaling diameter, inches

L = scaling length, feet

Gross log scale may be reduced because of defects. Appropriate deductions (board feet) can be read from table 29-15 if the length and cross sectional area of the defects are known.

International 1/4-inch log scale.—This formula-based scale accounts for taper in logs by evaluating them in 4-foot lengths. Content of a log is computed by summing the contents of the 4-foot lengths comprising it and assuming that taper increases diameter 1/2-inch in each 4 feet of log length. Saw kerf is assumed to be 1/4-inch. The formula for each 4-foot length of log is as follows:

$$V = 0.905 (0.22D^2 - 0.71D) \tag{29-6}$$

Log contents computed from this formula are usually rounded to the nearest 5 bd. ft. as shown in table 29-16.

Row and Guttenberg (1966) expressed the International 1/4-inch log scale as a regression expression containing both scaling diameter and length, as follows:

$$V = 0.0498D^2L - 0.185DL + 0.0422L + 0.00622DL^2 + 0.000259L^3 - 0.0116L^2 \tag{29-7}$$

To compute the contents of 16-foot logs by scaling diameter in tenths of an inch (table 29-17), the following equation for the International 1/4-inch log scale is useful:

$$V = 0.796D^2 - 1.375D - 1.230 \tag{29-8}$$

For 8-foot logs (table 29-17):

$$V = 0.905 (.44D^2 - 1.20D - 0.3) \tag{29-9}$$

In these equations:

- V = volume, board feet
- D = scaling diameter, inches
- L = scaling length, feet

Gross log scale may be reduced by deductions (board feet) computed by selecting the diameter-related factor tabulated below (Forbes 1961, p. 1.62), and multiplying it by the appropriate value from table 29-15.

<u>Scaling diameter</u>	<u>Factor</u>
<i>Inches</i>	
8 to 14 -----	1.2
15 to 19 -----	1.1
20 to 36 -----	1.05

Gross volume in trees.—At least one-third—and in less than three-log trees more than half—the board foot volume in southern pine trees, as measured by the International 1/4-inch log scale, is in the butt log; for

form class 78, which is typical of southern pine trees, the volume distribution is as follows (Rothacher 1948):

Log position	Number of 16-foot logs									
	1	1.5	2	2.5	3	3.5	4	4.5	5	
	----- Percent of total tree volume -----									
Butt.....	100	74	59	52	47	41	39	34	33	
Second.....		26	41	36	33	30	29	27	26	
Third.....				12	20	21	20	20	19	
Fourth.....						8	13	14	14	
Fifth.....								5	8	

Mesavage and Girard (1956) have reported the amount of taper typical of 16-foot logs taken above the butt log (Table 29-18); in general, taper is minimum in the second log of tall trees (about 1 inch) and maximum in the sixth log (4 to 5 inches).

Tables 29-19, 29-20, and 29-21 give board foot volumes of southern pine trees of form class 78 as measured by the three major log scales. Merchantable height, applicable to these three tables, includes that portion of a tree from stump height to a point on the stem at which merchantability for sawtimber is limited by branches, deformity, or minimum diameter. For smooth stems this minimum diameter is usually not less than 60 percent of tree diameter breast high in the case of the smallest (10-inch) saw log trees, or 40 percent for large trees 30 to 40 inches in diameter. If height measurements include small tops of old-field southern pines, the tables will overscale. Tree volumes for form classes other than 78—considered average for southern pine—can be found in Mesavage and Girard (1956).

Table 29-22 relates crown diameter and total height visible in aerial photographs to board foot volume per tree (International 1/4-inch scale).

THE CUBIC FOOT

While the cord and board foot (log scale) are convenient units of volume, they are indirect and only approximate measures of actual cubic volume.

Cubic feet in logs.—Many cubic foot scales are based on formulae that mathematically transform logs and bolts into equivalent true cylinders. Volumes, therefore, are computed by multiplying log length by cross-sectional area. The principal variation among cubic foot scales is in the method of computing cross-sectional areas of logs and trees.

Row and Guttenberg (1966) have provided a regression equation for cubic volume of wood in southern pine logs based on the assumption that logs are segments of cones tapering 1 inch in diameter for every 8 feet of log length, and that there is no allowance for trim. The equation follows:

$$V = kD^2L + \frac{kDL^2}{8} + \frac{kL^3}{192} \quad (29-10)$$

where:

V = volume, cubic feet

D = scaling diameter, inches

L = log length, feet

$$k = (4) \frac{\pi}{12^2} = 0.005454 = \text{constant for converting } D^2 \text{ to cross-sectional area in square feet}$$

Equation 29-10 more closely estimates volume of solid wood (table 29-23) than do simpler methods of computing cubic volume.

Gross scale may be reduced if defects are visible; defect-associated cubic footage can be computed from the cross-sectional area and length of defects and deducted from the tabulated values.

Cubic feet in individual trees.—Gross cubic foot volumes (inside bark) based on length and form class (equation 29-1) of merchantable stems have been published by Mesavage (1947); table 29-24, applicable to form class 78, gives values typical of southern pine trees.

Burns (1965) and MacKinney and Chaiken (1946) have published tabulations of merchantable cubic volume (inside bark) based on total tree height of southern pines (tables 29-25, 29-26). Table 29-25 is a condensation of Minor's (1950) form class volume table. For timber estimates it is often convenient to measure enough trees to establish a curve relating diameter to average height. Average volumes by diameter classes are then interpolated from the table for the appropriate form class to prepare a local volume table. Merrifield and Foil (1967) confirmed that Minor's tables were accurate for use with southern pine.

Minor (1953b) developed a cubic foot volume table for use in interpreting aerial photographs of southern pine saw log timber (except longleaf pine); it provides a rough estimate of tree volume inside bark for low-density, even-aged stands or for all-aged stands (table 29-27).

Since southern pine stands with trees of small diameter are marketable, volume tables for bark-free wood, with error estimates, have been developed for small loblolly, shortleaf, and Virginia pines in upland areas and for small loblolly, slash, and longleaf on the southern Coastal Plain. The equations following are generally applicable to trees 8 inches or less in diameter. For young pines in the southern Coastal Plain (Schmitt and Bower 1970):

Pine species	Equation	Standard error	
Slash	$V = 0.02408 + 0.0021058(D^2H)$	0.10633	(29-11)
Loblolly	$V = .03789 + .0020911(D^2H)$	.10693	(29-12)
Longleaf	$V = .02855 + .0020404(D^2H)$	.03192	(29-13)

For young pines in the upper South Carolina Piedmont (Goebel and Warner 1962):

<u>Pine species</u>	<u>Equation</u>	<u>Correlation coefficient</u>	
Loblolly	$V = 0.03371 + 0.0196128 \left(\frac{D^2 H}{10} \right)$	0.9882	(29-14)
Shortleaf	$V = -.00489 + .0206058 \left(\frac{D^2 H}{10} \right)$	.9891	(29-15)
Virginia	$V = .02056 + .0218664 \left(\frac{D^2 H}{10} \right)$	.9932	(29-16)

In the equations:

V = volume without bark, cubic feet

D = d.b.h., inches

H = total tree height, feet

For young shortleaf and loblolly pines in Tennessee, Potts (1952) developed data on volume without bark (table 29-28).

Hawes (1940), USDA Forest Service (1969), and Romancier (1961) have provided information on cubic volumes of merchantable stems including bark (tables 29-29, 29-30, and 29-31).

Cubic feet in tops.—Tops of sawtimber are utilized for pulpwood; Mesavage (1947) has provided information to estimate their cubic volume (table 29-32) as a function of **top form index**—defined in the table. High, medium, and low values for this index in southern pine are 85, 75, and 67 respectively.

THE POUND

While the weight of a cubic foot of southern pine wood varies with its moisture content (sec. 8-1), oven-dry extractive-free specific gravity (ch. 7), and extractive content (sec. 6-3), gross weight is for loggers and many wood users a convenient and equitable measure of value. Conversion of weights to conventional volume measurement is difficult both because of this variation and because the irregularity of tree sections makes volume calculation difficult.

Weight of a standard rough cord.—Table 7-1 shows the weight of a cubic foot of southern pine wood as a function of specific gravity and moisture content. Table 8-1 gives an estimate of tree moisture contents by species, and table 7-4 unextracted tree specific gravity by species. With this knowledge, plus an estimate of the cubic foot content of solid wood (tables 29-1, 29-2, figures 29-1 and 29-2) and bark (table 29-2, col. 4) in a cord, it should be possible to compute an approximate weight for cordwood of any species. The specific gravity of bark is given in chapter 12.

Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 46) give the following average values

for a 128-cu. ft. cord; these are not computed values, but are weights reportedly in use by industry.

Pine species and region	Green weight per standard rough cord
	<i>Lb.</i>
Loblolly-shortleaf	
Texas and west Louisiana -----	4,700
Central Louisiana and throughout the Southeast ---	5,200
Longleaf-slash	
Throughout range -----	5,200

Figure 29-3 shows regional variation in the weight of cordwood; weights and locations shown were selected because they state purchasing practice or the results of weight studies.

Weight of saw logs.—The weight of saw logs can be computed from general knowledge of unextracted specific gravity and moisture content together with bark volume and specific gravity as previously noted for cordwood. The variable form of logs makes such computations difficult, however. Schumacher (1946) was among the first to explore volume-weight ratios. Row and Guttenberg (1966) reviewed the effects of log taper, log shape, trim allowance, bark volume and specific gravity, and wood moisture content and specific gravity; they concluded that total log weight was best expressed by an equation of the following form:

$$W = a_1D^2L + a_2DL^2 + a_3L^3 \quad (29-17)$$

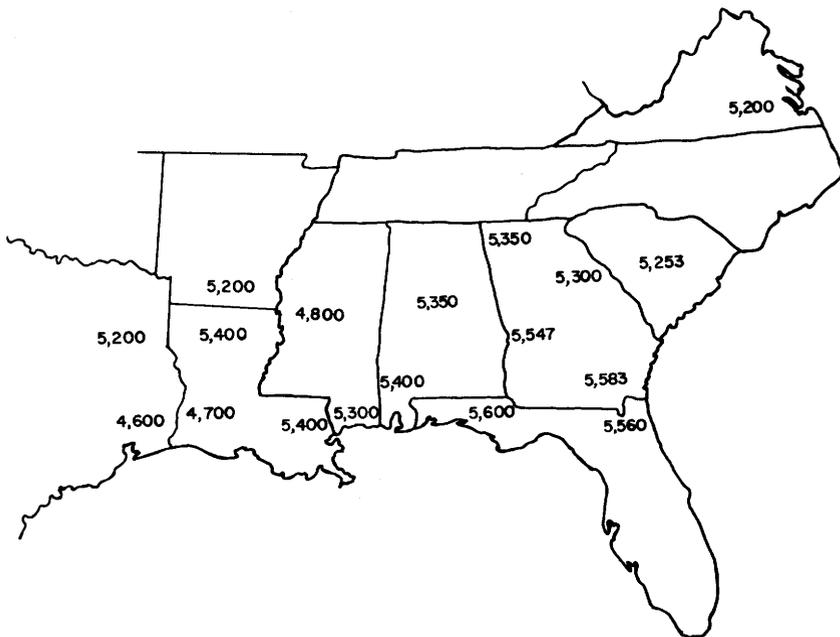


Figure 29-3.—Regional variation in the weight (pounds) of a green standard rough cord of southern pine pulpwood. (Drawing after Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 48.)

where

W = log weight, pounds

D = scaling diameter, inches

L = scaling length, feet

a_1 , a_2 , and a_3 = constants determined by regression analysis of weights of sample logs.

Southern pine log weights determined by direct measurements (table 29-33) have been published by Page and Bois (1961) and Barton (1966). A nomograph devised by Davis (1963) also facilitates quick estimation of the weights of various-length logs in the diameter range from 6 to 19 inches (fig. 29-4).

Weight by merchantable stems.—Relatively few studies have been made of total stem weights. Curtis (1966) sampled over 900 trees in north Florida along the Gulf of Mexico about 55 miles south of Tallahassee; while longleaf, loblolly, sand, slash, and spruce pines were studied, only the

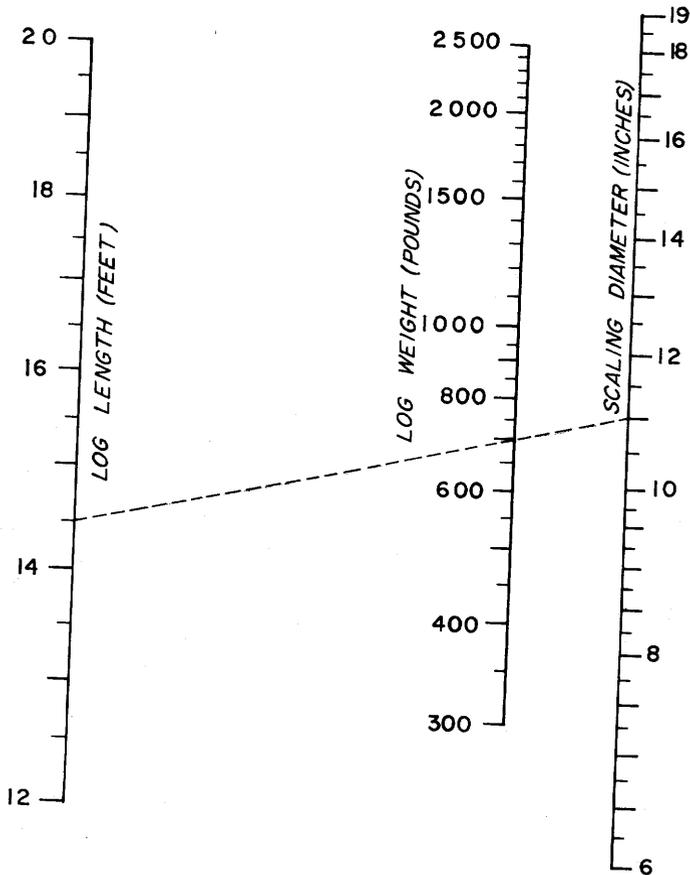


Figure 29-4.—Nomograph for determination of southern pine log weights. (Drawing after Davis 1963 based on data provided by Siegel and Row 1960.)

equations for slash pine were published, as follows:

Equation	R^2	
$Y_1 = 0.145X_1 + 2.501X_2 - 60.3$	0.985	(29-18)
$Y_2 = 0.012X_1 + 0.619X_2 + 15.7$	.908	(29-19)
$Y_3 = -1.788X_3 - 0.099X_4 + 0.777$	.461	(29-20)
$Y_4 = (Y_1 - Y_2)(Y_3)$	—	(29-21)

where:

Y_1 = weight of rough green limbed tree stem to 2-inch top outside bark, pounds

Y_2 = weight of green bark to 2-inch top, pounds

Y_3 = weight of oven-dry peeled tree stem ÷ weight of peeled green stem

Y_4 = weight of oven-dry wood in tree stem, pounds

X_1 = (d.b.h., inches)²(total tree height, feet)

X_2 = tree age, years

X_3 = reciprocal of X_2

X_4 = reciprocal of specific gravity of breast-height increment core, oven-dry weight and green volume basis

Weights of merchantable stems of slash pine planted in the Carolina Sandhills are given in table 29-34. From this table it is seen that, including bark, a green slash pine stem of 10-inch d.b.h. to a 2-inch top outside bark weighs 997 lb. if the tree is 70 feet in total height. This compares to a value of 1,055 lb. computed from equation 29-18 for a north Florida tree of the same dimensions (assuming a tree age of 40 years).

Loblolly and shortleaf pine stems from north Louisiana and Arkansas have green weights (including bark) to a 6-inch top inside bark as shown in table 29-35. Data relating total tree height and d.b.h. to weight of wood and bark have been published by Romancier (1961) for plantation-grown loblolly pine in Georgia (table 29-36).

Weight of lumber.—Estimated lumber weights for all standard items are included in grade books for southern pine, e.g., Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (1970, pp. 198-199). The tabulated values are not actual weights, however, but are used in computing delivered prices per M b.f. of lumber in freight movements. Railroads base their transportation charges to the shipper on actual lumber weights, which are generally less than the estimated weights tabulated in grade books.

Accurate weights per M b.f. lumber scale can be computed by multiplying the appropriate weight per cubic foot (from table 7-1) by the actual cubic foot content of 1,000 bd. ft. of lumber.

PRIMARY UNITS—A NEW MEASUREMENT CONCEPT

Access to electronic computers and dendrometers has enabled foresters to avoid many of the difficulties associated with traditional units of measure. Grosenbaugh (1954) found that the products derivable from trees or logs

can be closely approximated in terms of aggregate cubic volume, surface area and length, or less accurately in terms of aggregate weight and length. He proposed and developed computer programs (Grosenbaugh 1967ab, 1968), for systems in which felled or standing tree inventory data are sampled with varying probability and measured in terms of these primary units. Essentially, such timber estimates require physical or optical segmenting of tree stems into sections of irregular length but each reasonably homogeneous as to quality and defect, and the measurement, by calipers, diameter tape, or precision dendrometer, of sectional diameters and lengths. Volumes and surface areas, along with lengths, are computer-accumulated by species, quality, and defect classes.

Local product-yield studies can relate these aggregates of primary units to actual outturn and value for a specific operation, and can provide estimates of costs and residues at any desired stage of the manufacturing process. At the same time, estimates can be cheaply made in terms of outmoded traditional units for accounting or other purposes.

Although not yet widely employed, this concept could greatly improve the accuracy of product estimation wherever a wide range of size, defect, or value classes is involved.

CONVERSION TABLES

The foregoing paragraphs describe the content of logs and trees in terms of cords, board feet, cubic feet, and pounds. Since all of these units of measure are in widespread use, conversion data are useful; some tables for this purpose follow.

Cords to cubic feet.—Tables 29-1 and 29-2 with figures 29-1 and 29-2 provide data to convert cords to cubic feet.

Cords to board foot log scale.—Cordwood volume should not be expressed in terms of board foot log scale unless the cordwood is comprised of bolts large enough for lumber manufacture, i.e., more than 6 inches in diameter. According to the *Service Foresters Handbook* (USDA Forest Service 1970, p. 6), the following conversion factors permit cords to be approximately expressed in terms of board foot log scale.

Tree d.b.h. <i>Inches</i>	Cords per Mb.f. log scale		
	Int'l ¼	Scribner	Doyle
8	4.0	4.4	6.8
9	3.7	4.1	6.8
10	3.4	3.8	6.8
11	3.2	3.6	6.3
12	2.9	3.4	6.2
13	2.7	3.2	5.2
14	2.5	3.0	4.5

Cords to board feet lumber scale.—To make this conversion, it is first

necessary to convert cord volume to cubic foot volume as previously explained. Then, according to Bruce and Schumacher (1935, p. 160), 5 to 7 bd. ft. can be cut from each cubic foot of cordwood; the ratio depends on the cordwood diameter as follows:

Diameter at small end	Bd. ft. (Int'l ¼ log scale) per cu. ft.
<i>Inches</i>	
6 -----	4.9
7 -----	5.5
8 -----	6.0
9 -----	6.4
10 -----	6.7

In many mills, lumber yield closely approaches International ¼-inch log scale.

Cords to weight.—The weight of a cord of southern pine pulpwood is discussed in a previous subsection, THE POUND, and summarized in figure 29-3.

Log volume in board feet by various log scales.—Log volumes in terms of one scale can be converted to another by use of previously tabulated board foot scales, values in table 29-37, and the following procedures by Lane and Schnur (1948).

To convert International volume to Doyle or Scribner, multiply the International volume by the percentage (from table 29-37) for the desired scale, log diameter, and length. Example: Given 1,000 bd. ft., International volume, in 14-inch logs 12 feet long, what is the Doyle volume?

$$1,000 (0.77) = 770 \text{ bd. ft., Doyle volume}$$

To convert Doyle or Scribner volume to International, divide the Doyle or Scribner volume by the percentages for the given scale, log diameter, and length. Example: Given 1,000 bd. ft., Doyle volume, in 16-inch logs 10 feet long, what is the International volume?

$$1,000 \div 0.83 = 1,205 \text{ bd. ft. International}$$

Doyle volume can be converted to Scribner, or vice versa, by first changing to International and then to the desired scale, using the above procedures.

Dollar values per unit volume in terms of one scale can be converted to another scale by substituting dollar values for log volumes in the above procedures and by dividing where multiplying is indicated and vice versa. Example: Given a number of logs 16 inches in diameter and 12 feet long, worth \$100.00 per M b.f. International scale, what is an equal value by the Doyle scale per M b.f.?

$$\$100.00 \div 0.82 = \$121.95$$

Tree volume in board feet by various log scales.—Tree volumes in

terms of one log scale can be converted to another log scale by application of the conversion factors given in table 29-38.

Board feet log scale to board feet lumber scale.—The amount of lumber actually sawn from a log in excess of the log scale is expressed as **overrun**.

$$\text{Percent overrun} = (100) \left[\frac{\text{Bd. ft. lumber yield} - \text{Bd. ft. log scale}}{\text{Bd. ft. log scale}} \right] \quad (29-22)$$

Overrun is greatly influenced by width and thickness of the product, accuracy of manufacture, thickness of saw kerfs, and ability of the sawyers and edgemen. Data in table 29-39, from "better-than-average" mills producing a specific product mix, are an indication of the approximate overrun that can be expected when sawing a mixture of full thickness (1 inch for 4/4 and 2 inches for 8/4) boards and dimension pine lumber.

It is difficult for many mills, particularly those using wide-kerf saws, to saw full thickness lumber equivalent to log scale as measured by the International 1/4-inch log scale.

The Doyle scale, however, yields substantial overruns, particularly on small logs. The Scribner scale yields overruns intermediate to the other two log scales.

Overrun data reflecting the new lumber size standards of 1970 (U.S. Department of Commerce Standard PS20-70), and accompanying changes in mill cutting practices, were not available when this manual was prepared.

In a study of overruns in six mills cutting the four major southern pine species plus pond pine, Yandle (1968) tabulated lumber overrun per tree scale as a function of tree diameter (table 29-40). The tree overrun (or underrun) was expressed as the percentage difference between the total lumber volume tallied per tree and the sum of the individually scaled logs from each tree (see equation 29-22). Headsaws in the mills studied generally had 1/4-inch saw kerf; some mills had band resaws with thinner kerfs.

Board feet log scale to cubic feet.—Table 29-41 presents cubic foot volume per M b.f. by log scale for 8- and 16-foot logs. The Doyle scale disregards taper, and requires more wood volume per M b.f. for the longer logs.

The first four columns of table 29-38 relate tree diameter to cubic foot content and board foot content as measured by the three principle log scales. Table 29-42 shows the number of cubic feet of wood volume per M b.f. of log scale as a function of tree diameter.

Cubic feet to board feet lumber scale.—The number of cubic feet required to yield 1,000 bd. ft. of lumber varies widely; if pieces are sawn in large sizes from large logs and if saw kerf is small, fewer than 125 cu. ft. will yield 1,000 bd. ft. of timbers; if, however, 4/4 boards are inaccurately

sawn from small logs with saws taking a large kerf, more than 250 cu. ft. of logs are required to yield 1,000 bd. ft. of lumber. Table 29-41 shows the cubic footage of wood required to yield 1,000 bd. ft. International 1/4-inch log scale according to log diameter and length; these values could also be used for lumber yield, as the International 1/4-inch log scale yields close to zero overrun on a mill equipped with bandsaws.

In brief, from logs 8 to 10 inches in diameter, approximately 6 bd. ft. of lumber can be cut from each cubic foot of log volume; with logs 16 inches in diameter, the ratio increases to about 7 bd. ft. lumber scale per cubic foot.

Cubic feet to log weight.—Data are available on the cubic foot content of southern pine cordwood (tables 29-1, 29-2), logs (table 29-23), trees (tables 29-8, 29-24 through 27), and tops (table 29-32). Weight per cubic foot of green southern pine wood is extremely variable, however, because of variations in specific gravity (see ch. 7) and moisture content (see sec. 8-1). If it is assumed that most wood in living southern pines is near 100-percent moisture content and that most southern pine wood has a specific gravity (basis of oven-dry weight and green volume) in the range 0.40 to 0.55, then from table 7-1:

Specific gravity O.D. wt., green vol.	Weight of green wood per cu. ft.
	<i>Lb.</i>
0.40 -----	49.9
.45 -----	56.2
.50 -----	62.4
.55 -----	68.7

Obviously a delay in bucking after the tree is felled will cause the wood to drop below 100-percent moisture content (fig. 20-9), as will a delay in getting wood to the weight scaling station. Also, typically, wood percentage of moisture content is inversely correlated with wood specific gravity (fig. 27-14).

To make a reasonable estimate of rough log weight based on cubic foot content of wood, one must first pick the appropriate volume inside bark from the tables, then multiply by an appropriate green density in pounds per cubic foot based on knowledge of the log source; to this product, approximately 10 percent (see equation 29-26) should be added to account for weight of the bark.

Log weight to board feet log scale.—Weights of single logs or whole truckloads can be accurately and quickly determined; less readily determined is the weight per M b.f. log scale. This is so because of species and regional variability in wood moisture content and specific gravity, and also because cubic foot content per M b.f., the primary determinant of weight varies with diameter and length of log, and with the various log scales.

Tables 29-43 and 29-44 give an indication of variability between species, log scales, and sets of test data. For example, these two tables give quite

different values for the weight of a thousand board feet of loblolly pine as measured by the Scribner Decimal C scale (12, 801 and 14,900 lb.).

Bower (1961) measured 243 16-foot loblolly pine logs harvested in southern Virginia and related scaling diameter to pounds required for 1,000 bd. ft. log scale, as follows:

Scaling diameter	Log scale		
	Doyle	Scribner	Int'l $\frac{1}{4}$
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Lb./M b.f.</i>		
8	28,000	14,900	11,500
9	22,000	13,100	10,800
10	18,600	12,200	10,300
11	16,500	11,600	10,100
12	15,000	11,100	9,900
13	13,500	10,600	9,500
14	12,100	9,900	8,900

From these data it is apparent that conversion factors between weight and Doyle scale are strongly related to diameter.

The literature, as well as logic, indicates that log weight to log scale conversion factors must be adjusted to fit particular localities. For example, Freeman (1962), in measuring shortleaf and loblolly pine saw logs cut in southeast Arkansas and northeast Louisiana, found that 1,000 bd. ft., Doyle log scale, weighed 14,038 lb. Bair (1965), however, measuring mixed southern pine saw logs in east Texas, found that log weight per M b.f., Doyle-Scribner scale, was substantially higher, as follows:

East Texas location	Log scale	
	Doyle-Scribner	Int'l $\frac{1}{4}$
	<i>Lb./M b.f. log scale</i>	
Sabine County (mostly bottomland)...	15,280	10,140
Angelina County (mostly upland)....	19,032	10,745

In diameters typical of southern pine saw logs there is no practical difference between the Doyle scale used by Freeman and the Doyle-Scribner scale used by Bair.

Siegel and Row (1960) provided data (table 29-45) relating log weight and diameter to the board foot (log scale) content per ton of green loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs; the logs were cut in north Louisiana and south Arkansas in lengths from 12 to 20 feet, and about one-third were butt cuts. Barton (1966) provided similar information for mixed southern pine saw logs cut in Alabama (table 29-46); surprisingly, Barton obtained more board feet (Doyle log scale) per 1,000 lb. of long logs than per 1,000 lb. of short logs.

Table 29-33 (bottom) and 29-46 published by Barton (1966) illustrate how truckloads of logs can be weight scaled in a manner that takes into

account both log length and diameter class. Obviously, tables appropriate for local conditions must be used. The steps are as follows:

1. Determine the weight of the load of logs.
2. Count the number of logs on the load.
3. Determine the length class under which the load is to be categorized.
4. Divide the number of logs into the net weight and obtain the average weight per log.
5. With the average length and weight, refer to table 29-33 (bottom) to determine the average diameter class.
6. With the average diameter and average length, refer to table 29-46 and obtain the number of board feet per 1,000 lb. for this specific average diameter and length.
7. Multiply the number of 1,000 lb. on the load by the conversion factor and obtain the board foot volume for the load of logs.

Bair (1965) and Freeman (1962) have published diameter-weight relationships that facilitate truckload scaling procedures for southern pines in east Texas and in the Louisiana-Arkansas area (tables 29-47 and 29-48).

Row and Guttenberg (1966) concluded that log length was not a major factor in the relationship between log weight and board feet log scale. The results of their analyses are summarized in the equations of table 29-49.

To facilitate widespread application of weight scaling, Row and Fasick (1966) described development of a computer program for fitting weight and scale information for single logs on loads to a proven equation form, testing of the results, and preparation of tables for practical application.

Log weight to board feet lumber scale.—This conversion can be accomplished indirectly by first converting log weight to log scale as described in the foregoing paragraphs and then computing the overrun from table 29-39.

Some data are also available to obtain lumber yield directly from log weight. Log species, diameter, and moisture content, however, strongly affect the conversion factors. The weight of saw logs required to yield 1,000 bd. ft. of lumber has been reported, according to species, as follows:

Pine species	Weight of logs to yield 1,000 bd. ft. of lumber	Citation
	<i>Lb.</i>	
Loblolly.....	10,890	Page and Bois (1961)
Longleaf.....	13,087	Page and Bois (1961)
Shortleaf.....	10,796	Page and Bois (1961)
Slash.....	14,191	Page and Bois (1961)
Loblolly-shortleaf.....	10,300	Guttenberg et al. (1960)

The effect of log diameter on conversion factors is substantial. Table 29-50 shows that a ton of 16-inch logs yields about twice the lumber (182 bd. ft. for slash pine) that a ton of 5-inch logs (85 bd. ft. for slash pine) yields.

Guttenberg et al. (1960) developed an equation to predict lumber yield from the weight of a truckload of loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs 12 to 20 feet long and 6 to 20 inches in diameter, as follows ($r = 0.971$):

$$\text{Lumber yield, board feet} = \frac{\text{load weight in pounds}}{10.17} - 13.44 \quad (29-23)$$

The logs were cut in southern Arkansas and northern Louisiana.

29-2 PRODUCT YIELDS AND MEASURES

Most wood products are sold by measures distinctive to the product. The paragraphs and tables in this section contain conversion information that has been found useful.

POLES

Classes of poles are described in section 11-5 and in tables 11-15 and 11-16. Board foot content of poles is given in figure 29-5 (International ¼-inch log scale) and in table 29-51 (Scribner log scale). If the values shown in table 29-51 prove inconsistent with local measurements, a volume table for local use may be constructed using the method of Hawes (USDA Forest Service 1959, p. 42) as follows:

1. Arrange poles by pole classes according to table 29-52; for each class and length determine the average pole circumference at the large end.
2. Convert each average circumference value to d.b.h.
3. Convert each d.b.h. to d.i.b. at top of first 16-foot log by assuming a suitable form class (Hawes used form class 89.)
4. From table 29-18, determine the d.i.b. for each 16-foot log (or fraction thereof) contained in the pole.
5. From table 29-14 determine the Scribner volume of each pole by summing the volumes of the logs contained in the pole. This step completes construction of the pole volume table.

The same procedure can be followed to construct similar tables based on the International or Doyle volumes, using appropriate tables from the board foot volume section.

Table 29-52 gives the weight, volume, and dimensions of the nine classes of southern pine poles.

LUMBER

The subsection, THE BOARD FOOT—LUMBER SCALE, defines the unit of measure for lumber. Data on lumber yields, by volume, are given in this chapter in paragraphs headed: *Cords to board feet lumber scale*, page 1528; *Board feet log scale to board feet lumber scale*, page 1530, (see also tables 29-39 and 29-40); *Cubic feet to board feet lumber scale*, page 1530; *Log weight to board feet lumber scale*, page 1533, (see also table

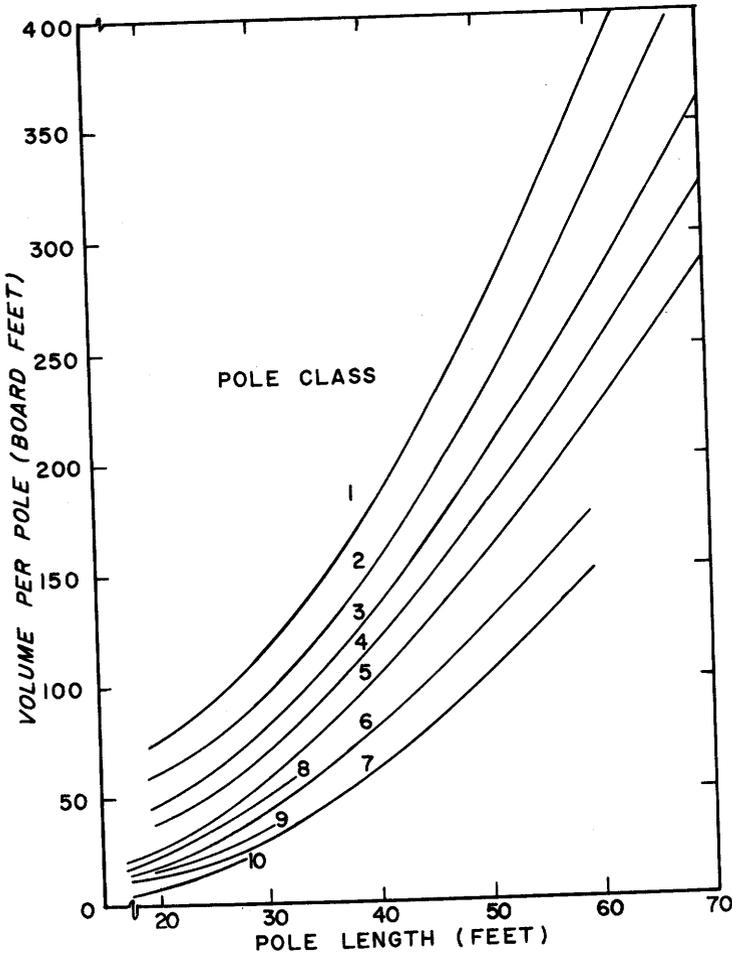


Figure 29-5.—Board foot volume of southern pine poles, International ¼-inch scale, by length and pole class. (Drawing after Williston 1957.)

29-50). Mills cutting to the new standards for lumber sizes made effective in 1970 by adoption of U.S. Department of Commerce Standard PS20-70 will obtain greater lumber yield per cord, M b.f. log scale, and ton of logs than indicated by these paragraphs.

Lumber yields, by grade, from southern pine trees and logs are described in sections 11-2 and 11-3 (see tables 11-1 through 11-13).

The weight of 1,000 bd. ft. of lumber is discussed in this chapter under the paragraph heading *Weight of lumber*.

VENEER AND PLYWOOD

Although southern pine plywood is manufactured in a variety of thicknesses from a range of thicknesses of veneer, the mensurational common

denominator of the industry is 1,000 sq. ft. of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick plywood. Surface measure (square feet) of other thicknesses can be converted to $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch basis if multiplied by the following factors:

Panel thickness		Factor
Not sanded	Sanded	
Inch		
$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	0.8333
$\frac{3}{8}$		1.0000
$\frac{7}{16}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	1.1667
$\frac{1}{2}$		1.3333
$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1.5000
$\frac{5}{8}$		1.6667
$\frac{11}{16}$	$\frac{5}{8}$	1.8333
$\frac{3}{4}$		2.0000
$\frac{13}{16}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	2.1667

Because log scales have been devised primarily for logs in lengths different from the 53-inch and 103-inch lengths (termed bolts or blocks) common to the plywood industry, and because veneer is cut without kerf and thin (compared to boards), the usual yield and overrun tables are not directly applicable for veneer yield computation.

Yield of veneer for $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood per board foot log scale.—Guttenberg (1967) measured the amount of $\frac{1}{10}$ -inch veneer cut from 103-inch-long southern pine bolts and related this volume to the Doyle scale of the bolts as computed by the formula $0.53125(D - 4)^2$, where D = scaling diameter in inches and the constant represents bolts $8\frac{1}{2}$ feet long. Bolts were peeled to a core diameter of 5.2 inches. Veneer volume from Grade 1 and 2 bolts, converted to its equivalent volume in $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch panels, was as follows:

Bolt diameter	Yield, $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch basis, per M b.f. Doyle log scale
Inches	M sq. ft.
10 -----	2.61
12 -----	2.75
14 -----	2.74
16 -----	2.64
18 -----	2.59
20 -----	2.54
22 -----	2.46
24 -----	2.43

Grade 3 bolts, as evaluated by the Forest Service standard grading system for southern pine yard lumber logs, had conversion ratios ranging from 3.26 M sq. ft. of panels ($\frac{3}{8}$ -inch basis) per M b.f. Doyle scale for 8-inch bolts to 1.83 for 20-inch bolts.

In a study of 8-foot loblolly and shortleaf pine bolts averaging 14.8

inches in diameter, veneer yield and losses were as follows (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 60) :

<u>Source and class of yield</u>	<u>Yield</u>
	<i>Percent of volume</i>
From bolts peeled on lathe	
Total veneer -----	87.1
Loss from spurs and core -----	12.9
From veneer fed into green clipper	
Usable cuts -----	57.6
Loss from clipping -----	42.4

In this study, bolts were mostly graded 2 and 3 by USDA Forest Service grades for southern pine logs; cores were 5.5 inches in diameter, and veneer was cut $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch thick.

Yield of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood per bolt.—Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 62) assumed a 40-percent loss of veneer, including the following: 20-percent clipping loss green; 15-percent loss during drying, dry clipping, and spreading; a 5-percent loss during panel trimming. On this basis, they estimated the bolts needed for 1,000 sq. ft. of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood as follows:

<u>Bolt diameter</u>	<u>Core diameter, inches</u>		
	3	4	5
<i>Inches</i>	<i>Number of bolts</i>		
8	22	25	31
10	13	14	16
12	9	9	10
14	6	7	7
16	5	5	5
18	4	4	4
20	3	3	3

Lathe productivity.—Hourly output of veneer is a function of bolt revolutions per minute in the lathe, loading time, bolt diameter, core diameter, and delay time. At one plant where cores averaged 5.2 inches in diameter and delay time was about 11 minutes per hour, Guttenberg (1967) estimated hourly lathe capacity as follows:

<u>Bolt diameter</u>	<u>Capacity per hour</u>
<i>Inches</i>	<i>M b.f. Doyle scale</i>
8 -----	1.62
10 -----	3.13
12 -----	4.77
14 -----	6.37
16 -----	7.87
18 -----	9.21
20 -----	10.40
22 -----	11.45
24 -----	12.37

Bolts were scaled as 8.5 feet in length.

Theoretical veneer yield per bolt.—If bolts were perfect cylinders, the lineal footage of veneer produced from each would be a function only of bolt and core diameters and veneer thickness (table 29-53).

Veneer yields by grade and width.—Grade yields of veneer rotary cut from southern pine peeler bolts are described in section 11-4 and table 11-14.

Veneer is normally clipped to standard widths of 54 or 27 inches when possible; narrower veneer is clipped to random widths. **Fishtails** are pieces of veneer that are not constant width full length; they are either salvaged as 4-foot-long veneers for center plys or chipped for pulp. According to one southern pine mill, percentage of veneer volume in each width class is related to bolt diameter as follows (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 59):

Bolt diameter <i>Inches</i>	Veneer width			
	54 inches	27 inches	Random	Fishtails
	<i>Percent</i>			
8	0	39	35	26
9	0	36	51	13
10	5	56	25	14
11	53	19	18	10
12	42	37	15	6
13	59	13	23	5
14	50	11	28	11

Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 60) reported that another mill peeling 8-foot loblolly and shortleaf pine bolts averaging 14.8 inches in diameter (mostly USDA Forest Service southern pine log Grades 2 and 3) obtained 29.4, 22.7, and 47.9 percent yield in 54-inch, 27-inch, and random widths of green $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch veneer.

Volume in stacks of veneer.—Stacked veneer sometimes accumulates in mills and must be inventoried in terms of equivalent $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood. According to one mill, a 103-inch-long stack of 54-inch-wide, $\frac{1}{8}$ - or $\frac{1}{10}$ -inch-thick dry veneer contains enough veneer per inch of stack height to make 55.9 sq. ft. of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood; a comparable figure for random-width dry veneers is 44.1.

At the same mill, stacked green veneers were equivalent to the following square footage of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood per inch of stack (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 60):

Veneer width <i>Inches</i>	Veneer thickness in inches	
	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{8}$
	<i>Sq. ft.</i>	
54.....	56.9	58.5
27.....	56.9	58.5
Random.....	54.9	56.4
Fishtails.....	27.4	28.2

The foregoing conversion factors allow for normal losses during manufacture.

KRAFT PULP

According to one manufacturer, a standard rough cord of southern pine (mostly loblolly), when processed into unbleached kraft pulp, yields only 39 percent of its volume as finished pulp, as follows (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 64) :

<u>Product</u>	<u>Volume</u>
	<i>Percent</i>
Bark removal.....	11
Fiber lost during debarking.....	2
Chips lost.....	1
Cooking rejects.....	7
Lignin and hemicelluloses in spent liquor.....	40
Unbleached kraft pulp.....	39

	100

Pulp yields vary with the pulp process and grade, among mills, and according to the species, specific gravity, and age of trees from which the pulpwood is cut. Not reproduced here, but of interest to some readers, is an alignment chart developed by Perry and Wang (1958) for estimating yield of dry kraft pulp from single slash pine trees. Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 64), in a survey of the southern pine kraft industry, noted that average loss of pulp volume attributable to bleaching is 6 percent; oven-dry chips or cordwood required to make 1 ton of pulp at 6-percent moisture content were estimated as follows:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Requirements per ton of pulp</u>	
	<u>Cordwood</u>	<u>Oven-dry chips</u>
	<i>Standard rough cords</i>	<i>Tons</i>
Unbleached kraft pulp	1.63	1.76
Unbleached kraft dissolving pulp	1.72	1.89
Bleached kraft pulp	1.85	2.04

In response to the survey by Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 65), one manufacturer expressed dry pulp yields as a percentage of the oven-dry weight of chips pulped, as follows:

<u>Product</u>	<u>Midsouth</u>	<u>Southeast</u>
	<i>Percent</i>	
Bleached kraft pulp.....	41	45
Unbleached kraft dissolving pulp.....	43	46
Unbleached kraft pulp.....	48	49
Linerboard base stock.....	52	54

No explanation of variation by region was noted.

The amount of tall oil recovered per cord of southern pine pulped varies

greatly among mills. According to Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 65), the average in 1966 was 5.5 lb. of tall oil per cord pulped.

FIBERBOARD

One manufacturer of southern pine fiberboard roofing, who makes a 0.5-inch-thick board weighing 665 lb. per M sq. ft., and a 1-inch-thick board weighing 1,116 lb. per M sq. ft., states that 1 ton of green chips is required to make 1.26 M sq. ft. of the 1-inch board (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 87).

EXCELSIOR

One standard cord of southern pine pulpwood yields about 1 ton of excelsior (8-percent moisture content) with a range from 1,800 to 2,200 lb. (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 87).

SQUARES

According to Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 87), 1,000 bd. ft. (Doyle scale) of southern pine logs sawn on a circle mill will provide sufficient slabs and edgings for 120 1-inch by 1-inch squares measuring 8 feet long.

29-3 RESIDUE YIELDS AND MEASURES

The southern pine industry is moving toward the goal of whole-tree utilization. Because this trend began fairly recently, reliable mensurational data on tree portions other than the stem are meager; volumetric data on manufacturing residuals are also incomplete. Changing manufacturing methods (e.g., adoption of tree shears and chipping headrigs) and changing manufacturing standards (e.g., adoption of new lumber standards calling for thinner boards) have substantially changed amounts of residuals from those reported in the older literature.

While no data specific to southern pine have been published, it is estimated that southern pine loggers leave about one-third of the total tree weight (ovendry basis) in the woods; this woods residue is comprised of tops generally smaller than 4 inches d.o.b., needles, branches, stumpwood, and rootwood.

E. T. Howard (table 13-4) provided data on weight distribution of above- and below-ground parts of three 22-year-old, 7.7-inch, unthinned, plantation-grown slash pine trees cut in central Louisiana. A summary of her data, all on an ovendry basis, follows. Root weight includes only those roots within a 3-foot radius of the stump. Total tree weight, including all above- and below-ground portions, averaged 317 pounds per tree, ovendry. Above-ground tree parts averaged 264 pounds, and weight of the bark-free stem to a 4-inch top d.o.b. averaged 186 pounds.

Portion of tree	Fraction of weight		
	Of total tree	Of above-ground parts	Of bark-free stem to 4-inch top d.o.b.
	Percent		
Bark-free stem.....	58.5	70.2	100.0
Roots and stump.....	16.5	19.8	28.2
Stem bark to 4-inch top.....	12.5	15.0	21.4
Top (with bark).....	5.0	6.0	8.5
Needles.....	4.0	4.7	6.7
Branches (with bark).....	3.5	4.2	5.9
Total.....	100.0		

From these data it is seen that tree portions not currently used averaged about 41 percent of total tree weight, and about 71 percent of bark-free stem weight to a 4-inch top.

Metz and Wells (1965) have shown that the percentage of total oven-dry tree weight above ground contributed by needles, stemwood, stembark, and branches of loblolly pines is a function of tree age (table 15-54). For a single 21-year-old, 46.4-foot-high loblolly pine 9.6 inches in diameter, percentages by weight were as follows:

Portion of tree above ground	Oven-dry	Green
	Percent	
Needles.....	4.7	4.7
Branches.....	15.3	12.7
Stembark.....	10.0	8.0
Stemwood.....	70.0	74.6
Total.....	100.0	100.0

For 10-inch and larger loblolly pines cut in Arkansas, T. C. Carlson and D. J. Henckel (unpublished) found that needles, branches, and tops smaller than 4 inches d.i.b. comprised only 10 percent of the total oven-dry weight of above-ground parts; 90 percent of the weight was in the stembark and stemwood to a 4-inch top d.i.b.

Utilization of the stem varies greatly among sawmills because of sawing equipment and practices, product mix, drying procedures, and planing mill practice. The trend toward increased production of 8/4 lumber—and diminished 4/4 board production—plus widespread adoption of chipping headrigs (see sec. 19-6)—has reduced sawdust production in some mills from as much as 22 percent of log volume to as little as 5 percent (see table 19-23).

One pulp and paper company integrated with a sawmill cutting loblolly and shortleaf pines reported the following distribution of log volume at the sawmill (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 77):

<u>Utilization channel</u>	<u>Portion of cubic log volume</u>
	<i>Percent</i>
Bark -----	5.0
Sawdust and end trim -----	16.2
Planer shavings -----	12.8
Shrinkage -----	4.6
Slabs and edgings (chippable) -----	23.0
Finished lumber -----	38.4
	<hr/> 100.0

Kerbes and McIntosh (1969), in a study of 138 spruce (*Picea* spp.) trees in British Columbia, Canada, measured the residues at each step of lumber manufacture. The trees ranged from 9 to 25 inches in diameter; logs were taken to a 6-inch top. Residues from this portion of the merchantable stem were expressed as percentages of the solid wood volume in the merchantable stem, as follows:

<u>Fraction and source</u>	<u>Portion of bark-free merchantable stem volume</u>
	<i>Percent</i>
Residue	
Logging, stem losses only -----	7.8
Sawmill, chippable -----	18.1
Sawmill, sawdust -----	17.2
Planing mill, shavings -----	14.3
Planing mill, trim ends -----	1.9
Shrinkage in kiln -----	3.9
Dry, surfaced lumber -----	36.8
	<hr/> 100.0

NEEDLES

As discussed in section 14-2 and shown in table 29-54, the needles of loblolly pine seedlings account for as much as 43 percent of total oven-dry weight; by age 21, however, needles account for only about 5 percent of total weight of above-ground tree parts.

E. T. Howard's data on three 22-year-old slash pines (table 13-4) showed that, on an oven-dry basis, needles accounted for 4.0 percent of total tree weight; they were 4.7 percent of the weight of above-ground tree parts and 6.7 percent of the weight of the bark-free stem to a 4-inch top outside bark.

TOPS AND BRANCHES

Cordwood volume to a 4-inch top (outside bark) remaining in southern pine trees after saw logs are removed varies substantially with tree size and species. Table 29-9 shows that 9-inch, two-log slash pine trees have

about 0.07 cord of topwood per tree, whereas 18-inch, two- to four-log longleaf yield only 0.01 cord. Table 29-32 gives topwood volume for southern pines as a function of length of merchantable top, top form index, and scaling diameter of the top log.

Table 29-54 shows that branches of young loblolly pines comprise 12 to 24 percent of the total oven-dry weight of above-ground tree parts; the two 21-year-old trees measured by Metz and Wells (1965) had branches that averaged 13.4 percent of total oven-dry weight.

Loomis et al. (1966) found that the oven-dry weight of branchwood (of all diameters and including bark) on shortleaf pine in southeast Missouri could be accurately estimated from tree diameter at breast height outside bark and the ratio of the live crown length to total tree height. Their values—computed from an equation that accounted for 99 percent of the variation—are tabulated as follows:

Breast height diameter	Crown ratio, percent		
	30	50	70
<i>Inches</i>	---	<i>Lb.</i>	---
3	1	3	4
6	8	17	27
9	24	51	83
12	55	116	189
15	106	224	364

For 22-year-old slash pine cut in central Louisiana, E. T. Howard's data (table 13-4) showed that tops smaller than 4 inches (d.o.b.) and branches (oven-dry basis and not including needles) accounted for 8.5 percent of total tree weight; they were 10.2 percent of the weight of above-ground tree parts and 14.4 percent of the weight of the bark-free stem to a 4-inch top outside bark.

STUMPS AND ROOTS

The same data from Howard (table 13-4) showed that the taproot with laterals to a 3-foot radius and stump to 6-inch height accounted for 16.5 percent of total tree weight (oven-dry basis); root and stump were 19.8 percent of the weight of all above-ground tree parts and 28.2 percent of the weight of the bark-free stem to a 4-inch top outside bark.

Other than this meager information, there are no published data on the tonnage or volume of stumpwood and rootwood in 20- to 60-year-old southern pines of the various species.

BARK

By the year 2000, the cut of southern pine is expected to produce an annual harvest of over 20 million tons of green bark. In devising uses for this tonnage, it is helpful to know something of the quantities available per tree, cord, M b.f. log scale, and M b.f. lumber scale.

Bark weight and volume per tree or log.—Because bark thickness varies with species, size and age of trees, density of stand, and site conditions (see sec. 12-2), percentage of stem volume in bark varies considerably among trees. For southern pines of pulpwood size, bark volumes usually range between 12 and 24 percent and are negatively correlated with tree diameter (table 29-55).

Snow (1949), in a sample of 4 to 8 trees of each of three species, also noted that bark comprised a greater percentage of stem volume in small trees than in large.

Pine species and tree size	D.b.h.	Merchantable height	Bark portion merchantable	Weight of green bark per tree
			Bark portion of total merchansable stem volume including bark	
	<i>Inches</i>	<i>Feet</i>	<i>Percent</i>	<i>Lb.</i>
Loblolly				
Saw log size.....	16.3	44	18.6	306
Pulpwood size.....	9.4	37	23.3	135
Shortleaf				
Saw log size.....	15.8	54	18.4	328
Pulpwood size.....	9.8	40	24.1	101
Virginia				
Saw log size.....	14.4	50	12.0	186
Pulpwood size.....	9.15	38	13.9	103

The Virginia pines sampled had less volume (about 13 percent) and weight of bark per tree than either shortleaf or loblolly. This agrees with data from Chamberlain and Meyer (1950), who found that bark comprised about 11.4 percent of the gross merchantable stem volume of Virginia pine pulpwood.

The weight and in-place green volume of stem bark of spruce pine trees (to a 4-inch top outside bark) have been given by Manwiller³ in terms of diameter outside bark at breast height (D, inches) and total tree height (h, feet), as follows (see fig. 29-6):

$$\text{Volume per tree, cubic feet} = 0.0038Dh - 0.616 \quad (29-24)$$

$$\text{Ovendry weight per tree, pounds} = 0.091Dh - 15.0 \quad (29-25)$$

Equation 29-24 accounted for 94 percent of the observed variation in volume, with standard error of the estimate of 0.45 cu. ft. Equation 29-25 also accounted for 94 percent of the observed variation, with standard error of the estimate of 10.6 lb.

For trees of all ages, Manwiller³ found that spruce pine bark comprises about 10.7 percent of stem volume including bark (to a 4-inch top outside bark) and about 9.8 percent of the oven-dry stem weight (including bark) as follows:

Tree age and growth rate at stump height (rings per inch)	Volume	Weight
	----- Percent -----	
15 years		
More than 6.....	14.1	12.2
Less than 6.....	10.8	9.7
30 years		
More than 6.....	11.2	10.1
Less than 6.....	10.0	9.5
45 years		
More than 6.....	10.0	9.5
Less than 6.....	8.2	7.9

Bark volume and weight—as a percentage of stem volume and weight—were least in fast-grown older trees; the percentages were greatest in slow-grown young trees.

Green bark weights for loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs from southern Arkansas and northern Louisiana are given in table 29-56, based on data accumulated by Guttenberg et al. (1960) and developed in the form of a regression equation ($R^2 = 0.897$), as follows by Row et al. (1965):

W = weight of green bark, pounds

where:

$$W = 0.0639DL + 0.0176D^2L \quad (29-26)$$

D = log diameter inside bark at small end, inches

L = log length, feet

Nine to 10-percent of the gross green weight of shortleaf and loblolly pine saw logs is bark, as follows (Row and Guttenberg 1966):

D.i.b. at small end	Log length, feet		
	12	16	23
Inches	----- Percent -----		
6	9.8	10.2	10.5
9	9.4	9.7	10.0
12	9.1	9.4	9.6
15	8.9	9.1	9.4
18	8.8	9.0	9.2

Metz and Wells (1965) found that in loblolly pines 7 and 21 years old, stembark comprised about 18 and 11 percent of the total oven-dry weight of above-ground tree parts (table 29-54).

Unpublished data from T. C. Carlson and D. J. Henckel on Arkansas

³ Manwiller, F. G. Characterization of spruce pine. USDA Forest Service, Southern Forest Experiment Station, Alexandria, La., Final Report FS-SO-3201-1.1 dated May 1, 1972.

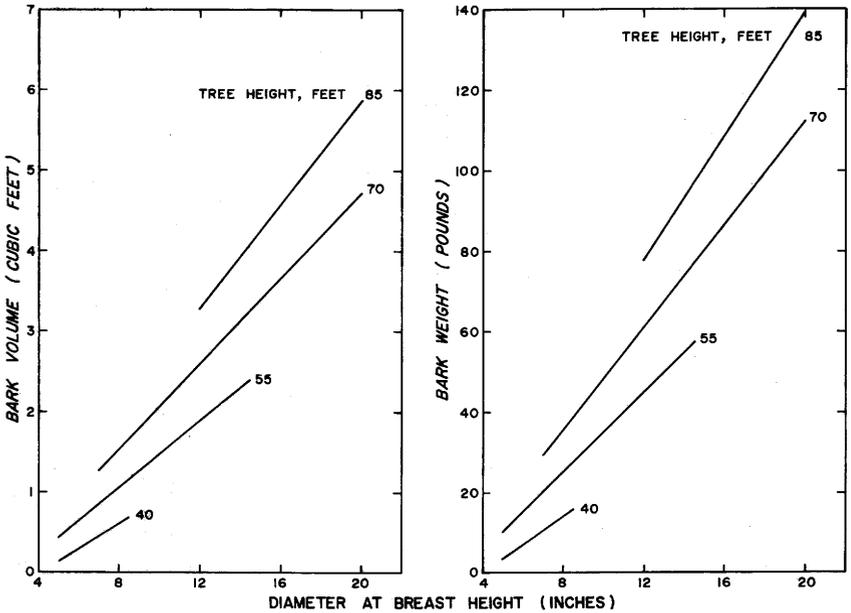


Figure 29-6.—Green volume and oven-dry weight of bark on spruce pine stems to a 4-inch top (outside bark) as related to stem diameter outside bark at breast height and tree height. (Drawing after Manwiller³.)

loblolly pine indicated that bark (oven-dry) comprised 17, 14, and 11 percent of the oven-dry weight of stemwood plus stem-bark (to a 4-inch d.i.b.) in trees 5 inches and less, 6 to 10 inches, and 12 to 20 inches in diameter breast height outside bark.

For longleaf and slash pine saw logs cut in Georgia, Page and Bois (1961) reported that green bark averaged 9.8 and 9.9 percent, respectively, of total log weight, as follows:

D.i.b. at small end	Longleaf	Slash
	--- Percent ---	
5	10.10	-----
6	10.00	11.10
7	9.90	10.65
8	9.80	10.25
9	9.75	9.80
10	9.65	9.40
11	9.60	8.95

According to Cole et al. (1966), the green weight of bark (expressed as a percentage of weight of wood and bark combined) is greater in trees

of high density than low; for the two lower 5-foot bolts cut from 16- to 21-year-old trees of three species, results were as follows:

Pine species	Low-density bolts High-density bolts	
	Percent	
Loblolly.....	6.9	8.6
Longleaf.....	9.8	13.5
Slash.....	10.8	16.6

For slash pine in north Florida, the weight of green stembark (to a 2-inch top) is given by equation 29-19.

Howard (table 13-4) provided data on weight of bark from the merchantable stem (to a 4-inch top, d.o.b.) of 7.7-inch, 22-year-old slash pine cut in central Louisiana. On an ovendry basis, stembark accounted for 12.5 percent of total tree weight, 15.0 percent of weight of above-ground tree parts, and 21.4 percent of the weight of the bark-free merchantable stem.

Bark weight and volume per standard rough cord.—According to Williams and Hopkins (1969, pp. 5, 9), bark comprises about 17 percent of the solid volume including bark and about 11 percent of the gross stacked volume in southern pine cordwood. Chamberlain and Meyer (1950) developed a regression equation for stacked cordwood to predict bark volume (V) as a percent of solid volume including bark in terms of a constant (k) equal to the average ratio of d.i.b. to d.o.b. The equation follows:

$$V = 80(1 - k^2) \tag{29-27}$$

This equation indicates that bark volume percentages are 7.8 and 22.2 for k values of 0.95 and 0.85.

Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 83) state that weight of southern pine bark per standard rough cord is approximately 448 lb. when green and 357 lb. if ovendry. Taras (1956, p. 5) tabulated data for green bark weight per cord and per cubic foot of bark-free solid wood, by species, as follows:

Species	Green bark weight per rough cord of wood	Green bark weight per cu. ft. of solid wood
	Lb.	
Loblolly.....	497	6.2
Longleaf.....	716	9.0
Sand.....	450	5.2
Shortleaf.....	680	8.7
Slash.....	880	12.5

Unpublished data from T. C. Carlson and D. J. Henckel indicated that loblolly pine cut in Arkansas averaged 3.8 lb. of ovendry bark per cubic foot of bark-free, solid, green wood.

Bark weight per M b.f. log scale.—Small shortleaf and loblolly pine saw

logs contain nearly $\frac{1}{2}$ -ton of bark (green) per M b.f. International $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch log scale; large logs of the same species, however, have less than $\frac{1}{4}$ -ton per M b.f. (table 29-57).

King (1952, p. 49) found that green and ovendry weights of bark per M b.f. log scale of southern pine logs cut in east Texas were as follows:

Scaling diameter of log and moisture content	Per M b.f. Doyle-Scribner log scale	Per M b.f. Int'l $\frac{1}{4}$ log scale
----- Lb. -----		
7.6 to 10.5 inches		
Green.....	1,820	940
Ovendry.....	1,240	640
10.6 to 13.5 inches		
Green.....	1,200	880
Ovendry.....	800	600
13.6 to 16.5 inches		
Green.....	960	940
Ovendry.....	660	640
16.6 to 19.5 inches		
Green.....	660	660
Ovendry.....	440	440

The logs in King's study were from 8 to 20 feet in length, but were mostly 14 and 16 feet long.

Bark weight per M b.f. lumber scale.—Sixteen-foot longleaf and slash pine saw logs cut in Georgia yielded about 1 ton of bark for each M b.f. of lumber sawn from 5-inch logs compared to about $\frac{1}{2}$ -ton for 11-inch logs, as follows (Page and Bois 1961):

Log d.i.b. at small end	Longleaf	Slash
<i>Inches</i>	----- Lb. -----	
5	2,010	-----
6	1,630	1,800
7	1,400	1,660
8	1,230	1,530
9	1,120	1,390
10	1,040	1,260
11	990	1,120
Weighted average.....	1,281	1,400

Figure 29-7 relates bark tonnage per M b.f. of lumber scale, to southern pine saw log diameter as observed by Page and Saucier (1958) in Georgia.

Data comparable to that shown in figure 29-7 was published by Applefield (1958). He showed that less than 30 percent of the gross weight of a 6-inch log is converted into green rough lumber; the rest is bark, saw-

dust, and chippable residue; for 15-inch logs, however, nearly 50 percent of the gross weight is converted to green lumber (table 29-58).

King (1952, p. 49) found that green and ovendry weights of bark per M b. f. of green lumber sawn from southern pine logs cut in east Texas were as follows:

Scaling diameter of log	Green bark weight	Ovendry bark weight
<i>Inches</i>	-----	----- <i>Lb.</i> -----
7.6 to 10.5-----	920	620
10.6 to 13.5-----	840	580
13.6 to 16.5-----	820	560
16.6 to 19.5-----	620	420

Bark weight and volume in slabwood.—Slabwood from southern pine mills has a much higher proportion of bark (about 35 percent by volume

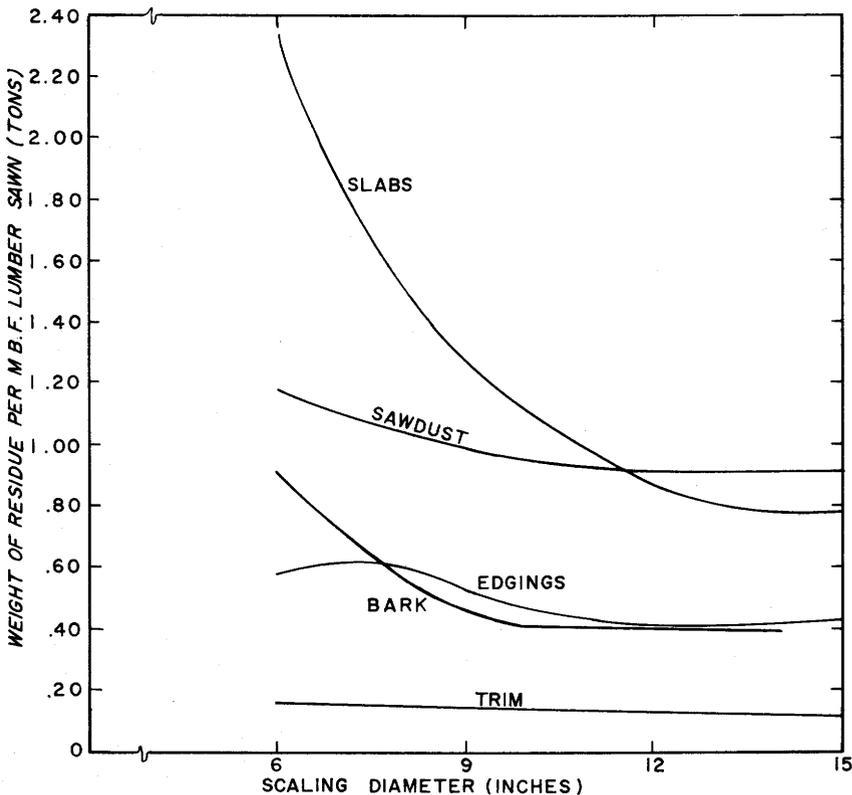


Figure 29-7.—Green weight of slabs, sawdust, edgings, bark, and trimmed board ends produced by Georgia sawmills for each M b.f. of lumber sawn. (Drawing after Page and Saucier 1958.)

and 21 percent by weight) than round pulpwood of the same species (table 29-59).

Density of bark in piles.—In piles, smooth topwood bark has greater density than rough bark from butt cuts. One study of loblolly pine bark (removed by a mechanical barker) showed that 100 lb. of green bark occupied 3.8 cu. ft.; conversely, 1 cu. ft. of green bark weighed 26.3 lb. Bark run through a hog and reduced to smaller particles (of unspecified size) weighed about 20 lb. per cubic foot when moisture content was 39 percent of the green weight (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 83).

Bark from drum and mechanical ring barkers has relatively little wood attached—usually less than 10 percent by weight. Bark from pole shavers (fig. 19-53), however, may contain 50 percent wood by weight.

SLABS AND EDGINGS

While virtually all sawmills in the South now remove bark from logs before sawing them, much of the published yield data on slabs and edgings reflect weights and volumes of slabs and edgings with bark attached. The newest mills equipped with both chipping headrigs and chipping edgers make neither slabs nor edgings, but instead convert their equivalent volumes directly into pulp chips (see sec. 19-6). The information under the following three paragraph headings is applicable only to sawmills with conventional headrigs and edgers, primarily those carrying circular saws.

Slab yield per M b.f. log scale.—One study at a southern pine sawmill (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 74) showed that yield of green bark-free slabs and edgings averaged 1.73 tons per M b.f. of logs (Doyle scale) sawn, virtually all of which could be converted into acceptable pulp chips. Each ton of rough green slabs and edgings (weighed with bark attached) yielded about 1,350 lb. of acceptable pulp chips after bark was removed.

Lehman (1958) reported that tonnage yield of green slabs, edgings, and trim from 1,000 bd. ft. of small logs sawn on a headrig with circular saw was two to five times greater than the tonnage from 12-inch logs, depending on the log scale used, as follows:

Log d.i.b. at small end	Log scale	
	Int'l $\frac{1}{4}$	Doyle
Inches	Tons per M b.f. of logs sawn	
7	2.2	7.2
8	1.8	4.9
9	1.6	3.3
10	1.3	2.3
11	1.1	1.7
12	1.0	1.5

Slab yield per M b.f. lumber scale.—Lehman (1958) also related tonnage of green slabs, edgings, and trim ends to the lumber tailed out of a

mill equipped with a circular saw on the headrig; yields for 7-, 8-, 9-, 10-, 11- and 12-inch logs were 2.4, 2.1, 1.8, 1.6, 1.3, and 1.2 tons respectively per M b.f. of lumber sawn.

Data from Page and Saucier (1958) indicate somewhat higher tonnages; e.g., from figure 29-7, 12-inch logs yielded nearly 1.5 tons of slabs, edgings, and trim per M b.f. of lumber sawn. Sawmill equipment and sawing practice, as well as wood specific gravity and moisture content, strongly affect the tonnage yield of these residues.

Applefield (1960) compared yields of chippable residues under three systems of bark removal, i.e., debarking the whole log, debarking both slabs and edgings after removal from the log, and debarking only the slabs and not the edgings. His data showed that maximum recovery of bark-free wood (and acceptable pulp chips) resulted from debarking the entire log prior to sawing (table 29-60).

Solid wood content of slabs and edgings.—In a study of shortleaf pine residues at mills in the South Carolina Piedmont, Todd and Anderson (1955) found that an average of 1,570 lb. of green wood (728 lb. oven-dry) was contained in a ton of green slabs with bark attached; a ton of green edgings with bark attached averaged 1,674 lb. of green wood (776 lb. oven-dry). These yields did not vary significantly between sawmills, and only slightly with diameter of logs sawed.

Applefield (1956) observed that a standard cord of slabs (bark attached) contained 65 cu. ft. of bark-free wood, whereas a cord of edgings contained only 40 cu. ft. of wood.

Todd (1955) concluded that a standard cord of southern pine slabs averaged 79 cu. ft. of solid wood and bark and about 50 cu. ft. of bark-free wood; slabs from small logs stacked into cords contained up to twice as much wood as cords from large-log slabwood, and cords of slash pine slabs contained less wood than slabs cut from the other three major species (table 29-61).

PULP CHIPS

Yield of acceptable pulp chips per ton of green wood fed into the chipper varies with type of wood, chipper design and operation, and screen design. Data compiled by a southern kraft mill over a period of 3 months showed that about 94.5 percent of the chips received from 19 southern pine sawmills was acceptable, as follows (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 80):

<u>Chip size</u>	<u>Volume</u> <i>Percent of total</i>	<u>Acceptability</u>
Retained on 1-inch screen -----	3.16	Oversize
Through 1-inch screen, on $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch screen -----	10.60	Acceptable
Through $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch screen, on $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch screen -----	28.75	Acceptable
Through $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch screen, on $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch screen -----	55.16	Acceptable
Dust (fines and sawdust) -----	2.20	Undersize

Average bark content of these chips was 0.8 percent of total volume; chip moisture content averaged 51.9 percent of gross weight as received.

Chip yield per cord of wood.—According to Williams and Hopkins (1967, p. 78), a standard rough cord of southern pine wood yields an average of 1.2 tons of air-dry chips. A locally applicable conversion factor can be computed from knowledge of the wood cubic foot content of cordwood, weight per cubic foot of wood at various moisture contents (table 7-1), and screening losses after the wood is chipped. Screening losses should be well under 10 percent of total weight.

Chippable residue per M b.f. (log scale) sawn.—Chippable residue varies with log diameter, length, and sawing practice. An overall average for southern pine sawmills is about 1.6 tons of green chips per M b.f. (Doyle scale) of logs sawn. In a study of east Texas sawmills, Kramer (1957) observed that small logs yielded substantially more chips per board foot log scale than did large logs, as follows:

Scaling diameter	Log scale		
	Doyle	Scribner	Int'l-¼
<i>Inches</i>	----- <i>Lb.</i> -----		
7	---	4.8	4.3
8	9.8	4.3	3.7
9	6.6	3.7	3.1
10	4.6	3.2	2.6
11	3.5	2.8	2.2
12	2.9	2.5	1.9
13	2.5	2.2	1.7
14	2.2	1.9	1.6
15	2.1	1.7	1.5

Row and Guttenberg (1966) studied residual chip yields for loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs from northern Louisiana and southern Arkansas. Chip yield varied with log diameter, length, and position in the tree as expressed by the following two regression equations.

For butt logs:

$$W = 2.12DL - 9.75L \quad (29-28)$$

For upper logs:

$$W = 1.63DL - 4.47L \quad (29-29)$$

where W = weight of green chips in pounds; L = length in feet; D = log d.i.b. at small end.

Tables 29-62 and 29-63 were constructed from these equations to show chip yield per log and per M.b.f. log scale sawn.

Chip yield from plywood mills.—Guttenberg (1967) constructed a series of regression equations to predict the tonnage of green pulp chips from veneer clippings that could be expected from conversion of bolts of various

grades and sizes into plywood; product yields per M.b.f. Doyle log scale for bolts graded 1 and 2 by the USDA Forest Service standard grading system for southern pine logs were as follows:

Bolt diameter	Veneer 3/8-inch basis	Pulp chips	Veneer cores
<i>Inches</i>	<i>M sq. ft.</i>	— — — <i>M lb.</i>	— — —
10	2.61	5.26	3.03
12	2.75	3.48	1.70
14	2.74	2.62	1.09
16	2.64	2.12	.76
18	2.59	1.82	.56
20	2.54	1.62	.43
22	2.46	1.46	.34
24	2.43	1.36	.27

The foregoing data are based on a core diameter of 5.2 inches. The green cores weighed 32 to 64 lb. per cubic foot and averaged about 46 lb. per cubic foot.

In a study of southern pine veneer cores residual from steamed veneer bolts cut in northern Louisiana, Koch (1971) observed that they averaged 0.51 in specific gravity (ovendry weight and green volume basis), and that their moisture content was 75 percent of their ovendry weight.

Weight and volume of chips in piles.—According to Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 78), green chips from southern pine sawmill residue weigh about 24 lb. per cubic foot of gross space occupied; green chips from southern pine plywood clippings pile less compactly and weigh about 20 lb. per cubic foot.

According to Forbes (1961, p. 14.71), a standard rough cord of southern pine pulpwood yields about 232 cu. ft. of pulp chips as piled into a freight car.

SAWDUST

As much as 25 percent of saw log volume may be converted into sawdust if saw kerf is wide and logs are cut into 4/4 lumber; if primary manufacture is done with a chipping headrig, however, and breakdown into 8/4 lumber is accomplished with thin-kerf bandsaws and chipping edgers, as little as 5 percent of the log volume will end up as green sawdust. The data presented in the next few paragraphs describe sawdust yield in mills not equipped with chipping headrigs or chipping edgers.

Sawdust residue per M b.f. (log scale) sawn.—Row et al. (1965) developed a regression equation to express the weight of sawdust produced by sawing loblolly and shortleaf pine logs of various diameters and lengths, as follows:

$$W = 0.068D^2L \quad (29-30)$$

where W = weight of green sawdust, pounds; D = log d.i.b. at small end, inches; and L = log length, feet.

Obviously, on a per log basis, the most sawdust is made from the largest logs (table 29-64); on a per M b.f. basis, however, small logs yield the greatest tonnage of sawdust, as follows:

Log scaling diameter	Weight of green sawdust per M b.f. (Doyle scale) of logs sawn
Inches	Tons
8	2.18
10	1.51
12	1.22
14	1.07
16	.97
18	.90

Values in the foregoing tabulation are computed from equation 29-30. Log length (8 to 16 feet) had virtually no effect on amount of sawdust produced per M b.f. log scale.

King (1952, p. 51) found that green and oven-dry weights of sawdust per M b.f. of southern pine logs sawn in east Texas were as follows:

Scaling diameter of log and moisture content	Per M b.f. Doyle-Scribner log scale	Per M b.f. Int'l-¼ log scale
	----- Tons -----	
7.6 to 10.5 inches		
Green.....	1.62	0.96
Ovendry.....	.80	.47
10.6 to 13.5 inches		
Green.....	1.12	.74
Ovendry.....	.56	.40
13.6 to 16.5 inches		
Green.....	.94	.74
Ovendry.....	.47	.37
16.6 to 19.5 inches		
Green.....	.76	.67
Ovendry.....	.38	.33

These data apply to logs—mostly 14 and 16 feet long—cut in mills with band headsaws; mills with circular headsaws made about 10 percent more sawdust on the smaller logs and about 40 percent more on the larger logs.

Sawdust residue per M b.f. (lumber scale) sawn.—Figure 29-7, based on southern pine logs sawn in Georgia, shows that 1.0 to 1.2 tons of green sawdust were produced per M b.f. of lumber sawn in the Page and Saucier (1958) study.

For southern pine logs cut in east Texas, King (1952, p. 51) observed

that green and dry weights of sawdust per M b.f. of green lumber tally were as follows:

Scaling diameter of log and moisture content	In mills with circular headsaws	In mills with band headsaws
----- Tons -----		
7.6 to 10.5 inches		
Green.....	0.98	0.90
Ovendry.....	.48	.45
10.6 to 13.5 inches		
Green.....	.92	.76
Ovendry.....	.45	.38
13.6 to 16.5 inches		
Green.....	1.00	.71
Ovendry.....	.49	.35
16.6 to 19.5 inches		
Green.....	.91	.64
Ovendry.....	.45	.32

Sawdust weight per unit volume.—Sawdust weight per unit volume varies according to the particle size, moisture content, and degree of compaction. Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 81) reported that one manufacturer observed the following weights for southern pine sawdust at 8-percent moisture content:

Sawdust size	Weight per gross cubic foot
	<i>Lb.</i>
Through ¼-inch screen unsifted	16
Through 10-mesh screen	15
Through 20-mesh screen	18

Bois (1968) related the weight of shortleaf pine sawdust, cut with an inserted tooth saw (fig. 19-76) having a 9/32-inch kerf, to moisture content and degree of compaction. In his tabulation (following), **light** compaction is the condition that might arise from filling a railcar or truck from an overhead conveyor; **shaken** compaction stimulates the densification caused by vibration of a car or truck in transit; and **packed** compaction represents the highest degree of packing possible.

TRIM

Trim ends of green lumber, according to figure 29-7, amount to 0.1 to 0.2 ton per M b.f. of southern pine lumber sawn. According to Carpenter and Schroeder (1968) about 6 percent of total lumber footage is lost as cull or trim when converting green rough 4/4 boards to kiln-dry planed boards; for 8/4 boards, they measured a board foot loss of about 3 percent.

Moisture content	Degree of compaction		
	Light	Shaken	Packed
<i>Percent</i>	<i>---</i>	<i>Lb./cu. ft.</i>	<i>---</i>
0	9.3	12.3	15.5
5	9.8	12.9	15.8
10	10.2	13.5	16.3
15	10.7	14.1	16.8
20	11.2	14.8	17.3
25	11.6	15.4	17.8
30	12.1	16.0	18.3
50	13.9	18.4	20.5
75	16.3	21.5	23.8
100	18.6	24.6	27.2
125	20.9	27.7	31.9
140	22.3	29.5	34.7

SHAVINGS

In the opening paragraphs of section 29-3, it was noted that one southern pine sawmill operator observed that 12.8 percent of gross sawlog volume is converted to planer shavings.

Obviously the tonnage of planer shavings made is closely correlated with sawing accuracy, rough lumber size, planed lumber dimensions, and wood specific gravity and moisture content. It is quite evident that a mill making a high proportion of knotty pine panelling with deep patterns and long tongues will make more shavings per M b.f. of lumber planed than a mill specializing in kiln-dried S4S 2 by 4's.

From table 7-1 and from shrinkage data given in section 20-4, it is possible to compute the weight of shavings produced by planing. If it is assumed that the mill is manufacturing 8-foot 2 by 4's sawn green 1.9 inches thick, 4.0 inches wide, and 96 inches long, and that these studs are dried to 10-percent moisture content and planed to 1.5- by 3.5-inch dimension, then about 715 lb. of shavings will be produced per M b.f. of lumber planed. The foregoing computation assumes that the lumber has a specific gravity of 0.50 on a green volume, oven-dry weight basis.

If lumber is sawn oversize, or milled with deep patterns, however, it is not unusual for a ton of shavings to be produced from each M b.f. of lumber planed at 10-percent moisture content.

TABLE 29-1.—*Volume of solid wood in standard rough cords of 4-foot longleaf and loblolly pine bolts as related to average midlength diameter and character of the bolts*
(Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 5¹)

Character of bolts	Midlength d.o.b., inches					
	Less than 6		6 to 12		Greater than 12	
	LL ²	Lob ³	LL	Lob	LL	Lob
	----- <i>Cu. ft.</i> -----					
Straight						
Smooth.....	84	76	89	80	94	84
Slightly rough.....	81	74	87	78	92	83
Slightly rough and knotty.....	79	71	85 ⁴	76 ⁴	90	81
Not Straight						
Slightly crooked and rough.....	75	67	83	74	87	78
Very crooked.....	71	64	80	71	84	76
Crooked, rough and knotty.....	66	58	74	66	78	70
Tops and branches.....	63	56	—	—	—	—

¹ Data adapted from USDA Forest Service (1935). Original data, based on spruce, were reduced by Williams and Hopkins for the southern pine species, which have less uniform bolt characteristics.

² Longleaf pine.

³ Loblolly pine.

⁴ Working averages for longleaf and loblolly pines.

TABLE 29-2.—*Number of bolts, solid wood volume, bark volume, and weight per standard rough cord of longleaf pine 4-foot pulpwood as related to bolt diameter*
(Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 7)¹

Average bolt diameter (inches) ²	Bolts	Solid wood	Bark	Average green weight ³
	<i>Number</i>	----- <i>Cu. ft.</i> -----		
5.....	128.0	56.2	23.1	4,837
6.....	97.0	63.2	23.1	5,264
7.....	64.0	67.2	22.0	5,441
8.....	51.2	69.8	21.2	5,551
9.....	41.3	70.9	20.7	5,588
10.....	33.7	73.9	20.7	5,771
11.....	28.5	74.2	20.3	5,765
12.....	24.1	75.3	19.5	5,783
13.....	20.6	77.0	19.6	5,893
14.....	17.8	78.2	20.0	5,990
15.....	15.6	80.0	20.0	6,100
16.....	13.7	83.2	20.5	6,326

¹ Based on measurements of 133 pine stems, scaled at one pulpmill in the Southeast.

² D.i.b. at midlength.

³ Based on a green weight of 61 lb./cu. ft. of solid wood and bark.

TABLE 29-3.—*Number of pulpwood bolts¹ of various lengths and diameters to make a standard rough cord (Hawes 1940)*

Bolt diameter ² (inches)	Bolt length in feet				
	4	5	5.25	5.66	6
	----- <i>Number</i> -----				
5.....	152	122	116	108	102
6.....	109	87	84	78	73
7.....	82	66	62	58	55
8.....	64	51	49	45	43
9.....	51	41	39	36	34
10.....	42	33	32	30	28
11.....	35	28	27	25	23
12.....	30	24	23	21	20

¹ Bolts of better than average straightness and surface smoothness.

² D.i.b. at midlength.

TABLE 29-4.—*Number of veneer cores per nominal cord¹ (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 9)*

Core diameter (inches)	Core length in inches	
	102 ²	54 ³
	----- <i>Number</i> -----	
3.5.....	191	402
4.0.....	148	312
4.5.....	117	245
5.0.....	93	196
5.5.....	78	163
6.0.....	64	135
6.5.....	55	116

¹ Calculations based on volumes of true cylinders.

² This cord measures 48 by 48 by 102 inches (136 cu. ft. gross).

³ This cord measures 48 by 96 by 54 inches (144 cu. ft. gross).

TABLE 29-5.—Number of southern pine trees per standard rough cord (Forest Farmers Association 1966, p. 143¹)

D.b.h. (inches)	Tree height in number of 5-foot 3-inch bolts ²											
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	
	----- <i>Trees per cord</i> -----											
5.....	69.4	49.3	38.3									
6.....	48.8	36.1	28.7	23.8								
7.....	36.9	27.9	22.4	18.7	16.1	14.1						
8.....		22.2	18.0	15.1	13.0	11.4	10.2	9.16	8.34			
9.....		18.2	14.7	12.4	10.7	9.40	8.38	7.56	6.89	6.33	5.85	
10.....			12.3	10.4	8.95	7.87	7.02	6.34	5.77	5.30	4.90	
11.....			10.5	8.82	7.60	6.68	5.96	5.38	4.90	4.50	4.16	
12.....			9.03	7.58	6.53	5.74	5.12	4.61	4.21	3.86	3.57	
13.....			7.86	6.59	5.67	4.98	4.44	4.00	3.64	3.35	3.09	
14.....			6.90	5.78	4.97	4.36	3.88	3.50	3.19	2.92	2.70	
15.....							3.85	3.43	3.09	2.81	2.58	2.38
16.....							3.42	3.04	2.74	2.49	2.29	2.11

¹ Derived from Forbes (1961, p. 2.10).

² To 4-inch merchantable top (outside bark).

TABLE 29-6.—Number of 5-foot bolts per tree¹ in loblolly pines of various diameters and heights (MacKinney and Chaiken 1946)

D.b.h. (inches)	Total tree height in feet									
	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	
	----- <i>Number of bolts</i> -----									
5.....	1.5	2.1	2.9	3.5	4.2	4.9	5.8			
6.....	2.0	2.9	3.9	4.6	5.6	6.6	7.5			
7.....	2.2	3.4	4.5	5.6	6.9	8.5	9.4	10.3		
8.....	2.3	3.8	5.0	6.4	7.7	9.6	10.7	11.6		
9.....	2.3	4.1	5.3	6.9	8.3	10.4	11.6	12.3		
10.....		4.3	5.5	7.2	8.8	10.9	12.3	12.8		
11.....		4.4	5.7	7.4	9.2	11.3	12.6	13.2	14.4	
12.....		4.5	5.9	7.6	9.5	11.6	12.9	13.5	14.7	
13.....		4.5	6.0	7.6	9.7	11.8	13.1	13.8	15.0	
14.....		4.5	6.1	7.7	9.8	11.9	13.3	14.0	15.3	
15.....			6.2	7.7	9.9	12.0	13.4	14.2	15.5	
16.....			6.2	7.8	9.9	12.0	13.5	14.4	15.6	
17.....			6.3	7.8	10.0	12.1	13.6	14.5	15.6	
18.....				7.8	10.0	12.1	13.7	14.6	15.7	
19.....				7.9	10.0	12.2	13.8	14.6	15.7	
20.....				7.9	10.1	12.2	13.8	14.7	15.7	

¹ Average number of bolts that can be cut above an 0.7-foot stump to a merchantable top of 4.0 inches outside bark.

TABLE 29-7.—*Merchantable volume per southern pine tree in standard rough cords* (Burns 1965¹)

Form class ² and d.b.h. (inches)	Total tree height in feet							
	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
----- Cords -----								
65-69								
6-----	0.029	0.035	0.040	0.045	0.052			
8-----	.055	.063	.074	.084	.094	0.104		
10-----		.097	.115	.132	.148	.165	0.179	
12-----		.136	.160	.182	.207	.226	.250	0.272
14-----			.221	.250	.280	.309	.343	.372
16-----			.277	.313	.350	.391	.433	.469
75-79								
6-----	.036	.045	.052	.058	.068			
8-----	.069	.081	.096	.109	.122	.136		
10-----		.124	.148	.170	.192	.213	.232	
12-----		.174	.207	.236	.269	.295	.328	.357
14-----			.282	.321	.360	.399	.443	.482
16-----			.357	.407	.455	.511	.566	.627
85-89								
6-----	.044	.055	.064	.072	.084			
8-----	.087	.101	.120	.136	.153	.169		
10-----		.154	.185	.213	.240	.268	.292	
12-----		.216	.258	.295	.336	.368	.410	.447
14-----			.351	.401	.451	.501	.557	.607
16-----			.444	.506	.568	.638	.708	.770

¹ Compiled from Minor (1950).² See equation 29-1.TABLE 29-8.—*Volume and weight of loblolly pine trees and number of trees required per 168-cu. ft. unit* (Wahlenberg 1960, p. 501)

Dimensions of average pine tree			Weight per tree ³	Trees per unit ⁴	Volume of wood plus bark per unit ⁴
D.b.h. (inches)	Height ¹	Volume ²			
	<i>Feet</i>	<i>Cu. ft.</i>	<i>Lb.</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Cu. ft.</i>
4-----	30	0.6	40	162	97
	38	1.2	79	83	99
6-----	45	2.5	164	41	101
	51	4.3	281	24	103
8-----	56	6.5	422	16	105
	62	9.4	607	11	107
10-----	67	12.8	824	8	108
	71	16.7	1,074	7	110
12-----	75	21.1	1,355	5	111
	78	26.1	1,673	4	112
14-----	82	31.8	2,035	4	113

¹ Merchantable height to 4-inch top (outside bark).² Wood only, to merchantable top.³ Includes bark.⁴ 168-cu. ft. unit of 5¼-foot rough wood.

TABLE 29-9.—*Standard rough cords of topwood¹ volume remaining per tree after removal of saw logs (Bennett 1953)*

Species and d.b.h. (inches)	Number of 16-foot logs removed					
	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½
	----- Cords -----					
Slash pine						
9.....	0.062	0.064	0.066			
10.....	.050	.052	.054	0.054		
11.....	.041	.043	.044	.045	0.045	
12.....	.034	.036	.037	.038	.038	0.038
13.....	.029	.031	.032	.032	.032	.033
14.....	.025	.027	.027	.028	.028	.028
15.....	.022	.023	.024	.024	.024	.024
16.....	.019	.020	.021	.021	.021	.021
17.....	.017	.018	.019	.019	.019	.019
18.....	.015	.016	.017	.017	.017	.017
Longleaf pine						
9.....	.054	.046				
10.....	.046	.039	.035	.033		
11.....	.039	.033	.029	.027	.025	
12.....	.032	.027	.024	.023	.022	.021
13.....	.026	.023	.021	.019	.018	.018
14.....	.023	.020	.018	.017	.016	.015
15.....	.020	.017	.015	.014	.014	.013
16.....	.017	.015	.014	.013	.012	.012
17.....	.015	.014	.012	.012	.011	.011
18.....	.014	.012	.011	.010	.010	.009

¹ Volume to merchantable top of 4 inches outside bark after removal of specified number of saw logs.

TABLE 29-10.—*Merchantable volume per acre of 9- to 16-year-old slash pine plantations (Goggans and Schultz 1958)*

Trees per acre	Total height of tallest trees in feet					
	25	30	35	40	45	50
	----- Cords -----					
400.....	0.30	5.39	10.49	15.59	20.69	25.78
500.....	1.62	6.71	11.81	16.91	22.01	27.11
600.....	2.94	8.04	13.13	18.23	23.33	28.43
700.....	4.26	9.36	14.46	19.55	24.65	29.75
800.....	5.58	10.68	15.78	20.87	25.97	31.07
900.....	6.90	12.00	17.10	22.20	27.29	32.39
1,000.....	8.22	13.32	18.42	23.52	28.62	33.71

TABLE 29-11.—*Doyle log scale, contents of logs in board feet*

Scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet					
	6	8	10	12	14	16
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----					
6.....	2	2	3	3	4	4
7.....	3	5	6	7	8	9
8.....	6	8	10	12	14	16
9.....	9	13	16	19	22	25
10.....	14	18	23	27	32	36
11.....	18	25	31	37	43	49
12.....	24	32	40	48	56	64
13.....	30	41	51	61	71	81
14.....	38	50	63	75	88	100
15.....	45	61	76	91	106	121
16.....	54	72	90	108	126	144
17.....	63	85	106	127	148	169
18.....	74	98	123	147	172	196
19.....	84	113	141	169	197	225
20.....	96	128	160	192	224	256
21.....	108	145	181	217	253	289
22.....	122	162	203	243	284	324
23.....	135	181	226	271	316	361
24.....	150	200	250	300	350	400
25.....	165	221	276	331	386	441
26.....	182	242	303	363	424	484
27.....	198	265	331	397	463	529
28.....	216	288	360	432	504	576
29.....	234	313	391	469	547	625
30.....	254	338	423	507	592	676

TABLE 29-12.—*Volume of 16-foot logs to nearest board foot by the Doyle log scale (Mesavage and Girard 1956)*

Scaling diameter (inches)	Scaling diameter in tenths of inches									
	.0	.1	.2	.3	.4	.5	.6	.7	.8	.9
	<i>Bd. ft.</i>									
5.....	1	1	1	2	2	2	3	3	3	4
6.....	4	4	5	5	6	6	7	7	8	8
7.....	9	10	10	11	12	12	13	14	14	15
8.....	16	17	18	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
9.....	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	34	35
10.....	36	37	38	40	41	42	44	45	46	48
11.....	49	50	52	53	55	56	58	59	61	62
12.....	64	66	67	69	71	72	74	76	77	79
13.....	81	83	85	86	88	90	92	94	96	98
14.....	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114	117	119
15.....	121	123	125	128	130	132	135	137	139	142
16.....	144	146	149	151	154	156	159	161	164	166
17.....	169	172	174	177	180	182	185	188	190	193
18.....	196	199	202	204	207	210	213	216	219	222
19.....	225	228	231	234	237	240	243	246	250	253
20.....	256	259	262	266	269	272	276	279	282	286
21.....	289	292	296	299	303	306	310	313	317	320
22.....	324	328	331	335	339	342	346	350	353	357
23.....	361	365	369	372	376	380	384	388	392	396
24.....	400	404	408	412	416	420	424	428	433	437
25.....	441	445	449	454	458	462	467	471	475	480
26.....	484	488	493	497	502	506	511	515	520	524
27.....	529	534	538	543	548	552	557	562	566	571
28.....	576	581	586	590	595	600	605	610	615	620
29.....	625	630	635	640	645	650	655	660	666	671
30.....	676	681	686	692	697	702	708	713	718	724
31.....	729	734	740	745	751	756	762	767	773	778
32.....	784	790	795	801	807	812	818	824	829	835
33.....	841	847	853	858	864	870	876	882	888	894
34.....	900	906	912	918	924	930	936	942	949	955

TABLE 29-13.—*Scribner Decimal C log scale, contents of logs in board feet*

Scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet					
	6	8	10	12	14	16
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----					
6.....	5	5	10	10	10	20
7.....	5	10	10	20	20	30
8.....	10	10	20	20	20	30
9.....	10	20	30	30	30	40
10.....	20	30	30	30	40	60
11.....	20	30	40	40	50	70
12.....	30	40	50	60	70	80
13.....	40	50	60	70	80	100
14.....	40	60	70	90	100	110
15.....	50	70	90	110	120	140
16.....	60	80	100	120	140	160
17.....	70	90	120	140	160	180
18.....	80	110	130	160	190	210
19.....	90	120	150	180	210	240
20.....	110	140	170	210	240	280
21.....	120	150	190	230	270	300
22.....	130	170	210	250	290	330
23.....	140	190	230	280	330	380
24.....	150	210	250	300	350	400
25.....	170	230	290	340	400	460
26.....	190	250	310	370	440	500
27.....	210	270	340	410	480	550
28.....	220	290	360	440	510	580
29.....	230	310	380	460	530	610
30.....	250	330	410	490	570	660

TABLE 29-14.—*Volume of 16-foot logs to the nearest board foot by the Scribner log scale*¹ (Mesavage and Girard 1956)

Scaling diameter (inches)	Scaling diameter in tenths of inches									
	.0	.1	.2	.3	.4	.5	.6	.7	.8	.9
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----									
6.....	12	13	14	15	16	16	17	18	19	20
7.....	21	22	23	24	24	25	26	27	28	29
8.....	30	31	32	33	34	36	37	38	39	41
9.....	42	43	45	46	47	48	50	51	52	54
10.....	55	56	58	60	61	63	64	66	67	69
11.....	70	72	74	75	77	78	80	81	83	84
12.....	86	88	90	91	93	95	97	99	101	102
13.....	104	106	108	110	111	113	115	117	119	121
14.....	123	125	127	129	131	133	135	137	140	142
15.....	144	146	148	150	153	155	157	159	161	164
16.....	166	168	171	173	175	177	180	182	185	187
17.....	189	191	194	196	199	202	204	207	210	213
18.....	216	218	221	224	227	229	231	234	237	240
19.....	243	245	248	251	254	257	260	263	266	269
20.....	272	275	278	281	284	287	290	293	296	299
21.....	302	305	308	311	314	317	320	323	327	330
22.....	334	337	340	344	348	351	354	358	361	365
23.....	368	372	375	379	382	386	390	394	397	400
24.....	403	406	410	414	418	422	426	429	432	436
25.....	440	444	448	452	456	460	464	468	472	475
26.....	478	482	486	490	494	498	502	506	510	514
27.....	518	522	526	530	534	538	542	546	550	554
28.....	559	563	567	571	575	579	583	587	592	597
29.....	602	606	611	615	620	624	629	633	638	642
30.....	647	651	656	660	665	669	674	678	683	688
31.....	693	698	703	708	712	717	722	726	731	736
32.....	741	746	751	756	761	766	770	775	780	785
33.....	790	795	800	805	810	815	820	825	830	835
34.....	841	846	851	856	862	867	872	877	883	888
35.....	894	900	905	910	915	921	926	931	937	942

¹ Computed from equation 29-5.

TABLE 29-15.—Deductions for defect¹ from Scribner Decimal C log scale (USDA Forest Service 1965)

Defect length (feet)	Deduction in board feet																			
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190	200
	----- Cross-sectional area of defect in square inches -----																			
2.....	38	113	188	263	338	413	488	563	638											
4.....	19	57	94	132	169	207	244	282	319	357	394	432	469	507	544	582	619	657		
6.....	13	38		88	113	138	163	188	213	238	263	288	313	338	363	388	413	438	463	488
8.....	10	29	47	66	85	104	122	141	160	179	197	216	235	254	272	291	310	329	347	366
10.....	8	23	38	53	68	83	98	113	128	143	158	173	188	203	218	233	248	263	278	293
12.....	7	19	32	44	57	69	82	94	107	119	132	144	157	169	182	194	207	219	232	244
14.....	6	17	27	38	49	59	70	81	92	102	113	124	134	145	156	167	177	188	199	209
16.....	5	15	24	33	43	52	61	71	80	90	99	108	118	127	136	146	155	165	174	183
18.....	5	13	21	30	38	46	55	63	71	80	88	96	105	113	121	130	138	146	155	163
20.....	4	12	19	27	34	42	49	57	64	72	79	87	94	102	109	117	124	132	139	147

¹ Example: If the end of the defect measures 9 by 11 inches (99 sq. in.), and the length is 12 feet, read horizontally from defect length of 12 feet to 99 sq. in. or next lower number found (in this case 94); read up to find the deduction of 80 bd. ft. at column head.

TABLE 29-16.—*International 1/4-inch log scale, contents of logs in board feet*

Scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet					
	6	8	10	12	14	16
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----					
6.....	5	10	10	15	15	20
7.....	10	10	15	20	25	30
8.....	10	15	20	25	35	40
9.....	15	20	30	35	45	50
10.....	20	30	35	45	55	65
11.....	25	35	45	55	70	80
12.....	30	45	55	70	85	95
13.....	40	55	70	85	100	115
14.....	45	65	80	100	115	135
15.....	55	75	95	115	135	160
16.....	60	85	110	130	155	180
17.....	70	95	125	150	180	205
18.....	80	110	140	170	200	230
19.....	90	125	155	190	225	260
20.....	100	135	175	210	250	290
21.....	115	155	195	235	280	320
22.....	125	170	215	260	305	355
23.....	140	185	235	285	335	390
24.....	150	205	255	310	370	425
25.....	165	220	280	340	400	460
26.....	180	240	305	370	435	500
27.....	195	260	330	400	470	540
28.....	210	280	355	430	510	585
29.....	225	305	385	465	545	630
30.....	245	325	410	495	585	675

TABLE 29-17.—*Volumes of 8- and 16-foot logs to the nearest board foot by the International 1/4-inch log scale*

Scaling length (feet) and diameter (inches)	Scaling diameter in tenths of inches									
	.0	.1	.2	.3	.4	.5	.6	.7	.8	.9
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----									
8 foot ¹										
6-----	8	8	9	9	9	10	10	10	11	11
7-----	12	12	13	13	13	14	14	15	16	16
8-----	17	17	18	18	19	19	20	20	21	22
9-----	22	23	23	24	25	25	26	27	27	28
10-----	29	29	30	31	31	31	32	33	34	35
11-----	36	37	38	38	39	40	41	42	42	43
12-----	44	45	46	47	47	48	49	50	51	52
13-----	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62
14-----	63	66	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72
15-----	73	74	75	76	77	79	80	81	82	83
16-----	84	85	87	88	88	90	91	93	94	95
17-----	96	98	99	100	101	103	104	105	107	108
18-----	109	110	112	113	115	116	117	119	120	121
19-----	123	124	126	127	129	130	131	133	134	136
20-----	137	139	140	142	143	145	146	148	149	151
21-----	152	154	156	157	159	160	162	164	165	167
22-----	169	170	172	174	175	179	179	180	182	184
23-----	185	187	189	191	192	194	196	198	200	201
24-----	203	205	207	208	210	212	214	216	217	220
25-----	221	224	225	227	229	231	233	235	237	239
26-----	241	243	245	247	249	251	253	255	257	259
27-----	262	264	265	266	269	271	273	275	277	279
28-----	282	284	286	288	290	292	294	296	299	301
29-----	303	305	307	310	312	314	316	319	321	323
30-----	325	329	330	332	334	337	339	342	343	346

See footnotes at end of table.

TABLE 29-17.—*Volumes of 8- and 16-foot logs to the nearest board foot by the International 1/4-inch log scale—Continued*

Scaling length (feet) and diameter (inches)	Scaling diameter in tenths of inches									
	.0	.1	.2	.3	.4	.5	.6	.7	.8	.9
16 foot ²										
6.....	19	20	21	22	23	23	24	25	26	27
7.....	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	38
8.....	39	40	41	42	43	45	46	47	48	50
9.....	51	52	54	55	56	58	59	60	62	63
10.....	65	66	68	69	71	72	74	75	77	78
11.....	80	82	83	85	87	88	90	92	93	95
12.....	97	99	100	102	104	106	108	110	112	114
13.....	115	117	119	121	123	125	127	129	131	133
14.....	136	138	140	142	144	146	148	151	153	155
15.....	157	160	162	164	166	169	171	173	176	178
16.....	181	183	185	188	190	193	195	198	200	203
17.....	205	208	211	213	216	219	221	224	227	229
18.....	232	235	237	240	243	246	249	251	254	257
19.....	260	263	266	269	272	275	278	281	284	287
20.....	290	293	296	299	302	305	308	311	315	318
21.....	321	324	327	331	334	337	341	344	347	351
22.....	354	357	361	364	367	371	374	378	381	385
23.....	388	392	395	399	403	406	410	413	417	421
24.....	424	428	432	435	439	443	447	451	454	458
25.....	462	466	470	474	478	481	485	489	493	497
26.....	501	505	509	513	517	521	526	530	534	538
27.....	542	546	550	555	559	563	567	572	576	580
28.....	584	589	593	598	602	606	611	615	620	624
29.....	628	633	637	642	647	651	656	660	665	669
30.....	674	679	683	688	693	697	702	707	712	716
31.....	721	726	731	736	741	745	750	755	760	765
32.....	770	775	780	785	790	795	800	805	810	815
33.....	820	826	831	836	841	846	851	857	862	867
34.....	872	878	883	888	894	899	904	910	915	921
35.....	926	931	937	942	948	953	959	964	970	976

¹ Computed from equation 29-9.² Computed from equation 29-8.

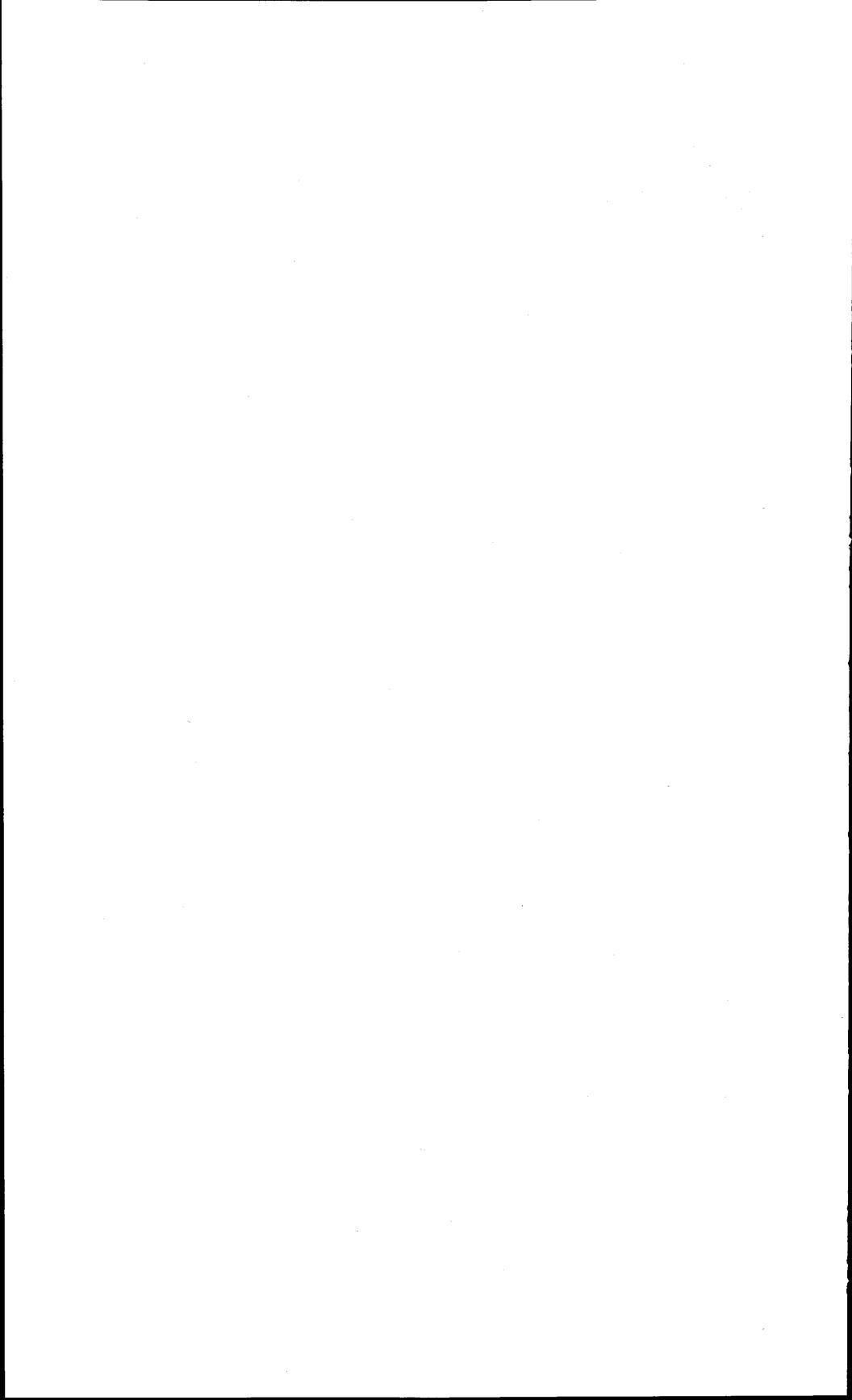


TABLE 29-18.—Average upper-log taper in southern pine trees containing two, three, four, five, or six 16-foot logs (Mesavage and Girard 1956)

D.b.h. (inches)	Position of each log within the tree															
	2 nd ¹	2nd	3rd	2nd	3rd	4th	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	2nd	3rd	4th	5th	6th	
							<i>Inches</i>									
10.....	1.4	1.2	1.4													
12.....	1.6	1.3	1.5	1.1	1.4	1.9										
14.....	1.7	1.4	1.6	1.2	1.5	2.0										
16.....	1.9	1.5	1.7	1.2	1.6	2.1										
18.....	2.0	1.6	1.8	1.3	1.7	2.2										
20.....	2.1	1.7	1.9	1.4	1.8	2.4	1.1	1.6	2.2	2.9						
22.....	2.2	1.8	2.0	1.4	2.0	2.5	1.1	1.7	2.3	2.9						
24.....	2.3	1.8	2.2	1.5	2.2	2.6	1.1	1.8	2.4	3.1						
26.....	2.4	1.9	2.3	1.5	2.3	2.7	1.1	1.9	2.5	3.2						
28.....	2.5	1.9	2.5	1.6	2.4	2.8	1.2	1.9	2.6	3.3	0.9	1.4	2.1	3.2	4.4	
30.....	2.6	2.0	2.6	1.7	2.5	3.0	1.2	2.0	2.7	3.5	.9	1.4	2.1	3.2	4.5	
32.....	2.7	2.0	2.7	1.7	2.5	3.1	1.2	2.1	2.9	3.7	1.0	1.4	2.1	3.2	4.6	
34.....	2.8	2.1	2.7	1.8	2.5	3.3	1.3	2.1	3.0	3.8	1.0	1.4	2.2	3.3	4.7	
36.....	2.8	2.1	2.8	1.8	2.6	3.4	1.3	2.2	3.0	3.9	1.1	1.5	2.2	3.3	4.9	
38.....	2.9	2.1	2.8	1.9	2.6	3.4	1.3	2.2	3.1	3.9	1.1	1.5	2.3	3.4	5.1	
40.....	2.9	2.2	2.8	1.9	2.7	3.4	1.4	2.3	3.2	4.0	1.2	1.5	2.4	3.5	5.3	

¹ In a two-log tree; similarly, the other columns show values for three-, four-, five-, and six-log trees.

TABLE 29-19.—Gross volume of southern pine trees in form class¹ 78, Doyle log scale (Mesavage and Girard 1956)

D.b.h. (inches)	Merchantable height in number of 16-foot logs										
	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4	4½	5	5½	6
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----										
10.....	14	17	20	21	22	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
11.....	22	27	32	35	38	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
12.....	29	36	43	48	53	54	56	-----	-----	-----	-----
13.....	38	48	59	66	73	76	80	-----	-----	-----	-----
14.....	48	62	75	84	93	98	103	-----	-----	-----	-----
15.....	60	78	96	108	121	128	136	-----	-----	-----	-----
16.....	72	94	116	132	149	160	170	-----	-----	-----	-----
17.....	86	113	140	161	182	196	209	-----	-----	-----	-----
18.....	100	132	164	190	215	232	248	-----	-----	-----	-----
19.....	118	156	195	225	256	276	297	-----	-----	-----	-----
20.....	135	180	225	261	297	322	346	364	383	-----	-----
21.....	154	207	260	302	344	374	404	428	452	-----	-----
22.....	174	234	295	344	392	427	462	492	521	-----	-----
23.....	195	264	332	388	444	483	522	558	594	-----	-----
24.....	216	293	370	433	496	539	582	625	668	-----	-----
25.....	241	328	414	486	558	609	660	709	758	-----	-----
26.....	266	362	459	539	619	678	737	793	849	-----	-----

27-----	292	398	505	594	684	749	814	877	940	-----	-----
28-----	317	434	551	651	750	820	890	961	1,032	1,096	1,161
29-----	346	475	604	714	824	902	980	1,061	1,142	1,218	1,294
30-----	376	517	658	778	898	984	1,069	1,160	1,251	1,339	1,427
31-----	408	562	717	850	983	1,080	1,176	1,273	1,370	1,470	1,570
32-----	441	608	776	922	1,068	1,176	1,283	1,386	1,488	1,600	1,712
33-----	474	654	835	994	1,152	1,268	1,385	1,497	1,609	1,734	1,858
34-----	506	700	894	1,064	1,235	1,361	1,487	1,608	1,730	1,866	2,003
35-----	544	754	964	1,149	1,334	1,472	1,610	1,743	1,876	2,020	2,163
36-----	581	808	1,035	1,234	1,434	1,583	1,732	1,878	2,023	2,173	2,323
37-----	618	860	1,102	1,318	1,534	1,694	1,854	2,013	2,172	2,332	2,492
38-----	655	912	1,170	1,402	1,635	1,805	1,975	2,148	2,322	2,491	2,660
39-----	698	974	1,250	1,498	1,746	1,932	2,118	2,298	2,479	2,662	2,844
40-----	740	1,035	1,330	1,594	1,858	2,059	2,260	2,448	2,636	2,832	3,027

¹ Defined by equation 29-1.

TABLE 29-20.—*Gross volume of southern pine trees in form class¹ 78 Scribner log scale (Mesavage and Girard 1956)*

D.b.h. (inches)	Merchantable height in number of 16-foot logs										
	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4	4½	5	5½	6
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----										
10.....	28	36	44	48	52						
11.....	38	49	60	67	74						
12.....	47	61	75	85	95	100	106				
13.....	58	76	94	107	120	128	136				
14.....	69	92	114	130	146	156	166				
15.....	82	109	136	157	178	192	206				
16.....	95	127	159	185	211	229	247				
17.....	109	146	184	215	246	268	289				
18.....	123	166	209	244	280	306	331				
19.....	140	190	240	281	322	352	382				
20.....	157	214	270	317	364	398	432	459	486		
21.....	176	240	304	358	411	450	490	523	556		
22.....	194	266	338	398	458	504	549	588	626		
23.....	214	294	374	441	508	558	607	652	698		
24.....	234	322	409	484	558	611	665	718	770		
25.....	258	355	452	534	617	678	740	799	858		

26.....	281	388	494	585	676	745	814	880	945	-----	-----
27.....	304	420	536	636	736	811	886	959	1,032	-----	-----
28.....	327	452	578	686	795	877	959	1,040	1,120	1,190	1,261
29.....	354	491	628	746	864	953	1,042	1,132	1,222	1,306	1,389
30.....	382	530	678	806	933	1,028	1,124	1,224	1,325	1,421	1,517
31.....	411	571	731	871	1,011	1,117	1,223	1,328	1,434	1,541	1,648
32.....	440	612	784	936	1,089	1,206	1,322	1,432	1,543	1,661	1,779
33.....	469	654	838	1,001	1,164	1,280	1,414	1,534	1,654	1,783	1,912
34.....	498	695	892	1,066	1,239	1,373	1,507	1,636	1,766	1,906	2,046
35.....	530	742	954	1,141	1,328	1,473	1,618	1,757	1,896	2,044	2,192
36.....	563	789	1,015	1,216	1,416	1,572	1,728	1,877	2,026	2,182	2,338
37.....	596	836	1,075	1,290	1,506	1,670	1,835	1,998	2,160	2,324	2,488
38.....	629	882	1,135	1,366	1,596	1,769	1,942	2,118	2,295	2,466	2,637
39.....	666	935	1,204	1,449	1,694	1,881	2,068	2,251	2,434	2,616	2,799
40.....	703	988	1,274	1,532	1,791	1,993	2,195	2,384	2,574	2,768	2,961

¹ Defined by equation 29-1.

TABLE 29-21.—Gross volume of southern pine trees in form class¹ 78 International ¼-inch log scale (Mesavage and Girard 1956)

D.b.h. (inches)	Merchantable height in number of 16-foot logs										
	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4	4½	5	5½	6
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----										
10.....	36	48	59	66	73	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
11.....	46	61	76	86	96	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
12.....	56	74	92	106	120	128	137	-----	-----	-----	-----
13.....	67	90	112	130	147	158	168	-----	-----	-----	-----
14.....	78	105	132	153	174	187	200	-----	-----	-----	-----
15.....	92	124	156	182	208	225	242	-----	-----	-----	-----
16.....	106	143	180	210	241	263	285	-----	-----	-----	-----
17.....	121	164	206	242	278	304	330	-----	-----	-----	-----
18.....	136	184	233	274	314	344	374	-----	-----	-----	-----
19.....	154	209	264	311	358	392	427	-----	-----	-----	-----
20.....	171	234	296	348	401	440	480	511	542	-----	-----
21.....	191	262	332	391	450	496	542	579	616	-----	-----
22.....	211	290	368	434	500	552	603	647	691	-----	-----
23.....	231	318	404	478	552	608	663	714	766	-----	-----
24.....	251	346	441	523	605	664	723	782	840	-----	-----

25-----	275	380	484	574	665	732	800	865	930	-----	-----
26-----	299	414	528	626	725	801	877	949	1,021	-----	-----
27-----	323	448	572	680	788	870	952	1,032	1,111	-----	-----
28-----	347	482	616	733	850	938	1,027	1,114	1,201	1,280	1,358
29-----	375	521	667	794	920	1,016	1,112	1,210	1,308	1,398	1,488
30-----	403	560	718	854	991	1,094	1,198	1,306	1,415	1,517	1,619
31-----	432	602	772	921	1,070	1,184	1,299	1,412	1,526	1,640	1,754
32-----	462	644	826	988	1,149	1,274	1,400	1,518	1,637	1,762	1,888
33-----	492	686	880	1,053	1,226	1,360	1,495	1,622	1,750	1,888	2,026
34-----	521	728	934	1,119	1,304	1,447	1,590	1,727	1,864	2,014	2,163
35-----	555	776	998	1,196	1,394	1,548	1,702	1,851	2,000	2,156	2,312
36-----	589	826	1,063	1,274	1,485	1,650	1,814	1,974	2,135	2,298	2,461
37-----	622	873	1,124	1,351	1,578	1,752	1,926	2,099	2,272	2,444	2,616
38-----	656	921	1,186	1,428	1,670	1,854	2,038	2,224	2,410	2,590	2,771
39-----	694	976	1,258	1,514	1,769	1,968	2,166	2,359	2,552	2,744	2,937
40-----	731	1,030	1,329	1,598	1,868	2,081	2,294	2,494	2,693	2,898	3,103

¹ Defined by equation 29-1.

TABLE 29-22.—Gross volume in southern pine trees in form class¹ 80 for use with aerial photographs, International ¼-inch log scale² (Minor 1953b)

Crown diameter (feet)	Total visible height in feet						
	50	60	70	80	90	100	110
	----- <i>Bd. ft.</i> -----						
10.....	64	77	90	103	115		
12.....	80	103	120	128	146	161	
14.....	101	122	140	161	182	203	223
16.....		144	166	190	215	239	263
18.....		170	198	227	256	285	313
20.....		198	231	264	297	330	363
22.....		231	270	308	348	386	424
24.....			311	355	400	445	490
26.....			344	394	443	493	542
28.....			386	441	497	552	607
30.....			429	491	552	613	675

¹ Defined by equation 29-1.

² For rough estimates of volume in all-aged, or low-density even-aged stands of saw logs of all southern pine species except longleaf.

TABLE 29-23.—*Bark-free cubic foot volume of southern pine saw logs*¹ (Row and Guttenberg 1966)

Scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet														
	4	8	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	48	52	56	60
	<i>Cu. ft.</i>														
6.....	0.85	1.85	2.99	4.30	5.79	7.56	9.33	11.40	13.70	16.22	18.98	21.99	25.26	28.81	32.64
7.....	1.15	2.49	3.94	5.61	7.48	9.56	11.85	14.37	17.13	20.14	23.42	26.96	30.80	34.92	39.35
8.....	1.48	3.16	5.02	7.10	9.39	11.91	14.67	17.68	20.96	24.51	28.34	32.46	36.89	41.64	46.71
9.....	1.87	3.94	6.23	8.76	11.52	14.53	17.81	21.36	24.30	29.31	33.74	38.48	43.56	48.97	54.73
10.....	2.29	4.81	7.58	10.59	13.86	17.41	21.24	25.37	29.80	34.54	39.62	45.03	50.79	56.91	63.40
11.....	2.76	5.77	9.05	12.60	16.43	20.55	24.98	29.73	34.80	40.21	45.98	52.10	58.59	65.46	72.73
12.....	3.28	6.82	10.65	14.78	19.21	23.95	29.03	34.44	40.20	46.35	52.80	59.69	66.96	74.62	82.71
13.....	3.83	7.96	12.39	17.13	22.20	27.62	33.38	39.50	45.99	52.87	60.14	67.80	75.89	84.40	93.35
14.....	4.43	9.18	14.25	19.66	25.42	31.54	38.03	44.91	52.18	59.85	67.93	76.45	85.39	94.78	104.64
15.....	5.07	10.49	16.25	22.37	29.86	35.73	43.00	50.66	58.76	67.27	76.21	85.61	95.46	105.78	116.58
16.....	5.76	11.88	18.38	25.25	32.52	40.42	48.27	56.78	65.73	75.12	84.97	95.29	106.10	117.38	129.18
17.....	6.49	13.37	20.63	28.30	36.39	44.90	53.84	63.24	73.09	83.41	94.21	105.50	117.30	129.60	142.43
18.....	7.27	14.94	23.02	31.53	40.48	49.87	59.72	70.04	80.84	92.13	103.93	116.24	127.07	142.43	156.34
19.....	8.08	16.60	25.54	34.93	44.78	55.11	65.92	77.20	88.99	101.30	114.13	127.49	141.41	155.87	170.90
20.....	8.95	18.34	28.19	38.51	49.31	60.60	72.39	84.70	97.54	110.90	124.81	139.87	154.31	169.92	186.12
21.....	9.85	20.17	30.97	42.26	54.06	66.37	79.20	92.56	106.47	120.94	135.97	151.58	167.78	184.58	201.99
22.....	10.80	22.09	33.88	46.19	59.02	72.38	86.29	100.75	115.79	131.41	147.60	164.41	181.82	199.85	218.52
23.....	11.79	24.10	36.93	50.29	64.20	78.67	93.70	109.31	125.51	142.32	159.72	177.76	196.42	215.73	235.70
24.....	12.83	26.19	40.10	54.57	69.60	83.21	101.41	118.21	135.62	153.66	172.32	191.63	211.60	232.22	253.53
25.....	13.91	28.38	43.41	59.02	75.22	92.02	109.43	127.46	146.13	165.44	185.40	206.03	227.34	249.33	272.02
26.....	15.03	30.64	46.84	63.64	81.05	99.09	117.75	137.06	156.99	177.66	198.96	220.95	243.65	267.02	291.18
27.....	16.20	33.00	50.41	68.44	87.11	106.42	126.38	147.01	168.32	190.31	213.00	236.40	260.52	285.37	310.96
28.....	17.41	35.44	54.11	73.42	93.38	114.01	135.32	157.31	180.00	203.40	227.52	252.37	277.96	304.31	331.42
29.....	18.66	37.97	57.94	78.57	99.87	121.86	144.50	167.95	192.07	216.93	242.52	268.86	295.97	323.85	352.52
30.....	19.96	40.59	61.90	83.89	106.58	129.98	154.10	178.95	204.54	230.89	257.99	285.88	314.55	344.01	374.28

¹ Based on equation 29-10.

TABLE 29-24.—*Gross bark-free cubic foot volume¹, form class² 78 (Mesavage 1947)*

D.b.h. (inches)	Length of merchantable stem in feet												
	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	48	52	56	60
	----- <i>Cu. ft.</i> -----												
5.....	1.3	1.7	2.0	2.3	2.6	2.9	3.2	3.5	3.8	4.1	4.4	4.7	5.0
6.....	1.8	2.4	2.8	3.2	3.6	3.9	4.3	4.7	5.1	5.5	5.9	6.2	6.6
7.....	2.4	3.1	3.6	4.1	4.6	5.1	5.6	6.1	6.6	7.1	7.6	8.1	8.6
8.....	3.0	3.9	4.5	5.1	5.7	6.3	7.0	7.6	8.2	8.8	9.4	10.0	10.6
9.....	3.8	4.9	5.6	6.4	7.1	7.8	8.6	9.3	10.0	10.8	11.5	12.2	13.0
10.....	4.6	6.0	6.8	7.7	8.5	9.4	10.2	11.0	11.9	12.7	13.6	14.4	15.2

D.b.h. (inches)	Number of 16-foot logs											
	1	1½	2	2½	3	3½	4	4½	5	5½	6	
	----- <i>Cu. ft.</i> -----											
10.....	6.0	8.2	10.4	12.0	13.6							
11.....	7.4	10.1	12.8	14.8	16.9							
12.....	8.7	12.0	15.2	17.7	20.2	22.0	23.8					
13.....	10.2	14.0	17.9	20.8	23.8	26.0	28.2					
14.....	11.7	16.2	20.6	24.0	27.5	30.0	32.6					
15.....	13.6	18.7	23.8	27.9	32.0	35.2	38.4					
16.....	15.4	21.2	27.1	31.8	36.6	40.4	44.1					
17.....	17.4	24.0	30.6	36.0	41.4	45.7	50.0					
18.....	19.4	26.8	34.2	40.2	46.3	51.2	56.0					
19.....	21.7	30.0	38.4	45.2	52.0	57.5	63.0					
20.....	24.0	33.3	42.6	50.2	57.8	63.9	70.0	75.0	80.1			

TABLE 29-24.—*Gross bark-free cubic foot volume*¹, *form class*² 78 (Mesavage 1947) (continued)

21-----	26.8	37.1	47.4	55.9	64.4	71.3	78.2	84.0	89.9		
22-----	29.6	41.0	52.3	61.6	71.0	78.8	86.5	93.1	99.7		
23-----	32.4	44.8	57.3	67.6	78.0	86.3	94.6	102.2	109.7		
24-----	35.3	48.8	62.3	73.6	84.9	93.8	102.7	111.2	119.7		
25-----	38.6	53.4	68.1	80.4	92.8	102.8	112.8	122.1	131.4		
26-----	41.9	57.9	73.9	87.3	100.7	111.8	122.8	133.0	143.2		
27-----	45.2	62.5	79.8	94.4	108.9	120.8	132.6	143.8	155.0		
28-----	48.6	67.1	85.6	101.4	117.1	129.8	142.4	154.6	166.7	177.8	188.8
29-----	52.7	72.6	92.6	109.6	126.6	140.2	153.9	167.2	180.6	193.2	205.7
30-----	56.8	78.2	99.6	117.8	136.1	150.8	165.4	180.0	194.6	208.6	222.6
31-----	61.2	84.1	107.0	126.8	146.5	162.5	178.5	194.0	209.4	224.7	240.0
32-----	65.5	90.0	114.5	135.7	156.9	174.2	191.6	207.8	224.1	240.8	257.4
33-----	70.0	96.0	122.0	144.6	167.2	185.7	204.2	221.6	239.0	257.1	275.2
34-----	74.4	102.0	129.6	153.6	177.5	197.2	216.9	235.4	253.9	273.4	293.0
35-----	79.4	108.8	138.2	163.8	189.4	210.5	231.6	251.4	271.3	291.8	312.2

¹ In merchantable stem to variable top diameter, but generally not less than 6 inches outside bark.

² Defined by equation 29-1.

TABLE 29-25.—*Merchantable bark-free cubic foot volume of southern pine trees based on form class and total tree height (Burns 1965¹)*

Form class ² and d.b.h. (inches)	Total tree height							
	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
	----- Cu. ft. -----							
65-69								
6-----	2.1	2.5	2.9	3.2	3.7			
8-----	4.1	4.7	5.6	6.3	7.1	7.8		
10-----		7.5	8.9	10.2	11.5	12.7	13.8	
12-----		10.8	12.7	14.5	16.4	17.9	19.9	21.6
14-----			17.8	20.2	22.6	25.0	27.7	30.1
16-----			22.7	25.7	28.7	32.1	35.5	38.5
70-74								
6-----	2.3	2.8	3.3	3.7	4.3			
8-----	4.7	5.5	6.5	7.4	8.2	9.1		
10-----		8.6	10.2	11.7	13.1	14.6	15.9	
12-----		12.2	14.5	16.5	18.8	20.6	22.8	24.8
14-----			20.3	23.1	25.9	28.7	31.8	34.6
16-----			26.0	29.5	33.1	37.1	41.0	44.6
75-79								
6-----	2.6	3.2	3.8	4.2	4.9			
8-----	5.2	6.0	7.2	8.2	9.2	10.2		
10-----		9.6	11.5	13.2	14.8	16.5	18.0	
12-----		13.8	16.4	18.7	21.4	23.4	26.0	28.4
14-----			22.8	25.9	29.1	32.2	35.8	38.9
16-----			29.3	33.3	37.3	41.9	46.4	50.4
80-84								
6-----	2.8	3.5	4.1	4.6	5.3			
8-----	5.8	6.8	8.1	9.2	10.3	11.4		
10-----		10.8	12.9	14.8	16.8	18.6	20.3	
12-----		15.2	18.2	20.7	23.6	25.9	28.8	31.4
14-----			25.6	29.3	32.9	36.5	40.6	44.2
16-----			32.7	37.3	41.8	46.9	52.0	56.6
85-89								
6-----	3.2	4.0	4.6	5.2	6.0			
8-----	6.5	7.6	9.0	10.2	11.5	12.7		
10-----		11.9	14.3	16.5	18.6	20.7	22.6	
12-----		17.2	20.5	23.4	26.7	29.3	32.6	35.5
14-----			28.4	32.4	36.4	40.5	45.0	49.0
16-----			36.4	41.5	46.6	52.3	58.0	63.1

¹ Compiled from Minor's (1950) form class tables.² Defined by equation 29-1.

TABLE 29-26.—*Bark-free cubic foot volume of merchantable stem of loblolly pine trees*¹ (MacKinney and Chaiken 1946)

D.b.h. (inches)	Total tree height in feet								
	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
	----- Cu. ft. -----								
5.....	0.46	0.80	1.28	1.77	2.36	3.01	3.59		
6.....	.74	1.32	2.08	2.96	3.76	4.55	5.37		
7.....	1.07	2.06	3.17	4.22	5.29	6.37	7.48	8.63	
8.....	1.57	2.96	4.30	5.66	7.06	8.48	9.94	11.40	
9.....	2.20	3.91	5.56	7.30	9.07	10.86	12.71	14.53	
10.....		4.92	6.99	9.12	11.29	13.51	15.73	17.96	
11.....		6.07	8.56	11.13	13.76	16.42	19.07	21.80	24.54
12.....		7.32	10.41	13.33	16.42	19.55	22.70	25.94	29.25
13.....		8.66	12.15	15.71	19.28	22.98	26.70	30.47	34.20
14.....		10.12	14.16	18.21	22.39	26.65	30.95	35.23	39.55
15.....			16.28	20.93	25.74	30.60	35.42	40.86	45.87
16.....			18.51	23.88	29.32	34.71	40.72	46.36	52.96
17.....			20.93	26.97	33.00	39.18	45.87	53.10	59.62
18.....				30.21	36.90	44.30	52.18	59.38	66.66
19.....				33.58	41.56	49.43	58.01	65.99	74.09
20.....				37.13	45.96	55.39	64.13	72.97	81.91

¹ From 0.7-foot stump height to top diameter of 4 inches outside bark. Trees selected from 32 stands in the Coastal Plain of the Carolinas.

TABLE 29-27.—*Bark-free cubic foot volume related to crown diameter and height of southern pine trees*¹ (Minor 1953b)

Crown diameter (feet)	Total visible height in feet						
	50	60	70	80	90	100	110
	----- Cu. ft. -----						
10.....	10.9	13.0	15.2	17.4	19.6		
12.....	13.3	17.0	18.5	21.1	24.1	26.7	
14.....	16.3	19.7	22.7	26.0	29.3	32.7	36.0
16.....		22.6	26.2	30.0	33.8	37.6	41.5
18.....		26.2	30.5	34.9	39.5	43.8	48.1
20.....		30.0	35.0	40.0	45.0	50.0	55.0
22.....		34.5	40.2	46.0	51.9	57.6	63.3
24.....			45.7	52.3	58.9	65.4	72.0
26.....			50.2	57.4	64.7	71.9	79.2
28.....			55.9	63.9	72.0	80.0	88.0
30.....			61.8	70.6	79.4	88.2	97.1

¹ For use with aerial photographs; data applies to trees of form class 80. The table is not applicable to longleaf pine.

TABLE 29-28.—*Bark-free cubic foot volume of small-diameter loblolly and shortleaf pine trees in Tennessee (Potts 1952)*

D.b.h. (inches)	Tree height in feet						
	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
----- Cu. ft. -----							
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 2 INCHES INSIDE BARK							
3.....	0.2	0.4	0.5	-----	-----	-----	-----
4.....	.5	.7	1.0	1.4	-----	-----	-----
5.....	1.0	1.2	1.6	2.3	-----	-----	-----
6.....	-----	1.9	2.4	3.4	4.3	5.5	-----
7.....	-----	3.0	3.7	4.7	5.9	7.6	-----
8.....	-----	3.8	4.9	6.2	7.9	10.1	12.1
9.....	-----	4.7	6.1	8.4	10.3	13.1	15.8
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 3 INCHES INSIDE BARK							
4.....	.4	.4	.6	.8	-----	-----	-----
5.....	.8	1.0	1.3	1.8	-----	-----	-----
6.....	-----	1.6	2.1	3.1	4.0	5.3	-----
7.....	-----	2.7	3.4	4.5	5.8	7.4	-----
8.....	-----	3.6	4.6	6.2	7.8	9.9	11.6
9.....	-----	4.6	6.0	8.0	10.1	12.6	15.2
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 4 INCHES INSIDE BARK							
5.....	.7	.6	.5	.8	-----	-----	-----
6.....	-----	1.4	1.5	2.3	3.1	5.1	-----
7.....	-----	2.6	3.0	3.9	5.2	7.1	-----
8.....	-----	3.6	4.3	5.7	7.3	9.3	11.1
9.....	-----	4.6	5.8	7.7	9.6	12.1	14.6

TABLE 29-29.—Cubic foot volume, including bark, of southern pine trees¹ (after Hawes 1940²)

Form and form point ³ (percent)	D.b.h.	Merchantable length of stem in feet													
		12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44	48	52	56	60	64
		----- Inches ----- Cu. ft. -----													
Above															
average form															
85-----	6	1.7	2.3	2.8	3.4	4.0	4.5	5.1							
83-----	8		3.8	4.8	5.8	6.7	7.7	8.7	9.6	10.6	11.6				
81-----	10			7.2	8.6	10.0	11.4	12.9	14.3	15.7	17.2	18.6	20.0	21.5	
79-----	12				11.8	13.7	15.7	17.6	19.6	21.6	23.5	25.5	27.4	29.4	31.4
77-----	14					17.7	20.3	22.8	25.3	27.9	30.4	32.9	35.5	38.0	40.5
75-----	16						25.1	28.3	31.4	34.5	37.7	40.8	43.9	47.1	50.2
Average form															
83-----	6	1.6	2.2	2.7	3.2	3.8	4.3	4.8							
81-----	8		3.6	4.6	5.5	6.4	7.3	8.3	9.1	10.1	11.0				
79-----	10			6.8	8.2	9.5	10.8	12.3	13.6	14.9	16.3	17.7	19.0	20.4	
77-----	12				11.2	13.0	14.9	16.7	18.6	20.5	22.3	24.2	26.0	27.9	29.8
75-----	14					16.8	19.3	21.7	24.0	26.5	28.9	31.3	33.7	36.1	38.5
73-----	16						23.8	26.9	29.8	32.8	35.8	38.8	41.7	44.7	47.7
Below															
average form															
81-----	6	1.6	2.1	2.6	3.1	3.7	4.2	4.7							
79-----	8		3.5	4.3	5.2	6.0	6.9	7.8	8.6	9.5	10.4				
77-----	10			6.5	7.8	9.0	10.3	11.6	12.9	14.2	15.5	16.8	18.1	19.4	
75-----	12				10.6	12.4	14.1	15.9	17.7	19.4	21.2	23.0	24.8	26.5	28.3
73-----	14					15.9	18.1	20.4	22.7	24.9	27.2	29.5	31.8	34.0	36.3
71-----	16						22.7	25.5	28.4	31.2	34.0	36.9	39.7	42.5	45.4

¹ To a top diameter of 3.8 inches outside bark on the smaller trees and 6.0 inches on the largest.

² Adapted by Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 39).

³ Form point = (100) $\frac{\text{D.o.b. at midpoint of merchantable length}}{\text{D.b.h.}}$

TABLE 29-30.—Cubic volume, including bark, of southern pine trees¹ (USDA Forest Service 1969²)

D.b.h. (inches)	Merchantable height in feet								
	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90
	----- Cu. ft. -----								
5.....	.7								
6.....	1.1	2.1	3.2						
7.....	1.4	2.9	4.3						
8.....	1.9	3.7	5.6	7.5					
9.....	2.4	4.7	7.1	9.5	11.4				
10.....	2.9	5.8	8.8	11.7	14.6				
11.....	3.5	7.1	10.6	14.1	17.7	21.2	24.7		
12.....	4.2	8.4	12.6	16.8	21.0	25.2	29.4		
13.....	4.9	9.9	14.8	19.7	24.6	29.6	34.5	39.5	
14.....	5.7	11.5	17.2	22.9	28.6	34.3	40.1	45.8	51.5
15.....	6.6	13.1	19.7	26.3	32.8	39.4	46.0	52.6	59.1
16.....	7.5	15.0	22.4	29.9	37.4	44.8	52.3	59.8	67.3
17.....	8.4	16.9	25.3	33.8	42.2	50.6	59.1	67.5	75.9
18.....	9.5	18.9	28.4	37.8	47.3	56.8	66.2	75.7	85.1
19.....	10.5	21.1	31.6	42.2	52.7	63.2	73.8	84.3	94.8
20.....	11.7	23.4	35.0	46.7	58.4	70.1	81.7	93.4	105.1
21.....	12.9	23.8	38.6	51.5	64.4	77.2	90.1	103.0	115.9
22.....	14.1	28.3	42.4	56.5	70.6	84.8	98.9	113.0	127.2
23.....	15.5	30.9	46.3	61.8	77.2	92.7	108.1	123.5	139.0
24.....	16.8	33.6	50.4	67.3	84.1	101.0	117.7	134.5	151.3
25.....	18.3	36.5	54.7	73.0	91.2	109.3	127.7	146.0	164.2
26.....	19.7	39.5	59.2	78.9	98.7	118.4	138.1	157.9	177.6
27.....	21.3	42.6	63.8	85.1	106.4	127.7	149.0	170.2	191.5
28.....	22.9	45.8	68.7	91.5	114.4	137.3	160.2	183.1	206.0
29.....	24.6	49.1	73.7	98.2	122.7	147.3	171.8	196.4	220.9
30.....	26.3	52.5	78.8	105.1	131.4	157.6	183.9	210.2	236.4
31.....	28.1	56.1	84.2	112.2	140.3	168.3	196.3	224.4	252.5
32.....	29.9	59.8	89.7	119.6	149.7	179.3	209.2	239.1	269.0
33.....	31.8	63.6	95.4	127.2	158.9	190.7	222.5	254.3	286.1
34.....	33.7	67.5	101.2	135.0	168.7	202.5	236.2	269.9	303.7

¹ To a top diameter, outside bark, of 4 inches.² Data from James H. Bamping, School of Forestry, University of Georgia, Athens, Ga.

TABLE 29-31.—Cubic volume, including bark, of plantation-grown loblolly pine stems¹ (Romancier 1961)

D.b.h. (inches)	Total tree height in feet								
	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
----- Cu. ft. -----									
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 3.6 INCHES INSIDE BARK									
5.....	0.9	1.4	1.8	2.2	2.6	3.0	-----	-----	-----
6.....	2.1	2.6	3.1	3.6	4.1	4.6	5.0	-----	-----
7.....	-----	4.1	4.6	5.2	5.8	6.4	6.9	7.5	-----
8.....	-----	-----	6.4	7.1	7.8	8.4	9.1	9.8	10.4
9.....	-----	-----	-----	9.3	10.0	10.8	11.6	12.3	13.1
10.....	-----	-----	-----	-----	12.6	13.4	14.3	15.2	16.1
11.....	-----	-----	-----	-----	15.3	16.4	17.4	18.4	19.4
12.....	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	19.5	20.7	21.9	23.0
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 2.0 INCHES INSIDE BARK									
5.....	1.8	2.2	2.6	3.0	3.4	3.8	-----	-----	-----
6.....	2.8	3.3	3.8	4.3	4.8	5.3	5.8	-----	-----
7.....	-----	4.6	5.2	5.8	6.4	7.0	7.6	8.2	-----
8.....	-----	-----	6.8	7.6	8.3	9.0	9.7	10.5	11.2
9.....	-----	-----	-----	9.6	10.4	11.3	12.1	13.0	13.9
10.....	-----	-----	-----	-----	12.8	13.8	14.8	15.8	16.9
11.....	-----	-----	-----	-----	15.4	16.6	17.8	19.0	20.1
12.....	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	19.6	21.0	22.4	23.8

¹ Data based on 116 trees cut in the lower Piedmont of middle Georgia.

TABLE 29-32.—Cubic foot bark-free volume, in merchantable top wood remaining per tree after removal of saw logs from southern pines (Mesavage 1947)

Top form index ¹ and scaling diameter of top log (inches)	Length of merchantable top in feet										
	4	8	12	16	20	24	28	32	36	40	44
	----- Cu. ft. -----										
Index 85											
5----	0.4	0.8	1.2	1.5	1.9	2.3	2.7	3.1	3.5	3.8	4.2
6----	.6	1.1	1.7	2.3	2.8	3.4	4.0	4.5	5.1	5.7	6.2
7----	.8	1.6	2.4	3.1	3.9	4.7	5.5	6.5	7.1	7.9	8.6
8----	1.0	2.0	3.0	4.0	5.0	6.1	7.1	8.1	9.1	10.1	11.1
9----	1.3	2.5	3.8	5.0	6.5	7.6	8.8	10.1	11.3	12.6	13.9
10----	1.6	3.2	4.7	6.3	7.9	9.5	11.0	12.6	14.2	15.8	17.3
11----	1.9	3.9	5.8	7.7	9.6	11.6	13.5	15.4	17.3	19.3	21.2
12----	2.3	4.5	6.8	9.1	11.4	13.6	15.9	18.2	20.4	22.7	25.0
13----	2.6	5.3	7.9	10.6	13.2	15.8	18.5	21.1	23.8	26.4	29.0
14----	3.1	6.2	9.3	12.4	15.4	18.5	21.6	24.7	27.8	30.9	34.0
15----	3.6	7.1	10.7	14.3	17.9	21.4	25.0	28.6	32.2	35.7	39.3
16----	4.0	8.1	12.1	16.1	20.2	24.2	28.2	32.3	36.3	40.4	44.4
17----	4.5	9.0	13.6	18.1	22.6	27.1	31.7	36.2	40.7	45.2	49.8
18----	5.1	10.2	15.3	20.4	25.5	30.6	35.8	40.9	46.0	51.1	56.2
19----	5.7	11.5	17.2	22.9	28.6	34.4	40.1	45.8	51.5	57.3	63.0
20----	6.3	12.6	18.9	25.2	31.5	37.8	44.1	50.4	56.7	63.1	69.4
Index 75											
8----	0.8	1.6	2.4	3.1	3.9	4.7	5.5	6.3	7.1	7.9	8.6
9----	1.0	2.0	3.0	4.0	5.0	6.1	7.1	8.1	9.1	10.1	11.1
10----	1.2	2.5	3.7	4.9	6.1	7.4	8.6	9.8	11.0	12.3	13.5
11----	1.5	3.0	4.5	6.0	7.5	9.0	10.5	12.0	13.5	15.0	16.5
12----	1.8	3.5	5.3	7.1	8.8	10.6	12.4	14.1	15.9	17.7	19.4
13----	2.1	4.2	6.3	8.4	10.5	12.6	14.7	16.8	18.9	21.0	23.0
14----	2.4	4.8	7.2	9.6	12.0	14.4	16.8	19.2	21.6	24.1	26.5
15----	2.8	5.6	8.4	11.1	13.9	16.7	19.5	22.3	25.1	27.9	26.3
16----	3.1	6.3	9.4	12.6	15.7	18.8	22.0	25.1	28.3	31.4	34.6
17----	3.6	7.1	10.7	14.3	17.9	21.4	25.0	28.6	32.2	35.7	39.3
18----	4.0	8.0	11.9	15.9	19.9	23.9	27.8	31.8	35.8	39.8	43.7
19----	4.5	8.9	13.4	17.8	22.3	26.8	31.2	35.7	40.2	44.6	49.1
20----	4.9	9.8	14.7	19.6	24.5	29.5	34.4	39.3	44.2	49.1	54.0
Index 67											
11----	1.2	2.4	3.6	4.8	6.0	7.2	8.4	9.6	10.8	12.0	13.2
12----	1.4	2.8	4.2	5.6	7.0	8.4	9.8	11.2	12.6	14.0	15.4
13----	1.7	3.3	5.0	6.6	8.3	9.9	11.6	13.2	14.9	16.5	18.2
14----	1.9	3.9	5.8	7.7	9.6	11.6	13.5	15.4	17.4	19.3	21.2
15----	2.2	4.4	6.5	8.7	10.9	13.1	15.3	17.4	19.6	21.8	24.0
16----	2.5	5.0	7.5	10.0	12.5	15.0	17.5	20.0	22.5	25.0	27.5
17----	2.8	5.7	8.5	11.3	14.2	17.0	19.9	22.7	25.5	28.4	31.2
18----	3.2	6.4	9.6	12.8	16.0	19.2	22.4	25.6	28.8	32.0	35.2
19----	3.5	7.0	10.6	14.1	17.6	21.1	24.6	28.2	31.7	35.2	38.7
20----	3.9	7.8	11.7	15.7	19.6	23.5	27.4	31.3	35.2	39.2	45.1

¹ Top form index = (100) $\frac{\text{D.i.b. at midpoint of usable top}}{\text{Scaling diameter of the top saw log.}}$

TABLE 29-33.—*Weight per log for southern pine*

Pine species and scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet			Pine species and scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet		
	12	14	16		12	14	16
		<i>Lb.</i>					
Loblolly and shortleaf¹				Slash¹			
5.....	120	145	175	5.....	150	175	195
6.....	180	215	250	6.....	210	245	280
7.....	240	290	340	7.....	285	335	375
8.....	320	380	445	8.....	375	435	490
9.....	400	480	560	9.....	480	550	620
10.....	500	600	700	10.....	580	680	765
11.....	600	720	840	11.....	700	820	925
12.....	715	860	1,000	12.....	835	955	1,100
13.....	840	1,005	1,175	13.....	980	1,145	1,285
14.....	970	1,165	1,360	14.....	1,130	1,350	1,490
15.....	1,110	1,340	1,560	15.....	1,295	1,515	1,705
16.....	1,260	1,520	1,770	16.....	1,465	1,715	1,940
Longleaf¹				Southern pine²			
5.....	140	160	180	7½.....	261-300	313-358	365-418
6.....	205	235	260	8.....	301-340	359-405	419-474
7.....	280	320	360	8½.....	341-380	406-455	475-531
8.....	360	415	465	9.....	381-450	456-540	532-630
9.....	460	520	595	10.....	451-550	541-660	631-770
10.....	560	645	730	11.....	551-658	661-790	771-920
11.....	680	780	880	12.....	659-778	791-933	921-1,088
12.....	805	925	1,045	13.....	779-905	934-1,085	1,089-1,268
13.....	945	1,095	1,225	14.....	906-1,040	1,089,1,253	1,269-1,460
14.....	1,090	1,260	1,420	15.....	1,041-1,185	1,254-1,430	1,461-1,665
15.....	1,250	1,450	1,625	16.....	1,186-1,335	1,431-1,610	1,666-1875
16.....	1,420	1,645	1,845	17.....	1,336-1,565	1,611-1,800	1,876-2,085

¹ Data on logs cut in Georgia (Page and Bois 1961).² Data from Barton (1966) as adapted from Martin (1965).

TABLE 29-34.—*Merchantable green weight, including bark, of slash pine stems from trees planted on old fields in the Carolina Sandhills*
(McGee 1959)

Top diameter outside bark and d.b.h. (inches)		Total tree height in feet											
		20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70	75
		Lb.											
4 inches	5.....	--	32	45	64	82	100	119	137	155			
	6.....	42	67	94	120	146	173	199	226	252	279		
	7.....		115	151	187	223	259	295	331	367	403	439	
	8.....			217	264	311	358	405	452	499	546	593	640
	9.....				351	411	470	530	589	649	708	768	827
	10.....					522	596	669	743	816	890	963	1,037
	11.....					646	734	824	913	1,001	1,090	1,179	1,268
	12.....				781	887	992	1,098	1,204	1,310	1,416	1,521	
3 inches	5.....	49	67	84	102	120	138	156	174	192			
	6.....	81	106	131	158	183	209	235	261	287	313		
	7.....		153	188	223	258	293	328	364	399	434	469	
	8.....			252	298	344	390	436	482	528	574	620	666
	9.....				384	443	502	560	619	678	737	795	854
	10.....					552	624	696	767	839	911	983	1,054
	11.....					672	758	845	932	1,019	1,106	1,193	1,279
	12.....				804	907	1,012	1,116	1,220	1,325	1,429	1,533	
2 inches	5.....	71	89	107	124	142	160	177	195	213			
	6.....	102	128	154	179	205	231	256	281	307	333		
	7.....		174	209	244	279	314	349	384	418	453	488	
	8.....			273	319	364	410	455	501	547	592	638	683
	9.....				403	461	519	576	634	692	749	807	865
	10.....					569	640	712	783	854	925	997	1,068
	11.....					689	775	861	947	1,034	1,120	1,206	1,292
	12.....				820	922	1,025	1,125	1,230	1,332	1,435	1,537	

TABLE 29-35.—*Merchantable green weight, including bark, of loblolly and shortleaf pine stems¹ (Seigel and Row 1960)*

D.b.h. (inches)	One-log tree Form class 66	Two-log tree Form class 77	Three-log tree Form class 79	Four-log tree Form class 81
----- Tons -----				
10.....	0.16	0.35	0.48	--
12.....	.21	.48	.69	--
14.....	.28	.65	.93	1.15
16.....	--	.83	1.19	1.54
18.....	--	1.05	1.51	1.95
20.....	--	1.30	1.78	2.38

¹Trees were cut in north Louisiana and south Arkansas. Minimum top diameter was about 6 inches inside bark.

TABLE 29-36.—*Green weight, including bark, of plantation-grown loblolly pine stems¹ (Romancier 1961)*

D.b.h. (inches)	Total tree height in feet								
	30	35	40	45	50	55	60	65	70
----- Lb. -----									
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 3.6 INCHES INSIDE BARK									
5.....	34	56	79	101	124	146	-----	-----	-----
6.....	77	109	141	172	204	236	268	-----	-----
7.....	---	171	214	257	299	342	385	428	-----
8.....	---	---	298	354	409	465	520	576	631
9.....	---	---	---	464	534	604	674	744	814
10.....	---	---	---	---	673	759	845	931	1,017
11.....	---	---	---	---	827	931	1,035	1,139	1,242
12.....	---	---	---	---	---	1,119	1,242	1,366	1,489
TO TOP DIAMETER OF 2.0 INCHES INSIDE BARK									
5.....	72	97	121	146	170	195	-----	-----	-----
6.....	107	142	176	211	246	281	315	-----	-----
7.....	---	194	241	288	335	382	429	476	-----
8.....	---	---	316	377	438	499	560	620	681
9.....	---	---	---	478	555	631	708	785	861
10.....	---	---	---	---	685	779	874	968	1,063
11.....	---	---	---	---	829	943	1,057	1,171	1,285
12.....	---	---	---	---	---	1,122	1,258	1,393	1,528

¹Data based on 116 trees cut throughout the year in the lower Piedmont of middle Georgia.

TABLE 29-37.—Comparison of Doyle and Scribner volumes with International $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch scale—values given in percentages of International $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch log scale volume (Lane and Schnur 1948)

Scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet									
	8		10		12		14		16	
	Doyle	Scribner	Doyle	Scribner	Doyle	Scribner	Doyle	Scribner	Doyle	Scribner
	----- Percent -----									
8.....	47	88	45	84	44	81	42	79	41	77
10.....	62	96	60	90	59	88	57	86	55	85
12.....	73	98	71	96	69	93	67	90	66	89
14.....	79	98	78	96	77	94	75	92	74	90
16.....	86	99	83	97	82	95	81	93	80	92
18.....	90	99	88	97	87	96	86	94	84	93
20.....	93	99	92	98	91	97	90	95	88	94
22.....	96	99	95	98	94	97	93	95	92	94
24.....	99	99	97	98	96	97	95	96	94	95
26.....	100	99	99	98	99	97	98	96	97	95
28.....	102	99	101	98	100	97	99	96	99	96
30.....	104	99	103	98	102	98	101	97	100	96
32.....	105	99	104	99	104	98	103	97	102	96
34.....	106	99	105	99	105	98	104	97	103	96
36.....	107	99	107	99	106	98	105	97	104	97
38.....	108	99	107	99	107	98	106	97	105	97
40.....	109	99	108	99	107	98	106	97	106	97

TABLE 29-38.—Tree volume conversions among log scales for southern pine sawtimber¹ (USDA Forest Service 1941)

D.b.h. (inches)	Cu. ft. to bd. ft.			Doyle to Int'l	Int'l to Doyle	Scribner to Int'l	Int'l to Scribner	Doyle to Scribner	Scribner to Doyle
	Doyle	Scribner	Int'l						
	----- Ratios -----								
10-----	2.30	4.45	5.90	2.56	0.39	1.325	0.755	1.93	0.52
11-----	2.70	4.85	6.05	2.24	.45	1.250	.800	1.80	.56
12-----	3.00	5.10	6.20	2.07	.48	1.210	.825	1.70	.59
13-----	3.40	5.35	6.35	1.87	.54	1.185	.845	1.57	.64
14-----	3.70	5.55	6.50	1.76	.57	1.170	.855	1.50	.67
15-----	4.00	5.70	6.60	1.65	.61	1.155	.865	1.43	.70
16-----	4.20	5.85	6.70	1.60	.63	1.140	.875	1.39	.72
17-----	4.40	6.00	6.80	1.54	.65	1.130	.885	1.36	.73
18-----	4.70	6.15	6.85	1.46	.69	1.115	.895	1.31	.76
19-----	4.90	6.25	6.90	1.41	.71	1.105	.905	1.28	.78
20-----	5.10	6.35	6.95	1.36	.73	1.095	.915	1.25	.80
21-----	5.30	6.45	7.00	1.32	.76	1.085	.920	1.22	.82
22-----	5.50	6.50	7.00	1.27	.79	1.080	.925	1.18	.85
23-----	5.70	6.60	7.05	1.24	.81	1.075	.935	1.16	.86
24-----	5.90	6.65	7.10	1.20	.83	1.070	.940	1.13	.89
25-----	6.10	6.70	7.15	1.17	.85	1.065	.940	1.10	.91

¹ Log scales are Doyle, Scribner Decimal C, and International 1/4-inch.

TABLE 29-39.—Percent overrun, by scaling diameter and log scale, from manufacture of logs into lumber

Data source and log d.i.b. (inches)	Log scale			Logs Number
	Doyle	Scribner	Int'l 1/4	
	Percent			
Campbell (1962)¹				
6.....	+400	+28	-2	89
7.....	200	26	-2	102
8.....	130	23	-3	134
9.....	90	21	-3	162
10.....	70	19	-4	155
11.....	50	17	-4	132
12.....	42	14	-5	167
13.....	32	12	-5	119
14.....	26	10	-6	128
15.....	20	8	-6	85
16.....	16	5	-7	74
17.....	12	3	-8	43
18.....	8	1	-8	42
19.....	4	-2	-9	22
20.....	0	-4	-9	16
21.....	-2	-6	-10	8
22.....	-4	-8	-11	8
23.....	-6	-10	-11	3
24.....	-8	-13	-12	2
				1,491
Rodenbach (1966)²				
6.....	+172	+21	-3	70
7.....	124	20	-4	94
8.....	95	19	-4	106
9.....	74	17	-4	108
10.....	59	16	-5	115
11.....	48	15	-5	96
12.....	39	14	-5	82
13.....	31	13	-6	73
14.....	25	11	-6	59
15.....	20	10	-6	51
16.....	16	9	-6	27
17.....	12	8	-7	16
18.....	8	6	-7	11
19.....	5	5	-7	8
20.....	2	4	-8	4
21.....	00	3	-8	1
				921

¹ Sound logs, collected Southwide, sawn on circle mills.

² Prediction equation for Doyle overrun = $\frac{100}{-0.5411 + 1.1684 \log_{10} D} - 100$.

Prediction equation for Scribner overrun = $28.6082 - 1.237D$.

Prediction equation for International overrun = $-1.5028 - 0.3086D$.

TABLE 29-40.—Tree overrun by diameter class¹ (Yandle 1968)

Tree d.b.h. (inches)	Trees measured	Log scale		
		Doyle	Scribner	Int'l ¼
	<i>Number</i>	<i>Doyle</i>	<i>Scribner</i>	<i>Int'l ¼</i>
8.....	21	296	9	-11
9.....	22	214	11	-10
10.....	46	160	12	-9
11.....	49	123	13	-8
12.....	55	97	13	-7
13.....	66	78	14	-6
14.....	91	63	14	-5
15.....	73	52	14	-5
16.....	67	44	14	-4
17.....	77	37	13	-4
18.....	54	32	13	-4
19.....	62	27	12	-4
20.....	41	24	11	-4
21.....	33	21	9	-4
22.....	25	18	8	-4
23.....	17	16	6	-5
24.....	10	14	4	-5
25.....	7	13	2	-6
26.....	5	11	-1	-6
27.....	4	10	-3	-7
Total.....	825			

¹ The prediction equations are:

$$\text{Doyle overrun (\%)} = 10^{4.96305 - 2.7588 \log_{10} (\text{d.b.h.})}$$

$$\text{Scribner overrun (\%)} = -9.4687 + 3.2548(\text{d.b.h.}) - 0.11217(\text{d.b.h.})^2$$

$$\text{International overrun (\%)} = -25.566 + 2.2969(\text{d.b.h.}) - 0.060164(\text{d.b.h.})^2$$

TABLE 29-41.—Cubic feet of peeled wood per *M b.f.* log scale of southern pine saw logs

Scaling diameter (inches)	8-foot saw logs ¹		16-foot saw logs ²		
	Int ¹ -1/4	Doyle	Int ¹ -1/4	Doyle	Scribner
	<i>Cu. ft./M b.f. log scale</i>				
6.0	246.7	925.0	210.5	1,000.0	333.3
6.5	225.3	690.3	191.3	733.3	275.0
7.0	214.6	553.3	178.6	555.6	238.1
7.5	200.7	457.3	169.7	466.7	224.0
8.0	191.5	395.0	161.5	393.8	203.2
8.5	184.4	350.5	157.8	355.0	197.2
9.0	177.9	315.2	154.9	316.0	188.1
9.5	172.3	288.7	151.7	293.3	183.3
10.0	167.6	267.2	150.8	272.2	178.2
10.5	163.9	250.2	150.0	257.1	174.2
11.0	160.3	235.5	147.5	240.8	168.6
11.5	157.4	223.4	146.6	230.4	165.4
12.0	155.0	213.1	146.4	221.9	165.1
12.5	152.5	204.4	145.3	213.9	163.8
13.0	150.5	196.5	145.2	206.2	160.6
13.5	148.4	189.6	143.2	198.9	158.4
14.0	146.6	183.6	141.2	192.0	156.1
14.5	145.0	178.2	140.4	186.4	154.1
15.0	143.7	173.3	140.1	181.8	152.8
15.5	142.1	168.9	139.0	178.0	151.6
16.0	140.9	165.0	138.1	173.6	150.6
16.5	139.8	161.4	138.3	171.2	150.0
17.0	138.8	158.2	138.5	168.0	149.5
17.5	137.7	155.2	137.9	165.9	148.8
18.0	136.8	152.4	137.9	163.3	148.1
18.5	135.9	149.8	137.8	161.4	148.0
19.0	135.1	147.6	137.7	159.1	147.3
19.5	134.3	145.3	137.4	157.5	147.1
20.0	133.6	143.3	137.2	155.5	146.3
20.5	132.9	141.4	137.0	153.7	145.6
21.0	132.3	139.6	136.4	151.6	145.0
21.5	131.7	137.4	135.9	149.7	144.0
22.0	131.0	136.4	135.0	147.5	143.1
22.5	130.5	134.9			
23.0	129.9	133.5			
23.5	129.5	132.2			
24.0	129.0	130.9			
24.5	128.6	129.5			
25.0	128.2	128.7			
25.5	128.3	127.6			
26.0	127.3	126.6			
26.5	126.9	125.7			
27.0	126.6	124.8			
27.5	126.2	123.9			
28.0	125.9	123.0			
28.5	125.6	122.3			
29.0	125.3	121.5			
29.5	125.0	120.8			
30.0	124.7	120.1			

¹ After Williams and Hopkins (1969, p. 29).² Adapted from Reynolds (1937).

TABLE 29-42.—Cubic feet of peeled volume per *M b.f. log scale* in merchantable lengths of loblolly and shortleaf pine trees in southeast Arkansas (Reynolds 1937)

D.b.h. (inches)	Int ¹ -1/4	Doyle	Scribner
----- <i>Cu. ft./M b.f. log scale</i> -----			
10.....	247.2	655.0	409.4
11.....	186.1	386.8	262.5
12.....	158.9	293.1	207.3
13.....	146.7	248.1	177.9
14.....	143.5	223.1	165.1
15.....	145.0	207.8	161.0
16.....	146.0	198.3	159.4
17.....	146.4	192.5	159.5
18.....	146.8	188.5	160.1
19.....	146.9	185.5	161.1
20.....	145.5	182.3	159.9
21.....	143.9	177.0	157.7
22.....	141.4	170.5	154.6
23.....	139.6	162.8	150.6
24.....	137.4	156.2	146.5
25.....	134.9	150.2	142.5
26.....	132.5	145.4	138.9
27.....	130.5	141.6	135.8
28.....	128.8	138.1	133.0
29.....	127.2	135.2	130.3
30.....	125.8	132.5	127.7

TABLE 29-43.—Weight of green southern pine saw logs, bark included, per *M b.f. log scale* according to species and scale (Page and Bois 1961)¹

Pine species	Log scale		
	Doyle	Scribner Decimal C	Int ¹ -1/4
----- <i>Lb./M b.f.</i> -----			
Loblolly.....	17,754	12,801	11,013
Longleaf.....	24,227	14,350	12,240
Shortleaf.....	17,917	12,655	10,866
Slash.....	23,856	14,989	12,729

¹ Logs were of the four major species, cut in Georgia, and weighed at the stump immediately after they were cut.

TABLE 29-44.—*Weight of green southern pine saw logs, bark included, per M b.f. log scale (Scribner Decimal C) by species¹*
(Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 50)

Pine species	Average	Range	
		Lb.	
Loblolly.....	14,900	-----	
Longleaf.....	15,500	14,215 to 18,150	
Longleaf-loblolly.....	15,000	-----	
Pond.....	13,770	-----	
Shortleaf.....	14,700	-----	
Slash.....	15,100	12,984 to 16,336	
Slash, pond, loblolly, longleaf..	15,400	14,017 to 15,953	
Slash-loblolly.....	14,900	14,097 to 16,090	
Slash-longleaf.....	15,100	13,136 to 16,564	

¹ Average and range values were derived from many sales made on weight basis, and have been used for weight scaling in southeastern Georgia.

TABLE 29-45.—*Board feet, log scale, per ton of loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs as related to diameter and log scale¹* (Siegel and Row 1960)

Average scaling diameter (inches)	Average log weight	Log scale		
		Doyle ²	Scribner	Int'l $\frac{1}{4}$
	<i>Lb.</i>	<i>Bd. ft./ton</i>		
8.....	440	78(95)	141	180
9.....	540	100(109)	158	190
10.....	660	121(126)	171	200
11.....	780	138(142)	182	208
12.....	920	154(158)	191	215

¹ Logs were cut in north Louisiana and south Arkansas; they were 12 to 20 feet long, and about one-third were butt cuts.

² Of the two sets of figures under the Doyle scale, those in parentheses are intended for use when logs less than 8 inches in diameter are scaled as their length in feet.

TABLE 29-46.—Board feet, Doyle log scale, per 1,000 lb. of southern pine saw logs of three lengths and various diameter classes¹ (Barton 1966)²

Average diameter of logs on load (inches)	Average length of load in feet		
	12	14	16
	<i>Bd. ft. log scale / 1,000 lb.</i>		
7.5.....	---	44.4	51.8
8.0.....	---	50.7	52.1
8.5.....	---	53.6	54.5
9.0.....	50.0	52.4	55.4
10.0.....	53.5	57.5	60.6
11.0.....	58.0	63.8	66.5
12.0.....	64.0	70.0	72.1
13.0.....	69.5	76.4	78.0
14.0.....	75.0	82.5	83.8
15.0.....	80.2	88.8	89.5
16.0.....	85.6	95.0	95.3
17.0.....	---	102.0	99.8
18.0.....	---	107.5	107.0

¹ Data based on 600 truckloads of mixed southern pine saw logs cut in Alabama.

² Adapted from Martin (1965).

TABLE 29-47.—Board feet, Doyle-Scribner log scale, in a truckload as related to number of logs and weight of load¹ (Bair 1965)

Number of logs	Total weight of logs in thousands of pounds					
	37	38	39	40	41	42
	<i>Total bd. ft., gross Doyle-Scribner scale</i>					
35.....	2,560	2,650	2,750	2,850	2,950	3,050
36.....	2,530	2,620	2,720	2,820	2,920	3,020
37.....	2,500	2,600	2,700	2,790	2,890	2,990
38.....	2,470	2,570	2,670	2,760	2,860	2,960
39.....	2,440	2,540	2,640	2,740	2,830	2,930
40.....	2,410	2,510	2,610	2,710	2,810	2,900
41.....	2,380	2,480	2,580	2,680	2,780	2,880
42.....	2,360	2,450	2,550	2,650	2,750	2,850
43.....	2,330	2,420	2,520	2,620	2,720	2,820
44.....	2,300	2,400	2,490	2,590	2,690	2,790
45.....	2,270	2,370	2,470	2,560	2,660	2,760
46.....	2,240	2,340	2,440	2,540	2,630	2,730
47.....	2,210	2,310	2,410	2,510	2,600	2,700
48.....	2,180	2,280	2,380	2,480	2,580	2,670
49.....	2,150	2,250	2,350	2,450	2,550	2,650
50.....	2,130	2,220	2,320	2,420	2,520	2,620

¹ Data applicable to mixed southern pine species from Sabine and Angelina Counties in east Texas.

TABLE 29-48.—Board feet, Doyle log scale, in a truckload, as related to number of logs and weight of load¹ (Freeman 1962)

Number of logs	Total weight of logs in thousands of pounds										
	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35
	----- <i>Total bd. ft., gross Doyle scale</i> -----										
30	1,590										
31	1,590	1,670									
32	1,560	1,640	1,730								
33	1,550	1,640	1,730	1,810							
34	1,540	1,600	1,690	1,780	1,860						
35	1,500	1,590	1,680	1,770	1,860						
36	1,490	1,570	1,660	1,760	1,850	1,910					
37	1,480	1,550	1,650	1,740	1,800	1,900	2,000				
38	1,470	1,530	1,630	1,720	1,790	1,890	1,980	2,050			
39		1,540	1,600	1,700	1,770	1,870	1,950	2,040	2,140		
40			1,610	1,680	1,750	1,850	1,940	2,020	2,090	2,190	
41				1,650	1,750	1,820	1,930	2,000	2,070	2,180	2,250
42				1,660	1,730	1,800	1,900	1,980	2,080	2,160	2,230
43					1,700	1,800	1,880	1,950	2,060	2,130	2,210
44						1,770	1,850	1,960	2,030	2,110	2,220
45						1,770	1,850	1,930	2,000	2,120	2,190

¹ Mixed loblolly and shortleaf pine from southeast Arkansas and northeast Louisiana.

TABLE 29-49.—*Equations for estimating board foot content, log scale, of individual logs and truckloads of logs by log weight¹ (Row and Guttenberg 1966)*

Description and equation	R ²
Single-log equations for loblolly (Louisiana logs)	
by two log scales	
Doyle scale	
$V = 0.01525 + 0.1547W - 0.09552 \sqrt{W}$	0.957
In'tl $\frac{1}{4}$ scale	
$V = -0.01190 + 0.1232W$	.966
Single-log equations for Doyle scale volume	
by species	
Loblolly (Louisiana, Georgia, and Virginia logs combined)	
$V = 0.0126 + 0.1492W - 0.0917 \sqrt{W}$	.963
Longleaf (Georgia logs)	
$V = 0.0491 + 0.2109W - 0.1932 \sqrt{W}$	.917
Shortleaf (Georgia logs)	
$V = 0.0248 + 0.1766W - 0.1233 \sqrt{W}$	.961
Slash (Georgia logs)	
$V = 0.1089W - 0.0489 \sqrt{W}$	.902
Truckload equations for southern pine by two log scales	
Doyle scale	
$V^* = 0.1432W^* - 0.0639 \sqrt{W^*N}$	.984
Int'l $\frac{1}{4}$ scale	
$V^* = 0.1410W^* - 0.0304 \sqrt{W^*N}$	.992

¹ V = Estimated volume (log scale) of individual log, board feet.

V* = Estimated volume (log scale) of truckload, board feet.

W = Weight of individual log, pounds.

W* = Total weight of logs in truckload, pounds.

N = Number of logs in truckload.

TABLE 29-50.—*Weight of green southern pine saw logs, bark included, required to produce 1,000 bd. ft. of sawn lumber*¹ (Page and Bois 1961)

Scaling diameter (inches)	Loblolly and shortleaf	Longleaf	Slash
----- <i>Lb./M b.f. lumber scale</i> -----			
5-----	19,400	20,000	23,600
6-----	14,100	16,300	19,000
7-----	12,900	14,500	16,800
8-----	11,900	13,500	15,200
9-----	11,300	12,800	14,200
10-----	10,900	12,200	13,400
11-----	10,500	11,800	12,800
12-----	10,200	11,400	12,400
13-----	9,900	11,200	11,900
14-----	9,800	11,000	11,600
15-----	9,600	10,900	11,300
16-----	9,400	10,800	11,000
Average-----	10,759	13,087	14,191

¹ Trees were cut in Georgia.

TABLE 29-51.—Board foot content, Scribner log scale, of southern pine poles of form class 80 (USDA Forest Service 1959, p. 41)

Length (feet)	Pole class								
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	9	
	-----			<i>Bd. ft.</i>	-----				
25.....			70	55	45	35	25	20	
30.....	125	105	85	70	55	45	35	25	
35.....	155	135	115	90	75				
40.....	205	175	150	130	100				
45.....	245	210	180	145	120				
50.....	280	240	205	170					
55.....	335	295	250						
60.....	385	325	280						
65.....	420	365							
70.....	495	425							
75.....	535								
80.....	570								

TABLE 29-52.—*Weight, volume, and dimensions of southern pine poles by class and length* (American Standards Association 1963)

Class and minimum circumference and equivalent diameter of top of pole (inches)	Length	Weight ¹	Volume	Minimum circumference and equivalent diameter at 6 feet from butt	
				Circumference	Diameter
	<i>Feet</i>	<i>Lb.</i>	<i>Cu. ft.</i>	--- <i>Inches</i> ---	---
Class 1					
27-inch circumference					
8.59-inch diameter --					
	20	710	12.91	31.0	9.78
	25	990	18.00	33.5	10.66
	30	1,279	23.25	36.5	11.62
	35	1,568	28.50	39.0	12.41
	40	1,884	34.25	41.0	13.05
	45	2,223	40.41	43.0	13.69
	50	2,585	47.00	45.0	14.32
	55	2,993	54.42	46.5	14.80
	60	3,451	62.75	48.0	15.28
	65	4,015	73.00	49.5	15.76
	70	4,620	84.00	51.0	16.23
	75	5,198	94.50	52.5	16.71
	80	5,867	106.67	54.0	17.19
	85	6,600	120.00	55.0	17.51
	90	7,462	135.67	56.0	17.82
Class 2					
25-inch circumference					
7.96-inch diameter --					
	20	564	10.25	29.0	9.24
	25	811	14.75	31.5	10.03
	30	1,082	19.67	34.0	10.82
	35	1,343	24.42	36.5	11.62
	40	1,623	29.50	38.5	12.25
	45	1,911	34.75	40.5	12.89
	50	2,214	40.25	42.0	13.36
	55	2,567	46.67	43.5	13.85
	60	2,943	53.50	45.0	14.32
	65	3,341	60.75	46.5	14.80
	70	3,781	68.75	48.0	15.28
	75	4,235	77.00	49.0	15.60
	80	4,739	86.17	50.5	16.07
	85	5,266	95.75	51.5	16.39
	90	5,871	106.75	53.0	16.87

TABLE 29-52.—*Weight, volume, and dimensions of southern pine poles by class and length* (American Standards Association 1963)

Class and minimum circumference and equivalent diameter of top of pole (inches)	Length	Weight ¹	Volume	Minimum circumference and equivalent diameter at 6 feet from butt		
				Circumference	Diameter	
	<i>Feet</i>	<i>Lb.</i>	<i>Cu. ft.</i>	--	<i>Inches</i>	--
Class 3						
23-inch circumference						
7.32-inch diameter --						
	20	468	8.50	27.0	8.59	
	25	674	12.25	29.5	9.39	
	30	921	16.75	32.0	10.18	
	35	1,155	21.00	34.0	10.82	
	40	1,403	25.50	36.0	11.46	
	45	1,664	30.25	37.5	11.94	
	50	1,925	25.00	39.0	12.41	
	55	2,200	40.00	40.5	12.89	
	60	2,512	45.67	42.0	13.36	
	65	2,814	51.17	43.5	13.85	
	70	3,144	57.17	45.0	14.32	
	75	3,506	63.75	46.0	14.67	
	80	3,887	70.67	47.0	14.96	
	85	4,299	78.17	48.0	15.28	
	90	4,730	86.00	49.0	15.60	
Class 4						
21-inch circumference						
6.68-inch diameter --						
	20	394	7.17	25.0	7.96	
	25	573	10.42	27.5	8.75	
	30	784	14.25	29.5	9.39	
	35	1,004	18.25	31.5	10.03	
	40	1,219	22.17	33.5	10.66	
	45	1,444	26.25	35.0	11.14	
	50	1,687	30.67	36.5	11.62	
	55	1,934	35.17	38.0	12.10	
	60	2,186	39.75	39.0	12.41	
	65	2,457	44.67	40.5	12.89	
	70	2,732	49.67	41.5	13.21	
	75	3,021	54.92	43.0	13.69	
	80	3,314	60.25	44.0	14.00	

TABLE 29-52.—*Weight, volume, and dimensions of southern pine poles by class and length* (American Standards Association 1963)—Continued

Class and minimum circumference and equivalent diameter of top of pole (inches)	Length	Weight ¹	Volume	Minimum circumference and equivalent diameter at 6 feet from butt	
				Circumference	Diameter
	<i>Feet</i>	<i>Lb.</i>	<i>Cu. ft.</i>	<i>-- Inches</i>	<i>--</i>
Class 5 19-inch circumference 6.06-inch diameter --	20	330	6.00	23.0	7.32
	25	491	8.92	25.5	8.12
	30	660	12.00	27.5	8.75
	35	862	15.67	29.0	9.23
	40	1,059	19.25	31.0	9.87
	45	1,274	23.17	32.5	10.34
	50	1,494	27.17	34.0	10.82
	55	1,719	31.25	35.0	11.14
	60	1,953	35.50	36.0	11.46
Class 6 17-inch circumference 5.41-inch diameter --	65	2,237	40.67	37.5	11.94
	70	2,498	45.25	38.5	12.25
	20	284	5.17	21.0	6.67
	25	422	7.67	23.0	7.32
	30	550	10.00	25.0	7.96
	35	743	13.50	27.0	8.59
	40	921	16.75	28.5	9.07
	45	1,114	20.25	30.0	9.55
	50	1,329	24.17	31.5	10.03
Class 7 15-inch circumference 4.77-inch diameter --	55	1,563	28.42	32.5	10.34
	60	1,801	32.75	33.5	10.66
	20	234	4.25	19.5	6.21
	25	344	6.25	21.5	6.84
	30	454	8.25	23.5	7.48
	35	646	11.75	25.0	7.96
	40	807	14.67	26.5	8.43
Class 9 15-inch circumference 4.77-inch diameter ----	45	976	17.75	28.0	8.91
	50	1,169	21.25	29.0	9.23
	20	202	3.67	17.5	5.57
	25	289	5.25	19.5	6.21
	30	371	6.25	20.5	6.52
Class 10 12-inch circumference 3.82-inch diameter --	20	161	2.92	14.0	4.46
	25	234	4.25	15.0	4.77

¹ Weight based on 55 lb./cu. ft., i.e., a specific gravity of 0.5 (ovendry weight, green volume basis) and a moisture content of about 76 percent.

TABLE 29-53.—*Theoretical lineal yield of veneer rotary-cut from bolts of various sizes according to core diameter and veneer thickness¹*
(Borden Chemical Company 1966)

Veneer thickness and core diameter (inches)	Bolt diameter in inches								
	8	9	10	11	12	14	16	18	20
	----- Feet -----								
$\frac{1}{10}$ -inch thick									
5.....	25.2	36.3	48.7	62.4	77.3	111.2	150.1	194.5	244.0
4.....	31.2	42.2	54.8	68.4	83.3	117.2	156.1	200.4	249.9
3.....	35.8	47.6	59.2	73.0	87.9	121.8	160.7	205.1	254.4
$\frac{1}{8}$ -inch thick									
5.....	20.4	29.3	39.2	50.1	62.4	89.8	121.2	157.0	196.9
4.....	25.1	34.1	44.1	55.2	67.2	94.6	126.0	161.8	201.7
3.....	28.8	37.4	47.8	58.9	71.0	98.3	129.8	165.5	205.4
$\frac{3}{16}$ -inch thick									
5.....	13.5	19.4	26.1	33.4	41.4	59.6	80.5	104.2	130.4
4.....	16.7	22.6	29.4	36.6	44.6	62.8	83.7	107.4	133.9
3.....	19.2	25.5	31.8	39.1	47.1	65.3	86.6	109.9	136.4

¹ Lineal footage figures on a volumetric basis, assuming each bolt to be a perfect cylinder.

$$\text{Lineal footage} = \frac{\text{Bolt volume} - \text{core volume}}{\text{Volume of 1 lineal foot of } \frac{1}{10}\text{-, } \frac{1}{8}\text{-, } \frac{3}{16}\text{-inch veneer}}$$

TABLE 29-54.—*Tree size and percentage of weight in above-ground tree parts of 10 loblolly pine trees (Metz and Wells 1965)*

Tree age (years)	Diameter of base Inches	Height Feet	Portion of total oven-dry weight				Total oven-dry weight ² Lb.
			Needles	Stemwood ¹	Stembark	Branches	
			----- Percent -----				
7.....	2.8	8.0	38.0	28.4	18.1	15.5	4.12
7.....	2.8	10.0	43.3	24.4	13.6	18.7	6.39
7.....	4.1	10.6	29.8	36.9	14.2	19.1	12.74
7.....	4.3	13.2	29.5	34.4	11.9	24.2	20.36
7.....	5.0	17.1	26.5	41.4	14.1	18.0	28.73
8.....	5.6	20.5	24.2	43.6	13.8	18.4	30.79
8.....	6.9	23.3	14.5	53.1	13.8	18.6	54.33
13.....	8.3	35.6	9.7	57.7	12.9	19.7	95.98
21.....	7.5	45.8	5.0	70.9	12.5	11.6	121.66
21.....	9.6	46.4	4.7	70.0	10.0	15.3	194.40

¹ All wood from the base of the tree to the terminal shoot, but excluding branches.

² Above-ground portions of tree.

TABLE 29-55.—*Bark volume in second-growth southern pines, as a percentage of total volume of unpeeled wood (Demmon 1936)*

D.b.h. (inches)	Species			
	Loblolly	Longleaf	Shortleaf	Slash
	----- <i>Percent</i> -----			
6.....	19.4	22.2	17.3	26.8
8.....	17.5	20.2	15.4	24.0
10.....	16.0	17.8	11.8	21.7
12.....	14.5	14.5	11.2	19.4
14.....	14.0	13.6	10.5	19.4

TABLE 29-56.—*Weight of bark on loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs by scaling diameter (inside bark) and log length¹*

Scaling diameter (inches)	Log length, feet				
	8	10	12	14	16
	----- <i>Lb.</i> -----				
8.....	13	16	20	23	26
10.....	19	24	29	34	38
12.....	26	33	40	46	53
14.....	35	43	52	61	70
16.....	44	55	66	77	88
18.....	55	69	82	96	110
20.....	67	83	100	116	133
22.....	73	99	119	139	155
24.....	93	117	140	163	187
26.....	108	136	163	190	217

¹ Computed from equation 29-26. Values above 18 inches extend beyond range of basic data. Moisture content of bark at time of weight measurement was that normal for logs in temporary storage but not under sprinklers.

TABLE 29-57.—*Weight of shortleaf and loblolly pine bark per M b.f. of saw logs, International 1/4-inch scale (Williams and Hopkins 1969, p. 84¹)*

Log scaling diameter (inches)	Log length in feet				
	8	10	12	14	16
	----- <i>Tons</i> -----				
8.....	0.436	0.409	0.393	0.327	0.327
10.....	.319	.342	.320	.305	.295
12.....	.293	.300	.283	.272	.278
14.....	.270	.272	.261	.264	.257
16.....	.260	.251	.255	.250	.246
18.....	.249	.245	.242	.239	.238
20.....	.246	.238	.238	.233	.229
22.....	.234	.231	.229	.228	.224
24.....	.228	.229	.226	.221	.219
26.....	.226	.222	.220	.218	.217

¹ Computed from data of Row et al. (1965). Moisture content of bark at time of weight measurement was normal for logs in temporary storage.

TABLE 29-58.—*Green weight of logs, bark, sawdust, chippable residue, and lumber, per M b.f. of southern pine lumber sawn, by log diameter (Applefield 1958)*

Scaling diameter (inches)	Lumber	Residue chips	Sawdust and unused residues	Peeled log	Bark	Unpeeled log
	----- <i>Lb.</i> -----					
6.....	4,580	5,540	4,810	14,930	2,010	16,940
7.....	5,420	4,600	4,200	14,220	1,900	16,120
8.....	5,770	3,900	3,810	13,480	1,760	15,240
9.....	5,880	3,340	3,640	12,860	1,630	14,490
10.....	5,900	2,940	3,540	12,380	1,550	13,930
11.....	5,860	2,600	3,440	11,900	1,440	13,340
12.....	5,780	2,320	3,410	11,510	1,350	12,860
13.....	5,700	2,100	3,380	11,180	1,210	12,440
14.....	5,670	1,900	3,430	11,000	1,210	12,210
15.....	5,580	1,740	3,420	10,740	1,120	11,860

TABLE 29-59.—*Proportion of slab volume and weight in wood and bark for shortleaf pine*¹ (Todd and Anderson 1955)

Saw log scaling diameter (inches)	Volume		Weight	
	Wood	Bark	Wood	Bark
			----- Percent -----	
5.....	78	22	86	14
6.....	76	24	85	15
7.....	74	26	84	16
8.....	72	28	83	17
9.....	70	30	81	19
10.....	69	31	80	20
11.....	67	33	79	21
12.....	65	35	77	23
13.....	63	37	76	24
14.....	61	39	74	26
15.....	60	40	73	27
16.....	58	42	71	29
17.....	56	44	68	30
18.....	54	46	68	32
19.....	52	48	67	33
Average....	65	35	77	21

¹ Average moisture content of bark was 29 percent of the green weight; that of the wood was 54 percent.

TABLE 29-60.—*Effect of log diameter and barking procedure on yield of bark-free, chippable, green residues per M b.f. of southern pine lumber cut in small sawmills (Applefield 1960)*

Source of residue and log scaling diameter (inches)	Bark-free wood	Acceptable chips
----- Tons -----		
Slabs and edgings from debarked logs		
5-----	3.25	3.10
6-----	2.90	2.75
7-----	2.50	2.40
8-----	2.20	2.10
9-----	1.90	1.80
10-----	1.65	1.55
11-----	1.40	1.35
12-----	1.20	1.15
13-----	1.05	1.00
14-----	.95	.90
15-----	.85	.80
Debarked slabs and edgings		
5-----	2.65	2.50
6-----	2.30	2.20
7-----	2.00	1.90
8-----	1.80	1.70
9-----	1.50	1.45
10-----	1.30	1.25
11-----	1.15	1.10
12-----	.95	.90
13-----	.85	.80
14-----	.75	.70
15-----	.70	.65
Debarked slabs only		
5-----	2.10	2.00
6-----	1.90	1.80
7-----	1.65	1.55
8-----	1.40	1.35
9-----	1.20	1.15
10-----	1.05	1.00
11-----	.95	.90
12-----	.80	.75
13-----	.70	.65
14-----	.65	.60
15-----	.50	.50

TABLE 29-61.—*Volume of bark-free wood in a standard cord of southern pine slabs with bark attached, by log diameter and species*
(Todd 1955)

Scaling diameter (inches)	Longleaf and shortleaf	Loblolly	Slash
		<i>Cu. ft.</i>	
6.....	60	58	57
8.....	57	54	51
10.....	55	50	47
12.....	51	46	43
14.....	48	43	39
16.....	46	39	36
18.....	43	36	32
20.....	40	32	29

TABLE 29-62.—*Weight of usable chips from residue of loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs¹*

Log type and scaling diameter (inches)	Log length, feet				
	8	10	12	14	16
			<i>Lb.</i>		
Butt logs					
8.....	58	72	87	101	115
10.....	92	115	137	160	183
12.....	126	157	188	220	240
14.....	159	199	239	279	319
16.....	193	242	290	338	387
18.....	227	284	341	398	455
20.....	261	327	392	457	522
22.....	295	369	443	516	590
24.....	329	411	494	576	658
26.....	363	454	544	635	726
Upper logs					
8.....	69	86	103	120	137
10.....	95	120	142	166	189
12.....	121	152	181	211	241
14.....	147	184	220	257	294
16.....	173	217	259	303	346
18.....	199	249	298	348	398
20.....	225	282	338	394	450
22.....	251	315	377	439	502
24.....	227	347	416	485	554
26.....	303	380	455	531	607

¹ Computed from equations 29-28 and 29-29; values above 18 inches are extensions beyond range of basic data. Weights tabulated are for green chips.

TABLE 29-63.—Tons of usable chips, from residue of loblolly and shortleaf pine saw logs, per M b.f. International $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch log scale sawn¹

Log type and scaling diameter (inches)	Log length, feet				
	8	10	12	14	16
	----- Tons -----				
Butt logs					
8-----	1.92	1.80	1.73	1.44	1.44
10-----	1.53	1.64	1.53	1.46	1.41
12-----	1.40	1.43	1.34	1.29	1.27
14-----	1.16	1.25	1.20	1.21	1.18
16-----	1.14	1.10	1.12	1.09	1.07
18-----	1.03	1.02	1.00	.99	.99
20-----	.97	.93	.96	.91	.90
22-----	.87	.86	.85	.85	.83
24-----	.80	.81	.80	.78	.77
26-----	.76	.74	.74	.73	.73
Upper logs					
8-----	2.29	2.16	2.06	1.71	1.71
10-----	1.58	1.70	1.58	1.51	1.46
12-----	1.34	1.38	1.29	1.24	1.27
14-----	1.13	1.15	1.10	1.12	1.09
16-----	1.02	.99	1.00	.98	.96
18-----	.90	.89	.88	.87	.87
20-----	.83	.81	.81	.79	.78
22-----	.74	.73	.72	.72	.71
24-----	.68	.68	.67	.66	.67
26-----	.63	.62	.62	.61	.61

¹ Computed from equations 29-28 and 29-29; values above 18 inches are extensions above range of basic data. Weights tabulated are for green chips.

TABLE 29-64.—*Weight of green sawdust from sawing a southern pine log into lumber, as affected by log length and diameter*¹

Log scaling diameter (inches)	Log length, feet				
	8	10	12	14	16
8.....	35	44	52	61	70
10.....	54	68	82	95	109
12.....	78	98	118	137	157
14.....	107	133	160	187	213
16.....	139	174	209	244	279
18.....	176	220	264	308	353
20.....	218	272	326	381	435
22.....	263	329	395	461	527
24.....	313	392	470	548	627
26.....	368	460	552	644	735

¹ Computed from equation 29-30; values above 18 inches are an extension beyond the range of the basic data.

29-4 LITERATURE CITED

- American Standards Association
1963. American standard specifications and dimensions for wood poles. Amer. Standard 05.1, 15 pp. Amer Standards Assoc., N.Y.
- Applefield, M.
1956. The utilization of wood residues for pulp chips. Tex. Forest Serv. Bull. 49, 121 pp.
- Applefield, M.
1958. The marginal sawlog for southern yellow pine. Tex. Forest Serv. Res. Note 21, 24 pp.
- Applefield, M.
1960. The production and marketing of pine wood residues by small sawmills. Tex. Forest Serv. Bull. 50, 14 pp.
- Bair, W. M.
1965. Weight-scaling pine sawlogs in Texas. Tex. Forest Serv. Bull. 52, 8 p.
- Barton, W. J.
1966. Weight vs. volume for use in measuring forest products. *In* Measuring the southern forest, pp. 30-42. La. State Univ. 15th Annu. Forest. Symp. Proc. 1966. La. State Univ. Press.
- Bennett, F. A.
1953. Topwood volume tables for slash and longleaf pine. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Res. Notes 42, 2 pp.
- Bois, P. J.
1968. Weight of sawdust from several southern Appalachian wood species. Forest Prod. J. 18(10): 52-54.
- Borden Chemical Company.
1966. Conversion tables for the southern pine industry. Borden Chemical Co. Interim Rep. 11, 8 pp. New York.
- Bower, D. R.
1961. Are scales better than sticks? South. Lumberman 203(2530): 38.
- Bruce, D., and Schumacher, F. X.
1935. Forest mensuration. 360 pp. N.Y.: McGraw-Hill Book Co.
- Burns, P. Y.
1965. A condensation of Minor's form class volume tables for southern pine pulpwood. La. Agr. Exp. Sta., LSU Forest. Note 61, 4 pp.

- Campbell, R. A.
1962. Overruns—southern pine logs. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Res. Notes 183, 2 pp.
- Carpenter, B. E., and Schroeder, J. G.
1968. Combined effects of drying, surfacing, and trimming on grade and volume of southern pine lumber. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note SE-93, 3 pp. Southeast Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.
- Chamberlain, E. B., and Meyer, H. A.
1950. Bark volume in cordwood. TAPPI 33: 554-555.
- Cole, D. E., Zobel, B. J., and Roberds, J. H.
1966. Slash, loblolly, and longleaf pine in a mixed natural stand; a comparison of their wood properties, pulp yields, and paper properties. TAPPI 49: 161-166.
- Curtis, F. H.
1966. Tree weight equations—their development and use in forest management planning. Soc. Amer. Forest. Proc. 1965: 189-191.
- Davis, D. S.
1963. Nomograph for weights of pulpwood logs. Pap. Ind. 45: 662.
- Demmon, E. L.
1936. Influence of forest practice on the suitability of southern pine for newsprint. J. Forest. 34: 202-210.
- Forbes, R. D.
1961. Forestry handbook. 1143 pp. N.Y.: Ronald Press Co.
- Forest Farmers Association.
1966. Pulpwood. Forest Farmer 25(7): 141-143.
- Freeman, E. A.
1962. Weight-scaling sawlog volume by the truckload. Forest Prod. J. 12: 473-475.
- Goebel, N. B., and Warner, J. R.
1962. Volume tables for small diameter loblolly, shortleaf and Virginia pine in the Upper South Carolina Piedmont. S. C. Agr. Exp. Sta. Forest Res. Ser. 7, 7 pp.
- Goggans, J. F., and Schultz, E. F., Jr.
1958. Growth of pine plantations in Alabama's coastal plain. Ala. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bull. 313, 19 pp.
- Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1952. Shortcuts for cruisers and scalers. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 126, 24 pp.
- Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1954. New tree-measurement concepts: height-accumulation, giant tree, taper and shape. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 134, 32 pp.
- Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1967a. Rex—Fortran-4 system for combinatorial screening or conventional analysis of multivariate regressions. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. PSW-44, 47 pp. Pacific Southwest Forest Exp. Sta., Berkeley, Calif.
- Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1967b. STX—Fortran-4 program for estimates of tree populations from 3P sample-tree-measurements. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. PSW-13 (ed 2, rev.), 76 pp. Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Exp. Sta., Berkeley, Calif.
- Grosenbaugh, L. R.
1968. Sampel—tree-measurement: a new science. Forest Farmer 28(3): 10-11.
- Guttenberg, S.
1967. Vencer yields from southern pine bolts. Forest Prod. J. 17(12): 30-32.
- Guttenberg, S., Fassnacht, D., and Siegel, W. C.
1960. Weight-scaling southern pine saw logs. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 177, 6 pp.
- Hawes, E. T.
1940. Volume tables, converting factors, and other information applicable to commercial timber in the South. Ed. 3, 45 pp. USDA Forest Serv., Atlanta, Ga.
- Kerbes, E. L., and McIntosh, J. A.
1969. Conversion of trees to finished lumber—the volume losses. Forest. Chron. 45: 348-352.
- King, W. W.
1952. Survey of sawmill residues in east Texas. Tex. Forest Serv. Tech. Rep. 3, 59 pp.

- Koch, P.
1971. Process for straightening and drying southern pine 2 by 4's in 24 hours. Forest Prod. J. 21(5): 17-24.
- Lane, R. D., and Schnur, G. L.
1948. Log rule comparison: International $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch, Doyle, and Scribner. USDA Forest Serv. Cent. States Forest Exp. Sta., Sta. Notes 47, 6 pp.
- Lehman, J. W.
1958. Utilizing pine sawmill residue for pulp chips. Tenn. Val. Authority Div. Forest Relat. Rep. 223-58, 11 pp.
- Loomis, R. M., Phares, R. E., and Crosby, J. S.
1966. Estimating foliage and branchwood quantities in shortleaf pine. Forest Sci. 12: 30-39.
- McGee, C. E.
1959. Weight of merchantable wood with bark from planted slash pine in the Carolina sandhills. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Res. Note 128, 2 pp.
- MacKinney, A. L., and Chaiken, L. E.
1946. Volume, yield, and growth of loblolly pine in the mid-Atlantic coastal region. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Tech. Note 33 rev., 58 pp.
- Martin, J. W.
1965. A procedure for weight scaling southern pine logs. Ala. Forest Prod. 8(10): 59-62.
- Merrifield, R. G., and Foil, R. R.
1967. Volume equations for southern pine pulpwood. La. Agr. Exp. Sta. Hill Farm Facts 7, 4 pp.
- Mesavage, C.
1947. Tables for estimating cubic-foot volume of timber. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 111, 70 pp.
- Mesavage, C., and Girard, J. W.
1956. Tables for estimating board-foot volume of timber. USDA Forest Serv., 94 pp. Wash., D.C.
- Metz, L. J., and Wells, C. G.
1965. Weight and nutrient content of the aboveground parts of some loblolly pines. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SE-17, 20 pp. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.
- Minor, C. O.
1950. Form class volume tables for use in southern pine pulpwood timber estimating. La. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bull. 445, 39 p.
- Minor, C. O.
1953a. Converting basal area to pulpwood volume. La. Agr. Exp. Sta. LSU Forest. Note 3, 1 p.
- Minor, C. O.
1953b. Preliminary volume tables for use with aerial photographs. Forest Farmer 12(10): 9-10, 11.
- Page, R. H., and Bois, P. J.
1961. Buying and selling southern yellow pine saw logs by weight. Ga. Forest Res. Council. Rep. 7, 9 pp.
- Page, R. H., and Saucier, J. R.
1958. Survey of wood residue in Georgia. Ga. Forest Res. Council. Resour.-Ind. Ser. 1, 39 pp.
- Perry, T. O., and Wang, C. W.
1958. Variation in the specific gravity of slash pinewood and its genetic and silvicultural implications. TAPPI 41: 178-180.
- Potts, S. M.
1952. Volume tables for small-diameter loblolly and shortleaf pine trees. Tenn. Val. Authority Tech. Note 10, 23 pp.
- Reynolds, R. R.
1937. Factors for converting log and tree volumes or values from one common scale to another. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 68, 4 pp.
- Rodenbach, R. C.
1966. Southern yellow pine log overruns. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note SE-56, 2 pp. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.
- Romancier, R. M.
1961. Weight and volume of plantation-grown loblolly pine. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Res. Note 161, 2 pp.
- Rothacher, R. S.
1948. Percentage distribution of tree volume by logs. J. Forest. 46: 115-118.

- Row, C., and Fasick, C. F.
1966. Weight-scaling tables by electronic computer. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(8): 41-45.
- Row, C., Fasick, C., and Guttenberg, S.
1965. Improving sawmill profits through operations research. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SO-20, 26 pp. South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Row, C., and Guttenberg, S.
1966. Determining weight-volume relationships for saw logs. *Forest Prod. J.* 16(5): 39-47.
- Schmitt, D., and Bower, D.
1970. Volume tables for young loblolly, slash, and longleaf pines in plantations in south Mississippi. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note SO-102. 2 pp. South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Schumacher, F. X.
1946. Volume-weight ratios of pine logs in the Virginia-North Carolina Coastal Plain. *J. Forest.* 44: 583-586.
- Schumacher, F. X., and Jones, W. C.
1940. Empirical log rules and the allocation of sawing time to log size. *J. Forest.* 38: 889-896.
- Siegel, W. C., and Row, C.
1960. Selling sawlogs by the ton. *Forest Farmer* 19(13): 8-9.
- Snow, E. A.
1949. Pine bark as a source of tannin. *J. Amer. Leather Chem. Assoc.* 44: 504-511.
- Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
1970. Standard grading rules for southern pine lumber. 208 pp. Pensacola, Fla.: Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
- Taras, M. A.
1956. Buying pulpwood by weight as compared with volume measure. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Sta. Pap. 74, 11 pp.
- Todd, A. S., Jr.
1955. How much wood in a cord of pine slabs? USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta. Res. Notes 87, 1 p.
- Todd, A. S., Jr. and Anderson, W. C.
1955. Size, volume, and weight of pine slabs and edgings in the South Carolina Piedmont. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Sta. Pap. 49, 21 pp.
- USDA Forest Service.
1941. National forest scaling handbook. 119 pp. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Government Printing Office.
- USDA Forest Service.
1959. Volume tables, converting factors, and other information applicable to commercial timber in the South. Ed. 7, 54 pp. Div. State and Priv. Forest., Atlanta.
- USDA Forest Service.
1965. Service foresters handbook. USDA Forest Serv., South. Reg., Atlanta, Ga. (Rev.) 51 pp.
- USDA Forest Service.
1969. Volume tables and additional information for the Southeastern area. Ed. 8, 28 p. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Area State & Priv. Forest.
- USDA Forest Service.
1970. Service foresters handbook. USDA Forest Serv. Southeast. Area State & Priv. Forest. 67 pp. rev.
- Van Sickle, C. C.
1966. Factors for converting Mid-south pulpwood from cords to cubic feet. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Note SO-45, 2 pp. South. Forest Exp. Sta., New Orleans, La.
- Wahlenberg, W. G.
1960. Loblolly Pine. 603 pp. N.C.: Duke Univ. Sch. Forest.
- Williams, D. L., and Hopkins, W. C.
1969. Converting factors for southern pine products. *La. Agr. Exp. Sta. Bull.* 626 rev., 89 pp.
- Williston, H. L.
1957. Pole grower's guide. USDA Forest Serv. South. Forest Exp. Sta. Occas. Pap. 153, 34 pp.
- Yandle, D. O.
1968. Southern yellow pine tree overruns and lumber width distributions. USDA Forest Serv. Res. Pap. SE-41, 12 pp. Southeast. Forest Exp. Sta., Asheville, N.C.

INDEX

A

- Abrasives, machining with coated, 894**
 abrasives used, 895
 belt construction, 894, **896**
 belt life, 898
 belt pressure and velocity, 897
 depth of cut and feed speed, 897
 feed direction relative to belt travel, 898
 grit size, 897
 machine configuration, **895**
 nomenclature, 895, **896**
 power required, 898, 899
 surface quality, **896**
 technique on pine floors, 1361
 wood factors affecting, 898
- Absolute humidity; see Humidity**
- Absorption; see Penetration and absorption of preservatives**
- Absorption coefficient**
 definition of, 347
 of acoustical tile, 347
- Acetate fibers, 1454**
- Acetate process for regenerated cellulose, 1454, 1456**
- Acetylation, 1131**
- Acid copper chromate; effectiveness against termites, 680**
- Acid resistance of wood, 606-611**
 methods of increasing, 619
- Acids in needles, 593**
- Acid sulfite pulping process, 1446, 1447**
see also Pulp, sulfite
- Acorn woodpecker, 720**
- Acoustical tile, absorption coefficient of, 347**
- Acoustics, 344**
 related to non-destructive testing, 344
 velocity of sound, 345
- Acoustics, architectural, 346**
 absorption coefficient of acoustical tile, 347
 ceilings, 349, 355
 coincidence frequency, 352
 control of reverberation time, 347, **351**
 decibel, definition of, 347
 design of resonant panels, 348, **349**
 floors, 355, **356**
 impact isolation, 355, **356**
 mass law, 352
 partitions, 353, **354**
 sound absorption, 346
 sound transmission loss, 350
- Acrylic resin for paint, 1343, 1353**
- Activated carbon, 1503**
- Adhesion, references on theory of, 1154**
- Adhesives; see Glues**
- ¹ Page numbers indicating tables are in italics; those for figures are boldface.
- ² Pages 1 to 734 are in Vol. I; pages 735 to 1663 are in Vol. II.
- Afterglow reaction, 119, 1120-1122, 1377**
- Age class of trees**
 bark specific gravity related to, 502
 bark volume and weight related to, 1545
 fibril angle related to, 154
 moisture content related to, **269**
 strength properties related to, 410
 tracheid length related to, *136, 138*
 wood specific gravity related to, 241
- Air drying, 951**
 control of end checks during, 962
 of entire trees, **961**
 of lumber, 954
 of poles, 959
 of timbers, 956
 site selection for, 952, 953
 yard layout for, **953**
- Air requirement for combustion, 1380**
- Alates, 669, 670**
- Albuminous cells, 472**
- Aldrin; effectiveness against termites, 680**
- Alkali charged**
 kraft pulp strength related to, 1444
 kraft pulp yield related to, 1437
- Alkali resistance of wood, 611-615**
 methods of increasing, 619
- Alkyd-oil resin for paint, 1343, 1357**
- Allowable loads, connectors; see Lateral loads, allowable, and Withdrawal loads, allowable**
- Allowable stresses; see Design stresses**
- Alpha-cellulose; see Cellulose**
- Alum, in grinder shower water, 1422**
- Aluminum oxide abrasive, 895**
- Aluminum sulfate, 1119, 1120, 1123, 1124**
- Ambrosia beetles, 698, 699**
- Ammoniacal copper arsenite; see Preservatives, copper arsenite, ammoniacal**
- Ammonia gas**
 as a fire retardant, *1121, 1122*
 as a plasticizer, 1055
- Ammonium bromide, 1119**
- Ammonium chloride, 1120**
- Ammonium hydroxide, in a natural finish, 1331**
- Ammonium phosphate; effectiveness as fire retardant, 1117, 1118, 1120, 1122, 1123, 1124, 1127**
- Ammonium sulfate**
 Effectiveness as fire retardant, 1119, 1122, **1123**
 effectiveness as preservative, 1073
- Anatomy of bark, 470, 474**
 cross-sectional and radial surfaces, **471**
 deposits in rhytidome, **478**
 distortion and obliteration in bark, **476**
 inner bark, 470
 longitudinal parenchyma, 475

Anatomy of bark (*Continued*)

- macerated bark, 473
- nomenclature, 472
- periderm, 478
- periderm, cross-sectional views, 481
- periderm, masses of, and radial section of, 480
- periderms, tangential view of, 479
- phellem, 482
- phellem stone cells, micrographs of, 483
- phellogen, 479
- phloem cells in inner bark, 472
- rays, 475
- rhytidome, 474, 477
- sieve cells, 472
- species comparisons, 483
- styloid crystal in sieve and longitudinal parenchyma cells, 477
- Anatomy of needles, 576
 - cellular structure, 578
 - cross sectional shape, 576, 578
 - endoderm, 577, 578
 - epidermis, 577, 578, 579
 - fascicle sheath, 576, 577
 - fibers, 579, 580
 - gross structure, 38-50, 577
 - hypoderm, 577, 578, 579
 - keys to, 579
 - mesophyll, 577, 578
 - phloem, 578, 579
 - resin ducts, 578, 580
 - stomata, 577, 579
 - vascular bundles, 578, 579
 - xylem, 578, 579
- Anatomy of roots, 563
 - bordered pits, 565
 - growth distribution in laterals, 564
 - rays, 565
 - resin canals, 566
 - root cross sections, 563, 564
 - tracheid dimensions, 566, 567
- Anatomy of wood, 83, 95
 - compression wood, 125
 - gross, 85
 - horizontal elements, 104
 - longitudinal elements, 94
 - minute structure, 94
 - penetration and absorption related to, 308, 1083
 - pit pairs, 112
 - resin canals, 128
 - strength properties related to, 393
 - variations in anatomy, 130
 - ultrastructure, 94
- Anchors, sheet metal and angle iron, 1313-1318
- Angle clips, 1316
- Angles; *see* Cutting angles
- Animal food from wood residues, 1497
- Animal glue, 1154
- Annual rings; description of, 86, 87, 1328
- Anobiids, 702, 710
- Annobium punctatum*, 705
- Antimony trioxide, 1127

Ants

- features distinguishing from termites, 669, 671
- see also* Carpenter ants
- Apical intrusive growth, 62
- Apical meristem, growth in, 60
- Aribinogalactan, 193
- Ash, in
 - bark, 500, 1379, 1403
 - mineral components, 218, 1404
 - rootwood, 569
 - wood, 214, 217
 - see also* Inorganic components
- Aspergillus*, 656
- Aspergillus restrictus*, 1110
- Aspiration of pit, definition of, 113
- Aspiration of pits in
 - earlywood, 311
 - heartwood, 117
 - latewood, 311
 - sapwood, 311
- Assembly time, for plywood, 1186
- Auxin, 63, 66

B

- Back of veneer knife, 902
- Bacteria, anaerobic, 650
 - effects of attack, 314, 650
 - manner of attack on wood, 650
- Bag, paper, 1446
- Bahre-Bison process, particleboard, 1195
- Bandsaws, 849
 - feed per tooth, 849
 - kinematics of, 849
 - linebar resaws, 856
 - nomenclature of, 850, 852
 - resaws for dry lumber, 858
 - spring-set narrow bandsaws, 859
 - swaged-tooth, wide bandsaws, 849
 - tooth form of, 852
- Bankia*, 713, 715
- see also* *Teredo*
- Bark, 467
 - analysis of ash from, 1404
 - anatomy; *see* Anatomy of bark
 - as fuel, 525
 - chemical constituents of, 218, 497, 569, 1379, 1404
 - equilibrium moisture content of, 508
 - external characteristics of, 483
 - heat of combustion of, 379, 380, 381, 514
 - heat, transmissivity of, 513
 - inner, 56, 470
 - mineral content of stembark, 218, 1404
 - moisture content of, 493, 568
 - odor of, 484
 - on slabs, 1550, 1610
 - outer, 56, 474, 477
 - percentage of log weight, 1547
 - percentage of tree volume, 1545, 1608
 - percentage of tree weight, 562, 1541, 1544, 1607
 - physical and mechanical properties of, 501
 - production of per acre, loblolly, 586
 - quantities of, 1544

Bark (*Continued*)

- ratio of inner to outer, 496
- shrinkage of, 508
- species comparisons, 36, 483
- specific gravity of, 501
- specific heat of, 509
- strength of, 504
- thickness of, 487
- tonnage available annually, 1368
- uses in agriculture and landscaping, 511
- uses in industry, 525
- volume of, per cord, 1557
- volume per tree, 1545, 1546
- weight and volume in slabwood, 1549
- weight per cord, 1547
- weight per log, 1545, 1608
- weight per M b.f. log scale, 1547, 1609
- weight per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1548, 1549, 1609
- weight per tree, 1527, 1541, 1546
- Bark and wood, relative volumes, 86
- Barkers, types of
 - drum, 829, 830
 - pole shaver, 831, 833, 834
 - ring, 830, 831
- Bark, industrial utilization of, 525
 - as fuel, 1367
 - chemical utilization of, 526
 - in fiberboard manufacture, 526
 - in paper manufacture, 526
 - in particleboard manufacture, 527
 - in the manufacture of charcoal, 1498
 - tonnage available annually, 1368
 - uses by the oil industry, 525
- Bark, use in agriculture and landscaping, 514
 - bark and sawdust pH, 515
 - carrier for fertilizer, 522
 - for frost protection in orchards, 1406
 - ground cover for landscaping effects, 524
 - mulch, 523
 - nitrogen depletion, 515
 - peatmoss in relation to, 515
 - potting medium, 517
 - poultry litter, 524
 - rooting medium, 519
 - soil amendments, 520
- Barrel treatment, 1094
- Basidiomycetes*, 651, 656
- Beams; *see* Laminated beams
- Bending by use of,
 - ammonia, 1054
 - lamination, 1057
 - steam, 1038
 - urea, 1054

see also Plasticizing wood with ammonia
see also Steam bending
- Benzene hexachloride; to control ambrosia beetles, 699
- Bergius process of hydrolysis, 1493
- β -propiolactone, stabilization of wood, 1133
- Beta irradiation, results of, 1134
- Binders for molded products, 1207
- Birds; *see* Woodpeckers
- Bisulfite pulping process, 1446, 1449
see also Pulp, sulfite
- Bit types
 - dimensions of, 922
 - illustration of, 920, 921
 - related to hole quality, 934
 - torque and thrust requirement of, 923, 926-929
- Black liquor, fuel value of, 1402, 1403
- Black liquor soap
 - definition of, 1486
 - yield related to wood storage, 744, 745
- Bleaching of
 - groundwood pulp, 1427
 - kraft pulp, 1435
- Block flooring; square yards treated annually, 1064
- Blocking of hardboard, 1356
- Blood glue, 1154, 1176
- Boiling-in-oil, 1027
- Boliden salts; *see* Preservatives
- Bolts, fasteners, 1281
 - allowable lateral loads, 1281-1283, 1284, 1288, 1291
 - condition of service, 1290
 - deformation of, 1283
 - hole size and quality, 1290
 - load distribution in multiple-bolt joints, 1291
- Bolts of wood
 - forced-air drying of, 965
 - equalization of, 987, 988
 - kiln-drying of, 987
- Bonding; *see* Gluing and bonding
- Book paper, 1446
- Borax, 1120, 1124, 1127
- Borax-boric acid; *see* Preservatives
- Bordered pit
 - definition of, 112
 - structure of, 117, 119
 - see also* Pit pairs
- Boric acid, 1119, 1120, 1121, 1122, 1123
- Boring, 918
 - across the grain, 929
 - along the grain, 927
 - bit types, 918-922
 - chip types, 925, 935
 - deep holes, 932
 - directions, 924
 - energy formulae for, 923
 - fundamental aspects of, 919
 - hole quality, 932, 933, 934
 - nomenclature, 918, 920, 921
 - torque and thrust during, 923, 926-932
- Boulton process of conditioning green wood for treatment, 1028
- Bound water, definition of, 276
- Bow in lumber, 980, 992, 993, 994
- Bradding, 1235
- Branches
 - chemical constituents of, 569
 - heat of combustion of, 382
 - mineral content of, 218
 - moisture content of, 274, 568
 - percentage of tree weight, 562, 1541, 1542, 1607

- Branches (*Continued*)
 persistence of, 430
see also Knots
- Branching
 angle of, 432
 genetic variation in, 433
 mode of, 429
- Breaking length of kraft paper, 1442
- Brightness of mechanical pulp
 comparison of stone and refiner ground-wood, 1430
 fungus attack related to, 1422
 newsprint, 1420
- Briquets, charcoal, 1502
- Brown rot, 645, 646
- Buds, species characteristics of dormant, 36
- Building practices; to exclude termites, 681, 685
- Buprestis apricans*, 687
- Burning, 1367
 byproducts of, 1403
 combustion reactions, 1377
 air requirement, 1380
 combustion equations, 1378
 fuel analysis, 1378
 stages of combustion, 1381
 domestic fireplaces, stoves, and furnaces, 1406
 heat content, 1382
 ignition of wood, 1370
 steam generators, 1383
 bark supply for, 1386
 char emission control in, 1394
 economics of, 1385
 efficiency of, 1383
 equipment for, 1387
 fuels for, 1398
 waste incinerators
- Burst factor of
 kraft pulp, 1441
 stone and refiner groundwood, 1430
 stone groundwood for newsprint, 1420
- Butt joints, 1174
 glues for, 1174
 strength of, 1174
- Butt logs, percentage of tree volume, 1522
- Butt rot, red-brown, 440
- Byproducts; from bark combustion, 1403, 1404
- C**
- Calcium
 in bark, 500
 in stemwood, 218, 220
 in tree parts, 218
- Calcium carbonate pigments, 1340
- Callitroid thickening, 100, 105
- Cambial zone, 57
- Cambium
 activation, 62
 cell types, 60
 cessation, 67
 daughter cell, 57
 differentiation, 64
 division, 57, 58, 59, 65
 initial, 57
 mother cell, 57
 origin, 60
- Cambium (*Continued*)
 vascular cambium, 57
- Cambium, cork; *see* Phellogen
- Camptonotus pennsylvanicus*, 711
- Cankers, 433, 434
- Capillary condensation, 276
- Carbohydrates
 in bark, 497
 in needles, 594
- Carbohydrate stabilization, kraft pulp yield related to, 1438
- Carpenter ants, 711
- Carpenter bees, 712
- Carton, 676
- Casehardening, relief of, 974, 975
- Casein glue, 1155
- Ceilings
 impact isolation in, 355
 resonance frequencies of, 349
- Celcure
 effectiveness against termites, 680
see also Preservatives
- Cell differentiation, 60
- Cell dimensions; *see* Tracheid dimensions
- Cell division
 in phellogen, 478
 periclinal, 57, 58, 59, 65
 pseudotransverse, 57, 59
 rate of cell production, 65
- Cell enlargement, 58, 65
- Cellog treatment, 1090
- Cellophane, 1454
- Cellulase; metabolism by termites, 675
- Cellulose
 correlation with compression wood content, 195
 definition of, 188, 190, 191, 192
 degree of polymerization, 190
 fiber saturation point of, 278
 in rootwood, 569
 in various tree parts, 569
 organization in cell wall, 191
 quantity in wood, 188, 190
 specific gravity of, 238
 specific heat of, 367, 368
 structure, 191
- Cell-wall density, 238
 for all species, 239
 experimental data relating to, 239
 in loblolly pine, 239, 240
 in longleaf pine, 239
 in spruce pine, 239, 240
 methods of measuring, 238, 239
 when water swollen, 240
- Cell-wall thickening, 58, 64, 65
- Centurus aurifrons*, 720
- Ceratocystis*, 648
- Chain saws, 880
 nomenclature of, 880, 881
 power and energy required for, 881
 types of saws, 881, 882
 types of teeth, 880
- Char
 control of emissions, 1394, 1399-1401
 definition of, 1394
 sieve, analysis of, 1398
- Characterization of wood, 53
- Charcoal, 1499
 activated carbon, 1503

Charcoal (*Continued*)

- analysis of, 1503
- briquetting equipment, 1502
- equipment to manufacture, 1500
- heat of combustion of, 379, 1503
- market prices of, 1499, 1502
- multiple hearth furnace for, 1500
- producers of, 1499
- production of, annual, 1499
- regional sources of, 1499
- yield per cord of stumps destructively distilled, 1485
- yield per ton of stemwood, 1499, 1500
- Checks in plywood, 1190
- Chemical constituents of bark, 497, 569
 - ash, 218, 500, 1404
 - carbohydrates, 497
 - extractives, 499
 - lignin, 498
 - phenolic acids, 498
- Chemical constituents of branches, 218, 569
- Chemical constituents of needles, 218, 569
 - 589
 - alcohol-benzene extractive content, 594
 - analyzed as fodder, 596
 - inorganic, 218, 590, 591
 - oil, 592, 593
 - other organic components, 593
- Chemical constituents of rootwood, 569
- Chemical constituents of wood, 187, 188, 569
 - effect on shrinking and swelling, 295
 - specific heat of, 367, 368
- Chemical constituents of wood, as altered by
 - acids, 606-608
 - alkalis, 611, 613, 615
 - gamma radiation, 638
 - metal contact, 617
 - steam, 624, 625
 - ultraviolet light, 633
 - weathering, 635
- Chemical processing, 1475
 - charcoal, 1499
 - hydrolysis, 1493
 - kraft lignin, 1498
 - naval stores, 1476
 - steroids and proteins, 1504
- Chemical seasoning, 1025
- Chemonite; *see* Preservatives
- Chipbreaker, planer, 884, 885
- Chip formation
 - down-milling, 828
 - in boring, 925, 935
 - in chipping headrigs, 836
 - in disk chippers, 916
 - in planing, 762, 815, 816
 - in sanding, 896
 - in veneer cutting, 775, 899
 - up-milling, 813
- Chip formation in orthogonal cutting
 - 90-0 mode, 762, 766
 - 0-90 mode, 775
 - 90-90 mode, 781, 789
- Chip marks, 817
- Chipped grain
 - definition of, 762
 - in planed wood, 817
- Chipper types for
 - cordwood, 915
 - longwood, 915, 917
 - portability, 917
 - rechipping, 917
 - residues, 917
- Chipping, 910, 917
 - chip dimensions, 910
 - chip formation, 912
 - chipper types, 915
 - chip shredding, 911
 - cuts per cubic foot chipped, 914
 - nomenclature for, 916
 - power required, 912, 918
 - spout angle related to, 912
- Chipping headrigs, 832
 - advantages and disadvantages, 845
 - comparison with sawmills, 846
 - definition of, 832
 - end-milling configuration, 838
 - modes of cutting, 836
 - planing configuration, 836
 - power requirement of, 835
 - productivity, 843
 - shaping-lathe configuration, 840
 - yield of chips from, 844, 845
- Chips for pulp; *see* Pulp chips
- Chip thickness
 - control of in pulp chips, 912
 - definition of, 761, 870
 - down-milling, 827
 - kraft pulping uniformity related to, 1438
 - orthogonal cutting, 761
 - related to specific cutting energy, 872
 - related to tool force, 768, 769
 - up-milling, 811, 812
- Chip types during 0-90 cutting
 - cantilever beam failures, 779
 - compression tearing, 775, 778
 - continuous veneer, 775, 776
 - tension checks, 775, 780
- Chip types in 90-0 cutting
 - Franz Type I, 762, 763
 - Franz Type II, 762, 765
 - Franz Type III, 764, 766
 - occurrence of, 766
- Chip types during 90-90 cutting
 - McKenzie Type I, 781, 787
 - McKenzie Type II, 781, 788
 - occurrence of, 789
- Chip types in peripheral milling
 - Type I, 815
 - Type II, 815
 - Type III, 816
 - up- and down-milling, 828
- Chlordane; effectiveness against termites, 680
- Chlorinated paraffin, 1127
- Choctawhatchee race of sand pine, 42
- Chromate, salt finishes, formulation, 1331, 1332

- Chromated copper arsenate; *see* Preservatives, copper arsenate, chromated
- Chromated zinc arsenate; *see* Preservatives, zinc arsenate, chromated
- Chromated zinc chloride
effectiveness against termites, 680
see also Preservatives, zinc chloride, chromated
- Chromaticity coordinates, 338, 342
- Chromium trioxide, in natural finishes, 1331
- CIE color characterization, 338, 339
- Circular saws, 867
chip geometry, 870
climb- and counter-sawing, 867, 869
double-arbor gangsaws, 873
insert-tooth rip saws, 871, 872
kinematics of, 867
log cutoff saws, 874
nomenclature for, 868, 869
rough trimmers, 876
smooth-trim saws, 876
specific energy for, 871, 872
swage-set rip saws, 874
thin rip saws, 874
- Clearance angle, 761, 812
- Clear finishes, 1348
- Cleaving, 804
definition of, 798, 804
factors affecting, 805
force and work required, 805, 806, 807, 808
- Climate, 12
- Climb-sawing, 867, 869
- Clinching, 1234
- Coal tar
effectiveness against termites, 680
see also Preservatives
- Coal tar creosote
effectiveness against termites, 680
see also Preservatives, creosote
- Coal tar creosote and crankcase oil; effectiveness against termites, 679
- Coaters, finish
curtain, 1357
roll, 1357
- Coatings
moisture excluding, 749, 751
to control end checks, 962, 963
utilizing rosin, 1491
see also Paint
- Cobra process of treatment, 1095
- Coincidence frequency, definition of, 352
- Colaptes auratus*, 720
- Colaptes cafer*, 720
- Cold soak treatment, 1092
- Color change, of painted hardboard, 1356
- Color difference, 342, 344
- Color of bark periderms, 36, 484
- Color of pulp chips; in water-sprayed pile, 743
- Color of wood, 338
as altered by light, 344, 629
chromaticity coordinates, 238, 242
CIE characterization of, 338, 339
color difference, 342, 344
effect of outdoor exposure on, 344
hue, 341, 343
- Color of wood (*Continued*)
in compression wood, 127
in earlywood and latewood, 343, 344
in sapwood and heartwood, 338
luminance factor, 340, 343
methods of defining, 338, 339
Rab characterization of, 339, 340
reflectance, 340, 341
tristimulus values, 338, 342
- Combustion; *see* Burning
- Combustion reactions, 1377
air requirement, 1380
equations, 1378
fuel analysis, 1378
stages in combustion, 1381
- Commercial forest land, acreage, 1, 5
- Common names, 5
- Composting, 521, 522, 658
- Compreg*, 1130
- Compression failures, 394
fibril angle related to, 396
mode, 394, 395, 397
wind induced, 439
- Compression from nosebar, 902
- Compression strength
cross grain related to, 436
moisture content related to, 404, 406, 408
parallel to grain, 408
perpendicular to grain, 408
specific gravity related to, 402, 406
strain rate related to, 399
variability of, 407, 412
- Compression tearing, 775, 778
- Compression wood, 125
alpha-cellulose content of, 127
anatomy of, 125, 127
cellulose content of, 127
chemical content of, 195
color in, 127
definition of, 125
degrade from, 436
detection of, 127
extractives in, 211
lignin content of, 127, 201
location of, 128
longitudinal shrinkage of, 125
occurrence of, 127
proportion of, in juvenile and mature wood, 128
pulp yield of, 127
shrinking and swelling of, 290, 299, 306
strength of, 125
tracheid length in, 127
volume of, in pines, 128
volume of, in trees, 128
- Condensation and decay, 657
- Conditioning, 974
after drying, 974
for preservative treatment, 1028, 1088
- Conductive heat transfer media, 1027
- Cones
heat of combustion of, 379, 380
species characteristics of, 36
- Coniferales, order of, 5
- Connectors, plate, 1312
allowable loads, 1312
illustrations of, 1313

- Connectors, timber, 1293
 allowable loads, 1296-1312
 for square spike grids, 1311
 impact, 1303
 long-continued, 1296
 normal duration, 1303
 wind and earthquake, 1303
 shear plates, 1294
 spike grids, 1295
 split rings, 1294
 toothed rings, 1294
- Consistency
 definition of, 1426
 in pulp in grinding pit; 1426
- Contact rolls on sanders, 894
- Conversion tables, 1528
 board feet log scale to board feet lumber scale, 1529, 1594, 1595
 board feet log scale to cubic feet, 1530, 1596, 1597
 cords to board feet log scale, 1528
 cords to board feet lumber scale, 1528
 cords to cubic feet, 1528, 1557
 cords to weight, 1529
 cubic feet to board feet lumber scale, 1530
 cubic feet to log weight, 238, 1531
 log volume in board feet by various log scales, 1529, 1562-1569
 log weight to board feet log scale, 1531, 1597-1601
 log weight to board feet lumber scale, 1533, 1602
 tree volume in board feet by various log scales, 1530, 1572-1578
see also Measurement units
see also Yields and measures, products
see also Yields and measures, residues
- Copper arsenate, ammoniacal; *see* Preservatives
- Copper arsenate, chromated; *see* Preservatives
- Copper chromate, acid; *see* Preservatives
- Copper chromate finish, 1331
- Copper hydroxide, in a natural finish, 1331
- Copperized chromated zinc chloride; *see* Preservatives, zinc chloride, copperized, chromated
- Copper naphthenate; *see* Preservatives
- Copper sulfate; *see* Double diffusion treatment
- Copper sulfate and sodium arsenite; *see* Preservatives
- Coprinus ephemarus*, 658
- Coptotermes formosanus*, 669
see also Formosan termite
- Cord, 1513
 definition of, 1513, 1514
 weight of, 1525
see also Measurement units
- Corewood
 moisture content of, 273
 proportion wide-ringed, 439
 shrinking and swelling in, 292
see also Juvenile wood
- Cork cambia, 56
see also Phellogen
- Counter-sawing, 867, 869
- Crankcase oil; *see* Preservatives
- Crassulae, definition of, 113
- Creosote; *see* Preservatives
- Cronartium cerebrum*, 435
- Cronartium fusiforme*, 433, 434
- Crook
 in lumber, 980, 992, 993, 994
 in tree stems, 426
- Crook in stems; causes of, 427
- Crossarms
 number treated annually, 1064
 preservation of, 1107
- Cross grain, 435
 definition of, 435
 methods of measuring, 435
 reduction in strength from, 436
- Crossties, number treated annually, 1064
- Crown diameter related to tree volume, 1583
- Crown ratio related to oleoresin yield, 1481
- Cryptotermes brevis*, 683
see also Termites, drywood
- Crystals in bark, 476
- Cubic foot, as a unit of measure, 1522
see also Measurement units
- Cuprammonium process for regenerated cellulose, 1454
- Curtain coaters, 1357
- Cutting; *see* Machining
- Cutting angles, diagrammed for
 bandsawing, 850, 851
 boring, 919, 920, 921
 Chain sawing, 880, 881
 chipping, 914, 917
 circular sawing, 868
 gangsawing, 863, 864
 peripheral milling, 812
 planing, 812
 rotary peeling, 901
 shearing and cleaving, 798
 slicing, 900, 901
- Cutting angles, definitions
 clearance, 761, 812, 868
 cutting (chain saws only), 881
 deviation, 793
 front bevel, 868
 knife (veneer cutting only), 901
 rake, 761, 812, 868
 sharpness, 761, 812, 868
 top bevel, 868
- Cutting angles; power to plane related to, 819
- Cutting edge sharpness; *see* Dulling of cutter
- Cutting force prediction equations
 for 90-0 mode, 774
 for 0-90 mode, 780
 for 90-90 mode, 788, 790
- Cutting forces, when
 cleaving, 805, 807, 809
 orthogonal cutting, 764, 772, 782, 790
 shearing, 800, 802
- Cutting velocity
 force related to, 760, 761

- Cutting velocity (*Continued*)
 veneer quality related to, 907, 909
- Cutting with vibrating knife; *see* Inclined cutting
- Cyanoethylation, stabilization of wood, 1133
- Cyclone collectors for char, 1399, 1400
- Cylinders in planers, 882, 890
- Cytokinins, 64
- D**
- Daedalea berkeleyi*, 657
- Decay
 brown rot, 645, 646
 soft rot, 645, 647, 648
 white rot, 645
- Decay in trees
 butt-rot, red-brown, 440
 heart rot, 440
- Decibel, definition of, 347
- Defects, 426
 cankers, 433, 434
 compression failures, 439
 compression wood, 436
 cross grain, 435
 decay, 440
 in nailed joints, 1261
 insect damage, 440, 665
 knots, 427, 429
 pitch, 436
 shake, 439
 wide rings, 439
- Defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
 defects, 426
 log grades, 443
 lumber grade yield, 442-454
 pile grades, 459
 pole grades, 454
 scale reduction for log defects, 1519, 1520, 1521, 1566
 tree grades, 440
 veneer block grades, 448
- Defects in dry lumber; *see* Drying defects in lumber
- Defects in machined surfaces
 abrasive grit marks, 896
 chip marks, 817
 chipped grain, 762, 817
 from McKenzie Type II chips, 788
 fuzzy grain, 765, 817
 knife marks, chart of, 887
 loosened grain, 817
 machine-bored holes, 933
 of veneer, 778, 779, 780, 902-909
 raised grain, 767, 817
 sawn compared to laser-cut, 940, 941
 snipe, in planing, 884
- Definitions
 of southern pine, 5
see also Nomenclature
- Degradation of wood by chemicals, 606
 heat, 620
 insects
 ambrosia beetles, 698
 anobiids, 707
 carpenter ants, 711
 carpenter bees, 712
 common furniture beetle, 705
- Degradation of wood by (*Continued*)
 Ips engraver beetles, 695
 old-house borers, 702
 pine sawyers, 700
 southern pine beetles, 688
 termites, drywood, 682
 termites, subterranean, 669
 turpentine borer, 687
see also Treatment for protection from
 ionizing radiation, 636
 light, 627, 1338, 1342
 marine borers and birds
 crustacean borers, 717
 molluscan borers, 713
 woodpeckers, 720
see also Treatment for protection from
 plant organisms, 643
 bacterial attack, 650
 sap stains and molds, 646
 wood destroying fungi, 645
see also Treatment for protection from
 weather, 634, 635
 Degrade during kiln-drying, 982, 983
- Delamination of plywood, 1187-1191
- Demand for southern pine, 10
- Dendrocopos scalaris*, 720
- Dendroctonus frontalis*, 688
- Dendroctonus terebrans*, 687
- Dendrology, 35
- Densa* Little & Dorman, variety of slash pine, 46
- Dense grained pine, definition of, 416
- Densification ratio, particleboard, 1197
- Density of wood
 definition of, 236
see also Specific gravity
- Depth of cut, related to cutting forces, 764, 772, 782, 790
see also Chip thickness
- Description and range of pine species, 12
- Design stresses, 416
 laminated beams, 420, 1057, 1058
 lumber, 416
 piles, 420
 plywood, 421
 poles, 419
see also Allowable loads, mechanical fasteners
- destructively distilled naval stores, 1477, 1485
- Dethiamination, 651
- Deviation angle, 793
- Dialdehyde starch glue, 1176
- Dieldrin, effectiveness against termites, 680
- Dielectric constant, 385
- Dielectric heating, drying by, 1025
- Diffusion of heat during high-temperature drying, 327
- Diffusion of moisture, 322
- Diffusion treatment, 1094
- Diffusivity, heat, 376, 377
- Dimensions, standard for lumber, 1518
- Dipentene
 definition, 1486

- Dipentene (*Continued*)
 yield per ton of steam-distilled stump-wood, 1486
- Diplodia natalensis*, 648
- Diploxylon members of genus *Pinus*, 5
- Dipping treatment, 1092
- Dips; moisture excluding, 749, 751
- Dissolving pulp; *see* Pulp, dissolving
- Distinguishing features of southern pines, 35
- Double diffusion treatment, 1094
 effectiveness against termites, 680
- Down-milling, 825
 chip formation during, 828
 definition of, 814
 power required in, 827
- Doyle log scale, 1519
 contents of logs in board feet, 1562, 1563
 contents of trees in board feet, 1572, 1573
 conversion to cubic feet, 1593, 1596, 1597
 conversion to other log scales, 1592, 1593
 conversion to pounds, 1532, 1597-1601
 deductions for defects, 1519
 definitions of, 1519
 tree overrun from, 1595
- Drift bolts, 1292
 allowable lateral load, 1293
 allowable withdrawal load, 1293
 description of, 1292
- Drilling; *see* Boring
- Drill types; *see* Bit types
- Drum barkers, 829
- Dry-bulb temperature, drying time related to, 324, 328
- Drycopus pileatus*, 720
- Drying, 951
 gluability related to, 1180
 of fuel, 1384
 permeability related to, 312
 reasons for, 951
- Drying at high temperature, mechanism of, 326
 effects of board thickness and specific gravity, dry-bulb and wet-bulb temperatures, and air velocity, 327
 effect of initial moisture content, 328
- Drying at temperatures below 212° F., mechanism of, 317
 diffusion, 322
 effects of board thickness, specific gravity, air velocity, dry-bulb temperature, and wet-bulb depression, 324
 effect of initial moisture content, 324
 free water flow, 318
 from interior, 318
 from wood surface, 317
 moisture profiles, 319
- Drying defects in lumber
 casehardening, 976
 checks and splits, 980
 degrade, 981, 983
 end checks, control of, 962, 963
 pitch exudation, 981, 1023
 shrinkage, 981, 982, 1002, 1022, 1023
 warp, 978, 980, 992, 993, 994, 1022,
- Drying defects in lumber (*Continued*)
 1023
- Drying, energy required for high-temperature kiln
 fan, 992
 heat, 992
 humidity control, 992
- Drying, factors affecting
 air velocity, 324, 328, 996, 998, 999
 dry-bulb temperature, 324, 328
 initial moisture content of wood, 324, 328, 1001
 specific gravity of wood, 324, 327, 1001
 thickness of wood, 324, 327, 998, 999, 1000
 wet-bulb depression, 324, 328, 998, 999, 1000
- Drying, lumber shrinkage during
 kiln-drying above 212° F., 1001
 kiln-drying below 212° F., 982
- Drying mechanism
 at high temperature, 326
 at low temperature, 317
- Drying of products
 bolts, 965, 987, 988
 fiber mats, 1016
 flakes, particles, and fibers, 1011
 fuel, 1384
 lumber, 953, 964, 968, 989
 paper, 1017
 poles and piling, 959, 965, 985, 1002, 1025, 1027
 timbers, 956, 982, 1002, 1025, 1027
 trees, 961
 veneer, 1004
- Drying processes
 air-drying, 951
 chemical seasoning, 1025
 forced-air-drying, 964
 high-frequency dielectric heating, 1025
 high-temperature drying, 988
 in conductive heat transfer media, 1027
 kiln-drying, 967
 press drying, 1020
 with infrared energy, 1024
- Drying schedules; *see* Drying of products
- Drying under restraint
 control of warp by, 992
 experimental mechanism, 990
- DU-AL-CLIP anchors, 1315
- Dulling of cutter
 clearance angle related to, 767, 773
 diagram of, 773
 effect during inclined cutting, 797
 in machining of fire-retardant treated wood, 1126
 in particleboard machining, 767
 on abrasive belts, 898
- Durability of
 painted overlaid plywood, 1355
 plywood, 1187-1191
 treated laminated beams, 1160
 treated posts, 1074
 wood
 of untreated posts, 1076
 of untreated stakes, 1072
see also Degradation of wood
see also Finishing

- Durability of (*Continued*)
see also Preservatives
see also Treating
see also Treatment for preservation
- Duration of load, 1225
 allowable fastener load related to, 1225
 classification of, 1225
- Dutch oven, 1386, 1387
- E**
- Earlywood
 bordered pit encrustations in, 117
 color of, 343, 344
 definition of, 86
 degradation products from ultraviolet irradiation of, 635
 extractive content of, 211
 fiber saturation point of, 277
 friction coefficient of, 360, 364
 gluability of, 1177
 heat of combustion of, 379, 381
 ignition of, 1372-1377
 kraft pulp properties related to, 1439
 lignin content of, 201
 machined surface of, 1179, 1339, 1340
 machining of, 764, 782, 790
 mechanical pulp properties related to, 1417
 moisture content of, 273
 penetration of preservatives in, 1084
 permeability of, 311, 312
 pit aspiration in, 311
 polysaccharide content of, 195
 shrinking and swelling of, 290, 297, 301
 specific heat of, 368
 specific gravity of, 249-259
 specific gravity related to, 1440
 strength retention in acid solutions, 611
 strength retention in alkalis, 615
 surface of veneer, 902, 1177, 1178
 tensile strength of, 397
 termite preference for, 673, 674
 variability of, 249-259
 volume of in tree, 255-259
- Earthquake load, 1225
- Eastern gall rust, 435
- Economic importance of southern pines, 1, 6, 8, 12
- Economizers, 1384
- Edge cracking, of hardboard, 1356
- Edge grain and flat grain, power to plane related to, 818
- Edge-grain wood, best for steam bending, 1048-1051
- Edgings, 1550
 tons per M b.f. log scale, 1550
 tons per M b.f. of lumber sawn, 1549, 1550, 1611
- Electrical properties, 383
 dielectric constant, 385
 power factor, 386
 resistance, 384, 385
- Electrostatic precipitator, 1401
- Elementary fibrils
 fasciculation of, 191, 192
 size of, 94, 191
- Elliotii*, variety of slash pine, 42
- Empty-cell treatment, 1090
- Emulsion paint systems, 1343
- End checks, control of, 962, 963
- End-glued lumber; *see* Lumber, end-glued
- Endoderm of needles, 577, 578
- Environmental effects on wood
 fibril angle, 74
 silvicultural aspects, 75
 specific gravity, 68
 tracheid length, 72
- Enzymes
 as a factor in brown rot, 645, 646
 effect on permeability, 314
 from southern pine, 1504
 of white-rot fungi, 645
- Epidermis of needles, 577, 578, 579
- Epithelial cells
 horizontal, 107, 112, 115
 longitudinal, 101, 106
- Equalizing after drying, 973
- Equilibrium moisture content, 279
 above 212° F., 283, 286, 287
 below 212° F., 284
 below the freezing point of water, 283
 definition of, 279
 during adsorption and desorption, 280
 effect of stress on, 281
 effect of temperature on, 282
 of bark, 509
 of laminated beams, 288
 of particleboard, hardboard, and decorative laminates, 287
 of plywood, 288
 of wood and wood products in use, 288
 related to temperature and relative humidity, 284, 287
- Erdalith; *see* Preservatives
- Erdalith Greensalt; *see* Preservatives
- Ethyl acrylate, 1139
- Ethylene oxide, stabilization of wood, 1132
- Excelsior, 1540
- Excess air, 1381
- Extractives in bark, 499
- Extractives in needles, 569, 594
see also Oil from needles
- Extractives in roots, 569
- Extractives in wood, 202
 between-tree variation, 208
 decay resistance related to, 644
 definition of, 202
 effect on impregnation with plastic, 1137
 effect on specific gravity, 240
 effect on termite resistance, 673, 685
 ether soluble, by species, 206
 fatty acids, by species, 207
 fiber saturation point related to, 277
 friction coefficient related to, 360, 363, 364
 gluability related to, 1181
 gum turpentine composition, 207
 heat of combustion related to, 379, 380, 381
 ignition related to, 1376, 1377
 in compression wood, 211
 in earlywood and latewood, 211
 in heartwood, 208, 211

Extractives in wood (*Continued*)

- in loblolly pine, 205, 208, 211
- in longleaf pine, 205, 213
- in sapwood, 211
- in shortleaf pine, 205, 208
- in slash pine, 205, 208
- in spruce pine, 210
- in Virginia pine, 209
- location of in wood, 202
- mechanical pulp problems related to, 1421
- methods of analysis for, 203
- permeability related to, 313
- physiological role of, 203
- prediction equation of content, 212
- shrinking and swelling related to, 295
- specific heat of, 367, 368
- strength related to, 438
- variability of quantity and composition, 205
- within-tree variation, 210
- wood storage related to, 744

F

Face checking, in plywood, 1190

- index of, 1353
- reduction of, 1353

Face of veneer knife, 902

Fascicle sheath, 576, 577

Fasciculation of elementary fibrils, 191

Fastening; *see* Mechanical fastening

Fatty acids, in extractives, by species, 207

Feed per knife, 887

- down-milling, 825, 827, 887
- up-milling, 811, 812, 887

Fertilizer, bark as carrier for, 522

Fertilizer formulations, as fire retardants, 1119, 1122, 1124

Fiberboard

- hardboard, 1210
- insulation and low-density boards, 1209
- laser cutting of, 939
- location and capacity of plants, 1208, 1209
- preservation of, 1109
- properties related to wood and fiber morphology, 1210
- protection against drywood termites, 685
- southern pine share of market, 1
- standards and test procedures for, 1211
- storage of, 751
- theory of bonding, references, 1208
- thermal conductivity in, 376
- thermal diffusivity in, 378
- use of bark in, 526
- yield per ton of green chips, 1540

Fiber mats, drying of, 1016

Fiber popping in hardboard, 1356

Fibers

- drying of, 1011
- see also* Tracheids

Fiber saturation point, 276

- as related to extractive content, 277
- as related to specific gravity, 278
- concepts of adsorption, 276
- definition of, 276

Fiber saturation point (*Continued*)

- methods of measuring, 276, 277
- of cellulose and holocellulose, 278
- of earlywood and latewood, 277

Fibers in needles

- length of, 579
- macerated, 580
- uses for, 595

Fibril angle, 151

- compression failure related to, 396
- definition of, 151
- effect of environment on, 74
- effect on shrinking and swelling, 297
- measurement of, 151
- thermal conductivity related to, 374
- tension failure related to, 397, 398
- variation in, 152

Fibrils; *see* Microfibrils

Fingerjoints, 1164

- geometry of, 1165, 1168, 1169, 1170
- glues for, 1166, 1167
- methods of strength evaluation of, 1174
- nonstructural, 1165
- strength of, 1167-1174
- strength of, related to pith-associated wood, 1172, 1173
- structural, 1167

Finishes, types of

- clear, 1348
- interior, 1360
- natural weathered, 1327, 1353
- overlay, paintable, 1349, 1355
- paint, 1337, 1354
- stain, 1332, 1353

Finishing, 1325

see also Planing and moulding

Finishing, of products

- floors, 1361
- hardboard, 1356
- interior wall paneling, 1360
- laminated beams, 1360
- lumber, exterior, 1327, 1332, 1337, 1348, 1349
- particleboard, 1359
- plywood, 1352
- siding, 1334, 1347, 1351
- signs, 1359

Fire and wood, 1110, 1111

Fire losses of buildings, annual, 1110

Fireplace wood, references on, 1406

Fire retardant chemicals, effectiveness of, 1117

- aluminum sulfate, 1119, 1120, 1124
- ammonia gas, 1121, 1122
- ammonium bromide, 1119
- ammonium chloride, 1120
- ammonium phosphate
 - dibasic, 1117, 1118, 1120, 1124
 - high-phosphate fertilizer, 1122
 - monobasic, 1119, 1120, 1122, 1123, 1124, 1127
 - polyphosphate fertilizer, 1122, 1124
- ammonium sulfate, 1119, 1122, 1123
- antimony trioxide, 1127
- borax, 1120, 1124, 1127
- boric acid, 1119, 1120, 1121, 1122, 1123
- chlorinated paraffin, 1127

- Fire retardant chemicals, effectiveness of
(Continued)
- fertilizer formulations, 1119, 1122, 1124
 - magnesium chloride, 1121
 - magnesium phosphate, 1121
 - monobasic magnesium phosphate, 1119
 - Non-Com, 1125
 - phosphoric acid, 1119
 - sodium borates, 1119, 1120, 1122, 1123
 - sodium chloride, 1119, 1122, 1123
 - sodium dichromate, 1119, 1122, 1123
 - sodium silicate, 1127
 - zinc borate, 1127
 - zinc chloride, 1119, 1122, 1124
- Fire retardant chemicals, side effects in wood
- corrosion, 1125
 - diminished machinability, 1126
 - gluability, 1126, 1161
 - moisture absorption, 1125
 - paintability, 1126
 - strength reduction, 1126
 - withdrawals resistance of nails related to, 1232
- Fire retardant chemicals, standards for penetration and retention
- chromated zinc chloride, 1124
 - chromated zinc chloride (FR), 1124
 - Minalith, 1124
 - Non-Com, 1125
 - Pyrasote, 1125
- Fire retardant coatings, 1127
- application of, 1128
 - permanence, 1128
 - reasons for effectiveness, 1127
- Fire retardants, 1110
- coatings of, 1127
 - impregnation with, 1116
 - methods of evaluation of, 1111
 - comparability of tests, 1116
 - eight-foot tunnel furnace test, 1112
 - large-tunnel test ASTM E 84, 1111
 - Schlyter panel test, 1115
 - USDA Forest Products Laboratory fire-tube test, 1112
 - need for, 1110
 - permanence of, 1125, 1128
 - procedures in pressure treating with drying, 1117
 - impregnation, 1116
 - reasons for effectiveness of, 1111, 1127
 - side effects of; *see* Fire retardant chemicals, side effects in wood
 - use and acceptance of, 1127
 - wood and fire, 1110, 1111
- Fire retardation; *see* Treatment for fire retardation
- Fire-tube test, 1112
- Fixed carbon, 1378, 1379
- Flakes
- drying of, 1011
 - manufacture of, 836, 842
- Flame spread index, 1119, 1123
- Flash dryers, 1011
- configuration of, 1011
- Flash dryers (Continued)
- factors, affecting performance of, 1015, 1016
- Flat-grain wood, poorest for steam bending, 1048-1051
- Flavonoids and stilbenoids in needles, 594
- Flickers, 720
- Floors
- finishing of, 1361
 - impact isolation, 355, 356
 - maintenance of, 1363
- Floor seals, 1362
- Flue-gas cleaning equipment, 1397
- Fluor chrome arsenate phenol, effectiveness against termites, 680
- Fly ash, 1394
- Fodder, needles as, 595
- see also* Animal food from wood residues
- Fomes pini, 440, 645, 651
- Forced air drying of
- lumber, 964
 - poles and round bolts, 965
- Forces during orthogonal cutting
- comparison for three directions, 791
 - 90-0 mode, 764, 767-771, 772
 - 0-90 mode, 772, 777, 782, 783-786
 - 90-90 mode, 772, 783, 790, 791-795
 - see also* Cutting force prediction equations
- Forest land, commercial acreage of, 1, 5
- Forked tree stems, 428
- Formaldehyde, crosslinking of wood with, 1132
- Formosan termite, 676
- detection of, 677
 - egg production of, 676
 - identification of, 676, 677, 678
 - limits of attack, 677
 - nest description, 675, 676, 677
 - occurrence of, 669, 676
 - protection from, 679-682
- Freeness of stone groundwood, 1420, 1426, 1430
- Free water
- definition of, 276
 - movement of during drying, 318, 326
- Friction coefficient between wood and steel, 357
- definition of, 357
 - effect of lubricants, 365
 - effect of temperature, 364
 - effect of wood variables, 360, 364
 - effect on chip types, 774
- Fuel
- bark as, 380, 514, 1367
 - charcoal, 1499
 - wood as, 379, 381, 1367
- Fuel analysis, bark
- proximate, 1379
 - ultimate, 1379
- Fuel suspension dryer, 1384
- Fuel values, comparative, 1385
- Full-cell treatment, 1090
- Fumigants, for drywood termites, 686
- Fungi
- beneficial uses of, 658
 - discoloration of finishes, control of, 1329

Fungi (*Continued*)

- effect on permeability, 314, 646, 649
- manner of attack, 645, 646, 649
- physiological requirements of, 650
- survival periods in dry wood, 655
- Fungi infections
 - mechanical pulp quality related to, 1422
 - preservative absorption related to, 1084
- Fungi, wood destroying
 - white rot, 645
 - brown rot, 645, 646
 - soft rot, 645, 647, 648
- Furnaces, references on, 1406
- Furniture beetle, common, 705
- Fusiform rays; *see* Rays
- Fusiform rust, 433, 434
- Fuzzy grain
 - definition of, 765
 - in planed wood, 817

G

- Galactoglucomannans, 191
- Galvanized nails, 1241
- Gamma radiation, effects of on wood, 638, 639, 1134
- Genetic manipulation of
 - branching habit, 433
 - moisture content, 272
 - stem crook, fork, and taper, 426, 428
 - wood quality, 76
- Geographical distribution of southern pines, 6, 8, 12
- Geographic location
 - moisture content related to, 269, 272
 - specific gravity related to, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250
 - strength properties related to, 410
- Gibberellic acid, 63
- Gluability, as affected by
 - drying procedures, 1181
 - extractives and pitch, 1181
 - fire retardants, 1161
 - hardwood cores in pine-faced plywood, 1187
 - molds, 1181
 - preservatives, 1159, 1182
- Glue factors affecting particleboard properties, 1200-1207
- Glue factors affecting plywood bond quality
 - glue extenders, 1183
 - glue spread and thickness, 1184, 1185
 - resin formulation, 1183
 - resin properties, 1182, 1184
- Glues, 1154-1157, 1182, 1204
 - adhesion, references on theory of, 1154
 - non-resin types, 1154
 - animal, 1154
 - blood, 1154, 1176
 - casein, 1155
 - dialdehyde starch, 1176
 - soybean, 1154, 1176
 - starch, 1154
 - spreading of, 1162, 1184, 1185

Glues (*Continued*)

- synthetic resin types, 1155
 - melamine formaldehyde, 1156
 - phenol formaldehyde, 1155, 1182-1185
 - polyvinyl emulsion, 1157
 - resorcinol formaldehyde, 1156
 - urea formaldehyde, 1156, 1204-1207
- techniques for good bond, 1161
- Glues, types for,
 - end joints, 1166, 1174
 - exterior application, 1158, 1176
 - fire-retardant-treated wood, 1161
 - interior applications, 1158, 1176
 - laminated beams, 1158, 1159
 - molded products, 1207
 - particleboard, 1204-1207
 - plywood, 1176, 1182-1185
 - preservative-treated wood, 1159
- Gluing and bonding, of products, 1154
 - end-glued lumber, 1163
 - fiberboard, 1208
 - laminated wood, 1157
 - molded products, 1207
 - overlays, 1191, 1350
 - particleboard, 1191
 - plywood, 1175
- Golden-fronted woodpecker, 720
- Grades of
 - logs, 443
 - lumber, 442-452
 - piles, 459
 - poles, 454
 - trees, 440
 - veneer, 452
 - veneer blocks, 448
- Grade yield of lumber from
 - loblolly and shortleaf pine logs, 454
 - loblolly and shortleaf pine trees, 445-447
 - longleaf and slash pine logs, 453
 - longleaf and slash pine trees, 442, 443, 444
 - southern pine trees, 448, 449, 450, 451
- Grates in steam generators
 - dump, 1394
 - travelling, 1394
- Green liquor, as chip protectant, 745
- Grinder, mechanical pulp, 1421
- Ground-board method, 680
- Ground cover, bark as, 524
- Growth and yield, 12
 - of bark, 562
 - of needles, 562, 576, 581-586
 - of roots, 562
- Growth inhibitors, 64
- Growth initiation and cessation, 12, 62, 67
- Growth per acre, 1, 12
 - of needles, 581
- Growth promoters, 64, 66
- Growth rate
 - bark specific gravity related to, 502
 - moisture content related to, 271
 - permeability related to, 312
 - plywood quality related to, 1177
 - shrinking and swelling related to, 301

- Growth rate (*Continued*)
 specific gravity related to, 244
 steam bending related to, 1048, 1051
 strength properties related to, 409
 veneer quality related to, 903, 1177
- Growth rings, description of, 86, 87
- Gum, 1476
- Gum naval stores, 1476
see also Naval stores
- Gum rosin, 1483
- Gum turpentine, 1483
- H**
- Half-bordered pit, definition of, 122
- Hardboard
 equilibrium moisture content of, 287
 failures in finishes of
 blocking, 1356
 color change, 1356
 edge cracking, 1356
 fiber popping, 1356
 holdout, 1356
 laser cutting of, 939
 location and capacity of plants, 1208, 1209
 manufacture of, 1209
 moisture content in use, 288
 painting of, 1356
 failure types, 1356
 prime coat application, 1356
 primers, 1357
 substrate, 1356
 topcoats, 1358
 prefinished, 1358
 standards and test procedures for, 1210
 storage of, 751
 thermal diffusivity in, 378
- Hardness
 modification of, 1128
 species average values, 406
- Heart rot, 440
- Heartwood, 87
 age first formed, 92
 air-drying of, 957
 as function of height, 91
 aspiration of pit membranes in, 117
 color of, 338
 color test for, 89
 conversion to, 89
 crown length related to, 93
 crown width related to, 91
 decay resistance of, 644
 extractives in, 208, 211
 moisture content in, 273
 penetration of preservatives in, 1083, 1093, 1094
 permeability of, 310
 pulping by sulfite process, 1447-1449, 1462
 shrinking and swelling of, 295
 specific heat of, 368
 termite attack on, 673, 685
 tree age effect on, 90, 93
 white rot attack in, 645
- Heartwood volume, in:
 loblolly, 89, 90, 92
 longleaf, 91, 92
 pitch, 92, 93
- Heartwood volume, in (*Continued*)
 pond, 92, 93
 sand, 91, 92
 shortleaf, 92
 slash, 92
 spruce, 93
 Table-Mountain, 92, 93
 Virginia, 92, 93
- Heat degradation of wood, 620
 in air, 400, 620, 621
 in steam, 623-627, 628
 in water, 622
- Heat index, 1123, 1124
- Heat of combustion, 378
 method of measurement, 378
- Heat of combustion of
 bark, 379, 380, 381, 514
 charcoal, 379
 cones, 379, 382
 earlywood and latewood, 379
 knots, 379, 380
 kraft black liquor, 379, 382
 loblolly pine stemwood, 379, 381
 needles, 379, 589
 various tree parts, 379
 resin, 379
 resinous stumpwood, 379, 380
 rootwood, 379
 spruce pine bark, 379
 tops, 379, 382
- Heat of wetting, 306
- Heat of sorption, 306
- Heat transmissivity, 369
 conductivity of particleboard and fiberboard, 376
 conductivity of plywood, 375
 fibril angle related to conductivity, 374
 methods for determination of, 371
 moisture content related to conductivity, 372, 373, 374
 specific gravity related to conductivity, 371, 372, 373
 steady state diffusion, 369, 370
 temperature related to conductivity, 375
 thermal diffusivity of wood, fiberboard, hardboard, and particleboard, 377, 378
 unsteady state diffusion, 369, 370
- Heat value, 1382
- usable heat content, 1382
see also Heat of combustion
- Hemicellulose
 definition of, 188
 quantity in rootwood, 569
 quantity in wood, 188
- Heptachlor, effectiveness against termites, 680
- Heritability; *see* Genetic manipulation
- Herreshoff multiple-hearth furnace, 1500
- Historical background, machining, 758
- Hog fuel, 1398
- Holdout of hardboard prime coat, 1356
- Holocellulose
 definition of, 188
 fiber saturation point of, 278
 isolation of, 189
 specific gravity of, 238
 specific heat of, 367, 368

Hormonal growth stimulus, 62, 66
 Hot and cold bath treatment, 1092
 Hot-pressing of plywood, 1187
 Hue, 341, 343
 Humidity
 absolute, definition of, 279
 relative, definition of, 279
 Hurricane damage
 fastenings to resist, 1224
 to trees, 439
 Hybrids needle anatomy as key to, 579
 Hydrogen cyanide, effectiveness against
 drywood termites, 686
 Hydrolysis, 1493
 as affected by ionizing radiation, 639
 definition of, 1493
 dilute acid process, 1494
 concentrated acid processes, 1494
 prehydrolysis, 1494
 products of, 1495
 ethyl alcohol, 1495
 sugar and molasses, 1495
 triethylene glycol process, 1494
 wood residues as animal food, 1497
 Hygroscopic material, definition of, 276
Hylotrupes bajulus, 702
 Hypoderm of needles, 577, 578, 579

I

IAA, 63, 66
 Ignition of wood, 1370
 Ignition temperature, definition of, 1370
 Impact bending strength
 clear wood values, 406
 reduction from cross grain, 436
 Impact isolation in floors, 355, 356
 Impact load, 1225
Impreg, 1130
 Incinerators, 1402, 1405, 1406
Incisstermes minor, 684
Incisstermes snyderi, 683
 see also Termites, drywood
 Inclined cutting, 793
 of veneer, 904
 Indole-3-acetic acid, 62, 66
 Infrared energy, drying by, 1024
 Initials, cambial
 fusiform, 61
 length of, 62
 ray, 61
 survival of, 62
 Inner bark
 crystals in, 476
 definition of, 470
 formation of, 56
 longitudinal parenchyma in, 475
 rays in, 475
 sieve cells in, 472
 thickness of, 470, 496
 Inoculation by fungi spores, 645, 654
 Inorganic components, 214
 definition of, 215
 in corewood and outer wood, 218-226
 in earlywood and latewood, 218-226
 in loblolly pine, 217, 218
 in needles, stembark, branches, and
 stemwood, 218
 in spruce pine, 217

Inorganic components (*Continued*)

 methods of analysis for, 215
 mineral constituents, 220, 221, 222,
 223-226
 prediction equation for ash content,
 219
 prediction equations for mineral con-
 tent, 222
 quantity in wood, 188
 variability in content of, 217
 within-species variability, 217
 within-tree variability, 217, 218
 Insects, 665
 Intercellular layer; *see* Middle lamella
 International 1/4-inch log scale, 1521
 contents of logs in board feet, 1567-
 1569
 contents of trees in board feet, 1576-
 1578
 conversion to cubic feet, 1593, 1596,
 1597
 conversion to other log scales, 1592,
 1593
 conversion to pounds, 1532, 1597, 1598,
 1601
 deductions for defects, 1521
 definition of, 1521
 tree overrun from, 1595
 Intumescence in fire retardants
 chemicals contributing to, 1127
 definition of, 1127
 Inventory of southern pine, 5, 6, 8
Ips avulsus, 695
Ips calligraphus, 696
Ips engraver beetles, 695
Ips grandicollis, 697
 Iron, control of wood stain from, 620
 Iron, in stemwood, 220

J

Jet cutting, 936
 Joints
 glued, 1151
 mechanically fastened, 1221
 Joints, end-glued
 butt joints, 1174
 fingerjoints, 1164
 scarfs, 1163
 Juvenile wood
 proportion of compression wood in,
 128
 see also Corewood

K

Kalotermitidae; *see* Termites, drywood
 Kappa number, 1436
 definition of, 1435
 pulp lignin content related to, 1435
 pulp yield related to, 1436
 Kerf, 852
 Keys based on needle anatomy, 579, 580
 Key to southern pines, 36
 Kickback of preservatives
 amount of, 1086
 definition of, 1086
 Kiln-drying above 212° F., 988
 fiber mats, 1016

- Kiln-drying above 212° F. (*Continued*)
 flakes, particles, and fibers, 1011
 in air-steam mixture, 989
 in steam, 988
 lumber, 989
 energy to dry, 992
 factors affecting drying time, 996–1002
 grade of, 994, 995
 moisture content vs. kiln time, 991, 998, 999
 shrinkage during drying, 1001
 strength of, 996, 997
 time-based schedule, 990, 1000
 warp after drying, 993
 warp during drying, 992
 poles and timbers, 985, 1002
 veneer, 1004
 drying rates, 1007
 schedules, 1006
 surface temperature related to moisture content, 1008
 thick veneer, 1007, 1010, 1011
 time to dry in superheated steam, 1009
- Kiln-drying below 212° F., 967
 bolts, 987
 lumber, 968
 conditioning, 974
 degrade during drying, 982, 983
 drying defects, control of, 976–982
 equalizing, 973
 factors influencing drying stresses, 977
 moisture content schedules, 969, 970
 moisture content vs. kiln time, 977, 978
 shrinkage during drying, 982
 time-based schedules, 969, 971, 972
 warp during drying, 980
 poles and piling, 985
 timbers, 982
- Kinematics, of peripheral milling, 811
- Knife angles; *see* Cutting angles
- Knots, 427
 angle of, 432
 as cause of degrade, 427
 diameter of, 431
 encased, 429
 heat of combustion of, 379, 380
 length of, 430
 number of, 431
 pruned, 427, 429
 tight, 429
 volume of, 430
 zones of occurrence, 427
- Koehler's method, 86
- Kraft black liquor, heat of combustion of, 379, 380
- Kraft lignin products, 1497
- Kraft linerboard, laser cutting of, 939
- Kraft pulp, 1431
 yields from water-sprayed chips, 743
see also Pulp, kraft
- Laminæ, selective placement of, 1162
- Laminated beams
 design stresses for, 419
 finishing of, 1360
 improvement of, by laminae placement, 1162
 moisture content in use, 288
- Laminated curved beams, strength of, 1057, 1058
- Laminated wood, 1157
 durability when preservative treated, 1160
 economic importance of, 1157
 fabrication of, 1161
 glues for exterior applications, 1158
 glues for interior applications, 1158
 gluing preservative-treated wood, 1159
 gluing untreated wood, 1158
 placement of laminae by elastic modulus, 1162
 preservation of, 1105
 production trends for, 1157
 standards for, 1162
 techniques for good gluebond, 1161
- Laminates, decorative, equilibrium moisture content of, 287
- Laquers, use of rosin in, 1492
- Lasers, 936
 advantages of, 937
 description of, 936, 938
 performance of, 938, 939
 power required, 939
 surface quality produced by, 940, 941
 uses for, 937
- Lateral loads, allowable
 bolts, 1281–1283, 1284, 1288, 1291
 drift bolts, 1293
 framing anchors, 1314, 1316
 lag screws, 1277, 1279–1281, 1284
 nails, 1255, 1259, 1261
 plate connectors, 1312
 staples, 1263
 timber connectors, 1296–1312
 wood screws, 1273, 1275
- Latewood
 bordered pit encrustations in, 117
 color of, 343, 344
 damage from ultraviolet irradiation of, 632
 definition of, 87
 degradation products from ultraviolet irradiation of, 635
 extractive content of, 211
 fiber saturation point of, 277
 friction coefficient of, 360, 364
 gluability of, 1177
 heat of combustion of, 379, 381
 ignition of, 1372–1377
 kraft pulp properties related to, 1439
 lignin content of, 201
 machined surface of, 1179, 1339, 1340
 machining of, 764, 782, 790
 mechanical pulp properties related to, 1416
 moisture content of, 273
Mork's definition of, 87
- L
 Ladder-backed woodpecker, 720

Latewood (*Continued*)

- penetration of preservatives in, 1084
- permeability of, 311, 312
- pit aspiration in, 311
- polysaccharide content of, 195
- shrinking and swelling of, 290, 297, 301
- specific gravity of, 249-259
- specific heat of, 368
- strength retention in acid solutions, 611
- strength retention in alkalis, 615
- surface of veneer, 902, 1177, 1178
- tensile strength of, 397
- tracheid dimensions, species differences, 1418
- transition, 88
- variability of, 249-259
- volume of in tree, 255-259
- Lathe, veneer, capacity per hour, 1537
- Lead chromate finish, 1331
- Leaded pigments, 1340
- Length of knife path
 - down-milling, 827
 - up-milling, 811, 812
- Lenzites saepiaria*, 645, 646
- Lenzites trabea*, 657, 674
- Light degradation of wood, 627
 - chemical reactions during, 633
 - color changes during, 344, 629
 - surface changes during, 630
- Lignin, 197
 - as a fuel, 1402
 - chemical nature of, 197, 198
 - definition of, 197
 - distribution in cell walls, 199, 200
 - distribution in tree, 199
 - effect on shrinkage, 295
 - from kraft pulping process, 198, 1498
 - in compression wood, 201
 - in kraft pulp, 1435
 - quantity in rootwood, 569
 - quantity in wood, 188
 - specific gravity of, 238
 - specific heat of, 367, 368
- Lignite coal tar creosote, effectiveness against termites, 680
- Limnoria*, 717
 - anatomy of, 719
 - biosynthesis of cellulase, 719
 - control of, 719, 1075, 1082, 1095
 - damage from, 717, 718
 - description and life cycle of, 717, 718
 - habitat of, 717
- Limnoria punctata*, 718
- Lindane, to control
 - ambrosia beetles, 698
 - bark beetles, 694
 - pine sawyers, 700
- Linear thermal expansion, coefficient of, 382
- Linerboard, 1445
- Linoleum, use of rosin in, 1492
- Loblolly pine, 12, 36
 - anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 153-155, 156, 157, 161
 - length, 132, 138, 141-143, 144, 145, 148, 149, 150

Loblolly pine (*Continued*)

- transverse, 164, 166, 169, 170, 172, 173, 178
- wood selection for, 180
- attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
- attack by plant organisms, 643
- bark, 467, 486, 488
- bending, 1037
- burning, 1367
- chemical constituents, 187, 188
- chemical processing, 1475
- color, 342, 343, 344
- defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
- description and range, 12, 13
- distinguishing features, 36
- drying, 949
- economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 13
- effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
- finishing, 1325
- gluing and bonding, 1151
- growth and yield, 12
- machining, 755
- measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - bark weight per log, 1608
 - bark weight per M b.f. log scale, 1609
 - chippable residue per M b.f. log scale sawn, 1613
 - cubic feet per cord of, 1514, 1557
 - cubic feet per M b.f. log scale, 1597
 - cubic feet per stem, 1523, 1524, 1583, 1584, 1587
 - grade yield of lumber from logs of, 454
 - grade yield of lumber from trees of, 445, 446, 447
 - log weight per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1533
 - lumber widths yielded from trees and logs of various diameters, 452, 455
 - number of bolts per tree, 1559
 - veneer grade yields from peeler blocks, 456, 457
 - volume and weight per tree, 1560
 - volume of wood per cord of slabs, 1612
 - weight of tree parts, 1607
 - weight per cord, 1525
 - weight per log, 1589
 - weight per M b.f. log scale, 1532, 1597, 1598
 - weight per merchantable stem, 1591
- mechanical fastening, 1221
- mechanical properties, 391, 408
- moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
- needles, 36, 575, 581, 582, 583
- physical properties, 337
- physiology, 55
- pulping, 1411
- range and volume, 13
- roots, 537, 539, 583

Loblolly pine (*Continued*)

- scientific name, 5
- silvics, 12
- specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractive content on, 242
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245, 247
 - variation within trees, 251-253
- specific heat, 368, 369
- storing, 737
- strength, 391, 406
- treating, 1061
- velocity of sound in, 345
- volume and location of growing stock, 6, 13
- volume and location of sawtimber, 8
- wood-water relationships, 265

Log grades, 443

Logs

- bark removal from, 827
- bark weight per log, 1608
- board foot content, Doyle scale, 1562, 1563
- board foot content, International ¼-inch log scale, 1567-1569
- board foot content, Scribner Decimal C scale, 1564, 1565
- cleaving, or splitting, of, 804
- cubic feet in, 1522, 1579
- cubic feet per M b.f. log scale, 1596, 1597
- deductions for defect in, 1566
- insect attack on, 698
- log scale conversion table, 1592
- overrun by various log scales, 1594, 1595
- plant organism attack on, and protection of, 651
- sawdust weight per log sawn, 1614
- shearing of, 797
- storage of, 738
- taper in upper logs, 1570
- weight per log, 1525, 1526, 1589, 1598
- weight per M b.f. log scale, 1597-1599
- weight per M b.f. sawn lumber, 1533, 1602

Log scale, 1519

see also Doyle log scale

see also International ¼-inch log scale

see also Scribner log scale

Longleaf pine, 15, 37

- anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 151
 - length, 133, 138, 144
 - transverse, 164, 171
 - wood selection for, 180
- attack by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
- attack by plant organisms, 643
- bark, 467, 490
- bending, 1037
- burning, 1367
- chemical constituents, 187, 188
- chemical processing, 1475
- defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
- description and range, 15, 16

Longleaf pine (*Continued*)

- distinguishing features, 37
 - drying, 949
 - economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 16
 - effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
 - finishing, 1325
 - gluing and bonding, 1151
 - growth and yield, 15
 - machining, 755
 - measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - cords of topwood per tree, 1561
 - cubic feet per cord of, 1557
 - cubic feet per tree, 1523
 - grade yield of lumber from logs of, 453
 - grade yield of lumber from trees of, 442-444
 - log weight per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1533
 - number of bolts, wood and bark volumes, and weight per cord, 1557
 - volume of wood per cord of slabs, 1612
 - weight per cord, 1525
 - weight per log, 1589
 - weight per M b.f. log scale, 1597, 1598
 - mechanical fastening, 1221
 - mechanical properties, 391, 408
 - moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
 - needles, 37, 575, 581, 585
 - physical properties, 337
 - physiology, 55
 - pulping, 1411
 - range and volume, 16
 - roots, 537, 547
 - scientific name, 5
 - silvics, 15
 - specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractive content on, 242
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245, 248
 - variation within trees, 251-253
 - storing, 737
 - strength, 391, 406
 - thermal conductivity, 372
 - treating, 1061
 - volume and location of growing stock, 6, 16
 - volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 - wood-water relationships, 265
- Loosened grain, 817
- Loose side of veneer, 899
- Lowry process of treatment, 1090
- Lumber
- bending of, 1037
 - content of logs, Doyle scale, 1562, 1563
 - content of logs, International ¼-inch scale, 1567-1569
 - content of logs, Scribner Decimal C scale, 1564, 1565
 - content of poles, Scribner scale, 1602

Lumber (*Continued*)

- content of trees, 1572-1578
- design stresses for, 415, 416
- drying of, 949
- end-glued joints in, 1163, 1164, 1174
- equilibrium moisture content, 284
- fastening of, 1221
- finishing of, 1327, 1332, 1337, 1348, 1349
- footage treated annually, 1064
- machining of, 755
- moisture content in use, 288
- overlays for, 1349
- overrun by various log scales, 1595
- percent of log volume converted to, 846
- preservation of, 1099-1105
- southern pine share of market, 1
- stain control in, 1099
- standard sizes, 1518
- storage of, 746
- weight per M b.f., 1527, 1609
- Lumber, air-seasoned, plant organisms attack on, and protection of, 654, 655, 1099-1103
- Lumber, dry, insect attack on, 700
- Lumber, drying of in
 - ambient air, 953
 - dielectric field, 1025
 - forced-air dryers, 964
 - heat-conductive media, 1027
 - kilns (above 212° F.), 989
 - kilns (below 212° F.), 968
- Lumber, end-glued, 1163
 - butt jointed, 1174
 - fingerjointed, 1164
 - scarf jointed, 1163
- Lumber grades
 - strength of, 417
 - yield of, 442-452
- Lumber widths, yield of
 - from logs, 455
 - from trees, 448-451, 452
- Luminance factor, 340, 343

M

- Machining, 755
 - barking, 827
 - boring, 920
 - chipping, 910
 - chipping headrigs, 832
 - cleaving, 804
 - laser cutting, 936
 - literature reviews of, 758
 - orthogonal cutting, 759
 - peripheral milling, 808
 - planing and moulding, 882
 - sanding with coated abrasives, 894
 - sawing, 847
 - shearing, 797
 - veneer cutting, 899
 - water-jet cutting, 936
- Madison wood sugar process, 1494
- Magazine paper, 1446
- Magnesium, in
 - bark, 500
 - stemwood, 218, 220
 - tree parts, 218
- Magnesium chloride, 1121
- Magnesium phosphate, 1121
- Magnesium phosphate, monobasic, 1119
- Magnesium silicate pigments, 1340
- Make coat, 895, 896
- Manganese, in stemwood, 220
- Manley model, 191
- Margo
 - definition of, 112
 - density variation in, 117, 119
- Marine borers, 713
 - annual damage from, 713
 - control of, 1075, 1082, 1095
 - crustacean, 717
 - molluscan, 713
 - woods resistant to, 713
- Market pulp, dissolving, 1454
- Martesia, 713
- Mass law, 352
- Mature wood
 - proportion compression wood in, 128
 - see also* Outer wood
- Measurement units, 1513
 - board foot—log scale, 1519
 - Doyle log scale, 1519, 1562, 1563
 - gross volume in trees, 1521, 1572-1578
 - International 1/4-inch log scale, 1521, 1567-1569
 - Scribner Decimal C log scale, 1520, 1564-1566
 - board foot—lumber scale, 1518
 - cord, 1513
 - cords of topwood per tree after removal of saw logs, 1517, 1561
 - cords per acre, 1517, 1561
 - number of pieces per cord, 1516, 1557, 1558
 - number of trees required per cord, 1516, 1559, 1560
 - related to slabs and edgings, 1551, 1610-1612
 - volume of solid wood in a cord, 1514, 1515, 1557
 - cubic foot, 1522
 - cubic feet in individual trees, 1523, 1580-1587
 - cubic feet in logs, 1522, 1579
 - cubic feet in tops, 1524, 1588
 - pound, 1524
 - weight of a cubic foot of wood, 238
 - weight of a standard rough cord, 1524, 1525
 - weight of lumber, 1527
 - weight of merchantable stems, 1526, 1590-1592
 - weight of saw logs, 1525, 1589
 - see also* Weight of primary units, 1527
 - see also* Conversion tables
- Measures and yields of products and residues; *see* Yields and measures, products, and Yields and measures, residues
- Mechanical fastening, 1224
 - allowable loads, sources of, 1224
 - discussion of duration of load, 1225

- Mechanical fastening with
 bolts, 1281
 drift bolts, 1292
 explosive-driven pins and studs, 1318
 lag screws, 1276
 nails and spikes, 1225
 sheet metal and angle iron anchors,
 1313
 staples, 1263
 timber connectors, 1293
 wood screws, 1270
- Mechanical properties of wood, 391
 anatomy related to, 393
 design stress values, 415
 factors affecting clear wood strength,
 399
 non-destructive testing, 344, 418
 species average values, 406, 408
 variation within species, 408, 412
 variation within trees, 410
see also Strength properties
- Mechanical pulp, 1414
see also Pulp, refiner groundwood, and
 Pulp, stone groundwood
- Medium-grained pine, definition of, 416
- Melamine-formaldehyde glue, 1156
- Melanerpes erythrocephalus*, 720
- Melanerpes formicivorus*, 720
- Membrane of pit, definition of, 112
- Mercuric chloride, effectiveness against
 termites, 680
- Mesophyll of needles, 577, 578
- Metals, ferrous and copper
 deterioration of wood in contact with,
 617
 methods of reducing degradation from,
 620
- Methyl bromide, effectiveness against dry-
 wood termites, 686
- Methyl methacrylate, 1136, 1138, 1139,
 1140, 1141
- Microbevelled veneer knives
 advantages of, 904
 definition of, 903
- Microfibrils
 distortion of, in compression failures,
 395
 orientation of, 97, 98
 size of, 94, 191
 structure of, 191, 192
- Middle lamella, 97
- Millwork
 preservation of, 1107-1109
 storage of, 746
- Minalith, 1124
- Mineral content; *see* Inorganic compo-
 nents
- Minute structure of wood, 94
- Mitosis; *see* Cell division
- Modification of wood properties, 1128
 acetylation, 1131
 β -propiolactone treatment, 1133
 bulking with polyethylene glycol, 1131,
 1137, 1138, 1140
 compressed and heat stabilized, 1129
- Modification of wood properties
 (Continued)
- compressed wood-phenol-formaldehyde
 composites, 1130
 crosslinking with formaldehyde, 1132
 cyanoethylation, 1133
 ethylene oxide treatment, 1132
 future prospects for, 1142
 gamma and beta irradiation, 1134
 heat-stabilized, 1129
 ozone gas-phase treatment, 1133
 plasticizing with ammonia, 1055, 1134
 purposes for, 1128
 wood-phenol-formaldehyde composite,
 1130, 1137, 1138, 1140
 wood-plastic combinations, 1134
 wood-vinyl-polymer composites, 1134
- Modulus of elasticity
 definition of, 393
 dynamic, 344
 moisture content related to, 404, 406,
 408
 of particleboard, 1203, 1204
 placement of laminae by, 1162
 species average values, 408
 specific gravity related to, 401, 402,
 406
 variability of, 408, 410, 412
- Modulus of rupture
 definition of, 393
 duration of load related to, 399
 effect of temperature on, 400, 620
 of molded wood, 1207
 of particleboard, 1203, 1204
 moisture content related to, 404, 406,
 408
 species average values, 408
 specific gravity related to, 401, 402,
 406
 strain rate related to, 400
 variability of, 407, 408, 412
- Moisture content of bark, 493
 at ground level and breast height, 495
 in and below crown, 497
 in fuel piles, 1380
 inner bark, 495
 outer bark, 495
 variation with diameter and height in
 tree, 496
 variation with season, 493, 494
 whole bark, 495, 568
- Moisture content of branches, 568
- Moisture content of needles, 568, 587,
 588
- Moisture content of pulp chips
 in outside storage piles, 743
 in water-sprayed piles, 743
- Moisture content of roots, 568
- Moisture content of wood, 268
 as related to height above ground, 273
 at equilibrium, related to temperature
 and relative humidity, 284, 287
 cutting forces related to, 764, 772, 782,
 790
 definition of, 267
 density of molded wood related to, 1207
 dielectric constant related to, 386

Moisture content of wood (*Continued*)

- drill bit performance related to, 930, 931, 933
 - drying time related to, 324, 328, 1001
 - effect of geographic location on, 269, 272
 - effect of growth rate on, 271
 - effect of season of the year on, 271, 272
 - effect of specific gravity on, 270
 - effect of tree age on, 269
 - electrical resistance related to, 385
 - force to cleave related to, 808
 - force to shear related to, 801
 - gluability related to, 1180
 - heat conductivity related to, 372, 373, 374
 - heritability of, 272
 - ignition related to, 1376, 1377
 - in corewood and outer wood, 273
 - in heartwood and sapwood, 273
 - in latewood and earlywood, 273, 274
 - in living trees, 268
 - in stems and branches, 274
 - in use, 288
 - laser performance related to, 939
 - mechanism of drying, 324, 328
 - methods of measuring and computing, 267
 - nail lateral resistance related to, 1255
 - nail withdrawal resistance related to, 1227
 - paint failures related to, 1345
 - power factor related to, 386
 - power to plane related to, 818
 - relationship to breast-height samples, 273
 - shrinking and swelling related to, 289
 - strength properties related to, 404
 - variation among species, 268
 - variation within species, 269
 - variation within trees, 273, 568
 - veneer quality related to, 903
 - weight per cubic foot related to, 238
 - within and below crown, 274
- Moisture profiles in wood, 319
- Mold
- effect on gluability, 1181
 - see also* Stains and molds
- Molded products, 1207
- binders for, 1207
 - linear stability of, 1207, 1208
 - modulus of rupture of, 1207
 - particle shape for, 1207
 - resin content of, 1207
 - specific gravity of, 1207
- Molluscan borers, 713
- see also* *Teredo*
- Monilia sitophila*, 656
- Monochamus titillator*, 700
- Monomolecular adsorption of water, 276
- Mork's* definition of latewood, 87
- Moulders, 892
- definition of, 892
 - knife marks per inch, chart, 887
 - machine types, 893
 - power on, 894
 - productivity of, 892
- see also* Peripheral milling
- Mühlethaler* model, 191
- Mulch, bark and sawdust as, 523
- Mulch, needles as, 595
- Multiple-hearth furnace, 1500
- N
- Nail popping, 1262
- Nails and spikes, 1225
- allowable lateral loads, 1255, 1259, 1261
 - allowable withdrawal loads, 1237, 1249, 1252, 1254
 - defects in nailed joints
 - nail popping, 1262
 - splits, 1261
 - stains and corrosion, 1262
 - lateral resistance of nails, factors affecting, 1254
 - clinching, 1259
 - diameter of nail, 1255
 - material in nail, 1255
 - moisture content, 1255
 - multi-nail joints, 1259
 - penetration of nail, 1255
 - shank characteristics, 1255-1257
 - slant driving, 1257
 - specific gravity, 1254
 - manner of driving, effect on withdrawal resistance, 1232
 - bradding, 1235
 - clinching, 1234
 - preboring, 1237
 - slant driving, 1232
 - nail dimensions related to withdrawal resistance, 1237
 - diameter, 1237
 - penetration, 1237
 - point, 1238
 - nailhead design, 1263
 - nailing of products, references on, 1263
 - number of in a house, 1225
 - shank characteristics related to withdrawal resistance
 - cement coated, 1240
 - cut and toothed, 1250
 - diagonally barbed, 1245
 - etched, 1240
 - galvanized, 1241
 - helically fluted, 1246
 - plain, 1240
 - plastic coated, 1242
 - threaded, 1248
 - twisted square-wire, 1245
 - sizes of, 1226
 - wood factors affecting withdrawal resistance of, 1226
 - grain direction, 1227
 - impregnants in wood, 1227
 - moisture content, 1227
 - specific gravity, 1227
 - time elapsed since driving, 1227
- Nail stains and corrosion, 1262
- Naturally weathered surfaces, 1327
- bleaching oil for, 1331
 - chromate salts for, 1331
 - discoloration from fungi, control of, 1328

- Naturally weathered surfaces (*Continued*)
- durability of, 1328
 - stains from fasteners, 1262, 1328
 - water-repellent preservative for, 1331
- Naval stores, 1476
- definition of, 1476
 - destructively distilled, 1485
 - product yield per cord of stumpwood, 1485
 - from kraft pulping process, 1486
 - composition of crude tall oil, 1486
 - process description, 1486
 - sulfate turpentine, 1486
 - tall oil rosin, 1487
 - yield of rosin and turpentine per cord of wood pulped, 1487
 - gum naval stores
 - conversion process, 1482
 - gum yield per 10,000 faces, 1481
 - gum yield per tree, 1481
 - production methods, 1477-1484
 - product yield from oleoresin, 1483
 - size of industry, 1477
 - species producing, 1476
 - sulfuric acid paste process, 1484
 - tree management practices, 1480, 1481
 - rosin, 1488
 - composition of, 1489
 - decoloring techniques, 1489
 - grades of, 1489
 - packaging of, 1489
 - price trends, 1492
 - sources of, 1488
 - rosin uses
 - floor coverings, 1492
 - paper sizes, 1490
 - soaps, 1490
 - softening agents, 1491
 - surface coatings, 1491
 - southern pine share of market, 1, 1476
 - steam distilled, 1485
 - process description, 1485
 - product yield per ton of stumpwood, 1486
 - solvents for, 1486
 - uses for spent chips, 1486
 - turpentine and turpentine derivatives, 1487
 - composition of, 1487
 - consumption of, 1487
 - uses for, 1487, 1488
- Needles, 575
- anatomy and formation of, 576
 - chemical composition of, 218, 569, 589, 596
 - function of, 576
 - gross structure of, 38-50
 - heat of combustion of, 379, 380, 589
 - length and number of, 581
 - mineral content of, 218, 590
 - moisture content of, 568, 587, 588
 - percentage of tree weight, 1541, 1542, 1607
 - resistance to decay, 586
 - retention of, 581
 - shrinkage of, 587
 - species characteristics, 36
 - specific gravity of, 587
 - specific heat of, 589
 - tensile strength of, 588
 - uses for, 594
 - volume per tree and production of, 581-587, 1541
- Needle sheath, species characteristics, 36
- Neutral sulfite pulping process, 1446, 1452
- see also* Pulp, sulfite
- Newsprint, 1420, 1446
- Nicobium hirtum*, 685, 707
- Nitrogen depletion, 515
- Nitrogen, in
- bark, 500
 - tree parts, 218
- Nomenclature
- anatomy of wood, 95
 - bandsawing, 850, 852
 - boring, 918
 - chain sawing, 880, 881
 - chipping, 916
 - circular sawing, 868, 869
 - gangsawing, 861, 863, 864
 - in color characterization, 338, 339
 - laser cutting, 938
 - of chemical constituents in wood, 188
 - of elements of bark, 472
 - of fingerjoint geometry, 1165
 - of lag screws, 1277
 - of southern pines, 5
 - of wood screws, 1272
 - orthogonal cutting, 760, 761
 - peripheral milling, 812-814
 - planes or sections in wood, 86
 - planing, 812-814
 - sanding, 895, 896
 - shearing and cleaving, 798
 - vener cutting, 900
- Non-Com, 1125
- Non-destructive testing, 344
- by determination of velocity of sound, 344, 345
 - by forced transverse vibration, 345
 - by free transverse vibration, 345
 - discussion of, 418
 - in laminated beam fabrication, 1162
- Normal load, definition of, 1225
- Nosebar
- angle, 901
 - clearance, 901
 - elastic, 906
 - forces, 905, 907, 911
 - openings, 901, 906, 909
 - percent compression, 902
 - restraint, 909
 - see also* Rollerbar
- O
- Oblique cutting, 793
- Obliteration in rhytidome, 477
- Ocala race of sand pine, 42
- Odor, of bark, 484
- Oil-based paint systems, 1343
- linseed oil-based primer, Federal specification number, 1347

- Oil from needles, 591
 chemical composition of, 592
 distillation temperatures for, 593
 uses for, 594
 yield and physical properties of, 592
- Oils and oil-borne preservatives, 1067
- Old-house borer, 702
- Oleoresin, 1476
 product yield from, 1483
- Olustee* process for naval stores, 1482, 1483
- Open coat sanding belt, 895
- Orchard heater, reference on, 1406
- Organic liquids, resistance of wood to, 615
- Orthogonal cutting, 759
 cutting force comparisons, by direction, 791, 796
 definition of, 759, 760
 effects of cutting velocity on, 760
 nomenclature for, 760, 761
 oblique and inclined cutting, 793
 parallel to grain in 90-0 direction, 761
 perpendicular to grain in 0-90 direction, 775
 perpendicular to grain in 90-90 direction, 781
see also Orthogonal cutting, 90-0 mode
see also Orthogonal cutting, 0-90 mode
see also Orthogonal cutting, 90-90 mode
- Orthogonal cutting, 0-90 mode, 775
 chip formation during, 775
 definition of, 760
 force during, 780, 781, 782, 783-786
 nomenclature, 761
- Orthogonal cutting, 90-0 mode, 761
 chip formation during, 762, 766
 definition of, 760
 forces during, 764, 767-771, 772, 774
 nomenclature, 761
- Orthogonal cutting, 90-90 mode, 781
 chip formation during, 781, 789
 definition of, 760
 forces during, 790, 791-795
 nomenclature, 761
- Oscillation of gangsaws, 862
- Osmoplastic groundline treatment; *see* Preservatives
- Osmoplastic process of treatment, 1095
- Osmose (diffusion) treatment, effectiveness against termites, 680
- Osmose-Osmosar; *see* Preservatives
- Osmose process of treatment, 1094
- Outer bark; *see* Rhytidome
- Outer wood
 moisture content of, 273
 shrinking and swelling in, 292, 299
see also Mature wood
- Overhang of gangsaws, 862
- Overlays
 bonding of, 1350
 material for, 1349
- Overlays for lumber, paintable, 1349
 bond with wood, 1350
- Overlays for lumber, paintable
 (*Continued*)
 designs for use of, 1351
 material for, 1349, 1350
 performance of, 1351
- Overlays for plywood, paintable
 for concrete forms, 1355
 high-density, 1355
 medium-density, 1355
 paintable, 1355
- Overlays, precast colored, 1352
- Overrun, by various log scales, 1530, 1594, 1595
 definition of, 1530
- Ozone, stabilization of wood, 1133
- P**
- Paint
 drying-oil based, 1343
 formulations of, 1348
 latex, or emulsion, 1343
 number of coats and thickness, 1347
 pigments in, 1340, 1343
 preparation for, 1345
 primers under, 1345
 repainting, 1348
 steps in applying, 1347
 technology of, 1338
 wood selection for, 1345
- Paint failures
 blisters, 1346
 cracking, 1346
 moisture content related to, 1345, 1346
 peeling, 1346
 vapor barrier placement, related to, 1346
- Paint systems, 1346
 drying-oil based, 1343
 for hardboard, 1356
 for plywood, 1352
 for repainting, 1348
 latex, or emulsion, 1343
 steps in painting, 1346, 1347
- Paneling, finishing of, 1360
- Paper
 drying of, 1017
 storage of, 752
 use of bark in, 526
see also Pulp
- Paper, kraft types characterized, 1445, 1446
- Paper size, 1490
- Parchmentized paper overlay, 1350
- Parenchyma
 destruction by anaerobic bacteria, 650
 destruction by fungi, 650
 horizontal, 109, 111, 112
 longitudinal in bark, 475
 vertical, 102, 106
- Particleboard, 1191
 consumption of, 1192
 dulling of cutting tools, 767
 equilibrium moisture content, 287, 288
 factors affecting properties of, 1199
 adhesive spread, 1200-1204
 densification ratio, 1196
 glue properties, 1204-1207

- Particleboard (*Continued*)
- length thickness ratio of particles, 1196
 - particle geometry, 1200–1204
 - specific surface, 1202, **1204**, **1205**
 - wood properties, 1200–1204
 - finishing of, 1359
 - glues for, 1199, 1204–1207
 - laser cutting of, 939
 - location and capacity of plants, 1191, **1193**
 - moisture content in use, 288
 - preservation of, 1109
 - processes for manufacture of, 1195
 - raw material for, 1193, **1194**, 1196
 - sanding of, 894, **895**, 898
 - screw withdrawal resistance in, 1275
 - southern pine share of market, 1
 - standards and test methods for, 1199
 - storage of, 751
 - strength of, **1198**, 1203
 - thermal conductivity in, 376
 - thermal diffusivity in, 378
 - types of, **1192**
 - use of bark in, 527
 - use of needles in, 595
 - Particles, drying of, 1011
 - Partitions, sound transmission loss in, 353, **354**
 - Peatmoss
 - bulk density of, 516
 - carbon/nitrogen ratio of, 516
 - cation exchange capacity of, 516
 - composition of, 516
 - in relation to bark and sawdust, 515
 - Pectin, location of in wood, 193, 202
 - Peeling; *see* Rotary peeling
 - PEG; *see* Polyethylene glycol
 - Penetration and absorption of preservatives, 1082
 - as affected by fungus infection, 1084
 - as affected by glue lines, 1085
 - determination of, 1086
 - during brushing, spraying, and dipping, 1092
 - effect on service life, 1082
 - from hot and cold bath process, 1092
 - in earlywood and latewood, 1084
 - in pressure vs. vacuum processes, 1093, 1094
 - in rough and dressed lumber, 1084
 - in round and square piles and timbers, 1085
 - in sapwood and heartwood, 1083
 - related to anatomy, 1082
 - related to grain direction, 1083
 - related to treating procedure, 1085
 - Penicillium*, 656
 - Peniophora gigantea*, 645
 - Penny (d), definition of, 1225
 - Pentachlorophenate finish, 1331
 - Pentachlorophenol; *see* Preservatives
 - Pentachlorophenol in crankcase oil
 - effectiveness against termites, 679
 - termites bridging across wood treated with, 680
 - Perchloroethylene, as a drying agent, 1027, 1030
 - Periderm
 - definition of, 470, 478
 - views of, **479–481**
 - Peripheral milling, 808
 - chip formation during, 813
 - definition of, 808
 - down-milling, 825
 - factors affecting power required, 819–825
 - kinematics of, 811
 - nomenclature for, **812–814**
 - surface quality resulting, 814, **817**, **887**
 - Permanganate number, 742
 - Permeability, 307
 - as affected by radial position, 311
 - as it affects drying, 318, 324
 - channels of flow, 308
 - definition of, 307
 - effect of bacteria on, 314
 - effect of drying on, 312
 - effect of enzymes on, 314
 - effect of extraction on, 313
 - effect of fungi on, 314
 - effect of growth rate on, 312
 - effect of pressure on, 314
 - effect of solution viscosity, molecular weight, and concentration on, 316
 - effect of specific gravity on, 312
 - effect of stains and molds on, 314, 646, 649
 - effect of steaming on, 313
 - effect of test procedures on, 314
 - effect of time on, 316
 - effect of treatments on, 312
 - of earlywood and latewood, 311, 312
 - of heartwood and sapwood, 310
 - pit aspiration, 309
 - relation of anatomy to, 308, 1083
 - variation with direction, 307
 - variation within trees, 310
 - pH
 - effect of ultraviolet irradiation on, 635
 - in sulfite pulping processes, 1450–1453
 - of bark and sawdust, 515
 - of glues for particleboard, 1206
 - of glues for plywood, 1182
 - of shower water in groundwood pulp manufacture, 1421
 - of wood, 619
 - Phellem, 482
 - Phelloderm, 479
 - enlargement of, 481
 - thick- and thin-walled, 482
 - Phellogen, 470, 478
 - Phenol-formaldehyde, composites with wood, 1130, 1137, **1138**, **1140**
 - Phenol-formaldehyde glue, 1155, 1182
 - Phenolic acids in bark, 498
 - Phenolic compounds in rhytidome, 477
 - Phloem, 56, 470
 - in needles, **578**, 579
 - primary, 61
 - Phosphoric acid, 1119
 - Phosphorus, in
 - bark, 500
 - stemwood, 218, 220

Phosphorus, in (*Continued*)

- tree parts, 218
- Physical properties of wood, 338
 - acoustical, 344
 - color characterization, 338
 - electrical, 383
 - frictional, 357
 - thermal, 367
- Physiology of roots, references to, 537
- Physiology of wood formation, 55
 - activation of the cambium, 62
 - cambial origin and cell types, 60
 - fibril angle related to environment, 74
 - genetic manipulation of wood quality, 76
 - physiology of cambial activity, 62
 - production, differentiation, and maturation of tracheids, 64
 - silvicultural aspects of quality control, 75
 - specific gravity related to environment, 68
 - tracheid length related to environment, 72
 - vascular cambium, 57
- Pigments in paint
 - extending, 1340
 - inactive, hiding, 1341
 - reactive, 1340
- Pileated woodpecker, 720, 722
- Piles
 - bark removal from, 830, 1087
 - circumferences, diameters, and lengths of, 460
 - design stresses for, 419
 - grades of, 459
 - interior temperatures after steaming, 1003
 - lineal feet treated annually, 1064
 - plant organism attack on, and protection of, 654
 - preservation of, 1095
 - storage of, 745
- Piles, drying of; *see* Poles and piles, drying of in
- Pinaceae, family of, 5
- Pine felt, 595
- Pine hair, 595
- Pine oil
 - process for synthetic pine oil, 1488
 - yield per cord of stumps destructively distilled, 1485
 - yield per ton of steam-distilled stumpwood, 1486
- Pine sawyers, 700
- Pines, hard, 5
- Pines, southern; *see* Southern pines
- Pine tar
 - source of, 1485
 - yield per cord of stumps destructively distilled, 1485
- Pine wool, 595
- Pinoid pits, definition of, 120
- Pins, explosive-driven, 1318, 1319
- Pinus*, species of, 5, 11
 - P. clausa* (Chapm.) Vasey; *see* Sand pine

Pinus, species of (*Continued*)

- P. echinata* Mill.; *see* Shortleaf pine
- P. elliotii* Engelm. var. *elliotii*; *see* Slash pine
- P. elliotii* var. *densa* Little and Dorman; *see* Slash pine
- P. glabra* Walt; *see* Spruce pine
- P. pungens* Lamb.; *see* Table Mountain pine
- P. rigida* Mill.; *see* Pitch pine
- P. serotina* Michx.; *see* Pond Pine
- P. taeda* L.; *see* Loblolly pine
- P. virginiana* Mill.; *see* Virginia pine
- Pit canals, definition of, 114
- Pitch
 - as a defect, 436
 - effect on strength, 438
 - exudation, 437
 - kilning to control exudation of, 981
 - mechanical pulping problems related to, 1421
 - pocket, 437, 438
 - streak, 436, 438
 - see also* Extractives in wood
- Pitch pine, 17, 38
 - anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 151
 - length, 133, 134, 138
 - transverse, 164, 171
 - wood selection for, 180
 - attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
 - attack by plant organisms, 643
 - bark, 467
 - bending, 1037
 - burning, 1367
 - chemical constituents, 187
 - chemical processing, 1475
 - defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
 - description and range, 17, 18
 - distinguishing features, 38
 - drying, 949
 - economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 18
 - effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
 - finishing, 1325
 - gluing and bonding, 1151
 - growth and yield, 17
 - machining, 755
 - measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - mechanical fastening, 1221
 - mechanical properties, 391
 - needles, 38, 575, 581
 - physical properties, 337
 - physiology, 55
 - pulping, 1411
 - range and volume, 18
 - roots, 537, 555
 - scientific name, 5
 - silvics, 17
 - specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractive content on, 242
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245

- Pitch pine (*Continued*)
- variation within trees, 252, 253
 - storing, 737
 - strength, 391
 - treating, 1061
 - volume and location of growing stock, 6, 18
 - volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 - wood-water relationships, 265
 - Pitch tubes, of
 - bark beetles, 690
 - Ips beetles, 697
 - Pit pairs
 - apertures, 113
 - bordered, 112, 117, 120
 - definition of, 112
 - encrustation in, 115
 - half-bordered, 120, 122
 - margo, 112
 - microfibrils in, 117
 - pit borders, 114
 - pit canals, 114
 - pit chambers, 114
 - ray parenchyma to ray parenchyma—simple, 123
 - ray tracheid to ray parenchyma—half-bordered, 122
 - ray tracheid to ray tracheid—bordered, 120
 - simple, 123
 - torus, 112
 - tracheid to ray parenchyma—half-bordered pinoid, 120
 - tracheid to ray tracheid—bordered, 117
 - tracheid to tracheid—bordered, 112
 - warts in, 114
 - Pith
 - as key to species, 87
 - definition of, 85, 86
 - Planes in wood
 - cross section, 86, 88
 - friction coefficient on, 360
 - radial section, 86
 - tangential surface, 86
 - transverse section, 86, 88
 - Planing, 882
 - cutterhead arrangements, 888
 - definition of, 882
 - double surfacers, 886, 888
 - knife marks per inch, chart, 887
 - planers and matchers, 889, 890, 891
 - proportions and feed speeds of matchers, 891
 - single surfacers, 882, 884
 - timber sizers, 890
 - see also Peripheral milling
 - Plant organism attack on
 - bark-free poles and timbers, 654
 - green veneer, 656
 - lumber during air-seasoning, 654
 - pulp chips, 653
 - pulpwood, 652
 - sawlogs and veneer bolts, 651
 - standing trees, 651
 - wood in use, 656
 - Plasticizing wood with ammonia, 1054
 - technique with gaseous ammonia, 1055, 1056
 - technique with liquid ammonia, 1054
 - Plasmodesmata, 111, 114, 124
 - Plate connectors; see Connectors, plate
 - Platen, planer, 884
 - Platypus flavicornis*, 698
 - Plywood, 1175
 - bond quality and
 - glue extenders, 1183
 - glue spread and thickness, 1184, 1185
 - resin formulation, 1183
 - resin properties, 1182, 1184
 - cubic feet treated annually, 1064
 - design stresses for, 420
 - durability in exterior exposure, 1187–1191
 - emulsion sealers for, 1353
 - establishment of the industry, 1175
 - face checking in, 1353
 - glues for, 1176, 1182
 - hardwood cores for, 1187
 - holding power of staples in, 1267, 1268, 1269
 - laser cutting of, 939
 - moisture content in use, 288
 - natural and semi-natural finishes for, 1353
 - paintable overlays for, 1355
 - painting of, 1352, 1354
 - preservation of, 1106
 - pressing and curing, 1185
 - assembly time, 1186
 - cooling, 1187
 - hot-pressing, 1187
 - prepressing, 1186
 - protection against drywood termites, 685
 - resonant panels of, 348, 349
 - sanding of, 894, 895, 899
 - screw sizes and spacings for, 1274
 - southern pine share of market, 1
 - South's share of market for, 1175
 - specifications and testing procedures for, 1175
 - storage of, 751
 - thermal conductivity in, 375
 - thermal expansion and contraction in, 383
 - treatability of, 1086
 - veneer factors, effect on plywood properties, 1176
 - chemical treatment, 1182
 - drying procedure, 1180
 - earlywood and latewood, 1177
 - extractives and pitch, 1181
 - moisture content, 1180
 - mold, 1181
 - quality of peel, 1180
 - rings per inch, 1177
 - specific gravity, 1177
 - temperature, 1185
 - wettability, 1184
 - veneer yield per bolt, 1607
 - Poles
 - bark removal from, 834, 1087

Poles (*Continued*)

- board foot content, International $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch scale, 1535
 - board foot content, Scribner scale, 1602
 - classes and dimensions of, 458, 459
 - design stresses for, 418
 - effect of seasoning schedule on strength of, 628
 - grades of, 454
 - interior temperatures after steaming, 1003
 - number treated annually, 1064
 - plant organism attack on, and protection of, 654, 1096
 - preservation of, 1096
 - southern pine share of market, 1
 - storage of, 745
 - strength of, 454
 - volume table, method of construction, 1534
 - weight, volume, and dimensions of, 1604-1606
- Poles and piles, drying of in
- ambient air, 959
 - chemicals, 1025
 - forced-air dryers, 965
 - heat-conductive media, 1027
 - kilns (above 212° F.), 986, 1002
 - kilns (below 212° F.), 985
 - steam, 1002
- Pole shavers, 831, 833, 834
- Polyester coatings, 1359
- Polyethylene glycol, 1131, 1137, 1138, 1140
- Polymethyl methacrylate, 1141
- Polymolecular adsorption of water, 276
- Polyporous schwainitzii*, 440, 651
- Polysaccharides
- content correlated with specific gravity, 196
 - definition of, 188
 - distribution in cell wall, 196
 - distribution in tree, 196
 - in southern pine wood, 190
 - quantitative analysis of, 193
 - variation in content of, 195
- Polyvinyl acetate resin for paint, 1343
- Polyvinyl chloride coatings, 1359
- Polyvinyl emulsion glue, 1157
- Pond pine, 21, 42
- anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 151
 - length, 134, 138
 - transverse, 164
 - wood selection for, 180
- attack by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
- attack by plant organisms, 643
- bark, 467, 491
- bending, 1037
- burning, 1367
- chemical constituents, 187
- chemical processing, 1475
- defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
- description and range, 21
- distinguishing features, 42
- drying, 949

Pond pine (*Continued*)

- economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 21
 - effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
 - finishing, 1325
 - gluing and bonding, 1151
 - growth and yield, 21
 - machining, 755
 - measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - weight per M b.f. log scale, 1598
 - mechanical fastening, 1221
 - mechanical properties, 391
 - needles, 42, 575, 581, 584
 - physical properties, 337
 - physiology, 55
 - pulping, 1411
 - range and volume, 21
 - roots, 537
 - scientific name, 5
 - silvics, 21
 - specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractive content on, 242
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245
 - variation within trees, 253
 - storing, 737
 - strength, 391
 - treating, 1061
 - volume and location of growing stock, 6, 21
 - volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 - wood-water relationships, 265
- Poria incrassata*, 658
- Posts
- bark removal from, 833, 1087
 - form of for greatest durability, 1080
 - life of when treated, 1069, 1070
 - number treated annually, 1064
 - plant organism attack on, and protection of, 654
 - preservation of, 1074, 1094, 1097
 - storage of, 745
- Potash, bark combustion byproduct, 1402
- Potassium, in
- bark, 500
 - stemwood, 218, 220
 - tree parts, 218
- Potassium ferricyanide finish, 1331
- Potting medium, bark as, 517
- Poultry litter, bark and planer shavings as, 524
- Pound, as a unit of wood measure, 1524
- see also* Measurement units
- Power and steam generation
- forecast of United States requirement, 1369
 - with woody fuels, 1368, 1383
- Power factor, 386
- Power on
- barkers, 827
 - boring bits, 926-936
 - chain saws, 881, 882
 - chippers, 913-918
 - chipping headrigs, 840-842
 - circle headrigs, 873

Power on (*Continued*)

- double-arbor gangsaws, 873
- lasers, 939
- linebar resaws, 857
- log cutoff saws, 867
- moulders, 894
- planers, 891
- resaws for dry lumber, 858
- ripsaws, 855
- sanders, 898, 899
- sash gangsaws, 866
- smooth-trim saws, 879
- veneer lathes, 907
- wide bandsaws, 853, 856
- Power to
 - accelerate chips, 819
 - machine bore, 926-936
 - peripheral mill, 819
 - plane, 819
 - cutterhead factors, 819
 - down-milling, 827
 - feed factors, 823
 - workpiece factors, 819
- Preboring, 1237
- Prepressing of plywood, 1186
- Preservation; *see* Treatment for preservation
- Preservation of particular products; *see* Treatment for preservation, products
- Preservatives
 - ammonium phosphate, 1073
 - ammonium sulfate, 1073
 - beta-naphthol, effectiveness of, 1076
 - Boliden salts
 - CZA, components, 1068
 - CCA type B, components and Federal specification number, 1068
 - copperized, CuCZA, components, 1068
 - effectiveness of, 1069, 1080
 - see also* Preservatives, zinc chloride, chromated
 - Borax-boric acid, effectiveness of, 1076
 - Celcure
 - ACC, components and Federal specification number, 1068
 - effectiveness of, 1074
 - Chemonite
 - ACA, components and Federal specification number, 1068
 - coal tar, effectiveness of, 1074, 1076
 - copper arsenate, chromated
 - CCA type C, components, 1068
 - effectiveness of, 1070, 1073
 - copper arsenite, ammoniacal
 - effectiveness of, 1070, 1073, 1080
 - copper chromate, acid
 - effectiveness of, 1070, 1073, 1074, 1076
 - copper naphthenate, effectiveness of, 1070, 1081
 - copper-8-quinolinolate, 1073
 - copper sulfate and sodium arsenate
 - effectiveness in double diffusion, 1074, 1078
 - crankcase oil
 - effectiveness used alone, 1077

Preservatives (*Continued*)

- effectiveness of, with coal tar creosote, 1074, 1076, 1077
- effectiveness of, with pentachlorophenol, 1074
 - as a cause of disease in cattle, 1075
- creosote, coal-tar
 - Federal specification number, 1067
 - effectiveness of, 1071, 1073-1075, 1076, 1080, 1082
 - effectiveness with petroleum oil, 1080, 1081
- creosote and coal tar solutions
 - Federal specification number, 1067
 - effectiveness of, 1080
- creosote, hardwood-tar (No-D-K), effectiveness of, 1077
- creosote, lignite coal tar
 - effectiveness of, 1074, 1077, 1081
- creosote, oil tar
 - effectiveness of, 1081
 - effectiveness with pentachlorophenol, 1081
- creosote-petroleum oil solutions
 - Federal specification number, 1067
- creosote, softwood-tar (Termiteol)
 - effectiveness of, 1081
- effectiveness
 - in ground or fresh water, 1069
 - in salt water, 1075
 - of heavy hydrocarbon solvents, 1073
- effectiveness in service tests
 - of posts, 1074-1081
 - of stakes, 1070-1072
- Erdalith; *see* Preservatives, copper arsenate, chromated
- Erdalith Greensalt
 - CCA type A, components and Federal specification number, 1068
- fluor chrome arsenate phenol, effectiveness of, 1069, 1071, 1074, 1077, 1085
- mercuric chloride
 - effectiveness of steeping in, 1075, 1077
- oils and oil-borne preservatives
 - by-product oils and oil mixtures, 1067
 - Federal specification numbers, 1067
 - oil solutions of toxic chemicals, 1067
 - petroleum oil lowers toxicity of creosote, 1082
- Osmoplastic groundline treatment, 1079
- Osmose-Osmosar
 - FCAP type B, components and Federal specification number, 1068
 - effectiveness of Osmose diffusion treatment, 1075
 - effectiveness of Osmosar, 1077
 - penetration of, 1082
 - see also* Penetration and absorption of preservatives
- pentachlorophenol
 - effectiveness in crankcase oil, 1074, 1077
 - effectiveness in hydrocarbon solvents, 1073, 1081

Preservatives (*Continued*)

- effectiveness in various solvents, 1072, 1081
 - Federal specification number, 1067
 - petroleum oil
 - and *Limnoria*, 1082
 - effectiveness of, 1081
 - effectiveness with coal tar creosote, 1080, 1081
 - phenyldichlorasine (P.D.A.)
 - effectiveness of, 1077
 - retentions recommended; *see* Treatment for preservation, products
 - rosin amine-D-pentachlorophenate
 - effectiveness of, 1073
 - sodium chromate, effectiveness of, 1077
 - sodium dichromate, effectiveness of, 1077
 - sodium pentachlorophenate, for stain control, 1068
 - Tanalith; *see* Preservatives, fluor chrome arsenate phenol
 - Tanalith-Wolman salt
 - FCAP type A, components and Federal specification number, 1068
 - tetrachlorophenol, effectiveness of in crankcase oil, 1074, 1078
 - tributyltin oxide, 1073
 - sodium chromate, effectiveness of, 1077
 - sodium dichromate, effectiveness of, 1077
 - tetrachlorophenol, effectiveness of, 1078
 - waterborne preservatives
 - advantages and disadvantages, 1069
 - Federal specification numbers, 1068
 - list of standard preservatives, 1068
 - water-gas tar, effectiveness of, 1074, 1078
 - water-repellent preservative, formulation and purpose, 1331
 - Wolman FCAP; *see* Preservatives, fluor chrome arsenate phenol
 - Wolman salt; *see* Preservatives, Tanalith
 - zinc arsenate, chromated, effectiveness of, 1070, 1080
 - zinc chloride, effectiveness of, 1075, 1078
 - zinc chloride, chromated
 - CZC, components and Federal specification number, 1068
 - effectiveness of, 1069, 1070, 1074, 1076, 1080
 - zinc chloride, copperized chromated
 - CuCZC, components, 1068
 - zinc meta arsenite, effectiveness of, 1074, 1078
- Preservative treatments
- effect on gluability, 1159
 - effect on withdrawal resistance of nails, 1230, 1231
- Press drying, 1020
- moisture content vs. time in press, 1021, 1023
 - resin exudation from, 1023
 - shrinkage during, 1022, 1023
 - warp during, 1022, 1023
- Pressure bar, planer, 884, 885
 - Primary sander heads, 894
 - Primary units, 1527
 - Primary wall, 97
 - Primer, 1345
 - Federal specification for, 1347
 - for hardboard, 1357
 - thickness of, 1347
 - Printability of mechanical pulp, 1427
 - comparison of stone and refiner ground-wood, 1430
 - Procambial cells, 60
 - Productivity of
 - barkers, 827
 - chippers, 915
 - chipping headrigs, 843
 - lasers, 938, 939
 - moulders, 892, 893
 - planers, 887, 891
 - sanders, 898, 899
 - saws; *see* saw type in which interested
 - vener lathes, 907
 - Profile heads, 889, 890
 - Proportional limit
 - definition of, 393
 - in static bending, 406
 - Protection of wood
 - for shipment and exterior storage, 748
 - from chewing insects, 686
 - from decay, 1064
 - from drywood termites, 684
 - from fire, 1110
 - from subterranean termites, 679, 685
 - from woodpecker attack, 728, 730
 - in chip piles, 745
 - in salt water, 1075, 1095
 - in storage, 737
 - Proteins from southern pine, 1504
 - Protofibrils; *see* Elementary fibrils
 - Proximate analysis, 1378, 1379
 - Pruning
 - clear wood formation after, 429
 - natural tendency toward, 430
 - Pulp, 1411
 - dissolving, 1454
 - kraft, 1431
 - mechanical, 1414
 - production of, 1411
 - sulfite, 1446
 - Pulp chips
 - dimensions of, 910, 1438
 - formation of, 912
 - from saw kerfs, 846
 - optimum thickness of, 911
 - plant organism attack on, and protection of, 653
 - screen specifications for, 1551
 - shredding of, 911
 - storage of, 742
 - thickness control of, 912
 - weight and volume in piles, 1553
 - yield from chipping headrigs, 844-846
 - yield from plywood mills, 1552
 - yield from sawmills, 846
 - yield from sawmills compared to chipping headrigs, 846

Pulp chips (*Continued*)

- yield per cord of wood, 1552
- yield per M b.f. log scale, 1552
- yield per M b.f. lumber sawn, 844, 845, 1609, 1611
- yield, pounds, per log sawn, 1612
- Pulp, dissolving, 1454
 - cellulose acetate, process for, 1456
 - cellulose regeneration from viscose solution, 1455
 - characteristics of, 1460
 - North American consumption of, 1454
 - products from, 1454
 - properties related to species, 1462
 - soda (linters) process, 1457
 - southern pine share of market, 1, 1454
 - sulfite process, 1457, 1459
 - sulfite-sulfate comparisons, 1460
 - yield of, 1458
- Pulp, kraft
 - as affected by paper product made, 1445-1446
 - for dissolving pulps, 1459
 - portion of furnish from residues, 1434
 - process, 1433, 1434, 1436, 1437
 - properties related to wood quality, 1439
 - breaking length, 1442
 - burst factor, 1442
 - sheet density, 1441
 - tear factor, 1442
 - pulping capacity in South, 1432
 - southern pine share of market, 1, 1431, 1432
 - species selection related to properties of, 1443, 1444
 - volume losses during manufacture, 1539
 - yield as affected by
 - alkali charge, 1437
 - carbohydrate stabilization, 1438
 - chip size, 1438
 - kappa number, 1436
 - sulfidity, 1438
 - wood specific gravity, 1439
 - yield of, percentage of oven-dry chip weight, 1539
 - yield of, per cord, 1539
- Pulp, refiner groundwood, 1427
 - comparison with stone groundwood, 1430
 - double-disk refiner, illustration of, 1428
 - energy required, 1431
 - process improvements, 1431
 - strength and printability of, 1427
- Pulp, stone groundwood, 1414
 - bleaching of, 1427
 - brightness of, 1420, 1422, 1430
 - consistency of, 1426
 - establishment of the industry, 1414
 - fiber morphology related to, 1416
 - grinder, illustration of, 1421
 - grinding practices, 1423, 1426
 - groundwood capacity in United States, 1415
 - groundwood for newsprint, properties, 1420
 - latewood tracheid dimensions, species differences, 1418

Pulp, stone groundwood (*Continued*)

- location of producers, 1415
- manufacture of, 1416
- pH of shower water, 1421, 1426
- pitch, problems related to, 1421
- power required, 1423, 1426
- printability of, 1427, 1430
- quality related to fungus attack, 1422
- references on, 1415
- screening of, 1427
- southern pine share of market, 1, 1413
- Southland* process for, 1421, 1422
- species preferences for, 1420
- stone composition and design, 1424, 1425
 - strength of, 1420, 1422, 1427, 1430
 - wood properties related to, 1416
- Pulp, sulfite, 1446
 - acid sulfite process, 1446, 1447
 - bisulfite process, 1446, 1449
 - dissolving pulp from, 1457, 1459
 - future possibilities for, 1453
 - multistage sulfite process, 1451
 - neutral sulfite process, 1446, 1452
 - process classification, 1446
 - yield from, 1458
- Pulpwood
 - bark removal from, 827
 - cords of topwood per tree, 1561
 - cords per acre of 9- to 16-year-old slash pine, 1561
 - cubic feet of topwood per tree, 1588
 - cubic feet per cord, 1514, 1515, 1557
 - insect attack on, 698
 - number of bolts per cord, 1558
 - number of bolts per tree, 1559
 - number of bolts, wood and bark volumes, and weight per cord, 1557
 - number of trees per cord, 1559, 1560
 - number of trees per unit, 1560
 - plant organism attack on, and protection of, 652
 - properties of, 1441
 - storage of, 740
- Pyrasote, 1124

Q

Quality; *see* Wood quality and Wood selection for

R

- Rab color system, 339, 340
- Races of sand pine, 42
- Radiation (ionizing) degradation of wood, 636
 - in trees, 636, 637
 - in wood products, 638, 639
- Rake angle
 - definition of, 761, 812
 - related to chip type, 766, 775, 789
 - related to cutterhead power requirement, 823
 - related to cutting forces, 764, 772, 782, 790
- Rain seepage and decay, 657
- Raised grain, 817
- Rays in bark, 475

- Rays in wood
 fusiform, definition of, 104
 heterogeneous, definition of, 104
 homogeneous, definition of, 104
 movement of sugars through, 61
 uniseriate, definition of, 104
- Ray tracheids, 105
 angle of microfibrils in, 110
 dentate wall thickenings in, 108, 109
 pits in, 120, 122
 thick-walled, 111
 thin-walled, 111
 wall layers in, 108, 110
- Red-headed woodpecker, 720, 722
- Refiner, double-disk, 1428
- Reflectance, 340
- Relative humidity; *see* Humidity
- Residues; *see* Yields and measures, residues
- Resin
 heat of combustion of, 379
see also Gum
see also Oleoresin
- Resin adhesives; *see* Glues
- Resin canals, 128
 definition of, 128
 effect of wounding on, 128
 distribution of, 129, 130
 horizontal, 128
 numbers of, 128, 129
 size of, 129
 stimulation of gum flow in, 1479
 vertical, 128
- Resin ducts in needles, 578, 580
- Resin glues, synthetic, 1155
- Resin-impregnated cellulose fiber overlay,
 for
 lumber, 1350
 plywood, 1355
- Resin pockets in bark, 485
- Resistance, electric, 384, 385
- Resonant panels, design of, 348, 349
- Resorcinol-formaldehyde glue, 1156
- Resource, reason for preeminence of
 southern pine, 2
- Resource, the pine, 5
- Restraint of nosebar, 909
- Retention of preservatives
 definition of, 1086
 methods for measuring, 1086
- Reticulitermes flavipes*, 669, 670, 673
see also Termites, subterranean
- Reticulitermes virginicus*, 669, 673
see also Termites, subterranean
- Reverberation time, 347, 351
- Rheinau process of hydrolysis, 1493
- Rhytidome, 477
 definition of, 470
 deposits in, 477
 formation of, 477
 obliteration in, 477
 schematic drawing of, 474
 thickness of, 487, 496
- Ring barkers, 830, 831
- Roll coaters, 1357
- Rollerbar
 forces, 905
- Rollerbar (*Continued*)
 geometry, 905
 openings, 906
see also Nosebar
- Root form, dimensions, and weight for
 loblolly pine, 539
 longleaf pine, 447
 pitch pine, 555
 shortleaf pine, 557
 slash pine, 560, 562, 1541, 1543
- Root form of seedlings planted in slits,
 539
- Rooting medium, bark as, 519
- Roots, 535
 anatomy of, 563
 chemical constituents in, 568
 moisture content in, 568
 percentage of tree weight, 562, 1541,
 1543
 physiology of, 537
 root form, 538
 specific gravity of, 569
 strength of, 569
 tracheid dimensions in, 566
 utilization of, 570
- Rootwood, heat of combustion of, 379,
 382
- Rootwood utilization, for
 fiberboard, 570
 naval stores, 1485
 pulp, 570
- Rosin, 1488
 definition of, 1488
 yield per ton of steam-distilled stump-
 wood, 1486
 yield per ton of wood pulped, 1487
see also Naval stores
- Rosin size, fortified, 1490
- Rot; *see* Decay
- Rotary cutting
 definition of, 759
see also Peripheral milling
- Rotary peeling, 902
 cutting velocity and veneer quality, 907
 knife factors affecting, 903
 nomenclature, 900
 nosebar forces during, 904, 905, 907
 nosebar openings for, 906
 productivity of lathes, 907
 roller bar openings for, 906
 veneer block treatment prior to, 903
 wood factors affecting, 902
- Roughness factor, veneer, 1179
- Rueping process of treatment, 1090
- Rust
 eastern gall, 435
 fusiform, 433, 434
- S
- S₁ layer, 97
 separation of, in compression failure,
 395
- S₂ layer, 97, 101
 separation of, in compression failure,
 395
 soft rot fungus in, 647, 648
- S₃ layer, 97, 101

- Saccharification, 1493
- Salts, resistance of wood to, 616
- Sander dust, as fuel, 1400
of pine floors, 1361
see also Abrasives, machining with coated
- Sand pine, 22, 42
anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
fibril angle, 151
length, 134, 138
transverse, 164
wood selection for, 180
attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
attack by plant organisms, 643
bark, 467
bending, 1037
burning, 1367
chemical constituents, 187, 188
chemical processing, 1475
defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
description and range, 22, 24
distinguishing features, 42
drying, 949
economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 24
effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
finishing, 1325
gluing and bonding, 1151
growth and yield, 22
machining, 755
measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
mechanical fastening, 1221
mechanical properties, 391
needles, 42, 575, 581
physical properties, 337
physiology, 55
pulping, 1411
races of, 42
range and volume, 24
rhytidome, radial section of, 485
roots, 537
scientific name, 5
silvics, 22
specific gravity, 235
cell-wall density, 239
effect of extractive content on, 242
species average, 244
variation within species, 245
variation within trees, 253
storing, 737
strength, 391
treating, 1061
volume and location of growing stock, 6, 24
volume and location of sawtimber, 8
wood-water relationships, 265
- Sapwood, 87
air-drying of, 957
color of, 338
decay susceptibility of, 644
extractive content of, 211
moisture content in, 273
- Sapwood (*Continued*)
penetration of preservatives in, 1083, 1093, 1094
permeability of, 310
pit aspiration in, 311
shrinking and swelling, 295
specific heat of, 368
susceptibility to termite attack, 673
- Sash gangsaws, 861
advantages and disadvantages, 865
capacity and characteristics, 862
kinematics, 861
proportions, power, and feed speed of, 866
yield from, 846
- Sawdust, 1554
from mills using chipping headrigs, 846
percentage of merchantable stem, 846, 1542
weight per M b.f. log scale sawn, 1553
weight per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1549, 1554, 1609
weight per unit volume, 1555
- Sawdust, uses
animal food, 1497
charcoal plant furnish, 1498-1502
fuel, 1398
hydrolysis plant furnish, 1493
in agriculture and landscaping, 514
pulp chips, 846
see also Bark, use in agriculture and landscaping
- Sawing, 847
bandsaws, 849
chain saws, 880
circular saws, 867
sash gangsaws, 861
see also Chipping headrigs
see also Lasers
see also Water-jet cutting
- Saw-kerf pulp chips, 846
- Scaling logs by weight, 1533
see also Conversion tables
see also Measurement units
- Scarf joints, 1163
glue penetration in, 1164
slope and specific gravity related to strength, 1163, 1164
- Schedules, dry kiln; *see* Drying of products, and Kiln-drying
- Schlyter panel test for fire, 1115
- Scholler process of hydrolysis, 1493
- Scientific names, 5
- Screws, lag, 1276
allowable lateral loads, 1277, 1279-1281, 1284
allowable withdrawal loads, 1277, 1278, 1279
dimensions of, 1276, 1277
head imbedment, 1281
nomenclature for, 1277
- Screws, wood, 1270
allowable lateral loads, 1273, 1275
allowable withdrawal loads, 1270, 1271, 1274
dimensions of, 1272

- Screws, wood (*Continued*)
 nomenclature of, 1272
 size and spacing for plywood, 1274
 withdrawal resistance in particleboard, 1275
- Scribner log scale, 1520
 conversion to cubic feet, 1593, 1596, 1597
 conversion to other log scales, 1592, 1593
 conversion to pounds, 1532, 1597-1599, 1601
 deductions for defects, 1520, 1566
 definition of, 1520
 log content in board feet, 1564, 1565
 pole content in board feet, 1602
 tree content in board feet, 1574, 1575
 tree overrun from, 1595
- Sealers, emulsion type for plywood, 1353
- Seasoning; *see* Drying
- Season of year effect on moisture content of tree, 271, 272
- Secondary sanding heads, 895
- Secondary wall, 97
 fibril angle in, 151
 S₁ layer of, 97
 S₂ layer of, 97, 101
 S₃ layer of, 97, 101
 thickness of layers, 98, 101
- Sections in wood; *see* Planes in wood
- Seed, source, 12
- Selection of wood; *see* Wood selection for Semichemical pulping process, 1413, 1447
- Shake
 in relation to woodpecker attack, 722, 724
 in trees, 439
- Sharpness; *see* Dulling of cutter
- Sharpness angle, 761, 812
- Shavings, planer
 percentage of gross saw log volume, 1556
 percentage of merchantable stem, 1542
 weight per M b.f. of lumber planed, 1556
- Shavings, use as
 fuel, 1398
 mulch, 523
 particleboard furnish, 1193, 1194
 poultry litter, 524
- Shear failures, mode of, 398
- Shear strength
 moisture content related to, 404, 405, 408
 species average values, 408
 specific gravity related to, 402, 405, 406
 variability of, 408, 410, 412
- Shearing, 797
 checks caused by, 803
 equipment for, 804
 factors affecting, 797
 force and work required, 800, 801, 802
 knife shapes, 798
 lumber degrade from, 799
- Sheds, lumber storage
 heated, closed, 748
 open, 746
 unheated, closed, 747
- Sheet density of kraft pulp, 1441
- Shellac, 1361
- Shipworms, 714
see also *Teredo*
- Shortleaf pine, 25, 42
 anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 fibril angle, 158, 162
 length, 134, 135, 138, 145, 149
 transverse, 164, 169, 171
 wood selection for, 180
- attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
 attack by plant organisms, 643
 bark, 467, 491
 bending, 1037
 burning, 1367
 chemical constituents, 187, 188
 chemical processing, 1475
 defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
 description and range, 25
 distinguishing features, 42
 drying, 949
 economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 25
 effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605, 637
 finishing, 1325
 gluing and bonding, 1151
 growth and yield, 25
 machining, 755
 measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 bark weight per log, 1608
 bark weight per M b.f. log scale, 1609
 chippable residue per M b.f. log scale sawn, 1613
 cubic feet per tree, 1524, 1584
 grade yield of lumber from logs of, 454
 grade yield of lumber from trees of, 445-447
 log weight per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1533
 lumber widths yielded from trees and logs of various diameters, 452, 455
 slab proportions of bark and wood, 1610
 volume of wood per cord of slabs, 1612
 weight per cord, 1525
 weight per log, 1589
 weight per M b.f. log scale, 1532, 1597, 1598
 weight of merchantable stems, 1591
 mechanical fastening, 1221
 mechanical properties, 391, 408
 moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
 needles, 42, 575, 581, 584-586
 physical properties, 337
 physiology, 55
 pulping, 1411
 range and volume, 25
 resin pockets in bark of, 485
 roots, 537, 557
 scientific name, 5

Shortleaf pine (*Continued*)

- silvics, 25
- specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractive content on, 242, 243
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245, 249
 - variation within trees, 251, 252, 253
- storing, 737
- strength, 391, 406
- thermal conductivity, 372
- treating, 1061
- volume and location of growing stock, 6, 25
 - volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 - wood-water relationships, 265
- Shrinking and swelling, 289
 - as a thermal function, 382
 - as related to fiber length, 303
 - as related to growth rate, 301
 - control of, 1128, 1138, 1140
 - definition of, 289
 - during kiln-drying above 212° F., 1001
 - during kiln-drying below 212° F., 982
 - effect of cardinal direction, 306
 - effect of direction of annual rings, 304
 - effect of extractives, 295
 - effect of fibril angle, 297
 - effect of height above ground, 303
 - effect of lignin content, 295
 - effect of radial position, 303
 - effect of specific gravity, 291
 - factors affecting, 289
 - in compression wood, 290, 299, 306
 - in earlywood and latewood, 297, 301
 - in heartwood and sapwood, 295
 - in mature wood and corewood, 292, 299
 - models, 298
 - moisture related to, 289
 - of bark, 508
 - of needles, 587
 - prevention of, 1128
 - ratio of radial to tangential swelling, 294
 - summary of data, 306
 - under restraint, 303
 - variation among trees, 292
 - variation within trees, 303
- Shrinkage, longitudinal, of needles, 587
- Siding
 - design considerations for, 1334
 - fastening of, 1337
 - finishing of, 1327, 1332, 1337, 1348, 1349
 - moisture content of, 1335
 - patterns for, 1335, 1336
 - stains for, 1332, 1336
- Sieve cells, 472
 - differentiation of, 61
 - micrograph of, 473
 - percent of volume in inner bark, 474
 - percent of volume in rhytidome, 475
 - size of, 473
- Signs, finishing of, 1359
- Silica gel, effectiveness against drywood termites, 685
- Silicon carbide abrasive, 895
- Silicone copolymer coatings, 1359
- Silvics, 12
- Simple pit, definition of, 123
- Size coat, 895, 896
- Sizes, standard for lumber, 1518
- Slabs, 1550
 - proportions of bark and wood in, 1610
 - tons per M b.f. log scale, 1550
 - tons per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1549, 1550, 1611
 - volume of wood per cord, 1612
- Slant driving, 1232
- Slash pine, 27, 42
 - anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 153, 158, 161
 - length, 135, 136, 138, 146, 147, 149
 - transverse, 164, 168, 169, 171
 - wood selection for, 180
 - attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
 - attack by plant organisms, 643
 - bark, 467, 491
 - bending, 1037
 - burning, 1367
 - chemical constituents, 187, 188
 - chemical processing, 1475
 - defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
 - description and range, 25, 28
 - distinguishing features, 42
 - drying, 949
 - economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 28
 - effects of chemical, heat, and radiation, 605
 - finishing, 1325
 - gluing and bonding, 1151
 - growth and yield, 27
 - machining, 755
 - measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - cords per acre in plantations, 1561
 - cords of topwood per tree, 1561
 - cubic feet per tree, 1523
 - grade yield of lumber from logs of, 453
 - grade yield of lumber from trees of, 442-444
 - log weight per M b.f. lumber sawn, 1533
 - volume of wood per cord of slabs, 1612
 - weight per cord, 1525
 - weight per log, 1589
 - weight per M b.f. log scale, 1597, 1598
 - weight of merchantable stems, 1527, 1590
 - weight of tree parts, 562, 1527, 1541
 - mechanical fastening, 1221
 - mechanical properties, 391, 408
 - moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
 - needles, 42, 562, 575, 585, 586
 - physical properties, 337
 - physiology, 55

Slash pine (*Continued*)

- pulping, 1411
- range and volume, 28
- roots, 537, 560, 562, 1541, 1543
- scientific name, 5
- silvics, 27
- specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractives content on, 243
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245, 250
 - variation within trees, 251-254, 256, 257
- storing, 737
- strength, 391, 406
- thermal conductivity of, 375
- treating, 1061
- varieties of, 42, 46
- volume and location of growing stock, 6, 28
- volume and location of sawtimber, 8
- wood-water relationships, 265
- Slicing, 908
 - cutting velocity and veneer quality, 909
 - forces during, 911
 - multiple flitches, 910
 - nomenclature, 901
 - thick veneer, 909
 - veneer quality, 908
- Slicewood, 909
- Slurry-seal process of treatment, 1091
- Smoke density index, 1119, 1123
- Smoothness; *see* Surface of wood, quality when
- Snipe, in planing, 884
- SO₂ as chip protectant, 745
- Soap, stabilized rosin, 1490
- Soaps, 1490
- Soda pulping process, 1457
- Sodium arsenate; *see* Double diffusion treatment
- Sodium borates, 1119, 1120, 1122, 1123
- Sodium chloride, 1119, 1122, 1123
- Sodium chloride, as a drying agent, 1026
- Sodium dichromate, 1119, 1122, 1123
- Sodium, in stemwood, 220
- Sodium silicate, 1127
- Soft rot, 645, 647, 648, 656
- Softening agents from rosin, 1491
- Soil amendments, bark as, 520
- Soils, optimum for species, 12
- Soil treatment against termites, 680
- Solvent seasoning, 1031
- Sound
 - velocity of, 345
 - see also* Acoustics
- Sound absorption, 346
- Sound transmission loss, 350
- Southern pine, 5
 - acreage of commercial forest land, 5
 - anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 151
 - length, 131, 138
 - transverse, 163, 164, 170
 - wood selection for, 180
 - attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665

Southern pine (*Continued*)

- attack by plant organisms, 643
- bark, 467
- bending, 1037
- burning, 1367
- chemical constituents, 187, 188
- chemical processing, 1475
- common names, 5
- defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
- definition, 5
- demand for, 10
- description and range, 12
- distinguishing features, 35
- drying, 949
- economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 12
- effect of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
- finishing, 1325
- gluing and bonding, 1151
- growth and yield, 12
- machining, 755
- measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - board feet per cord, 1528
 - board feet per cubic foot, 1529, 1530
 - board feet, Doyle scale, per tree, 1572
 - cords per tree, 1560
 - cubic feet per log, 1579
 - cubic feet per M b.f. log scale, 1596, 1597
 - cubic feet of topwood per tree, 1588
 - cubic feet per tree, 1580-1587
 - grade and width of lumber from trees of various diameters and grades, 448-451
 - log scales, 1562-1569
 - number of bolts per cord, 1516, 1558
 - number of trees per cord, 1517, 1559
 - percent bark volume, 1608
 - percent various residues by weight, 1609
- pole content, in board feet log scale, 1602
- pole weight, volume, and dimension, 1604-1606
- pulp chips per M b.f. of lumber, 845, 1609, 1611
- sawdust yield per sawn log, 1614
- taper in upper logs, 1570
- volume of wood in a cord, 1514, 1515
- volume of wood per cord of slabs, 1612
- weight per cord, 1525
- weight per log, 1525, 1526, 1589
- weight per M b.f. log scale, 1597-1601
- weight per M b.f. sawn lumber, 1533, 1602
- mechanical fastening, 1221
- mechanical properties, 391, 408
- moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
- needles, 35, 575, 581
- physical properties, 337

Southern pine (*Continued*)

- physiology, 55
- preeminence as a raw material, 2
- projected growth, 10
- pulping, 1411
- range and volume, 6
- roots, 537, 562, 1541
- scientific names, 5
- silvics, 12
- species of, 5
- specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractives content on, 242
 - species averages, 244
 - variation within species, 245
 - variation within trees, 253
- storing, 737
- strength, 391, 406
- treating, 1061
- volume and location of growing stock, 6, 12
- volume and location of sawtimber, 8
- wood-water relationships, 265
- Southern pine beetle, 689
- Southland* groundwood process, 1422
- Soybean glue, 1154, 1176
- Species related to pulping processes
 - dissolving, 1462, 1463
 - kraft, 1443-1445
 - mechanical, 1416, 1419-1421
 - sulfite, 1447, 1453, 1462
- Species, southern pine, 2, 12
- Species characteristics, 35
- Species comparisons of bark, 483
 - external characteristics, 483
 - microstructure, 486
 - odor, 484
 - periderm color, 36, 484
 - periderm shape, 486
- Specific cutting energy
 - definition of, 835
 - for pulp chips, 912, 915
 - in machine boring, 923
 - in stone groundwood pulp manufacture, 1426
 - in refiner groundwood pulp manufacture, 1431
 - of chipping headrigs, 835
 - of circular saws, 871
 - related to chip thickness, 872
- Specific gravity of bark, 501
 - as a function of growth rate, 502
 - as a function of tree age, 502
 - crushing strength related to, 504
 - hardness related to, 505
 - modulus of rupture related to, 507
 - of the 10 species, according to height in the tree, 503
 - shear strength related to, 506
 - tensile strength related to, 507
 - variation among species, 501, 503, 569
 - variation within species, 502, 569
 - variation within trees, 503
- Specific gravity of branchwood, 569
- Specific gravity of needles, 569, 587
- Specific gravity of pulp chips, loss of, under water spray storage, 743, 744
- Specific gravity of rootwood, 569
- Specific gravity of stemwood, 236
 - and density, 236
 - and weight of wood per cubic foot, 238
 - cutting forces related to, 774, 780, 788, 790
 - definition of, 237
 - dielectric constant related to, 385
 - drill-bit performance related to, 930, 931
 - drying time related to, 324, 327, 1001
 - earlywood percentage related to, 1440
 - effect of age class on, 241
 - effect of environment on, 68, 75
 - effect of extractive content on, 240, 242
 - effect of geographic location on, 246, 247-250
 - effect of growth rate on, 244
 - electrical resistance related to, 384
 - estimation from breast-height cores, 242, 259
 - fiber saturation point related to, 278
 - fingerjoint strength related to, 1168, 1172, 1173
 - force to cleave related to, 805, 808
 - force to shear related to, 801
 - fractional powers of, 1225
 - heat conductivity related to, 371-373
 - kraft pulp yield related to, 1439
 - laser performance related to, 939
 - mechanical pulp manufacture related to, 1417, 1418
 - mechanism of drying related to, 324, 327
 - methods of computing and estimating, 259
 - moisture content related to, 270
 - nail lateral resistance related to, 1254
 - nail withdrawal resistance related to, 1227
 - of alpha-cellulose, 238
 - of complete growth rings, 254, 256
 - of holocellulose, 238
 - of latewood and earlywood, 249-259
 - of lignin, 238
 - particleboard properties related to, 1197, 1199
 - permeability related to, 312
 - power factor related to, 386
 - power to plane related to, 820
 - plywood delamination related to, 1189
 - plywood quality related to, 1177
 - scarf joint strength related to, 1163
 - screw withdrawal resistance related to, 1270
 - shrinking and swelling related to, 291
 - species average value, 240, 244
 - steam bending related to, 1048-1051
 - strength properties related to, 401, 402, 405, 406, 408
 - thermal expansion and contraction related to, 282
 - variation across annual rings, 250, 252
 - variation with height and radial position, 255

- Specific gravity of stemwood (*Continued*)
- variation within species, 241, 245, 569
 - variation within trees, 248
- Specific heat of, 367
- chemical constituents of wood, 367, 368
 - dry bark, 509
 - earlywood and latewood, 368
 - heartwood and sapwood, 368
 - loblolly pine wood, 368, 369
 - moist bark, 511
 - moist wood, 368
 - needles, 589
 - spruce pine wood, 367, 369
- Specific surface, particleboard properties related to, 1202, 1204, 1205
- Spikes, 1225
- sizes of, 1226
 - withdrawal resistance, 1237, 1239
 - see also* Nails and spikes
- Spiral grain, 435
- Spiral thickening, 99, 104
- Splitting; *see* Cleaving
- Spring-set saws, 852
- Springwood; *see* Earlywood
- Spruce pine, 30, 47
- anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 154, 159, 160, 162
 - length, 136, 138, 146, 148, 150
 - transverse, 164, 166, 171, 175, 176, 177
 - wood selection for, 180
- attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
- attack by plant organisms, 643
- bark, 467, 493
- bending, 1037
- burning, 1367
- chemical constituents, 187
- chemical processing, 1475
- defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
- description and range, 30
- distinguishing features, 47
- drying, 949
- economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 30
- effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605, 611, 615
- external appearance of bark, 484
- finishing, 1325
- frictional properties, 357
- gluing and bonding, 1151
- growth and yield, 30
- machining, 755
- measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
- mechanical fastening, 1221
- mechanical properties, 391, 408
- moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
- needles, 47, 575, 581
- physical properties, 337
- physiology, 55
- pulping, 1411
- range and volume, 30
- roots, 537
- scientific name, 5
- silvics, 30
- specific gravity, 235
- Spruce pine (*Continued*)
- cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractives content on, 240, 243
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245
 - variation within trees, 253, 258
 - specific heat, 367, 369
 - specific heat of bark from, 509, 510
 - storing, 737
 - strength, 391, 406
 - treating, 1061
 - volume and location of growing stock, 6, 30
 - volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 - wood-water relationships, 265
- Squares, 1540
- Stain, in trees, 440
- Stains, 1332
- for plywood, 1354
 - for siding, 1334
 - heavily pigmented, 1336
 - USDA Forest Products Laboratory stain, formulation, 1332-1334
- Stains and molds in wood
- control of, 1099-1103
 - rapidity of penetration, 648
- Stains and molds in wood, effect on
- gluability, 1181
 - parenchyma, 650
 - permeability, 646, 649
 - strength, 646
 - susceptibility to decay, 647
- Stake method, 680
- Staples, 1263
- allowable loads, 1263
 - lateral resistance of, 1267-1269
 - size and spacing of, 1269
 - specifications for, 1263
 - withdrawal resistance of, 1265-1267
- Starch glue, 1154, 1176
- Starch, location of in wood, 193, 202
- Static bending strength values
- cross grain related to, 436
 - moisture content related to, 404, 405, 406
 - species averages for clear wood
 - fiber stress at proportional limit, 406
 - modulus of elasticity, 406
 - modulus of rupture, 406
 - work to maximum load, 406
 - specific gravity related to, 401, 402, 405
 - variability of, 408, 410, 412
- Staybwood*, 1129
- Staypack*, 1129
- Steam bending
- advantages of, 1038
 - equations to predict bending rating, 1047, 1049, 1051
 - favored species for, 1038
 - radius of curvature achievable, 1039
 - relaxation of curvature, 1050, 1052, 1053
 - technique, 1039, 1040
 - wood selection for bending, 1048-1051
- Steam-distilled naval stores, 1477, 1485

- Steam generators, 1383
 bark tonnage related to steaming and generating capacity, 1389, 1390
 economics of, 1385
 efficiency of, 1383
 equipment, 1387, 1388-1397
 firing methods, 1391, 1394-1397
 fuel values, comparative, 1385
- Steaming, effect of on wood
 chemical composition, 624, 625
 excess preservative, 1089
 permeability, 313
 strength, 623-626
 temperature, 1003
 treatability, 1028, 1088
- Steaming, related to bending, 1048-1050
- Steaming under vacuum, 1002
- Stemwood, percentage of tree weight, 562, 1541, 1607
- Steroids from southern pine, 1504
- Stomato of needles, 577, 579
- Stone cells in bark, 482, 483
 percentage of volume in rhytidome, 482
- Storage of
 logs, 738
 lumber and millwork, 746
 paper, 752
 plywood, particleboard, and hardboard, 751
 poles, piling, posts, and timbers, 745
 pulp chips, 742
 pulpwood, 740
 veneer blocks, 738
- Stoves, references on, 1406
- Strain, definition of, 393
- Strain, of
 bandsaws, 851, 853
 gangsaws, 863
- Strand tracheids, 101
- Strength of kraft pulp, wood storage related to, 740, 744
- Strength of mechanical pulp, 1427
 comparison of stone and refiner ground-wood, 1430
 newsprint, 1420
 wood storage related to, 1422
- Strength properties of bark, 504
 crushing strength, 504
 hardness, 505
 modulus of rupture, 506
 shear strength, 505
 tensile strength, 506
 toughness, 507
- Strength properties of needles, 588
- Strength properties of rootwood, 569
- Strength properties of wood
 age class related to, 410
 air-dry clear wood, 408
 compression parallel to grain, 394, 408
 compression perpendicular to grain, 397, 408
 cross grain related to, 436
 duration of load related to, 399
 geographic location related to, 410
 green clear wood, 408
 growth rate related to, 407
- Strength properties of wood (*Continued*)
 impact bending, 408
 in laminated curved beams, 1057, 1058
 modification of, 1139
 moisture content related to, 404, 405, 408, 412
 of earlywood and latewood, 397
 resin content related to, 438
 shear parallel to grain, 398, 408
 species average values, 406, 408
 specific gravity related to, 401, 402, 405, 406
 static bending, 408
 strain rate related to, 399
 temperature, immediate effect on, 400
 temperature, permanent effect on, 620
 tension parallel to grain, 396, 411
 tension perpendicular to grain, 408
 variation within species, 407, 412
 variation within trees, 411
see also Mechanical properties
- Strength properties of wood, as altered by
 acids, 608-611
 alkalis, 612-614
 gamma radiation, 638-639
 hot air, 620, 621
 hot water, 622
 organic liquids, 615
 salts, 616, 617
 steam, 623-626
- Strength ratio
 definition of, 417
 discussion of, 417
- Stress
 definition of, 393
 design (allowable) values of, 416, 419
- Stresses, design; *see* Design stresses
- Structure of wood; *see* Anatomy of wood
- Studs
 coatings to diminish moisture pickup, 749, 751
 grade of, as affected by drying method, 994, 995
 grade of, from cores and small logs, 995
 high-temperature drying of, 989-1002
 lamination of, 1159
 proportion wide-ringed, 439
 strength of, from cores and small logs, 996, 997
 strength retention when dried at 240° F., 622
 warp in, 992, 993, 994
- Studs, explosive-driven, 1318, 1319
- Styrene, 1137, 1138
- Styrene-acrylonitrile, 1137, 1138, 1139, 1140
- Styrene butadiene resin for paint, 1343
- Sugar in wood, determination of, 194
- Sugars in needles, 593, 594
- Sulfate pulping process, 1459
see also Pulp, dissolving
see also Pulp, kraft
- Sulfate turpentine, 1477, 1486
- Sulfidity
 kraft pulp strength related to, 1444
 kraft pulp yield related to, 1438

- Sulfuric acid paste process of gum stimulation, 1484
- Sulfuryl fluoride, effectiveness against dry-wood termites, 686
- Summerwood; *see* Latewood
- Surface quality of wood
- bandsawn, 940
 - circular sawn, 848, 940
 - cleaved, 808
 - cut in 90-0 mode, 762, 766
 - cut in 0-90 mode, 775
 - cut in 90-90 mode, 781, 789
 - down-milled, 827, 828
 - laser cut, 940, 941
 - machine bored, 932, 933, 934
 - microtomed, 1339
 - peeled, 778-780, 788, 902, 907, 1179
 - planed, 887, 1339
 - sanded, 896, 1340
 - sheared, 800, 803
 - sliced, 908, 909
 - ultraviolet irradiated, 631, 632, 1338, 1342
 - up-milled, 814-819
 - see also* Defects in machined surfaces
- Suspension burning, 1387
- Swage-set saws, 852
- Swelling; *see* Shrinking and swelling
- Synthetic resin glues, 1155
- T**
- Table-Mountain pine, 32, 47
- anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 151
 - length, 137, 138
 - transverse, 164
 - wood selection for, 180
 - attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665
 - attack by plant organisms, 643
 - bark, 467
 - bending, 1037
 - burning, 1367
 - chemical constituents, 187
 - chemical processing, 1475
 - defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
 - description and range, 32
 - distinguishing features, 47
 - drying, 949
 - economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 32
 - effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
 - finishing, 1325
 - gluing and bonding, 1151
 - growth and yield, 32
 - machining, 755
 - measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 - mechanical fastening, 1221
 - mechanical properties, 391
 - needles, 47, 575, 581
 - physical properties, 337
 - physiology, 55
 - pulping, 1411
 - range and volume, 32
 - roots, 537
 - scientific name, 5
 - Table-Mountain pine (*Continued*)
 - silvics, 32
 - specific gravity, 235
 - cell-wall density, 239
 - effect of extractives content on, 243
 - species average, 244
 - variation within species, 245
 - variation within trees, 253
 - storing, 737
 - strength, 391
 - treating, 1061
 - volume and location of growing stock, 6, 32
 - volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 - wood-water relationships, 265
 - Tall oil, 1486
 - Tall oil rosin, 1477, 1487
 - Tanalith
 - effectiveness against termites, 680
 - see also* Preservatives
 - Taper in stems, 427, 1570
 - Taproot; *see* Root form, dimensions, and weight for
 - Tars; *see* Preservatives, coal tar, and Preservatives, water-gas tar
 - Tear factor of
 - kraft pulp, 1442
 - stone and refiner groundwood, 1430
 - stone groundwood for newsprint, 1420
 - Temperature in chip piles, 742
 - Temperature of wood, related to cutting forces, 773
 - TEN-CON connectors, 1317
 - Tension checks, 775, 780
 - Tension failures, 396
 - fibril angle related to, 397, 398
 - in earlywood and latewood, 397
 - mode, 397
 - Tensile strength, of
 - earlywood and latewood, 411, 415, 416
 - microspecimens, 397
 - needles, 588
 - wood as affected by treatment with acids and alkalis, 611, 615
 - Teredo*, 713
 - anatomy of, 715
 - control of, 1075, 1082, 1095
 - damage from, 714, 716
 - description and life cycle of, 714
 - habitat of, 714
 - method of tunnelling, 716
 - Termites, classification of
 - dampwood, 667
 - drywood, 667, 682
 - harvester, 667
 - subterranean, 667, 669
 - Termites, drywood, 682
 - detection of, 683, 684
 - identification of, 683
 - life cycle of, 683
 - northern limit of damage by, 668
 - protection from, 684
 - temperature required to kill, 685
 - Termites, drywood, methods to protect from
 - exclusion, 685
 - fumigation, 686

- Termites, drywood, method to protect from (*Continued*)
 insecticide treatment, 685, 686
 material selection, 685
 preservative treatment, 685
- Termites, economic impact of, 668
- Termites, subterranean, 669
 attractants for, 674
 castes of, 669
 damage from, 668, 674
 description and life cycle of, 669
 detection of, 677, 679
 egg production of, 671
 features distinguishing from ants, 669, 671
 food exchange of, 675
 Formosan, 676
 hazard from, 668
 population of colonies, 673
 protection from, 679-682
 species of, 669
- Termites, subterranean, methods to protect from
 building practices, 681
 ingested stomach poisons, 682
 soil treatment, 680
 wood impregnation with preservatives, post test summary, 1074
- Tetrachlorophenol in crankcase oil, effectiveness against termites, 680
- Thermal expansion and contraction, 282
 in dry wood, 383
 in moist wood, 383
 in plywood, 383
- Thermal properties of bark
 heat of combustion, 380, 513
 specific heat, 509
 thermal conductivity, 513
 thermal diffusivity, 513
- Thermal properties of wood, 367
 heat of combustion, 378
 heat transmissivity, 369
 specific heat, 367
 thermal expansion, 382
- Thickness of bark, 487
 inner, 496
 of loblolly pines, 488
 of longleaf pines, 490
 of pond pines, 491
 of shortleaf pines, 491
 of slash pines, 491
 of southern pines, 487
 cf spruce pines, 493
 of Virginia pines, 493
 ratio of inner to outer, 487
 ratio of outer to total, 496
- Threaded nails, 1248
- Thrust on machine boring bits, 928, 931
- Tight side of veneer, 899
- Timber connectors; *see* Connectors, timber
- Timbers
 mine timbers treated annually, 1064
 plant organism attack on, and protection of, 654
 preservation of, 1099-1105
 stain control in, 1099
 storage of, 745
- Timbers, drying of in
 ambient air, 956
 chemicals, 1025
 dielectric field, 1025
 heat-conductive media, 1027
 kilns (above 212° F.), 1002
 kilns (below 212° F.), 982
 steam, 1105
- Tissue paper, 1446
- Titanium dioxide pigments, 1341
- Tool forces; *see* Cutting forces
- Top form index, definition of, 1524, 1588
- Tops
 heat of combustion of, 379, 382
 percentage of tree weight, 562, 1541, 1542, 1561, 1588
- Torque on machine boring bits, 927, 930
- Torus, definition of, 112
- Tracheid length, effect of environment on, 72
- Tracheid dimensions, 130
 fibril angle, 151
 in rootwood; *see* Anatomy of roots
 length, 131
 radial and tangential diameters, 163
 transverse, 163
 wall thickness, 163
 wood selection for, 180
- Tracheid dimensions, correlations
 fibril angle, 160
 length, 150, 303
 transverse, 176, 178, 179
- Tracheids, horizontal; *see* Ray tracheids
- Tracheids, longitudinal, 95
 bordered pit, aspirated, 100
 buckling of, in compression failures, 395
 callitroid thickening of, 100, 105
 earlywood and latewood, 96
 in rootwood; *see* Anatomy of roots
 length of, correlated with shrinking and swelling, 303
 lignin skeleton in, 101
 microfibril orientation, 97, 102, 103
 percent of wood volume, 95
 pit apertures in, 99, 100
 spiral thickening, 99, 104
 strand tracheids, 101
 substances in cell walls, 98
 tensile strength of, 397
 wall layering, 97, 100
- Transmission, of
 heat, 369
 sound, 350
- Treating for, 1061
 fire retardation, 1110
 modification of properties, 1128
 preservation, 1064
- Treatment for fire retardation; *see* Fire retardants
- Treatment for modification of properties; *see* Modification of wood properties
- Treatment for preservation, 1064
 amount and kind of wood treated annually, 1064, 1065
 determination of penetration and retention, 1086

- Treatment for preservation (*Continued*)
 factors affecting penetration and absorption, 1082
 number and location of plants, 1065, 1066
 preservation of particular products, 1095
 pretreatment and conditioning, 1087
 processes, 1089
 reasons for, 1064
 southern pine, proportion of, 1065
 summary specific to posts, ~~1069, 1070~~
 wood preservatives, 1067 ~~1074, 1075~~
see also Preservatives
- Treatment for preservation, preservatives, 1067
 effectiveness in ground or fresh water, 1069
 effectiveness in salt water, 1075
 oils and oil-borne preservatives, 1067
 post test results, 1074-1081
 stake test results, 1069-1074 ~~1074, 1075~~
 summary specific to posts, ~~1069, 1070~~
 waterborne preservatives, 1067
see also Preservatives
- Treatment for preservation, processes, 1089
 barrel, 1094
 brushing and spraying, 1074, 1092
 Cellon, 1090
 Cobra, 1095
 cold soak, 1074, 1092
 diffusion, 1094
 dipping, 1074, 1092
 double-diffusion, 1074, 1094
 empty-cell, 1090
 full-cell, 1090
 hot and cold bath, 1092
 Lowry, 1090
 Osmoplastic, 1095
 Osmose, 1094
 post-treatments, 1089
 pressure processes in closed cylinders, 1090
 pretreatment and conditioning, 1087
 proportion of commodities pressure treated, 1089
 Rueping, 1090
 seasoning, 1088
 slurry-seal, 1091
 vacuum, 1093
- Treatment for preservation, products, 1095
 bolts, 738
 cordwood, 740
 crossarms, 1107
 fiberboard, 1109
 laminated wood, 1105
 logs, 738
 lumber, 1099-1105
 millwork, 1107-1109
 particleboard, 1109
 piles, 1095
 plywood, 1106
 poles, 1096
 posts, 1074, 1094, 1097
 pulp chips, 653
 pulpwood, 740
- Treatment for preservation, products (*Continued*)
 timbers, 1099-1105
- Treatment for preservation, test results
 summary of Mississippi post tests, 1074-1081
 summary of Mississippi stake tests, 1069-1074
- Treatment for protection from
 ants, 711
 chewing insects, general, 683-713
 decay, summary specific to posts, 1074, 1075
 drywood termites, 685, 686
 fire, 1110
Limnoria, 1082
 marine borers, 1075, 1082
 shipworms, 1075
 stain, 1099-1103
 subterranean termites, 679-682, 1074, 1075
 woodpeckers, 728
see also Preservatives
- Tree age; *see* Age class
- Tree grades, 440
- Trees
 board foot volume in, 1572-1578
 cords per tree, 1560
 crook fork and taper in, 426
 cubic feet in tops, 1588
 cubic feet per M b.f. log scale, 1597
 cubic feet per tree, 1523, 1524, 1560, 1580-1587
 drying rate of, 961
 grades of, 440
 insect attack on, 687
 log scale conversion table, 1593
 number of bolts per tree, 1559
 number per cord, 1559
 number per unit, 1560
 overrun by various log scales, 1594, 1595
 percent bark volume, 1608
 percent weight of various parts, 562, 582, 583, 1541, 1607
 plant organism attack on, 651
 shearing of, 797
 southern pine species of, 5
 taper in upper logs of, 1570
 topwood, volume in, 1561
 volume distribution in, 1521
 weight of merchantable stems, 1527, 1560, 1590-1592
- Trichoderma*, 648, 649, 650, 654, 656
 Trim, planing mill, 1549, 1556
 percentage of merchantable stem, 1542
 TRIP-L-GRIP framing anchors, 1314
 Tristimulus values, 338, 342
 Trophallaxis, 675
 proctodeal method, 675
 stomodeal method, 675
- Truckloads, weight of related to board
 feet log scale, 1599-1601
- Tunnel tests for fire
 eight-foot furnace, 1112
 large, ASTM E 84, 1111
- Turpentine
 gum, 207

Turpentine (*Continued*)

- yield related to wood storage, 744, 745
- yield per cord of stumps destructively distilled, 1485
- yield per cord of wood pulped, 1487
- yield per ton of steam-distilled stump-wood, 1486
- see also* Naval stores
- Turpentine borer, 687
- Twist in lumber, 980, 992, 993, 994
- TY-DOWN rafter anchors, 1316

U

- Ultimate analysis, 1378, 1379
- Ultrastructure of wood, 94
- Ultraviolet light resistance of wood, 630
 - chemical reactions, 633
 - surface effects, 631, 632, 1338, 1342
- Uniseriate rays; *see* Rays
- Unit
 - definition of, 1514
 - number of trees per unit, 1560
 - see also* Measurement units
- Unit of measure, 1513
 - primary, 1527
 - see also* Conversion tables
 - see also* Measurement units
- Up-milling
 - definition of, 814
 - see also* Peripheral milling
- U-GRIP joist anchors, 1315
- Urea, as a drying agent, 1026
- Urea, as a plasticizing agent, 1054
- Urea-formaldehyde glue, 1156, 1204-1207

V

- Vacuum treatment, 1093
- Vapor drying, 1028
- Variation of bark in
 - chemical constituents, 497
 - heat of combustion, 514
 - heat transmissivity, 513
 - moisture content, 493
 - specific gravity, 501
 - specific heat, 509
 - strength, 504
 - thickness, 487
- Variation of wood in
 - chemical constituents, 195, 199, 205, 217
 - mechanical properties, 408, 410
 - permeability, 307, 310
 - shrinking and swelling, 289, 303, 306
 - specific gravity, 240, 241, 248
 - tracheid dimensions, 130, 180
- Varieties of slash pine, 42
- Varnish, 1362
 - use of rosin for, 1491
- Vascular bundles in needles, 578, 579
- Vascular cambium, 56, 470
- Velocity of cutting; *see* Cutting velocity
- Veneer
 - continuous, 775, 776
 - conversion to $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch basis, 1536

Veneer (*Continued*)

- cutting with oscillating knife, 904
- drying of, 1004
- lathe productive capacity, 1537
- number of bolts per thousand square feet of plywood, 1537
- percentage of bolt volume in, 1537
- rotary peeled, 899, 902
- sliced, 908
- thick-sliced (slicewood), 909
- yield per bolt, 1538, 1607
- yield per M b.f., Doyle scale, 1536
- Veneer blocks
 - bark removal from, 827
 - grades of, 448
 - grades of veneer yielded from, 456
 - heating of, 903
 - plant organisms attack on, and protection of, 651
 - pretreatment (heating) of, 903
 - preparation of, 903
 - storage of, 738
- Veneer cores, number of, per cord, 1558
- Veneer cutting, 899
 - defects in veneer, 778-780, 907-909
 - nomenclature, 900, 901
 - rotary peeling, 902
 - slicing, 908
- Veneer defects and zones of stress, 777
 - cantilever beam failures, 779
 - compression tearing, 775, 778
 - cutting velocity related to, 907, 909
 - growth rate related to, 903
 - moisture content related to, 903
 - tension checks, 775, 780
- Veneer factors, effect on plywood properties, 1176
 - chemical treatment, 1182
 - drying procedure, 1180
 - earlywood and latewood, 1177
 - extractives and pitch, 1181
 - moisture content, 1180
 - mold, 1181
 - quality of peel, 1180
 - rings per inch, 1177
 - species, 1187
 - specific gravity, 1177
 - temperature, 1180, 1185
 - wettability, 1184
- Veneer grades, yield of, 456
- Veneer, green
 - effect of mold on, 656
 - plant organism attack on, and protection of, 656
- Veneer lathe, description of, 907, 908
- Veneer, roughness factor, 1179
- Vinyl acetate, 1137
- Vinyl-acetate-ethylene paint, 1348
- Vinyl-chloride-acrylic paint, 1348
- Virginia pine, 34, 49
 - anatomy and tracheid dimensions, 83
 - fibril angle, 151
 - length, 137, 138
 - transverse, 164
 - wood selection for, 180
 - attacks by insects, marine borers, and birds, 665

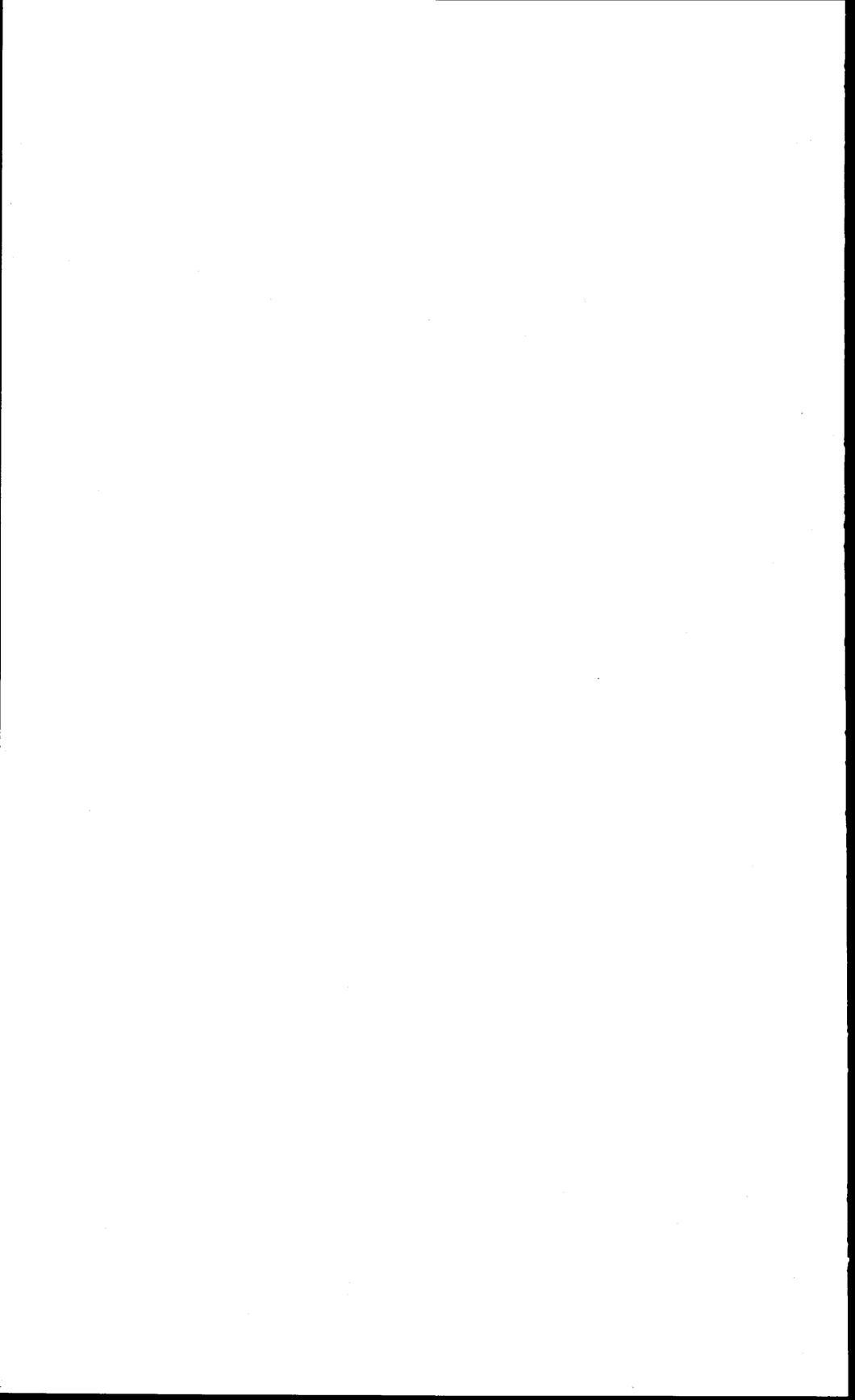
Virginia pine (*Continued*)

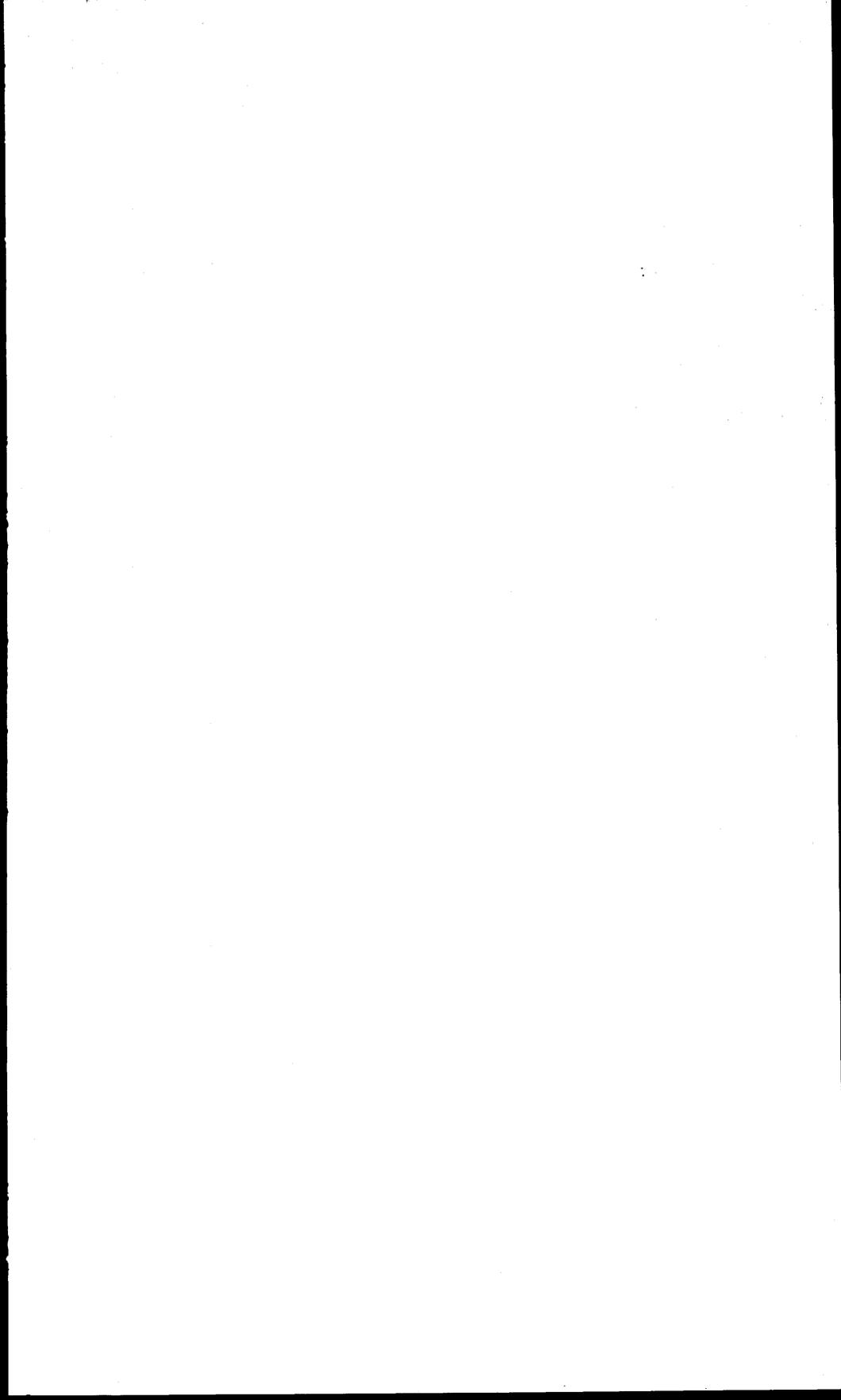
- attack by plant organisms, 643
 bark, 467, 493
 bending, 1037
 burning, 1367
 chemical constituents, 187
 chemical processing, 1475
 defects and grades of trees and logs, 425
 description and range, 34
 distinguishing features, 49
 drying, 949
 economic importance, 1, 6, 8, 34
 effects of chemicals, heat, and radiation, 605
 finishing, 1325
 gluing and bonding, 1151
 growth and yield, 34
 machining, 755
 measures and yields of products and residues, 1511
 cubic feet per tree, 1524
 mechanical fastening, 1221
 mechanical properties, 391, 408
 moisture content in 30-year-old trees, 268
 needles, 49, 575, 581
 physical properties, 337
 physiology, 55
 pulping, 1411
 range and volume, 34
 roots, 537
 scientific name, 5
 silvics, 34
 specific gravity, 235
 cell-wall density, 239
 effect of extractives content on, 243
 species average, 244
 variation within species, 245
 variation within trees, 252, 253
 storing, 737
 strength, 391, 406
 treating, 1061
 volume and location of growing stock, 6, 34
 volume and location of sawtimber, 8
 wood-water relationships, 265
 Viscose fibers, 1454
 Viscose process for regenerated cellulose, 1454, 1455
 Volume and location of growing stock, 6, 12
 Volume and location of sawtimber, 8, 12
 Volume, percentage in butt logs, 1522
 Vulcanized fiber overlay, 1349
- W**
- Ward's* key, 36
 Warp in lumber, 980, 992, 993, 994
 control of, 992
 Warp after drying, 993, 994
 Warp during kiln-drying
 at temperatures above 212° F., 992
 at temperatures below 212° F., 980, 992
 control of, 978, 990
 Warty layer, 98, 100, 102, 103
 Washers, for explosive-driven studs, 1318
 Waste incinerators, 1402, 1405, 1406
 Waterborne preservatives; *see* Preservatives
 Water-gas tar, effectiveness against termites, 679
 Water-jet cutting, 936
 Water-repellent coatings for studs, 749, 751
 Water-repellent preservative, formulation, 1331
 Water spraying and sprinkling of
 logs, 738
 pulp chips, 743
 pulpwood, 740
 Water vapor
 in cell lumens, 276
 relative vapor pressure, definition of, 286
 weight of moisture in saturated air, 279
 Wave height
 down-milling, 826, 827
 up-milling, 811, 812
 Weathered surfaces; *see* Naturally weathered surfaces
 Weight of foliage per pine on
 loblolly, 581, 582, 583, 1607
 pond, 584
 shortleaf, 584, 585
 slash, 562, 585
 Weight of
 bark, 1550
 logs; *see* Weight scaling
 lumber, 1527, 1609
 pulp chips, 1553
 sawdust, 1555
 Weight of tree parts from
 loblolly pine, 582, 583, 1541, 1607
 slash pine, 562, 1541
 Weight of wood, 237
 as affected by specific gravity, 237, 238
 at different moisture contents, 237, 238
 per cubic foot, 238
 Weight scaling, 1533
 see also Conversion tables
 see also Measurement units
 Wet-bulb depression, drying time related to, 324, 328, 998, 999, 1000
 White rot, 645
 White water, pH control of, 1422, 1426
 Wide-ringed lumber
 definition of, 416
 proportion in corewood, 439
 Width of cut, related to cutting force, 768
 Width of lumber from loblolly and shortleaf pine
 logs, 455
 trees, 452
 Width of lumber from southern pine trees
 of Grade A, 448, 449
 of Grade B, 450
 of Grade C, 451
 Wigwam waste burner, 1402, 1405, 1406
 Wind load, 1225
 Withdrawal loads, allowable
 drift bolts, 1293

Withdrawal load, allowable (*Continued*) Wrapping for lumber, 748, 750

- lag screws, 1277, 1278, 1279
 nails, 1237, 1249, 1252, 1254
 staples, 1263
 wood screws, 1270, 1271, 1274
- Wolman FCAP; *see* Preservatives, flour
 chrome arsenate phenol
- Wolman salt
 termites tubing across wood treated
 with, 680
see also Preservatives, Tanalith
- Wood anatomy; *see* Anatomy of wood
- Wood borers, long-horned; *see* Pine saw-
 yers
- Wood in use, plant organism attack on,
 and protection of, 656
- Wood naval stores, definition, 1477
- Wood peckers, 720
 damage from, 720, 723, 725
 physical attributes of, 726
 prevention of attack by, 728, 730
 range of, 721
 species of, 720
- Wood-plastic composites, 1134
 advantages of, 1134
 biological attack on, 1142
 curing of plastic, 1134, 1135
 degradation in weather, 1141
 dimensional stability of, 1138
 processes of impregnation with plastic,
 1135-1137, 1138
 strength of, 1139
- Wood-plastic composites, chemicals for
 ethyl acrylate, 1139
 methyl methacrylate, 1136, 1138, 1139,
 1140, 1141
 phenolic resins, 1137, 1138, 1140
 polymethyl methacrylate, 1141
 styrene, 1137, 1138
 styrene-acrylonitrile, 1137, 1138, 1139,
 1140
 vinyl acetate, 1137
- Wood preservatives; *see* Preservatives
- Wood quality
 anatomy of wood, 83
 silvicultural control of, 75
 specific gravity of wood, 235
see also Wood selection for
- Wood selection for
 bending, 1046
 burning, 1387
 painting, 1345
 pulping, 1416, 1439, 1443, 1462
 tracheid dimensions, 180
 treating, 1082
- Wood-water relationships, 265
 equilibrium moisture content, 279
 fiber saturation point, 276
 heat of sorption, 306
 mechanism of drying, 317
 moisture content, 268
 permeability, 307
- Work
 to cleave logs, 806
 to shear logs, 800, 801
- Work to maximum load, 406
- Wrapping paper, 1446
- X**
- Xylans, 193
 Xylem, 56, 470
 in needles, 578, 579
 primary, 61
 Xylene, as a drying agent, 1030
Xyletinus peltatus, 705
Xylocopa virginica, 712
- Y**
- Yeast from wood sugars, 658
- Yields and measures, products, 1534
 charcoal, 1485, 1499, 1500
 cordwood, 1513-1518
 cords of topwood per tree after re-
 moval of sawlogs, 1517, 1561
 cords per acre, 1517, 1561
 number of pieces per cord, 1516,
 1557, 1558
 number of trees required per cord,
 1516, 1559, 1560
 related to slabs and edgings, 1551,
 1610-1612
 volume of solid wood in a cord, 1514,
 1515, 1557
 excelsior, 1540
 fiberboard, 1540
 kraft pulp, 1539
 lumber, 844, 845, 846, 1534, 1542,
 1595
 lumber grades from log grades, 453,
 454
 lumber grades from tree grades, 442-
 452
 lumber widths from logs, 455
- naval stores
 gum per tree and per 10,000 faces,
 1481
 per cord of stumpwood destructively
 distilled, 1485
 per cord of wood pulped, 1487
 products per ton of stumpwood steam
 distilled, 1486
 product yield from oleoresin, 1483
 turpentine yield related to wood stor-
 age, 744, 745
- poles, 1534, 1602, 1604-1606
 squares, 1540
 stemwood, 562, 1541, 1607
- veneer and plywood, 1535
 lathe productivity, 1537
 theoretical veneer yield per bolt,
 1538
 veneer grade yield by block diam-
 eter, 456
 veneer yields by grade and width,
 1538
 volume in stacks of veneer, 1538
 yield of $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch plywood per bolt,
 1537, 1607
 yield of veneer for $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch ply-
 wood per board foot log
 scale, 1536
- wood per acre, 12
see also Conversion tables
see also Measurement units

- Yields and measures, residues, 1540
- bark, 1543
 - pounds produced per acre per year, shortleaf, 586
 - weight and volume in slabwood, 1549, 1610
 - weight and volume per standard rough cord, 1547, 1557
 - weight and volume per tree or log, 562, 583, 1527, 1541, 1544, 1607-1609
 - weight per M b.f. log scale, 1547, 1609
 - weight per M b.f. lumber scale, 1548-1550, 1609
 - density in piles, 1550
 - needles, 562, 581-586, 1541, 1542, 1607
 - pulp chips, 1551
 - chip yield from chipping headrigs, 844, 845, 846
 - chip yield from plywood mills, 1552
 - chip yield from sawmills, 846, 1542, 1552, 1609, 1611, 1613
 - chip yield per cord of wood, 1552
 - chip yield per M b.f. lumber sawn, 845, 1609, 1611
 - weight and volume of chips in piles, 1553
 - roots, 562, 1541, 1543
 - sawdust, 1553
 - percentage of cubic volume converted to, 846, 1542
 - sawdust residue per log, 1614
 - sawdust residue per M b.f. (log scale) sawn, 1553
 - sawdust residue per M b.f. (lumber scale) sawn, 1549, 1554, 1609
- Yields and measures, residues, sawdust
(Continued)
- sawdust weight per unit volume, 1555
 - shavings, 1556
 - slabs and edgings, 1550
 - slab yield per M b.f. log scale, 1550
 - slab yield per M b.f. lumber scale, 1550, 1611
 - solid wood content of slabs and edgings, 1551, 1610-1612
 - stumps and roots, 562, 583, 1541, 1543
 - tops and branches, 562, 1541, 1542, 1561, 1588, 1607
 - trim, 1542, 1549, 1556
 - see also* Conversion tables
 - see also* Measurement units
- Z**
- Zinc arsenate, chromated; *see* Preservatives
 - Zinc borate, 1127
 - Zinc chloride
 - effectiveness against termites, 680
 - effectiveness as fire retardant, 1119, 1122, 1124
 - see also* Preservatives
 - Zinc chloride, chromated
 - effectiveness as fire retardant, 1124
 - see also* Preservatives
 - Zinc chloride, copperized chromated; *see* Preservatives
 - Zinc meta arsenite
 - effectiveness against termites, 680
 - see also* Preservatives
 - Zinc oxides, in paints, 1340, 1347





CHAPTER

18 STORING

19 MACHINING

20 DRYING

21 BENDING

22 TREATING

23 GLUING AND BONDING

24 MECHANICAL FASTENING

25 FINISHING

26 BURNING

27 PULPING

28 CHEMICAL PROCESSING

29 MEASURES AND YIELDS OF PRODUCTS AND RESIDUES

30 INDEX